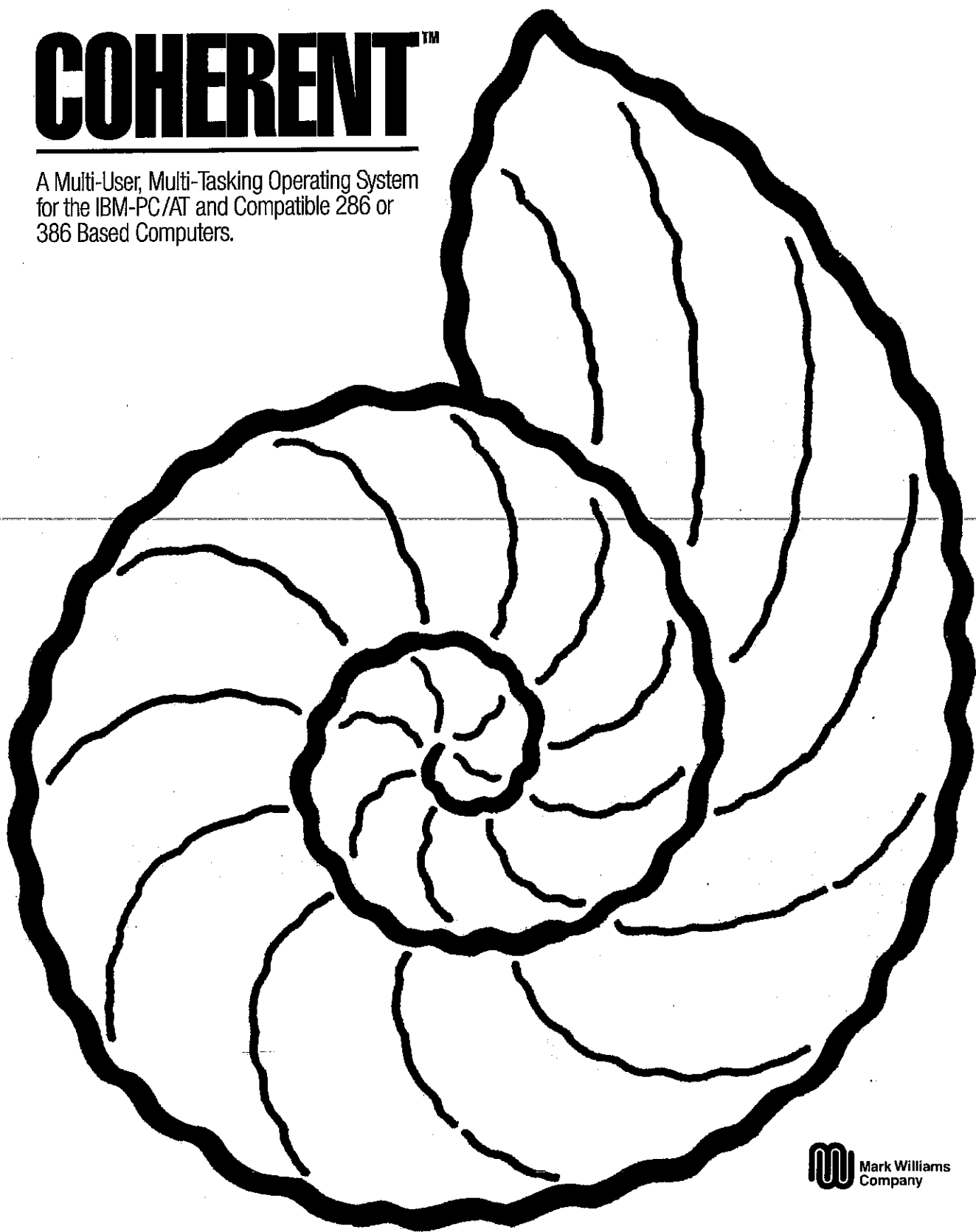


COHERENT™

A Multi-User, Multi-Tasking Operating System
for the IBM-PC/AT and Compatible 286 or
386 Based Computers.



© 1982, 1990 by Mark Williams Company.

All rights reserved.

This publication conveys information that is the property of Mark Williams Company. It shall not be copied, reproduced or duplicated in whole or in part without the express written permission of Mark Williams Company. Mark Williams Company makes no warranty of any kind with respect to this material and disclaims any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose.

COHERENT and csd are trademarks of Mark Williams Company. Unix is a trademark of AT&T. All other products are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective holders.

Revision 3

Printing 5 4 3 2 1

Published by Mark Williams Company, 60 Revere Drive, Northbrook, Illinois 60062.

E-mail:	uunet!mwc!support	(Technical Support)
	uunet!mwc!sales	(General Information)
BIX:	join mwc	
CompuServ:	76256,427	

Printed in the U.S.A.

Preface

COHERENT is the work of a large number of exceptionally talented people. The development of a multi-user, multi-tasking operating system is a daunting task. Creating COHERENT took an enormous effort by all involved. The system and manual are dedicated to those who dedicated themselves to COHERENT.

These people include the following:

Jay Alter	Riyaz Asaria	Norman Bartek
Bob Beals	James Behr	Chris Berrios
Luddyne Blue	Barry Bowen	Denise Buirge
Fred Butzen	Henry Cejtin	David Conroy
Allan Cornish	Roger Critchlow	Richard Critchlow
Ella Dashevsky	Tom Duff	Mark Epstein
Michael Farley	Kim Fruin	Charles Fiterman
Johann George	Daniel Glasser	Michael Griffin
Walter Grogan	Robert Hemedinger	Scott Hermes
Randall Howard	Mary Karabatsos	Nancy Kenston
J.T. Kittridge	William Lederer	Irene Lee
Dave Levine	Jeanne Lewis	Karen McBride
Scott Moody	Esther Munoz	Tim Murphy
Gerson Negron	Steve Ness	Ciarain O'Donnell
Douglas Peterson	Frank Pfeiffer	Norma Reyes
Vladimir Smelyansky	Hal Snyder	Michael Spertus
Julie Stewart	Robert Swartz	Angus Telfer
Trevor Thompson	Diane Tracey	Rico Tudor
Bill Witt	Jim Yonan	



Contents

1. Introduction	1
Hardware Requirements	1
How To Use This Manual	2
The Lexicon.	2
User Registration and Reaction Report	2
Technical Support	2
Installing COHERENT	3
What Does Installation Do?	4
Getting Started.	4
Entering the Serial Number.	5
Setting the Date and Time.	5
Back Up the Hard Disk.	7
Use the COHERENT Bootstrap?	7
How a Disk Is Organized.	8
Partitioning the Disk.	10
Changing One Logical Partition.	12
Changing All Logical Partitions.	12
Scanning for Bad Blocks	13
Creating COHERENT File Systems	13
Mounting File Systems	13
Rebooting	13
Copying Files	14
Touring the COHERENT File System.	14
Where to Go From Here	14
2. Using the COHERENT System	15
What is COHERENT?	15
What is an Operating System?	15
COHERENT's Design Philosophy	16
COHERENT Properties	17
How Do I Begin?	17
Terminals and COHERENT.	17
Special Terminal Keys	18
login: Logging In	18
Try COHERENT Commands	19
Commands to COHERENT	20
help, man: Help with Commands.	21
Logging Out.	21

ii The COHERENT System

Features of COHERENT	22
Information Storage and Retrieval	22
Redirecting Input and Output	23
Pipes	23
Processing Information in Files	24
Document Preparation	25
Programming Tools	25
Electronic Communication	25
Other COHERENT Features	26
Files and Directories	26
File Names	26
Your Directory	27
Path Names	27
mkdir, cd, pwd: More Directories	28
mv, cp: Moving Files Between Directories	31
chmod: File Protection Mode	33
rm, rmdir: Removing Files and Directories	34
du, df: How Much Space?	34
ln: Linking Files	35
Introduction to COHERENT Commands	35
Lower-Case Sensitivity in Commands	35
cat: List Contents of a File	36
scat: List Files on the Screen	36
who: Who Is On the System	36
ls, lc: Listing Your Directory	37
msg: Send a Message	39
mesg: Hear No Messages	39
write: Electronic Dialogue	39
mail: Send an Electronic Letter	40
pr, lpr: Print Files	42
echo: Echo the Command Line	43
ed: Text Line Editor	43
MicroEMACS: Text Screen Editor	43
grep: Find Patterns in Text Files	45
date: Print the Date	46
time: Measure Command Execution Time	46
passwd: Change Your Password	47
stty: Change Terminal Behavior	47
Introducing sh, the COHERENT Shell	48
Simple Commands	48
Special Characters	49
Running Commands in the Background	49
Scripts	50
Substitutions	52
File Name Substitution	52
Parameter Substitution	55
Shell Variable Substitution	56
Command Substitution	59
Special Shell Variables	60

dot . : Read Commands	60
Values Returned by Commands	61
test: Condition Testing	61
Executing Commands Conditionally	62
Control Flow	63
for: Execute a Loop	63
if: Execute Conditionally	64
while: Execute a Loop	66
until: Another Looping Construct	66
case: Serial Conditional Execution	66
Summary	67
Creating and Using Programs	68
Basic Steps in COHERENT Programming	68
Creating the Program Source	68
cc: Compiling the Program	69
m4: Macro Processing	70
make: Building Larger Programs	70
db: Debugging the Program	70
A-Sample-Problem-Solved-With-COHERENT	71
Build a Dictionary	71
Maintaining the Dictionary	74
Using the Dictionary	75
Conclusion	75
3. COHERENT Administrator's Guide	77
Shutting Down COHERENT	77
Booting COHERENT	78
Superuser	79
Day-to-Day Operation	80
Preparing System Dumps	80
Preparing the Diskettes	81
Backing-up Information Daily	82
Restoring Information	84
Conserving Disk Space	84
System Halts	85
System Error Messages	86
Establishing a User Base	86
Maintaining the ttys File	87
Configuring Terminals	88
ttys: File Format	88
Communicating With Users	89
wall: Broadcast Message	89
motd: Message of the Day	90
msgs: Cumulative Message Board	90
System Accounting	91
ac: Login Accounting	91
sa: Processing Accounting	92
cron: Scheduling Events	95
File System Backup	96
Strategies	97

Dump Levels	97
dumpdate: Dump Dates	98
restor: Restoring Files	98
dumppdir: List Dump Directory	99
Tools for the Administrator	99
ps: List Active Processes	99
kill: Terminate Processes	101
System Security	101
Passwords	101
File Protection	102
Changing File Protections	102
Encryption	103
A Tour Through the File System	103
General File System Layout	103
/bin	103
/dev	103
/drv	104
/etc	104
/lib	104
/usr	104
/u	105
How Booting Works	105
Startup Events	105
Files Used During Startup	106
Devices, Files, and Drivers	107
Character-Special Files	108
tty Processing	108
Creating and Mounting File Systems	108
fdformat: Format a Diskette	108
mkfs: Create a File System	109
mount: Mounting File Systems	111
File System Integrity	111
How a File System Is Built	112
fsck: Check File System Consistency	113
Conclusion	114
4. Introduction to the awk Language	115
Using awk	115
Program Structure	115
Records and Fields	116
Command Line Arguments	118
Printing with awk	119
Printing Individual Fields	119
Changing the Output Field and Record Separators	120
Printing Predefined Variables	120
Redirecting Output	121
Formatting Output	121
Piping Output	122
awk Pattern Scanning	122
Special Patterns: BEGIN and END	123

Patterns	123
Arithmetic Relational Expressions	125
Boolean Combinations of Expressions	125
Pattern Ranges	126
Specifying awk Actions	126
Functions	126
Assignment of Variables	128
Field Variables	129
String Concatenation	129
Arrays	129
Control Statements	130
if (condition) else	131
while (condition)	131
for	131
break	132
continue	132
next	132
exit	132
For More Information	133
5. bc Desk Calculator Language	135
Entry and Exit	135
Example of Simple Use	135
Simple Statements	137
Numbers with Fractions	140
The Scale of Numbers	140
Addition and Subtraction	140
Scale During Multiplication	140
Setting the Scale of Results	141
Scale for Divisions	141
Scale From Exponentiation	142
What Is the Current Scale?	142
The if Statement	142
Using the if Statement	142
Comparisons	143
Grouped Statements	144
Many Statements Per Line	144
The while Statement	145
Abbreviations in the while Statement	146
The for Statement	147
Three Parts of the for Statement	147
Similarities Between the for and while Statements	148
Functions in bc	148
Example of Function Use	148
Functions Using Other Functions	150
Functions That Call Themselves	150
The auto Statement	151
Programs in a File	152
Using a Program From a File	152
Using Libraries	152

The bc Library	153
Summary	154
6. The C Language	155
Compiling C Programs under COHERENT	155
Try the Compiler	155
Phases of Compilation	156
Renaming Executable Files	157
Floating-Point Numbers	157
Compiling Multiple Source Files	158
Wildcards	159
Linking Without Compiling	159
Compiling Without Linking	160
Assembly-Language Files	160
Changing the Size of the Stack	160
Where To Go From Here	161
C for Beginners	161
Programming Languages and C	161
Assembly and High-Level Languages	162
So, What Is C?	162
Structured Programming	163
Writing a C Program	164
A Sample C Programming Session	164
Designing a Program	165
The main() Function	166
Open a File and Show Text	167
Accepting File Names	169
Error Checking	171
Print a Portion of a File	174
Checking for the End of File	175
Polling the Keyboard	178
For More Information	180
Bibliography	180
7. Introduction to ed, Interactive Line Editor	183
Why You Need an Editor	183
Learning To Use the Editor	183
General Topics	184
ed, Files, and Text	184
Creating a File	185
Changing an Existing File	185
Working on Lines	186
Error Messages	186
Basic Editing Techniques	187
Creating a New File	187
Changing a File	188
Printing Lines	190
Abbreviating Line Numbers	190
How Many Lines?	191
Removing Lines	192
Abandoning Changes	193

Substituting Text Within a Line	193
Undoing Substitutions	196
Global Substitutions.	196
Special Characters.	197
Ranges of Substitution	197
Intermediate Editing.	198
Relative Line Numbering.	198
Changing Lines.	200
Moving Blocks of Text	200
Copying Blocks of Text	202
String Searches.	202
Remembered Search Arguments	204
Uses of Special Characters.	205
Global Commands	205
Joining Lines	206
Splitting Lines	207
Marking Lines	208
Searching in Reverse Direction	209
Expert Editing	210
File Processing Commands.	210
Patterns	212
Matching Many With One Character	213
Beginning and Ending of Lines	213
Replacing Matched Part	214
Replacing Parts of Matched String	214
Listing Funny Lines.	217
Keeping Track of Current Line	217
When Current Line Is Changed.	218
More About Global Commands	219
Issuing COHERENT Commands Within ed	220
For More Information	221
8. Introduction to lex, the Lexical Analyzer.	223
How To Use lex.	223
Translating Strings	223
Remove Blanks From Input	224
Trimming Blanks	224
lex Specification Form	225
Simple Form	225
Rules in lex	225
Statements in lex	226
Groups of Statements.	227
Using the Same Action	229
Patterns	229
Simple Patterns	229
Classes of Characters	230
Repetition	232
Choices and Grouping.	234
Matching Non-Graphic Characters	234
More Patterns.	235

Line Context	235
Context Matching	235
Macro Abbreviations	237
Context: Start Rules	237
Separate Contexts	239
More About Writing Actions	240
ECHO	240
Processing Overlapping Strings	241
yylex	242
Header Section	243
Additional Routines	243
Using lex With yacc	243
Summary	245
9. Introduction to the m4 Macro Processor	247
Definitions and Syntax	247
Defining Macros	248
Input Control	250
Output Control	251
String Manipulation	252
Numeric Manipulation	253
COHERENT System Interface	255
Errors	256
For More Information	257
10. The make Programming Discipline	259
How Does make Work?	259
Try make	260
Essential make	262
The makefile	262
Building a Simple makefile	263
Comments and Macros	263
Setting the Time	264
Building a Large Program	264
Command Line Options	265
Other Command Line Features	266
Advanced make	267
Default Rules	267
Double-Colon Target Lines	268
Alternative Uses	269
Special Targets	270
Errors	270
Exit Status	270
11. Introduction to MicroEMACS	271
What is MicroEMACS?	271
Keystrokes: <ctrl>, <esc>	271
Becoming Acquainted with MicroEMACS	272
Beginning a Document	273
Moving the Cursor	274
Moving the Cursor Forward	275
Moving the Cursor Backwards	275

From Line to Line	275
Repetitive Motion	276
Moving Up and Down by a Screenful of Text	276
Moving to Beginning or End of Text	276
Saving Text and Quitting	277
Killing and Deleting	277
Deleting Vs. Killing	277
Erasing Text to the Right	278
Erasing Text to the Left	278
Erasing Lines of Text	279
Yanking Back (Restoring) Text	279
Quitting	279
Block Killing and Moving Text	280
Moving One Line of Text	280
Multiple Copying of Killed Text	280
Kill and Move a Block of Text	280
Capitalization and Other Tools	281
Capitalization and Lowercasing	281
Transpose Characters	282
Screen Redraw	282
Return Indent	283
Word Wrap	283
Search and Reverse Search	285
Search Forward	285
Reverse Search	286
Cancel a Command	287
Search and Replace	287
Saving Text and Exiting	288
Write Text to a New File	288
Save Text and Exit	289
Advanced Editing	289
Arguments	290
Arguments: Default Values	290
Selecting Values	291
Deleting With Arguments: An Exception	291
Buffers and Files	291
Definitions	292
File and Buffer Commands	292
Write and Rename Commands	292
Replace Text in a Buffer	293
Visiting Another Buffer	293
Move Text From One Buffer to Another	294
Checking Buffer Status	294
Renaming a Buffer	295
Delete a Buffer	295
Windows	296
Creating Windows and Moving Between Them	297
Enlarging and Shrinking Windows	297
Displaying Text Within a Window	298

One Buffer	299
Multiple Buffers	299
Moving and Copying Text Among Buffers	300
Checking Buffer Status	300
Saving Text From Windows	300
Replacing a Macro	301
Sending Commands to COHERENT	301
Compiling and Debugging Through MicroEMACS	302
The MicroEMACS Help Facility	303
Where To Go From Here	304
12. nroff, The Text-Formatting Language	305
What is nroff?	305
nroff input and output	306
The ms Macro Package	307
Using this Tutorial.	308
The ms Macro Package	308
Text and Commands	309
Command Names	310
Paragraphs	311
Section Headings.	316
Title Page	318
Headers and Footers	319
Fonts	321
Special Characters	322
Footnotes	322
Displays and Keeps	323
Other Commands	325
Introducing nroff's Primitives	325
Page Format	325
Breaks	326
Fill and Adjust Modes.	327
Defining Paragraphs.	329
Centering	331
Tabs	331
Page Breaks.	332
Macros and Traps	332
What Is a Macro?	332
Introducing Traps	334
Headers and Footers	335
Macro Arguments	337
Double vs. Single Backslashes.	338
Designing and Installing Macros.	339
Strings	342
Strings Within Strings	343
Number Registers	344
Incrementing and Decrementing	347
Units of Measurement	349
Conditional Input.	352
Environments and Diversions	358

Buffers	362
Headers and Footers	362
More About Fonts	363
Diversions	364
A Footnote Macro	367
Command Line Options	368
For Further Information	370
13. Introduction to the sed Stream Editor	371
Getting to Know sed	371
Getting Started	372
Simple Commands	373
Substituting	373
Selecting Lines	375
p: Print Lines	376
Line Location	379
Add Lines of Text	380
Delete Lines	381
Change Lines	382
Include Lines From a File	383
Quit Processing	384
Next Line	385
Advanced sed Commands	386
Work Area	386
Add to Work Area	387
Print First Line	389
Save Work Area	390
Transform Characters	393
Command Control	394
{ }: Command Grouping	394
!: All But	395
= : Print Line Number	395
Skipping Commands	395
t: Test Command	397
For More Information	397
14. Introduction to sh, the Bourne Shell	399
Getting Started With the Shell	399
Simple Commands	399
Constructing Shell Commands	400
Commands in a File	401
Executable Files	401
Dot: Read Commands	402
Background Commands	402
Substitution in Commands	403
File-Name Substitution	403
Special Characters	406
Redirection	406
Output Redirection	406
Input Redirection	407
Redirecting the Standard Error	408

Pipes	409
Parameter Substitution	409
Shell Variable Substitution	411
Command Substitution	415
Special Shell Variables	415
Command Decisions	416
Values Returned by Commands	416
The test Command: Condition Testing	417
Conditional Command Processing	418
Control Flow	419
Advanced Parameter Substitution	423
15. UUCP, Remote Communications Utility	427
Contents of This Manual	428
An Overview of UUCP	428
The Programs	428
Directories and Files	429
Attaching a Modem to Your Computer	431
Installing UUCP	432
Setting Up Your Local Site	433
Describing a Remote Site	435
Day and Time of Connection	436
The Chat Script	437
Granting Permissions	438
Setting a Polling Time	440
Sending files via UUCP	441
UUCP Administration	442
Where to Go From Here	443
16. Introduction to yacc	445
Examples	446
Phrases and Parentheses	446
Simple Expression Processing	448
Background	450
LR Parsing	450
Input Specification	450
Parser Operation	451
Form of yacc Programs	451
Rules	452
Definitions	452
User Code	453
Rules	453
General Form of Rules	453
Suggested Style	453
Actions	455
Basic Action Statements	455
Action Values	455
Structured Values	458
Handling Ambiguities	459
How yacc Reacts	460
Additional Control	461

Precedence	462
Error Handling	463
Summary	464
Helpful Hints	465
Example	466
17. The Lexicon	473
example	474
#	475
##	476
#define	477
#elif	478
#else	479
#endif	479
#if	479
#ifndef	480
#ifdef	480
#include	480
#line	481
#undef	482
DATE	482
FILE	482
LINE	483
STDC	483
TIME	483
_exit()	484
abort()	485
abs()	485
ac	486
access()	487
access.h	488
acct()	488
acct.h	489
accton	490
acos()	490
action.h	491
address	492
alarm()	492
alignment	493
alloc.h	493
ar	493
ar.h	495
arena	495
argc	496
argv	496
array	496
as	498
ASCII	518
ascii.h	520
asctime()	521

asin()	Calculate inverse sine	522
ASKCC	Force prompting for CC names	522
assert()	Check assertion at run time	522
assert.h	Define assert()	523
at	Drivers for hard-disk partitions	523
at	Execute commands at given time	524
atan()	Calculate inverse tangent	526
atan2()	Calculate inverse tangent	526
ATclock	Read or set the AT realtime clock	526
atof()	Convert ASCII strings to floating point	527
atoi()	Convert ASCII strings to integers	527
atol()	Convert ASCII strings to long integers	528
atrun	Execute commands at a preset time	529
auto	Note an automatic variable	529
awk	Pattern-scanning language	529
bad	Maintain list of bad blocks	531
badscan	Build bad block list	531
banner	Print large letters	532
basename	Strip file name	532
bc	Interactive calculator with arbitrary precision	532
bit		535
bit-fields		535
bit map		536
block		536
boot	Boot block for hard-disk partition/nine-sector diskette	536
boot.fha	Boot block for floppy disk	538
boottime	Time the system was last booted	539
brc	Perform maintenance chores, single-user mode	539
break	Exit from loop or switch statement	539
break	Exit from shell construct	539
brk()	Change size of data area	540
buf.h	Buffer header	540
buffer		540
build	Install COHERENT onto a hard disk	541
byte		541
byte ordering	Machine-dependent ordering of bytes	542
c	Print multi-column output	543
C keywords		543
C language		544
C preprocessor		545
cabs()	Complex absolute value function	547
cal	Print a calendar	548
calendar	Reminder service	548
calling conventions		549
calloc()	Allocate dynamic memory	553
candaddr()	Convert a daddr_t to canonical format	554
candev()	Convert a dev_t to canonical format	554
canino()	Convert an ino_t to canonical format	554
canint()	Convert an int to canonical format	555

canlong()	Convert a long to canonical format	555
canon.h	Portable layout of binary data	555
canshort()	Convert a short to canonical format	557
cansize()	Convert an fsize_t to canonical format	557
cantime()	Convert a time_t to canonical format	558
canvaddr()	Convert a vaddr_t to canonical format	558
case	Execute commands conditionally according to pattern	558
case	Introduce entry in switch statement	559
cast	. . . . .	559
cat	Concatenate/print files	560
cc	Compiler controller	560
cc0	. . . . .	564
cc1	. . . . .	565
cc2	. . . . .	565
cc3	. . . . .	565
cd	Change directory	565
ceil()	Set numeric ceiling	566
char	. . . . .	567
chars.h	Character definitions	567
chdir()	Change working directory	567
check	Check file system.	567
chgrp	Change the group owner of files.	568
chmod()	Change file-protection modes	568
chmod	Change the modes of a file	569
chown()	Change ownership of a file	571
chown	Change the owner of files.	571
chroot()	Change process's root directory	571
clearerr()	Present stream status	572
close()	Close a file.	572
cli	Clear i-node	572
cmp	Compare bytes of two files	573
COHERENT system calls.	. . . . .	573
col	Remove reverse and half-line motions	575
com	Device drivers for asynchronous serial lines	576
com1	Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM1	577
com2	Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM2	577
com3	Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM3	578
com4	Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM4	578
comm	Print common lines	579
commands	. . . . .	579
compress	Compress a file	583
con.h	Configure device drivers	583
console	Console device driver	583
const	Qualify an identifier as not modifiable	588
const.h	Declare machine-dependent constants	588
continue	Force next iteration of a loop	588
continue	Terminate current iteration of shell construct	588
conv	Numeric base converter.	589
core	Core dump file format.	589

cos()	Calculate cosine.	590
cosh()	Calculate hyperbolic cosine.	590
cp	Copy a file.	591
cpdir.	Copy directory hierarchy.	592
cpp.	C preprocessor.	593
creat()	Create/truncate a file.	594
cron.	Execute commands periodically.	594
crypt()	Encryption using rotor algorithm.	595
crypt.	Encrypt/decrypt text.	595
ct.	Controlling terminal driver.	596
ctime()	Convert system time to an ASCII string.	597
ctype		597
ctype.h	Header file for data tests.	599
curses.	Library of screen-handling functions.	600
curses.h.	Define functions and macros in curses library.	609
daemon.		610
data formats.		610
data types		610
date	Print/set the date and time.	611
db	Assembler-level symbolic debugger.	612
dc	Desk calculator.	616
dcheck	Directory consistency check.	618
dd	File conversion.	619
default	Default label in switch statement.	620
definitions		620
deftty.h	Define default tty settings.	621
deroff	Remove text formatting control information.	622
device drivers		622
df	Measure free space on disk.	623
diff.	Summarize differences between two files.	624
diff3	Summarize differences among three files.	625
dir.h.	Directory format.	626
directory		626
dirent.h	Define dirent.	626
disable	Disable terminal port.	627
do	Introduce a loop.	627
dos.	Transfer files to/from an MS-DOS file system.	628
double.	Data type.	629
drvld	Load a loadable driver into memory.	629
du	Summarize disk usage.	630
dump	File system dump.	630
dumpdate	Print dump dates.	631
dumpdir	Print the directory of a dump.	632
dumptape.h	Define data structures used on dump tapes.	632
dup()	Duplicate a file descriptor.	633
dup2()	Duplicate a file descriptor.	633
ebcdic.h.	Constants for EBCDIC characters.	634
echo	Repeat/expand an argument.	634
ed	Interactive line editor.	634

egrep	Extended pattern search	638
else	Introduce a conditional statement.	640
enable	Enable terminal port	640
end		641
endgroup()	Close group file.	642
endpwent()	Close password file.	642
enum	Declare a type and identifiers	642
environ	Process environment	643
environmental variables		643
envp	Argument passed to main()	644
EOF	Indicate end of a file.	645
errno	External integer for return of error status	646
errno.h	Error numbers used by errno()	646
etext		649
eval	Evaluate arguments	649
exec	Execute command directly	650
execl()	Execute a load module	650
execle()	Execute a load module	651
execlp()	Execute a load module	651
executable file		651
execution		652
execv()	Execute a load module	653
execve()	Execute a load module	653
execvp()	Execute a load module	655
exit	Exit from a noninteractive shell.	655
exit()	Terminate a program gracefully.	655
exp()	Compute exponent.	656
export	Add shell variables to environment.	657
expr	Compute a command line expression.	657
extern	Declare storage class.	659
fabs()	Compute absolute value.	660
factor	Factor a number	660
false	Unconditional failure	660
fbk.h	Define the disk-free block.	660
fclose()	Close a stream	661
fcntl.h	Manifest constants for file-handling functions	661
fd	Floppy disk driver	661
fd.h	Declare file-descriptor structure.	662
fdformat	Format a floppy disk.	663
fdioctl.h	Control floppy-disk I/O	664
fdisk	Change hard disk partitioning.	664
fdisk.h	Fixed-disk constants and structures	665
fdopen()	Open a stream for standard I/O.	665
feof()	Discover stream status	666
ferror()	Discover stream status	666
fflush()	Flush output stream's buffer.	668
fgetc()	Read character from stream	669
fgets()	Read line from stream.	670
fgetw()	Read integer from stream	671

field		672
file	Guess a file's type	672
file		672
FILE	Descriptor for a file stream.	673
file descriptor		673
file formats.		674
fileno()	Get file descriptor	674
filsys.h	Structures and constants for super block	675
filter		675
find	Search for files satisfying a pattern.	675
fixstack	Change stack allocation	677
float	Data type	677
floor()	Set a numeric floor	680
floppy disks		681
fnkey	Set/print function keys	682
fopen()	Open a stream for standard I/O.	682
for	Control a loop.	684
for	Execute commands for tokens in list.	684
fork()	Create a new process	685
fortune	Print random selected, hopefully humorous, text	686
fperr.h	Constants used with floating-point exception codes	686
fprintf()	Print formatted output into file stream	686
fputc()	Write character into file stream	687
fputs()	Write string into file stream	688
fputw()	Write an integer into a stream	688
fread()	Read data from file stream.	688
free()	Return dynamic memory to free memory pool.	689
freopen()	Open file stream for standard I/O	689
frexp()	Separate fraction and exponent	690
from	Generate list of numbers	691
fscanf()	Format input from a file stream.	691
fsck	Check and repair file systems interactively	692
fseek()	Seek on file stream.	694
fstat()	Find file attributes.	695
ftell()	Return current position of file pointer	697
ftime()	Get the current time from the operating system.	697
function.		697
fwrite()	Write into file stream	698
gcd()	Set variable to greatest common divisor	699
general functions		699
getc()	Read character from file stream.	700
getchar()	Read character from standard input	701
getgid()	Get effective group identifier.	702
getenv()	Read environmental variable.	702
geteuid()	Get effective user identifier.	703
getgid()	Get real group identifier	703
getgrent()	Get group file information	704
getgrgid()	Get group file information, by group name	704
getgrnam()	Get group file information, by group id	704

getlogin()	Get login name	705
getopt()	Get option letter from argv	705
getpass()	Get password with prompting	707
getpid()	Get process identifier	708
getpw()	Search password file	708
getpwent()	Get password file information	708
getpwnam()	Get password file information, by name	709
getpwuid()	Get password file information, by id	709
gets()	Read string from standard input	710
getty	Terminal initialization	711
getuid()	Get real user identifier	712
getw()	Read word from file stream	712
getwd()	Get current working directory name	713
GMT		713
gmtime()	Convert system time to calendar structure	714
goto	Unconditionally jump within a function	714
grep	Pattern search	715
group	Group file format	716
grp.h	Declare group structure	717
gtty()	Device-dependent control	717
hdioctl.h	Control hard-disk I/O	719
head	Print the beginning of a file	719
header files		719
help	Print concise description of command	721
HOME	User's home directory	722
hp	Prepare files for HP LaserJet-compatible printer	722
hpd	Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer spooler daemon	722
hpr	Send file to Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer spooler	723
hpskip	Abort/restart current listing on Hewlett-Packard LaserJet	724
hypot()	Compute hypotenuse of right triangle	724
inode	COHERENT system file identifier	725
icheck	i-node consistency check	725
if	Introduce a conditional statement	726
if	Conditional command execution	726
index()	Find a character in a string	727
init	System initialization	727
initialization		728
ino.h	Constants and structures for disk i-nodes	731
inode.h	Constants and structures for memory-resident i-nodes	731
install	Install COHERENT update	731
int	Data type	732
interrupt		732
io.h	Constants and structures used by I/O	732
ioctl()	Device-dependent control	732
ipc.h	Definitions for process communications	733
isalnum()	Check if a character is a number or letter	733
isalpha()	Check if a character is a letter	734
isascii()	Check if a character is an ASCII character	734
isatty()	Check if a device is a terminal	734

isctrl()	Check if a character is a control character	734
isdigit()	Check if a character is a numeral	735
islower()	Check if a character is a lower-case letter	735
ispos()	Return if variable is positive or negative	735
isprint()	Check if a character is printable	736
ispunct()	Check if a character is a punctuation mark	736
isspace()	Check if a character prints white space	736
isupper()	Check if a character is an upper-case letter	737
itom()	Create a multiple-precision integer	737
j0()	Compute Bessel function	738
j1()	Compute Bessel function	739
jn()	Compute Bessel function	739
join	Join two data bases	739
kermit	Remote system communication and file transfer	741
kill()	Kill a system process	744
kill	Signal a process	744
l.out.h	Object file format	746
l3tol()	Convert file system block number to long integer	747
LASTERROR	Program that last generated an error	747
lc	Categorize files in a directory	747
ld	Link relocatable object files	748
ldexp()	Combine fraction and exponent	750
lex	Lexical analyzer generator	750
Lexicon		753
libraries		754
link()	Create a link	755
linker-defined symbols		756
ln	Create a link to a file	756
localtime()	Convert system time to calendar structure	757
lock()	Prevent process from swapping	758
log()	Compute natural logarithm	759
log10()	Compute common logarithm	759
login	Log in or change user name	760
logmsg	Hold COHERENT Login Message	760
long	Data type	761
longjmp()	Return from a non-local goto	761
look	Find matching lines in a sorted file	761
lp	Line printer driver	762
lpd	Line printer spooler daemon	763
lpioctl.h	Definitions for line-printer I/O control	763
lpr	Send to line printer spooler	763
lpskip	Terminate/restart current line printer listing	764
ls	List directory's contents	764
lseek()	Set read/write position	766
l3tol30	Convert long integer to file system block number	766
lvalue		767
m4	Macro processor	768
machine.h	Machine-dependent definitions	770
macro		770

madd()	Add multiple-precision integers	771
mail	Computer mail	771
main()	Introduce program's main function.	773
make	Program building discipline	774
malloc()	Allocate dynamic memory	777
malloc.h	Definitions for memory-allocation functions	778
man	Manual macro package	779
man	Print online manual sections.	779
manifest constant.	. . . . .	780
math.h	Declare mathematics functions	780
mathematics library	. . . . .	780
mboot	Master boot block for hard disk	781
mcmp()	Compare multiple-precision integers	782
mcopy()	Copy a multiple-precision integer	782
mdata.h	Define machine-specific magic numbers	782
mdiv()	Divide multiple-precision integers.	782
me	MicroEMACS screen editor	783
mem.	Physical memory file.	790
memchr()	Search a region of memory for a character	791
memcmp()	Compare two regions	792
memcpy()	Copy one region of memory into another	793
memmove()	Copy region of memory into area it overlaps	793
memok()	Test if the arena is corrupted	794
memory allocation	. . . . .	794
memset()	Fill an area with a character.	796
mesg	Permit/deny messages from other users.	796
min()	Read multiple-precision integer from stdin	796
minit()	Condition global or auto multiple-precision integer	797
mintfr()	Free a multiple-precision integer	797
mitom()	Reinitialize a multiple-precision integer	797
mkdir	Create a directory	797
mkfs.	Make a new file system	798
mknod()	Create a special file	800
mknod	Make a special file or named pipe.	801
mktemp()	Generate a temporary file name.	801
mneg()	Negate multiple-precision integer	801
mnttab.h	Structure for mount table	802
modemcap	Modem description language.	802
modf()	Separate integral part and fraction	804
modulus	. . . . .	805
mon.h	Read profile output files	806
motd	File that holds message of the day	806
mount()	Mount a file system	806
mount.	Mount a file system	806
mount.h	Define the mount table	807
mout()	Write multiple-precision integer to stdout.	807
mprec.h	Multiple-precision arithmetic	808
ms	Manuscript macro package	808
msg	Message device driver	810

msg	Send a one-line message to another user	811
msg.h	Definitions for message facility	811
msgctl()	Message control operations.	811
msgget()	Get message queue	812
msgrcv()	Receive a message	813
msgsnd()	Send a message.	815
msig.h.	Machine-dependent signals.	816
msqrt()	Compute square root of multiple-precision integer	818
msub()	Subtract multiple-precision integers	818
mtab.h	Currently mounted file systems.	818
mtioctl.h	Magnetic-tape I/O control	819
mtoi()	Convert multiple-precision integer to integer.	819
mtos()	Convert multiple-precision integer to string	819
mtype()	Return symbolic machine type	820
mtype.h.	List processor code numbers.	820
mult()	Multiply multiple-precision integers	820
multiple-precision mathematics		821
mv	Rename files or directories	824
mvfree()	Free multiple-precision integer	825
n.out.h	Define n.out file structure	826
ncheck	Print file names corresponding to i-numbers.	826
newgrp	Change to a new group	826
newusr	Add new user to COHERENT system	827
nlist()	Symbol table lookup.	827
nm	Print a program's symbol table	828
notmem()	Check if memory is allocated.	829
nroff	Text processor	829
NULL.		835
null	The "bit bucket"	835
nybble.		835
object format		836
od	Print an octal dump of a file	836
open()	Open a file.	836
operator		838
param.h.	Define machine-specific parameters	840
passwd	Password file format.	840
passwd	Set/change login password	841
PATH.	Directories that hold executable files.	841
path()	Path name for a file	841
path.h.	Define/declare constants and functions used with path	843
pattern		843
pause()	Wait for signal	843
pclose()	Close a pipe	843
perror()	System call error messages.	844
phone	Print numbers and addresses from phone directory.	844
pipe()	Open a pipe	844
pipe		846
pnmatch()	Match string pattern.	846

pointer		847
poll.h	Define structures/constants used with polling devices	850
popen()	Open a pipe	850
port		850
portability		851
pow()	Raise multiple-precision integer to power	851
pow()	Compute a power of a number	852
pr	Paginate and print files	853
precedence		854
prep	Produce a word list	854
printf()	Print formatted text	857
proc.h	Define structures/constants used with processes	857
process		857
profile	Set user's environment	857
ps	Print process status	859
PS1	User's default prompt	859
PS2	Prompt when user continues command onto additional lines	859
ptrace()	Trace process execution	861
pun		861
putc()	Write character into stream	862
putchar()	Write a character onto the standard output	862
puts()	Write string onto standard output	863
putw()	Write word into stream	863
pwd	Print the name of the current directory	863
pwd.h	Declare password structure	865
qsort()	Sort arrays in memory	865
quot	Summarize file-system usage	867
ram	RAM device driver	868
rand()	Generate pseudo-random numbers	869
random access		869
ranlib		869
ranlib	Create index for library	870
rc	Perform standard maintenance chores	870
read()	Read from a file	871
read	Assign values to shell variables	871
readonly	Storage class	872
read-only memory		872
realloc()	Reallocate dynamic memory	872
reboot	Reboot the COHERENT system	872
register	Storage class	873
register variable		873
restor	Restore file system	875
return	Return a value and control to calling function	875
rev	Reverse text in lines of files	875
rewind()	Reset file pointer	876
rindex()	Find a character in a string	876
rm	Remove files	877
rmdir	Remove directories	877
root		877

rpow()	Raise multiple-precision integer to power	878
rvalue		878
sa	Process accounting	879
sbrk()	Increase a program's data space	880
scanf()	Accept and format input	880
scat	Print text files one screenful at a time	882
sched.h	Define constants used with scheduling	884
sdiv()	Divide multiple-precision integers	884
security		884
sed	Stream editor	886
seg.h	Definitions used with segmentation	889
sem	Semaphore device driver	889
sem.h	Definitions used by semaphore facility	890
semctl()	Control semaphore operations	890
semget()	Get a set of semaphores	892
semop()	Perform semaphore operations	893
set	Set shell option flags and positional parameters	895
setbuf()	Set alternative stream buffers	896
setgid()	Set group id and user id	896
setgrent()	Rewind group file	897
setjmp()	Perform non-local goto	897
setjmp.h	Define setjmp() and longjmp()	898
setpwent()	Rewind password file	898
settz()	Set local time zone	899
setuid()	Set user id	899
sgtty.h	Definitions used to control terminal I/O	899
sh	Command language interpreter	900
SHELL	Name the default shell	908
shellsort()	Sort arrays in memory	908
shift	Shift positional parameters	909
shm	Shared memory device driver	909
shm.h	Definitions used with shared memory	911
shmctl()	Control shared-memory operations	911
shmget()	Get shared-memory segment	912
short	Data type	913
shutdown	Shut down the COHERENT system	914
signal()	Specify disposition of a signal	914
signal.h	Declare signals	915
signame	Array of names of signals	916
sin()	Calculate sine	916
sinh()	Calculate hyperbolic sine	916
size	Print size of an object file	917
sizeof	Return size of a data element	917
sleep()	Suspend execution for interval	918
sleep	Stop executing for a specified time	918
sload()	Load device driver	918
smult()	Multiply multiple-precision integers	919
sort	Sort lines of text	919
spell	Find spelling errors	921

split	Split a large file into smaller files	921
spow()	Raise multiple-precision integer to power	922
sprintf()	Format output	922
sqrt()	Compute square root	923
srand()	Seed random number generator	923
sscanf()	Format a string	923
stack		924
standard error		924
standard input		925
standard output		925
stat()	Find file attributes	925
stat.h	Definitions and declarations used to obtain file status	927
static	Declare storage class	927
stddef.h	Header for standard definitions	928
stderr		928
stdin		929
STDIO		930
stdio.h	Declarations and definitions for I/O	930
stdout		930
sticky bit		930
stime()	Set the time	931
storage class		931
strcat()	Concatenate strings	931
strchr()	Find a character in a string	932
strcmp()	Compare two strings	932
strcoll()	Compare two strings, using locale-specific information	932
strcpy()	Copy one string into another	933
strcspn()	Return length a string excludes characters in another	933
stream		934
stream.h	Definitions for message facility	934
strerror()	Translate an error number into a string	934
string.h		935
string functions		937
strip	Strip tables from executable file	938
strlen()	Measure the length of a string	938
strncat()	Append one string onto another	938
strncmp()	Compare two strings	938
strncpy()	Copy one string into another	939
strpbrk()	Find first occurrence of a character from another string	940
strrchr()	Search for rightmost occurrence of a character in a string	941
strspn()	Return length a string includes characters in another	941
strstr()	Find one string within another	941
strtok()	Break a string into tokens	942
struct	Data type	943
structure		943
structure assignment		943
strxfrm()	Transform a string	944
stty	Set/print terminal modes	944
su	Substitute user id, become superuser	946

unload()	Unload device driver	947
sum	Print checksum of a file	947
superuser		947
swab()	Swap a pair of bytes	948
switch	Test a variable against a table	948
sync	Flush system buffers	949
sync	Flush system buffers	950
system()	Pass a command to the shell for execution	950
system maintenance		950
tail	Print the end of a file	952
tan()	Calculate tangent	952
tanh()	Calculate hyperbolic cosine	952
tape	Magnetic tape devices	953
tar	Tape archive manager	954
technical information		956
tee	Branch pipe output	956
tempnam()	Generate a unique name for a temporary file	956
TERM	Name the default terminal type	957
termcap	Terminal description language	957
terminal-independent operations		965
termio	General terminal interface	966
termio.h	Definitions used with terminal input and output	973
test	Evaluate conditional expression	973
tgetent()	Read termcap entry	975
tgetflag()	Get termcap Boolean entryR	975
tgetnum()	Get termcap numeric feature	976
tgetstr()	Get termcap string entry	976
tgoto()	Read/interpret termcap cursor-addressing string	976
time()	Get current time	977
time		977
time	Time the execution of a command	978
time.h	Give time-description structure	978
timeb.h	Declare timeb structure	978
timef.h	Definitions for user-level timed functions	978
timeout.h	Define the timer queue	979
times()	Obtain process execution times	979
times	Print total user and system times	979
times.h	Definitions used with times() system call	980
TIMEZONE	Time zone information	980
tmpnam()	Generate a unique name for a temporary file	981
tolower()	Convert characters to lower case	982
touch	Update modification time of a file	983
toupper()	Convert characters to upper case	983
tputs()	Read/decode leading padding information	983
tr	Translate characters	983
trap	Execute command on receipt of signal	984
troff	Format proportionally spaced text	985
true	Unconditional success	987
tsort	Topological sort	987

tty	Print the user's terminal name	987
tty.h	Define flags used with tty processing.	988
ttyname()	Identify a terminal	988
ttys	Active terminal ports	988
ttyslot()	Return a terminal's line number	989
type checking		990
typedef	Define a new data type	990
type promotion		990
types.h	Declare system-specific data types	991
typo	Detect possible typographical and spelling errors	991
umask()	Set file creation mask	993
umount()	Unmount a file system	993
umount	Unmount file system	993
uncompress	Uncompress a compressed file.	994
ungetc()	Return character to input stream.	994
union	Multiply declare a variable	994
uniq	Remove/count repeated lines in a sorted file	995
units	Convert measurements	996
unlink()	Remove a file	997
unmkfs	Create a prototype file system	997
unsigned	Data type	998
until	Execute commands repeatedly.	998
update	Update file systems periodically	999
uproc.h	Definitions used with user processes.	999
USER	Name user's ID.	999
utime()	Change file access and modification times.	999
utmp.h	Login accounting information	1000
utsname.h	Define utsname structure	1000
uucico	Transmit data to or from a remote site	1001
UUCP	Unattended communication with remote systems	1001
uucp	Ready files for transmission to other systems	1002
uudecode	Decode a binary file sent from a remote system	1003
uuencode	Encode a binary file for transmission to a remote system	1003
uuninstall	Install UUCP	1005
uulog	Examine UUCP operations.	1005
uumvlog	Examine UUCP operations.	1005
uuname	List uucp names of known systems.	1006
uutouch	Touch a file to trigger uucico poll.	1006
uuxqt	Execute commands requested by a remote system	1006
v7sgtty.h	UNIX Version 7-style terminal I/O	1008
void	Data type	1008
volatile	Qualify an identifier as frequently changing	1008
wait()	Await completion of a child process.	1009
wait	Await completion of background process	1009
wall	Send a message to all logged in users	1010
wc	Count words, lines, and characters in files	1010
while	Introduce a loop	1011
while	Execute commands repeatedly.	1011
who	Print who is logged in.	1011

wildcards		1012
write()	Write to a file	1012
write	Conduct interactive conversation with another user	1013
xgcd()	Extended greatest-common-divisor function	1014
yacc	Parser generator	1015
yes	Print infinitely many responses	1016
zcat	Concatenate a compressed file	1017
zerop()	Indicate if multi-precision integer is zero	1017
18. Appendices		1019
Appendix 1: The Logic Tree		1019
Appendix 2: Error Messages		1034
Compiler Error Messages		1034
make Error Messages		1050
nroff Error Messages		1052

Section 1: Introduction

COHERENT is a professional operating system designed for use on the PC-AT and compatibles. It has many of the same features and functionality of the UNIX operating system, but is the creation of Mark Williams Company. COHERENT gives your computer multi-tasking, multi-user capabilities without the tremendous overhead, both in hardware and money, required by current editions of UNIX. COHERENT is what UNIX once was: an efficient system of selected tools and well-designed utilities, that brings out the best in modest computer systems.

The COHERENT system consists of the following:

- A fully multi-tasking, multi-user kernel and Bourne shell.
- The Mark Williams C compiler, a linker, an assembler, a preprocessor, and other tools.
- A suite of commands, including editors, languages, tools, and utilities.
- Drivers for peripheral devices, including terminals, ASCII printers, and the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer.
- Libraries, including the standard C library and the mathematics library.
- Sample programs, including full source code for the MicroEMACS editor.

Hardware Requirements

COHERENT runs on an IBM PC-AT or any totally compatible computer that has at least 640 kilobytes of RAM and at least one high-density floppy disk drive and a hard disk.

Before you begin to install COHERENT, be sure to check the release notes that accompany this manual for a list of tested hardware and known incompatibilities.

How To Use This Manual

This manual is in two parts. The first part consists of a set of tutorials that introduce COHERENT and its utilities.

If you are new to COHERENT, you should first read the following tutorial, *Using the COHERENT System*. This gives you an overview of COHERENT, and will get you up and running.

If you will be administering your COHERENT system, you should read the next tutorial, the *COHERENT Administrator's Guide*. This contains essential information for correctly running COHERENT on your computer.

The following tutorials introduce many of the COHERENT tools and utilities, including the editors MicroEMACS, *ed*, and *sed*; the C language; the language tools *awk*, *lex*, and *yacc*; *bc*, the multi-precision calculator; *make*, the COHERENT programming discipline; and many others.

The Lexicon

Part 2 of this manual is the Lexicon. The Lexicon consists of more than 700 brief articles that summarize all library routines, system calls, and commands available under the COHERENT system. It also includes numerous articles that define terminology and give technical information. The articles are arranged in alphabetical order, to make it easy for you to find information on any topic. If you are unfamiliar with a technical term used in this manual, look it up in the Lexicon. Chances are, you will find a full explanation. If you are not sure how to use the Lexicon, look up the entry for *Lexicon* within the Lexicon. This will help you get started. If you have struggled with multi-volume manuals for other operating systems, we think you will quickly come to appreciate the Lexicon.

User Registration and Reaction Report

Before you continue, fill out the User Registration Card that came with your copy of COHERENT. When you return this card, you become eligible for direct telephone support from the Mark Williams Company technical staff, and you will automatically receive information about all new releases and updates.

If you have comments or reactions to the COHERENT software or documentation, please fill out and mail the User Reaction Report included at the end of the manual. We especially wish to know if you found errors in this manual. Mark Williams Company needs your comments to continue to improve COHERENT.

Technical Support

Mark Williams Company provides free technical support to all registered users of COHERENT. If you are experiencing difficulties with COHERENT, outside the area of programming errors, feel free to contact the Mark Williams Technical Support Staff. You can telephone during business hours (Central time), send electronic mail, or write. This support is available *only* if you have returned your User Registration Card for

COHERENT.

If you telephone Mark Williams Company, please have at hand your manual for COHERENT, as well as your serial number and version number. Please collect as much information as you can concerning your difficulty before you call. If you write, be sure to include the product serial number (from the sticker on the floppy disks) and your return address.

Installing COHERENT

This section describes how to install COHERENT onto your computer. Installation of COHERENT is straightforward, and Mark Williams Company has prepared a suite of programs that automate much of the work for you. However, installation requires that you make a few decisions regarding how you want your system to be configured. We strongly urge you to read this section through at least once before you begin, so you can decide correctly whenever an installation program asks you to make a decision.

Before you begin, please note the following caveats:

First, the following conditions must be met if COHERENT is to work on your system:

1. COHERENT is designed for use on the IBM AT, or on computers that are totally compatible with the IBM AT. It does not work on *any* MicroChannel computer, or on any computer that is not 100% compatible with the IBM AT.
2. Your system must have at least one high-density, 3.5-inch or 5.25-inch floppy-disk drive. The distribution disks for COHERENT cannot be read by a low-density floppy-disk drive.
3. Your system must have a hard disk, and the hard disk must have at least ten megabytes of space free on it. More is recommended, but seven megabytes is the minimum space required by COHERENT. If you do not have enough space on your hard disk, you will have to clear space by removing or compressing existing files.
4. COHERENT works with RLL, MFM and most ESDI hard-disk controllers. It also works with some SCSI host adapters. Please check the release notes for a list of supported hard disk controllers and host adapters.

If you are unsure whether your system meets any or all of these conditions, check the documentation that came with your system, or contact the dealer from whom you purchased your system. The release notes that accompany this manual list hardware that is known to be compatible, as well as known incompatibilities. Be sure to check these notes before you begin installation. If you believe that your computer cannot run COHERENT, please contact Mark Williams Company.

Second, Mark Williams Company has made every effort to ensure that the installation process will not destroy data on your hard disk. Note, however, that the installation process requires that you assign at least one partition of your hard disk to COHERENT. If you have any files on that partition that you wish to save, you must back them up or they will be lost. It is also recommended that you keep a copy, on paper, of your computer's partition table. If you do not know how to obtain a copy of the partition table, one will be displayed for you during installation. We recommended that you jot it down at that time; if something should go wrong, this information will help to recover the data

on your disk.

Note, too, that installation may require that the entire disk be repartitioned; in this case, you must back up all of your hard disk, or your data will be lost. The installation program will walk you through this process, so you do not have to decide ahead of time what partitions, if any, need to be backed up.

With these caveats in mind, please continue — and we hope you enjoy working with COHERENT!

What Does Installation Do?

The point of the installation procedure is to create one or more partitions on your hard disk to contain COHERENT and its files.

When you (or your dealer) installed MS-DOS on your computer, you (or he) divided your computer's hard disk into *logical partitions*. A hard disk on the IBM AT can have anywhere from one to four logical partitions. Not every partition has to be used — your hard disk may be divided into four partitions, but have MS-DOS file systems in only three of them, with the fourth partition being idle. Note, too, that the four logical partitions do not necessarily have to encompass the entire hard disk — a disk may have space that is outside any logical partition and so just sits there unused.

The file systems for COHERENT and MS-DOS are very different, so it is not possible to have both systems use the same logical partition — each must have one or more logical partitions completely to itself.

As you can see, installation must cope with a number of variables: the size of your disk, the number of partitions into which it is divided, and the number of partitions that are in use. Installation thus will follow any of a number of possible scenarios, depending on how your disk is organized and how much space you wish to give over to COHERENT. The installation process will walk you through these decisions, to make them as painless as possible.

It may well be that you do not know the configuration of your hard disk. COHERENT can figure this out, and the information will be displayed for you at the appropriate point in installation.

You can abort the installation procedure at any time by typing `<ctrl-C>`. Note, however, that aborting installation does *not* mean that your hard disk will be returned to the state it was in before installation was begun. When a disk is repartitioned, the files that were on any modified partitions are gone for good.

The following sections describe the installation process in some detail. Be sure to read them through before you begin.

Getting Started

To begin installation, insert the **Boot** disk from your installation kit into drive A on your system. Reboot the system by pressing the reset button. In a moment, you will be prompted with a question mark '?'. Type:

begin

followed by the <return> or <enter> key. The installation program will clear the screen and display some copyright information. After you press <return>, you will see the following greeting:

Welcome to the COHERENT operating system!

Your computer is now running COHERENT from the floppy disk. This program will install COHERENT onto your hard disk. You can interrupt installation at any time by typing <Ctrl-C>; then reboot to begin the installation procedure again. Please be patient and read the instructions on the screen carefully.

As the instructions say, you can interrupt installation at any point by typing <ctrl-C>. Be sure, as well, to read the instructions carefully.

Entering the Serial Number

The next screen will ask you to enter a nine-digit serial number. This number is included on a paper supplied with your copy of the COHERENT system. The installation process cannot continue until you enter this number correctly.

Setting the Date and Time

The next screen asks you to set the date and time for COHERENT. Setting the date and time is vital to the correct operation of COHERENT; however, COHERENT records the date and time quite differently from the way MS-DOS does it.

Time under COHERENT is recorded as the number of seconds since January 1, 1970, at exactly midnight. Internally, COHERENT always stores time as Greenwich Mean Time. GMT is used to make it easy for COHERENT systems around the globe to coordinate time with each other. When COHERENT time-stamps a file or displays the time, it converts Greenwich Mean Time to your local time, depending on what time zone you live in and whether Daylight Savings Time is in effect. (For a detailed discussion of this topic, see the Lexicon's entry for **TIMEZONE**.)

The installation program will display the following text:

It is important for the COHERENT system to know the correct date and time. You must provide information about your timezone and daylight savings time.

According to your computer system clock, your current local date and time are:
date and time

You will be asked if this is correct. If it is not correct, the installation program will prompt you for the correct date and time.

6 The COHERENT System

You will then be asked about daylight savings time:

You can run COHERENT with or without daylight savings time conversion. You should normally run with daylight savings time conversion. However, if you are going to use both COHERENT and MS-DOS and you choose to run with daylight savings time conversion, your time will be wrong (by one hour) during daylight savings time while you are running under MS-DOS.

You will be asked if you want to run in daylight-savings mode. You should answer yes unless you have an overwhelming reason not to.

The installation program then describe the default daylight-savings settings:

By default, COHERENT assumes daylight savings time begins on the first Sunday in April and ends on the last Sunday in October. If you want to change the defaults, edit the file "/etc/timezone" after you finish installing COHERENT.

The default settings are those enacted by law for the United States. COHERENT will then ask you what time zone you live in:

Please choose one of the following timezones:

- 1 Greenwich
- 2 Newfoundland
- 3 Atlantic
- 4 Eastern
- 5 Central
- 6 Mountain
- 7 Pacific
- 8 Yukon
- 9 Alaska
- 10 Bering
- 11 Hawaii
- 12 Other

If you select 1 through 11, COHERENT will set your local time automatically. If you select "Other", you will be asked how many minutes of time you live east or west of Greenwich, and then asked to name your time zone. If you are unclear on these concepts, consult the Lexicon article on **TIMEZONE**. If you are unsure about how your local time relates to Greenwich time, consult an atlas, or check with your local library.

COHERENT will then display the corrected local time and ask if it is correct. If not, you can repeat the process until the time is correct.

Back Up the Hard Disk

After the time is set, installation moves on to its next phase, partitioning the hard disk. Before you become seriously involved in partitioning, however, you have one last chance to back up your hard disk. As you enter the partition phase of installation, you will see the following text:

This installation procedure allows you to create one or more partitions on your hard disk to contain the COHERENT system and its files. Each disk drive may contain no more than four logical partitions. If all four partitions on your disk are already in use, you will have to overwrite at least one of them to install COHERENT. If your disk uses fewer than four partitions and has enough unused space for COHERENT (7 megabytes), you can install COHERENT into the unused space. If you intend to install MS-DOS, you should install it before you install COHERENT.

The next part of the installation procedure will let you change the partitions on your hard disk. Data on unchanged hard disk partitions will not be changed. However, data already on your hard disk may be destroyed if you change the base or the size of a logical partition, or if you change the order of the partition table entries. If you need to back up existing data from the hard disk, type <Ctrl-C> now to interrupt COHERENT installation; then reboot your system and back up your hard disk data onto diskettes.

If you need to back up your hard disk and have not yet done so, please do so now.

Use the COHERENT Bootstrap?

If you have already backed up your hard disk, continue to the next phase, deciding whether to use the COHERENT master bootstrap. When you press <return>, you will see the following text:

8 The COHERENT System

COHERENT initialization normally writes a new master bootstrap program onto your hard disk. The COHERENT master boot allows you to boot the operating system on one selected disk partition automatically; it also allows you to boot the operating system on any disk partition by typing a key when you reboot. However, the COHERENT master boot may not work with all operating systems. If you do not use the COHERENT boot, you must understand how to boot the COHERENT partition using your existing bootstrap program.

As explained in the prompt text, a *bootstrap* is a program that pulls an operating system into memory and sets it to running — the name relates to the fact that the operating system “pulls itself up by its boot straps”. The COHERENT master bootstrap can boot COHERENT as well as many other operating systems, including MS-DOS (at least, the many versions of MS-DOS that have been tested). If you choose not to use the COHERENT master bootstrap, you must consult the documentation that came with your system to see how you can use your operating system’s current bootstrap routine to boot another operating system. If, however, you choose to use the COHERENT master bootstrap and find that it has trouble booting your current operating system, you should be able to boot your current operating system by using a boot floppy disk; you will not be able to boot it off of the hard disk, but at least it will be available to you.

For these reasons, we strongly suggest that you use the COHERENT master bootstrap routine. When you answer the prompt, you will move into the next phase, partitioning the disk.

How a Disk Is Organized

Installation then moves into the next phase: selecting a disk partition for COHERENT. As described above, partitioning can vary greatly from disk to disk; how the disk is partitioned will determine how much space is allocated to COHERENT and how much to MS-DOS. This is the trickiest part of installation, so be sure to read carefully.

This phase begins by displaying the current layout of your hard disk: the number of partitions, the size of each partition, and the operating system mounted on each partition. The following gives the printout for a typical hard disk. This hard disk, called disk 0, has approximately 33 megabytes on it organized into four approximately equal partitions, as follows:

Drive 0 Current has the following configuration:

Number	Type	[In Cylinders]			[In Tracks]			Megabytes	Name
		Start	End	Size	Start	End	Size		
0	Boot MS-DOS	0	149	150	0	899	900	7.83	/dev/at0a
1	MS-DOS	150	299	150	900	1799	900	7.83	/dev/at0b
2	MS-DOS	300	449	150	1800	2699	900	7.83	/dev/at0c
3	MS-DOS	450	614	165	2700	3689	990	8.62	/dev/at0d

As mentioned above, we suggest that you copy down this table before continuing; if an

error were to occur, this information will help you recover the data on your disk.

If you have more than one hard disk on your machine, you will see more than one table: one for each hard disk.

As you can see, this disk has four partitions, number 0 through 3. Partition 0 is marked as the boot partition; what this means is explained below. COHERENT has given each partition a name, `/dev/at0a` through `/dev/at0d`; you will not be working with these, however, so you can safely ignore them for now.

Note that the middle columns of the table give the size of each partition in three ways: in cylinders, in tracks, and in megabytes. How do these differ? Megabytes is the easiest to understand: that the number of bytes that can be written into the partition. Cylinders and tracks, however relate to the way a hard disk is built. A moment spent here on background can make what is to come much easier to understand.

Consider a floppy disk. Its surface is organized into 80 concentric rings, or *tracks*, numbered 0 through 79. Each track holds a fixed amount of data, with the amount depending upon the density of the disk. When the disk is in your disk drive, a *head* moves back and forth, reading tracks as directed. Unlike a phonograph cartridge, however, the head jumps from track to track discretely — it does not spiral in. Thus, you can measure space on a disk simply by counting the tracks. Note, too, that the term “head” is often used to describe one surface of a multi-sided disk.

As you’ve probably noticed, a floppy disk has two surfaces: the top and the bottom. The top is usually referred to as side 0, the bottom as side 1. Each surface has its own system of tracks, each numbered 0 through 79, giving a floppy disk a total of 160 tracks. Also, to read the disk a floppy disk drive actually has two heads, one for each surface.

A *cylinder* is the set of identically numbered tracks from both surfaces of the disk. A floppy disk organizes its 160 tracks into 80 cylinders: side 0 track 0 plus side 1 track 0 form cylinder 0; side 0 track 1 plus side 1 track 1 form cylinder 1, etc. If you think of a track as being a ring on the disk, then origin of the term “cylinder” should be obvious.

Now, consider a hard disk. The term “hard disk” is somewhat incorrect, because one hard disk actually contains many hard disks, or *platters*, inside itself. The platters are stacked on a spindle, much like a set of 45-rpm records stacked on a record changer — except that heads move between the platters, one head for each platter surface (or two per platter). The number of platters and the number of tracks on each platter determine both the number of cylinders and the amount of data that can be written to the disk. Consider the disk described in the above table, which is a fairly typical device. It has three platters (six heads). Each head has 615 tracks, each of which holds 8,704 bytes. Thus, the device has a total of 3,690 tracks (6 times 615), organized into 615 cylinders, with each cylinder holding 52,224 bytes (6 times 8,704).

Different operating systems organize disk partitions in different ways. MS-DOS, for historical reasons, organizes partitions along track boundaries; under this scheme, the tracks of a cylinder can be divided between two partitions. UNIX, COHERENT, and similar operating systems prefer to organize partitions along cylinder boundaries: all of the tracks of a cylinder belong to only one partition. This lessens movement of the heads, which in turn speeds up reading of the disk. Note that, strictly speaking, “megabytes” has no meaning when thinking about disk partitioning: partitioning must

be done either in tracks, or in cylinders. Humans tend to think of partitions in terms of megabytes, that is, in terms of the amount of data we can write into a partition, but when organizing your disk it is much easier to think in terms of cylinders. However, it is simple to translate cylinders into megabytes, which gives you the best of both worlds; this will be discussed in the following sub-section.

Partitioning the Disk

When you enter the partitioning phase of installation, the installation programs will display the configuration of your hard disk for you, using a table like the one shown above. It then displays the following menu:

Possible actions:

- 1 = Change active partition
- 2 = Change one logical partition
- 3 = Change all logical partitions
- 4 = Display drive information
- 5 = Quit

The following describes each option in detail.

1. The *active partition* is the partition that the bootstrap program reads by default. When a partition is made the active partition, the operating system mounted on that partition is booted automatically when your turn on your computer. This option allows you to change the active partition, or to designate **no** active partition, in which case the computer will prompt you at boot time for the partition number to boot. You will need this option only if your hard disk has more than one logical partition, and the partitions contain different operating systems. Note that if later you wish to change the active partition, you can use the COHERENT command `fdisk` to do so. See the Lexicon entry on `fdisk` for details.
2. This option lets you change one logical partition — in effect, it lets you select a logical partition for COHERENT. You should use this option if your hard disk has more than one partition and you wish to install COHERENT on only one of them. The partition you select must hold at least seven megabytes. Note that the contents of the partition will be deleted.
3. This reconfigures the entire disk. You can reset the number of partitions, and the size of each.
4. Give summary information about the disk.

Option 5 is self-explanatory.

Begin by entering option 4, to receive more information about your disk. The following display gives the display for the hard disk described in the above table:

Drive 0 has 615 cylinders, 6 heads, and 17 sectors per track. It contains:

615 cylinders of 52224 bytes each,

3690 tracks of 8704 bytes each,

62730 sectors of 512 bytes each

or a total of 32117760 bytes (32.12 megabytes).

If the owner of this hard disk wanted to organize his hard disk by megabytes, all he would have to do is divide 1 million by 52,224 to find that one megabyte is approximately equal to 20 cylinders; thus, to make a ten-megabyte partition, he would assign it 200 cylinders. The size of a cylinder may be different on your system, but the principle is the same.

The next step depends on two factors: the current organization of your hard disk, and the amount of space you wish to give to COHERENT. If your disk has only one logical partition, you must use option 3 to create at least one new logical partition, at least one for each operating system. If your disk already has more than one logical partition, you can use option 2 to assign one to COHERENT or use option 3 to assign more than one, reserving the rest for your current operating system. Of the partition(s) that you assign to COHERENT, one must hold at least seven megabytes — you cannot use two four-megabyte partitions; thus, if no partition on your disk holds seven megabytes, must use option 3.

How much space should you give COHERENT? COHERENT is a multi-user, multi-tasking operating system; the more space you assign to it on your disk, the more users and the more processes it can support. COHERENT, via UUCP and other communications programs, also gives you access to information on other COHERENT and UNIX systems throughout the world; you will want to exchange mail with other users and possibly download news and information. All of this takes up space. You must have one seven-megabyte partition to hold COHERENT's root file system (that is, the file system that holds the files that make COHERENT go), and you would be well advised to assign at least one more partition of at least the same size to hold users' accounts and their files — or one 15-megabyte partition to hold both.

If you have a large disk drive that is organized into one partition that you wish to assign to COHERENT, you are well advised to divide it into two smaller partitions. For example, if you wish to allocate 40 megabytes to COHERENT, you should create two 20-megabyte partitions rather than one 40-megabyte partition. In addition, if you anticipate wanting to perform a full restore of a dumped root partition, you are well advised to have a spare COHERENT partition in addition to the root partition. An alternative strategy would be to boot from the COHERENT Boot diskette and then restore your root partition. This assumes that the device you dump and restore from is different than your boot floppy!

The following two sub-sections describe what happen when you invoke options 2 or 3.

Changing One Logical Partition

You will first be asked which partition you wish to change. Reply by entering the partition you want. The system replies with the following text:

Existing data on a partition will be lost if you change the base or the size of the partition. Be sure you have backed up all data from any partition which you are going to change.

You may specify partition bases in cylinders or in tracks.

Reply 'y', to use cylinders. The system then asks:

You may specify partition sizes in cylinders or in megabytes.

Reply 'y', again to use cylinders. Next, the system says whether the partition is initialized to MS-DOS or is unused. It then asks you whether you wish to install COHERENT into the partition, leave the partition unchanged, or mark the partition as unused. You must select one of these possibilities: install cannot install any operating system other than COHERENT into a partition. To install COHERENT into this partition, reply 'y' when asked if you want this to be a COHERENT partition.

The final two questions ask you to enter the new base cylinder for the partition and the size of the partition in cylinders. Each question will prompt you with the current value for the partition. Simply pressing <return> would leave this current value unchanged. It is possible to make the partition smaller, but this serves no practical purpose if you simply intend to install COHERENT into this partition.

If you have made a mistake during this process, the system will prompt you and ask you to correct it. Otherwise, you will proceed to the next phase of installation.

Changing All Logical Partitions

This process mirrors what occurs when only one partition is changed, except that it is iterated for every existing partition. If you have four partitions and wish to eliminate one, simply set its size to zero. If you have fewer than four partitions, you will be asked if you wish to create any additional ones.

Note one additional feature: the table that displays the layout of partitions (an example of which is shown above) is redisplayed after every partition, showing the changes you have made (if any). By looking at the table, you will find it easy to keep straight just what you have done — when you work with this table, you will see the value of working in cylinders.

If you make a mistake, the system will prompt you to correct it. A common error is requesting overlapping partitions — that is, setting the base cylinder of a partition within an area already allocated to another partition. Another error would be to request an impossibly large partition.

It is strongly recommended that you **not** include the last cylinder of your hard disk in any partition. This cylinder is often used by diagnostic programs, and, as such, is not available for general use.

This concludes the discussion of partitioning the disk. The system will then moves to the next phase of installation.

Scanning for Bad Blocks

When a partition is assigned to COHERENT, it must be scanned for bad blocks. (The terms *block* and *sector* are often used interchangeably.) Most hard disks have at least a few blocks in which the disk's surface is flawed and therefore cannot be trusted to hold data reliably.

COHERENT keeps a list of bad blocks for each partition, to ensure that it does not write data into an unreliable area. This checking is performed automatically, but takes a few minutes. Patience is recommended.

Creating COHERENT File Systems

Once COHERENT has created a list of bad blocks, it can generate a file system for each of the partitions that you have assigned to it. One partition must be assigned the root file system; the root file system is the one that holds the files owned by COHERENT itself, the files that make the system go. If you are assigning more than one partition to COHERENT, you will be asked which you want to hold the root file system.

Mounting File Systems

The next step is to mount the file system assigned to the physical partition. You are not required to mount any file system except the root file system, although for most purposes there is no reason not to mount a file system that you have created. The system will ask you to assign a name to each file system. For historical reasons, a file system is given the name of a single letter from the lower end of the alphabet, such as 'v' or 'x', although there's no reason not to name a file system 'work' or 'usr'. Each name must be preceded by a slash '/'.

Rebooting

Now that partitions have been allocated and file systems have been created and mounted, the next step requires that COHERENT be booted from the hard disk. If you have elected to use the COHERENT bootstrap, and if you have the COHERENT boot partition the active partition, all you have to do is remove the **Boot** disk from the floppy-disk drive when prompted, and then reset your computer.

If you have made an MS-DOS partition the active partition, you must perform one additional step: type the number of the partition that holds the COHERENT root file system as the system is attempting to read the floppy disk for the bootstrap program. The number must be typed from the numeric keys at the top of the keyboard, *not* from the keypad. Before it begins the rebooting process, the system will tell you which number to press.

Copying Files

If rebooting occurs correctly, you will then be running COHERENT off of the hard disk. Now comes the event for which all of this preparation has occurred: the system copies the COHERENT files onto your hard disk. The system will prompt you to insert the three disks that hold the COHERENT files, one after the other.

The system will ask you whether you want the full set of manual pages on line in uncompressed form, and whether you want the dictionaries used by the COHERENT spelling checker also in uncompressed form. These files must be uncompressed before they can be used, but take up much more room on the disk. You must decide whether the extra convenience of having on-line manual pages and a spelling checker is worth the extra space they require.

Touring the COHERENT File System

Finally, for the last step in installation the system will ask you if you wish to take a tour of the COHERENT file system. We suggest you answer yes, for this is the best way to become familiar with the layout of your newly installed COHERENT system.

And with that, the installation of COHERENT is finished!

If at some later time you wish to review the tour, simply run `/etc/coh_intro`.

Where to Go From Here

The next step should be to become familiar with COHERENT. We suggest that you read the following tutorials, *Using the COHERENT System* and *Administering the COHERENT System*. Read them carefully, and work their exercises. They will help you become familiar with COHERENT, its features and its capabilities.

One last note: Numerous references have been made to the Lexicon. This is the dictionary-format reference that occupies the second half of your COHERENT manual. It describes every COHERENT command, library routine, operating-system call, and header file, and also contains numerous articles on technical aspects of the system, definitions, system maintenance, and general good advice. The Lexicon is in a tree format, and by following the chain of cross-references it is possible to work your way from any one article to any other. Although it will never replace a good novel for bed-time reading, we think that you will find it well organized and occasionally even enjoyable to work with.

Section 2: Using the COHERENT System

This tutorial introduces the COHERENT system. It serves both as a tutorial, and as a reference manual for the COHERENT system.

What is COHERENT?

COHERENT is a multiuser, multitasking operating system. *Multiuser* means that with COHERENT, more than one person can use your computer at any given time. *Multitasking* means that with COHERENT, any user can run more than one program at any given time. The design of COHERENT employs a few elegant concepts to give you a powerful and flexible system that is easy to use.

What is an Operating System?

An *operating system* is the master program that controls the operation of all other programs. It loads programs into memory, controls their execution, and controls a program's access to peripheral devices, such as printers, modems, and terminals.

Some operating systems permit only one user to use the computer at a time; and that user can run only one program at a time. For example, MS-DOS, the operating system most commonly used on the IBM PC and its clones, can run only one program at a time. However, you may well want your computer to support more than one user at a time, and run more than one program at a time. Sharing not only yields many economies (such as allowing a group of users to share one printer), but also allows the users to communicate with each other and so work together more efficiently.

Any multitasking operating system must be able to do the following tasks efficiently:

- Schedule computer time
- Control mass-storage devices (disks and tape drives)
- Organize disk-storage space
- Protect programs from conflict
- Protect stored information from destruction
- Ease cooperation among users

Today's operating systems also provide *tools*. These are programs that are bundled with the operating system, and that are designed to help you do your work more efficiently. For example, you need editors, compilers, debuggers, and assemblers to develop and test programs. Text formatters and spelling checkers help you write memoranda, manuals, or books. Command processors help you control the computer easily. Status checkers tell you what programs are being run, who is using the system, and how much space is left on your disk.

The combination of operating system and its tools transforms a boxful of wires and circuits into a useful machine.

COHERENT's Design Philosophy

The COHERENT system combines a multitasking operating system with a full set of tools. But the quality and quantity of the features provided by the COHERENT operating system distinguishes it from other, similar operating systems.

All but a very small part of the operating system software is written in C, a high-level language, rather than assembly language. The result is a reliable operating system, with no observable loss in execution speed. The choice of a high-level language also provides portability. The C language has been implemented on practically every computer, from mainframe to micro.

An important guiding principle in the design and implementation of the COHERENT operating system is that good performance is the direct result of dedication to careful design and implementation of algorithms and systems, rather than coding tricks.

A computer system is not an end in itself; rather, it is a "bench" for constructing tools to solve specific problems. If the operating system is too specialized or limited, the range of problems it can help you solve will be narrow. On the other hand, if the operating system is too detailed, then it becomes complex, idiosyncratic, and potentially unreliable.

The following quotation from John Conway summarizes well the philosophy that underlies the design of the COHERENT system:

"The engineer who wants a machine for some specific purpose will normally approve the simplest machine that does the job. He will not usually prefer a multiplicity of parts with the same effect, nor will he countenance the insertion of components with no function."

The COHERENT system follows this approach throughout. For example, consider device-independent I/O. COHERENT does not distinguish between a program, a device (such as a terminal or floppy disk), or a file. Programs can move data among devices and files without knowing any of the physical characteristics of the device. This device independence comes from designing the I/O system using a consistent view of files, devices,

and programs. Each appears like a stream of bytes, so each can communicate directly with all others. If an application requires a more complex file structure, it can be added at a higher level. This approach makes COHERENT simple and easy to maintain, yet powerful.

You may wonder whether this design compromises the performance of the system. On the contrary, the speed at which the COHERENT system transfers data between files on a disk is very nearly the hardware speed of disk-to-disk transfers. This is achieved through the use of simple but ingenious algorithms.

Throughout, the COHERENT system uses this principle of using a few primitive operators to provide easy communication among programs, files, and devices. With these, any user of the COHERENT system can construct the tools to solve nearly all of his computing problems.

COHERENT Properties

The COHERENT file system uses a tree-structured directory. This means that directories hold files, which in turn may be data files or other directories. The fact that a directory can contain more directories is a significant help in managing large numbers of files.

The COHERENT operating system is modularly designed, using certain mathematical concepts. This results in an efficient design for the system. Using this simple but elegant approach, features are designed to fit well together. This means that COHERENT does not repeatedly reinvent the wheel — each feature is carefully designed to function well by itself and work readily with other features. COHERENT avoids the “creeping feature” syndrome common to usual operating systems.

How Do I Begin?

This section introduces a few concepts that you must grasp before you can use the COHERENT system.

Terminals and COHERENT

You will use a *terminal* to send commands to the COHERENT system and view its responses.

A terminal uses a screen that resembles a television screen, called a *video display* or *CRT* (for cathode ray tube). Typically, this is the console of your personal computer. The CRT displays the dialogue between yourself and the computer system. A typical video display shows 24 lines of characters, with each line having up to 80 characters. All of your work with the COHERENT system will be done through typing commands and data on your terminal.

Special Terminal Keys

One special key on the keyboard will be used frequently in your work: the **<return>** key. This key signals that the end of a line has been reached, and that you want the COHERENT system to process a command. Not all terminals label the key **<return>**: some call it **enter**, **linefeed**, **newline**, or **eol**. The key is usually larger than other keys (except the space bar). From here on, this key will be called **<return>**.

Note that every command to the COHERENT system ends with a **<return>**. Your command is not executed until you type this key.

Another special key is the **control** key, usually labeled **ctrl** or **cntl** or **cont**. Most terminals place it on the left side of the keyboard. This is an important key used in sending certain special characters.

To use the **ctrl** key, hold it down while you press another key. For example, to send the computer a **<ctrl-D>** character, hold down the **ctrl** key, strike the **D** key, then release both keys.

Because control characters have no corresponding printable characters, in this tutorial they will be represented in the form:

<ctrl-D>

for the character **ctrl-D**.

While you are typing information into the COHERENT system, you can correct the information before it is processed. Two keys will help you do this. The first is the **<kill>** character, which erases the line entirely and allows you to begin again. This is usually **<ctrl-U>**, but you can easily change the **<kill>** character with the command **stty**, which is discussed in a later section.

The other key is the **<erase>** character, normally **<ctrl-H>**. This erases the most recently typed character. You can erase several characters with **<ctrl-H>** by striking it several times. **<ctrl-H>** also serves as the backspace key.

One more special key is the **<interrupt>** key. This key aborts a command before it normally finishes. By default, this key is **<ctrl-C>** on your terminal.

login: Logging In

Before you use the COHERENT system, you must install it on your computer. During the installation procedure, you will establish your personal login account and the password with which you access it. You need these in order to log in to COHERENT. If you have not yet installed COHERENT on your computer, return to the release notes and follow its directions.

Once you have installed COHERENT on your system, you must *log in* to COHERENT before you can begin to use it. When you log in, you establish a connection with the computer and prepare the system to execute your commands.

Your first step after turning on the terminal is to send the <ctrl-D> command. It replies:

```
Coherent login:
```

Type your user name, followed by <return>. Next, COHERENT will prompt you to type your password:

```
Password:
```

Note that your password does not appear on the screen as you type it. This prevents kibbitzers from seeing your password without your permission. Follow the password with <return>. If you enter the password incorrectly, COHERENT will ask you to try again.

When you enter your password correctly, COHERENT logs you in. You will be greeted by the message of the day, if there is any. The COHERENT system is now ready to accept your commands and execute them. To indicate readiness, COHERENT prints a *prompt* character on the screen:

```
$
```

When COHERENT has finished executing a command, it prints another prompt, which means that it is ready for your next command.

Try COHERENT Commands

To see how easy it is to use COHERENT, type the following lines. Be sure to end each line with a <return> .

```
ed
i
This is a sample COHERENT file.
.
w file01
q
```

The characters `ed` tell COHERENT to invoke an editor program, with which you can build and change files. The information that you type is then processed by the COHERENT editor. When you are finished with the editor, you return to COHERENT by typing `q`. Now type:

```
cat file01
```

This command types out the contents of the file `file01` that you just created. Finally, type:

```
lc
```

This command lists the files that you have. It replies

```
Files:
file01
```

Congratulations! You have just made COHERENT work for you.

To review: The first command, `ed`, created a file and filled it with some text, while the second command `cat` typed the file out on your terminal. Finally, the command `lc` listed the name of each of your files. See following sections for full descriptions of each of these commands.

Commands to COHERENT

Once you have logged into the system, all the resources of the COHERENT system are at your fingertips. COHERENT's *commands* give you control over these resources.

Every COHERENT command has the same structure: the *command name*, which tells COHERENT which command you want it to execute; and the arguments, which detail what you want done and to what you want it done.

Some commands only have the first part. For example, to list the names of files that you have, type

```
lc
```

and COHERENT prints their names in columns across the screen. (A *file* is a mass of information that is given a name and stored on the disk. They will be described in detail later in this tutorial.)

If you have no files, `lc` prints nothing. If you have logged in for the first time, you may or may not have files, depending upon your installation. Try it. In any event, COHERENT will prompt you for another command after it finishes `lc`.

The second part of a command is a list of *parameters* or *arguments* to that command. Think of parameters as controlling either the behavior of the command, or as the target of the command's action.

The parts of a command are separated by spaces or tab characters.

The parameters of the command are further divided into *options* (or *controls*) and *names*. *Names* are usually the names of files; *options* change the action of the command. An option is usually indicated by being prefixed with a hyphen '-'.

An example of a *name* parameter is shown in this example of a `cat` command:

```
cat file01
```

This command types the contents of `file01` on your terminal. The name argument is `file01`.

For an example of options, consider the command `ls`. `ls` lists your file names one name per line. Thus, typing

```
ls
```

produces a list of the form:

```
.profile
compu
file01
mailbox
```

However, **ls** can tell you more about a file than just its name. To see additional information about each file, type:

```
ls -l
```

ls print the following information:

```
-rw-r--r-- 1 you 17 Sat Aug 15 17:20 file01
```

This listing shows the size of the file, the date it was created or last modified, and its degree of protection. The letters to the left of the listing are described in detail in the tutorial *Administering the COHERENT System* or in the Lexicon article for the command **chmod**.

help, man: Help with Commands

The COHERENT system has a **help** command

```
help
```

which gives you a brief description of COHERENT commands. To introduce yourself to these commands, type **help** by itself, or:

```
help help
```

Both tell you how to use the **help** command. To get information on the **lc** command, type:

```
help lc
```

To obtain detailed information on a command, use the **man** (abbreviation for *manual*) command. Each command has an on-line description that the **man** command will print out for you. To find out about the **man** command, type:

```
man man
```

If your CRT screen fills with information, **man** will wait for you to type **<return>** to continue. This is to prevent you from missing information should it scroll too fast. **man** will also wait for a **<return>** after it puts out the last line of the description.

The command descriptions provided by the **man** command are available in printed form in the Lexicon. It provides a concise description of each available command.

Logging Out

When you are finished using the computer, you must tell the COHERENT system that you are done, and free the terminal for other use. This step is called *logging out*.

There are two ways to log out. The first is to type <ctrl-D> when COHERENT is expecting a command. The second is to type the command:

```
login
```

which logs you out and prepares for another login.

Features of COHERENT

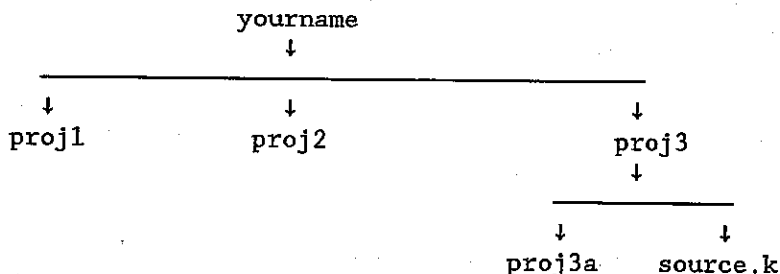
This section presents some basic concepts, such as files, directories, and pipes, which are important in using the COHERENT system.

Information Storage and Retrieval

Computer systems store information in *files*. A file is a mass of data that has been named and stored on disk. It is analogous to a file in a file cabinet: both contain data, and are stored by name in a storage device. A file, once created, can be invoked, changed, or removed. All operating systems let you create and use files; however, systems differ greatly in the way they organize files and give you access to them.

To keep track of files, you need something that performs the same function as the index tab on a file folder. A *directory* is COHERENT's way of doing this. A directory holds the names of files and marks where the files are located on the disk. The COHERENT system does not limit you to one directory. You can have as many as you wish, as long as you don't run out of disk space.

Directories for COHERENT are tree-structured. The following example will clarify this concept. If you have three separate projects, and each has files of its own, then you can set up your directory to look like this:



proj1, **proj2**, and **proj3** are all subdirectories of directory **yourname**. Directory **proj3**, in turn, holds files **proj3a** and **source.k**.

Each user of the COHERENT computer system has his own directory. The COHERENT system makes sure that you automatically use the directory created for you and not that of another user. It protects your files from accidental damage by another user. However, if you wish, you can allow other users to examine or change your files.

Whether others can examine or change your files depends upon the type of *protection* that you choose for your file. In the usual case, you will not specify any protection and the COHERENT system will create the file unprotected. Since directories are also files, you may prevent other users from examining the files in your directory or subdirectory

using the same protection mechanism. (The mechanism by which you grant or deny permission to files is described below, and in the Lexicon article on the command `chmod`.)

A file in the COHERENT system can contain any of several different kinds of information, ranging from programs to electronic mail. Later sections will present examples of each kind of file.

Redirecting Input and Output

Most COHERENT commands write their output to the *standard output* device, which is normally your terminal's screen. For example, `who` prints on your terminal the name of each user currently logged into your COHERENT system:

```
who
```

By using the special character `>`, you can redirect the output of `who` into a file. The command

```
who >whofile
```

writes this information into `whofile`. The operator `>` tells COHERENT to *redirect* the standard output. Later, you can list the information on your terminal using `cat`:

```
cat whofile
```

Once the information is in a file, you can process it in other ways. For example

```
sort whofile
```

sorts the contents of `whofile` and prints the results on your screen. In this way, you can display the users' names on your terminal in alphabetical order.

You can also redirect the *standard input* to accept input from a file rather than from your terminal. To redirect the standard input, use the special character `<` before the name of the file that you want read as the standard input. For example, the command `mail` sends electronic mail to another user; normally, it "mails" what you type on the standard input, but you can use `<` to tell it to mail the contents of a file instead.

```
mail fred <whofile
```

mails the contents of `whofile` to user `fred`.

Pipes

The *pipe* is an important feature of the COHERENT system. Pipes allow you to hook several programs together by redirecting the output of one into the input of the next. A pipe is represented by the character `|` in the command line.

Most COHERENT programs are written to act as *filters*. A filter is a program that reads its input one line at a time or one character at a time, performs some transformation upon what it has read, and then writes the transformed data to the standard output device. You can easily perform complex transformations on data by hooking a number of simple filters together with pipes. Consider, for example, the command:

`who | sort`

Here, the command **who** generates a list of persons who are logged into the system. The output of **who** is then piped to the program **sort**, which sorts the list of users into alphabetical order and prints them on the standard error device.

The power and flexibility of the COHERENT operating system owes much to the pipe.

Processing Information in Files

The COHERENT system includes many tools with which you can process files of data. Each of the tools introduced here is described in detail in the Lexicon.

Computer applications, such as general ledger or inventory control, are based on data files and transactions that involve them. COHERENT has capacities for processing data files that can help you implement such an application easily. The following paragraphs describe a few COHERENT commands for processing text.

sort sorts the lines or *records* in a file. With it, you can sort a file based on any *field* or set of fields in each line, as well as select the field separator. You can also discard elements that are not unique. You can sort several input files and redirect the output into one file; this lets you merge files.

awk is a language with which you can scan text for patterns and alter it depending upon which pattern is found. You can use it to write reports, to detect patterns in files, and to validate data as they are entered into the computer. **awk** treats its input as lines consisting of fields. It processes numeric data as well as strings. Totals and averages can be easily computed on any of the input fields. Associative memory arrays are provided, where array indices may be integers, strings, or even floating-point numbers.

If you have two text files that contain almost the same information, the command **diff** will summarize for you just how the files differ. **diff** can, for example, show you how two versions of a document or a program differ, or show you how today's inventory file relates to yesterday's. When used with the text editor **ed**, **diff** can help you maintain a master file and a series of automatic update commands to produce other versions of the file.

A similar program, **cmp**, performs the same work with non-text files.

A related program, **comm**, processes sorted files and shows how they are similar.

The command **uniq** reads a sorted file and removes all duplicate lines.

The command **grep** finds patterns within text files. If, for example, you wish to find every document on your system that contains the word **succotash**, **grep** will find them for you.

Document Preparation

The COHERENT system can be used to prepare documents as well as develop programs. It has been used to write computer documentation, tutorials, and books, including this manual.

nroff is the COHERENT system's text-processing language. To use **nroff**, type its commands directly into your text file, then run the file through **nroff** to "compile" your text. **nroff** will follow your commands to format the text on the page, to create (with the aid of a little skill on your part) an attractive, printed document.

nroff lets you do this in such a way that a manuscript can appear in any of several different formats, without changing the content of the manuscript.

A related program, **troff**, does the same work as **nroff**, except that its output that can be printed on the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet, using multiple fonts, sizes of type, and proportional spacing. In general, you should use **nroff** to process files that you will print on the screen or on a simple dot-matrix or daisy-wheel printer; but use **troff** if you want to print your output on a sophisticated laser printer.

Programming Tools

The COHERENT design not only makes it easy to run programs, but easy to write them as well.

The COHERENT system has a compiler for the C language, and an assembler for your machine's native assembly language.

To invoke the C compiler, use the command **cc**. The command **as** assembles files of assembly language.

To help you debug programs, the COHERENT system comes with a symbolic debugger, **db**. This program can be invaluable in helping you find where your C or assembly-language program has "jumped the rails".

Finally, the programs **lex** and **yacc** implement sophisticated programming languages, that can be used to develop entire computer systems quickly. Each comes with its own tutorial, as well as full entries in the Lexicon.

Electronic Communication

COHERENT has several features that can provide electronic communication.

The command **msg** lets you send messages to other people who are logged into the system. **write** allows you and another user to carry on a typed "conversation" between your two terminals.

If you wish to communicate with someone who is not logged into the system, you can use the program **mail** to send him electronic mail. The next time that user logs into the system, he can read the message in his "mailbox", save it into a file, and reply to it if he wishes.

The UUCP utility gives you a “window on the world”. With UUCP, you can exchange mail via modem with all COHERENT or UNIX systems that are enrolled in the USENET. UUCP operates automatically; it will exchange mail late at night, when telephone rates are low, without your having to be at your computer. In this way, you can exchange mail and download news and source code automatically from thousands of other systems.

Other COHERENT Features

COHERENT provides many interesting tools that do not fit easily into any particular category.

The program **units** computes a formula that lets you convert one unit of measure to another. For example, you can use **units** to convert centimeters to hands or rods to fathoms.

The program **bc** turns your computer into a desk calculator. This “calculator” works interactively, and is fully programmable.

The program **cal** prints a calendar for any month or year you ask, with the current year as default. It correctly converts from Gregorian to Julian calendars, using September 3, 1752 as the date of conversion (i.e., the date when the Gregorian calendar was adopted in England and its possessions), so you can print correct historical calendars back through the year 1 AD.

Another COHERENT tool, **crypt**, allows you to encrypt files, to protect them from prying eyes (even those of the system administrator).

Files and Directories

Earlier, we introduced files as the cornerstone of the COHERENT system of storing and retrieving information. This section discusses files and directories in more detail.

File Names

Each file has a name, such as:

```
.profile
File01
cmd.sh
file01
test.c
```

File names are generally made up of upper-case and lower-case letters and numbers. COHERENT treats capital letters differently from lower-case letters. The file names **File01** and **file01** are therefore different.

Any character can be used to name a file, including a control character. It is recommended, however, that you name files using only upper- or lower-case alphabetic characters, numerals, and the punctuation marks ‘.’ or ‘_’.

The file name should not be more than 14 characters long. If you specify a longer name, characters beyond the 14th will be ignored. Thus, COHERENT will regard the file names

```
this_is_very_long_file_name_1
```

and

```
this_is_very_long_file_name_2
```

as being identical.

Your Directory

You can inspect the contents of the current directory with the commands `ls` and `lc`. When you specify a file name, COHERENT looks it up in the directory and connects the file to the program using it.

There are many directories on the COHERENT system. When you log in to the system, COHERENT sets up your *home* directory, which is determined by the system administrator.

You may sometimes need a program or a data file in another user's directory. Also, the commands that you use frequently come from another directory.

To examine or use files in a directory other than your own, you will need to specify the name of the directory as well as the name of the file. Separate the parts of the name of the directory by a slash:

```
/
```

To see the files in another user's directory, you should use the *change directory* command `cd`. For example, to switch to Henry's home directory, issue the command:

```
cd /usr/henry
```

Path Names

The COHERENT file system is tree structured. This means that all files in the system branch from a common origin, called the *root*. The name of the root directory is:

```
/
```

One file in the root directory is `usr`. This is a subdirectory that normally contains the directories of all users. To list the names of all user directories, type the command:

```
lc /usr
```

If one of the user names is `henry` as above, the command

```
lc /usr/henry
```

lists the names of the files in `henry`'s directory.

The parameter `/usr/henry` is called a *path name*. Path names may be fully or partially specified. All fully-specified path names begin with `/` for root, and continue with further subdirectory names.

Path names that do not begin with a slash are *partially* specified, and are automatically prefixed with the path name of the current directory to make them complete before the system uses them.

The elements of path names are separated by slashes, so if there were a file in **newdirectory** named **newfile**, you would refer to it as

```
newdirectory/newfile
```

The absence of a beginning slash indicates that the path name begins in the current directory. Thus, if your home directory name is **henry**, then an alternate but less convenient way to specify the path name to **newfile** is

```
/usr/henry/newdirectory/newfile
```

Thus, a path name is a list of all the subdirectories leading from the **root** to the file in question. **newfile** is a file in subdirectory **newdirectory**, which in turn is a file in the home directory **henry**, which is further a file in the directory **usr**. The directory **usr** is a file in the master or **root** directory for the system.

You don't need to specify all of this, fortunately, whenever you want to specify a file in a subdirectory. COHERENT assumes that partially specified path names are within the current directory. Therefore, you can specify a subdirectory by specifying the name of the directory first, followed by the rest of the path name.

mkdir, cd, pwd: More Directories

You can easily create more directories within your primary, or home directory.

Directories are useful in organizing masses of files. Related files can be kept with each other in a directory, whose contents are suggested by its name. For example, you may wish to create a directory to hold source files for your programs, another to hold completed programs, a third to hold text files, and a fourth to hold commands; and to tell them apart, you may wish to name them, respectively, **src**, **prog**, **text**, and **cmd**.

The following exercise shows how to manipulate files and directories. To begin, use the command **cat** to create file **file01**, as follows:

```
cd
cat >file01
This is another sample file.
<ctrl-D>
```

cd returns you to your home directory, for this exercise. Now, you can use the copy command **cp**:

```
cp file01 file02
```

to create **file02**. Now, type **lc** to list the files in the current directory. It will show the following:

```
Files:
    file01 file02
```

Other files may be present, depending upon your installation.

The command **mkdir** creates a new directory. For example, to create a new directory named **newdirectory**, type the following command:

```
mkdir newdirectory
```

If you follow this command with **ls**, it lists your regular files, but it also lists **newdirectory** separately as a directory:

```
Directories:
    newdirectory
Files:
    file01  file02
```

To refer to any files in **newdirectory**, use its name in specifying the path name.

Now, create a file in the new directory:

```
cat >newdirectory/newfile
lines to be
contained in newfile
<ctrl-D>
```

This command copies lines to the file described by the partial path name **newdirectory/newfile**.

One way to avoid specifying all of the subdirectories in a long path name is to change the *current* (or *working*) directory. When you log in, the current directory is set to your *home* directory.

If you have used the command **cd** to change your current directory, you can find what the current directory is by typing the print working directory command **pwd**. If you have a subdirectory **backup** in your directory, and change directories with

```
cd backup
```

then the command

```
pwd
```

displays:

```
/usr/yourname/backup
```

The change-directory command **cd** changes the current directory. To change to **newdirectory**, type the command:

```
cd newdirectory
```

If your current directory had been **/usr/henry** before you typed the **cd** command shown above, it will be **/usr/henry/newdirectory** after you type it.

Now, if you type the `lc` command, the listing will display only

```
Files:
  newfile
```

since `lc` with no parameters lists the current directory.

To change back to the directory that you had when you logged in to the system, use the `cd` command with no parameters:

```
cd
```

This directory is often referred to as the *home* directory. To change to another user's directory, you would say

```
cd /usr/other
```

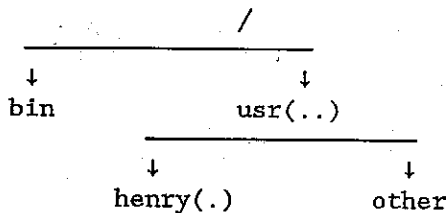
or use the abbreviation

```
cd ../other
```

Here `..` is a special COHERENT system abbreviation for *parent* directory, which in this case is the `/usr` directory. In other words, `..` stands for the directory in which the current directory resides. Every directory in the system except the root directory has a parent. For the root directory, `..` refers to itself.

Another directory abbreviation is `.`, which means the *current* directory.

Assuming that your user name is `henry`, and your current directory is your home directory, part of the file-system structure is



Here `..` is `/usr`, the parent directory path, and `.`, the current directory path name `/usr/henry`. Both `.` and `..` change when you invoke the `cd` command.

To see what your current directory is, you can use the print working directory command

```
pwd
```

and COHERENT replies with the full description of your working directory name. For example, if your user name is `henry` and your installation uses the user name as the directory name, then `pwd` will reply

```
/usr/henry
```

mv, cp: Moving Files Between Directories

Once you have created your new directory, you can move files into it with the move command **mv**, or you can create new files there with commands such as **ed**.

To move **file01** to **newdirectory**, the **mv** command is useful.

mv has two parameters: the first is the file to be moved, and the second is either the new name of the file or the destination directory of the file. So, to move file **file01** to the new directory, you can say:

```
mv file01 newdirectory/file01
```

In this case, both parameters are file names. In an alternative approach, the second parameter can be a directory path name:

```
mv file02 newdirectory
```

The second parameter is the directory that is to contain the file, and the name of the file in **newdirectory** will be the same as it was in the current directory. These two forms have the same effect.

To see where the files are now, type the two commands:

```
lc
lc newdirectory
```

The result is

```
Directories:
  newdirectory
```

followed by

```
Files:
  file01  file02  newfile
```

To move the files back, use a combination of the commands already shown. Type:

```
mv newdirectory/file01 file01
cd newdirectory
mv file02 ..
cd
```

Note, too, that if you move a file to another file in the same directory, this, in effect, merely renames the file.

You can copy files with the copy command **cp**. This command has two parameters: the first is the file to be copied, and the second is the path name of the new copy. To copy **file01** to **nfile01** in **newdirectory**, type the command:

```
cp file01 newdirectory/nfile01
```

The difference between **mv** and **cp** is that after the **cp** command both the original file and the copy exist, whereas after **mv** only one copy exists.

Now, an illustration of what has been discussed so far about directories and files with an example.

Continuing with the user name of **henry**, assume that you have some documents that you have entered with **ed**, and you want to make backup copies of these files for safekeeping. The document file names are **doc1** and **doc2** and are in your home directory. For the purposes of this example, create **doc1** with **cat** by typing:

```
cat >doc1
a few
lines of
text
<ctrl-D>
```

and similarly **doc2**:

```
cat >doc2
second file
with some text
<ctrl-D>
```

(Don't forget that **<ctrl-D>** means to hold the control key down and simultaneously type the **D**.) The **lc** command tells you the file names and directory names:

```
Directories:
    newdirectory
Files:
    doc1    doc2    file01  file02
```

The first step is to create the directory to hold the backup copies. To help remind yourself what the directory is for, name it **backup**.

```
mkdir backup
```

Now, **lc** shows you:

```
Directories:
    backup  newdirectory
Files:
    doc1    doc2    file01  file02
```

Now, you can use **cp** to copy your files into **backup**:

```
cp doc1 backup
cp doc2 backup
```

After you issue these commands, **lc** still says:

Directories:

 backup newdirectory

Files:

 doc1 doc2 file01 file02

However, if you list the contents of subdirectory **backup**

 lc backup

you will see:

Files:

 doc1 doc2

The files have been successfully copied into the back-up directory.

chmod: File Protection Mode

As part of the directory entry, COHERENT keeps information about the *attributes* of each file. The attributes include the time and date of creation or modification of the file, and the file's *mode*. The mode determine just who can do what with the file.

For example, by resetting the mode you can stop other users from deleting, reading, or writing to your files. You can even stop yourself from reading one of your own files, although this is not often done.

Although there are many combinations of these attributes and different sets of users that they apply to, this document will cover only the basic combinations.

To change the mode of a file, use the change-mode command **chmod**. For example, to protect file **doc1** in directory **backup**, use the command

```
chmod -w backup/doc1
```

where the **-w** means "remove write permission" and is followed by the file name.

To allow other users to read the backup file **doc2**, type:

```
chmod o+r backup/doc2
```

where the letter **o** signifies "other users", and the **+r** tells **chmod** to grant read permission.

When COHERENT creates a new file, it gives it your installation's standard levels of protection. To see the protection properties for a given file, use the command:

```
ls -l
```

ls prints the mode as the first column for each file in the current directory. To information on how to interpret the protection codes, see the Lexicon entry for **chmod**; they are also described below.

By default, the COHERENT system permits others to read your files but not change them. If you wish, you can change this default; to do so, use the command **umask**. See the Lexicon entry for **umask** for details.

rm, rmdir: Removing Files and Directories

You will need to remove files to make way for new files. Old copies that you no longer need may clutter your directory, or you may accidentally create a file that you do not really want.

To remove a file, use the remove command **rm**. The parameter is the path name of the file that you want to remove. For example, if you wish to remove file **doc2** in directory **backup**, type:

```
rm backup/doc2
```

You can remove several files with one command by listing them as consecutive parameters:

```
rm file01 file02
```

Files that have been protected as unwritable cannot be deleted. For example, suppose you created a file **tough** by typing

```
cat >tough
line1
line2
<ctrl-D>
```

and protected it by typing

```
chmod -w tough
```

If you try to delete the file with **rm**, the COHERENT system will type:

```
tough: unwritable
```

This is done to prevent you from deleting a file unintentionally. If you do want to delete it, use the **-f** option for **rm**:

```
rm -f tough
```

and the file will be deleted.

You can also delete directories using the command **rmdir**. But before you delete any directory, it must be empty of files. Otherwise, you will get an error message and the directory will not be deleted. The form of this command is:

```
rmdir newdirectory
```

du, df: How Much Space?

If you wish to see how much disk space the files in the current directory are using, using the disk-usage command **du**. If you have subdirectories, they are listed separately. **du** lists disk usage in blocks; each block is 512 bytes (half a kilobyte).

On the other hand, you may wish to discover how much space is available on your disk. To do so, use the disk-free command `df`. It tells you how many blocks are left free on your disk.

In: Linking Files

COHERENT has a unique feature that allows a file to have several names. When you create a file, you give it a name; COHERENT *links* the name you give the file with its internal system of managing files. (For more information on how COHERENT identifies files, see the Lexicon entry for *i-node*.) COHERENT allows you to give a file more than one name; another way of expressing this is to say that you can give a file *multiple links*..

To create another link to an existing file, use the command `ln`. For example, if you have a file named `doc1` (as you will if you have performed the previous examples), you can create a new link to it with the following command:

```
ln doc1 another
```

The "new" file has the same protections and data as the "old" file; in this example, **another** assumes the same permissions and data as `doc1`.

If you use `rm` to remove one of the links to the file, the other link and the file's data remain in existence. If both names are removed, however, then the data are also removed. The data remain in existence as long as they have a link to COHERENT.

Introduction to COHERENT Commands

The commands that you enter into COHERENT are interpreted and acted upon by the special COHERENT program `sh`, otherwise called the *shell*.

This section introduces some commands commonly used by COHERENT users. For more information on these or other commands see `help` and `man`. Also, consult the Lexicon.

You will need to be aware of the following special punctuation characters:

```
* ? [ ] | ; ( )
( ) $ = : ' " < > << >>
```

Avoid these characters until you have read the following section, which discusses their use, or until they are presented in examples.

Lower-Case Sensitivity in Commands

The commands shown in this manual are all in lower-case characters. COHERENT treats upper-case characters as distinct from their lower-case equivalents. Therefore, the commands

```
Cat
CAT
caT
cat
```

are all different, and COHERENT recognizes only the last.

cat: List Contents of a File

The command **cat** can be used to list the contents of a text file — a program's source code, a document, or a message file. To list the contents of file **pgm**, type:

```
cat pgm
```

This command types the file's contents on the terminal using the *standard output*.

Another purpose for **cat** — the use from which it gets its name — is to concatenate several files on the standard output. For example, the command

```
cat one two three
```

prints the files **one**, **two**, and **three**, one after the other, on the terminal. The files can be concatenated into another file by redirecting the standard output to the file. Using the special character '**>**' before the file name tells COHERENT to redirect the output. For example, the command

```
cat one two three >four
```

concatenates files **one two three** into file **four**. **four** need not exist prior to this command; if it does, its previous contents are deleted.

scat: List Files on the Screen

If the file you list with **cat** is more than 24 lines long and your terminal is directly connected to the computer, the beginning lines of the file scroll off the screen too quickly for you to read them. To ensure that you see all of the lines of the file output, use the command **scat**.

scat prints a file in 24-line chunks. After it has listed a chunk of text, it pauses and waits for you to hit **<return>**. If you call **scat** with an option of **-s**,

```
scat -s file
```

it will not show blank lines on your screen.

who: Who Is On the System

To find who is logged into the system, use the COHERENT command **who**. This command lists who is logged into the COHERENT system, one name per line. You will see your own user name there as well.

If you sit down at a terminal that is not in use, but at which someone has already logged in, the following command tells you who is logged in:

```
who am i
```

COHERENT replies with the name of the user logged in at that terminal.

ls, lc: Listing Your Directory

The previous section discussed two of the more commonly used commands: **ls** and **lc**. Each lists the files in a directory.

To see how these commands work, presume that your directory has the files created in previous sections and that you did not remove directory **newdirectory**. To list the files in your directory, simply use the command with no parameters:

```
ls
```

This produces:

```
another
backup
doc1
doc2
file01
file02
newdirectory
stuff
```

lc also lists file names, but it prints the files and directories separately, in columns across the screen. The command

```
lc
```

gives:

```
Directories:
  backup newdirectory
Files:
  another doc1 doc2 file01 file02
  stuff
```

If you want to list files in a directory other than your own, name that directory as an argument to the command. For example, **/bin** is a directory in the COHERENT system that contains commands. Type

```
lc /bin
```

and **lc** will print the contents of **/bin**.

Both **ls** and **lc** can take options: precede the option with a hyphen (and no intervening space). The option must appear before any other argument. For example, to list only the files in the directory for user **carol**, leaving out any directories, use the **f** option with **lc**:

```
lc -f /usr/carol
```

Or, if you type the command

```
lc -f
```

for your directory, the COHERENT system replies:

```
Files:      doc1 doc2 file01 file02
```

The commonly used options for `lc` are:

```
-d      List directories only, omitting files
-f      List files only, omitting directories
-1      (Numeral 1): List files one per line, not in columns
```

`ls` produces a list of file names, one per line, and optionally much more information. To produce all the information, use the `l` option (note that this is an “`el`”, not a numeral 1):

```
ls -l
```

The following gives a sample of the long list that this option produces. Headings have been added to show the meaning of each column:

mode	#	owner	size, bytes	modification date	time	name
-rw-r--r--	1	you	17	Wed Aug 19	17:51	file01
drwxrwxrwx	2	you	32	Wed Aug 19	17:53	backup
-rw-r--r--	1	you	17	Wed Aug 19	17:53	doc1

The *mode* column consists up of four subfields. This field describes the access permissions for the file and whether the file is a directory. Taking the entry for file `file01` as an example, we have:

-rw-r--r--	1	you	17	Sat Aug 15	17:20	file01
| \ / \ /	| #	| owner	|	| date	| time	| file name
- - -						
1 2 3 4						

The leftmost position has been labeled 1. If the file were a directory, this would contain a `d`; otherwise, it contains a hyphen.

The remainder of the mode field is three subfields, each with three characters. Subfields 2 through 4 contain three positions each. These fields represent permissions to be granted to different groups of users. Subfield 2 is for the owner of the file. Subfield 3 is for members of the the owner's group; for more information on groups, see the Lexicon entry for `group`. Subfield 4 is for all other users.

The three positions within each of these subfields represent the permissions to read, write, or execute the file:

```
rwX
```

If the permission is granted, the corresponding letter is printed. A hyphen indicates that the permission is denied. *Read* permission means that the file can be read, for example by `cat`. If *write* permission is granted, the file can be written to, as well as deleted.

Execute permission signifies that the file contains a command and can be executed.

The column labeled *#* represents the number of *links* to the file for non-directory files. In almost every instance, this will be one.

The column labeled *owner* names the user who owns the file. You usually own the files in your directory.

size shows the number of bytes used in the file.

Next comes the *date* and *time* that the file was last modified, for example, by *ed* or *MicroEMACS*. If the file is more than one year old, the *time* field is replaced with the year the file was created.

Finally, the *name* of the file is shown.

msg: Send a Message

The command **msg** lets you send a short message to a user logged into the system. To illustrate, send a message to yourself. Type:

```
msg you
this is a test message
```

substituting your user name for "you" in the **msg** command. You will see:

```
you: this is a test message
```

mesg: Hear No Messages

If you do not wish to receive on-line messages, the command **mesg** prevents other users from interrupting your work:

```
mesg n
```

Later, you can allow messages again by typing:

```
mesg y
```

To determine which of the two **mesg** options is in effect, use the **mesg** command with no option:

```
mesg
```

It will tell you the current setting. Try it.

write: Electronic Dialogue

The command **write** lets you carry on a "conversation" with another user. The conversation continues until you or the other user type **<ctrl-D>** on his terminal.

For example, user **fred** can begin a conversation with user **anne** by typing:

```
write anne
```

On **anne's** terminal, the message

Message from fred...

will appear. To establish the other half of the communication, **anne** should then say
write fred

and a similar notification appears on fred's terminal.

At this point, both users simply type lines on their terminal and **write** sends the message to the other user. To avoid typing at the same time, each user should end a "speech" by typing a line that has the single letter

o

to signify "over", or "go ahead". When the other user sends you this, you know it is your turn to "talk", and vice versa.

When your communication is finished, you should type

oo

<ctrl-D>

Here, **oo** means "over and out", and the **<ctrl-D>** terminates the **write** command. Note that **o** and **oo** are polite conventions, and are not necessary to using **write**.

mail: Send an Electronic Letter

You can electronic mail to another user on your COHERENT system by using the command **mail**. This command works whether or not that person is logged into the system at the time you type your message. The message is stored in an electronic "mailbox", and the user will notified that a message is waiting for him the next time he logs into your system.

To mail a message to user **anne**, just type:

```
mail anne
```

mail immediately prompts you for a title for your message:

```
Subject:
```

You can type the message's subject, which will be used to title the message, or you can just press **<return>**.

Once you have titled your message, type the body of the message. You can conclude your message in any of three ways: you can type **<ctrl-D>**, type a period '.' at the beginning of a line, or a question mark '?' at the beginning of a line. The first two methods end the message immediately; the last method, however, invokes an editor, and lets you edit the message further before sending it on to the intended recipient.

For example, to send your message to user **anne**, you might do the following. First, invoke **mail**:

```
mail anne
```

Next, give your message a title:

Subject: I'll be working late

Finally, type the body of the message:

```
I'll be working late. I hope to get home before Catherine
and George go to bed. Please remind Ivan and Marian to do
their homework. Marian should remember to practice her
violin.
<ctrl-D>
```

If you wish, you can first type your message into a file and then mail it. For example:

```
ed
a
All come to the birthday party at four
next to the pump room.
.
w hb.msg
q
```

To mail the message to user **jill**, type:

```
mail jill <hb.msg
```

You can send a mail message to several users at one time by listing each user's name on the command line. For example, the command

```
mail jill jack ted barb <hb.party
```

mails the contents of file **hb.party** to **jill**, **jack**, **ted**, and **barb**. To illustrate the use of the mail command, send yourself a mail message. Type the following; substitute your user name for "you" in the mail command:

```
mail you
Subject: test the COHERENT mail system
This is a note to
myself to test
mail.
```

If someone has sent you mail, the COHERENT system will tell you:

```
You have mail.
```

when you log in.

To receive mail, type the **mail** command with no parameters:

```
mail
```

If you have no mail, COHERENT will tell you:

```
No mail.
```

If you do have mail, the system will print each message on your terminal, along with the user name of the sender, and the date and time that the message was mailed.

After each message, the **mail** program types a question mark **?** and waits for your reply. Type a **d** if you wish to delete the message that you have just read, a **<return>** to go onto the next message without deleting the message you just read, an **s** command to save the mail message in the file **mbox**, or the command **q** to exit the mail program.

You will know that you are finished with all of your messages when **mail** sends you a **?** without typing anything before it.

mail can also send messages to other COHERENT or UNIX systems, via the UUCP utility. See the accompanying documentation on UUCP to see how you can set up mail to do this.

pr, lpr: Print Files

The command **lpr** prints files for you, making sure that your request does not conflict with other uses of the printer. To print a file, type the command

```
lpr file
```

substituting the name of the file to be printed for "file". Normally, the system prints a banner page before it prints a job; if you wish to suppress the banner page, use the **-B** option:

```
lpr -B file
```

If no file is given, the standard input is printed. Thus, **lpr** can be used in pipes; this allows you to print immediately matter that you type on your keyboard.

lpr will take your file and try to print it on any printer you have plugged into your computer's parallel port. If you do not have a printer plugged in, or if it is not turned on, **lpr** will hold onto your files until the printer becomes ready; it will wait days, if necessary, until the printer becomes available.

lpr is also intelligent enough to handle requests from several different users: if more than one user wants to print a file, **lpr** will print them one at a time. In this way, the COHERENT system lets several users share one printer.

lpr does nothing to the file other than print it. This means that no page headings are printed, nor does it break it the file up neatly into page-sized chunks. Another command, **pr**, does this for you. It paginates the standard input, giving a header with date, file name, page number, and line numbers. The paginated output appears on the standard output.

To print a paginated file on the line printer, type:

```
pr file | lpr -b banner
```

Note the use of the pipe '|', which passes the output of **pr** as input to **lpr**.

echo: Echo the Command Line

The command **echo** repeats its arguments on the standard output. For example, the command

```
echo five six
```

types on the terminal:

```
five six
```

Although this may not seem to be such a big deal, **echo** can help you find out exactly what the arguments to any command would be if any special characters are involved.

For example, if you had problems with a command of the form

```
cat **
```

and you wanted to be sure what the arguments were going to be, give the same parameter string to **echo**:

```
echo **
```

echo shows you how the shell transforms the wildcard characters into arguments. In this case, the wildcards are transformed into a list of file names in the current directory. To be sure that the double asterisk itself is used as a parameter, enclose it between apostrophes:

```
echo '**'
```

The result will be

```
**
```

on the terminal.

ed: Text Line Editor

There are many uses for files on the COHERENT system — user manuals, notes, source programs, mail, and so on. The COHERENT system includes a number of tools to create and modify files, especially files of text. The interactive line editor **ed** lets you create or change text files.

With **ed** you can create files interactively, add text to files, rearrange paragraphs in a file, and correct spelling errors.

For a full description of all the **ed** features, see the *ed Interactive Editor Tutorial*.

MicroEMACS: Text Screen Editor

COHERENT includes a full-featured screen editor, called MicroEMACS. MicroEMACS allows you to divide the screen into sections, called *windows*, and display and edit a different file in each one. It has a full search-and-replace function, allows you to define keyboard macros, and has a large set of commands for killing and moving text.

Also, MicroEMACS has a full help function for C programming. Should you need information about any macro or library function that is included with COHERENT, all you need to do is move the text cursor over that word and press a special combination of keys; MicroEMACS will then open a window and display information about that macro or function.

For a list of the MicroEMACS commands, see the Lexicon entry for **me**, the MicroEMACS command. A following section of this manual gives a full tutorial on MicroEMACS. In the meantime, however, you can begin to use MicroEMACS by learning a half-dozen or so commands.

To invoke MicroEMACS, type the command

```
me hello.c
```

at the COHERENT prompt. This invokes MicroEMACS to edit a file called **hello.c**. Now, type the following text, as it is shown here. If you make a mistake, simply backspace over it and type it correctly; the backspace key will wrap around lines:

```
main()
{
    printf("hello, world\n");
}
```

When you have finished, *save* the file by typing **<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>** (that is, hold down the control key and type 'X', then hold down the control key and type 'S'). MicroEMACS will tell you how many lines of text it just saved. Exit from the editor by typing **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**.

Now, re-invoke MicroEMACS by typing

```
me hello.c
```

The text of the file you just typed is now displayed on the screen. Try changing the word **hello** to **Hello**, as follows: First, type **<ctrl-N>**. That moves you to the *next* line. (The command **<ctrl-P>** would move you to the *previous* line, if there were one.) Now, type the command **<ctrl-F>**. As you can see, the cursor moved *forward* one space. Continue to type **<ctrl-F>** until the cursor is located over the letter 'h' in **hello**. If you overshoot the character, move the cursor *backwards* by typing **<ctrl-B>**.

When the cursor is correctly positioned, delete the 'h' by typing the *delete* command **<ctrl-D>**; then type a capital 'H' to take its place.

With these few commands, you can load files into memory, edit them, create new files, save them to disk, and exit. This just gives you a sample of what MicroEMACS can do, but it is enough so that you can begin to do real work.

Now, again *save* the file by typing **<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>**, and exit from MicroEMACS by typing **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**.

Just as a reminder, the following table gives the MicroEMACS commands presented above:

<code><ctrl-N></code> or ↓	Move cursor to the <i>next</i> line
<code><ctrl-P></code> or ↑	Move cursor to the <i>previous</i> line
<code><ctrl-F></code> or →	Move cursor <i>forward</i> one character
<code><ctrl-B></code> or ←	Move cursor <i>backward</i> one character
<code><ctrl-D></code>	Delete a character
<code><ctrl-X></code> <code><ctrl-S></code>	Save the edited file
<code><ctrl-X></code> <code><ctrl-C></code>	Exit from MicroEMACS
<code><ctrl-Z></code>	Save a file and exit

Note that on some terminals, the arrow keys will not work. Note, too, that some remote terminals may have trouble using `<ctrl-S>`, if they use XON/XOFF to control flow. In this case, use `<ctrl-Z>` instead.

For more information, see the tutorial for MicroEMACS included with in this manual.

grep: Find Patterns in Text Files

The command **grep** lets you find lines that contain a *pattern* within one or more files. Patterns are sometimes called *regular expressions*.

To illustrate **grep**, create file **doc1** by typing:

```
cat >doc1
a few lines
of text.
<ctrl-D>
```

Then the command

```
grep text doc1
```

prints the second line of file **doc1**:

```
of text.
```

The first parameter to **grep** is the *pattern* for which you are looking; the rest of the arguments are the names of files to be examined. **text** is the pattern and **doc1** is the file.

To find if a particular user is on the system, pipe **who** into **grep**:

```
who | grep you
```

(Substitute the user name in question for **you**.) Try it with your user name. The pattern is **you**, but no file name is specified. **grep** reads input from the standard input, which in this example is connected to the output of the **who** command.

You can specify several files to be searched; simply put the additional file names after the first:

```
grep pattern doc1 doc2
```

Or, you can search all files in the current directory for the pattern with

```
grep pattern *
```

The asterisk will be interpreted to mean all files, and `grep` will look for *pattern* in each. The search pattern can be a *pattern*. Patterns are fully discussed in the tutorial for `ed`.

The name **grep** is derived from the `ed` command

```
g/re/p
```

where “re” means regular expression, or pattern. In giving a pattern to `grep`, be sure that you enclose it between apostrophes. Otherwise, the shell will interpret the pattern expression before `grep` sees it.

You can also locate lines that do *not* contain given patterns by using the `grep` option `-v`.

```
grep -v bugs prog1 prog2
```

This command finds and prints all lines in files `prog1` and `prog2` that do not contain the pattern `bugs`.

date: Print the Date

The COHERENT system keeps track of the time and date. To find the date and time, use the command:

```
date
```

COHERENT responds with the day of the week, the month day and year, and the time of day.

Internally, the COHERENT system records the date and time as the number of seconds since January 1, 1970, 00:00:00 Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). This means that files created in one time zone and referenced in another time zone will bear the correct time. The time and date printed out is converted from the internal form to the local time.

time: Measure Command Execution Time

The command `time` lets you measure how long a command takes to execute. This can be useful if you are improving a program and need to time its execution, or are determining how long a program takes under different conditions.

To use `time`, precede the command that you are timing with the `time` keyword. For example, to time how long it takes to list the users on the system, type:

```
time who >temp
```

When `who` is finished, `time` prints the time the command required to execute, the time spent in `who`, and the amount of time spent in COHERENT itself. The results resemble:

```
Real: 0.9
User: 0.1
Sys: 0.2
```

This command gives different results, depending on the size of your computer and the number of users on it when you type the command. The **Real** number (0.9) is the amount of elapsed time taken by the command. The **User** time (0.1) is the amount of time spent in the command **who** itself, and the **Sys** time (0.2) is the amount of time that COHERENT itself spent processing the job.

passwd: Change Your Password

You should change your password from time to time, to ensure that no unauthorized person can gain access to your files (or to the system as a whole).

It is easy to change passwords on the COHERENT system: just type the command **passwd**. **passwd** first asks you for your current password (if you have one), and then asks you to enter your new password twice. Entering the new password twice helps ensure that the system gets the password as you want it. If you do not type it the same way both times, COHERENT will say:

```
Password not changed.
```

You must then begin again with the command **passwd**.

Be sure the password is something that you can remember. It is recommended that the password be at least six characters long. Do not write it down, but memorize it. You can use a four-letter password, but if you do, you should mix upper-case and lower-case letters to make it more difficult for outsiders to guess.

stty: Change Terminal Behavior

Because a wide variety of terminals can be used with the COHERENT system, you must pass some information to the COHERENT system so it can handle your terminal correctly.

The command **stty** describes the information COHERENT currently has for you; you can then use **stty** with arguments to change how COHERENT handles your terminal.

For example, COHERENT normally echoes each character you type, as you type it. However, if your terminal also echoes what you type, you will see double characters. To prevent this, issue the command:

```
stty -echo
```

The program **login** uses this feature when you type your password, to help keep it secret from anyone who is kibbitzing at your desk.

To set the echo feature again, type:

```
stty echo
```

When you first log in, the system presumes that your terminal does not directly handle the **tab** character, so when COHERENT sends a **tab** to your terminal it simulates it

with spaces. If your terminal does handle tabs, issue the command:

```
stty tabs
```

The COHERENT system will no longer substitute spaces for tabs. To go back to substitution,

```
stty -tabs
```

The **<erase>** character lets you delete the previously typed character. The **<kill>** character lets you delete the line that you have been typing but have not yet finished. By default, COHERENT sets these to, respectively, **<ctrl-H>** and **<ctrl-U>**. To change them to, respectively, **<ctrl-E>** and **<ctrl-K>**, use the **stty** command as follows:

```
stty erase ^E kill ^K
```

The carat '^' tells **stty** that you want to specify a control character.

To reset **erase** and **kill** to the default values at login, the command

```
stty ek
```

suffices. This is equivalent to:

```
stty erase ^H kill ^U
```

To see what your current terminal parameter settings are, type

```
stty
```

with no arguments.

Introducing sh, the COHERENT Shell

There is more to a COHERENT command than simply typing it and seeing the results on your screen. You can hook commands together to form complex *scripts*, redirect the output of commands, run commands conditionally, and write files of commands (called *scripts*) that can be run as commands themselves. These and other features enable you to construct command programs and save them in a *script* file that is easy for you or another COHERENT user to call upon, yet performs a complex sequence of steps.

This and much more is made possible by **sh**, the COHERENT shell. **sh** is the program that accepts what you type at your terminal, interprets it, and passes it on to the COHERENT system's command executor for execution. **sh** is an intricate and subtle program, and from it comes much of the COHERENT system's power and flexibility.

Simple Commands

The shell command language is built around simple commands. Many have been shown in examples already, such as the command to list your directory:

```
lc
```

You can combine several simple commands on one line by separating them with semi-colons:


```
who;du;mail
```

The shell executes the commands in sequence as if they had been typed:

```
who
du
mail
```

In both of these examples, **du** does not begin execution until **who** is finished, and **mail** does not begin until **du** is done.

Special Characters

The shell treats the following characters specially; if you want to use them without their special meaning, you must precede them with the backslash character `\`, or enclose them within quotation marks:

```
* ? [ ] | ; { } ( )
$ = : ' ' " < > << >>
```

The function of these characters will be explained later in this section. To use one of these characters in a command, for example '?', type:

```
echo \?
```

In addition, the shell treats the following words in a special way when they appear as the first word of a command:

```
case do done elif else esac
fi if in then until while
```

Running Commands in the Background

The shell can execute commands simultaneously as well as sequentially. This means that while the shell is executing one command, it lets you type and execute another command. Under the shell, the number of commands you can execute at the same time is limited mainly by the amount of memory and disk space on your system.

If a command is followed by the special character '&', the shell begins to execute it immediately, and prompts you to enter another command. For example, if you need to **sort** a large file but want to continue with other commands while the sort is executing, you can type:

```
sort >bigfile.sorted bigfile.unsorted &
ed prog
```

This allows you to edit file **prog** while your computer quietly executes the sort in the background.

When you run a command with **&**, the shell types the *process id* of the command started in background. When the COHERENT system runs a command, it assigns that command a *process id*, which is a number that uniquely identifies that command to COHERENT. Normally, there is no need to be concerned about these numbers.

However, when you run commands in the background, the shell tells you the id of the background process so you can keep track of its execution.

The command

```
ps
```

lists the processes you are currently running. If you have no background jobs, the response is:

```
TTY PID
30: 362 -sh
30: 399 ps
```

The first column shows the number that COHERENT has assigned to your terminal. This is the same terminal number printed out by `who`. The second column shows the process id; the third column shows the program or command executing. The characters `-sh` in the third column means the login shell. There are two processes because the shell is running the `ps` command as a separate process.

Once you have started a background command, `ps` shows you the process entry, which has the process id that the shell typed out for you.

If you need the results from a background job, you can wait for it to finish by issuing the command:

```
wait
```

The shell will then accept no further commands until all your background jobs are finished. If there are no background jobs, there will be no delay.

Scripts

Many of the commands that you use in COHERENT are *programs*, such as `ed`. Others, like the `man` command, are *scripts*, or files that merely call other commands. You can write scripts on your own, simply by using a text editor to type into a file the commands you wish to execute. If you frequently use a set of commands, you can save yourself from having to type them over and over by simply typing them once into a script.

For example, suppose that you wish to check periodically the amount of disk space that you have used, the amount of disk space still available, and see who is using the system. You can write a script to do all of this automatically. Create the script `good.am` by typing the following commands:

```

ed
a
du
df
who | sort
mail
.
w good.am
q

```

From now on, to execute the above-listed commands, you need only type:

```
sh good.am
```

where **sh** is a command that means: read commands from a file, in this case **good.am**. If you can issue a command from your terminal, you can also execute it from within a script.

You can make a command file directly executable by using the command **chmod**. For example, the command

```
chmod +x good.am
```

lets you execute the script **good.am** by typing

```
good.am
```

and leaving off the **sh**. Once you have done the **chmod** command, you can still issue the commands by typing:

```
sh good.am
```

as well as use **ed** or **MicroEMACS** to change the contents of the script.

Notice that the commands called by a script may themselves be scripts. This is illustrated by the following script, **second.sh**:

```

ed
a
sh good.am
lc
.
w second.sh
q

```

Thus, typing:

```
sh second.sh
```

calls the script **good.am**, and also calls the command **lc**.

.profile: Login Shell Script

When you log into the system and before you are issued your first prompt, COHERENT checks your home directory for a file named `.profile`; if it is present, the shell executes the commands it contains.

This enables you to have COHERENT execute commands as soon as you log in. Check if your installation provides one for you by doing an `lc` (be sure that your current directory is the home directory). If the file is there, print it by saying:

```
cat .profile
```

Some of the commands may be of the form:

```
PATH=':/bin:/usr/bin'
```

This sort of command will be discussed below.

Substitutions

Scripts of the form shown above are processed by the COHERENT shell without change. However, the COHERENT shell increases the power of commands by performing three kinds of substitutions within commands before it executes them.

First, it replaces special characters in commands with file names from the current or other directories. This allows you to issue a single command that processes several files.

Second, you can give a script *arguments*, much like arguments that are passed to a Pascal, Algol, or C procedure. This lets you target the action of the script to a specific file name specified when you call it.

Third, the output of one command can be “piped” into another command to serve as its input.

We will use the command `echo` to illustrate these kinds of substitution. Remember that substitutions take place for all commands in the same way that they do for `echo`.

File Name Substitution

File names are often used as command parameters. That is, you will often tell a command to do something to one or more files. By using special shell characters, you can substitute file names in commands. These special characters describe file name *patterns* for the shell to look for in the directory. When the shell finds the file names, it replaces the pattern with them.

The asterisk `*` matches any number of any characters in file names. Thus,

```
echo *
```

echoes all the file names in the current directory, whereas

```
echo f*
```

gives all file names that begin with the letter `f`, and

```
echo a*z
```

lists all names that begin with a and end with z.

To illustrate more clearly, create two files by typing

```
cat >zz1
<ctrl-D>
cat >zz2
<ctrl-D>
```

Then the **echo** command

```
echo zz*
```

produces the output:

```
zz1 zz2
```

Thus, by using a single *, you can substitute several file names into a command. In other words, the command

```
echo zz*
```

is equivalent to

```
echo zz1 zz2
```

If no file names fit the pattern, the special characters are not changed, but left in the command exactly as you typed them. To illustrate, type the command

```
rm zz*
echo zz*
```

The first command will remove all files whose names begin with **zz**, and is therefore equivalent to:

```
rm zz1 zz2
```

The **echo** command that follows, however, echoes

```
zz*
```

because no files begin with **zz**; they were just removed.

Enclosing command words within apostrophes prevents the shell from matching file names with the enclosed characters. In the unlikely event that you have a file whose name is

```
zz*
```

that you want to remove, use the command

```
rm 'zz*'
```

The * is enclosed within apostrophes, and therefore is not changed by the shell.

Another special character `?` match any one letter. To see how this works, create empty files `file1`, `file2`, and `file33` by typing:

```
>file1
>file2
>file33
```

The command

```
echo file?
```

replies

```
file1 file2
```

because `?` does not match `33`.

You can use brackets `[` and `]` to indicate a choice of single characters in a pattern:

```
echo file[12]
```

This command replies:

```
file1 file2
```

To match a range of characters, separate the beginning and end of the range with a hyphen. The command

```
echo [a-m]*
```

prints any file name beginning with a lower-case letter from the first half of the alphabet, and is exactly equivalent to:

```
echo [abcdefghijklm]*
```

When such patterns find several file names, they are inserted in alphabetical order.

Because the character `/` is important in path names, the shell does not match it with `*` or `?` in patterns. The slash must be matched explicitly; that is, it is matched only by a `/` itself. Therefore, to find all the files in the `/usr` directories with the name `notes`, type:

```
echo /usr/*/notes
```

The asterisk matches all the subdirectories of `/usr` that contain a file named `notes`.

In addition, a leading period in a file name must be matched explicitly. If you have a file in your current directory with the name `.profile`, the command

```
echo *file
```

does not match it.

These patterns can appear anywhere within a command or a command file.

Parameter Substitution

Each shell script can have up to nine *positional parameters*. This lets you write scripts that can be used for many circumstances. Recall that command parameters follow the command itself and are separated by tabs or spaces. An example of a command reference with two parameters is:

```
show first second
```

where **first** and **second** are the parameters.

To substitute the positional parameters in the script, use the character **\$** followed by the decimal number of the parameter. For example, build the script **show** by typing:

```
ed
a
cat $1
cat $2
diff $1 $2
.
w show
q
chmod +x show
```

\$1 and **\$2** refer to the first and second parameters, respectively. Create two sample files:

```
cat >first
line 1
line two
line 3
<ctrl-D>
cat >second
line 1
line 2
line 3
<ctrl-D>
```

Then, issue the **show** command

```
show first second
```

which has the same effect as typing:

```
cat first
cat second
diff first second
```

If you issue the **show** command with fewer than the required number of parameters, the shell substitutes an empty string in its place. For example, using the command with only one parameter

```
show first
is equivalent to
cat first
cat
diff first
```

where the null string has been substituted for \$2.

The example above shows the parameter references separated from each other by a space. In some uses, you may wish to prefix a substituted parameter to a name or a number. When more than one digit follows a \$, the shell picks up the first digit as the number of the parameter. To illustrate, build a shell file **pos**:

```
ed
a
echo $167
.
w pos
q
chmod +x pos
```

Then call the script with

```
pos five
```

and the result will be:

```
five67
```

Shell Variable Substitution

In addition to positional parameters, the shell provides *variables*. You can assign values to variables, test them, and substitute them in commands.

The variable name can be built from letters, numbers, and the underscore character; for example:

```
high_tension
a
directory
167
```

Note that keywords must not be single digits, because the shell then treats them as positional parameters. Be aware that the shell treats upper-case and lower-case letters differently in variable names.

An assignment statement gives a value to a shell variable:

```
a=welcome
```

You can inspect their value with the **echo** command:


```
echo $a
```

The shell substitutes the value of the variable `a` in the `echo` command, which then appears as

```
echo welcome
```

COHERENT responds to this command by printing:

```
welcome
```

Don't forget the `$` when referring to the value.

Notice that the shell looks for special characters in any command that it sees — this includes the *space* character. To avoid problems, enclose the value to be assigned in apostrophes:

```
phrase='several words long'
```

There are several uses for variables. One is to hold a long string that you expect to type repeatedly as part of a command. If you are editing files in a subdirectory like

```
/usr/wisdom/source/widget
```

you can abbreviate if you set a variable `pw` to:

```
pw='/usr/wisdom/source/widget'
```

Then simply using `$pw` in a command

```
echo $pw
```

substitutes the long path name.

Another use of shell variables is as keyword parameters to commands. These then can be used the same way as positional parameters. To see how this works, create another script resembling `show`:

```
ed
a
cat $one
cat $two
diff $one $two
.
w show2
q
chmod +x show2
```

To use `show2`, issue:

```
one=first two=second show2
```

This is equivalent in effect to:

```
cat first
cat second
diff first second
```

Unlike positional parameters, keyword parameters may be several characters in length. If you want some text to follow immediately a keyword parameter, enclose the keyword parameter in braces. To illustrate this, build a command file called **brace**, as follows:

```
ed
a
echo 'with brace:' ${a}bc
echo 'without brace:' $abc
.
w brace
q
chmod +x brace
```

Call the command file with a set:

```
a=567 brace
```

The result is:

```
with brace: 567bc
without brace:
```

When used in this way, the keyword parameters must be assigned before the command and on the same line as the command. In this case, the assignment of keyword parameters does not affect the variable after the command is executed. For example, if you type:

```
one=ordinal
one=first two=second show2
echo 'value of one is ' $one
```

echo produces:

```
value of one is ordinal
```

Variables set other than on the line of a command are not normally accessible to a script. To illustrate, build a parameter display script:

```
ed
a
echo 1 $1 2 $2 p1 $p1 p2 $p2
.
w pars
q
chmod +x pars
```

This will be used to show the behavior of parameters. The parameters to **echo** without a \$ help to read the output. To pass positional parameters, type:

```
pars ay bee
```

The output is:

```
1 ay 2 bee p1 p2
```

To pass keyword parameters, type:

```
p1=start p2=begin pars
```

The result is:

```
1 2 p1 start p2 begin
```

To illustrate that the setting of **p1** and **p2** did not “stick”, type:

```
echo $p1 $p2 'to show'
```

echo replies:

```
to show
```

This indicates that **p1** and **p2** are not set.

Illustrating that variables set separately from a command are not seen by the command, type:

```
p1=outsidel p2=outside2
pars
```

This replies:

```
1 2 p1 p2
```

By using the **export** command, however, such variables can be made available to commands. The commands

```
export p1 p2
p1='see me' p2=hello
pars
```

produce:

```
1 2 p1 see me p2 hello
```

This indicates that after the **export** of **p1** and **p2**, they are available to other commands. Once a variable has appeared in an **export** command, its value can be changed without a need to **export** it again.

Command Substitution

By enclosing a command between ‘ characters, you can feed its output onto the command line of another command. For example

```
echo `ls`
```

echoes the output of the **ls** command.

Special Shell Variables

When you log into the COHERENT system, it sets the shell variable **HOME** to your *home* or default directory path. If your user name is **henry**, then the command

```
echo $HOME
```

on most systems prints:

```
/usr/henry
```

The change directory command **cd** sets the working directory to the path found in **HOME** if no argument is given.

The shell normally prompts you with **\$** for commands, and with **>** if more information is needed. These two prompts are taken by the shell from the variables **PS1** and **PS2**. You can change these if you want different prompts, for example

```
PS1="Fred's Software Palace: "  
PS2='!'
```

To have these take effect each time you log in, put the assignment statements in your **profile** file.

The shell variable **PATH** lists the path names of directories that contain commands. To show the contents of **PATH**, type:

```
echo $PATH
```

It typically will show:

```
:/bin:/usr/bin
```

This means that the shell looks for a command first in the current directory, then in **/bin**, and, if not found there, then in **/usr/bin**. The path names are separated by **:'**. This means that an empty string precedes the first **:'**, the current directory. Another common setting for **PATH** is:

```
...:/bin:/usr/bin
```

This means that the shell seeks commands first in the current directory, then in **..'** (the parent directory of the current directory), then in **/bin**, and finally in **/usr/bin**.

dot . : Read Commands

Similar to the command **sh** is the **.** command. The command

```
. cfil
```

causes the shell to read and execute commands from **cfil**.

This differs from the **sh** command in several respects. First, there's no way to pass parameters to **cfil** with the **'** command. Second, the **sh** command executes another shell to read the commands, whereas **'** simply reads the commands directly. Finally, all the string variables and parameters are accessible by **cfil**.

The command file **good.am** created earlier can be executed with:

```
. good.am
```

This has the same effect. Similarly, the '.' can be itself be used within a command file:

```
ed
a
. good.am
lc
.
w third.sh
q
```

Then, the command

```
. third.sh
```

has the same result as the command:

```
sh third.sh
```

Values Returned by Commands

Most COHERENT commands return a value that indicates success or failure. For example, if **grep** cannot find your file, it issues a diagnostic message and returns a value that tells the shell that something went wrong. You can examine this value by typing the command:

```
echo $?
```

This tells you the value returned by the last command executed. Zero indicates success (true), whereas a non-zero value indicates failure (false). Note that this convention is the opposite of that in the C language (a fact that has led to confusion on occasion).

You can use the value returned by a command to affect decisions about executing other commands.

test: Condition Testing

For most commands, the return value is a side-effect of their operation. However, the **test** command's only task is to return a value. This command can test many conditions, and return a value to indicate whether the requested condition is true or false.

To determine if a file exists, the command

```
test -f file01
```

returns true (zero) if **file01** exists and is not a directory. To check if a file is a directory, use:

```
test -d file01
```

test can also test strings. This is useful when you are using parameter substitution. To illustrate, build the following command:

```
ed
a
test $1 = $2
echo 'test 1 & 2 for equal:' $?
test $1 != $2
echo 'test 1 & 2 for not equal:' $?
.
w test.ed
q
chmod +x test.ed
```

Because the '=' is a parameter, be sure to surround it with space characters.

This command file tests its two parameters for equality. Try the commands:

```
test.ed one two
test.ed one one
```

The **test** command has many other options; see the Lexicon entry for **test** for details.

Executing Commands Conditionally

Type the following commands to create two files:

```
cat >file1
line one
line two
line three
<ctrl-D>
cat >file2
line one
two is different
line three
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, compare the files and print the return value:

```
cmp -s file1 file2
echo $?
```

The command **cmp** compares two files byte-by-byte; the **-s** option tells **cmp** merely to indicate whether the files were the same. This prints 1 (false) because the files are not the same.

To process a second command based on the result returned by the first, type:

```
cmp -s file1 file2 || cat file2
```

The characters **||** signify that the following command **cat** should be executed if the **cmp**

command returns a non-zero value, which it will for this example.

The two characters **&&** execute the command that follows them only if the preceding command returns true (zero).

Now, create a third file with the command:

```
cp file1 file3
```

Type the command:

```
cmp -s file1 file3 && rm file3
```

This command removes **file3** if **cmp** indicates that **file1** and **file3** are identical. Because **cmp** is preceded by the copy command **cp**, the files **file1** and **file3** are identical, and so **file3** is removed.

Control Flow

Because the shell is a programming language as well as a program, it provides constructs for conditional execution and loops. These are **for**, **if**, **while**, **until**, and **case**. Also, a subshell can be executed within **'(** and **')**.

for: Execute a Loop

The **for** construct processes a set of commands once for each element in a list of items.

To illustrate **for**, type the following commands to COHERENT:

```
for i in a b c
do echo $i
done
```

The items **a**, **b**, and **c** form the list of value that the variable **i** assumes. The shell executes **echo** with **i** assuming each value in turn. The result of these commands is:

```
a
b
c
```

Notice that after you type the line containing **for**, COHERENT prompts with a different character **>** (on most COHERENT systems). The shell does this to remind you that you must type more information. After you type the line containing **done**, the prompt again becomes **\$**.

The **for** command is usually used within a script. Also, you can leave off the list of value to the index variable; when you do this, the shell by default uses the arguments typed on the script's command line as the values for the index variable. To illustrate, type:

```
ed
a
for i
do echo $i
echo '----'
done
.
w script.for
q
chmod +x script.for
```

The

```
for i
```

statement is equivalent to:

```
for i in $*
```

where `$*` means "all positional parameters". Notice that two commands are repeated for each value of `i`. Now, call `script.for` with the following command line:

```
script.for 1 2 3 4 test
```

The result is:

```
1
---
2
---
3
---
4
---
test
---
```

if: Execute Conditionally

`if` tests the result of a command and conditionally executes other commands based upon that result. It can be used instead of `&&` and `||`, as shown above. Instead of:

```
cmp -s file1 file2 && cat file2
```

you can use:

```
if cmp -s file1 file2
then cat file2
fi
```

This means that the shell executes


```
ed
a
if test -f $1
then cat $1
elif test -f $2
then cat $2
elif test -f $3
then cat $3
else echo 'None are files'
fi
.
w cat.1
q
chmod +x cat.1
```

while: Execute a Loop

Another looping or repetitive shell statement is the **while** statement. The commands

```
while command1
do command2
done
```

first performs *command1*. If its result is true, *command2* is executed, and *command1* is again executed. This process continues until *command1* returns false (non-zero).

until: Another Looping Construct

The construct **until** resembles **while**. For example, the commands:

```
until command1
do command2
done
```

execute *command2* until *command1* returns true (zero).

case: Serial Conditional Execution

The **case** statement resembles the **if** statement in that it offers a multiple choice. To illustrate, type the following script, which lets you choose one of several ways to list the contents of a directory:

```

ed
a
case $1 in
    1) ls -l;;
    2) ls;;
    3) lc;;
    *) echo unknown parameter $1;;
esac
.
w dir
q
chmod +x dir

```

The words **case** and **esac** bracket the entire case statement. The effect of the command

```
dir 2
```

is equivalent to:

```
ls
```

Each choice within the **case** statement is indicated by a string followed by **)**:

```
2)
```

indicates what is to be executed if argument **\$1** has the value **2**.

The strings that select the choices may be patterns. The choice **'*')** signifies that a match can be made on any string. Notice that this resembles the use of ***** to substitute any file name. An expression of the form

```
[1-9])
```

in a **case** statement matches any digit from 1 through 9. A list of alternatives can be presented by separating the choices with a vertical bar:

```
a|b|c) command
```

Each command or command list in the case choice must be terminated by a double semi-colon **;;**.

Summary

The shell is a command programming language that handles simple commands as well as complex commands that can iterate as well as make decisions. Three kinds of substitution are provided to increase the power of your commands.

For more information about the shell, see the tutorial for the shell that follows in this manual. For more information about a given command, see its entry in the Lexicon.

Creating and Using Programs

The COHERENT system provides C and assembly language for programming. C is a high-level language that has replaced assembly language in most environments where it is available. Programming in C gives a dramatic improvement in programmer productivity, with little loss in execution speed relative to assembly language. The COHERENT system has both native C compilers and cross compilers. Compilers are available for Z8000, PDP-11, 8088, 8086, 80286, and M68000.

as gives you the assembler for the host machine. Assembly language is used for those few programs that require a special hardware access beyond what C can give. Because of the power and flexibility of C, assembly language is now effectively dead except for certain routines deep within the system. Assemblers for other computer architectures are also available with the COHERENT system; such assemblers are called *cross assemblers*.

Each compiler reads the program source from a file. The resulting compiled program is placed in an object file. To run a program, you simply type the name of an object file as if it were a command. In fact, most COHERENT commands that you will enter are actually object programs.

Basic Steps in COHERENT Programming

The steps that are necessary to generate a program are:

1. Edit the program source file
2. Compile the source program, correcting any errors
3. Test and debug the program
4. Run the program

If you have compilation errors in step 2, or program errors in step 3 or 4, return to step 1.

Use `ed` or `MicroEMACS` to build and change the source program, the `cc` command to compile the source program and produce an object program, and `db` to help debug the program. Although the C compiler provides a macro facility, other languages do not. Therefore, if the source program uses macros, you can use `m4` to expand the macros.

This section covers each of these steps and provides some example programs.

Creating the Program Source

Details on the use of `ed` and `MicroEMACS` are covered in their respective tutorials, which follow in this manual. This section assumes that you have basic knowledge of `ed`'s commands and principles of operation.

For the first program, try a simple program that prints a short message on your terminal. To build the program, enter:

```

ed
a
main ()
{
    printf ("The COHERENT operating system\n");
}
.
w small.c
q

```

With the first line, you call the editor `ed`. You add lines to the (initially empty) file using the `a` command, and signal the end of these lines with a line containing only a period or dot. The file is then written to file `small.c` with the `w` command. The `q` command exits from `ed` and returns to COHERENT.

The program itself begins with the special word `main` which defines a function and must appear in every C program. The parentheses, here with nothing between them, enclose any arguments that are passed to the function. They are required even if there are no arguments. The body of the program appears between the braces `{` and `}`.

The function `printf` is part of the standard library of C programs. It prints formatted information on the terminal. In this case it will produce the string enclosed between quotation marks. The special character string

`\n`

means "newline". Two lines of output to the terminal can be produced by

```
"line 1\nline 2\n"
```

as an argument to `printf`. This appears in the output as:

```
line 1
line 2
```

For a fuller introduction to the C language, see the tutorial on the *The C Language*, which follows in this manual.

cc: Compiling the Program

The command `cc` compiles C programs. It executes all the parts of the C compiler and the associated linker `ld`. The linker combines pieces of programs and includes necessary elements from the library, such as `printf`. The linker is occasionally called from the command line, but only for more complex problems than you are trying here. To compile our test program, type the command

```
cc small.c
```

If the compiler detects any errors, it prints a message on the terminal, along with the line number that contains the error. You can use this line number to find the error with your editor and fix it. You can now use the program by simply typing:

small

The tutorial on *The C Language* describes `cc` in greater detail; also see its entry in the Lexicon for a full summary of its many capabilities.

m4: Macro Processing

To extend the capabilities of all languages, the COHERENT system provides a macro processor, called `m4`.

Program source for all languages consists of character strings. Macro processors perform string replacement, whereby a string in the input file may be replaced by another string. `m4` provides parameter substitution, as well as testing values of currently available strings and conditional processing. `m4` is unique in that you can rearrange large sections of the input text by using the macros. For more information on `m4`, see the tutorial *Introduction to the m4 Macro Processor*, which follows in this manual.

make: Building Larger Programs

All the examples of programs thus far have been self-contained. As programs grow larger, it is usual to divide the source program into smaller files. This simplifies editing, speeds compilation, increases modularity, and lets several different programs share common functions.

Thus, in developing the larger program, you may have several source files in your directory, possibly an header file or two, and the object files that result from compilation. From these are built the executable file that runs when you type its name.

To change or fix the program, you must edit the source programs or header files in question with `ed`, recompile the required source, and relink all the modules. But, with a change that affects several modules, it can be tricky to remember exactly which modules need recompilation, and it can be time-consuming to recompile all modules.

COHERENT provides a command called `make`, which solves this problem. `make` examines the time a file was last modified, and the time of modification of files that it depends upon, and performs the necessary compilation or other processing. (COHERENT file system directories contain the time that each file was created or modified.)

The tutorial *The make Programming Discipline*, which follows in this manual, fully introduces this powerful and useful program.

db: Debugging the Program

The first and most critical step to debugging programs is to not put bugs in them! The methods of structured analysis, design, and programming, or the method of stepwise refinement can substantially reduce the number of errors in a program.

One can also place `printf` statements at strategic points throughout the program to display logic flow and key data values. These display statements should be designed so that they can be turned off for normal operation without removing them from the program.

On occasion, however, you may find that it is necessary to debug at the machine level. If you must, COHERENT's **db** will make it possible to do so.

db provides tools that make the machine program instructions visible in the most natural notation. That is, instructions are displayed in a fashion that resembles assembly language, numbers can be displayed in hexadecimal, octal, or decimal as needed, and strings of characters displayed in familiar graphic form. **db** can also patch a program to be run again, as well as to control the execution of a program with break-points and one step at a time.

Briefly, to use **db** on a program like our sample **small** above, use the command:

```
db small
```

Now you can inspect and display instructions and data in the system, control execution, and even change the instructions in the program if you are bold enough.

To examine a data segment location in the program, simply type the address of the location. **db** knows about symbols in the program, so if you want to examine the location corresponding to **main**, type:

```
main
```

db types out the value in hexadecimal or octal (depending upon which is appropriate for your machine).

You can expand the display command to print many locations at one time, and choose the format of printout. To print five locations interpreted as instructions, type

```
main, 5?i
```

where the format character **i** follows the question mark indicating format, and **5** is the count of locations to be printed. To exit **db**, type

```
:q
```

For a complete list of the format that **db** recognizes, and other details about **db**, see its entry in the Lexicon.

A Sample Problem Solved With COHERENT

This section outlines an information-processing problem and demonstrates a simple solution for it implemented with the COHERENT system.

Build a Dictionary

Many word-processing systems check your spelling. Some of them do so by consulting an internal dictionary. How might you build such a dictionary? The following illustrates a simple way of building a dictionary using COHERENT tools. This exercise emphasizes ease of construction.

The format of the dictionary is to be one word per line, all letters lower case, excluding punctuation characters and spaces. Of course, the input document can be expected to have capital letters, many punctuation marks, many words on each line, and it will cer-

tainly not be in anything resembling alphabetical order! Thus, our problem is to transform the raw input into a dictionary.

The first step is to create a program to translate every word into lower case. The follow C program, called `trans.c`, does just that. Type the following commands, to create `trans.c`:

```
ed trans.c
a
#include <stdio.h>
#include <ctype.h>
/*
 * Translate input to lower case,
 * removing punctuation
 */
main()
{
    int c;
    while ((c = getchar()) != EOF) {
        if (isascii(c))
            if (ispunct(c))
                c = ' ';
            else
                c = tolower(c);
        putchar(c);
    }
}
.
wq
```

This programs transforms upper-case letters to lower case, and all punctuation and graphic characters to spaces. The newline character `\n` remains untranslated.

Once you have typed in this program, use the following command to compile it:

```
cc trans.c
```

This creates an executable program, called `trans`. `trans` takes its input from the standard input, and writes the output upon the standard output.

Now, we are faced with the problem of many words per line. Another small C program, `word.c`, will solve this problem for us. Type the following to create `word.c`:


```

ed word.c
a
#include <stdio.h>
/*
 *   Copy input to output with
 *   only one word per line
 */
main()
{
    int c;
    c = getchar();
    while (c != EOF) {
        if (c > ' ') {
            /* output graphic character */
            do
                putchar(c);
            while (((c = getchar()) > ' ') &&
                (c != EOF));
            putchar('\n');
        } else
            while (((c = getchar()) <= ' ') &&
                (c != EOF))
                ;
    }
}
.
wq

```

Note that the program transforms strings of spaces, newline, and control characters to newlines. Thus, if a pair of words on the input line are separated by three spaces, the output will have one newline character between them.

To compile **word.c**, type:

```
cc word.c
```

This creates an executable file called **word**.

Now, type the following commands to test the newly compiled program:

```
word
this is a test of word.
<ctrl-D>
```

The result should be:

```
this
is
a
test
of
word.
```

If it is not, you may have made a mistake in transcribing the program.

The next step is to use a *pipe* to feed the standard output of **trans** into the standard input of **word**:

```
trans <raw.doc | word
```

This command lists on the terminal one word per line, entirely in lower case and with punctuation removed.

The next step is to sort the output of **word** into ascending order. The command to do so is simply:

```
sort
```

The full command now reads:

```
trans <raw.doc | word | sort
```

Only one more item remains to be solved: dictionaries should contain only unique entries. The output produced so far contains each word in the raw document, which means that there are many instances of such words as “the”. To perform this final bit of processing, you can use the COHERENT program **uniq** to detect and eliminate duplicate lines. To eliminate duplicate lines, just pipe the output of **sort** into **uniq**. The command now reads:

```
trans <raw.doc | word | sort | uniq
```

The last step is to capture the dictionary in a file, which we will call **dict.s**. The redirection operator ‘>’ performs that task nicely. With this last flourish added, our finished command now reads:

```
trans <raw.doc | word | sort | uniq >dict.s
```

You can feed a large text file to this command to begin building your dictionary.

Maintaining the Dictionary

Before you use the dictionary, you should list it and check for extra words that you do not want. For example, if the input document contains an example program, the resulting dictionary will contain program variables. You should delete any of these and other unwanted words in the dictionary.

To delete or add a few new words to the dictionary, use **ed** or **sed**.

Using the Dictionary

You can use the dictionary to check the spelling of words in a new document. To make matters easier for yourself, place the command into a script, which we will call **dict.sh**. Type the following to do so:

```
ed dict.sh
a
trans <$1.doc | word | sort | uniq >$1.u
.
wq
chmod +x dict.sh
```

Now, process your new document with the command:

```
dict.sh new
```

This builds a file named **new.u** of unique words found in the file **new.doc**.

Now, you can use the dictionary to verify words in later documents. First, create a shell file named **checksp**:

```
ed
a
comm -13 dict.s $1.u
.
w checksp
q
chmod +x checksp
```

This command checks a file of words, such as **new.u**, to see if there are any words that are not in your master dictionary file **dict.s**. Now use the program **comm** to give you a list of words in **new.doc** that were not in the dictionary. Type:

```
checksp new
```

and any words from your document **new.doc** that were not found in the dictionary will be listed.

Conclusion

The dictionary problem illustrates how you can use the COHERENT system's tools to solve easily a task that would otherwise be difficult and time-consuming to perform. COHERENT's principle of modularity lets you hook together any number of small, powerful programs — some supplied with COHERENT and others you write yourself — into powerful systems for processing information. You will find as you use COHERENT that the main limitation is your imagination!

The rest of this manual describes the COHERENT system in detail. The *COHERENT System Administrator's Guide* describes the operation of COHERENT in detail. You should read this if you will be responsible for operation of your COHERENT system, or

if you are simply interested in how COHERENT operates internally. Numerous COHERENT tools, such as the editors, the shell, and others, are presented in tutorials that teach you how to use them in full. Finally, the Lexicon presents full, brief summaries of all system calls, library routines, and commands available with the COHERENT system, in an easy-to-use dictionary format. It also describes technical information and definitions, to help you cope with unfamiliar terminology.

Section 3:

COHERENT Administrator's Guide

The COHERENT system can be used by many people at the same time. One person must coordinate its use, like a key operator does for an office copier. This person is called the *system administrator*, and he sees to it that the COHERENT system runs smoothly every day. The administrator can also customize the COHERENT system to the needs of an individual installation.

Although you may be the only person to use your COHERENT system, many of the ideas discussed here are important for making your system work at its best. Please spend a few minutes reading this manual to familiarize yourself with the elementary concepts of COHERENT system maintenance.

The first part of the manual instructs you on how to care for the COHERENT system and keep it working smoothly. Even if you are working with the COHERENT system for the first time, this part contains all the information you will need. The second part presents detailed information about the inner workings of COHERENT. Use this section to find information that will help you customize your COHERENT system.

If you are new to the COHERENT system, we suggest that you first read *Using the COHERENT System*, which precedes this tutorial in your COHERENT manual. You can follow the instructions in this manual without reading *Using the COHERENT System*, but you probably will save time if you start by reading it first.

Shutting Down COHERENT

For the COHERENT system to support multiple users and multiple processes, it must use a complex system of buffering. At any given moment, large amounts of data are stored in temporary files; for this reason, suddenly shutting down the COHERENT system could well result in catastrophic loss of data. Unlike single-user operating systems like MS-DOS, where it is normal practice to reboot the system if something appears to go wrong, rebooting the COHERENT system must not be done suddenly or on a whim.

On occasions, however, it is necessary to shut down the COHERENT system; for example, you may wish to install a new device or perform preventative maintenance on the hardware. On other occasions, you may wish to return to single-user mode; this must be done in order to dump the COHERENT file system (as will be described later in this tutorial). To shut down the system, perform the following steps:

1. Log in as the superuser **root**. **root** will be described in detail below.
2. If other people are using the system, ask them to log off. If they are using your system from remote sites, use the command **wall** to ask them to log off. **wall** prints a message on the screen of every user who is logged into the system; for example:

```
/etc/wall
Please log off now!
<ctrl-D>
```

will ask every user to log off. Use the **who** command to see who is logged into the system; when **who** shows that only **root** is logged in, then it is safe to continue.

3. Type **sync** to synchronize the system. This command forces the COHERENT to write to the disk all data that it has stored in temporary buffers.
4. Type **/etc/shutdown**. This returns COHERENT to single-user mode.
5. Type **sync** twice more, just to make sure.
6. It is now safe to turn off your computer, if you wish to do so.

Booting COHERENT

Booting a multi-user, multi-tasking operating system like COHERENT is somewhat more complex than booting a single-user operating system. COHERENT, however, includes tools that make it easy to reboot your system.

If your computer is turned off, all you have to do is turn it on. COHERENT will automatically boot itself if it is the active partition on your hard disk (which you set when you installed COHERENT), will check the file system and fix it if necessary, and invoke multi-user mode.

If you are booting from single-user mode, type the command **/etc/reboot**. **reboot** will automatically invoke the command **fsck** to check the file system and repair it if necessary, and then return the system to multi-user mode.

If you wish to boot using a disk partition that is not marked as active (such as, say, a partition which hold an MS-DOS file system), you must type the partition number (0 through 7) when the COHERENT boot program tries to read the floppy-disk drive. You must type the number on the numeric keys above the alphabetic keys, *not* on the numeric keypad.

If you do not remember how your disk is partitioned or what file systems reside on which partition, you can use the command **fdisk** to display the structure of your hard disk. To do so, log in as the superuser **root**, and then type the command **/etc/fdisk**. In a moment, **fdisk** prints some information on your screen and then displays the structure of your hard disk. When you have finished, be sure to type **6** (for Quit) in response to

the prompt; otherwise, something untoward may happen to the data on your hard disk.

Superuser

A special user in the COHERENT system, called the *superuser*, has privileges greater than those of other users. The superuser can read all files (except encrypted files) and execute all programs. You must be logged in as the superuser during certain phases of your work as system administrator.

There are two ways to access the COHERENT system as the superuser. The first is to login under the user name *root*. When the system prompts

Coherent login:

reply:

root

This automatically makes you *superuser*. To remind you that you are superuser, the COHERENT system prompts you with *root:* instead of the usual *\$*.

The second way to acquire the privileges of superuser is to issue the command

su

when you are logged in as a user other than *root*. You must have privileges to access *root* to do this, and you must know the password for *root*. When you type

<ctrl-D>

in this mode, COHERENT returns you to your previous status.

To be the superuser for only one command, use the form of the command

su root command

command is the command to be executed as superuser. For example, to edit the message of the day file */etc/motd* if you are not the superuser, type

su root me /etc/motd

When you finish using MicroEMACS, your original user id will be unchanged.

To limit access to privileged resources, the COHERENT system requires users to enter *passwords* before being granted that privilege. Users may be required to enter passwords before logging in.

If the *root* user has a password, you will be prompted for it. If you do not enter it correctly, the system will tell you

Sorry

and not allow you to become the *superuser*.

It is normal practice to protect access to superuser status by setting the password. If you are the only user of your COHERENT system, or if you deeply trust all other users, you do not have to do so. However, because the superuser can perform any sort of mayhem

on your system, it is advisable to set the password, especially if outsiders can dial into your system via modem.

Day-to-Day Operation

This section discusses activities that you should perform each day to maintain your COHERENT system.

Check the system *console* each day for error messages or requests from users. You should also check your *mailbox* each day for letters from your users. If you are not familiar with **mail**, see the discussion in *Using the COHERENT System*.

If there are error messages on the console, or the system has stopped running, this indicates that something has gone wrong with the COHERENT system, and you must correct the situation. Follow the directions given in the section below on system halts.

As your system is used, more information is being stored on the disk. If large amounts are stored, all available space on the disk can be used up. You should monitor the amount of disk space yet unused with the command

```
df
```

which means "disk free". The **df** command reports the number of free blocks on the current file system. To see how much disk is free across all file systems, type:

```
df -a
```

Each *block* contains 512 characters or *bytes* of information. If **df** replies with a number less than 1,000 on a hard disk or 200 on a diskette-based system, you may be running too low on disk space. Read the section on conserving disk space and follow its recommendations.

At the end of each day, you should back up information to protect your system from loss of valuable information. Doing so regularly will allow you to retrieve from the saved copy any data that have been destroyed accidentally. The section on file-system backup will tell you how to save information.

Preparing System Dumps

As soon as your system has been delivered and is functional, you must prepare *system dumps* to save information on a daily, weekly, and monthly basis. These dumps can be done to magnetic tape or diskette. As most AT COHERENT systems do not have tape drives, the following instructions assume that backups will be made to high-density floppy disks.

Each month, you should dump all information in the system. You should prepare at least three sets of diskettes for the monthly saves, giving you three months of full backup. You will use the diskettes in rotation, with the oldest always used next.

Once a week, you should dump information in the system that is new or has been changed since the beginning of the month. You will need five sets of diskettes, since some months have five weekends in them.

Finally, every day you should save information that has been changed or is new since the beginning of the week. For these dumps, you will need five sets of diskettes: one for each working day. You will need extras in case of weekend work.

Label each set of diskettes carefully as *monthly*, *weekly*, or *daily*. Label the daily diskettes Monday through Friday, the weekly diskettes Week 1 through Week 5, and the monthly diskettes Month 1 through Month 3. When you do the dump, write the date on the label.

Preparing the Diskettes

To prepare diskettes to receive files, use the command `mkfs` as described below to build empty file systems on diskettes. To create a default file system on a high-density, 5.25-inch diskette that is in drive 0 (otherwise known as drive A), log in as the superuser `root`, insert a 5.25-inch diskette into drive 0, and then type the following commands:

```
/etc/fdformat /dev/fha0
/etc/badscan -o protol /dev/fha0 2400
/etc/mkfs /dev/fha0 protol
```

fva0 for 3.5" 1.44 Mb
 ↑ ↑
 media drive A

The command `fdformat` formats the diskette. `badscan` checks the diskette for bad sectors, and writes a map of them into file `protol`. `mkfs` creates the COHERENT file system; it takes into account the map of bad sectors that `badscan` wrote into `protol`. You must perform this task of formatting a diskette and building a file system on it only before it is used the first time.

To copy files to the diskette, first use the command `/etc/mount` to mount the diskette as a COHERENT file system:

```
/etc/mount /dev/fha0 /f0
```

Here `/dev/fha0` is the name of the diskette and `f0` is the directory to contain files on the diskette. Never `mount` a diskette which you have not first prepared with `mkfs` and `fdformat`.

Copy files to the diskette with commands of the form

```
cp file01 /f0
```

or copy complete directories with the command

```
cpdir /usr/stuff /f0/stuff
```

The following gives the commands for formatting and mounting a high-density, 3.5-inch diskette:

```
/etc/fdformat /dev/fva0
/etc/badscan -o protol /dev/fva0 2880
/etc/mkfs /dev/fva0 protol
/etc/mount /dev/fva0 /f0
```

Finally, the following gives the commands for formatting and mounting a low-density, 5.25-inch diskette:

see below
 ↓

```
/etc/fdformat /dev/f9a0
/etc/badscan -o protol /dev/f9a0 720
/etc/mkfs /dev/f9a0 protol
/etc/mount /dev/f9a0 /f0
```

The **cp** and **cpdir** commands work the same, regardless of the type of diskette to which you are copying files or directories.

When you have finished working with the diskette, use the command **/etc/umount** to unmount that diskette:

```
/etc/umount /dev/fha0
```

The following command unmounts a low-density, 5.25-inch diskette:

```
/etc/umount /dev/f9a0
```

The following unmounts a high-density, 3.5-inch diskette:

```
/etc/umount /dev/fva0
```

Lastly, the following unmounts a low-density, 3.5-inch diskette:

```
/etc/umount /dev/fqa0
```

One final point should be borne in mind: when you mount a file system on a diskette, you are working with the diskette itself, not with the diskette drive. Thus, when you have mounted a file system on a diskette, you can't simply pull the diskette out of the drive, place another diskette in its place, and expect it to work — not even if both diskettes have already been formatted as COHERENT file systems. Every time you use COHERENT to manipulate a diskette, you must mount that diskette using **/etc/mount**, and every time you want to remove a diskette from a diskette drive, you must first unmount that diskette using **/etc/umount**.

Backing-up Information Daily

This section describes how to save disk information each day. This process, called *backup*, protects information from inadvertent modification or destruction. The following examples assume that you are using high-density, 5.25-inch diskettes. If you wish to use low-density, 5.25-inch diskettes or 3.5-inch diskettes, simply change the name of the device, as shown above.

1. Log into the system as **root**. You must have superuser privileges to perform a **dump**.
2. If you have not yet done so, use the command **fdformat** to format a set of diskettes, as shown above. With high-density, 5.25-inch diskettes, a rule of thumb is to prepare one diskette for each megabyte of data to be dumped.
3. Tell other users to log off the system by typing:

```

/etc/wall
Please log off.
Time for file dump.
<ctrl-D>

```

4. Be sure that all users are logged off the system by typing the command:

```
who
```

This command lists the names of all users that are still on the system.

If they have not logged off in a few minutes, send another message. Repeat the process until **who** shows no users except yourself. Note that a user may have left for the day without logging out, even though this is not a recommended practice. If backups are performed each day at the same time, users will develop the habit of logging off in time.

When all others have logged off, execute **/etc/shutdown** as described above.

5. If this is the last workday of the month, perform a *monthly* dump. Insert the first volume of the correct monthly dump diskette into the floppy drive, after adding today's date to the label, and type the command:

```
dump 0ufs /dev/fha0 2400 /dev/root
```

This will dump all files on the first hard disk partition **/dev/root** to the 2400-block diskette **/dev/fha0**.

If more floppies are needed, the computer will ask you to insert them. Be sure to label each with its volume number.

6. If this is the last work day of the week, but not the last workday of the month, perform a *weekly* dump. Prepare the correct weekly dump diskettes, add today's date to the label, insert the first diskette, and type the command:

```
dump 6ufs /dev/fha0 2400 /dev/root
```

This will dump files that have been changed or created this month to the diskette.

7. If this is neither the last workday of the month nor the last workday of the week, you will perform a *daily* dump. Prepare the daily dump diskette with today's day of the week, add today's date to the label, insert the first diskette into the drive, and type the command:

```
dump 9ufs /dev/fha0 2400 /dev/root
```

This will dump files that have been changed or created this week to the diskette.

8. Type **sync** to ensure that all buffers are flushed.
9. You can now power down the system, or continue working by typing **<ctrl-D>**.

For more information on how to use **dump**, see its entry in the Lexicon.

Restoring Information

If a user finds a file has been inadvertently destroyed, you can restore the information to disk from backup diskettes.

Because you back up data daily, you must determine the date and time that the file was last known to be good. From this date, determine on which set of diskettes the file was last correctly dumped. Find the diskettes labeled with the date determined and mount the first one in the set. The command

```
dumpdir f /dev/fha0
```

lists files dumped on the high-density 5.25-inch diskette.

Once you have found the file, type the following command to restore the file:

```
restor xf /dev/fha0 file
```

where *file* is the full path name of the file in question. The file will be restored into the current directory with a name matching the i-node number of the original file when it was dumped. You can then rename the restored file to its original name or to a new name of your choice.

Please note that, as previously mentioned, certain precautions must be taken when performing a mass restore to the root partition. See the Lexicon article for `restor` for further information.

Conserving Disk Space

If disk space begins to get low, you must tell users to remove unneeded files from the system. If space on the disk remains a problem, you might request that users place files that have not been accessed for some length of time onto backup storage. Encourage users to remove unneeded files promptly.

In addition, the COHERENT system provides two commands that help you save space on a file system. The archive command `ar` can collect a mass of files into one large file. This program, which is normally used to build libraries of relocatable object modules, can be quite useful if you are running low on i-nodes on your system. (If you do not know what an i-node is, see the entry for it in the Lexicon.) For example, to archive all files in directory `source`, use the following command:

```
ar rv backup.ar source/*
```

For more information on how to use `ar`, see its entry in the Lexicon.

The second command for saving space is `compress`. This command uses the Lempel-Ziv compression algorithm to squeeze files into a smaller space without loss of information. Such files cannot be read directly, but must first be uncompressed before they can be read or executed by COHERENT. To compress all files in directory `hugefiles`, use the command:

```
compress hugefiles/*
```

compress appends **.Z** onto the end of every compressed file's name.

To uncompress a compressed file, use the command **uncompress**. The command **zcat** lets you read a compressed file without having to uncompress it; by piping the output of **zcat** to other filters, you can perform sophisticated work with compressed files without having to uncompress them. For more information on these commands, see their respective entries in the Lexicon.

A later section in this tutorial describes how to use the computer time accounting commands. If in use, these commands consume disk space as work progresses on the system. If the files they use are not properly attended, they can become huge. If you use accounting, you should condense the accounting files often.

System Halts

If your system stops running unexpectedly, you have a system *crash*. This occurs either if the COHERENT system has detected a problem and halted processing, or some hardware has failed.

Should this happen, examine the system console for any error messages. If there are any, carefully record them. This information will help COHERENT system experts diagnose the problem. The following messages diagnose conditions that you can fix yourself. The following section gives error messages for more serious conditions.

Out of i-nodes

A COHERENT file system has one i-node for each file it maintains. The number of i-nodes is set when the file system is created. If you have numerous small files on a file system, it is possible to exhaust that file system's resources even though the command **df** shows that space remains on the file system. To get around this problem, you must delete files, one file for each i-node needed; or you must use **ar** to archive a mass of files. To do this, first use **/etc/shutdown** to return the system to single-user mode, as described above. Delete files, or use **ar** as described above. Then use **sync** to flush all buffers, and use the command **umount** to unmount the affected file system. Then run **fsck** on the affected file system before rebooting. **fsck** checks COHERENT file systems and fixes them if necessary. Consult the Lexicon entry on **fsck** before you use this program for the first time.

Out of space (*m,n*)

When this error message appears, your file system still has i-nodes but the allotted disk space has been exhausted; perhaps you have a few large files that are eating up disk space. To get around this problem, you must delete or compress files to clear up disk space. First, use **/etc/shutdown** to return to single-user mode, as described above; then delete files or compress them as described above until enough space has been cleared to allow you to continue your work. Use **sync** to flush buffer, use **umount** to unmount the affected file system, and run **fsck** on the affected file system. Then reboot.

Bad freelist

The *freelist* is a list of free blocks on the disk. The COHERENT system maintains this list so it can see where it can write data on the disk. This message indicates that the freelist has been corrupted somehow. To fix this problem, run `/etc/shutdown` to return to single-use mode; use `sync` to flush the buffers; use `umount` to unmount the affected file system; and then run `fsck` to repair the file system.

System Error Messages

COHERENT may generate the following error messages. These messages indicate serious problems with your system hardware. If any appears, you need to contact a representative of the hardware manufacturer.

Note that the symbol `#` in the following messages will be replaced by a number when the message appears on the console. When reporting the problem, be sure to include the number actually printed out.

```
Arena # too small
Corrupt arena
Bad free #
Raw I/O from non user
Inode table overflow
Inode # busy
Bad block # (alloc)
Bad block # (free)
Cannot allocate stack
Cannot create process
System too large
Not a separate I/D machine
System too large
Bad segment count
Swapio bad parameter
Swapio error
Random trap
Bus error at #
Illegal instruction at #
```

Establishing a User Base

Each user allowed to use your COHERENT system must have a *user name* and a *user id*; the user may also have a *password*. The user name is usually the user's initials or a nickname. The *user id* is an integer number used to identify the user internally to the system. As system administrator, you will assign both of these for each user. This section tells you how.

To log in to the system, a user must have an entry in the *password* file `/etc/passwd`. The password file contains each user's name, id, and password if any. As system administrator, you will maintain this file.

Likewise, each group of users is assigned a *group name*, as well as a *group id*. Groups are not necessary to use the COHERENT system, but some installations prefer to set up groups by project or department.

It is simple to add a new user to the system. The command `newusr` takes care of all the details, and makes an entry in the password file. You must be logged in as `root`. For example, to create an entry for a user named Henry, log in as `root`, and then issue the command:

```
/etc/newusr henry "Henry Smith" /u
```

.profile: Login Script

When a user logs in, the shell first reads the file `.profile` from the user's home directory. The user's home directory is normally

```
/usr/name/
```

where *name* is the user's user name.

You can give each user a `.profile` file when you establish his password. This may have only a command to set `PATH`. The user may later add more commands to `.profile` to tailor it to his taste. A typical `.profile` reads like this:

```
PATH=:/bin:/usr/bin:...:/usr/henry/bin
stty kill ^u erase ^h int ^c
MAIL=/usr/spool/mail/henry
```

These commands control the behavior of the terminal and the shell. `PATH` lists the directories that contain commands, and `MAIL` gives the name of the user's "mail box," i.e., the file in which his `mail` is stored. The shell examines `MAIL` after each command and reports

```
You have mail.
```

if anyone has sent you mail.

The command `stty` defines special terminal keys that the user needs in communicating with the system. For a description of these commands and the COHERENT shell, see *Using the COHERENT System*, which precedes this tutorial, or *Introduction to sh, the Bourne Shell*, which follows.

Maintaining the ttys File

The file `/etc/ttys` describes the kinds of terminals that can be attached to the COHERENT operating system. You must customize `ttys` to fit your system and when you add new terminals.

Because COHERENT is a flexible system, many different kinds of terminals can be attached to it. Because the collection of terminals varies from installation to installation, you must tell the system what configurations to expect.

Each terminal has one of several possible *speeds* of transmission. To communicate with each terminal, the COHERENT system must know the speed. To keep track of the information flowing between the computer and the terminal, the system uses a terminal *name*. All this information is contained in a COHERENT file named `/etc/ttys`.

Configuring Terminals

Terminals attach to the computer by a cable plugged into a terminal *port*. Each line in the `/etc/ttys` file defines one terminal port. AT COHERENT normally can support multiple terminals: the console which is attached directly to the computer, plus one terminal (or modem) for each of the serial ports. Additional ports can be attached using multiplexors, but most installations do not use such devices.

To configure `/etc/ttys`, first determine what kind of terminals will be attached to your computer. Also determine the speed of each port, whether each port is to be in use, and the device name of each port. AT COHERENT describes the serial ports as devices of the form `/dev/com1*` thru `/dev/com4*`. See Lexicon entry `com` for further details.

Now, log in to the COHERENT system as `root` and type the command:

```
ed /etc/ttys
```

Add or change information that you have written down. The following section describes how to construct lines in this file.

ttys: File Format

The following presents an example of the `ttys` file:

```
11Pconsole  
1rPcom1r  
113com21
```

Although all the numbers and letters are jammed together, each line consists of four separate parts, or fields. In the line

```
11Pconsole
```

the four fields are `1`, `l`, `P`, and `console`.

The first field tells whether the terminal *port* is in use: `1` means in use, `0` means not in use.

The second field specifies whether the port is local or remote: `l` indicates local, `r` indicates remote.

The third field describes the type of terminal port it is. Ports that have modems plugged into them must run on a variable speed, because a user can call using a modem that operates at anywhere from 300 baud to 9600 baud. Local terminals, which are cabled to a specific terminal that runs at a specific speed, have a fixed speed.

The terminal type **P** signifies 9600 baud. The numeral **3** signifies a variable-speed port, which would be used for a modem.

The common fixed-speed terminal types are as follows:

<i>type</i>	<i>baud</i>
C	110
G	300
I	1200
L	2400
N	4800
P	9600
Q	19200

The variable speed possibilities are:

0	300, 1200, 150, 110
3	2400, 1200, 300

When a user dials into a variable speed line, a message is sent to the terminal using the first speed listed. If the result is unintelligible, the user hits the **<break>** key, and the system tries the next speed. Once the speed is established, the **login** command completes the sign on process. For more information, see the Lexicon's entries for **tty** or **getty**.

Finally, the fourth field gives the name of the device being defined. **console** indicates the computer's console, i.e., the keyboard and CRT that are plugged directly into it. **com1r** and **com2l** define the serial ports.

To make the changes to **/etc/ttys** effective, log in as the superuser and then issue the command:

```
kill quit 1
```

Once a user logs into the system successfully, he can use the command **stty** to change the characteristics of his terminal. For details, see the Lexicon's entry for **stty**.

Communicating With Users

As system administrator, you must communicate with users of the system. This section discusses several ways the COHERENT system lets you to do this. Others, including **msg**, **write**, and **mail**, are described in *Using the COHERENT System*.

wall: Broadcast Message

If you need to communicate quickly with all users logged in to the system, use **wall**, or write to all users. The message that you send will appear on the terminal of each user. For example, to inform users that the system will be shut down, type:

```
/etc/wall
The system will be going down
at 5pm to backup files.
<ctrl-D>
```

This message will appear on user's terminals as

```
Broadcast message .....
The system will be going down
at 5pm to backup files.
```

motd: Message of the Day

The COHERENT system provides two convenient ways to give users news about the system. The first is called the "message of the day", and it is printed on each user's terminal when he logs in. To provide such a message, put information in the file `/etc/motd`.

For example, to tell the users that the system will be unavailable because new hardware is being installed in the afternoon, edit the file `/etc/motd` to contain:

```
The system will be unavailable in the afternoon
because new hardware is being installed.
It will go down at 2 pm.
```

When a user logs on, `login` prints the information in `/etc/motd`.

msgs: Cumulative Message Board

The message of the day is deleted when a new message is inserted. If a user does not log in for several days, the message of the day may no longer be there. For items that you want everyone to see, such as hours of operation or new operating procedures, you should use `msgs` instead of `motd`.

`msgs` helps users get all important messages, even if they don't log in every day. The system remembers which users have seen each message. After a user logs in, invoking `msgs` will show the number, date, and author of each message written since the user last logged in. Therefore it is easy for the user to stay up to date with the system-wide messages.

To add a message to the file, simply mail the message to `msgs`. To title the message, write it as the first line in the message, after the "Subject:" prompt from `mail`.

The home directory for `msgs` will grow over time, as more and more messages accumulate. Also, if a new user is enrolled on your COHERENT system, he may have to wade through several hundred messages when he first logs in. Therefore, you should purge the home directory for `msgs` every now and again; you may wish to throw away the announcements of office parties three Christmases ago, and save important information on diskette.

`msgs` keeps track of what messages each user has read by recording the number of the last message read in the file `$HOME/.msgsrc`. When each user logs on, his version of `.msgsrc` is inspected to determine the last message seen. If messages were added after that, `msgs` prints the ones the user wants to see, and then updates `.msgsrc`.

System Accounting

The COHERENT system provides two types of computer time *accounting* to help you track the use of the system. Three commands control the accounting and provide reports at various levels of detail.

ac: Login Accounting

Whenever a user logs into the COHERENT system, it records the user's name, the terminal number, and the date and time of the login. It also records when he logs out.

You can use this information to compute the time each user, or all users, were logged into the system. The command `ac` prints the total of all login times recorded in the accounting file. An example of the result is

```
Total:          8357:00
```

You can ask for a summary of total login times for each day by typing:

```
ac -d
```

An example result would be:

```
Friday November 13:
  Total:          53:08
Saturday November 14:
  Total:          75:36
Sunday November 15:
  Total:          73:15
```

Finally, you can summarize the times for individual users with the command:

```
ac -p jack ted fred
```

This will show the total login times for these users:

```
fred          1100:42
jack           910:41
ted            641:58
Total:        2653:21
```

Also,

```
ac -pd
```

gives the time for each user, for each day that he logged in.

Login accounting is not automatically operational. The login information is collected only if the file `/usr/adm/wtmp` exists.

To start login accounting if it is not working, type the command

```
>/usr/adm/wtmp
```

while logged in as `root`. This creates the file `/usr/adm/wtmp` if it does not exist (and destroys existing information if it does) and thereby enables login accounting.

To turn off login accounting while it is running, you can type:

```
rm /usr/adm/wtmp
```

After you activate login accounting, you should purge `/usr/adm/wtmp` periodically as it grows continuously, and on an active system will eventually consume much disk space. To purge the current information but leave accounting turned on, type:

```
>/usr/adm/wtmp
```

sa: Processing Accounting

While login accounting tells you how much time a user spends logged into the system, it does not tell you the individual commands used. *Process accounting* does so. Under COHERENT, each execution of each command constitutes a separate process. (COHERENT's ability to maintain a list of processes and swap each in and out of memory until all are executed, is what gives COHERENT its multi-tasking capability.) Process accounting records system time, user time, and real time for each command executed by each user on the system. The command `sa` reports this information for you, using a format that you set.

`sa` has several options, to generate different reports. When used with no options, `sa` lists the number of times each call is made, the total CPU time, and the total real time used by the command, ordered by decreasing CPU time. This is a summary by command; the following gives an example:

	#CALL	CPU	REAL
sh	61	1	832
ld	5	1	7
ar	5	0	1
ranlib	3	0	1
p	16	0	11
dld	2	0	1
lc	19	0	1
cc	4	0	8
atrun	43	0	1
find	1	0	0
ed	1	0	2
cat	4	0	1
rm	3	0	0
j	1	0	0
spin	2	0	1

grep	2	0	0
msg	4	0	0
ps	1	0	0
pr	2	0	0
watch	4	0	0
who	2	0	0
stty	3	0	0
chown	1	0	0
sort	1	0	0
mv	2	0	0
pwd	1	0	0
rm	1	0	0
df	1	0	0
ls	1	0	0
echo	3	0	0
accton	1	0	0

The listing will depend on what commands are used in your system, and the characteristics of your hardware. To summarize by user, use the `-m` option:

```
sa -m
```

The option `-l` separates CPU time expended by users from that expended by the system. This command

```
sa -l
```

produces:

	#CALL	USER	SYSREAL
sh	61	0	1832
ld	5	0	07
ar	5	0	01
ranlib	3	0	01
p	16	0	011
dld	2	0	01
lc	19	0	01
cc	4	0	08
atrun	43	0	01
find	1	0	00
ed	1	0	02
cat	4	0	01
rm	3	0	00
j	1	0	00
spin	2	0	01
grep	2	0	00
msg	4	0	00
ps	1	0	00
pr	2	0	00
watch	4	0	00
who	2	0	00

94 The COHERENT System

stty	3	0	00
chown	1	0	00
sort	1	0	00
mv	2	0	00
pwd	1	0	00
nm	1	0	00
df	1	0	00
ls	1	0	00
echo	3	0	00
accton	1	0	00

To list the user name and the command name, use `sa` with the option `-u`. No times or counts are given. The command:

```
sa -u
```

produces output of the form:

```
tj      p
tj      lc
tj      find
tj      pr
bin     lc
tj      spin
tj      sh
bin     cc
bin     cat
bin     ld
bin     dld
farl    who
farl    sh
```

This report has been truncated and edited to save space. In practice, it is longer. The `-u` option overrides other options.

Process accounting is on only if you turn it on. To turn on process accounting, type the command:

```
/etc/accton /usr/adm/acct
```

while logged in as `root`. The file `/usr/adm/acct` holds the raw accounting information.

To turn off process accounting, use the same command with no file name:

```
/etc/accton
```

If accounting is not on when you type this command, you will get an error message. No information is gathered when accounting is turned off.

When process accounting is in use, the file `/usr/adm/usracct` grows with each user command issued. You should regularly condense or remove the information, to keep the file from devouring all free space on your disk. To condense the information, invoke `sa` with the `-s` option. You must turn off accounting while condensing information.

The information summarized by user will appear in `/usr/adm/usracct`, and information saved by command is placed in `/usr/adm/svacct`. These summarized files are used in future requests to `sa`. After condensing, you can turn accounting back on.

Additional options give flexibility to the report. See the entry for `sa` in the Lexicon for additional details on these options.

cron: Scheduling Events

A valuable tool for you in your role as system administrator is the command `cron`. With it, you can schedule commands to be executed, even in your absence.

To specify a command to be executed at some later time, simply enter one line of information in the file `/usr/lib/crontab`. You must be logged in as `root` to modify this file.

For example, assume that you want to greet all users logged into the system on Monday morning. You can do this by sending them a message at 8:13 on Monday. Use `ed` or `MicroEMACS` to add the following lines to the file `/usr/lib/crontab`:

```
13 8 * * 1 /etc/wall%Am Monday!
```

The numbers and `*` at the beginning specify the time:

```
13 8 * * 1
```

The `13` means "13 minutes past the hour". (`cron` numbers the minutes zero through 59.) The `8` means "8 AM". (`cron` numbers the hours of the day zero through 23, with zero indicating 12 AM.) The positions containing `*` normally specify the day and month. The two `*` characters mean "any day" and "any month". Finally, the `1` means "day 1 of the week," which is Monday. (`cron` numbers the days of the week zero through six, with zero indicating Sunday.) The breakdown of this command is shown as follows:

minute	13
hour	8
day of month	* — all days
month	* — all months
day of week	1 — Monday

Because each entry in `crontab` must be on one line, the symbol `%` represents the beginning of the input string. If the information is too long for one line, enter a backslash character before the `<return>` at the end of the line. The backslash tells `cron` to ignore the `<return>`.

With this information in the file, `cron` executes the command

```
/etc/wall
Am Monday!
```

at 8:13 every Monday morning.

`cron` expects time to be in the 24-hour clock, so 1 PM is represented as 13 hours. If you need to print a literal percent sign `'%'`, precede it with a backslash:

\%

The times for **cron** commands can be even more complex than the numbers and * shown above.

You can express a range for any of the five parts of a time by separating two numbers with a hyphen. For example, to send everyone a lunch break message on week days, use the command:

```
59 11 * * 1-5 /etc/wall%Lunch!!
```

To list a choice of times, separate single numbers or ranges with commas but no spaces. To call a meeting on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday at 3 PM, use:

```
0 15 * * 1,3,5 /etc/wall%meeting..
```

The time specification

```
0 15 * * 1,3,5
```

represents the time 1500 (3 PM) on every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday.

A recommended use of **cron** is to remind the users that it is time for a file-system backup. With the flexibility of the date and time specification available with **cron**, you can encode your backup plan into the times. This includes the different level of backup on different days, weeks, and months. As the time for backup approaches, a warning message should be sent to all users.

wall is just one example of commands that can be used with **cron**; many others can be used. If you want to do periodic accounting reports, a command like

```
sa -s | lpr
```

prints the accounting information.

File System Backup

This section discusses the principles behind saving and restoring files. An earlier section detailed a standard backup procedure. If you wish to tailor your own backup procedure, information in this section can help.

For the best understanding of this section, you should be familiar with COHERENT files. *Using the COHERENT System* covers the basics of files.

You will use the programs **dump** and **restor** to secure your disk-based information against hardware failure or inadvertent user destruction.

The command **dump** dumps selected file systems to a diskette or other backup media. **restor** copies files back from the external media to an existing COHERENT file system. You can restore all files, or just one or two. The regular use of these two commands provides you with a secure backup copy of your files.

This section first discusses the concepts behind dumping and restoring files. Then, the specific uses of the commands are detailed.

Strategies

To minimize the overhead of daily backups, you must use a backup strategy suited to your environment and computer usage. The strategy presented above, in the section on day-to-day operations, will work for most COHERENT installations, but with experience you may wish to tailor the procedure for your installation.

Whatever your strategy, stick to it rigorously. Then your users will know that files are protected with a predictable level of reliability. Even if you are the only person using your COHERENT system, a disciplined program of backups can save you untold grief should you accidentally damage or delete a valuable file.

Some hardware implementations of the system have "streaming" tape drives that save the contents of a disk in a matter of minutes. Other systems have conventional tape drives or diskettes. For systems with diskettes alone, saving the entire disk takes too long to be done daily. Saving only recently changed files will make daily backup more convenient.

dump can perform *incremental* dumps: only files that have changed since a *dump date* are saved, and files that have not changed are not dumped.

To keep track of dump dates, **dump** maintains a file of dump dates. Dump dates are kept for each dump level.

Dump Levels

dump provides ten *levels* of incremental dump, numbered zero through nine. By definition, the level-0 dump contains all files. All other levels define the dump date as the date that the next highest level was dumped. Only files changed or created *after* the dump date are dumped.

To give an example of the levels and dates, assume that a level-0 dump was taken on January 1, a level-3 dump on January 3, and a level-6 dump on January 10:

level	date
0	January 1
3	January 3
6	January 10

Assume that you do a level-9 dump. The next highest level previously dumped is 6. The level-6 dump was done on January 10, so this is the dump date. Thus, a level-9 dump dumps all files changed or created after January 10.

The dump dates actually include the time of day as well, but for the purposes of illustration that has been omitted.

A level-4 dump saves all files changed or created after the date of the level-3 dump.

This level feature can help you design your overall backup strategy. An alternative to the backup strategy presented above includes a quarterly dump:

level 0 Quarterly
level 3 Monthly
level 6 Weekly
level 9 Daily

If you implement this strategy, the level-0 floppies can be kept for as long as is reasonable, perhaps one year. A level-0 dump (and possibly other levels) will require more than a number of diskettes, depending upon your hardware, how many files you have, and how often they change. Thus, you will need four sets of level-0 floppies to keep a year-long cycle. With this scheme, take a level-0 dump at the end of each calendar quarter. At the end of each month that does not end a calendar quarter, perform a level-3 dump. Files changed since the quarterly dump was taken will be dumped. You will need only two sets of level 3 floppies.

Level-6 dumps should be taken at the end of each week. Level-9 dumps should be taken each day except for the day that you take the level-6, -3, or -0 dumps.

As noted earlier, you need to design your dump strategy to suit your installation's individual needs. The above strategy is an example; use it as the starting point to design your own.

dumpdate: Dump Dates

dump keeps a list of dates for each level on each device, so that it can determine what the dump dates for any level are.

You can list these on your terminal with the command:

```
dumpdate
```

A typical reply is:

```
Level 0 Wed Feb 10 21:13:36 1990 fha0  
Level 0 Wed Feb 10 21:47:39 1990 fha0  
Level 9 Thu Feb 25 23:01:59 1990 fha0  
Level 9 Thu Feb 25 23:05:51 1990 fha0
```

Here **fha0** is the name of the high-density, 5.25-inch diskette device.

restor: Restoring Files

Now that your files are being saved regularly, what do you do if a file is inadvertently destroyed? For example, a user may accidentally remove or change a vital file and needs to recover the original. You can restore the file individually from the dump diskettes or tapes with the command **restor**.

To restore the file or files, you need to know which set of dump diskettes the file is on. To start, determine the latest date that the file was known to be correct. Then, locate the latest set of diskettes dumped before that date. (You will do yourself a favor if you label each dump set of diskettes with its level and the date and time that it was dumped.) To verify that the file is on a given set of diskettes, insert the first diskette and issue the command:

```
dumpdir f /dev/fha0
```

If an entire file system must be restored, you can start with an empty partition. To clear a partition, see the Lexicon entry for **mkfs**.

To completely restore a file system from various levels of diskettes, begin with the level-0 set of diskettes. Then restore the next higher level, and so on, until you have restored the highest level of dump, probably level 9.

restor does a full or partial restore of files previously saved by **dump**. To restore an individual file from a high-density, 5.25-inch diskette, use this command:

```
restor xf /dev/fha0 file01 file02
```

This restores files **file01** and **file02** from the dump diskette. Be sure to include the complete path name of the file. If you are using a device other than the high-density, 5.25-inch diskette, replace **fha0** with the name of the device you are using.

To restore a complete set of dumped files, type:

```
restor rf /dev/fha0 /dev/filesystem
```

where *filesystem* is the name of the filesystem to restore. This command must be used with caution: it will overwrite the disk.

When using **restor** to recover the entire root partition (mass restore), you will need to first boot from an alternate filesystem such as the COHERENT Boot floppy or another bootable partition before performing the restore.

dumpdir: List Dump Directory

dumpdir can help you analyze the contents of a dump diskette. The command

```
dumpdir f /dev/fha0
```

lists all file names on a dump diskette on the **fha0** device. If the dump diskette was part of a multi-volume set, **dumpdir** may ask you to mount each diskette in succession. When you have mounted the diskette, press **<return>** to signal **dumpdir** to continue.

Tools for the Administrator

This section discusses tools to make your job as system administrator easier. Other useful tools for communicating with users, such as **mail**, **write**, and **msg**, are described in *Using the COHERENT System*.

ps: List Active Processes

Each command or program in the COHERENT system is a separate *process*. Each process in the system is assigned a number called the *process id*, or *PID*. You may need to control the actions of users occasionally, and you will do so by controlling processes.

Each user logged into the system has one or more processes. Except in special circumstances, the first process that he has is the shell, or command-line interpreter. The commands he types are run by the shell.

The shell normally waits for a command to terminate before it begins to process the next command. However, if you use the '&' operator, the shell creates simultaneous processes: that is, while it executes one command it will let you type another. Thus, you can execute numerous commands simultaneously.

You can examine the processes associated with your login, or all processes in the system, with the command `ps`. Type:

```
ps
```

The result will resemble:

```
TTY PID
31: 37 -sh
31: 4010 ps
```

The first column

```
TTY
31:
31:
```

is the terminal number. This number is taken from the file `/etc/ttys`, with the `tty` removed from the beginning. The `tty` number is also printed by the command `who`. The second column

```
PID
37
4010
```

lists the corresponding process identifier (PID). The third column contains the name of the command and command parameters:

```
-sh
ps
```

`-sh` represents the shell process, and `ps` represents the `ps` command itself.

To see all the processes, type:

```
ps -a
```

The result will resemble:

```
TTY PID
3a: 41 -sh
39: 42 -sh
32: 47 - 3
31: 48 - 3
34: 193 -sh
36: 634 -sh
3e: 1738 -sh
20: 2568 -sh
3e: 2581 su
```

```
3c: 6317 -sh
3c: 6322 su
3f: 7333 - P
35: 7789 - P
3c: 8058
3d: 9053 - P
33: 9076 - P
30: 9814 -sh
30: 9829 ps -a
```

This display will, of course, differ quite a bit from system to system and from minute to minute.

For a full description of all options to `ps`, see its entry in the Lexicon.

kill: Terminate Processes

Occasions will arise when, as system administrator, you must log other users out of the system. For example, you may need to bring the system down quickly; or perhaps a user forgot to log out before leaving the terminal and did not see your broadcast message requesting that all users log out.

The command `kill`, when used by the superuser, terminates processes. To log out a user whose shell has process number 300, use the command:

```
kill -9 300
```

You must be logged in as `root` or use the command `su` to `kill` a process that belongs to another user. Each user can kill all processes that he owns, including his own shell process (which automatically logs him out).

`kill` has other uses as well — see the Lexicon's entry for `kill` for more information.

System Security

Many COHERENT system installations have different groups of users whose tasks are separate. Consider a class of students, all doing homework on the computer. No student should be able to read another student's files, but the teacher should be allowed to check each student's progress.

By using the flexible protection mechanisms provided as part of the COHERENT system, you can set up system security to suit the needs of your users.

Passwords

Passwords provide the first level of COHERENT system security.

For systems with passwords, each user with a password must type his password as part of the login process. If he enters the password incorrectly, he cannot log in.

You, as system administrator, assign a password when you create a user's log-in account; this is described above in the section on establishing a user base. If you do not assign a password, anyone will be able to log in as that user.

In any system with passwords, it is especially important to assign a password to the **root**, or *superuser*. If the superuser does not require a password, any user can log in as **root** and automatically have access to the powerful tools that control the operation of the system.

Any user with a password can restrict access to his files. Once you assign him his password, the user can change it with the command **passwd**. However, because of higher privileges, **root** can always access everyone's files.

The passwords are kept in file **/etc/passwd**, with the rest of the user login information. Passwords are encrypted, so reading **/etc/passwd** will not reveal passwords.

File Protection

The second level of COHERENT system security is *file protection*. A user can set each of three categories of protection for each of his files. A standard protection, or *access permission*, is given to each file when it is created.

The three categories of permissions are for the user himself, for other users in his group, and for all other users. To see the levels of protection of your files, type the command

```
ls -l
```

For more details on the meaning of each column in this printout, see the Lexicon entry for the change-mode command **chmod**.

For each attempt to access a file, the COHERENT system first checks if the file belongs to the user, to someone in the user's group, or neither. The system then checks the corresponding *permission* field before it grants access to the file.

The permissions granted depend upon the type of access: *read*, *write*, or *execute*. Execute permission is needed to execute scripts or commands. Read permission means that the file can be read. Write permission means that the file can be changed or deleted.

If a file is a directory (rather than a text file or executable program), the meaning of each term changes somewhat. Here, read permission means that the user may read the file names in the directory. Write permission means that the user may create files in the directory. Finally, execute permission means that the user can access a specific name in the directory. Thus, if a directory denies read permission and grants execute permission, the names in the directory may not be read, but a specific name may be referenced.

Changing File Protections

The command **chmod** changes the access permission of a file. The owner of a file and the superuser can always change the permission of a file.

To make a file unwritable, type the command:

```
chmod -w file
```

To make a shell command file executable, type:

```
chmod +x script
```

For a full discussion of the option to **chmod**, see its entry in the Lexicon.

Encryption

The command **crypt** provides a third level of system security. It lets a user encode and decode information in a file. The superuser has access to every file in the system; so to protect sensitive information even from his prying eyes, a user can disguise it with encryption. Sensitive system information, such as passwords, are also encrypted for security purposes; and the **mail** command lets users send encrypted mail to each other. For details about encryption, see the entry on **crypt** in the Lexicon.

A Tour Through the File System

This section describes the layout of the COHERENT file system, and points out files of interest to the system administrator.

General File System Layout

The base of the file system is the root directory, whose name is simply:

```
/
```

Most of the files in the root are directories. To list the files in the **root** directory, type:

```
lc /
```

/bin

Most of the commonly used commands are programs contained in **/bin**, such as the command **lc** used in the above example. Foreign commands, such as **MicroEMACS** and **kermit**, are placed in directory **/usr/bin**.

The shell does not automatically look in **/bin** for commands, but consults the variable **PATH** to determine where commands are to be found. A typical value for **PATH** is:

```
/bin:/usr/bin:.
```

This tells the shell to look for commands in three places (in this order): **/bin**, **/usr/bin**, and finally **.**, the current directory. The shell does not consult **PATH** if the command contains one or more **/** characters, indicating a complete or partial path specification.

/dev

Devices in the COHERENT system are accessed through files in the directory **/dev**. If there is a line printer available on the system named **lp**, you can print characters from a file named **testdata** by typing the command:

```
cat testdata >/dev/lp
```

All devices on the system are represented in the **/dev** directory. Note that it is not recommended you access devices directly, but use the COHERENT system's utilities that *spool* files to them. This will prevent two users attempting to write material to a device

simultaneously, and so garbling the output. For example, to access the line-printer device, use the spooler `lpr`. See the Lexicon's entries on `lpr` and `device drivers`.

`/drv`

A unique feature of the COHERENT system is the concept of loadable device drivers. This feature lets COHERENT system programmers write their own device drivers without modifying the rest of the system. Drivers can be unloaded, modified, and reloaded without halting and rebooting the system. Loadable drivers are kept in directory `/drv`. To load a driver, type:

```
/etc/drvld /drv/driver
```

where *driver* is the driver to load. See the Lexicon's entry on `drvld` for more information.

`/etc`

Several commands that you will use in your role as system administrator are kept in directory `/etc`. These are described in detail elsewhere in this guide. They include commands for system accounting, booting the system, mounting the system, create file systems, and control system time.

Also in `/etc` are several data files used in system administration. These include `/etc/passwd`, the file containing user names, ids, and passwords; news files; and file `/etc/ttys`, which describes the properties of each user terminal attached to the system.

`/lib`

The COHERENT system provides many useful functions for performing input and output (I/O) and mathematics, for use in your C programs. These and other libraries, along with the phases of the C compiler itself, are kept in directory `/lib`. This directory includes files containing standard system calls, standard I/O, and mathematical routines such as `sin`, `cos`, and `log`.

`/usr`

The directory `/usr` contains user directories, along with a few system directories.

`/usr/adm` contains additional information of interest to the system administrator.

`/usr/bin` contains commands that were not entirely created by Mark Williams Company.

`/usr/games` contains computer games.

`/usr/games/lib/fortunes` holds a set of witty *bon mots*; the game `fortune` will select one at random and prints it on your screen. A call to this game can be placed in a user's `.profile`, so he will see a new fortune each time that he logs on. To add fortunes of your own, just edit the file `/usr/games/lib/fortunes`.

`/usr/games/moo` is a number-guessing game. The program generates a number with four digits, all different. It then asks you to enter a number with four different digits. If you have guessed the number with the digits in the proper order, the program responds:

Right!

and invites you to play again.

If your guess is incorrect, the program tells you how many digits you guessed in their proper positions — labeled “bulls” — and how many digits you guessed, but not in their proper positions — called “cows”. You can keep guessing until your guess is correct.

The directory `/usr/include` contains header files for C programs, such as `stdio.h`. Other header files define formats of files and other important data structures in the system.

`/usr/lib` contains the macro files `ms` and `man` used the `nroff` text processor; the unit conversion tables for the command `units`; and the file `/usr/lib/crontab` used to hold commands for `cron`. This directory also holds the C libraries.

`/usr/man` contains manual sections referenced by the commands `man` and `help` commands.

`/usr/msgs` stores messages displayed by the command `msgs`.

`/usr/pub` contains public files, such as telephone numbers and a copy of the ASCII table.

`/usr/spool` contains information for line-printer spooling, and mail that has not yet been delivered.

`/u`

In some systems, users' directories are placed on a separate device to save space. Because a separate device has a separate file system, the directory on that device is called `/u`.

How Booting Works

This section discusses the events that take place while starting, or *booting*, the COHERENT system. You do not need to read this section to know how to boot COHERENT, as all booting details are handled by COHERENT automatically. However, if you are interested in the details, or want to tailor the system to your needs, this section will help.

Two I/O devices are involved in bootstrapping. The first device is called the *boot* device; it contains the program necessary to invoke the COHERENT system and start it running. The second device is called the *root* device; it contains the root file system after the system is running. In most cases, these two devices are the same physical device.

Startup Events

This section briefly describes what takes place when you perform the startup of the COHERENT system.

The initial installation of the system loads information from tape, floppy disk, or other medium to the hard disk. The release notes for your specific version of the COHERENT system describe the installation procedure in detail.

The above section "Regular Startup" described a startup procedure that first loads a small program from a floppy disk. This program, called the **bootstrap** program, then reads in the COHERENT system itself. The boot procedure may be different on your system.

If the bootstrap finds a file called **autoboot** in the root directory of the device being booted, this program is loaded into memory and started. If this file does **not** exist, the system will prompt the user to enter the name of the COHERENT image to boot.

After it loads the system image **/coherent** from the root device, the bootstrap program starts a program named **idle**. This program uses all leftover computer time and performs other control functions.

The program **init** controls the operation of the system from this point on. It first executes the command **/etc/brc** (i.e., **boot rc**), which may run commands like **fsck**. The file **brc** can request a reboot, stay single-user, or go multi-user automatically. Then it calls the **shell** to handle commands from the system console. The shell responds by prompting with **#**, expecting regular commands. At this time, the system is in *single-user mode*, meaning that no other users can log in to the system. The shell is running in superuser mode and only the console's user is logged in.

At this point, you can enter commands to the system in a normal fashion. One difference from normal operation is that the system is in single-user mode, to allow special processing to take place before other users log in. Being in single-user mode gives you the opportunity to run **fsck** to check the file system and perform other administrative tasks before other users log into the system.

When administrative activities are finished, you should type **<ctrl-D>**. This terminates single user operation; **init** then opens the system to other users.

The file **/etc/rc** contains shell commands which the system executes just before making the system available to other users. This file typically includes commands to delete temporary files and mount standard devices. It also performs any installation-specific commands you require. As system administrator, you maintain this file. You must be sure that it is properly updated and never removed.

One command that must be included in **/etc/rc** is **/etc/update**, which periodically calls **sync** to update buffered data to the disk. On a small number of systems, **/etc/rc** also loads **/drv/swap**, called the *swapper*. The swapper writes inactive program images to the swapping device to make room for other user programs that are ready to run.

init also maintains the file **/etc/utmp**, noting users' login and logout.

Files Used During Startup

The following files are used when the system is in single-user mode:

<code>/etc/drvld</code>	Load device drivers
<code>/etc/init</code>	Initiate a process on each terminal line, call login when appropriate
<code>/etc/brc</code>	Shell commands for booting
<code>/etc/checklist</code>	List of partitions for <code>fsck</code>
<code>/bin/sh</code>	Shell

The following files are needed after the system has gone multi-user:

<code>/etc/rc</code>	Shell commands for multi-user startup
<code>/etc/tty</code>	Information about terminals
<code>/bin/login</code>	Login program
<code>/etc/utmp</code>	"who" file
<code>/etc/logmsg</code>	Login prompt
<code>/etc/motd</code>	Message of the day
<code>/etc/mount.all</code>	Shell script to mount partitions

Devices, Files, and Drivers

This section discusses files, special files, and devices.

The COHERENT system provides device-independent I/O. Devices and files are handled in a consistent way. Each I/O device is represented as a *special file* in directory `/dev`. For example, if your system has a line printer device named `lp`, you can list a file, named `prog` for example, on the printer by saying

```
cat prog >/dev/lp
```

Another example is to copy the file `prog` with the `cp` command to your terminal:

```
cp prog /dev/tty
```

There are two types of special files represented in `/dev`, and when you list `/dev` with `ls` it will separate them.

The first type is a *block special* file. This type includes disks and magnetic tape. These devices are read and written in blocks of 512 bytes, and can be randomly accessed. (As a practical note, note that magnetic tape can be read in a random fashion only by positioning backwards and forwards one record at a time; disks can be read or written in a totally random fashion.)

The I/O to and from block devices is buffered to improve overall system performance. When a program writes a block of data, the data are held in a buffer to be written at a later time. If the same block is read twice in a row, the data for it is still available in memory and does not have to be fetched from the physical device.

A special program named `/etc/update` forces all buffered data to the physical device periodically by calling the command `sync`, to protect against losing data in the case of an accident, such as a power failure. If you must bring the system down, you must force the latest data to be written by typing the command `sync`.

Character-Special Files

The second kind of special file is called a *character-special* file. Included in this class are devices that are not block special: terminals, printers, and so on. Disks and tapes can also be treated as character special files. For every block special file for a disk, such as

```
/dev/at0c
```

there is usually a character-special file:

```
/dev/rat0c
```

Character-special files are sometimes called *raw* files, hence the prefix *r* in *rat0c*. A raw file has no buffering or other intermediate processing performed on its information. This difference is an efficient benefit to the **dump**, **restor**, and **fsck** commands, which do their own buffering.

tty Processing

One special set of devices has other processing — the *tty* or terminal files. A terminal-special file with this special processing is called a *cooked* device. The processing includes handling the **kill**, **erase**, **interrupt**, **quit**, **stop**, **start**, and **end-of-file** characters. Processing can be disabled with the command **stty** so the program deals with the raw device. However, using a raw *tty* device generally has negative effects on performance of the COHERENT system.

Creating and Mounting File Systems

This section discusses how to create a file system on an empty device. You must do this to prepare a new diskette before mounting it on your system. You may also do this if you want to rebuild one of your file systems from scratch.

Because most AT COHERENT systems work with high-density, 5.25-inch floppy disks, this section will concentrate on this device.

fdformat: Format a Diskette

The command **fdformat** formats a diskette. When a diskette is formatted, COHERENT writes information on each track that makes it possible for the diskette to hold a file system.

fdformat uses the following syntax:

```
/etc/fdformat device
```

where *device* is the name of the device to be formatted. To format a high-density, 5.25-inch diskette, use the command:

```
/etc/fdformat /dev/fha0
```

To format a high-density, 3.5-inch diskette, type:

```
/etc/fdformat /dev/fva0
```

To format a low-density, 5.25-inch diskette, type:

```
/etc/fdformat /dev/f9a0
```

To create a COHERENT file system on a formatted diskette, use the command **mkfs**.

See the Lexicon entry for **fdformat** for more information on this command and its options.

mkfs: Create a File System

To create a file system, issue the command:

```
/etc/mkfs special proto
```

special is the special device-node file on which the file system is to be built. *proto* is either a number or a file name. If it is a number, **mkfs** builds a file system of that size in blocks. For example, to create a file system on a high-density, 5.25-inch diskette, type:

```
/etc/mkfs /dev/fha0 2400
```

Otherwise, *proto* is presumed to be a file, called a *prototype file*, which describes the file system to be built. The following gives a sample *proto* prototype file:

```
/dev/null
800 128
d--755 3 1
    dev d--555 3 1
    $
    etc d--755 3 1
    $
    bin d--755 3 1
    $
    drv d--755 3 1
    $
    lib d--755 3 1
    $
    usr d--755 3 1
    $
    tmp d--777 3 1
    $
$
```

The file must consist of a set of character strings that are separated by spaces and newlines, and that describe how the file system is to be built. These strings are delineated by blanks or appear on different lines.

The first string **mkfs** looks for is the path name of the file that contains the bootstrap program to be written onto the first block of the device. In this case, the string is **/dev/null**, or the null device, so there will be no bootstrap written.

Next is the decimal number of blocks to be included in the file system; in this example, 800. This may be fewer than the total number of blocks on the device.

Third is the number of *i-nodes* to be on the *i-list*, in this case, 128. There must be one *i-node* available for each file that will reside on the disk.

The next strings describe the root file. Generally, this root file is a directory, and therefore **mkfs** must be told about other files to be created in this directory. Each of the files described to **mkfs** will be of the same form.

The strings

```
d--755 3 1
```

describe the properties of the root file. **d--755** describe the mode of the file, and the **3** and **1** describe the owner of the file.

The string describing the *mode* of the file is six characters long. The first of these characters specifies the type of the file: **d** means directory, **b** block-special file, and **c** character-special file. Thus, the root file is a directory file.

The second character must be **u** if the set user id mode is to be in effect, and **'** if not.

The third character must be **g** if the set group id mode is to be in effect, and **'** if not.

The remaining three characters **755** specify the file access permissions. These are described fully in the Lexicon's entry for **chmod**.

The user id and group id are both integers as defined in the password file. After these numbers comes the contents of the file. Because the root in this example is a directory, the contents are other files. These files are described in a similar fashion, except that the file name comes before the mode specification.

To make the prototype file more readable, files in a directory are indented. At the end of each file description is a **\$**.

Consider the description of the file:

```
dev d--555 3 1
$
```

First comes a string **dev**, specifying the name of the file. Next is the mode description **d--555**. Third is the user id **3**. Fourth is the group id **1**. Next comes the description of the contents of the directory. In this instance, no initial contents are given. Finally, the character **\$** signifies the end of the directory description.

If the type of file is either a block special file or a character special file, the next strings are the major and minor device numbers, in that order.

The final **\$** in this example signals the end of the description of the root file on the device.

If the file is a regular file, the *contents* is the path name of a file that is to be copied to the file being created.

mount: Mounting File Systems

The COHERENT system allows you to mount and unmount file systems on diskettes while the system is running. This can be used for quick back-ups or for special jobs that require extra file space.

Before you mount a diskette for the first time, you must first have formatted it and run **mkfs** to create a file system on it. *If you do not, mounting it can cause the COHERENT system to halt and possibly damage the file system.*

There must be a directory on the diskette to which all files and directories for the mountable file system are attached. The directory should not have any files in it at the time of mounting. If it does, they will be inaccessible until the file system is unmounted. The root file on each physical device must be a file in a directory on another device, usually the **root** device.

The special file for the removable device must also exist in **/dev**. Special files are created with the command **mknod**.

To illustrate how **mount** works, assume the device is **/dev/fha0**, and that the directory to which files are to be attach is **f0**. The **mount** command is:

```
/etc/mount /dev/fha0 /f0
```

To generalize:

```
/etc/mount special directory
```

special is the special file that corresponds to the mountable device. *directory* names the branch of the file system where files are to appear.

The file system can be protected as read-only with the **-r** option:

```
/etc/mount special directory -r
```

The command **mount**, if used with no arguments, tells you which file systems are currently mounted.

```
/etc/mount
```

To remove the file system, use the command **umount** and the name of the device:

```
/etc/umount /dev/fha0
```

File System Integrity

Each COHERENT file system is constructed in the same manner, regardless of which device it resides in. This results from the device independent I/O design principle of the COHERENT system.

To be sure that the file system on each device is in proper condition, the COHERENT boot routines automatically check the file system every time you boot your system. This section discusses how the file system is constructed and how to check it for errors.

How a File System Is Built

Each device that holds a file system can be thought of as a list or array of randomly accessible blocks. Each block contains 512 bytes. The array of blocks on each device is divided into regions.

A list of available data blocks for a device is kept by the system on the device. This set of blocks is called the *free list*. Whenever a file is created or expanded, the system allocates it a data block from the free list. When all links to a file are removed, the file is deleted by returning all of its data blocks to the free list.

Similarly, a list of available i-nodes is maintained. This list is kept in memory and in part of the superblock (described below). However, each i-node also maintains information telling if it is free.

If the disk surface has defects, the block that corresponds to that spot cannot be read or written. The system keeps a list of bad blocks so files can be built around these bad spots.

The very first block, block 0, is reserved on each device for a boot program. The next block, block 1, is called the *superblock* and describes how the rest of the blocks of the device are partitioned.

Beginning with block 2 is the list of i-nodes, called the *i-list*. An **i-node** contains information about the location of each file's data, and the *mode* of the file. Each file has an i-node number called the *i-number*. From the i-node number, the system can directly find the i-node. Each i-number uniquely identifies the file on a device. The first i-node is reserved for the bad block list. The second i-node is for the root file system. Each active i-node contains information about a file on that device.

Each user has a user name and a user id. Both of these numbers are assigned by you in your capacity as system administrator using the command `newusr`. The user id numbers begin with one and continue consecutively. Similarly, each group of users is assigned a group name, as well as a group id.

The i-node contains several pieces of important information. The user id and group id give the ownership of the file. The data blocks of the file are indicated in the i-node. Also present are the size (in bytes) of the file, and the mode of the file. Finally, times of attribute change, modification, and last access are maintained.

Directories are like other files, except that they can never be directly written by the user. A directory entry simply contains the file name and the i-number. When you use the link command `ln`, the new name is entered into the directory with the i-number of the existing file and the link count in the i-node is incremented. If you use the command `rm` to remove the links to a file, the directory entry is removed and the link count of the i-node is decremented. When the link count reaches zero the i-node freed, and the data part of the file is also freed.

fsck: Check File System Consistency

The command **fsck** checks the consistency of the blocks listed in the free list against the blocks that are actually used. For example:

```
fsck /dev/root
```

where **/dev/root** is a disk device, checks the file system located on device **/dev/root**.

If possible, you should **umount** the file system before you check it. You cannot **umount** the root file system. If you can't unmount it, be sure that no other users are on the system (i.e., that you are in single-user mode), then reboot the system immediately *without* performing a **sync**. If other users are creating or expanding files while the file systems are being checked, **fsck** will report false errors.

If **fsck** finds any discrepancies, it writes appropriate messages on the terminal. An absence of messages indicates that there are no problems with the file system. An error message

```
bad ifree
```

should be treated as a comment; it means that i-nodes that are in use are also noted in the free i-node list. This is not a problem since each i-node is marked used or unused in the i-node itself. This information is automatically checked by the system before using an i-node from the free list.

The message

```
dups in free
```

means that a block is listed more than once in the free list. Each block should be listed no more than once.

The message

```
bad freelist
```

means that the free list contains block numbers that do not exist on the device.

These errors must be corrected before the file system is mounted. To correct these errors, use **fsck** to rebuild the free list. Before it rebuilds the free list, it will ask for your permission. If you could not **umount** the file system, you should immediately reboot *without* performing a **sync**. Otherwise, the system will keep the old, incorrect superblock. If the file system was unmounted when you invoked **fsck**, you can remount the system after running **fsck**.

The error message

```
dup
```

means that a data block belongs to more than one i-node or to an i-node and the free list.

COHERENT's boot routines run **fsck** automatically, and will rerun it if necessary to fix problems with the file system. For more information on **fsck**, see its entry in the Lexicon.

Conclusion

The following sections of this manual give tutorials to teach you how to use many of COHERENT's tools and commands. The Lexicon contains brief synopses of all commands, library routines, system calls, and macros available under the COHERENT system. It also includes many technical references and definitions, to help you with terminology throughout this manual.

Section 4:

Introduction to the awk Language

awk is a general-purpose pattern scanning language available with the COHERENT operating system. **awk** performs pattern matching, string manipulation, record processing, and report generation.

The syntax for **awk** is simple. It uses only one kind of statement, consisting of one or both of two elements: a *pattern* and an *action*. Patterns select the data to be processed, and actions specify the function to be performed on the selected data.

This tutorial explains how to write **awk** programs to process input. It will teach you how to use the **awk** interpreter and how to create an **awk** program. It describes the basic function of printing and the specification of input and output field and record separators. It explains the pattern scanning capabilities of **awk**. Finally, it describes the actions **awk** performs in addition to printing, such as assigning variables, defining arrays, and controlling the flow of data.

Using awk

awk reads input from the standard input (entered from your terminal or from a file you specify), processes each input line according to a specified **awk** program, and writes output to the standard output. This section explains the structure of an **awk** program and the syntax of **awk** command lines.

Program Structure

The basic element of an **awk** program is a statement in the form:

```
pattern {action}
```

A program may contain as many sets of *patterns* and *actions* as you need to accomplish your purposes.

awk checks each line of input with the *patterns* specified for a match, one pattern at a time. Each time the line matches a *pattern*, **awk** performs the corresponding *action*. After **awk** has compared the line with each *pattern* in the program, **awk** tests the next

To indicate where fields are divided when the output is printed, you can assign a character such as * to **OFS** as follows:

```
BEGIN {OFS = "*"}
      {FS = "i" ; print $1, $2}
```

This program prints the following:

```
Now *s the t
```

Notice that a semicolon (;) separates two statements on the same line.

The variable **NF** contains the number of fields in the current record. In the following program, **awk** prints the number of fields at the beginning of each output record, telling you the number of elements in the record:

```
{print NF,$0}
```

awk can also use the variable **NF** in relational expressions. For example, to print all records with ten or more fields, you could use this program:

```
NF >= 10 {print $0}
```

Command Line Arguments

As with any COHERENT program or command, you invoke **awk** by typing the lowercase letters **awk**. To process files with **awk**, you must include some additional elements on the command line, called *arguments*.

The complete form for the **awk** command line is:

```
awk [-y] [-Fc] [-f progfile] [prog] [file1] [file2] ...
```

Each argument is described below.

The **-y** option enables you to name *patterns* in lowercase characters, which **awk** then matches to both uppercase and lowercase characters in the input file. This option is similar to its counterpart in the regular expression pattern-matching utility, **egrep**.

The following programs show how the **-y** option works on the file named **the**, which contains the following two lines:

```
The time is right.
Now is the time.
```

<i>Command</i>	<i>Output</i>
<code>awk -y '/the/' the</code>	The time is right. Now is the time.
<code>awk '/the/' the</code>	Now is the time.

The option **-Fc** is the command-line version of

```
FS = "c"
```

which is an assignment like the one described earlier. This option changes the input field separator from the default (white space) to the character *c*. You may include any characters you want **awk** to use as field separators after the **-F** flag.

The **-f** *progfile* option enables you to use a file *progfile* containing **awk** commands as an **awk** program. The option flag (**-f**) must precede the name of the file to be used as a program.

If you do not use the **-f** *progfile* option, you must use the *prog* option. This option specifies the **awk** program on the command line. When writing a command-line **awk** program, use an apostrophe before the first statement (*pattern*, *action*, or both); then enter the subsequent lines of the program. After the last statement of the program, type another apostrophe mark followed by the file or files to be processed. Note that COHERENT prompts you to enter more information by displaying the '>' at the beginning of each line until you enter the closing apostrophe and newline character.

The following program is an **awk** command-line program. It prints a heading before **awk** reads the input file *test*, and then prints the entire file with each line preceded by its line number.

```
$ awk 'BEGIN {print "sample output file"}
>      {print NR, $0}' test
```

The *file1 file2 ...* option enables you to process existing files. When you want to process more than one file, separate the file names with white space. If you do not specify a file name in the command line, **awk** takes input from the standard input.

The following program prints the files *test1* and *test2*. Each line is preceded by its record number.

```
$ awk '{print NR, $0}' test1 test2
```

Printing with awk

Printing is an **awk** *action*. In fact, it is the action most often used, because it is the simplest to use. The following short **awk** program prints its entire input:

```
{print}
```

When you specify **awk** actions, you may include several actions within one set of braces; however, each action must be separated from the others by semicolons (;) or newlines.

Printing Individual Fields

With **awk**, you can print output fields in a different order from the input fields.

You can print fields in any order you desire. For example, you can print the second and third fields in reverse order:

```
{print $3,$2}
```

When this program processes the input file *now* containing the sample record used

above, the printed result is:

```
the is
```

Because the field names are separated by a comma, **awk** inserts an output field separator between the fields when printing them.

If you do not separate field names by commas in the print statement, **awk** concatenates the fields when printing them. For example, the following program prints the second and third fields:

```
{print $2 $3}
```

The result is:

```
isthe
```

Changing the Output Field and Record Separators

You may change the output field separator by assigning your desired separator to the variable **OFS**. To use the same field separator with the entire input, make the assignment before the first print statement. For example, to make the colon your output field separator, use a statement like this:

```
{OFS=":"; print $2,$3,$4}
```

You will receive this output:

```
is:the:time
```

To change the separator for the first line only, use the statement:

```
NR ==1{ OFS=":";print $2,$3,$4}
```

To change the output record separator from the default newline, assign required separator to the variable **ORS** in the same manner.

Printing Predefined Variables

As discussed earlier, you can print either or both of the **NF** (number of fields) or **NR** (number of records) predefined variables. To print a predefined variable, simply name it in the print statement. For example, to include the **NF** variable before the other output in the previous example, edit the program to read as follows:

```
{OFS = ":"; print NF,$2,$3,$4}
```

The output resulting from this statement is:

```
4:is:the:time
```

You can specify the **NR** variable in the same way. When you add the name of the variable to the desired place in the list of fields to be printed, **awk** prints the record number in that place in the output.

Redirecting Output

In addition to printing to the standard output, you also may redirect output to a file or files of your choosing. This ability to direct output to any file enables you to extract information from a given file and construct new documents.

Suppose you have a file named **accounts** with accounting information stored in it. The first column of the file contains payroll information, the second column shows income for the year, and the third column reports accounts payable information. You are to make an income report for the year containing text and tables.

To extract the income information from the **accounts** file and put it into a separate file named **income**, you can use the following **awk** program:

```
{print $2 > "income"}
```

With this program, **awk** creates the file **income** if it does not already exist, and enters the second column of the **accounts** file as the contents of the new file. If a file named **income** already exists, **awk** replaces the current contents of the file with the second column of the **accounts** file.

If you need the first two columns for two separate reports, you can redirect both columns to separate files using one statement.

```
{print $2 > "income"; print $1 > "payroll"}
```

You can specify a maximum of ten files for output.

If text for your report is already contained in the file **report**, you can append the second column of the **accounts** file to the end of your report using this **awk** program:

```
{print $2 >> "report"}
```

Appending enables you to complete your report without retyping a column of numbers that exists in another file.

Formatting Output

When you use **awk** to process a column of text or numbers as in the example above, you may want to specify a consistent format for the output. The statement for formatting a column of numbers follows this *pattern*:

```
{printf "format", expression}
```

where *format* is prescribed by the format control characters and separators defined below. *expression* specifies the fields for **awk** to print.

The following table shows the names and meanings of the most frequently used **awk** format control characters. To be recognized as format control characters by **awk**, these characters must be preceded by the percent sign **%** and a number in the form of *n* or *n.m*.

Format-Control Characters Meaning

<code>%nd</code>	Decimal number
<code>%n.mf</code>	Floating-point number
<code>%n.ms</code>	String

When you call the `printf` function through `awk` to format the output, you must specify the output separators you want to use.

<i>Output-Separator Character</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
<code>\n</code>	Newline
<code>\t</code>	Tab
<code>\f</code>	Form feed
<code>\r</code>	Carriage return
<code>\"</code>	Quotation mark

For example, if you wish to print a column of numbers with up to nine places to the left of the decimal and two to the right (for a total of 12 places, including the decimal), and you want a new entry for each line, use a format like this:

```
{printf "%12.2s\n", $2}
```

Piping Output

You can pipe the output of your `awk` program to another process. The pipe connects the standard output of `awk` to the standard input of another process, program, or utility.

For example, you can pipe output to the `mail` utility with the following program, which mails the output to `name`:

```
{print | "mail name"}
```

The pipe operator is the vertical bar character between the `print` and `mail` commands in this statement.

awk Pattern Scanning

The previous section described printing in terms of fields. Fields are generally the best way to select single elements from columnar input files. In addition to names of fields, `awk` can scan records for the following:

- Two special *patterns*: `BEGIN` and `END`
- Regular expressions
- Arithmetic relational expressions
- Boolean combinations of expressions
- Pattern ranges

Special Patterns: BEGIN and END

BEGIN is a special *pattern* that matches the beginning of the input, before **awk** processes any of the input. As mentioned above, **BEGIN** is the best place to set the field and record separators if you want the same separators for the entire input. **BEGIN** is also a good place to perform the *action* of assigning values to variables when the values are known.

Actions that require **awk** to compare input with the variable **NR** may not produce the results you expect from a **BEGIN pattern**, because all **BEGIN** processing is finished before **NR=1**. Also, **awk** does not permit field references in **BEGIN** or **END** statements.

END is a special *pattern* which matches the end of **awk** input. The **END pattern** enables you to request an *action* to occur when all processing is finished. A common use of **END** is printing the value of variables. For example:

```
END {print NR}
```

tells **awk** to print the value of **NR** after processing is finished, giving the total number of records processed. When you reach the **END pattern**, you may not return for further processing.

You may make **awk** into a calculator by using **END** with no *action*. At the end of the input, you may enter any arithmetic equation or **awk** function and have the result automatically printed on the standard output. When you are finished using **awk** as a calculator, type <ctrl-D>.

Patterns

You can enclose strings of characters in slashes **/** for **awk** to match, as **ed** (the COHERENT text editor) and **egrep** (the COHERENT text pattern matching command) do. For example, take this pattern:

```
/ted/
```

When a statement contains this expression, **awk** prints every record with the string **ted**, whether **ted** occurs as a word or as part of a word. For example:

```
interested
busted
tedious
```

In addition to specific strings, you can scan for classes and types of characters. To do so, enclose the characters within brackets, and place the bracketed characters between the slashes. For example, to specify a range of lowercase letters, enclose the range of letters within brackets:

```
/[a-z]/
```

You can specify ranges of uppercase letters or numerals the same way.

In addition, you can use the following special characters for further flexibility:

- [] Class of characters
- () Grouping subexpressions
- | Alternatives among expressions
- + One or more occurrences of the expression
- ? Zero or more occurrences of the expression
- * Zero, one, or more occurrences of the expression
- .

When adding a special character to a pattern, enclose the special character as well as the rest of the pattern within slashes.

To search for a string that contains one of the special characters, you must precede the character with a backslash. For example, if you are looking for the string "today?", use the following *pattern*:

```
/today\?/
```

When you need to find an expression in a particular field, not just anywhere in the record, you can use one of these operators:

- ~ Contains the data in question
- !~ Does not contain the data in question

For example, if you need to find the characters **jam** in the fourth field of the input, you can use the following statement:

```
$4~/[Jj]am/
```

This statement prints all lines where the fourth field contains **Jam** or **jam**. The statement also prints lines where the fourth field contains words like **James**, **jammed**, and **pajamas**. To prevent the **awk** program from selecting lines with characters other than separators on either side of the required expression, use the following special characters:

- ^ Beginning of the record or field
- \$ End of the record or field

With these characters, you can be still more specific about which field or record you want printed. For example, to allow **James** to be printed, but not **pajamas**, use the following statement:

```
$4~/^[Jj]am/
```

To allow only **Jam** or **jam**, use this statement:

```
$4~/^[Jj]am$/
```

Arithmetic Relational Expressions

An *awk pattern* may consist of relational expressions using the following operators:

<	Less than
<=	Less than or equal to
=	Equivalent
!=	Not equal
>=	Greater than or equal to
>	Greater than

With these operators, you can select fields according to their relation to one another. For example, if you want to print the first field only when it does not equal the second field, use this statement:

```
$1 != $2 {print $1}
```

You also can establish relationships among records. If you want to print no more than the first ten records, use the following statement:

```
NR <= 10
```

Because this example specifies no action, the statement prints all the records whose record number is ten or less.

Relational tests default to string comparison if either operand is nonnumeric. Thus, if one operand is numeric and the other is a string, *awk* makes a string comparison. The following example shows how *awk* compares one field to part of the alphabet:

```
$1 <= "C"
```

This statement selects all lines beginning with an ASCII value less than or equal to that of the letter 'C' (octal 103).

When you compare fields that have numeric values to one another, *awk* performs a numeric comparison. Consider the comparison in this example:

```
$2 < $1 + 100 {print $2}
```

This statement causes field 2 to be printed only when the value of field 2 does not exceed the value of field 1 by 100. If field 2 is alphabetic, it always matches in this comparison because strings evaluate to 0 in numeric comparisons.

Boolean Combinations of Expressions

awk tests logical combinations of expressions in its pattern-scanning process. Use the following operators for combining expressions:

||	Boolean OR
&&	Boolean AND
!	Boolean NOT

The following example tests for records that begin field 1 with a character that is less

than **u**, greater than or equal to **t**, and begin field 1 with a string other than **the**.

```
$1 < "u" && $1 >= "t" && $1 != "the"
```

The effect of this *pattern* is to select records that have a **t** as the first character in field 1 but do not begin field 1 with the letters **the**.

Pattern Ranges

awk may cause an *action* to be performed on all records between two specified *patterns*. For example, to print all records between the *patterns* **April 10** and **April 19** inclusive, enclose the strings in slashes and separate them with a comma; then indicate the **print** action, as follows:

```
/April 10/,/April 19/ {print}
```

You also may specify a range of record numbers using a statement such as this:

```
NR == 5, NR == 17 {print}
```

This statement specifies that records 5 through 17 of the input are to be printed.

Specifying awk Actions

This section describes **awk** *actions* other than printing *actions*. In addition to printing, **awk** is capable of:

- Performing functions
- Assigning variables
- Using fields as variables
- Concatenating strings
- Defining arrays
- Using control statements

Functions

awk includes functions that enable you to perform specific calculations with input information. You may assign these functions to any variable and use them in patterns. The following list shows the functions and their definitions; an argument can be any expression.

length

Return the length of the current record.

length(argument)

Return the length of *argument*.

sqrt(argument)

Return the square root of *argument*.

exp(argument)Return e to the power of *argument*.**log(argument)**Return the natural logarithm of *argument*.**int(argument)**Return the integer part of *argument*.**abs(argument)**Return the absolute value of *argument*.**substr(str,beg,len)**

Return the substring of *str* that is *len* characters long beginning at position *beg*. When **substr** occurs in a statement, **awk** scans *str* for the position *beg* within the string. When **awk** finds *beg*, it prints a substring *len* characters long starting at *beg*. If *len* is not included in the argument, the substring includes everything from *beg* to the end of the record.

index(s1,s2)Return the position of *s2* within *s1*, or zero if *s2* does not occur in *s1*.**sprintf(f,e1,e2)**Return strings *e1* and *e2* in the **printf** format *f***split(str,array,fs)**Divide *str* into fields associated with *array* (an array is a collection of fields listed under a single name) that are separated by *fs* or the default field separator.

The **sprintf** function lets you format expressions *e1* and *e2* according to format specification *f*. The following example demonstrates the operation of the **sprintf** function.

```
> awk 'x = sprintf("%7.2s", $1)
> {print $1}
> END {print x}'
```

When you run this sample program, **awk** accepts input data from the keyboard of the terminal. The first line of the program begins the **awk** program and sets variable *x* so that it contains five blank spaces and the first two characters of the first input field. The second line causes **awk** to print the first field as it was received. The third line ends the program by printing *x*, the formatted version of the first input field.

If you enter the word **chicago** as the first input field for this program, **awk** prints:

```
chicago
ch
```

The **split** function divides fields into subfields, breaking *str* into elements of *array* separated by *fs*, or white space when *fs* is not specified. In the following example, **awk** splits the first field of the record into subfields. If the record has a single colon in the first field, **awk** splits the field into two subfields. These subfields become the first and second fields of the array named **time**:

```
{split ($1,time,":")}
```

At this point, you may manipulate the information stored in the array **time** or simply print the subfields.

Assignment of Variables

In addition to the intrinsic variables, such as **NR** (which contains the number of the current input record) and **FILENAME** (which contains the name of the current file), you may assign other variables as described below.

Variables in **awk** may be string or numeric variables, depending on the context. By default, variables are set to the null string (numeric value zero) on start-up of the **awk** program. To set the variable **x** to the numeric value one, you can use the following assignment statement:

```
x = 1
```

To set **x** to the string **ted**, use the following statement:

```
x = "ted"
```

When the context demands it, **awk** converts strings to numbers or numbers to strings. For example, the statement

```
x = "3"
```

assigns to **x** the string **3**. When an expression contains an arithmetic operator such as the **-**, **awk** interprets the expression as numeric. (Alphabetic strings evaluate to zero.) Therefore,

```
x = "3" - "1"
```

assigns the value two to variable **x**.

When the operator is included within the quotation marks, **awk** treats the operator as a character in the string. In the following example

```
x = "3 -1"
```

assigns the string

```
"3 - 1"
```

to variable **x**.

You also can perform numeric calculations on fields. For example, you can calculate the sum of the fourth field in the following manner:

```
{sum += $4}
END {print sum}
```

The following table includes all the available operators for **awk**:

+	Addition
-	Subtraction
*	Multiplication
/	Division
%	Modulus
++	Increment
--	Decrement
+=	Add and assign value
-=	Subtract and assign value
*=	Multiply and assign value
/=	Divide and assign value
%=	Divide modulo and assign value

You may use any of these operators in **awk** expressions.

Field Variables

In **awk**, fields may receive assignments, be used in arithmetic, and be manipulated in string operations. The following **awk** statement shows some of the available uses of fields as variables.

```
{print $i, $(i+1), $(i+n)}
```

awk permits you to use numeric expressions to refer to fields. Here, print fields *i*, *i+1*, and *i+n*.

String Concatenation

As mentioned earlier, you can concatenate strings by omitting comma separators from printing actions. For example, the following print statement concatenates the first two fields by inserting a new connecting string:

```
(print $1 " telephones " $2)
```

If *\$1* contains "Tom" and *\$2* contains "John", this statement prints:

```
Tom telephones John
```

Arrays

Under **awk**, an array is a collection of values that is labeled with the name of the array. Each element has at least one named **index**. The array is implicitly declared because **awk** creates the array when you name it. Also, you can name the individual indices with any legal string or numeric value.

Because the indices for any array may have any value, the ordering of array elements is arbitrary. However, when you use numeric index names exclusively, **awk** follows an ascending numeric sequence.

You should specify the array element using an identifier followed by the array index, an arbitrary expression enclosed in brackets ([]). For example, consider an array called **surname**. This example uses array indices named **tom**, **van**, and **gordon**. The following action assigns a value to each of these indices:

```
BEGIN {surname ["tom"] = "jones"
        surname ["van"] = "johnson"
        surname ["gordon"] = "smith"}
```

You can print the contents of the array by naming the array in a **print** statement. **awk** also enables you to print the name of the index by associating another variable with the index, using a special form of the **for** statement. This form of **for** is:

```
for (index in array)
```

To retrieve the index names of the array **surname**, you may use the following statement:

```
END {for (person in surname)
      print person, surname[person]}
```

This statement yields the following output:

```
tom jones
van johnson
gordon smith
```

In addition to being a generic term for the indices in the array **surname**, **awk** creates an array of names called **person**, to which you can make further associations as needed.

To store the number of occurrences of a pattern, you may use the associative array capabilities of **awk**. For example, if you want to determine the number of occurrences of **mark** and **test**, and print the number next to its respective word, you can use the following program:

```
/[Mm]ark/ {n["mark"]++}
/[Tt]est/ {n["test"]++}
END       {for (word in n)
           print word, n[word]}
```

With each occurrence of **Mark** or **mark**, **awk** increments the variable **n[mark]**. (**awk** automatically initializes **n[mark]** and **n[test]** to zero at the start of execution.) After **awk** processes the last line of the input, the program prints each word and the number of occurrences of that word as stored in **n[word]**.

Control Statements

awk has seven defined control statements. The following section explains the statements and gives examples of their use.

if (condition) else

If the *condition* within the parentheses is true, the statement following the **if** is executed. If there is a clear alternative, the **else** precedes the action to be performed when the condition is false. The **else** is optional. If **awk** does not perform the *action* of the **if** statement and there is no **else** statement, **awk** continues with the next statement. For example:

```
{
  if (NR % 2 == 1)
    print "odd-numbered record"
  else
    print "even-numbered record"
}
```

while (condition)

While *condition* remains true, the statement following **while** is executed. For example:

```
{
  i = 1
  while (i <= NF){
    print $i
    i++
  }
}
```

for

The **for** statement lets you execute actions a specified number of times. This statement may contain an initialization portion, a Boolean test, and an incremental counter. The initialization portion sets the initial value of the count variable, which **awk** changes each time it performs the action. The Boolean test defines the conditions under which **awk** should continue the action. The incremental counter specifies how **awk** is to alter the count variable each time it performs the action. For example:

```
{
  for (i = 1; i <= NF; i++)
    print $i
}
```

break

The **break** statement immediately interrupts a **while** or **for** execution. For example:

```
{
  for (i in numbers){
    if (numbers [i] == "stop")
      break
    print i, numbers [i]
  }
}
```

continue

The **continue** statement immediately begins the next iteration of the **while** or **for** statement. For example:

```
$1~/Smith/ {
  for (i = 2; i <= NF; i++){
    if ($i < 100)
      continue
    sum += $i
  }
}
```

next

The **next** statement causes processing to skip to the next record for comparison with all the *patterns*, beginning with the first, and in order. For example:

```
NR % 2 == 1{
  print "odd-numbered record"
  next
}
{
  print "even-numbered record"
}
```

exit

The **exit** statement forces the **awk** program to skip any remaining input and to execute the *actions* at the **END** patterns. For example:

```
sum >= 1000 {exit}
            {sum += $4}
END        {print NR, sum}
```

For More Information

The Lexicon's article on `awk` gives a quick reference of its features and options.

Section 5:

bc Desk Calculator Language

This tutorial introduces **bc**, the calculator language for COHERENT. If you have not used **bc** before, this tutorial will introduce you to its features and functions. If you are familiar with **bc**, you can use it as a reference.

bc is a language that can calculate to high precision. It automatically adjusts the number of digits in a number to represent it correctly. It is like having a powerful calculator at your fingertips.

Entry and Exit

The **bc** calculator for COHERENT is easy to use. Whenever you wish to invoke **bc**, all you do is type its name (**bc**), followed by a stroke of the carriage return key. When you are finished using the calculator and wish to exit, just type the word 'quit' or <ctrl-D>. **bc** exits and return control to COHERENT.

Example of Simple Use

bc performs calculations on formulas that you type into it. The formulas are laid out as you would naturally write them. For example, to invoke **bc**, have it add 2+2, and then exit, type:

```
bc
2 + 2
```

bc replies:

```
4
```

Then, leave **bc** by typing:

```
quit
```

bc is an arbitrary precision calculator: the number of digits carried by **bc** depends upon the requirements of the calculation, and is automatically expanded by **bc**. Thus, **bc** will never overflow. The number of digits it carries is limited only by the amount of avail-

able computer memory. For example, try this calculation:

```
2^500
```

The carat '^' character signifies a superscript; thus, we are asking **bc** to raise 2 to the 500th power. After a moment, **bc** will reply:

```
327339060789614187001318969682759915221664\  
204604306478948329136809613379640467455488\  
327009232590415715088668412756007100921725\  
6545885393053328527589376
```

You have probably already noticed one nice thing about this calculator: you don't have to include a print statement as part of your command, because **bc** automatically prints the results onto your terminal screen. When **bc** sees any expression, like "2+2" or "3777", it prints the result.

bc provides the common arithmetic operators for add, subtract, multiply, and divide, as illustrated by the following commands:

```
7 + 5  
7 - 5  
7 * 5  
7 / 5
```

bc also provides the remainder operator '%'. To get a sense of how it works, type:

```
7 % 5  
5 % 7
```

Here, **bc** prints the *remainder* of the first number divided by the second; in the case of the first example, the **bc** prints 2, and in the second prints 5. As you saw above, **bc** also includes the exponentiation operator '^'.

With **bc**, you can also enter numbers with fractional parts. Type the following to illustrate:

```
9.999 * 9.999
```

bc replies:

```
99.980
```

You can save temporary calculations or repeated constants in *variables*. The following example shows you first how to define variables, and second how to use them:

```
a = 1.1  
b = 2.2  
a  
b  
a * b
```

Variable names can be longer than one letter.

The basic calculations in the above examples show only part of what **bc** can do. The following section describes simple statements — the assignment of variables and abbreviations — that allow you to perform complex calculations easily.

Simple Statements

Although you can use **bc** as a simple calculator for manipulating numbers, you can take advantage of its greater power by using *variables*. Variables, as noted above, store parts of calculations or constants that you will use repeatedly in calculations. Variable names are simply “words” that you make up. Here are some examples of possible variable names:

```
a
b
totaltaxesdue
ratio
```

To use variables, simply give them a value, use them in a calculation in place of a number, or print them out.

To see how a variable can save you repetitive typing, and protect you from possible errors, invoke **bc** and type the following:

```
x = 9.999
x
x * x
x = x * x
x
```

The following gives the example with **bc**'s replies *in italics*:

```
x = 9.999
x
9.999
x * x
99.980
x = x * x
x
99.980
```

bc did not reply to the assignment statements **x=9.999** and **x=x*x**. However, it did print the value of **x** when requested, and the results of arithmetic using **x**.

Calculations executed with hand-held calculators, with programming languages like C, or with **bc** often use the following formula:

```
x = x + 1
```

To decrease the likelihood of error, **bc** offers you a shorthand expression for this common phrase:

```
x += 1
```

What it means is, "add one to x". Type the following example into **bc** to see how this expression works:

```
x = 1
x * x
x += 1
x * x
x += 1
```

Likewise, **bc** provides an abbreviation for:

```
x = x - 2
```

The form should now be familiar:

```
x -= 2
```

The number to the right of the **-=** or **+=** operator can be replaced with a variable or even another calculation. When you type:

```
i = 4
x = 48
x -= i
x
```

bc in each case replies:

```
44
```

Alternatively, if you type:

```
i = 4
x = 48
x -= i * i
x
```

then **bc** replies:

```
32
```

Similar abbreviations are provided for multiplication, division, remainder, and exponentiation. Here is a summary of this class of operation.

```
a += 2 /* replace a with a plus 2 */
b += a /* replace b with b plus a */
b -= a /* replace b with b minus a */
c *= b /* replace c with c multiplied by b */
c /= a /* replace c with c divided by a */
c %= b /* replace c with remainder of c divided by b */
d ^= 3 /* replace d with d raised to the 3rd power */
```

bc also has an operator that increases a variable by one: **++**. When you type:


```
a = 1
++a
```

then **bc** replies:

```
2
```

To use this operator in an expression, combine it with a variable anywhere that a variable would normally be used. For example, entering

```
b = 1
a = 3
b = ++a
a
b
```

yields:

```
4
4
```

The '+' operator can also be put after a name. The resulting value in the expression is the value of the name *before* it is incremented. However, after the expression is evaluated, the name will have an incremented value. The following example shows the use of '+' both before and after a name:

```
a = 1
b = 1
a++
++b
a
b
```

bc replies:

```
1
2
2
2
```

Operators are used in this manner:

```
a = 1
b = 2
c = a++ + ++b
```

Similar to '+' is '-'. It behaves the same way, except that rather than adding one, it subtracts one.

Numbers with Fractions

Most of the examples presented earlier use whole numbers (integers). However, **bc** can use numbers with fractional parts. This section discusses the use of fractional numbers in **bc** and their precision under different operations.

The Scale of Numbers

The number of digits to the left of the decimal point carried by **bc** depends upon the requirements of the calculation. If you calculate a large number, as in:

$$2^{500}$$

the result will contain as many digits as needed to express the product.

The number of digits to the right of a decimal point is called the *scale* of the number. Scale depends upon the operation that produces the number of digits, and a variable called **scale** that will be described shortly.

To illustrate simple uses of numbers with fractions, invoke **bc** and then type:

```
a = .01
b = 0.99
a+b
```

bc reply:

```
1.00
```

Addition and Subtraction

bc will dynamically adjust the number of digits in the calculation. It deals similarly with fractional numbers. To the following example

```
a = 0.01
b = 0.001
a + b
```

bc reply:

```
.011
```

In addition and subtraction, the scale of the result is the *larger* of the scales of the two numbers involved. Results are not truncated in addition or subtraction operations.

Scale During Multiplication

Other arithmetic operations act differently with numbers that contain fractions. In the multiplication of two numbers, the scale of the product will at least equal the larger of the scales of the two numbers. For example, the input:

$$1.1 * 1.11$$

results in:

$$1.22$$

Setting the Scale of Results

To increase the number of fractional digits for higher accuracy, **bc** provides the built-in variable **scale**. The following example illustrates the **scale** variable:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{scale} &= 3 \\ 1.1 * 1.11 \end{aligned}$$

The result from this example is:

$$1.221$$

Note, however, the scale of the product of a multiplication procedure never exceeds the sum of the scales of the two numbers being multiplied. For example,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{scale} &= 10 \\ 1.1 * 1.11 \end{aligned}$$

yields the result:

$$1.221$$

If the variable **scale** is less than the sum of the scales of the numbers being multiplied, then the product will have a scale equal to that of the variable **scale**. For example,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{scale} &= 4 \\ 1.11 * 2.222 \end{aligned}$$

yields:

$$2.4664$$

The scales of the operands are 2 and 3. The larger scale is 3, so the result of a multiplication will have a scale of at least 3, no matter what **scale** is set to. Also, the sum of the scales is 5, so the result will never have more than 5 digits to the right of the decimal point. In this example, **scale** has been set to a number between 3 and 5, namely 4. Therefore, the result has a scale of 4.

Scale for Divisions

For division and remainder, the scale of the result is determined only by the value of the variable **scale**. For example,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{scale} &= 13 \\ 14 / 13 \\ 14 \% 13 \end{aligned}$$

yields:

```
1.0769230769230
.0000000000010
```

For non-whole numbers, as well as for integers, the definition of remainder is chosen so that the relationship

```
dividend = (divisor * quotient) + remainder
```

is true.

Scale From Exponentiation

bc sets the **scale** of a result of exponentiation as if repeated multiplications had been performed. Thus, for

```
5.992 ^ 5
```

the scale is chosen as if you typed:

```
n = 5.992
n * n * n * n * n
```

That is, the default is the scale of the largest (or, in this case, the only) number being multiplied; and scale cannot exceed the sum of the numbers being multiplied. Thus, the scale of the product in this example has a default setting of 3, and can be reset up to 15.

What Is the Current Scale?

The variable **scale** is just like other variables: you can assign values to it, as above. Because it is like regular variables, you can also use it in operations, as in this example:

```
scale += 1
```

You can also print its value:

```
scale
```

The value of the **scale** variable is zero until you explicitly change it.

The if Statement

The statements shown so far have been either assignment statements, giving a new value to a variable; or an expression, which prints the resulting value. Several other kinds of statements are available. These give you power to write programs that make decisions and perform iterative computations.

Using the if Statement

To see the **if** statement in action, type the following example into **bc**:

```
x = 3
if (x < 5) x
if (x > 5) -x
```

The reply is:

3

If the input is:

```
x = 6
if (x < 5) x
if (x > 5) -x
<return>
```

bc replies:

-6

The part of the `if` statement in parentheses, such as `(x > 5)`, determines whether `bc` executes the statement that follows it, such as `-x`. If the expression is false, the following statement is not executed. If the expression is true, the following statement is executed.

Comparisons

The decision expression in an `if` statement is enclosed in parentheses. The decision can be based upon a comparison of two operands, or numbers. The kinds of comparisons that can be done are:

```
==   First operand equal to second
!=   First operand not equal to second
<=   First operand less than or equal to second
<    First operand less than second
>=   First operand greater than or equal to second
>    First operand greater than second
```

The `if` statement can include the sorts of the simple statements already shown. You can also include an `if` statement, as well as the `while`, `do`, and `for` statements, which will be discussed below. The following example illustrates the use of an `if` statement within an `if` statement:

```
a = 2
b = 6
if (a >= 2) if (b > a) a + b
<return>
```

bc replies, simply:

8

Because both of the `if` conditions were true, `bc` proceeded to add `a` and `b`.

Grouped Statements

You can place more than one statement after the expression part of the **if** statement by using grouping braces '{' and '}'. This can be useful if you want to perform several calculations based on the result of an **if** statement comparison. The following example prints the value of **a** and **b** if the value of **b** is less than the value of **a**:

```
a = 1
b = .99
if (a > b) {
    a
    b
}
```

bc replies:

```
1
.99
```

Any statement may be enclosed within the group braces, as the following example shows:

```
a = 1
b = .99
if (a > b) {
    a
    b
    if ((a + b) >= 2) a + b
}
```

Many Statements Per Line

To this point, all of our examples typed each statement on its own line. This includes the group braces '{' and '}', the latter of which must appear on a line by itself. You can, however, place several statements on one line if you separate them with semicolons. If you do this, remember that the semicolon rather than the carriage return separates the statements. For example, if you type:

```
a = 1;b = 2;c = 3
a;b;c
```

bc replies:

```
1
2
3
```

You can use this in combination with the group braces:

```
a = 1;b = 2;c = 3
if ((a +b) >= c) {
    a; b; c; a + b; }
```

The reply from **bc** is:

```
1
2
3
3
```

This example can be compressed even further by putting all of the **if** statement on one line:

```
a = 1;b = 2;c = 3
if ((a + b) >= c) { a; b; c; a + b; }
```

You do not need to follow the **}** with a semicolon.

The while Statement

The **while** statement repeats calculations. This is useful in successive approximation calculations. The following example of the **while** loop prints the numbers one through ten:

```
i = 1
while (i <= 10) {
    i
    i = i + 1
}
```

bc replies:

```
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
```

The statement

```
i = i + 1
```

adds 1 to the variable **i**. The expression

```
(i <= 10)
```

compares `i` with 10. While `i` is less than or equal to 10, the `while` loop executes. When `i` is increased to greater than 10, the loop stops executing.

`bc` checks the comparison expression for the `while` loop before the loop is entered for the first time. If the comparison fails, the loop is not executed at all; otherwise the processing repeats as long as the comparison is true. For example, the following statements do not print anything:

```
i = 0
while (i > 1) i
quit
```

Abbreviations in the while Statement

If we recall the assignment statements from the previous section, we can shorten the `while` counting-to-ten example to:

```
i = 1
while (i <= 10) {
    i
    i += 1
}
```

The result remains the same — a list of numbers from one to ten.

Another abbreviation of the example uses the `++` operator. The variable `i` is incremented, then tested in the `while` expression, which simplifies the entire example to:

```
i = 0
while (++i <= 10) i
```

Before the `while` is executed, `i` is set to zero. Then, the `while` expression increments the value of `i` before it is used or compared. Thus, the first value compared, then printed, is one.

Finally, the example calculation can be shortened to one line. If a variable in `bc` is used before it is initialized, it will have the value of zero. For example:

```
zip
```

prints:

```
0
```

Using this in our counting-to-ten example yields:

```
while (++i <= 10) i
```


The for Statement

for is a statement that controls the execution of other **bc** statements. You should use **for** to write a formula to control the number of times a value is computed.

The previous section demonstrated how to print the numbers one to ten using a **while** statement. The following does the same task with a **for** statement:

```
for (i=1; i <= 10; ++i) i
```

Three Parts of the for Statement

The **for** statement is more complex than the **while** statement; its controlling expressions have three parts.

The first part, shown here in italics

```
for (i=1; i <= 10; ++i) i
```

sets up the initial condition. The second part

```
for (i=1; i <= 10; ++i) i
```

tests whether more iterations should be performed. **bc** performs this test *before* it executes the statements that are subordinate to the **for** statement. If the test fails, no more iterations are performed.

The third part

```
for (i=1; i <= 10; ++i) i
```

is performed at the end of each iteration. In practically every instance, this part of the **for** statement modifies the value of the variable that the second part tests.

Taken together, these statements (1) set **i** to zero; (2) check whether **i** is less than or equal to ten; (3) if **i** proves to be so, prints **i**, and then increases it by one.

The following example of the **for** statement adds the squares of the numbers one through ten, prints each square, and then prints the sum of the squares at the end.

```
sum = 0
for (n=1; n <= 10; ++n) {
    sq = n * n
    sq
    sum += sq
}
sum
```

The result is:

```
1
4
9
16
25
36
49
64
81
100
385
```

Similarities Between the for and while Statements

To illustrate the similarity between the **for** statement and the simpler **while** statement, the following rewrites the above example, substituting the **while** for the **for**:

```
sum = 0
n = 1
while (n <= 10) {
    sq = n * n
    sq
    sum += sq
    ++n
}
sum
```

You should notice one difference when you enter this example. In the **while** version of the example, the

```
++n
```

prints out the new value of **n**, whereas in the **for** example, the value is not printed.

Functions in bc

bc allows you to name routines that you use repeatedly. You can then call them by name without having to retype them; obviously, this can be a great time-saver. These named routines are called *functions*. This section shows you how to define and use functions for your **bc** calculations.

Example of Function Use

The following example defines a function that calculates the area of a circle from its radius.

```
scale = 5
pi = 3.14159
define area (radius) {
    r2 = radius * radius
    return (pi * r2);
}
area (1.00);
area (2.00);
area (56);
```

The results will be:

```
3.14159
12.56636
9852.02624
```

The **define** keyword tells **bc** that you are defining a function. The name of the function follows. Then, in parentheses, come the *parameters* of the function. In this example, the only parameter, or *argument*, of the function is **radius**. Most functions have arguments, but they are not mandatory.

The **return** statement defines the value of the function. In the area example, the expression:

```
area (1.00)
```

references the function **area**. **bc** then performs the calculation described by your definition of the function **area**. The number

```
1.00
```

is substituted wherever the parameter **radius** is shown.

The statement

```
r2 = radius * radius
```

is then executed, yielding this result:

```
1.00
```

Then, the statement

```
return (pi * r2)
```

calculates the area and returns its value. The statement

```
area (1.00)
```

then has the value calculated in the return statement.

Functions Using Other Functions

Functions in **bc** perform calculations using the same expressions as the rest of the **bc** program. This includes the use of functions. The **area** program can be written using another function, **sq**, to calculate the square of a number:

```
scale = 5
pi = 3.14159
define sq (number) {
    return (number * number)
}
define area (radius) {
    return (sq (radius) * pi)
}
area (1.00);
area (2.00);
area (56);
```

Again, the results will be identical:

```
3.14159
12.56636
9852.02624
```

Functions That Call Themselves

Not only can functions call other functions and perform regular calculations; a function can use itself in calculations. An example of this is the Fibonacci calculation:

```
define fib (f) {
    if (f==0) return (0)
    if (f==1) return (1)
    if (f > 1) return (fib (f-1) + fib (f-2))
}
fib (5)
fib (20)
```

Fibonacci numbers are defined in the following way: Fibonacci number zero is zero; similarly, Fibonacci number one is one. Any other Fibonacci number is defined as the sum of the two previous Fibonacci numbers. Fibonacci numbers are defined only for non-negative integers.

The defined function **fib** follows this definition by returning zero if the number requested is zero and one if the argument is one. If the number is neither of these, then the function calls itself to calculate the previous two numbers of the series and adds them together.

The auto Statement

Many functions that call other functions, including themselves, may require variables that are not changeable by the rest of the program. This is signalled to **bc** by the **auto** statement:

```
auto var1, var2
```

This declares **var1** and **var2** as local to the function that contains them.

To illustrate the use of **auto**, the following **bc** program calculates the factorial of a number:

```
define factorial (number) {
    auto value, i
    value = 1
    for (i = 1; i <= number; ++i) value *= i
    return (value)
}
value = 3
factorial (value)
i = 99
factorial (20)
value
i
```

The result is:

```
6
2432902008176640000
3
99
```

The first number, 6, results from:

```
factorial (value)
```

The second number is from:

```
factorial (20)
```

The last two numbers are from **value** and **i**, and are included to demonstrate that the variables in the function **factorial** appearing in this statement:

```
auto value, i
```

are separate from the variables of the same name in the rest of the program.

If the function calls itself, as the **fib** example does above, any variable names noted in the **auto** statement are handled separately for each call of the function.

Programs in a File

Because its programs can be quite complex, **bc** lets you keep them in files. This lets you build a library of **bc** programs and functions that can be called up easily.

Using a Program From a File

To illustrate the use of programs stored in a file, type the following example into file **fib.bc** COHERENT using the editor of your choice. The program defines the function **fib**:

```
define fib (f) {
    if (f==0) return (0)
    if (f==1) return (1)
    if (f > 1) return (fib (f-1) + fib (f-2))
}
```

To use a **bc** program that has been stored in a file, enter the file name on the **bc** command line, like this:

```
bc fib.bc
```

The function definition will be read in by **bc** and ready for your use. To use the function, simply type the function name with parameters.

So, if you type:

```
bc fib.bc
fib (6)
quit
```

bc will reply:

```
8
```

Using Libraries

You can enter several useful programs in their own files and call them into **bc** at the same time. The following example creates another function that calculates the sum of the squares of integers up to a given number. Enter it into COHERENT, and name it **sumsq.bc**:

```
define sumsq (number) {
    auto i, sum
    sum = 0
    for (i = number; i > 0; --i) sum += i ^ 2
    return (sum)
}
```

Now, you can use the **sumsq** function to print the sum of the squares for each number from one to ten:

```
bc sumsq.bc
for (i = 1; i <= 10; ++i) sumsq (i)
quit
```

The result is:

```
1
5
14
30
55
91
140
204
285
385
quit
```

You can use the two functions stored in a file to print the difference between the sum of the squares of numbers, and the Fibonacci number:

```
bc fib.bc sumsq.bc
for (i = 1; i <= 10; ++i) sumsq (i) - fib (i)
quit
```

The result of this questionable computation is:

```
0
4
12
27
50
83
127
183
251
330
```

The bc Library

COHERENT provides an extended library to go with bc. It includes the following functions:

atan(z) arctangent of z
cos(z) cosine of z
exp(z) exponential function of z
j(n,z) n th order Bessel function of z
ln(z) natural logarithm of z
pi the value of pi to 100 digits
sin(z) sine of z

The library is stored in file `/usr/lib/lib.b`. To use the library, invoke the `bc` command with the `-l` option.

To show how the library can be used in your work the following example computes the sine of an angle of one-third radian with scale set to 20:

```
bc -l
scale = 20
sin (1/3)
quit
```

The result is:

```
.32719469679615224418
```

Summary

The Lexicon entry for `bc` summarizes its commands, features, and libraries. It will also refer you to related commands and functions.

Section 6:

The C Language

C is a computer language invented by Dennis Ritchie and Ken Thompson at AT&T Bell Laboratories in the early 1970s. In the approximately 20 years since its creation, C has become one of the most popular computer languages in the world. C is powerful, flexible; it is highly portable, and has been implemented on practically every computer, and under practically every operating system, in the world.

C is the “native language” of the COHERENT system. COHERENT is written in C, and it includes a powerful C compiler among its suite of language tools for your use. You do not need to know C to use COHERENT to great advantage; however, if you plan to program under COHERENT, you would be well advised to become at least passably acquainted with C.

This tutorial is an introduction to the COHERENT C compiler and to the C language itself. The first part of this section describes how to compile programs under COHERENT. The second part is a brief tutorial in the C language itself.

Compiling C Programs under COHERENT

A C compiler is a program that transforms files of C source code into machine code. Compilation is a complex process that involves several steps; however, COHERENT simplifies it with the command `cc`, which controls all the actions of the compiler.

Try the Compiler

Before we launch into a lengthy explanation of what `cc` is and what it does, you can get a feel for it by trying it with a simple example. To begin, type the following to create a simple C program:

```
ed hello.c
a
main() {
    printf("Hello, world\n");
}
.
w
q
```

This creates a simple C program called `hello.c`. Now, compile your program by typing the following command:

```
cc -V hello.c
```

If you typed the program correctly, `cc` will print something like the following on your screen:

```
/lib/cc0 D23400000100 hello.c /tmp/cc15029b
/lib/cc1 D23000000100 /tmp/cc15029b /tmp/cc15029a
/lib/cc2 D23000000100 /tmp/cc15029a hello.o /tmp/cc15029b
rm /tmp/cc15029a
rm /tmp/cc15029b
/bin/ld -X /lib/crts0.o hello.o /lib/libc.a
rm hello.o
```

What each of these messages means will be described below. If you receive an error message, try re-typing the program, and then re-compile it. When compilation is successfully completed, you will now have an executable program called `hello`. To invoke it, type:

```
hello
```

It should print the following on your screen:

```
Hello, world
```

As you can see, `cc` makes it easy to transform a file of C code into an executable program.

Phases of Compilation

As you noticed, `cc` printed a number of messages on your screen as it compiled `hello.c`. The reason you saw the messages was that compilation was performed with the `-V` option to `cc`; this tells `cc` to print a verbose output that describes each of its actions. `cc` prints numerous messages because the COHERENT C compiler is not just one program, but a number of different programs that work together. Each program performs a *phase* of compilation. The following summarizes each phase:

- cpp** The C preprocessor. This processes any of the '#' directives, such as `#include` or `#ifdef`, and expands macros.
- cc0** The parser. This phase parses programs. It translates the program into a parse-tree format, which is independent of both the language of the source code and the microprocessor for which code will be generated.
- cc1** The code generator. This phase reads the parse tree generated by **cc0** and translates it into machine code. The code generation is table driven, with entries for each operator and addressing mode.
- cc2** The optimizer/object generator. This phase optimizes the generated code and writes the object module.
- cc3** COHERENT also includes a fifth phase, called **cc3**, which can be run after the object generator, **cc2**. **cc3** generates a file of assembly language instead of a relocatable object module. **cc3** allows you to examine the code generated by the compiler. You did not see this phase when you compiled `hello.c` because this phase is optional and you did not request it. If you want COHERENT to generate assembly language, use the `-S` option on the `cc` command-line.

Unless you specify the `-S` option, `cc` creates an *object module* that is named after the source file being compiled. This module has the suffix `.o`. An object module is *not* executable; it contains only the code generated by compiling a C source file, plus information needed to link the module with other program modules and with the library functions.

As the final step in its execution, `cc` calls the linker `ld` to produce an executable program.

As you can see, `cc` also removes the temporary files it creates to pass information from one compiler phase to another. If your program is built out of only one file of C source code, it also deletes the object module that it creates after that module is linked to create an executable program.

Renaming Executable Files

When `cc` compiles a source file, by default it names the executable program after the *first* source file named on the `cc` command line. If you wish, you can give the executable file a different name. Use the `-o` (output) option, followed by the desired name.

Floating-Point Numbers

Often, you will need to use floating-point numbers in your programs. If you are unsure what a floating-point number is, see the Lexicon entry for `float`.

The routines that print floating-point numbers are large, and most C programs do not need to print floating-point numbers; therefore, the code to perform floating-point arithmetic is not included in a program by default. You must ask `cc` to include these routines with your program by using the `-f` option to `cc`.

To see how this works, let's modify **hello.c** to use floating-point numbers. Edit **hello.c** by typing the following commands:

```
ed hello.c
2
c
    printf("Hello, world %f\n", 123.4);
.
w
q
```

Now, compile the program with the same command line as before:

```
cc -V hello.c
```

When compilation has finished, type **hello**. You'll see the following output:

```
You must compile with the -f flag
to include printf() floating point.
Hello, world
```

COHERENT is telling you that you are using a floating-point number but that you did not compile the program to include code to process floating-point numbers. Now, recompile the program using the **-f** option to **cc**:

```
cc -V -f hello.c
```

When compilation has finished, type **hello**. If you typed the program correctly, you will see the following:

```
Hello, world 123.400000
```

As you can see, **hello** is now displaying the floating-point number **123.4** for you. For detailed information on **printf**, see its entry in the Lexicon; **printf** is also discussed in the tutorial section below.

Compiling Multiple Source Files

Many programs are built from more than one file of C source code. For example, the program **factor**, which is provided with COHERENT, is built from the C source files **factor.c** and **atod.c**. To produce the executable program **factor**, both source files must be compiled; the linker **ld** then joins them to form an executable file.

To compile a program that uses more than one source file, type all of the source files onto the **cc** command line. For example, to compile **factor** you would type the following:

```
cc -o factor -f factor.c atod.c -lm
```

This command compiles both C source files to create the program **factor**.

In the above example, **cc** produces the non-executable object modules **factor.o** and **atod.o**, and then links them to produce the executable file **factor**.

The argument `-lm` tells `cc` to include routines from the mathematics library when the object modules are linked. This option must come *after* the names of all of the source files, or the program will not be linked correctly.

Wildcards

A *wildcard* character is one that represents a variety of characters. The two most commonly used wildcards are the asterisk `*` and the question mark `?`. The asterisk can represent any string of characters of any length (including no character at all), whereas the question mark can represent any one character.

For example, if the current directory held the following files:

```
a.c
ab.c
abc.c
abcd.c
```

typing `ls a?.c` would print:

```
ab.c
```

whereas typing `ls a*.c` would print all four files.

The `cc` command lets you use wildcards in your command line to save you time and effort. For example, you can compile all of the C source files in the current directory simply by typing:

```
cc *.c
```

This command compiles all of the files with the suffix `.c` and links the resulting object modules to form the executable file named `a` (after the first source file on the command line).

In another example, if the program `example` were built from the source files `example1.c`, `example2.c`, and `example3.c`, you could compile them with the following command:

```
cc -o example example?.c
```

Linking Without Compiling

When you are writing a program that consists of several source files, you will need to compile the program, test it, and then change one or more of the source files. Rather than recompile all of the source files, you can save time by recompiling only the modified files and relinking the program.

For example, if you modify the `factor` program by changing the source file `factor.c`, you can recompile `factor.c` and relink the entire program with the following command:

```
cc -o factor -f factor.c atod.o -lm
```

This `cc` command refers to the C source file `factor.c` and the *object module* `atod.o`. `cc`

recognizes that **atod.o** is an object module and simply passes it to the linker **ld** without re-compiling it. You will find this particularly useful when your programs consist of many source files and you need to compile only a few of them.

To simplify compiling, especially if you are developing systems that use many source modules, you should consider using the **make** utility that is included with COHERENT. For more information on **make**, see its entry in the Lexicon, or see the tutorial for **make** that appears later in this manual.

Compiling Without Linking

At times, you will need to compile a source file but not link the resulting object module to the other object modules. You will do this, for example, to compile a module that you wish to insert into a library. Use **cc**'s option **-c** to tell **cc** not to link the compiled program. This option is often used to create relocatable object modules that can be archived into a library for later use.

For example, if you wanted just to compile **factor.c** without linking it, you would type:

```
cc -c factor.c
```

To link the resulting object module with the object module **atod.o** and with the appropriate libraries, type the following command:

```
cc -o factor -f factor.o atod.o -lm
```

Assembly-Language Files

C makes most assembly language programming unnecessary. However, you may wish to write small parts of your programs in assembly language for greater speed or to access processor features that C cannot use directly. COHERENT includes an assembler, named **as**, which is described in detail in the Lexicon.

To compile a program that consists of the C source file **example.c** and the assembly-language source file **example.s**, simply use the **cc** command as usual:

```
cc -o example example1.c example2.s
```

cc recognizes that the suffix **.s** indicates an assembly-language source file, and assembles it with **as**; then it links both object modules to produce an executable file.

Changing the Size of the Stack

The *stack* is the segment of memory that holds function arguments, local variables, and function return addresses. COHERENT by default sets the size of the stack to two kilobytes (2,048 bytes). This is enough stack space for most programs; however, some programs, such as the example program on page 26 of the first edition of *The C Programming Language*, require more than two kilobytes of stack. A program that uses more than its allotted amount of stack will cause a *stack overflow*, which will cause your program to crash.

The size of the stack cannot be altered while a program is running. Should your program need more than two kilobytes of stack, use the COHERENT command `fixstack`. For more information, see the entry for `fixstack` in the Lexicon.

Where To Go From Here

This discussion of the `cc` command is by no means complete, but it includes enough information for you to begin to compile your programs. The Lexicon's entry for `cc` gives all of the command-line options available with `cc`. The Lexicon also has entries for `cpp`, the compiler phases, and for the linker `ld`, and describes them at greater length. All error messages generated by `cc` and by the assembler as appear in the appendix to this manual.

The next section in this tutorial introduces the C programming language.

C for Beginners

This section briefly introduces the C programming language. It is in two parts. The first part describes what a programming language is, and gives the history of the C programming language. This section also introduces some concepts basic to C, such as *structured programming*, *pointer*, and *operator*. The second part walks through a C programming session. It emphasizes how a C programmer deals with a real problem, and demonstrates some aspects of the language.

This chapter is not designed to teach you the entire C language. It introduces you to C, so you can read the rest of this manual with some understanding. We urge you to look up individual topics of C programming in the Lexicon, and especially to study the example programs given there.

Programming Languages and C

Before beginning with C, it is worthwhile to review how a microprocessor and a computer language work.

A *microprocessor* is the part of your computer that actually computes. Built into it is a group of *instructions*. Each instruction tells the microprocessor to perform a task; for example, one instruction adds two numbers together, another stores the result of an arithmetic operation in memory, and a third copies data from one point in memory to another.

Together, a microprocessor's instructions form its *instruction set*. The instruction set is, in effect, the microprocessor's "native language".

A microprocessor also contains areas of very fast storage, called *registers*. The registers are essential to arithmetic and data handling within the microprocessor. How many registers a microprocessor has, and how they are designed, help to determine how much memory the microprocessor can read and write, or *address*, and how the microprocessor handles data.

A *computer language*, as the name implies, lets a human being use the microprocessor's instruction set. The lowest level language is called "assembly language". In assembly language, the programmer calls instructions directly from the microcomputer's instruc-

tion set, and manipulates the registers within the microprocessor. To write programs in assembly language, a programmer must know both the microprocessor's instruction set and the configuration of its registers.

Assembly and High-Level Languages

With assembly language, the programmer can tailor the program specifically to the microprocessor. However, because each microprocessor has a unique instruction set and configuration of registers, a program written in one microprocessor's assembly language cannot be run on another microprocessor. For example, no program written in the assembly language for the Motorola 68000 microprocessor can be run on the IBM PC or any PC-compatible computer. The program must be entirely rewritten in the assembly language for the Intel i8086 microprocessor, which is difficult and time consuming.

A *high-level language* helps programmers to avoid these problems. The programmer does not need to know the microprocessor in detail; instead of specific microprocessor instructions, he writes a set of logical constructions. These constructions are then handed to another program, which translates them into the instructions and registers calls used by a specific microprocessor. In theory, a program written in a high-level language can be run on any microprocessor for which someone has written a translation program.

A high-level language allows the programmer to concentrate on the task being executed, rather than on the details of registers and instructions. This means that programs can be written more quickly than in assembly language, and can be maintained more easily.

So, What Is C?

As noted earlier, C was invented at AT&T Bell Laboratories by Dennis Ritchie and Ken Thompson. They created C specifically to re-write the UNIX operating system from PDP-11 assembly language. Ritchie designed C to have the power, speed, and flexibility of assembly language, but the portability of high-level languages.

In 1978, Ritchie and Brian W. Kernighan published *The C Programming Language*, which describes and defines the C language. *The C Programming Language* is the "bible" of C, a standard work to which all programmers can refer when writing their programs.

Because C is modeled after assembly language, it has been called a "medium-level" language. The programmer doesn't have to worry about specific registers or specific instructions, but he can use all of the power of the computer almost as directly as he can with assembly language.

Because C was written by experienced programmers for experienced programmers, it makes little effort to protect a programmer from himself. A programmer can easily write a C program that is legal and compiles correctly but crashes the program. Also, C's punctuation marks, or "operators", closely resemble each other. Thus, a mistake in typing can create a legal program that compiles correctly but behaves very differently from what you expect.

Structured Programming

C is a *structured language*. This means that a C program is assembled from a number of sub-programs, or *functions*, each of which performs a discrete task. If this concept is difficult to grasp, consider the following example.

Suppose you want to turn a file of text into upper-case letters and print it on the screen. This job seems simple, but a program to do it must perform five tasks:

1. Read the name of the file to open.
2. Open the file so it can be read, in much the same way that you must open a book before you can read it.
3. Read the text from the file.
4. Turn what is read into upper-case letters.
5. Print the transformed text onto the screen.

A good program will also perform the following tasks:

1. Check that the file requested actually exists.
2. Check that the file requested is actually a text file rather than a file of binary information; the latter makes very little sense when printed on the screen.
3. Close the program neatly when the work is finished.
4. Stop processing and print an error message if a problem occurs.

A structured language like C allows you to write a separate function for each of these tasks.

A structured programming language offers two major advantages over a non-structured language. First, it is easier to debug a function than an entire program because the function can be unplugged from the program as a whole, made to work correctly, and then plugged back in again. Second, once a function works, it can be used again and again in different programs. This allows you to create a *library* of reliable functions that you can pull off the shelf whenever you need them.

The functions within a program communicate by passing values to each other. The value being passed can be an integer, a character, or — most commonly — an address within memory where a function can find data to manipulate. This passing of addresses, or *pointers*, is the most efficient way to manipulate data because by receiving one number, a function can find its way to a large amount of data. This speeds up a program's execution.

C adds some extra tools to help you construct programs. To begin, C allows you to store functions in compiled form. These precompiled functions are added only when the program is finally loaded into memory; this spares you the trouble of having to recompile the same code again and again. Second, C adds a preprocessor that expands definitions, or *macros*, and pulls in special material stored in *header files*. This allows you to store often-used definitions in one file and use them just by adding one line to your program.

Writing a C Program

As noted above, a C program consists of a bundle of sub-programs, or *functions*, which link together to perform the task you want done. Every C program must have one function that is called **main**. This is the main function; when the computer reads this, it knows that it must begin to execute the program. All other functions are subordinate to **main**. When the **main** function is finished, the program is over.

To see how these elements work, review the program **hello.c**, which you worked with earlier in this tutorial:

```
main()
{
    printf("Hello, world\n");
}
```

As you can see, this program begins with the word **main**. The program begins to work at this point. The parentheses after **main** enclose all of the *arguments* to **main** — or would, if this program's **main** took any. An argument is an item of information that a function uses in its work.

The braces '{' and '}' enclose all the material that is subsidiary to **main**.

The word "printf" *calls* a function called **printf**. This function performs formatted printing. The line of characters (or "string") *Hello, world* is the argument to **printf**: this argument is what **printf** is to print.

The characters '\n' stand for a newline character. This character "tosses the carriage", or moves the cursor to a new line and returns it to the leftmost column on your screen. Using this character ensures that when printing is finished, the cursor is not left fixed in the middle of the screen. Finally, the semicolon ';' at the end of the command indicates that the function call is finished.

One point to remember is that **printf** is *not* part of the C language. Rather, it is a *function* that was written by Mark Williams Company, then compiled and stored in a library for your use. This means that you do not have to re-invent a formatted printing function to perform this simple task: all you have to do is *call* the one that Mark Williams has written for you.

Although most C programs are more complicated than this example, every C program has the same elements: a function called **main**, which marks where execution begins and ends; braces that fence off blocks of code; functions that are called from libraries; and data passed to functions in the form of arguments.

A Sample C Programming Session

This section walks you through a C programming session. It shows how you can go about planning and writing a program in C.

C allows you to be precise in your programming, which should make you a stronger programmer. Be careful, however, because C does exactly what you tell it to do, nothing more and nothing less. If you make a mistake, you can produce a legal C program that

does very unexpected things.

Designing a Program

Most programmers prefer to work on a program that does something fun or useful. Therefore, we will write something useful: a version of the COHERENT utility `scat`, that we'll call `display`. It will do the following:

1. Open a text file on disk.
2. Display its contents in 23-line chunks (one full screen).
3. After displaying a chunk, wait to see if the user wants to see another chunk. If the user presses the `<return>` key alone, display another chunk; if the user types any other key before pressing the `<return>` key, exit.
4. Exit automatically when the end of file is reached.

As you can see, the first step in writing a program is to write down what the program is to do, in as much detail as you can manage, and preferably in complete sentences.

Now, invoke `ed` or `MicroEMACS` and get ready to type in the program:

```
ed display.c
```

or:

```
me display.c
```

We suggest that you use the `MicroEMACS` editor, because this tutorial will make numerous changes to the program as it progresses and it will be easier to see these changes in context if you use a screen editor rather than a line editor. The rest of this tutorial assumes that you are using `MicroEMACS`. If you are not familiar with `MicroEMACS`, it is briefly described in *Using the COHERENT System*. A tutorial for `MicroEMACS` also appears in this manual, or you may wish to see the entry for `me` in the Lexicon.

In the above commands, the suffix `.c` on the file name indicates that this is a file of C code. If you do not use this suffix, the `cc` command will not recognize that this is a file of C code and will refuse to compile it.

Begin by inserting a description of the program into the top of the file in the form of a *comment*. When a C compiler sees the symbol `/*`, it throws away everything it reads until it sees the symbol `*/`. This lets you insert text into your program to explain what the program does.

Type the following:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */
```

Save what you have typed by pressing <ctrl-X> and then <ctrl-S>. Now, anyone, including you, who looks at this program will know exactly what it is meant to do.

The main() Function

As described earlier, the C language permits *structured programming*. This means that you can break your program into a group of discrete functions, each of which performs one task. Each function can be perfected by itself, and then used again and again when you need to execute its task. C requires, however, that you signal which function is the *main* function, the one that controls the operation of the other functions. Thus, each C program must have a function called **main()**.

Now, add **main()** to your program. Type the code that is shaded, below:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */
```

```
main()
```

```
{
}
```

The parentheses “()” show that **main** is a function. If **main** were to take any arguments, they would be named between the parentheses. The braces “{}” delimit all code that is subordinate to **main**; this will be explained in more detail below.

Note that the shortest legal C program is **main(){}.** This program doesn't do anything when you run it, but it will compile correctly and generate an executable file.

Now, try compiling the program. Save your text by typing <ctrl-X><ctrl-S>, and then exit from the editor by typing <ctrl-X> <ctrl-C>. Compile the program by typing:

```
cc display.c
```

When compilation is finished, type **display**. The shell will pause briefly, then return the prompt to your screen. As you can see, you now have a legal, compilable C program, but one that does nothing.

Open a File and Show Text

The next step is to install routines that open a file and print its contents. For the moment, the program will read only a file called `tester`, and not break it into 23-line portions.

Type the shaded lines into your program, as follows:

```

/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */

#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    char string[128];
    FILE *fileptr;

    /* Open file */
    fileptr = fopen("tester", "r");

    /* Read material and display it */
    for (;;) {
        fgets(string, 128, fileptr);
        printf("%s", string);
    }
}

```

Note first how comments are inserted into the text, to guide the reader.

Now, note the lines

```

char string[128];
FILE *fileptr;

```

These *declare* two data structures. That is, they tell COHERENT to set aside a specific amount of memory for them.

The first declaration, `char string[128]`, declares an array of 128 **chars**. A **char** is a data entity that is exactly one byte long; this is enough space to store exactly one alphanumeric character in memory, hence its name. An *array* is a set of data elements that are recorded together in memory. In this instance, the declaration sets aside 128

chars-worth of memory. This declaration reserves space in memory to hold the data that your program reads.

The second declaration, **FILE *fileptr**, declares a *pointer* to a **FILE** structure. The asterisk shows that the data element points to something, rather than being the thing itself. When a variable is declared to be a pointer, the C compiler sets aside enough space in memory to hold an *address*. When your program reads that address, it then knows where the actual data are residing, and looks for them there. C uses pointers extensively, because it is much more efficient to pass the address of data than to pass the data themselves. You may find the concept of pointers to be a little difficult to grasp; however, as you gain experience with C, you will find that they become easy to use.

The **FILE** structure is the data entity that holds all the information your program needs to read information from or write information to a file on the disk. For a detailed discussion of the **FILE** structure, see its entry in the Lexicon. For now, all you need to remember is that this declaration sets aside a place to hold a pointer to such a structure, and the structure itself holds all of the information your program needs to manipulate a file on disk. In effect, the variable **fileptr** is used within your program as a synonym for the file itself.

Now, the line

```
fileptr = fopen("display.c", "r");
```

opens the file to be read. The function **fopen** *opens* the file, fills the **FILE** structure, and fills the variable **fileptr** with the address of where that structure resides in memory.

fopen takes two arguments. The first is the name of the file to be opened, within quotation marks. The second argument indicates the *mode* in which to open the file; **r** indicates that the file will be read rather than written into.

The lines

```
for(;;)  
{
```

begin a *loop*. A loop is a section of code that is executed repeatedly until a condition that you set is fulfilled. For example, you may define a loop that executes until the value of a particular variable becomes greater than zero.

for is built into the C language. Note that it has braces, just like **main()** does; these braces mean that the following lines, up to the next right brace (**}**) are part of this loop. You can set conditions that control how a **for** loop operates; in its present form, it will loop forever. This will be explained in more detail shortly.

Two library functions are executed within the loop. The first,

```
fgets(string, 128, fileptr);
```

reads a line from the file named in the **fileptr** variable, and writes it into the character array called **string**. The middle argument ensures that no more than 128 characters will be read at a time. The second line within this loop,

```
printf("%s", string);
```

prints the line. **printf** is a powerful and subtle function; in its present form, it prints on the screen the string contained in the variable *string*.

Finally, the line at the top of the program:

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

tells C preprocessor **cpp** to read the *header file* called **stdio.h**. The term "STDIO" stands for "standard input and output"; **stdio.h** declares and defines a number of routines that will be used to read data from a file and write them onto the screen.

When you have finished typing in this code, again compile the program as you did earlier. If an error occurs, check what you have typed and make sure that it *exactly* matches the code shown on the previous page. If you find any errors, fix them and then recompile. If errors persist, check it in the table of error messages that appear at the end of this tutorial.

When compilation is finished, execute **display** as you did earlier. You will see the text from **display.c** scroll across the screen. When the text is finished, however, the COHERENT prompt does not return; you have not yet inserted code that tells the program to recognize that the file is finished. Type <ctrl-C> to break the program and return to COHERENT

Accepting File Names

Of course, you will want **display** to be able to display the contents of any file, not just files named **display.c**. The next step is to add code that lets you pass arguments to the program through its command line. This task requires that you give the **main()** function two arguments. By tradition, these are always called **argc** and **argv**. How they work will be described in a moment.

The enhanced program appears as follows. You should change or insert the lines that are shaded:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXCHAR 128
```

```
main(argc, argv)
/* Declare arguments to main() */
int argc;
char *argv[];
{
    char string[MAXCHAR];
    FILE *fileptr;

    /* Open file */
    fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r");

    /* Read material and display it */
    for (;;)
    {
        fgets(string, MAXCHAR, fileptr);
        printf("%s", string);
    }
}
```

First, a small change has been added: the line

```
#define MAXCHAR 128
```

defines the *manifest constant* `MAXCHAR` to be equivalent to 128. This is done because the “magic number” 128 is used throughout the program. If you decide to change the number of characters that this program can handle at once, all you would have to do is to change this one line to alter the entire program. This cuts down on mistakes in altering and updating the program. If you look lower in the program, you will see that the declaration

```
char string[128]
```

has been changed to read

```
char string[MAXCHAR]
```

The two forms are equivalent; the only difference is that the latter is easier to use. It is a good idea to use manifest constants wherever possible, to streamline changes to your program.

Now, look at the line that declares `main()`. You will see that `main()` now has two arguments: `argc` and `argv`.

The first is an `int`, or integer, as shown by its declaration — `int argc`. `argc` gives the *number* of entries typed on a command line. For example, when you typed

```
display filename
```

the value of `argc` was set to two: one for the command name itself, and one for the file-name argument. `argc` and its value are set by the compiler. You do not have to do any-

thing to ensure that this value is set correctly.

`argv`, on the other hand, is an array of pointers to the command line's arguments. In this instance, `argv[1]` points to name of the file that you want `display` to read. This, too, is set by `COHERENT`, and works automatically.

If you look below at the line that declares `fopen()`, you will see that `tester` has been replaced with `argv[1]`; this means that you want `fopen()` to open the file named in the first argument to the `display` command.

Now, try running the program by typing

```
display display.c
```

`display` will open `display.c` and print its contents on the screen. You still need to type `<ctrl-C>` when printing is finished; the code to recognize the end of the file will be inserted later.

Also, be sure that you give the command only one file name as an argument, no more and no less. Code that checks against errors has not yet been inserted, and handing it the wrong number of arguments could cause problems for you.

Error Checking

Obviously, the program runs at this stage, but is still fragile, and could cause problems. The next step is to stabilize the program by writing code to check for errors. To do so, a programmer must first write code to capture error conditions, and then write a routine to react appropriately to an error.

Our edited program now appears as follows:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXCHAR 128

main(argc, argv)
/* define arguments to main() */
int argc;
char *argv[];
{
    char string[MAXCHAR];
    FILE *fileptr;
```

```
/* Check if right number of arguments was passed */
    if (argc != 2)
        error("Usage: display filename");

/* Open file */
    if ((fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
        error("Cannot open file");

/* Read material and display it */
    for (;;) {
        fgets(string, MAXCHAR, fileptr);
        printf("%s", string);
    }
}

/* Process error messages */
error(message)
char *message;
{
    printf("%s", message);
    exit(1);
}
```

The additions to the program are introduced by comments.

The first addition

```
    if (argc != 2)
        error("Usage: display filename");
```

checks to see if the correct number of arguments was passed on the command line; that is to say, it checks to make sure that you named a file when you typed the **display** command.

As noted above, **argc** is the number of arguments on the command line, or rather, the number of arguments plus one, because the command name itself is always considered to be an argument. The statement **if(argc != 2)** checks this. The **if** statement is built into C. If the condition defined between its parentheses is true, then do something, but if it is not true, do nothing at all. The operator **!=** means "does not equal". Therefore, our statement means that if **argc** is not equal to two (in other words, if there are not two and only two arguments to the **display** command — the command name itself plus a file name), execute the function **error**. **error** is defined below.

Our **fopen** function also has some error checking added (which will be described in a moment):

```
if ((fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
    error("Cannot open file");
```

fopen returns a value called "NULL" if, for any reason, it cannot open the file you requested. Thus, our new **if** statement says that if **fopen** cannot open the file named on the command line (that is, **argv[1]**), it should invoke the **error** function.

C always executes nested functions from the "inside out". That means that the innermost function (that is, the function that is enclosed most deeply within the pairs of parentheses) is executed first. Its result, or what it *returns*, is then passed to next outermost function as an argument; that function is then executed and what it returns is, in turn, passed to the function that encloses it, and so on. In this instance, the innermost function is

```
fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")
```

fopen is executed and what it returns is written into **fileptr**. What **fopen** returned is then passed to the next outer operation; in this case, it is compared with **NULL**, as follows:

```
(fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
```

What that operation returns is then passed to the outermost function, in this case the **if** statement, which evaluates what it is passed, and acts accordingly. If **fileptr** is **NULL** (that is, if **fopen** couldn't open the file), the **if** statement will be true and the **error** function called. If, however, the file was opened, **fileptr** will not equal **NULL** and the program will proceed.

As this example shows, C allows a programmer to nest functions quite deeply. Although nested functions are sometimes difficult to untangle when you read them, they make programming much more convenient.

Finally, at the bottom of the file is a new function, called **error**:

```
error(message)
char *message;
{
    printf("%s", message);
    exit(1);
}
```

This function stands outside of **main**, as you can tell because it appears outside of **main**'s closing brace. This function is called only when your program needs it. If there are no errors, the program progresses only until the closing brace in **main** and the **error** function is never called.

error takes one argument, the message that is to be printed on the screen. This message is defined by the routine that calls **error**. **error** uses the function **printf** to print the message, then calls the **exit** function; this, as its name implies, causes the program to stop. The argument 1 is a special signal that tells COHERENT that something went wrong with your program.

When the error checking code is inserted, recompile the program without an argument. Previously, this would cause the program to crash; now, all it does is print the message

```
Usage: display filename
```

and terminate the program.

Print a Portion of a File

So far, our utility just opens a file and streams its contents over the screen. Now, you must insert code to print a 23-line portion of the file. At present, it will only print the first 23 lines, and then exit.

To do so, you must insert another `for` loop. Unlike our first loop, which ran forever, this one will cycle only 23 times, and then stop. Our updated program appears as follows:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXCHAR 128

main(argc, argv)
int argc;
char *argv[];
{
    char string[MAXCHAR];
    FILE *fileptr;
    int ctr;

    /* Check if right number of arguments was passed */
    if (argc != 2)
        error("Usage: display filename");

    /* Open file */
    if ((fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
        error("Cannot open file");
```

```

/* Output 23 lines */
for (;;) {
    for (ctr = 0; ctr < 23; ctr++) {
        fgets(string, MAXCHAR, fileptr);
        printf("%s", string);
    }
    exit(0);
}

/* Process error messages */
error(message)
char *message;
{
    printf("%s", message);
    exit(1);
}

```

The new `for` loop is nested inside the loop governed by `for(;;)`. The program also declares a new variable, `ctr`, at the beginning of the program. `ctr` keeps track of how many times the loop has executed. Now, look at the line:

```
for (ctr = 0; ctr < 23; ctr++)
```

It has three sub-statements, which are separated by semicolons. The first sub-statement sets `ctr` to zero; the second says that execution is to continue as long as `ctr` is less than 23; and the third says that `ctr` is to be increased by one every time the loop executes (this is indicated by the `++` appended to `ctr`). With each iteration of this loop, `fgets` reads a line from the file named on the `display` command line, and `printf` prints it on the screen.

Also, an `exit` call has been set after this new loop. This ensures that the program will exit automatically after the loop has finished executing. This is a temporary measure, to make sure that you no longer have to type `<ctrl-C>` to return to the shell.

When you have updated the program, recompile it in the usual way. When you run it, `display` will show the first 23 lines of the file, and then the shell's prompt will return.

The program is now approaching its final form.

Checking for the End of File

The next-to-last step in preparing the program is teaching it to recognize the end of a file when it sees it. This does not appear to be needed now because the program exits automatically after 23 lines or fewer, but it will be quite necessary when the program begins to display more than one 23-line portion of text.

The function `fgets` checks to see if it has arrived at the end of a file, and returns a special value if it has. `fgets` normally returns the address of the string into which it

writes its output; however, if it runs into the end of a file (or if any other error occurs), it returns the special value NULL. By reading the value of what `fgets` returns, `display` can detect if the end of the file has been encountered, and stop reading. To do so, the `fgets` statement must be set within an if statement. The if statement will capture what `fgets` returns, and continue execution as long as the value of the number returned is not NULL.

The updated program now appears as follows:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXCHAR 128

main(argc, argv)
int argc;
char *argv[];
{
    char string[MAXCHAR];
    FILE *fileptr;
    int ctr;

    /* Check if right number of arguments was passed */
    if (argc != 2)
        error("Usage: display filename");

    /* Open file */
    if ((fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
        error("Cannot open file");
```

```

/* Output 23 lines, while checking for EOF */
for (;;) {
    for (ctr = 0; ctr < 23; ctr++) {
        if (fgets(string, MAXCHAR, fileptr) != NULL)
            printf("%s", string);
        else
            exit(0);
    }
    exit(0);
}

/* Process error messages */
error(message)
char *message;
{
    printf("%s", message);
    exit(1);
}

```

First, note that the comment that describes the program's output has been changed to reflect our changes to the program. It is important for a programmer to ensure that the comments and the code are in step with each other.

Our new **if** statement

```
if (fgets(string, MAXCHAR, fileptr) != NULL)
```

checks what **fgets** returns: if it does not return **NULL**, the end of the file has not been reached, the **if** statement is true and the program prints out the next line. (The operator **!=** indicates "not equal".) If it returns **NULL**, however, the end of file has been reached, the **if** statement is false so the **else** statement is executed, which causes **display** to **exit**.

Note, too, that a new control statement is introduced: **else**. This, like **if**, is built into the C language. An **else** statement is always paired with an **if** statement; together, they mean that if the condition for which **if** is testing is true, the program should do one thing; otherwise, it should do something else. In this case, the program says that if the end of file has not been reached, another line should be read from the file and printed on the screen; however, if it has been reached, then the program should **exit**. As you can imagine, **if/else** pairs are common in C programming; they are logical and useful.

One more task must be done on our program; then it is finished.

Polling the Keyboard

For the program to be complete, it has to ask you if you want to see another 23-line portion of text. The program should write another portion if you press the <return> key alone; if you type any other key before you press <return>, then it should exit.

To do so, we will print a query on the screen, then read what the user has typed and interpret it. When these changes are inserted, the program is complete:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXCHAR 128

main(argc, argv)
int argc;
char *argv[];
{
    char string[MAXCHAR];
    FILE *fileptr;
    int ctr;

    /* Check if right number of arguments was passed */
    if (argc != 2)
        error("Usage: display filename");

    /* Open file */
    if ((fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
        error("Cannot open file");
```



```

/* Output 23 lines, while checking for EOF */
for (;;) {
    for (ctr = 0; ctr < 23; ctr++) {
        if (fgets(string, MAXCHAR, fileptr) != NULL)
            printf("%s", string);
        else
            exit(0);
    }
}

/* Query if user wishes to continue */
printf("Continue? ");
fflush(stdout);
fgets(string, MAXCHAR, stdin);

if (string[0] != '\n')
    exit(0);
}

/* Process error messages */
error(message)
char *message;
{
    printf("%s", message);
    exit(1);
}

```

These new lines introduce a few new twists. The lines

```

printf("Continue? ");
fflush(stdout);

```

print the prompt **Continue?** on the screen. Note that no `\n` appears after the the prompt; this ensures that the cursor does *not* jump to the next line, but stays next to the prompt. Because no `\n` appears after the line, however, you have to force it to appear on the screen; this is accomplished with the statement:

```

fflush(stdout);

```

fflush flushes matter to an output device. **stdout** points to a file stream, just like the stream that you opened with the call to **fopen**, earlier in the program. **stdout** is opened in the header file **stdio.h**, which was read at the beginning of the program; it always points to the user's screen.

The next line reads the user's keyboard:

```

fgets(string, MAXCHAR, stdin);

```

This version of **fgets** reads matter into our array **string**; however, instead of reading the file pointed to by **fileptr**, it reads what is pointed to by **stdin**. **stdin** is a stream that is

also defined in `stdio.h`; it always points to the user's keyboard.

Finally, the statement

```
if (string[0] != '\n')
```

checks what the user typed by reading the first (that is, the zero-th) character written in the array `string` by the preceding call to `fgets`. (Note that with C, counting always begins with zero rather than one.) If the user just types `<return>`, then `string[0]` will hold `'\n'`; and the `if` statement will *not* be true, the program jumps to the preceding `for` statement, and more text is written to the screen. However, if the user types anything before typing `<return>`, the `if` statement will succeed and the program will exit. This may seem a little convoluted, but it actually is a straightforward and efficient way to receive information from the user.

After you have inserted these changes, again compile the program.

When compilation is finished, try typing

```
display display.c
```

The first 23 lines of the source code to the program now appear on your screen. Hit `<return>`; the next 23 lines appear. Now, type any other key, and then press `<return>`: the program exits.

You now have a simple but helpful `display` utility.

For More Information

This section has given you a brief, concentrated introduction to writing a C program. If you are new to programming, much of what happened must seemed strange, but we hope it helped you to appreciate the logic of how C works.

Numerous books are on the market to teach beginners how to program in C; the following section gives a small bibliography of books on C. Also, look at the sample C programs in the *Lexicon*. These demonstrate how to use many of the functions available to you with COHERENT.

Bibliography

The following books may be helpful in developing your skills with C. This list also contains all books that are referenced in this manual. It is by no means exhaustive; however, it should prove helpful to both beginners and experienced programmers.

American National Standards Institute: *Draft Programming Language C (October 1986 Draft)*. Washington, D.C.: X3 Secretariat, Computer and Business Equipment Manufacturers Association, 1986.

AT&T Bell Laboratories: *The C Programmer's Handbook*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1985.

Chirlin, P.M.: *Introduction to C*. Beaverton, Or.: Matrix Publishers, Inc., 1984.

- Derman, B. (ed.): *Applied C*. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., Inc., 1986.
- Feuer, A.R.: *The C Puzzle Book*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1982.
- Gehani, G.: *Advanced C: Food for the Educated Palate*. Rockville, Md.: Computer Science Press, 1985.
- Hancock, L.; Krieger, M.: *The C Primer*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Publishers, Inc., 1982.
- Harbison, S.; Steele, G.: *C: A Reference Manual*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1984.
- Hogan, T.: *The C Programmer's Handbook*. Bowie, Md.: Brady Publishing, 1984.
- Kelley, A.; Pohl, I.: *C by Dissection: The Essentials of C Programming*. Menlo Park, Ca.: The Benjamin/Cummings Publishing Company, Inc., 1987.
- Kernighan, B.W.; Ritchie, D.M.: *The C Programming Language*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1978.
- Kernighan, B.W.; Plauger, P.J.: *The Elements of Programming Style*, ed. 2. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1978.
- Kochan, S.G.: *Programming in C*. Hasbrouck Heights, N.J.: Hayden Book Co., Inc., 1983.
- Knuth, D.E.: *The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 1: *Basic Algorithms*. Reading, Ma.: Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., 1969.
- Knuth, D.E.: *The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 2: *Seminumerical Algorithms*. Reading, Ma.: Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., 1969.
- Knuth, D.E.: *The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 3: *Sorting and Searching*. Reading, Ma.: Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., 1969.
- Mark Williams Company: *ANSI C: A Lexical Guide*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1988.
- Plum, T.: *C Programming Guidelines*. Cardiff, N.J.: Plum Hall, Inc., 1984.
- Plum, T.; Brodie, J.: *Efficient C*. Cardiff, NJ: Plum Hall, Inc., 1985.
- Purdum, J.: *C Programming Guide*. Indianapolis: Que Corp., 1983.
- Purdum, J.; Leslie, T.C.; Stegemoller, A.L.: *C Programmer's Library*. Indianapolis: Que Corp., 1984.
- Traister, R.J.: *Programming in C for the Microprocessor User*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1984.
- Traister, R.J.: *Going from BASIC to C*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1984.
- Vile, R.C., Jr.: *Programming in C with Let's C*. Glenview, IL: Scott, Foresman and Company, 1988.

Waite, M.; Prata, S.; Martin, D.: *C Primer Plus*. Indianapolis: Howard W. Sams, Inc., 1984.

Weber Systems, Inc.: *C Language User's Handbook*. New York: Ballantine Books, 1984.

Zahn, C.T.: *C Notes*. New York: Yourdan Press, 1979.

Section 7:

Introduction to ed, Interactive Line Editor

This tutorial introduces the interactive editor `ed`. It is intended both for readers who want a tutorial introduction to `ed`, and those who want to use specific sections as a reference.

Related tutorials include those for `sed`, the stream editor, and for `me`, the MicroEMACS screen editor. This tutorial assumes that you already understand the basics of using the COHERENT system, such as what a file is, what it means to edit text, and how to issue commands to the operating system. If you not yet know your way around the COHERENT system, we suggest that you first study the *Using the COHERENT System*, which appears in the front of this manual. It covers the basics of using COHERENT and introduces many useful programs.

Why You Need an Editor

A significant feature of computers is the capacity to store, retrieve, and operate upon information. A computer can store many different kinds of information: programs, computer commands and instructions, data for programs, financial information, electronic mail, or natural-language text (e.g., French, English) destined for a manuscript or book.

`ed` is a program with which you can enter and edit text on your computer. You can use `ed` to create or change computer programs, natural-language manuscripts, files of commands, or any other file that consists of text that you can read.

`ed` is designed to be easy to use, and requires little training to get started. The fundamental commands are simple, but have enough flexibility to perform complex tasks.

Learning To Use the Editor

Practice on your part will help you learn quickly. The following sections contain examples that illustrate each topic discussed. We strongly recommend that you type each example presented as you encounter it in the text. Even if you understand the concept presented, performing the example reinforces the lesson, and you will learn more quickly how to use `ed`.

In addition to reading the text and doing the examples as you encounter them in the text, try your own variations on the commands, and branch out on your own. Try things that you suspect might work, but are not shown as examples.

General Topics

This section presents the background information you will need to understand how `ed` works.

To help illustrate the discussion to follow, log into your COHERENT system and type the following commands:

```
ed
.a
this is a sample
ed session
.
w test
q
```

This example calls `ed`, then uses the `a` command to add lines to the text kept in memory. The period signals the end of the additions. The `w` command writes the lines of text to file `test`, and the command `q` tells `ed` to return to COHERENT. You will notice that after you type the `w` command, `ed` will respond with

```
28
```

which is the number of characters in the file.

Thus, to enter `ed`, simply type

```
ed
```

and to exit, type

```
q
```

You can also exit by typing `<ctrl-D>`: that is, hold down the `control` key on your keyboard, and at the same time strike the `D` key.

Notice that you are issuing two different kinds of commands in the above example. The command `ed` is an COHERENT command, whereas the rest are commands to the editor. After `ed` is given the `q` command, it exits, and following commands are processed by COHERENT.

`ed`, Files, and Text

`ed` works with one file at a time. With `ed`, you can create a file, add to a file, or change a file previously created.

As you use **ed** to create or change files, you will type both *text* and controlling *commands* into the editor. Text is, of course, the matter that you are creating or changing. Commands, on the other hand, tell **ed** what you want it to do. As you will see shortly, there is a simple way to tell **ed** whether what you are typing is text or commands.

ed has about two dozen commands. Almost every one is only one letter long. Although they may seem terse, they are easy to learn. You will appreciate the brevity of the commands once you begin to use **ed** regularly.

You must end each command to **ed** by striking the **<return>** key. This key is present on all terminals. However, the labeling of the key may vary. It may be called **newline**, **linefeed**, **enter**, or **eol**, and is larger than any key on the keyboard except for the space bar. This key will be called the **<return>** key in the remainder of this document.

Creating a File

The example shown above created a file. Here is another example of file creation — here, creating a file called **twoline**:

```
ed
a
  Two line Example,
  thank you.
.
w twoline
q
```

The letter **a** tells **ed** to add lines to the file. You are creating a new file with this example; and when **ed** creates a new file, it is initially empty. The **w** command writes the lines you have added to file **twoline**. The command **q** tells the editor that you are finished, whereupon it returns to COHERENT. You can use the COHERENT command **cat** to list the contents of the new file:

```
cat twoline
```

the reply will be:

```
  Two line Example,
  thank you.
```

Each command used here will be described in detail in later sections.

Changing an Existing File

Suppose that a manuscript file of yours needs a few spelling corrections. **ed** will help you make them. To begin, simply name the file to correct when you issue the COHERENT command:

```
ed filename
```

where *filename* stands for the name of the file that you wish to edit. For example, the following adds a line to the file *twoline*, which we just created:

```
ed twoline
$a
This is the third line of the file.
.
w
q
```

Listing the file with `cat` gives:

```
Two line Example,
thank you.
This is the third line of the file.
```

The command `$a` tells `ed` to add one or more lines at the end of the file.

Correcting the spelling of a misspelled word is easy with `ed`. You can rearrange groups of words in a manuscript, and you can move or copy larger portions of text, such as a paragraph, from one spot to another.

Working on Lines

`ed` uses the *line* as the basic unit of information; for this reason, it is called a *line-oriented* editor. A line is defined as a group of characters followed by an end-of-line character, which is invisible. When you type out a file on your terminal, each line in the file will be shown on your terminal as one line. The commands for `ed` are based upon lines. When you add material to a file, you will be adding lines. If you remove or change items, you will do so to groups of lines.

`ed` knows each line by its number. A line's number, in turn, indicates its position within the file: the first line is number 1, the second line is number 2, and so on.

`ed` remembers the line you worked on most recently. This can help shorten the commands you type, as well as reduce the need for you to remember line numbers. The line most recently worked on is called the *current* line. `ed` commands use a shorthand symbol for the current line: the period `'.`

Another shorthand symbol used in `ed` commands is `$`, which represents the number of the last line in the file.

Many of the `ed` commands operate on more than one line at a time. Groups of lines are denoted by a range of line numbers, which appears as a prefix to the command.

Error Messages

If you type a command to `ed` incorrectly, `ed` respond with:

```
?
```

This indicates that it has detect an error. Many times, this error will be evident to you when you review the command that you just typed.

If you do not see what the error is, you can get a more lengthy description by typing to **ed**:

```
?
```

It will reply with an error message.

Basic Editing Techniques

This section discusses in more detail the elementary techniques and commands that you need to use **ed**. With the material presented in this section, you will be able to do most basic editing tasks.

Again, it is recommended that you type each example. This will help you understand each example, as well as remember the technique it demonstrates.

Creating a New File

To begin, let us presume that you need to create an entirely new file named **first**. Perhaps you only want one line in the file, and it is to read

```
This is my first example
```

These are the steps that you will need to go through to create this file.

The first step is to invoke the **ed** program. To do this, simply type

```
ed
```

Remember that you must end each line of commands or text line by pressing the **<return>** key, because **ed** will not act upon it until you do. Thus, you invoke the editor by typing **ed** and a **<return>**. Notice that these two characters must be lower case.

ed is now ready for commands. The first command that you will use is the append command **a**. This tells **ed** to add lines to the text in memory, which will later be written to the file. The number of lines that **ed** can hold in memory depends upon the amount of memory in your computer. For editing very large files, you should use **sed**, the COHERENT stream editor, which is described in its own tutorial.

ed will continue to add lines until you type a line that contains *only* a period. While it is adding lines, **ed** does not recognize commands.

After you issue the **a** command, you can type the lines to be included, concluding with a line that consists only of a period. This special line signals **ed** that you want to stop appending lines. The information that you have typed so far is:

```
ed
a
This is my first example
```

Next, you must tell **ed** to write the edited text into a file. Do so by issuing the write command **w**, plus the name of the file that is to hold the edited text. For example, if you wish to store this example in a file named **first**, issue the command:

```
w first
```

ed will write the file and tell you how many characters were written, in this case 25.

Finally, to quit the editor issue the quit command:

```
q
```

The commands you type after this will be interpreted and acted upon by COHERENT.

Now, review the example in its entirety. First you invoked **ed** by typing at the COHERENT prompt. Then you issued the add command **a** to add lines to the file. Added lines with the **a** command, and finished the adding by typing a line that consists only of a period. You then wrote the editing text into a file by issuing the write command **w**, and finally you exited from **ed** by issuing the quit command **q**. The complete example is:

```
ed
a
This is my first example
.
w first
q
```

ed replied to the **w** command by printing the number of characters it wrote into the file. After you typed **q**, COHERENT prompted you for a command again.

Changing a File

Suppose that you wish to change the file that you have just created: you want to add two more lines to the file so that the original line will be sandwiched between the new lines. You want the file to contain:

```
Example two, added last
This is my first example
Example two, added first
```

You will do this with **ed** using two new commands.

Again, you start by telling COHERENT to run **ed**. This time, however, you must type the name of the file that you are changing after the characters **ed**:

```
ed first
```

ed will remember this file name for later use with the **w** command.

ed reads the file in preparation for editing, and tells you the number of characters that it read in, again 25.

After reading the file, **ed** automatically sets the current line to the last line read in.

Now, add the third line shown in the second example by entering:

a

Example two, added first.

This resembles the first example. In that case, however, the file had no information, whereas now it does. How did `ed` know where to add the lines?

The `a` command adds lines after the *current line*. When `ed` reads a file, it initially sets the current line to the last line read in; therefore, the `a` command added the new line after the last line.

The current line is used implicitly or explicitly by most commands, so it is helpful to know where it is. In general, the current line is left at the last line `ed` has processed. If you lose track of the current line, you can ask `ed` to tell you where it is, as you will see shortly.

To add the very first line to the second example, you will use yet another command, the insert command `i`. This command is identical to the `a` command, except that it inserts lines *before* the current line rather than after it.

Another word about the current line. After an `a` command finishes, the current line is the last line added. Thus, after the addition of "Example two, added first" above, the current line is now the last line in the file. So, if you were to do the `i` command immediately, you would be adding lines just before the last line, which is not what you want to do.

Nearly every `ed` command is flexible enough to allow you to specify the line upon which the command is to operate. Now you can complete the second example:

1i

Example two, added last

The numeral 1 before the `i` tells `ed` to insert lines before the first line in the file. The line-number prefix is used frequently, and applies to nearly every command.

Now, to finish the second example and save it into the same file, type:

w

q

Note that the file name was left off the `w` command. `ed` remembers the name of the file that you began with, and uses that name if none is used with the `w` command. Therefore, the edited text is written back into file `first`. Note, too, that the previous contents of the file `first` are lost when you write the new file `first`. Alternatively, you can type:

w second

This leaves the contents of `first` unchanged and creates a new file called `second`.

In case you forget, `ed` can tell you the name of the file with which you began. Simply type the command:

f

If you had used **f** any time while working on this second example, **ed** would have replied:

```
first
```

Remember to use the **q** command to leave **ed** and return to COHERENT.

Printing Lines

As you use **ed** to edit a file, you will find it most useful to print sections of the file on your terminal. This helps you see what you have done (and sometimes what you have not done), and helps you pinpoint where you wish to make changes.

The print command **p** prints the current line unless you specify a line number.

Continuing with the example begun above, when you type the commands

```
ed first
```

```
p
```

ed replies by printing

```
Example two, added first
```

which is the last line in the file named **first** from the previous example.

Again, like the commands **i** and **a**, if you want **ed** to print a line other than the current one, just prefix the **p** command with a line number. Thus, if you want to print the second line in the file, type:

```
2p
```

ed will reply with:

```
This is my first example
```

If you wish to print more than one line of a file, you can tell **ed** to print a *range* of line numbers: type the numbers of the first and last lines you wish to see, separated by a comma. For example, to print all three lines in the second example, type:

```
1,3p
```

ed responds by printing all lines. This same principle applies to other commands. The print command can also appear after other commands such as **s** or **d**, which are discussed later in this section.

Abbreviating Line Numbers

ed recognizes some shorthand descriptions for certain line numbers. The number of the last line can be represented by the dollar sign **\$**. Thus, the command

```
1,$p
```

prints every line in the file. The advantage of this shorthand is that the command as typed works for any file, regardless of its size. This construct of **1,\$p** is used often

enough that it has an abbreviation of its own:

*p

The number of the current line can also be abbreviated by using the period or dot in the place of a line number. To print all lines from the beginning of the file through the current line, type:

1, .p

To print all lines from the current line through the end of the file, type:

., \$p

The special symbol & prints one screenful of text. Simply type:

&

This is equivalent to:

., +22p

If there are fewer than 23 lines between the current line and the end of the file, it is equivalent to

., \$p

All forms of the p command change the current line to the last line printed. The command

., \$p

after printing changes the current line to the last line of the file.

How Many Lines?

You can easily see the current line with p. Type:

P

This tells ed to print the current line. On your terminal, try the command:

.P

You will see that it does the same thing as p.

To discover how large your file is, just type:

=

ed will reply by typing the number of lines in the file.

To find the number of the current line, use the dot equals command:

.=

ed responds with the number of the current line.

possible line number, `ed` replies by printing a question mark. Note, however, that the current line is always valid so long as the file has at least one line in it. Thus, unless the file is empty, the command

will never give an error message.

Changing Lines

Earlier, an example of spelling correction was solved two ways. The first way was the clumsy way of deleting a line and retyping the entire line. This strategy means much work to change a single letter, so the substitute command was introduced instead.

On occasion, however, it is handy to be able to change lines en masse — as was done by deleting then inserting. `ed` provides this power with the change command `c`. In general terms,

```
m,nc
new lines
to be inserted
```

removes lines *m* through *n*, and insert new lines up to the period in place of them.

Moving Blocks of Text

When handling text, you will often need to shift a block of text from one position to another. In a manuscript, for example, you may need to rearrange the order of paragraphs to increase clarity. In a program, you may need to rearrange the order in which procedures appear.

To allow you to do this easily, `ed` provides a move command `m` that moves a block of text from one point in the file to another.

`m` is different from the other commands that we have discussed so far, in that line numbers follow as well as precede the `m` command itself. The line number that follows the command gives the line *after* which the text is to be moved. So, the general form of the move command is

```
b,emd
```

which means “move lines *b* through *e* to after line *d*”.

To see how this works, first build the following file:

```
ed
```

```
a
```

```
This is a paragraph of natural language
text. Due to stylistic considerations, it
really should be the second paragraph.
```

```
If you can read this paragraph first,
the text has been properly arranged, and
our move example has been successfully done.
```

```
w example5
```

```
q
```

The file `example5` contains two paragraphs, each three lines long. We will now move the first paragraph to after the second paragraph.

You can do this in either of two ways: you can move the first paragraph to after the second paragraph, or you can move the second paragraph to before the first paragraph. Either gives the same result, but the commands are somewhat different. To shift the first paragraph to after the second paragraph, type:

```
ed example5
```

```
1,3m$
```

```
*p
```

```
Q
```

Remember that `$` always represents the last line in the file. The result is:

```
If you can read this paragraph first,
the text has been properly arranged, and
our move example has been successfully done.
```

```
This is a paragraph of natural language
text. Due to stylistic considerations, it
really should be the second paragraph.
```

To move the second paragraph to before the first, type:

```
4,6m0
```

Note that the destination is `0`, which means that the text is to be moved to immediately after line `0`. Because there is no line number `0`, the move command interprets this to mean the beginning of the file.

Of course, in our small example, line number abbreviations and knowledge of the current line may be used in a number of different ways to perform exactly the same action. For example,

```
1,3m.
```

says to move lines 1 through 3 of the file to the line after the current line. When you invoke `ed`, it always sets the line number to the last line in the file. Thus, this form of the command has the same effect as the previous forms.

If the destination of a move command is not specified, `ed` assumes the current line. Therefore, the command

```
1,3m
```

also repositions the first paragraph correctly.

The move command changes the line numbers in the file, although the number of lines in the file remains the same. The different forms of the move command will, however, yield different settings for the current line.

After a move command, the current line becomes the number of the last line moved. Thus, if you moved the first paragraph to after the second paragraph, the current line will be reset to the last line in the file — the original line 3. However, if you moved the second paragraph to before the first paragraph, the current line would be reset to line 3 — which was originally the last line in the file.

Copying Blocks of Text

The transfer command `t` resembles the move command, except that it copies text rather than moving it. When you move text, it is erased from its original position. When you copy text, however, the text then appears both in its original position and in the position to which you copied it. `ed` uses the term *transfer* rather than *copy* because the command `c` is already used by change command.

The form of the transfer command is as follows:

```
b,etd
```

This means to transfer (copy) the group of lines that begins with *b* and that ends with *e* (inclusive) to after line *d*.

After copying the text, `ed` sets the current line to the last line copied.

String Searches

The methods of line location that have been discussed to this point all involve line numbers. They specified an absolute line number, a relative line number, or a shorthand symbol such as `.` or `$`.

Often, however, line numbers are not useful, because there is no easy way to tell what number a line has, how many lines ago a block of text began, and so on.

`ed`'s solution to this problem is to locate a line by asking `ed` to search for a pattern of text. `ed` begins searching on the line that follows the current line, and looks for a line that matches the specified pattern. If it finds a line that contains the requested pattern, `ed` resets the current line to that line.

If `ed` encounters the end of the file before finds a match, `ed` jumps to the first line in the file, and continues its search from there. If it finds no match by the time it returns to the line where the search began, `ed` gives up and issues an error message — the question mark `?`. Remember, if you type a question mark in response to an error message, `ed` will tell you in more detail what the error is.

What does it mean to “match” a pattern? The simplest meaning is that two patterns are the same — the strings have exactly the same characters in exactly the same order. To see how this works, type the following to create file **example6**:

```
ed
a
  This is an example that we will
use for string searching. There
is much natural language here as well
as some genuine arbitrary strings.
890,;+      foxtrot
qwertyuiop ###
.
w example6
q
```

Now, to locate and print any line contains the pattern **fox**, type:

```
ed example6
/fox/p
```

In response, **ed** prints the line:

```
890,;+      foxtrot
```

Also, you can use string expressions to print a range of lines. For example:

```
ed example6
/This/,/much/p
```

This prints:

```
  This is an example that we will
use for string searching. There
is much natural language here as well
```

That is, it printed all lines from the first line that contains the pattern **This** through the first line that contains the pattern **much**.

Pattern searches can also be combined with relative line numbers. If you have a Pascal program file with several procedures in it, but you find that you need to rearrange the procedures, you can combine the power of the move command with the string searches.

```
PROCEDURE A;
...
...
PROCEDURE B;
...
...
PROCEDURE C;
```

Assume that the section of text that begins with **PROCEDURE A** should follow the line

that contains **PROCEDURE B**. The following command moves the text properly:

```
/PROCEDURE A/,/PROCEDURE B/-1m/PROCEDURE C/-1
```

This commands **ed** (1) to locate the chunk of text that begins with a line containing the pattern **PROCEDURE A** and ends with the line just before the first line that contains the pattern **PROCEDURE B**, and then (2) move that text to just before the first line that contains the pattern **PROCEDURE C**. As you can see, you can pack a lot of information into one **ed** command.

Let's look at this command in more detail, to see exactly how it works. First, remember that the move command **m** is defined as

```
b,emd
```

where *b* indicates the first line of the text to be moved, *e* indicates the last line of the text to be moved, and *d* indicates the line that the moved text is to follow. Thus, *b* corresponds to the number of the line that contains **PROCEDURE A** and is the first line of the procedure in question. *e*, however, corresponds to the line before the **PROCEDURE B** begins, by virtue of the -1. Here is an example of mixing pattern searches with relative line numbers, as mentioned above. Thus, you have found the beginning and ending lines of procedure A.

The final string search locates the first line of subroutine C. The move command normally moves text to after the given line; and because we wish to move the text to before the line that contains **PROCEDURE C**, we must include the -1 to move the text up one line.

Remembered Search Arguments

As discussed earlier, line numbers may be abbreviated in many ways. They may be entered as *.*, or *+*, or *-*, and certain combinations of these. With some commands, pressing **<return>** tells **ed** to use the current line number.

ed encourages you abbreviate the search string. If you enter no string between the slashes in a search or substitution, then **ed** uses the last-used search string. A common use is in the global substitution command (which will be discussed in detail later in this section):

```
g/please remove this string/s// /p
```

This does not quite remove it, but replaces it with a blank. The last-used string can be specified by a string search, a substitute command, or a reverse string search (also discussed later in this section). Also, the remembered search argument may also be used in any one of these. You can use the remembered search feature to "walk" through the file, finding the next occurrence of a remembered search pattern.

Uses of Special Characters

As powerful as the line locator seems, some features are even even more powerful. These will be discussed in the Expert Editing section, below. However, these more powerful capabilities depend upon certain punctuation marks used in a special way. As you use the line locator (as well as the substitute command), be aware of these following characters:

```
[ ^ $ * . \ &
```

They have special significance to **ed** when they appear in a string search or a substitution pattern.

If you need to use one of these characters without invoking its special meaning, precede it with a backslash '\'. This tells **ed** not to interpret the character in a special way.

For example, to find a backslash character, type the search command:

```
^\\
```

If any of these characters is to be used in another context, for example, within lines that you are adding with the **a** command, it should *not* be preceded with the backslash. Only use the backslash to hide the meaning when it appears within the string search command, or within the first part of the substitution command.

Global Commands

The global commands **g** and **v** let you repeat commands on all lines within a specified range. For example, to print all lines that contain the word **example**, type:

```
g/example/p
```

The global command can be prefix almost any command. For example, the following command deletes all lines that contain three consecutive plus signs:

```
g/+++/d
```

Likewise, the command

```
g/foxtrot/.-2,.+2p
```

prints the five lines that surrounds any line that contains the word **foxtrot**.

A common use of the global command is to perform global substitution. The command

```
g/PROCEDURE/s/PROCEDURE/PROC/gp
```

performs the substitution on each line that contains the string **PROCEDURE** and prints the resulting line.

This may appear similar to the command

```
1,$s/PROCEDURE/PROC/gp
```

but is different in that the global command prints each of the changed lines, whereas the

substitute command prints only the last line changed. Also, the method of operation of these two commands is different.

A related command `v` performs much the same task, but executes the commands only for lines that do *not* contain the specified string. Thus, to print all the lines that do not have the letter `w`, use:

```
v/w/p
```

For more sophisticated uses of the `g` and `v` commands and how they work, see the section on Expert Editing.

Joining Lines

What do you do if you inadvertently hit `<return>` as you are adding lines and need to combine the two lines?

```
ed
a
Look out, I seem to have hit ret
urn in the
middle of a word and don't know
what to do!
w rid
q
```

Rather than retyping the entire line, you can use the join command `j`:

```
ed rid
1,2j
1,$p
```

This will give:

```
Look out, I seem to have hit return in the
middle of a word and don't know
what to do!
```

If no line number is specified, `j` joins the current line and the following line. If a single line number is specified, join operates on that and the following line.

Several lines can be joined by using the form of the command:

```
a,bj
```

This joins lines `a` through `b` into one line. Likewise, the command

```
1,$j
```

joins all the lines in the file into one line. Then, the command `.p` or `p` prints the entire file.

Note that the command

```
3j
```

does the same job as the command

```
3,4j
```

The join command generates its own second line number if none is specified, so that the command

```
nj
```

is equivalent to

```
n,n+1j
```

where *n* is a line number. This command is the only one that interprets a missing line number this way.

Splitting Lines

You can split one line into two with the substitute command *s*. To illustrate, suppose you typed in the following commands:

```
ed
a
This line wants to be two, with this second.
.
w split
q
```

To perform the split, type:

```
ed split
s/two, /two,\
/p
*p
wq
```

The line split is caused by the backslash that precedes the `<return>`. This tells *ed* that the `<return>` does not terminate the command, but that it is part of the substitution. The contents of file *split* are now:

```
This line wants to be two,
with this second.
```

Marking Lines

As you edit a manuscript or program, it is sometimes handy to be able to leave a “bookmark” in the text for later reference. `ed` provides this feature with the mark command `k`. To mark the next line that has the word `find`, use

```
/find/ka
```

where the letter `a` is the mark. To print the line that has been so marked, use:

```
'ap
```

You can place these references anywhere that a line number is expected.

The mark must be one lower-case letter. Also, each mark is associated with one line. Marking a line with the `k` command does not change the current line.

Marks can be especially handy in you move paragraphs with the `m` command. They give you a chance to review the sections that you will be moving before you do the move.

For example, suppose that you have a manuscript with a paragraph that must be moved to a different part of the document. Create the following example:

```
ed
a
    This is a paragraph, first line, that
    needs to be moved.
text
text
And this is the last sentence of the paragraph.
    Next paragraph begins here.
text
text
text
    This is the spot that we want the paragraph
    to precede.
.
w example7
q
```

Now, place three marks to help with the move:

```
ed example7
/first line,/ka
/Next paragraph/kb
/is the spot/kc
```

This marks the first line to be moved with `a`, the line after the last to be moved with `b`, and the the paragraph's destination with `c`. But you can see that the move command moves lines to the line *after* the third number specified, so let's change the third mark:

'c-1kc

Now we can use **c** in the move command without arithmetic. Now, print the paragraph to be moved to be sure that the marks are correct.

'a,'bp

ed replies with

```

    This is a paragraph, first line, that
    needs to be moved.
    text
    text
    And this is the last sentence of the paragraph.
    Next paragraph begins here.
```

You can see that we would move one line too many if we used the marks as they are. So, change **b** also.

'b-1kb

Now, do the move:

'a,'bm'c
1,\$p

The file now contains:

```

    Next paragraph begins here.
    text
    text
    text
    This is a paragraph, first line, that
    needs to be moved.
    text
    text
    And this is the last sentence of the paragraph.
    This is the spot that we want the paragraph
    to precede.
```

Marking sections of text can increase the ease with which you solve your complex ed problems.

Searching in Reverse Direction

All scanning, processing, and searching has been shown going from the beginning of the file toward the end. Sometimes it is useful to find some word that occurs **before** the current line.

You can get **ed** to do string searching in the reverse direction by specifying the search with question marks **?** rather than slashes **/**. To find the previous occurrence of the word **last**, use:

?last?

This form of searching can be useful in finding the beginning and end of a **repeat/until** statement. For example, if the current line is in the middle of a Pascal **repeat/until** group, you can print the group with the command:

?repeat?,/until/p

The reverse search is like the forward search in every way except the direction of search. The search begins one line before the current or specified line, and proceeds toward the beginning of the file. If the string is not found by the time that the search reaches the beginning of the file, the search resumes at the end of the file, and progresses towards the starting point of the search. If the string is not found when the search reaches the original starting point, the question-mark error message is issued signifying no match.

Also, the command

??

uses the remembered search argument.

Expert Editing

This section describes the most advanced **ed** commands.

File Processing Commands

Earlier, we discussed the commands

ed

and:

ed filename

ed also has file-handling commands that go beyond those already discussed.

If you decide that you were editing the wrong file, or have finished the current file with a **w**, you can begin to edit an entirely new file with the command:

e newfile

This forgets all the changes that you have made, if any, up to this point since the last **w** command and begins all over again with **newfile**.

The **e** command:

e new

has the same effect as

ed new

issued within **COHERENT**, but is handier because you do not need to exit **ed** and then reenter to edit a new file. Note that the **ed** command **e**, like the **q** command, issues an error message if another file is being edited and you have not stored it since your last

change was made. If you immediately repeat the command, **ed** proceeds even if there are unsaved changes. The command

E new

commands **ed** to edit the new file, whether or not there are unsaved changes.

The **r** command also reads a new file, but adds it to the file being edited instead of using it to replace the current file. This can be handy for copying one file into another one. For example, if you have a manuscript prefix stored in the file **prefix** to include the prefix at the beginning of the file you are editing, type:

Or prefix

r inserts the file being read after the line number specified; in this case, line 0 means at the beginning of the file. If used without a line number, **r** appends the newly read lines to the end of the file.

The **w** command writes the entire file if no line number is specified; however, you can line numbers. For example

1,3w new

writes the first three lines to file **new**. If the file name is omitted, the lines are written to the remembered file name.

The **w** command is unique in that it never changes the current line. This is true regardless of what line numbers are specified in the range for the command, or how those line numbers were developed.

The **W** command resembles the **w** command, except that it appends lines to the end of the file, whereas **w** creates a new file and erases any previous contents.

The **f** command prints the remembered file name that was set in

ed filename

or

e filename

or

w filename

commands. You can also use **f** to reset the remembered name, by typing:

f newname

This form of the command tells you what the new remembered file name is, even though you just typed it in.

Note that the command

w filename

changes the remembered name only if there is currently no remembered name, as does the **r** command.

Patterns

Earlier, you were cautioned that certain punctuation characters have special effect in search and substitute commands. These characters are:

```
[ ^ $ * . \ &
```

They are used to form powerful substitute and locator commands. An orderly combination of these special characters is called a *pattern*, sometimes called a *regular expression*. You can use a pattern to find or *match* a variety of strings with one search argument.

The simplest patterns use alphabetic characters and numeric digits, which match themselves. For example,

```
/ab/
```

finds and prints the next line containing the string `ab`.

The next simplest character to use in a pattern is the period or dot. It matches any character except the **newline** character that separates lines. Two periods in succession match any two consecutive characters, and so on. For example, if you have a file that contains algebraic statements of the form

```
a+b  
c+e  
a-b  
a/b  
d*e
```

and wanted to find and print any line involving `a` and `b` (in that order), then use the search statement:

```
/a.b/
```

The `.` in this example matches `+`, `-`, and `/`.

Then, you ask, how do I find a string that contains a period? For example, if you want to find all the sentences that ended with "lost." (that is, the word `lost` followed by a period), you might first try:

```
/lost./p
```

This, however, also matches the string "lost " (the word `lost` followed by a space), which is not what you want.

This is where the special character backslash comes in handy. A backslash tells `ed` to treat the next character as a regular character, even if it usually is a special character. Thus, to find "lost.", you need only type:

```
/lost\./p
```

This will not incorrectly find "lost ". If you want to find backslashes in your file, simply say:

^\/p

Matching Many With One Character

The asterisk `*` matches an indefinite number of characters. For example, to remove extra spaces between words in a document, type

```
g/##*/s//#/p
```

(The character `#` has been substituted here for the space character to make the example more readable.) This replaces each series of spaces by one space.

Note that there are two spaces before the `*` in the search string. This is necessary because the `*` matches any length of string, including zero. Therefore, searching for a space followed by any number of spaces finds strings that are at least one space long.

The `*` matches the longest possible string of the previous character. This requires careful attention on your part, because the string matched by `*` might be longer than your required string, or even zero in length. Either way could give you unexpected results.

If you have a line

```
a+b-c
```

in your file and want to change it to

```
a+c
```

type the command:

```
s/a.*c/a+c/p
```

However, if the line read instead

```
a+b-c*d+c
```

and you applied the command, the result would be

```
a+c
```

since the `.*` matches the longest string between any `a` and any `c`.

Beginning and Ending of Lines

The characters `^` and `$` match, respectively, the beginning and ending of a line. Thus, you can find and print all lines that end with a bang:

```
g/bang$/p
```

or those that begin with a whimper:

```
g/^whimper/p
```

These two characters can also help you find lines of specific length. If you need to see all lines exactly five characters long, the command

```
g/^\.....$/p
```

does the trick. To find and delete all blank lines, type:

```
g/^\ *$/d
```

Note that this time the `*` matches a string of zero spaces. However, this is correct, because a blank line includes lines that have nothing in them, as well as lines that contain only spaces.

Replacing Matched Part

In many cases of substituting, you find yourself extending a word, or adding information to the end of a phrase. This can lead to extensive retyping of characters. The special `&` character can help out.

This character is special only when used in the right part, or *pattern2* of the substitute command. It means “the string that matched the left part”. For example, to add `ing` to the word `help` in the current line, use:

```
s/help/&ing/
```

The ampersand may appear more than once in the right side.

This can be more interesting if the left part has a non-trivial *pattern*. For every word in a line that is preceded by two or more spaces, double the number of spaces before it:

```
s/###+*/&&/gp
```

(Again, spaces have been replaced with `#` for clarity.)

Replacing Parts of Matched String

A more sophisticated feature, which is similar to the ampersand, helps you to rearrange parts of a line. To see how this works, create a file by typing:

```
ed
a
first part=second part
.
w eql
q
```

Two special bracket symbols, `\(` and `\)` can be used to delineate patterns in the left part of a substitution expression. Then, you can use the special symbols `\1`, `\2`, etc., to insert the delimited parts. The symbol `\(` marks the beginning of the pattern, and `\)` marks the end. For example, to delete everything in the line except the characters to the left of the `=`, type

```
ed eq1
s/^\(.*\)=.*\1/p
wq
.
```

In the substitute command, the `^` matches the beginning of the line, `.*` matches “first part”, and `=.*` matches the rest of the line. The symbol `\1` signifies the matched characters between the first `\(` (the only one in this example) and `\)`. The `p` then prints the result, which will be:

```
first part
```

With this example, you can interchange parts of a line:

```
ed
a
first part=second part
.
w eq12
q
```

To interchange the two parts, type

```
ed eq12
s/\(.*\)=\(.*\)/\2=\1/
P
wq
```

The result is

```
second part=first part
```

The first portion of the substitution expression,

```
\(.*\)=\(.*\)
```

can be thought of as being in three parts. The first part

```
\(.*\)
```

matches all characters up to but not including the `=`, which are

```
first part
```

The second part

```
=
```

matches the `=` in the line, and finally the third part

```
\(.*\)
```

matches all characters following the `=`, or

```
second part
```

The remainder of the substitution expression

```
\2=\1
```

which is the replacement part, rebuilds the line in interchanged order. The symbol `\2` replaces the matched string enclosed in the second pair of `\(\)` delimiters, and the symbol `\1` inserts the matched string enclosed in the first pair of `\(\)`.

The right side of the substitution inserts the second matched expression (from `\2`), then inserts the `=` sign again, followed finally with the first part of the line from `\1`.

This may appear involved, but can be immensely valuable in situations that require rearrangement of a large number of lines.

The next special characters for patterns that we will consider are the bracket characters `[` and `]`. These are used to define the character class. Inside the brackets, put a group of characters; `ed` will match any of them if it appears. For example, to print a line that contains any odd digit, say:

```
g/[13579]/p
```

For even more power and flexibility, you can combine character classes with the asterisk. For example, the following command finds and prints all lines that contain a negative number followed by a period:

```
g/-[0123456789]*\./p
```

This matches lines containing the following example strings:

```
-1.  
-666.  
-3.7.77
```

You can also match all lower-case letters by listing them in brackets, but the following abbreviation simplifies this:

```
g/[a-z]/p
```

This can also be used for the negative number example above:

```
g/-[0-9]*\./p
```

Most special characters lose their original meaning within the brackets, but one of the special characters, caret `^`, gets a new meaning. In this context, it matches all characters *except* those listed in the brackets. For example, the following pattern matches a string that begins with `K` and continues with any character except a number:

```
/K[^0-9]/
```

This matches:

```
KQ  
KK  
KK9
```

but not:

K7
kK0

Other special characters may be part of a character class, and but lose their special meaning when used in that context. Remember, however, that if you want to match the right bracket, it must appear first in the list. So, to find all occurrences of special characters in the file, type:

```
g/[ ]^\. * [& ] /p
```

Listing Funny Lines

The **p** command prints lines with graphic characters in them. It also prints lines with non-graphic (or *control*) characters, but these do not appear on the screen. For example, printing a line that contains the BEL character <ctrl-G> will ring your terminal's bell, but you will not see where the BEL character occurs within the line.

The **l** command behaves like the **p** command, except that it also decodes and prints control characters. For example, if you use the **l** command to print a line that containing the word **bell** followed by a BEL character, you would see:

```
bell\007
```

Note that "007" is the ASCII value for <ctrl-G>. (ASCII is the system of encoding characters within your computer; see ASCII in the Lexicon for the full ASCII table.) The **l** command displays the backspace character <ctrl-H> as a hyphen - overstruck with a <, which appears simply as < on your screen. It displays a tab character as a - overstruck with a >, which appears as a >. If the line being listed with **l** is too long to be displayed on one line on your screen, **l** separates it into two lines, with the backslash character placed at the end of the first line to indicate the split.

All other features of the **p** command apply to the **l** command.

Keeping Track of Current Line

The most commonly used abbreviation in **ed** is the dot, or period, which stands for the current line. Many commands can change the value of the dot, and it is useful to you to be able to anticipate this change when using the abbreviation.

Different classes of commands affect the value of the dot in different ways; in general, however, the simple explanation is usually correct: the current line is the last line processed by the last command to be executed.

Consider, for example, how the substitution command **s** changes the current line:

```
1, $s/flow/change/  
P
```

In this example, the current line will be the last line modified by the substitutions; and that will be the line that the **p** command prints.

The **w** command is an exception to this rule. It does not change the current line, regardless of any line range selection or how these ranges are developed.

The **r** command changes the current line to the last of the lines read.

The **d** command sets the current line to the line after the last line deleted unless the last line in the file was deleted, in which case the new last line becomes the current line.

The line insertion commands **i**, **c**, and **a** all leave the current line as the last line added. If no lines are added, however, their behaviors differ: **i** and **c** effectively back up the last line by one, whereas **a** leaves it the same.

When Current Line Is Changed

When the current line changes is also important. Normally, the current line does not change until the command is completed.

To illustrate, create a file **semi** by typing:

```
ed
a
begin
second
first
in between
second
last
.
w semi
q
```

Now, edit the file and type all lines from **first** to **second**:

```
ed semi
/first/,/second/p
Q
```

This will cause an error! The reason is that the search command begins with current line set to \$, so "first" is found on line 3. But the search for "second" also begins with the current line set at \$, and finds "second" on line 2. Thus, the command translates to

```
3,2p
```

which is clearly invalid.

To do what was intended, use the **semicolon ;** instead of the comma to separate the two searches. This forces **ed** to change the current line to be changed after the search for **first** rather than after the entire command. Thus, the commands

```
ed semi
/first;/second/p
Q
```


are correct and will do what is intended. The result will be:

```
first
in between
second
```

The search for **first** still begins with the current line set at **\$**. However, after it finds **first**, **ed** resets the current line is set to 3, and begins the search for **second** there, and succeeds on line 5.

Finally, to be sure of where the current line is, you can use the **p** command to show you the line; or you can have **ed** tell you the number of the current line by typing:

```
. =
```

To give you a perspective on where you are with respect to the end of the file, type

```
& =
```

and **ed** will tell you the number of the last line in the file.

You can put any line number expression before **=** and it will type the result. For example

```
/next/=
```

types the number of the next line to contain "next" (if there is one). The command **=** never changes the line number.

More About Global Commands

All the global commands discussed thus far have been followed by only one command — substitute, print, and delete. You can, however, put several commands after a global command, and execute each of those commands for each line that matches.

To change all occurrences of the word **cacophonous** to the word **noisy** and print the three lines that follow, issue the command:

```
g/cacophonous/s//noisy/\
.+1, .+3p
```

Here, the additional commands are separated by the backslash before the **<return>**. Several commands can be added, and all but the last need the backslash at the end.

This will work for the line-adding commands, as well. To insert a spelling warning before each line that contains the word **occurrence**, issue the command:

```
g/occurrence/i\
((the following line needs spelling check))\
```

Note that the last line of the **i** group can be entered without a backslash, in which case the line containing only the period must be omitted. This has the same effect as:

```
g/occurrence/i\  
((the following line needs spelling check))
```

You should not depend upon the setting of the current line in any multiline global command. There are two reasons for this. First, if one of the commands is a substitute and the string is not found in the matched line, the current line will not be changed.

Second, the global command operates in two phases. The first part scans the file for lines that match the string argument. `ed` marks these lines internally in a manner similar to the `k` command. The second phase then executes the commands on each of the marked lines. Therefore, you cannot count on a string search following the `g` to set the current line number.

Again, the `v` command behaves in the same way, except that it selects lines that do *not* match the pattern.

Caution is advised when using remembered search arguments, for a similar reason. A search argument is remembered only if the search has been executed. Thus, in a command of the form

```
g/backup/s//reverse\  
s/backin /backing/
```

the first remembered search may use `backup` on some occasion, and “`backin`” on others. The reason for this is that the second phase of the `g` command begins with a remembered search argument of `backup`. After the second line of the multiline command executes, the remembered search argument is be “`backin`”. This remains throughout the remainder of the second `g` phase.

Thus, it is recommended that you avoid remembered search arguments when using multiline global commands.

Issuing COHERENT Commands Within `ed`

While you are using `ed`, you can issue COHERENT commands by prefixing them with the `!` command.

This can be useful if, for example, you need to discover a file name while in the middle of an edit, and you want to find it without leaving `ed`. Thus, to list your directory while in `ed`, type:

```
!lc
```

`ed` sends the command to COHERENT and echoes a `!` character when the command is finished.

There is no limitation on the type of command that you may issue with this feature. It is even plausible that you want to start another `ed`.

For More Information

The Lexicon article on **ed** summarizes its commands and options. The COHERENT system also includes two other useful editors: **sed**, the stream editor; and **MicroEMACS**, the screen editor. Each is introduced with its own tutorial and is summarized in the Lexicon.

Section 8:

Introduction to *lex*, the Lexical Analyzer

Many computer applications involve reading text strings. This is especially true for man-machine communication.

For some forms of textual input, a programmer can design a program by hand to process it. However, it is much easier to implement such programs when you use a software tool that will automatically construct a program to process the data. The COHERENT command *lex* is such a tool.

lex accepts expressions that describe the text input, and generates a program to process it. In computer-ese, *lex* is a "lexical scanner program generator".

This document tells you how to use *lex*. It presents many simple examples to illustrate how to use its features and how to use the generated program with other tools provided with COHERENT, notably the parser generator *yacc*.

Readers of this document are presumed to be familiar with the C programming language and the use of the COHERENT system. Related documents include *Using the COHERENT System* and the tutorial to *yacc*, the COHERENT parser generator.

How To Use *lex*

lex generate lexical scanners for compilers, to do statistical analysis of text, and to generate filters for many diverse tasks. This section gives examples of how to use *lex*. Later sections discuss the concepts used in these examples in detail.

Translating Strings

The first example tells *lex* to match an input string and replace it with a different string; strings not recognized by the program are output unchanged. Enter the following program into the file *rmv.lex*.

```
%%  
removeable printf ("executable");
```

This creates the `lex` specification. Use the following command line to Pass this specification through `lex`:

```
lex rmv.lex
```

This produces a C program named `lex.yy.c`, which you can compile by typing:

```
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o rmv
```

The executable program `rmv` is now ready to use. To illustrate its use, type:

```
rmv
Is this file removeable?
<ctrl-D>
```

`rmv` replies:

```
Is this file executable?
```

Note that the generated program reads from standard input and writes to standard output.

Remove Blanks From Input

The next example deletes all blanks and tabs from the input. Type the following `lex` program into file `nosp.lex`:

```
%%
[ \t]+ ;
```

Generate and compile the program with the following commands:

```
lex nosp.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o nosp
```

To invoke the program, type `nosp`. Now, test it by typing the following:

```
This may be hard to read after processing.
<ctrl-D>
```

`nosp` outputs:

```
Thismaybehardtoreadafterprocessing.
```

Trimming Blanks

The previous example can be rewritten to remove strings of blanks or tabs and replace them with one space. Type the following into file `onesp.lex`:

```
%%
[ \t]+ printf (" ");
```

Generate and compile this with the following commands:

```
lex onesp.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o onesp
```

Invoke your new program with the command **onesp**. Now, type the following text to test the program:

```
This should be easier to read.
<ctrl-D>
```

The words in this input are separated by two spaces. **onesp** prints the following:

```
This should be easier to read.
```

lex Specification Form

This section discusses the form of the **lex** specification.

Simple Form

The examples shown above use the simplest form of a **lex** program. Consider the text of the example **rmv.lex**:

```
%%
removeable printf ("removable");
```

The symbol

```
%%
```

divides sections of the **lex** specification. Not all specifications need to be present, but at least one **%%** must appear in a **lex** program.

This symbol separates **lex** *definitions* from *rules*. With nothing before the **%%**, there are no definitions. Rules follow the **%%**. No definitions are needed in the simplest of **lex** specifications.

Rules in lex

The format of a **lex** rule is simple. Every rule has two parts. Refer to the program **rmv**:

```
removeable printf ("removable");
```

The first part begins at the beginning of the line and ends with a space or tab. In the example rule, the first part is

```
removeable
```

This part is called the *pattern*.

The second part follows the space or tab, and is called the *action*. The action in this example is:

```
printf ("removable");
```

When the pattern specified by the rule is found in the input, the corresponding action is performed. Thus, this rule detects every appearance of *removeable* and outputs the correct spelling.

A **lex** program tries each rule's pattern in turn, and performs the associated action if and only if the pattern matches. Actions often modify the input that matched the pattern; they may also do nothing for certain patterns. To illustrate this, type the following specification into file `erase.lex`:

```
%%  
erase ;
```

Then compile the generated program with the following commands:

```
lex erase.lex  
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o erase
```

This program copies all its input to its output, except for any appearance of the string **erase**. Invoke the program by typing `erase`, and then test it by typing:

```
Have you erased the blackboard?  
<ctrl-D>
```

erase then prints:

```
Have you d the blackboard?
```

If the input contains patterns that do not match any of the patterns in the suite of rules you typed into **lex**, they are simply output unchanged. Usually, you will want to write a rule to cover every case.

Statements in lex

As noted earlier, **lex** is a program generator. It reads the specifications that you prepare for it, and writes a C program that is used with the **lex** library. Many of the actions in the rules you specify, such as

```
printf ("removable");
```

are themselves C statements. These statements are included in the resulting program, along with other statements that **lex** provides so the program can run.

You can include other statements, should the program need them, by placing them in appropriate places. The following program, called `count.lex`, shows how this is done. It counts the number of *tokens*, or strings of non-blank characters. Type the following into the file `count.lex`


```

        int count;
%%
[^\t\n]+  count++;
[ \t\n]+  ;
%%
yywrap ()
{
    printf ("Number of tokens:%d\n", count);
    return (1);
}

```

Statements other than rule actions appear in two places in the program. The first such statement is in the definition section, which precedes the rule section delimiter `%%`:

```
int count;
```

This C statement declares the variable `count` to be an integer variable. Notice that it is preceded by a tab; a tab or a space indicates to `lex` that an input line is not a rule.

The second kind of non-rule statement follows the second `%%`, which marks the end of the rules section. `lex` regards anything that follows the second delimiter as being source statements.

The above example includes a function named `yywrap`. `lex` programs always call this function at the end of processing. The above program fills this function with code that prints the number of tokens in the text.

Compile the program by typing the following commands:

```
lex count.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o count
```

Run the program by typing:

```
count <count.lex
```

This counts the tokens in the `count.lex` file itself. `count` will print the following:

```
Number of tokens:21
```

If you do not include a routine named `yywrap`, `lex` will use a standard one.

Groups of Statements

In previous examples, the C statement in the action part of the rule is a single statement. In many `lex` applications, however, you will need to use more than one statement per rule.

To do so, enclose the statements in the braces `{ }`. The following example illustrates grouping. This `lex` specification generates a program to add numbers found in the input and print the total whenever it reads asterisk `*`. Type the following program into `nsum.lex`:

```
        int number, sum;
%%
[0-9]+    {
    sscanf (yytext, "%d", &number);
    sum += number;
    printf ("%s", yytext);
    }
"*"      {
    printf ("%s", yytext);
    printf ("%d", sum);
    sum = 0;
    }
```

To run the generated `nsum` program, enter a sample data file by typing

```
cat >numbers
one two three
1 2 3 4 * 1 2 3 5 *
*
done
<ctrl-D>
```

This builds a sample data file. Run the program by typing:

```
nsum <numbers
```

`nsum` will print:

```
one two three
1 2 3 4 *10 1 2 3 5 *11
*0
done
```

The statements that follow the definitions

```
[0-9]+
```

and

```
*
```

are enclosed in braces, because each action triggers several statements. Consider the first of these:

```
[0-9]+    {
    sscanf (yytext, "%d", &number);
    sum += number;
    printf ("%s", yytext);
    }
```

The pattern looks for strings of digits. `sscanf` converts each such string into a number and saves it in the variable `number`. Now, consider the second rule:

```

"*"  {
    printf ("%s", yytext);
    printf ("%d", sum);
    sum = 0;
}

```

This specifies that upon detection of * in the input, the program is to print the sum of the numbers and then reset the counter to zero. In both of these rules, the statement

```
printf ("%s", yytext);
```

prints the number or * so that the output shows the input as well as the total. `lex` defines the variable `yytext`. It always contains the string that matches the rule.

If the input is neither a number or an asterisk, no rule specifically matches it. Therefore, the program echoes it unchanged to the standard output.

Using the Same Action

To make it easier for you to write actions, `lex` allows you *abbreviate* rules; that is, you have to write only once any action that is performed by several rules. To abbreviate rules represented symbolically by

```

p1    action1
p2    action1

```

use the vertical bar operator:

```

p1    |
p2    action1

```

The vertical bar means "use the action from the rule that follows."

Patterns

The first part of each rule in the `lex` rules section is a pattern that match parts of the input. This section describes how to construct these patterns, sometimes called *regular expressions*. If you are familiar with `ed` and how its patterns work, this will be familiar to you.

Simple Patterns

The simplest kind of pattern is a string of characters that matches itself. A previous section presented an illustration of this:

```

%%
removeable printf ("executable");

```

This regular expression matches all occurrences of *removeable* that appear in the input text.

Certain characters have special meaning to lex patterns. To match a special character literally, you must *quote* it. For example, * has special meaning. To match the asterisk literally (that is to match any '*'s that appear in the input), surround it with quotation marks:

```
"*"
```

Another way to quote characters is to precede it with the backslash character '\':

```
\*
```

The following characters each have special meaning and must be quoted to be matched as text characters:

```
" \ ( ) < > { } % * + ? [ ] - ^ / $ . |
```

However, within "", the \ still has its meaning, so to match the string * use the regular expression:

```
"\\*"
```

Also, to match a quote character, use:

```
\"
```

Classes of Characters

The power of patterns comes from special characters that match more than one character. The following examines each special character in detail.

The *period* or *dot* matches any character except newline. The following regular expression matches any pair of characters that begins with J:

```
J.
```

The following example prints in square brackets any sequence of five characters that ends with a blank. Type the following into the file `five.lex`:

```
%%  
....." " printf ("[%s]", yytext);
```

Compile the program with the following commands:

```
lex five.lex  
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o five
```

Invoke it by typing `five`, and test it with the following text:

```
how well does this work?  
no match  
<ctrl-D>
```

The result is

```

how[ well ]does[ this ]work?
no match

```

The second line of the input does not have any matches. Because the dot pattern character does not match the end-of-line character, all five characters that precede the blank must be on the same line.

Another way to match many characters, but selectively, is with the *character class* operation. Enclose in square brackets the set of characters to be matched. Any of the characters listed there will match one character of the input. For example,

```
[0123456789]
```

matches any decimal digit in the input. Characters may be in any order within the brackets. Thus

```
[0246813579]
```

is equivalent to the example above.

To simplify specifying for character classes, you can specify ranges of characters. The beginning and end of the range is separated by a hyphen. To match all decimal digits as above, use:

```
[0-9]
```

To match all alphabetic characters, type:

```
[a-zA-Z]
```

The special character `^`, when used after the opening bracket `[`, tells `lex` to match any character *except* those enclosed. The following example finds all two-digit numbers not followed by a period or alphabetic character and prints them surrounded by `{` and `}`. Type the following into file `twodig.lex`:

```

%%
[0-9][0-9][^\.a-zA-Z] printf ("%s", yytext);

```

Process and compile the program by typing the following commands:

```

lex twodig.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o twodig

```

Invoke the program by typing `twodig`, and test it by entering the following text:

```

12. 12 12a 1 12 b
<ctrl-D>

```

`twodig` prints the following in reply:

```
12. {12 }12a 1 {12 }b
```

Repetition

In the patterns shown so far, each character matches only one character at a time. However, many interesting input patterns involve repetition of characters.

To match one or more instances of a character, follow it with the pattern operator `+`. Consider the summation example in `nsum.lex`, shown earlier, which recognized strings of input numbers and added them to a total:

```
[0-9]+      {
    sscanf (yytext, "%d", &number);
    sum += number;
    printf ("%s", yytext);
}
```

The pattern

```
[0-9]+
```

matches a string of one or more digits.

The operator `*` will match *zero* or more characters of a specified type. The following example deletes all characters between square brackets. Type it into file `star.lex`:

```
%%
\[.*\]      printf ("[]");
```

Type the following commands to generate and compile the program:

```
lex star.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o star
```

Invoke the program by typing `star`, and test it by typing the following text:

```
[This should disappear]
[what happens with two] of them [on a line?]
<ctrl-D>
```

A backslash precedes each bracket, because the bracket has a special meaning in regular expressions. The output from this example is:

```
[]
[]
```

In looking at the example's input, you might have expected the output to be:

```
[]
>[] of them []
```

`lex` does not produce the latter output because it generates recognizers that find the longest match if several matches are possible. Therefore, `star` matched the first `[`, then all characters up to and including the second `]`. When you write a pattern that matches many characters, you should bear this possibility in mind.

To change the program to match the first], rewrite it as follows:

```
%%
\[ [^\]]*\] printf ("[]");
```

The regular expression now matches a string of all characters except a], when that string is enclosed in square brackets.

The '?' character signals that the previous character or regular expression is optional. In other words, '?' signals zero or one instance of a character or regular expression.

To see how this would be used in a program, consider a text processor that regards a word as being a strings of alphabetic characters that may or may not be followed by a period. The following example does this, and encloses the recognized words in parentheses. Enter it into file **word.lex**:

```
%%
[a-zA-Z]+\.? printf ("%s)", yytext);
```

Generate and compile the program with the following commands:

```
lex word.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o word
```

Invoke the program by typing **word**, and test it the program with the following text:

```
These are words.
Question mark not included?
<ctrl-D>
```

The result is

```
(These) (are) (words.)
(Question) (mark) (not) (included)?
```

The question mark, like the * and + operators, can also follow another specification of a pattern. If you wanted to be able to end a sentence with a character other than a period, the following code will do the job for you:

```
[a-zA-Z]+[.?! ,]?
```

The characters

```
.?! ,
```

are optional.

The '+' and '*' operators may match many characters. If you wish to match a specific number of characters or patterns, follow the patterns with the repetition within braces { and }. For example

```
[0-9]{3}
```

matches a string of exactly three digits.

You can also specify a range of counts. To match from seven to nine occurrences of lower-case alphabetic characters, use:

```
[a-z]{7,9}
```

Choices and Grouping

To indicate alternate choices of characters or regular expressions, separate them in the regular expression with a vertical bar operator `|`. For example, if you wish to match either three decimal digits or the character `a`, use:

```
[0-9]{3}|a
```

Parentheses help to group the parts of the pattern that are separated by the vertical bar:

```
(abc)|(def)
```

This pattern will match either the string `abc` or the string `def`.

Matching Non-Graphic Characters

Non-special, graphic characters in patterns match themselves. Most non-graphic characters, such as space, tab, and control characters, cannot be matched directly. `lex` provides special sequences to match control characters. The following example removes tabs and blanks from the beginning and end of input lines. Type it into file `deblank.lex`:

```
%%  
[ \t]+\n    printf ("\n");  
\n[ \t]+    printf ("\n");
```

Generate and compile the program with the following commands:

```
lex deblank.lex  
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o deblank
```

Invoke the program by typing `deblank`, and test it by typing the following input:

```
begins with no space or tab  
begins with tab  
begins with three spaces  
<ctrl-D>
```

The result will be

```
begins with no space or tab  
begins with tab  
begins with three spaces
```

The special regular expression `\t` represents *tab*, and `\n` represents *newline*.

To match the backspace character, use `\b`. Form feed is matched by `\f`. To match an arbitrary character with a known octal value, use three octal digits after the backslash; for example,

\007

More Patterns

This section discusses more advanced capabilities of patterns.

Line Context

Like `ed`, `lex` patterns can include characters that represent the beginning and end of line. To match a line that contains exactly five alphabetic characters, type:

```
^[a-zA-Z]{5}$
```

The character `^` matches the beginning of the line, and `$` matches the end of the line.

Context Matching

A slash (virgule) `/` shows that a following context is necessary to match a string. For example, the following program matches the string `match` only if it is immediately followed by the string `ing`. Type it into file `match.lex`:

```
%%
match/ing printf ("%s", yytext);
```

To compile the program, type the following commands:

```
lex match.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o match
```

To invoke the program, type `match`; and test it by typing the following input:

```
Will this match?
This is a matching test.
<ctrl-D>
```

The result will be

```
Will this match?
This is a {match}ing test.
```

Notice that the string before the slash is matched. The program does not match the part that follows the slash, even though the string must be there for the first part to be matched. Thus, the regular expression that follows the slash may also be matched on its own. To see how this works, type the following into the file `match2.lex`:

```
%%
match/ing printf ("%s", yytext);
ing printf ("ed");
```

To compile the program, type the following commands:

```
lex match2.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o match2
```

To invoke the program, type **match2**; then test it by typing the following input:

```
Will this match?
This is a matching test.
You must now sing for your supper.
<ctrl-D>
```

The result will be

```
Will this match?
This is a {match}ed test.
You must now sed for your supper.
```

The context-string that follows the / may be a regular expression. The following example matches the whole-number portion of a decimal fraction. Type it into the file **wholept.lex**:

```
%%
"-"?[0-9]+/"[0-9]+    printf ("%s", yytext);
```

To compile the program, type the following commands:

```
lex wholept.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o wholept
```

Invoke the program by typing **wholept**; then type the following to test it:

```
123 12345 1234.567
<ctrl-D>
```

The result will be:

```
123 12345 (1234).567
```

As you can see, the part of the regular expression

```
"-"? 
```

matches an optional leading minus sign. Then

```
[0-9]+
```

matches a string of at least one decimal digit. Then, the following context must match the regular expression

```
". "[0-9]+
```

which matches the fractional part of the number. When it finds a number that matches, it prints the number's whole part enclosed in parentheses.

Macro Abbreviations

lex also provides a macro facility that can substantially simplify the writing of complex regular expressions.

A *macro* is a named body of text. A macro processor simply replaces the name of the macro with the text of the macro.

To illustrate, type following example into file `float.lex`. It recognizes integer and floating point constants according to the C format:

```
d [0-9]+
e [Ee][+-]?[0-9]+
%%
{d}\.      |
{d}\.{d}   |
\.{d}      |
{d}\.{e}   |
\.{d}{e}   |
{d}\.{d}{e} |
{d}{e}     |      printf ("F:[%s]", yytext);
```

lex replaces the macro name `e` with the code that matches a string of digits at least one digit long. It replaces the macro name `d` with code that matches the number's exponent. These two are invoked in the manner of

```
{d}
```

within a pattern. To compile the program, type the following commands:

```
lex float.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o float
```

Invoke the program by typing `float`, and then test it by typing the following text:

```
1 1. 1.2 1.e4 1e4
.1e4 e4 .1 . 0 1.2e3
<ctrl-D>
```

The result will be:

```
1 F:[1.] F:[1.2] F:[1.e4] F:[1e4]
F:[.1e4] e4 F:[.1] . 0 F:[1.2e3]
```

Context: Start Rules

Many tasks in lexical processing require the program to be aware of a token's context. lex lets you make processing conditional upon previously processed input. This is done by using **start conditions**.

Start conditions are named in the definitions section as follows:

```
%S name1 name2
```

where **name1** and **name2** are names of start conditions. These start conditions are then used by prefixing a pattern with the start condition's name enclosed in angle brackets. For example:

```
<name1>
```

For example, you can use one start condition to control the scanning of comments in a Pascal-like language. The start condition is set by the **lex** statement **BEGIN** when the beginning bracket of the comment is found. The comment is scanned for strings that begin with **\$** to signal compiler operation. To see how this works, type the following into the file **comment.lex**:

```
%S CMNT
%%
<CMNT>\${1er}      printf ("Option is %s.\n", yytext);
<CMNT>[^\\}];
<CMNT>\}           BEGIN 0;
\{                 BEGIN CMNT;
```

To compile, use the following commands:

```
lex comment.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o comment
```

Now, invoke the program by typing **comment**; and test it by typing the following input:

```
{This is a comment}
{This comment has options $l $e $r}
program
information
<ctrl-D>
```

The result will be:

```
Option is $l.
Option is $e.
Option is $r.

program
information
```

The context start condition is named following **BEGIN** in the action part of the rule. To return to the normal condition, use **0** as the context name.

Separate Contexts

If you wish to perform context-dependent processing that is more complex than that shown in the example above, you will find it convenient to use separate contexts.

The names of the contexts are defined in the definitions sections, after the definitions of any start conditions: For example:

```
%C name name ...
```

The lex function `yyswitch` switches to a new context.

The body of the context's rules is preceded in the rules section by:

```
%C name
```

To see how this works, type the following into file `pre.lex`. It is part of a program that recognizes the preprocessor statements in a C program:

```
%C PRE
%%
^#      yyswitch (PRE);
[^\#\n]+      printf ("[%s]", yytext);
%C PRE
include.+    |
define.+     {
              printf("{%s}", yytext);
              yyswitch(0);
              }
.+          {
              printf ("{??%s}", yytext);
              yyswitch (0);
              }
```

A `#` in column 1 signals the beginning of a preprocessor statement. Upon recognizing this condition, this program uses `yyswitch` to activate the context `PRE`.

Within this separate context, individual rules recognize different preprocessor statements; this example includes only two. Each of the rules prints the preprocessor line enclosed in braces `{ }`. In addition, the rules switch back to the original (and unnamed) context by the statement

```
yyswitch (0);
```

To compile and test this program, use the following commands:

```
lex pre.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o pre
pre <lex.yy.c
```

This example uses the function `yyswitch` to return to the original context at the end of each rule in the secondary context. Some applications require a return to the context

```
1    am
1    di
1    es
1    gr
1    hi
1    ig
2    is
1    ms
1    of
1    ra
1    st
1    te
1    th
```

yylex

lex places the actions you provide for the rules in your **lex** program into a C routine named **yylex**.

If you add variable declarations in the definitions section before the first **%%**, **yylex** can access them, as in the example **digram.lex**, shown above. You can also declare variables that are local to **yylex**, if you place the declarations after the rules section delimiter and before the first rule. A tab or space must precede the declaration.

The following program is a different version of **digram.lex**, called **digram2.lex**; it uses such a declaration.

```
        int digram [128] [128];
%%
        int t0, t1;
[a-z][a-z] {
            t0 = yytext [0];
            t1 = yytext [1];
            digram [t0] [t1]++;
            REJECT;
        }
%%
yywrap ()
{
    int i1, i2;
    for (i1 = 'a'; i1 <= 'z'; i1++)
        for (i2 = 'a'; i2 <= 'z'; i2++)
            if (digram [i1] [i2] != 0)
                printf ("%d\t%c%c\n",
                    digram [i1] [i2], i1, i2);
}
```

Header Section

You can insert additional code at the beginning of the generated program by including such code in the definitions section. An earlier example, `count.lex`, demonstrated how to do this:

```

        int count;
%%
    [ ^ \t\n]+    count++;
    [ \t\n]+      ;
%%
yywrap ()
{
    printf ("Number of tokens:%d \n ", count);
    return (1);
}

```

A tab or space character must precede the code you include.

If you wish to insert `include` or any other C preprocessor statement at the beginning of the program, however, a different technique must be used. This stems from the fact that the preprocessor statements must begin at the beginning of the line, and the blank or tab precludes this.

The alternative method to add code to the beginning is as follows:

```

%{
... code ...
%}

```

where the `%` symbols are at the beginning of the line.

Additional Routines

If your version of `yywrap` or any of the rules that you write need other routines, you can include code for them after a second `%%`. (This was where `yywrap` was shown in `digram.lex`.) If you wish to provide your own version of `input` or `output`, you must define it there.

Using lex With yacc

Although `lex` can handle many applications by itself, it is often used with the parser-generator `yacc`. For example, programming-language compilers often have parts generated by both `lex` and `yacc`.

Like `lex`, `yacc` is a program generator. Its programs can recognize input that is structured according to a grammar fed to the `yacc` program generator. In most instances, `yacc`-generated programs require *tokens* as input, instead of individual characters. In the context of a programming language, a token is a variable name or a special character (such as an operator). `lex` is often used with `yacc` because `lex` is especially well suited

for partitioning text input into tokens.

A **yacc**-generated program expects a token number as input from the routine **yylex**. **yacc** assigns a unique number, or constant definition, to each unique type of token, and expects **yylex** to return these numbers as input.

For your **lex** program to access these predefined constant definitions for token types, you must include the generated **lex** source in the **yacc** specification.

The following examples process very simple input, to illustrate how to assemble **lex**- and **yacc**-generated programs. To begin, type the following into the file **yacclex.yy**:

```
%token beginning midtok ending
%start simplistic
%%
simplistic :      beginning middle ending
              {printf ("recognized"); };
middle     :      midtok;
middle     :      middle midtok;
%%
```

When **yacc** processes this program, it produces the file **y.tab.h** that contains the token-name definitions. The following **lex** source reads **y.tab.h** to learn of the constant definitions that **yacc** generated; type it into file **yacclex.lex**:

```
{
#include "y.tab.h"
}
%%
("("      return (beginning);
")"      return (ending);
[a-zA-Z]  return (midtok);
```

The symbolic definition of the token names are **beginning**, **ending** and **midtok**.

To compile the programs, type the following commands:

```
yacc yacclex.yy
lex yacclex.lex
cc y.tab.c lex.yy.c -ly -ll -o yacclex
```

Type **yacclex** to invoke the new program; and test by typing the following:

```
(abcdef)
```

The result will be:

```
recognized
```


Summary

lex is a utility that generates lexical analyzers according to a set of specifications that you write. *Lexical analysis* means to read a mass of text, recognize strings within that mass, and react appropriately when each type of string is discovered. With **lex**, you can write programs to perform complex analysis of text simply by describing what analysis you want to perform, without worrying about the messy details of how that analysis is actually performed; thus, **lex** is a fine example of what is nowadays called a “fourth-generation language”.

lex is especially well suited to work with the parser-generator **yacc**. By using them together, you can efficiently build command processors and even entire computer languages.

Section 9:

Introduction to the m4 Macro Processor

m4 is a macro processor for the COHERENT system. It is a powerful and flexible text processing tool. You can tell it, with a great degree of generality, to search for macro names and replace them with other strings. Macros can also take arguments.

m4 is useful as a front end for the COHERENT assembler **as**, which has no built-in macro facility. It is also useful for higher-level languages like C, as well as for other applications that require replacement of text.

m4 also has powerful facilities for manipulating files, making decisions conditionally, selecting substrings, and performing arithmetic, so it is useful for processing forms.

The command

```
m4 [ file ... ]
```

invokes **m4**. **m4** reads each *file* in the order given on the command line; if no *file* is given, **m4** reads from the standard input. The *file* '-' also indicates the standard input; this allows you to perform interactive input while **m4** is processing files. **m4** reports any *file* that it cannot open, and eliminates it from the input stream.

m4 writes its output to the standard output stream. As with other COHERENT commands, the optional output redirection specification '>*outfile*' on the command line redirects the output into *outfile*.

Definitions and Syntax

m4 reads text one line at a time from its input stream. When it reads a line of text, it scans the line for a macro that you have defined. A legal macro name is a string of alphanumeric characters (letters, digits, underscore '_'), the first of which is not a digit. **m4** recognizes the macro name only if it is surrounded by nonalphanumeric characters (i.e., spaces or newline characters) on both sides.

When **m4** finds a macro, it removes it from the input stream and replaces it with its definition. It then writes the resulting modified text (called *replacement text*), onto the input stream. **m4** then reads another line from the input stream, and continues proces-

sing.

Text that is contained within single quotation marks is quoted (i.e., is contained between a grave mark ‘ on the left and an apostrophe ’ on the right). All other text is *unquoted*. **m4** searches only unquoted text for macros.

A *macro call* can be either a macro or a macro immediately followed by a set of arguments:

```
macroname(arg1, ..., argn)
```

A set of arguments must start with a left parenthesis that follows the macro immediately (i.e., no space can come between the macro and the left parenthesis). The entire argument set must be enclosed by balanced, unquoted parentheses: parentheses may appear within the text of an argument, but they must always come in balanced pairs. A single left or right parenthesis may be passed by quoting it, e.g. ‘(’ or ‘)’.

Arguments are separated commas that are both not inside single quotes or inside an inner set of unquoted parentheses. **m4** strips from each argument all leading unquoted spaces, tabs, and newlines. It processes the text of each argument in the same manner that it processes ordinary text; that is, it removes, evaluates, and replaces any recognized macro calls *before* it stores the argument text for possible use within the replacement text. If you wish to pass a macro name or an entire macro call as an argument, it must be quoted. **m4** stores the values of the first nine arguments for possible use in the replacement text. It processes arguments after the ninth, but throws away the results.

m4 does not search quoted text for macros. Instead, it removes the quotation marks and copies the text to the standard output unchanged. Quotes can be nested; that is, quoted text can contain other blocks of quoted text. **m4** removes only the outermost level of quotation marks each time it reads a piece of quoted text. This aids in delaying macro expansion in text until the second (or later) time the text is read by **m4**.

m4 includes numerous predefined macros, which perform various functions. The remainder of this document describes the predefined macros in detail. The final section is a summary, which contains an alphabetized list and brief description of each predefined macro.

Defining Macros

The macro

```
define('name', 'definition')
```

defines a macro *name* and its replacement text *definition*. **m4** replaces every subsequent unquoted occurrence of *name* with *definition*, as described above. For example, the **m4** input

```
define('her', 'COHERENT')
To know, know, know her
Is to love, love, love her ...
```

produces the output

To know, know, know COHERENT
Is to love, love, love COHERENT...

name should usually be quoted. If it is not quoted and it is being redefined, **m4** sees its old *definition* as the first argument to **define**, which will not have the intended effect. Similarly, *definition* should be quoted if the macro names that occur in it should not be replaced.

Any legal macro name may be the first argument of a **define**. If you redefine a predefined macro, its original function is lost and cannot be recovered.

As noted above, **m4** recognizes a macro name only if it is surrounded by non-alphanumeric characters. For example,

```
define('her', 'COHERENT')
Coherent software is reliable software.
```

produces the output

```
Coherent software is reliable software.
```

m4 does not recognize the characters **her** in the word **Coherent** as a macro name.

The value of the **define** macro is the null or empty string (the string which contains no characters). In other words, **m4** puts nothing (the null string) back on its input stream when it processes a **define** call.

Like predefined macros, user-defined macros may take arguments. **m4** replaces the string $\$n$ in the macro definition with the value of the n th argument, where n is a digit (1 to 9). It replaces $\$0$ with the macro name. If the argument set contains fewer than n arguments, **m4** replaces $\$n$ with the null string. **m4** uses functional notation to specify argument sets. Unlike a normal function, however, an **m4** macro does not require a fixed number of arguments. The same macro may be called with or without an argument set, or with argument sets containing different numbers of arguments.

The following macro concatenates its arguments:

```
define('cat', '$1$2$3$4$5$6$7$8$9')
```

Then

```
cat(one, 'two', 'three', 'four, four ',
    five(also, ), , seven)
```

becomes

```
onetwo'three'four, four five(also,)seven
```

A more complex definition is:

```
define('comma', '$0 (which looks like ', ')')
```

This turns each subsequent unquoted occurrence of

```
comma
```

into

comma (which looks like ',')

Two sets of quotation marks around the replacement text are necessary. When `m4` reads this call to macro `define`, the resultant argument text is:

```
comma
```

for the *name* and

```
'$0 (which looks like ',')
```

for the *definition*. When `m4` sees the text

```
comma that is not quoted
```

it evaluates and replaces the now-defined macro name `comma` to produce the text

```
'comma (which looks like ',')' that is not quoted
```

on the *input* stream. Because `comma` appears inside a set of quotation marks, `m4` does not treat it as a macro name. For the same reason, the string `'` also passes through unmodified. The final output is:

```
comma (which looks like ',') that is not quoted
```

When the predefined macro `dumpdef` is used without arguments, it returns the names and definitions of all defined macros. For each macro, it returns its quoted name, a tab character, and then its quoted definition; no definition is given for a predefined macro. When used with arguments,

```
dumpdef(name)
```

returns the quoted definition of each macro name that appears as an argument.

The predefined macro

```
undefine('name')
```

removes a macro definition. As noted for `define` above, the argument must be quoted to have the desired effect. `undefine` ignores arguments which are not defined macro names. The value of the `undefine` call is the null string. If a predefined macro is undefined, its original function cannot be recovered.

Input Control

The predefined macro `changequote` changes the quote characters. For example:

```
changequote( { , } )
```

makes the quote characters the left and right braces. It also removes the effect of the previously defined quotation characters. Missing arguments default to `'` for open quotation and `'` for close quotation. Thus, `changequote` without arguments restores the original quote characters `'` and `'`. If the arguments are identical, the nesting ability of quotation marks is temporarily lost. Instead, the first instance of the new quote character turns on quoting and the next instance turns off quoting. The value of the `changequote` call is the null string.

The predefined macro **dnl** (delete to newline) “eats” all characters from the input stream up to and including the next newline and returns the null string. It is particularly useful in a string of **define** macro calls. Although **m4** replaces each **define** by the null string, newlines often separate macro definitions, and **m4** copies the newlines to the output stream unchanged. Two ways of using **dnl** are:

```
define(this, that)dnl
define(something, else)dnl
```

```
dnl(define(this, that), define(something, else))
```

The first examples use **dnl** without arguments. The final example uses **dnl** with an argument set, which **m4** processes (performing each **define**) and subsequently ignores. The following section describes an alternative (and generally preferable) method of eliminating extraneous newlines in a sequence of **define** calls.

m4 includes two decision-making macros. The predefined macros with the form above, this call of **ifdef** compares *arg1* and *arg2*, and returns *arg3* if they are equal. Otherwise, it compares *arg4* and *arg5*. It returns *arg6* if they are equal, *arg7* otherwise. If more than seven arguments are present and *arg4* and *arg5* are not equal, **ifelse** compares *arg7* and *arg8*. It returns *arg9* if they are equal and the null string otherwise.

In addition to each *file* specified in the command line, any other accessible file may be included in the input stream with the predefined macro

```
include(file)
```

m4 replaces this macro call on the input stream with the entire contents of the specified *file*. If *file* cannot be accessed, **include** causes a fatal error; **m4** prints an error message and exits. The alternative predefined macro

```
sinclude(file)
```

functions exactly like **include**, except that it does not print an error message and stop processing if *file* is inaccessible.

Output Control

m4 maintains ten output streams, numbered zero through nine. Stream 0 is the standard output, where **m4** normally directs its output. Streams 1 through 9 are temporary files. The predefined macro

```
divert(n)
```

diverts output away from stream 0, appending it instead to stream *n*. Any *n* outside the range 0 to 9 causes output to be thrown away until the next **divert** call. **divert** without any arguments or with a nonnumeric argument is equivalent to **divert(0)**. The value of a **divert** call is the null string.

The preceding section described the use of **dnl** to eliminate extraneous newlines on the output stream when processing a sequence of **define** calls. A more readable method of eliminating the newlines is to precede the definitions with **divert(-1)** and follow them with **divert**. **m4** then diverts the extraneous newlines to the nonexistent stream -1.

The predefined macro

```
undivert(streams)
```

fetches text diverted to one or more temporary streams. It appends the text from the specified *streams* in the given order to the *current* output stream. **m4** does not allow diverted text to be undiverted back to the same stream. **undivert** with no arguments undiverts all diversions in numerical order. The value of **undivert** is the null string; undiverted text is *not* scanned for macro calls, but is simply moved from one place to another. **m4** automatically undiverts all diversions in numerical order to the standard output (stream 0) at the end of processing.

The predefined macro **divnum** returns the current diversion number.

The predefined macro

```
errprint(message)
```

sends the given *message* to the standard error stream. The value of **errprint** is the null string.

String Manipulation

The predefined macro

```
substr(string, start, count)
```

returns a substring of a string of characters. The first argument *string* can be anything. The second argument *start* is a number giving the starting position of the desired substring in *string*. Position 0 is the leftmost character of *string*, position 1 is the next character to the right, and so on. If *start* is negative, the orientation switches to the right. Position -1 is the rightmost character of *string*, position -2 is the character to its left, and so on. The third argument *count* specifies the length and direction of the substring. Zero returns the null string. A positive *count* returns a substring consisting of the character addressed by *start* and *count*-1 characters to the right of it. A negative number does the same thing, but to the left. If *count* is omitted, it is assumed to be of the same sign as *start* and large enough to extend to the end of *string* in that direction. If *start* is omitted, it is assumed to be 0 if *count* is positive or omitted, or -1 if *count* is negative. For example:

```
define('alpha', 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxy')
substr(alpha, , )
```

returns

```
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxy
```

Here both *start* and *count* are omitted and are therefore assumed to be 0 and 26, respectively.

```
substr(alpha, 0, 6)
substr(alpha, , 6)
```

both return


```
abcdef
```

Similarly,

```
substr(alpha, , -6)
substr(alpha, 21, )
```

both return

```
uvwxyz
```

Finally,

```
substr(alpha, -6, )
substr(alpha, 0, 21)
```

both return

```
abcdefghijklmnopqrstu
```

The predefined macro

```
translit(string, characters, replacements)
```

transliterates single characters within a string. It returns *string* with every occurrence of a character specified in *characters* replaced with the corresponding character from *replacements*. If there is no corresponding character, **translit** simply deletes the character. For example:

```
translit(alpha, aeiouy, *+==/)
```

returns

```
*bcd+fgH-jklmn=pqrst/vwxz
```

Numeric Manipulation

m4 can simulate variables typical of most programming languages by using **define** as the assignment operator. Whenever the defined macro name appears unquoted, **m4** immediately replaces it by its numeric value.

The predefined macros **incr** and **decr** return their argument incremented or decremented by 1. Thus,

```
define('x', 1234)
incr(x)
```

returns

```
1235
```

incr and **decr** assume an argument which is omitted or not a valid number to be 0.

More generally, the predefined macro

eval(*expression*)

evaluates an integer-value arithmetic *expression* and returns the resulting value. The operators available, in order of decreasing precedence, are:

()	Parentheses for grouping
+ -	Unary plus, negation
^ **	Exponentiation
* / %	Multiplication, division, modulus
+ -	Addition, subtraction
> < >= <= == !=	Comparisons
!	Logical negation
&& &	Logical and
||	Logical or

The comparisons and logical operators return either 0 (false) or 1 (true). **eval** performs all arithmetic in **long** integers. **eval** reports an error if its argument is not a well-formed expression.

The predefined macro

len(*string*)

returns a numeric value corresponding to the length of *string*.

The predefined macro

index(*string*, *pattern*)

returns a numeric value corresponding to the first position where *pattern* appears in *string*. If it does not appear, **index** returns -1. Both *pattern* and *string* may be arbitrary strings of any length.

The following example defines a macro **repeat** that repeats its first argument the number of times specified by its second argument.

```
define('repeat',
      'ifelse(eval($2<=0),1,, 'repeat($1,decr($2) )'$1)')
```

The definition is recursive; that is, **repeat** calls itself within its own definition. The entire definition is quoted to defer the evaluation of **ifelse** from when **m4** encounters the definition to when it encounters a **repeat** macro call. Similarly, the recursive **repeat** call is quoted to defer its evaluation within the **ifelse**. **eval** checks if the first argument is less than or equal to 0; if so, it returns 1 (true) and **ifelse** returns the null string. Otherwise, **decr** decrements the count, so each successive recursive call has a smaller second argument, and each call appends a copy of the first argument to the previous result. For example:

```
repeat('Ho! ',3)
```

produces

Ho! Ho! Ho!

COHERENT System Interface

The predefined macro

```
maketemp(string)
```

creates a unique file name for a temporary file. *string* is a six-character string that is normally initialized to **XXXXXX**; **mktemp** replaces all of the **Xs** with a pattern of six numerals that form a unique file name in the directory where temporary files are being written. It is the same as the C library routine **mktemp**. It returns the null string if its argument is less than six characters long.

The predefined macro

```
syscmd(command)
```

performs the given COHERENT *command* and returns the null string. It is the same as the C library routine **system**.

A common use of **syscmd** is to create a file which **m4** subsequently reads with an **include**. For example, to get the output from the COHERENT **date** command:

```
define('tempfile', maketemp(/tmp/m4XXXXXX))
define('get_date',
      'syscmd(date >tempfile)''include(tempfile)')
```

In subsequent input, **m4** replaces each occurrence of **get_date** with the system date information. The definition of **tempfile** is unquoted, so **m4** executes the **maketemp** call only once (when it processes the **define**), and it creates only one temporary file. On the other hand, the definition of **getdate** is quoted, so **m4** executes **syscmd** and **include** to get the current time and date each time it processes a **getdate** call. The temporary file should be removed with

```
syscmd(rm tempfile)
```

at the end of the **m4** program.

The following example is more complex. It defines a macro **save** which appends a macro definition to a file.

```
define('save', 'syscmd('cat>>$2 <<\#
define('$1', 'dumpdef('$1)')
#
')')
```

The arguments to **define** are the *name*

```
save
```

and the *definition*

```
syscmd('cat >>$2 <<\#  
define('$1', 'dumpdef('$1)')  
#  
)
```

A typical call of this macro is:

```
save('sample', 'defs.m4')
```

which saves the macro definition of `sample` in a COHERENT file `defs.m4` containing macro definitions. When `m4` processes this call, the argument of `syscmd` becomes

```
cat >>defs.m4 <<\#  
define('sample',
```

followed by the definition of `sample` returned by `dumpdef`, followed by

```
)  
#
```

Then `syscmd` executes the COHERENT `cat` command to append the here document delimited by `#` to the macro definition file `defs.m4`. The leading `#` delimiter of the here document is quoted with `\` to prevent interpretation by the COHERENT shell. Because `save` uses the character `#` to delimit the here document, it does not work correctly for macro definitions containing `#`. For example,

```
save('save', 'defs.m4')
```

does not work as expected.

Errors

`m4` reports all errors to the standard error stream. An error produces a line of the form

```
m4: line: message
```

where *line* is a decimal line number and *message* describes the error. For example, the error message

```
m4: 7: illegal macro name: ab*c
```

indicates an attempt to `define` a macro with the illegal macro name `ab*c` in line 7 of the input stream.

The following error messages may occur:

```
cannot open file
eval: invalid expression
eval: missing or unknown operator
eval: missing value
illegal macro name: name
out of space
/tmp open error
unexpected EOF
```

The *file* or *name* will be the file name or macro name which caused the error, or {NULL} if the required argument is omitted.

m4 does not recognize (and therefore does not report) the most common of m4 errors, namely invoking recursive macro definitions that never terminate. A simple example is the definition

```
define('recursive', 'recursive')
```

When m4 subsequently encounters a call of `recursive` in its input stream, it replaces it on the input stream with its definition. Because the definition is another call to `recursive`, m4 replaces it in turn with its definition; the process never terminates. More complicated examples may involve many macro definitions and may be difficult to discover. If m4 enters an endless loop, you can terminate it from the keyboard by typing the interrupt character (normally <ctrl-C>) or the kill character (normally <ctrl-\>). If m4 enters an endless loop while being run in the background, you can terminate it with the `kill` command.

For More Information

The Lexicon entry for m4 gives a summary of its functions and options.

Section 10:

The make Programming Discipline

make is a utility that relieves you of the drudgery of building a complex C program.

How Does make Work?

To understand how **make** works, it is first necessary to understand how a C program is built: how COHERENT takes you from the C source code that you write to the executable program that you can run on your computer.

The file of C source code that you write is called a *source module*. When COHERENT compiles a source module, it uses the C code in the source module, plus the code in the header files that the code calls to produce an *object module*. This object module is *not* executable by itself. To create an *executable file*, the object module generated from your source module must be handed to a linker, which links the code in the object module with the appropriate library routines that the object module calls, and adds the appropriate C runtime startup routine.

For example, consider the following C program, called **hello.c**:

```
main()
{
    printf("Hello, world\n");
}
```

When COHERENT compiles the file that contains C code shown above, it generates an object module called **hello.o**. This object module is not executable because it does not contain the code to execute the function **printf**; that code is contained in a library. To create an executable program, you must hand **hello.o** to the linker **ld**, which copies the code for **printf** from a library and into your program, adds the appropriate C runtime startup routine, and writes the executable file called **hello**. This third file, **hello**, is what you can execute on your computer.

The term *dependency* describes the relationship of executable file to object module to source module. The executable program *depends* on the object module, the library, and the C runtime startup. The object module, in turn, depends on the source module and its header files (if any).

A program like **hello** has a simple set of dependencies: the executable file is built from one object module, which in turn is compiled from one source module. If you changed the source module **hello.c**, creating an updated version of **hello** would be easy: you would simply compile **hello.c** to create **hello.o**, which you would link with the library and the runtime startup to create **hello**. COHERENT, in fact, does this for you automatically: all you need to do is type

```
cc hello.c
```

and COHERENT takes care of everything.

On the other hand, the dependencies of a large program can be very complex. For example, the executable file for the MicroEMACS screen editor is built from several dozen object modules, each of which is compiled from a source module plus one or more header files. Updating a program as large as MicroEMACS, even when you change only one source module, can be quite difficult. To rebuild its executable file by hand, you must remember the names of all of the source modules used, compile them, and link them into the executable file. Needless to say, it is very inefficient to recompile several dozen object modules to create an executable when you have changed only one of them.

make automatically rebuilds large programs for you. You prepare a file, called a **makefile**, that describes your program's chain of dependencies. **make** then reads your **makefile**, checks to see which source modules have been updated, recompiles only the ones that have been changed, and then relinks all of the object modules to create a new executable file. **make** both saves you time, because it recompiles only the source modules that have changed, and spares you the drudgery of rebuilding your large program by hand.

Try make

The following example shows how easy it is to use **make**.

To begin, **make** examines the time and date that COHERENT has stamped on each source file and object module. When you edit a source module, COHERENT marks it with the time at which you edited it. Thus, if a source module has a time that is *later* than that of its corresponding object module, then **make** knows that the source module was changed since the object module was last compiled and it will compile a new object module from the altered source module. If you do not reset the time on your system whenever you reboot, *every time*, some files will not have the correct date and time and **make** cannot work correctly.

To see how **make** works, try compiling a program called **factor**. It is built from the following files:


```
atod.c
factor.c
makefile
```

All three are included with your copy of COHERENT.

Use the `cd` command to shift into directory `/usr/src/sample`.

Now, type `make`. `make` will begin by reading `makefile`, which describes all of `factor`'s dependencies. It will then use the `makefile` description to create `factor`. The following will appear on your screen:

```
cc -c factor.c
cc -c atod.c
cc -f -o factor factor.o atod.o -lm
```

Each of these messages describes an action that `make` has performed. The first shows that `make` is compiling `factor.c`, the second shows that it is compiling `atod.c`, and the third shows that it is linking the compiled object modules `atod.o` and `factor.o` to create the executable file `factor`.

When `make` has finished, the COHERENT prompt will return. To see how your newly compiled program works, type

```
factor 100
```

`factor` will calculate the prime factors of its argument `100`, and print them on the screen.

To see what happens if you try to re-make your file, type `make` again. `make` will run quietly for a moment, and then exit. `make` checked the dates and times of the object modules and their corresponding source modules and saw that the object modules had a time later than that of the source modules. Because no source module changed, there was no need to recompile an object module or relink the executable file, so `make` quietly exited.

To see what happens when one of the source modules changes, try the following. Use the MicroEMACS screen editor to open the file `factor.c` for editing. Insert the following line into the comments at the top, immediately following the `/*`:

```
* This comment is for test purposes only.
```

Now exit. Type `make` once again. This time, you will see the following on your screen:

```
cc -O -c factor.c
cc -O -f -o factor factor.o atod.o -lm
```

Because you altered the source module `factor.c`, its time was later than that of its corresponding object module, `factor.o`. When `make` compared the times of `factor.c` and `factor.o`, it noted that `factor.c` had been altered. It then recompiled `factor.c` and relinked `factor.o` and `atod.o` to re-create the executable file `factor`. `make` did not touch the source module `atod.c` because `atod.c` had not been changed since the last time it was compiled.

As you can see, **make** greatly simplifies the construction of a C program that uses more than one source module.

Essential make

Although **make** is a powerful program, its basic features are easy to master. This section will show you how to construct elementary **make** scripts.

The makefile

When you invoke **make**, it searches the directories named in the environmental variable **PATH** for a file called **makefile**. As noted earlier, the **makefile** is a text file that describes a C program's dependencies. It also describes the type of program you wish to build, and the commands for building it.

A **makefile** has three basic parts.

First, the **makefile** describes the executable file's dependencies. That is, it lists the object modules needed to create the executable file. The name of the executable file is always followed by a colon ':' and then by the names of files from which the target file is generated.

For example, if the program **feud** is built from the object modules **hatfield.o** and **mccoy.o**, you would type:

```
feud: hatfield.o mccoy.o
```

If the files **hatfield.o** and **mccoy.o** do not exist, **make** knows to create them from the source modules **hatfield.c** and **mccoy.c**.

Second, the **makefile** holds one or more *command* lines. The command line gives the command to compile the program in question. The only difference between a **makefile** command line and an ordinary **cc** command is that a **makefile** command line *must* begin with a space or a tab character.

For example, the **makefile** to generate the program **feud** must contain the following command line:

```
cc -o feud hatfield.o mccoy.o
```

For a detailed description of the **cc** command and its options, refer to the entry for **cc** in the Lexicon.

Third, the **makefile** lists all of the header files that your program uses. These are given so that **make** can check if they were modified since your program was last compiled. For example, if the program **hatfield.c** used the header file **shotgun.h** and **mccoy.c** used the header files **rifle.h** and **pistol.h**, the **makefile** to generate **feud** would include the following lines:

```
hatfield.o: shotgun.h
mccoy.o: rifle.h pistol.h
```

Thus, the entire **makefile** to generate the program **feud** is as follows:

```

feud: hatfield.o mccoys.o
      cc -o feud hatfield.o mccoys.o

hatfield.o: shotgun.h
mccoys.o: rifle.h pistol.h

```

A **makefile** may also contain *macro definitions* and *comments*. These are described below.

Building a Simple makefile

The program **factor** is built from two source modules, **factor.c** and **atod.c**. No header files are used. The **makefile** contains the following two lines:

```

factor: factor.o atod.o
      cc -f -o factor factor.o atod.o -lm

```

The first line describes the dependency for the executable file **factor** by naming the two object modules needed to build it. The second line gives the command needed to build **factor**. The option **-lm** at the end of the command line tells **cc** that this program needs the mathematics library **libm** when the program is linked. No header file dependencies are described because these programs use no special header files. (Header files are described by the **#include** preprocessor instruction.)

Comments and Macros

You can embed comments within a **makefile**. A *comment* is a line of text that is ignored; this lets you "document" the file, so that whoever reads it will now know what it is for. **make** ignores all lines that begin with a pound sign '#'. For example, you may wish to include the following information in your **makefile** for **factor**:

```

# This makefile generates the program "factor".
# "factor" consists of the source modules "factor.c" and
# "atod.c". It uses the standard mathematics library
# "libm", but it requires no special header files.
# "-f" lets you use printf for floating-point numbers.

```

```

factor: factor.o atod.o
      cc -f -o factor factor.o atod.o -lm

```

Anyone who reads this file will know immediately what it is for by looking at the comments.

make also lets you define macros within your **makefile**. A *macro* is a symbol that represents a string of text. Usually, a macro is defined at the beginning of the **makefile** using a *macro definition statement*. This statement uses the following syntax:

```

SYMBOL = string of text

```

Thereafter, when you use the symbol in your **makefile**, it must begin with a dollar sign '\$' and be enclosed within parentheses.

Macros eliminate the chore of retyping long strings of file names. For example, with the **makefile** for the program **factor**, you may wish to use a macro to substitute for the names of the object modules out of which it is built. This is done as follows:

```
# This makefile generates the program "factor".
# "factor" consists of the source modules "factor.c" and
# "atod.c". It uses the standard mathematics library
# "libm", but it requires no special header files.
# "-f" lets you use printf for floating-point numbers.
```

```
OBJ = factor.o atod.o
factor: $(OBJ)
    cc -o factor $(OBJ) -lm
```

The macro **OBJ** is used in this **makefile**. If you use a macro that has not been defined, **make** substitutes an empty string for it. The use of a macro makes sense when generating large files out of a dozen or more source modules. You avoid retyping the source module names, and potential errors are avoided.

Setting the Time

As noted above, **make** checks to see which source modules have been modified before it regenerates your C program. This is done to avoid wasteful recompiling of source modules that have not been updated.

make determines that a source module has been altered by comparing its date against that of the target program. For example, if the object module **factor.o** was generated on March 16, 1987, 10:52:47 A.M., and the source module **factor.c** was modified on March 20, 1987, at 11:19:06 A.M., **make** will know that **factor.c** needs to be recompiled because it is *younger* than **factor.o**.

Building a Large Program

As shown earlier, **make** can ease the task of generating a large program. The following is the **makefile** used to generate the screen editor **MicroEMACS**:

```
# makefile for "MicroEMACS"

CFLAGS = -O
LFLAGS = /usr/lib/libterm.a
OBJ=ansi.o basic.o buffer.o display.o file.o \
    fileio.o line.o main.o random.o region.o \
    search.o spawn.o termio.o vt52.o window.o \
    word.o tcap.o

me: $(OBJ)
    cc -o me $(OBJ) $(LFLAGS)

$(OBJ):    ed.h
```

The first line is commentary that describes the file.

The next five lines define macros that are used on the target and command line. The first macros will be discussed in the following section. The second macro substitutes for the name of a special library that is needed to create this program. The third macro, which is three lines long, stands for the names of the source modules that produce MicroEMACS. A backslash '\ ' must be used to tell **make** that the definition is carried over onto the next line.

The next line names the target file (**me**) and the files used to construct it, here represented by the macro **OBJ**.

Next comes the command line, which gives the compilation to be performed. This line *must* begin with a space or a tab.

The last line lists the header file **ed.h**, which is required by all of the files used to generate MicroEMACS.

Command Line Options

Although **make** is controlled by your **makefile**, you can also control **make** by using command line options. These allow you to alter **make's** activity without having to edit your **makefile**.

Options must follow the command name on the command line and begin with a hyphen, '-', using the following format. The square brackets merely indicate that you can select any of these options; do *not* type the brackets when you use the **make** command:

```
make [ -dinprst ] [ -f filename ]
```

Each option is described below.

-d (debug) **make** describes all of its decisions. You can use this to debug your **makefile**.

-f filename

(file) option tells **make** that its commands are in a file other than **makefile**. For example, the command

```
make -f smith
```

tells **make** to use the file **smith** rather than **makefile**. If you do not use this option, **make** searches the directories named in the environmental variable **PATH**, and then the current directory for a file entitled **makefile** or **Makefile** to execute.

-i (ignore errors) **make** ignores error returns from commands and continues processing. Normally, **make** exits if a command returns an error status.

-n (no execution) **make** tests dependencies and modification times but does not execute commands. This option is especially helpful when constructing or debugging a **makefile**.

- p (print) **make** prints all macro definitions and target descriptions.
- r (rules) **make** does not use the default macros and commands from `/usr/lib/makemacros` and `/usr/lib/makeactions`. These files will be described below.
- s (silent) **make** does not print each command line as it is executed.
- t (touch) **make** changes the modification time of each executable file and object module to the current time. This suppresses recreation of the executable file, and recompilation of the object modules. Although this option is used typically after a purely cosmetic change to a source module or after adding a definition to a header file, it must be used with great caution.

Other Command Line Features

In addition to the options listed above, you may include other information on your command line.

First, you can define macros on the command line. A macro definition must *follow* any command line options. Arguments, including spaces, must be surrounded by quotation marks, as spaces are significant to the shell. For example, the command line

```
make -n -f smith "OPT=-DTEST"
```

tells **make** to run in the *no execution* mode, reading the file **smith** instead of **makefile**, and defining the macro **OPT** to mean **-DTEST**.

The ability to define macros on the command line means that you can create a **makefile** using macros that are not yet defined; this greatly increases **make's** flexibility and makes it even more helpful in creating and debugging large programs. In the above example, you can define a command line as follows:

```
cc $(OPT) example.c
```

When you define the macro **OPT** on the command line, then the program is compiled using the **-DTEST** option, which defines the preprocessor variable **TEST**.

Another command-line feature is the ability to change the name of the *target file* on the command line. Normally, the target file is the executable file that you wish to create, although, as will be seen, it does not have to be. As will be discussed below, a **makefile** can name more than one target file. **make** normally assumes that the target is the first target file named in **makefile**. However, the command line may name one or more target files at the end of the line, after any options and any macro definitions.

To see how this works, recall the program **factor** described above. **factor** is generated out of the source modules **factor.c** and **atod.c**. The command

```
make atod.o
```

with the **makefile** outlined above would produce the following **cc** command line:

```
cc -c atod.c
```

if the object module **atod.o** does not exist or is outdated. Here, **make** compiles **atod.c**

to create the target specified in the **make** command line, that is, **atod.o**, but it does not create **factor**. This feature allows you to apply your **makefile** to only a portion of your program.

The use of special, or *alternative*, target files is discussed below.

Advanced make

This section describes some of **make**'s advanced features. For most of your work, you will not need these features; however, if you create an extremely complex program, you will find them most helpful.

Default Rules

The operation of **make** is governed by a set of *default rules*. These rules were designed to simplify the compilation of a typical program; however, unusual tasks may require that you bypass or alter the default rules.

To begin, **make** uses information from the files `/usr/lib/makemacros` and `/usr/lib/makeactions` to define default macros and compilation commands. **make** uses the commands in **makemacros** and **makeactions** whenever the **makefile** specifies no explicit regeneration commands. The command line option `-r` tells **make** not to use the macros and actions defined in **makemacros** and **makeactions**.

As shown in earlier examples, **make** knows by default to generate the object module **atod.o** from the source module **atod.c** with the command

```
cc -c atod.c
```

The macro **.SUFFIXES** defines the suffixes **make** knows about by default. Its definition in **makemacros** includes both the `.o` and `.c` suffixes.

make's files **makemacros** and **makeactions** use pre-defined macros to increase their scope and flexibility. These are as follows:

- <** This stands for the name of the file or files that cause the action of a default rule. For example, if you altered the file **atod.c** and then invoked **make** to rebuild the executable file **factor**, **<** would then stand for **atod.c**.
- *** This stands for the name of the target of a default rule with its suffix removed. If it had been used in the above example, ***** would have stood for **atod**.
< and ***** work *only* with default rules; these macros will not work in a **makefile**.
- ?** This stands for the names of the files that cause the action and that are younger than the target file.
- @** This stands for the target name.

You can use the macros **?** and **@** in a **makefile**. For example, the following rule updates the archive **libx.a** with the objects defined by macro **\$(OBJ)** that are out of date:

```
libx.a:    $(OBJ)
          ar rv libx.a $?
```

makemacros also contains default commands that describe how to build additional kinds of files:

- **AS** and **ASFLAGS** call the *assembler* to assemble **.o** files out of source modules written in assembly language rather than C.
- **YACC** and **YFLAGS** call *yacc* to build **.o** or **.c** files from **.y** files.
- **LEX** and **LFLAGS** call *lex* to build **.o** or **.c** files from **.l** files.

You can change the default rules of **make** by changing them in **makeactions** and changing the definition of any of the macros as given in **makemacros**.

Double-Colon Target Lines

An alternative form of target line simplifies the task of maintaining archives. This form uses the double colon “::” instead of a single colon “:” to separate the name of the target from those of the files on which it depends.

A target name can appear on only one single-colon target line, whereas it can appear on several double-colon target lines. The advantage of using the double-colon target lines is that **make** will remake the target by executing the commands (or its default commands) for the *first* such target line for which the target is older than a file on which it depends.

For example, for the program **factor** described earlier, assume that two versions of the source modules **factor.c** and **atod.c** exist: **factora.c** plus **atoda.c**, and **factorb.c** plus **atodb.c**. The **makefile** would appear as follows:

```
OBJ1 = factora.o atoda.o
OBJ2 = factorb.o atodb.o

factor:: $(OBJ1)
        cc -c $(OBJ1) -lm

factor:: $(OBJ2)
        cc -c $(OBJ2) -lm
```

This **makefile** tells **make** to do the following: (1) Check if either **factora.o** or **atoda.o** is younger than **factor**. (2) If either one is, regenerate **factor** using this version of these files. (3) If neither **factora.o** nor **atoda.o** is younger than **factor**, then check to see if either **factorb.o** or **atodb.o** is younger than **factor**. (4) If either of them is, then regenerate **factor** using the youngest version of these files.

This technique allows you to maintain multiple versions of source files in the same directory and selectively recompile the most recently updated version without having to edit your **makefile** or otherwise trick the system.

You cannot target a file in both a single-colon and a double-colon target line.

Alternative Uses

make is a program that helps you construct complex things from a number of simpler things.

make usually is used to build complex C programs: the executable file is made from object modules, which are made from source modules and header files. However, **make** can be used to create any type of file that is constructed from one or more source modules. For example, an accountant can use **make** to generate monthly reports from daily inventories: all the accountant has to do is prepare a **makefile** that describes the dependencies (that is, the name of the monthly report they wish to create and the names of the daily inventories from which it is created), and the command required to generate the monthly report. Thereafter, to recreate the report, all the accountant has to do to generate a monthly report is type **make**.

In another example, the **makefile** can trigger program maintenance commands. For example, the target name **backup** might define commands to copy source modules to another directory; typing **make backup** saves a copy of the source modules. Similar uses include removing temporary files, building archives, executing test suites, and printing listings. A **makefile** is a convenient place to keep all the commands used to maintain a program.

The following example shows a **makefile** that defines two special target files, **printall** and **printnew**, to be used with the source files for the program **factor**.

```
# This makefile generates the program "factor".
# "factor" consists of the source modules "factor.c" and
# "atod.c". It uses the standard mathematics library
# libm, but it requires no special header files.

OBJ = factor.o atod.o
SRC = factor.c atod.c

factor: $(OBJ)
    cc -o factor $(OBJ) -lm

# program to print all the updated source modules
# used to generate the program "factor"

printall:
    pr $(SRC) | lpr
    >printnew

printnew: $(SRC)
    pr $? | lpr
    >printnew
```

In this instance, typing the command

```
make printall
```

forces **make** to generate the target **printall** rather than the target **factor**, which is the default as it appears first in the **makefile**. The **pr** and **lpr** commands are then used to print a listing of all files defined by **SRC**. The macro **OBJ** cannot be used with these commands because it would trigger the printing of the object files, which would not be of much use. It also creates an empty file **prnew**. This new file serves only to record the time the listing is printed. This tactic is performed in order to record the time that the listing was last generated so that **make** will know what files have been updated when you next use **printnew**.

Typing the command

```
make printnew
```

forces **make** to generate the target **printnew** rather than the default target **factor**. **printnew** prints only the files named in the macro **SRC** that have changed since any files were last printed.

Special Targets

A few target names have special meanings to **make**. The name of each special target begins with '.' and contains upper-case letters.

The target name **.DEFAULT** defines the default commands **make** uses if it cannot find any other way to build a target. The special target **.IGNORE** in a **makefile** has the same effect as the **-i** command line option. Similarly, **.SILENT** has the same effect as the **-s** command line option.

Errors

make prints "*command* exited with status *n*" and exits if an executed *command* returns an error status. However, it ignores the error status and continues processing if the **makefile** command line begins with a hyphen '-' or if the **make** command line specifies the **-i** option.

make reports an error status and exits if the user interrupts it. It prints "**can't open file**" if it cannot find the specification *file*. It prints "**Target file is not defined**" or "**Don't know how to make target**" if it cannot find an appropriate *file* or commands to generate *target*. Other possible errors include syntax errors in the specification file, macro definition errors, and running out of space. The error messages **make** prints are generally self-explanatory; however, a table of error messages and brief descriptions of them are given in a later section of this manual.

Exit Status

make returns a status of zero if it succeeds and -1 if an error occurs.

Section 11: Introduction to MicroEMACS

This section introduces MicroEMACS, the interactive screen editor for COHERENT.

What is MicroEMACS?

MicroEMACS is an interactive screen editor. An *editor* lets you type text into your computer, name it, store it, and recall it later for editing. *Interactive* means that MicroEMACS accepts an editing command, executes it, displays the results for you immediately, then waits for your next command. *Screen* means that you can use nearly the entire screen of your terminal as a writing surface: you can move your cursor up, down, and around your screen to create or change text, much as you move your pen up, down, and around a piece of paper.

These features, plus the others that will be described in the course of this tutorial, make MicroEMACS powerful yet easy to use. You can use MicroEMACS to create or change computer programs or any type of text file.

This version of MicroEMACS was developed by Mark Williams Company from the public-domain program written by David G. Conroy. This tutorial is based on the descriptions in his essay *MicroEMACS: Reasonable Display Editing in Little Computers*. MicroEMACS is derived from the mainframe display editor EMACS, created by Richard Stallman.

For a summary of MicroEMACS and its commands, see the entry for **me** in the Lexicon.

Keystrokes: <ctrl>, <esc>

The MicroEMACS commands use **control** characters and **meta** characters. Control characters use the *control* key, which is marked **Control** or **ctrl** on your keyboard. Meta characters use the *escape* key, which is marked **Esc**.

Control works like the *shift* key: you hold it down *while* you strike the other key. This tutorial represent it with a hyphen; for example, pressing the control key and the letter 'X' key simultaneously will be shown as follows:

<ctrl-X>

The **esc** key, on the other hand, works like an ordinary character. You strike it first, *then* strike the letter character you want. This tutorial does *not* represent the *Escape* codes with a hyphen; for example, it represents **escape X** as:

<esc>X

Becoming Acquainted with MicroEMACS

Now you are ready for a few simple exercises that will help you get a feel for how MicroEMACS works.

To begin, type the following command to COHERENT:

```
me sample
```

Within a few seconds, your screen will have been cleared of writing, the cursor will be positioned in the upper left-hand corner of the screen, and a command line will appear at the bottom of your screen.

Now type the following text. If you make a mistake, just backspace over it and retype the text. Press the carriage return or enter key after each line:

```
main()
{
    printf("Hello, world!\n");
}
```

Notice how the text appeared on the screen character by character as you typed it, much as it would appear on a piece of paper if you were using a typewriter.

Now, type <ctrl-X><ctrl-S>; that is, type <ctrl-X>, and then type <ctrl-S>. It does not matter whether you type capital or lower-case letters. Notice that this message has appeared at the bottom of your screen:

```
[Wrote 4 lines]
```

This command has permanently stored, or *saved*, what you typed into a file named **sample**.

Type the next few commands, which demonstrate some of the tasks that MicroEMACS can perform for you. These commands will be explained in full in the sections that follow; for now, try them to get a feel for how MicroEMACS works.

Type <esc><. Be sure that you type a less-than symbol '<'. Notice that the cursor has returned to the upper left-hand corner of the screen. Type <esc>F. The cursor has jumped forward by one word, and is now on the left parenthesis.

Type <ctrl-N>. Notice that the cursor has jumped to the next line, and is now just to the right of the left brace '{'.

Type `<ctrl-A>`. The cursor has jumped to the *beginning* of the second line of your text. Type `<ctrl-N>` again. Now the cursor is at the beginning of the third line of the program, the `printf` statement.

Now, type `<ctrl-K>`. The third line of text has disappeared, leaving an empty space. Type `<ctrl-K>` again. The empty space where the third line of text had been has now disappeared.

Type `<esc>`. Be sure to type a greater-than symbol `'>'`. The cursor has jumped to the space just below the last line of text. Now type `<ctrl-Y>`. The text that you erased a moment ago has reappeared, but in a new position on the screen.

By now, you should be feeling more at ease with typing MicroEMACS's *control* and *escape* codes. The following sections will explain what these commands mean. For now, exit from MicroEMACS by typing `<ctrl-X>` `<ctrl-C>`, and when the message

```
Quit [y/n]?
```

appears type `y` and then `<return>`. This will return you to COHERENT.

Beginning a Document

This section practices on the file `example1.c`. This file is stored in the directory `/usr/src/example`. Before beginning, copy it into the current directory with this command:

```
cp /usr/src/sample/example1.c .
```

Now, type the following command to invoke MicroEMACS:

```
me example1.c
```

In a moment, the following text will appear on your screen:

```
/*
 * This is a simple C program that computes the results
 * of three different rates of inflation over the
 * span of ten years. Use this text file to learn
 * how to use MicroEMACS commands
 * to make creating and editing text files quick,
 * efficient and easy.
 */
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
    int i;                /* count ten years */
    float w1, w2, w3;    /* three inflated quantities */
    char *msg = " %2d\t%f %f %f\n"; /* printf string */
    i = 0;
    w1 = 1.0;
    w2 = 1.0;
    w3 = 1.0;
    for (i = 1; i <= 10; i++) {
        w1 *= 1.07;      /* apply inflation */
        w2 *= 1.08;
        w3 *= 1.10;
        printf (msg, i, w1, w2, w3);
    }
}
```

When you invoke MicroEMACS, it *copies* that file into memory. Your cursor also moved to the upper left-hand corner of the screen. At the bottom of the screen appears the *status line*, as follows:

```
-- Coherent MicroEMACS -- example1.c -- File: example1.c --
```

The word to the left, MicroEMACS, is the name of the editor. The word in the center, **example1.c**, is the name of the *buffer* that you are using. (We will describe later just what a buffer is and how you use it.) The name to the right is the name of the text file that you are editing.

Moving the Cursor

Now that you have read a text file into memory, you are ready to edit it. The first step is to learn to move the cursor.

Try these commands for yourself as we described them. That way, you will quickly acquire a feel for handling MicroEMACS's commands.

Moving the Cursor Forward

This first set of commands moves the cursor forward:

<ctrl-F>	Move forward one space
<esc>F	Move forward one word
<ctrl-E>	Move to end of line

To see how these commands work, do the following: Type the *forward* command **<ctrl-F>**. As before, it does not matter whether the letter 'F' is upper case or lower case. The cursor has moved one space to the right, and now is over the character '*' in the first line.

Type **<esc>F**. The cursor has moved one *word* to the right, and is now over the space after the word *this*. MicroEMACS considers only alphanumeric characters when it moves from word to word. Therefore, the cursor moved from under the * to the space after the word *this*, rather than to the space after the *. Now type the *end of line* command **<ctrl-E>**. The cursor has jumped to the end of the line and is now just to the right of the e of the word *three*.

Moving the Cursor Backwards

The following summarizes the commands for moving the cursor backwards:

<ctrl-B>	Move back one space
<esc>B	Move back one word
<ctrl-A>	Move to beginning of line

To see how these work, first type the *backward* command **<ctrl-B>**. As you can see, the cursor has moved one space to the left, and now is over the letter e of the word *three*. Type **<esc>B**. The cursor has moved one *word* to the left and now is over the t in *three*. Type **<esc>B** again, and the cursor will be positioned on the o in *of*.

Type the *beginning of line* command **<ctrl-A>**. The cursor jumps to the beginning of the line, and once again is resting over the '/' character in the first line.

From Line to Line

<ctrl-P>	Move to previous line
<ctrl-N>	Move to next line

These two commands move the cursor up and down the screen. Type the *next line* command **<ctrl-N>**. The cursor jumps to the space before the '*' in the next line. Type the *end of line* command **<ctrl-E>**, and the cursor moves to the end of the second line to the right of the period.

Continue to type **<ctrl-N>** until the cursor reaches the bottom of the screen. As you reached the first line in your text, the cursor jumped from its position at the right of the period on the second line to just right of the brace on the last line of the file. When you move your cursor up or down the screen, MicroEMACS tries to keep it at the same posi-

tion within each line. If the line to which you are moving the cursor is not long enough to have a character at that position, MicroEMACS moves the cursor to the end of the line.

Now, practice moving the cursor back up the screen. Type the *previous line* command `<ctrl-P>`. When the cursor jumped to the previous line, it retained its position at the end of the line. MicroEMACS remembers the cursor's position on the line, and returns the cursor there when it jumps to a line long enough to have a character in that position.

Continue pressing `<ctrl-P>`. The cursor will move up the screen until it reaches the top of your text.

Repetitive Motion

Some computers repeat a command automatically if you *hold down* the control key and the character key. Try holding down `<ctrl-N>` for a moment, and see if it repeats automatically. If it does, that will speed moving your cursor around the screen, because you will not have to type the same command repeatedly.

Moving Up and Down by a Screenful of Text

The next two cursor movement commands allow you to roll forward or backwards by one screenful of text.

<code><ctrl-V></code>	Move forward one screen
<code><esc>V</code>	Move back one screen

If you are editing a file with MicroEMACS that is too big to be displayed on your screen all at once, MicroEMACS displays the file in screen-sized portions (on most terminals, 22 lines at a time). The *view* commands `<ctrl-V>` and `<esc>V` allow you to roll up or down one screenful of text at a time.

Type `<ctrl-V>`. Your screen now contains only the last three lines of the file. This is because you have rolled forward by the equivalent of one screenful of text, or 22 lines.

Now, type `<esc>V`. Notice that your text rolls back onto the screen, and your cursor is positioned in the upper left-hand corner of the screen, over the character `'/'` in the first line.

Moving to Beginning or End of Text

These last two cursor movement commands allow you to jump immediately to the beginning or end of your text.

<code><esc><</code>	Move to beginning of text
<code><esc>></code>	Move to end of text

The *end of text* command `<esc>>` moves the cursor to the end of your text. Type `<esc>>`. Be sure to type a greater-than symbol `'>'`; this symbol may have been placed anywhere on your keyboard, although on IBM-style keyboards it appears above the period. Your cursor has jumped to the end of your text.

The *beginning of text* command `<esc><` will move the cursor back to the beginning of your text. Type `<esc><`. Be sure to type a less-than symbol '<'; on IBM-style keyboards it appears above the comma. The cursor has jumped back to the upper left-hand corner of your screen.

These commands move you immediately to the beginning or the end of your text, regardless of whether the text is one page or 20 pages long.

Saving Text and Quitting

If you do not wish to continue working at this time, you should *save* your text, and then *quit*.

It is good practice to save your text file every so often while you are working on it. If an accident occurs, such as a power failure, you will not lose all of your work. You can save your text with the *save* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>`. Type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>` — that is, first type `<ctrl-X>`, then type `<ctrl-S>`. If you had modified this file, the following message would appear:

```
[Wrote 23 lines]
```

The text file would have been saved to your computer's disk. (MicroEMACS sends you messages from time to time. The messages enclosed in square brackets '[' ']' are for your information, and do not necessarily mean that something is wrong.) To exit from MicroEMACS, type the *quit* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>`. This will return you to COHERENT.

Killing and Deleting

Now that you know how to move the cursor, you are ready to edit your text.

To return to MicroEMACS, type the command:

```
me example1.c
```

Within a moment, `example1.c` will be restored to your screen.

By now, you probably have noticed that MicroEMACS is always ready to insert material into your text. Unless you use the `<ctrl>` or `<esc>` keys, MicroEMACS assumes that whatever you type is text and inserts it onto your screen where your cursor is positioned.

The simplest way to erase text is simply to position the cursor to the right of the text you want to erase and backspace over it. MicroEMACS, however, also has a set of commands that allow you to erase text easily. These commands, *kill* and *delete*, behave differently; the distinction is important, and will be explained in a moment.

Deleting Vs. Killing

When MicroEMACS *deletes* text, it is erased completely and disappears forever. However, when MicroEMACS *kills* text, the text is copied into a temporary storage area in memory. This storage area is overwritten when you move the cursor and then *kill* additional text. Until then, however, the killed text is saved. This aspect of killing allows you to restore text that you killed accidentally, and it also allows you to move or copy

portions of text from one position to another.

MicroEMACS is designed so that when it erases text, it does so beginning at the *left edge* of the cursor. This left edge is called the *current position*.

You should imagine that an invisible vertical bar separates the cursor from the character immediately to its left. As you enter the various kill and delete commands, this vertical bar moves to the right or the left with the cursor, and erases the characters it touches.

Erasing Text to the Right

The first two commands to be presented erase text to the *right*.

<ctrl-D>	Delete one character to the right
<esc>D	Kill one word to the right

<ctrl-D> deletes one *character* to the right of the current position. <esc>D deletes one *word* to the right of the current position.

To try these commands, type the *delete* command <ctrl-D>. MicroEMACS erases the character *'* in the first line, and shifted the rest of the line one space to the left.

Now, type <esc>D. MicroEMACS erases the *'** character and the word *This*, and shifts the line six spaces to the left. The cursor is positioned at the *space* before the word *is*. Type <esc>D again. The word *is* vanishes along with the *space* that preceded it, and the line shifts *four* spaces to the left.

Remember that <ctrl-D> *deletes* text, but <esc>D *kills* text.

Erasing Text to the Left

You can erase text to the *left* with the following commands:

	Delete one character to the left
<backspace>	Delete one character to the left
<ctrl-H>	Delete one character to the left
<esc>	Kill one word to the left
<esc><backspace>	Kill one word to the left
<esc><ctrl-H>	Kill one word to the left

To see how to erase text to the left, first type the *end of line* command <ctrl-E>; this will move the cursor to the right of the word *three* on the first line of text. Now, type . The second *e* of the word *three* has vanished.

Type <esc>. The rest of the word *three* has disappeared, and the cursor has moved to the second space following the word *of*.

Move the cursor four spaces to the left, so that it is over the letter *o* of the word *of*. Type <esc>. The word *results* has vanished, along with the space that was immediately to the right of it. As before, these commands erased text beginning immediately to the *left* of the cursor. The <esc> command can be used to erase words throughout your text.

If you wish to erase a word to the left but preserve both spaces that are around it, position the cursor at the space immediately to the right of the word and type `<esc>`. If you wish to erase a word to the left plus the space that immediately follows it, position the cursor under the first letter of the *next* word and then type `<esc>`.

Typing `` *deletes* text, but typing `<esc>` *kills* text.

Erasing Lines of Text

Finally, the following command erases a line of text:

`<ctrl-K>` Kill from cursor to end of line

This command kills a line of text, from the line beginning from immediately to the left of the cursor to the end of the line.

To see how this works, move the cursor to the beginning of line 2. Now, strike `<ctrl-K>`. All of line 2 has vanished and been replaced with an empty space. Strike `<ctrl-K>` again. The empty space has vanished, and the cursor is now positioned at the beginning of what used to be line 3, in the space before * Use.

Yanking Back (Restoring) Text

The following command allows you restore material that you have killed:

`<ctrl-Y>` Yank back (restore) killed text

Remember that when you kill text, MicroEMACS temporarily stores it elsewhere. You can return this material to the screen by using the *yank back* command `<ctrl-Y>`. Type `<ctrl-Y>`. All of line 2 has returned; the cursor, however, remains at the beginning of line 3.

Quitting

When you are finished, do not save the text. If you do so, the undamaged copy of the text that you made earlier will be replaced with the present mangled copy. Rather, use the *quit* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>`. Type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>`. On the bottom of your screen, MicroEMACS responds:

Quit [y/n]?

Reply by typing *y* and a carriage return. If you type *n*, MicroEMACS will return you to where you were in the text. MicroEMACS will now return you to COHERENT.

Block Killing and Moving Text

As noted above, text that is killed is stored temporarily within memory. You can yank killed text back onto your screen, and not necessarily in the spot where it was originally killed. This feature allows you to move text from one position to another.

Moving One Line of Text

You can kill and move one line of text with the following commands:

<code><ctrl-K></code>	Kill text to end of line
<code><ctrl-Y></code>	Yank back text

To test these commands, invoke MicroEMACS for the file `example1.c` by typing the following command:

```
me example1.c
```

When MicroEMACS appears, the cursor will be positioned in the upper left-hand corner of the screen.

To move the first line of text, begin by typing the *kill* command `<ctrl-K>` twice. Now, press `<esc>>` to move the cursor to the bottom of text. Finally, yank back the line by typing `<ctrl-Y>`. The line that reads

```
/* This is a simple C program that computes the results
```

is now at the bottom of your text.

Your cursor has moved to the point on your screen that is *after* the line you yanked back.

Multiple Copying of Killed Text

When text is yanked back onto your screen, it is *not* deleted from memory. Rather, it is simply copied back onto the screen. This means that killed text can be reinserted into the text more than once. To see how this is done, return to the top of the text by typing `<esc><`. Then type `<ctrl-Y>`. The line you just killed now appears as both the first and last line of the file.

The killed text will not be erased from its temporary storage until you move the cursor and then kill additional text. If you kill several lines or portions of lines in a row, all of the killed text will be stored in the buffer; if you are not careful, you may yank back a jumble of accumulated text.

Kill and Move a Block of Text

If you wish to kill and move more than one line of text at a time, use the following commands:

<code><ctrl-@></code>	Set mark
<code><esc>.</code>	Set mark
<code><ctrl-W></code>	Kill block of text
<code><ctrl-Y></code>	Yank back text

If you wish to kill a block of text, you can either type the *kill* command `<ctrl-K>` repeatedly to kill the block one line at a time, or you can use the *block kill* command `<ctrl-W>`. To use this command, you must first set a *mark* on the screen, an invisible

character that acts as a signal to the computer. The mark can be set with either `<esc>` or `<ctrl-@>`.

Once the mark is set, you must move your cursor to the other end of the block of text you wish to kill, and then strike `<ctrl-W>`. The block of text will be erased, and will be ready to be yanked back elsewhere.

Try this out on **example1.c**. Type `<esc><` to move the cursor to the upper left-hand corner of the screen. Then type the *set mark* command `<ctrl-@>`. (By the way, be sure to type '@', not '2'.) MicroEMACS will respond with the message

[Mark set]

at the bottom of your screen. Now, move the cursor down six lines, and type `<ctrl-W>`. Note how the block of text you marked out has disappeared.

Move the cursor to the bottom of your text. Type `<ctrl-Y>`. The killed block of text has now been reinserted.

When you yank back text, be sure to position the cursor at the *exact* point where you want the text to be yanked back. This will ensure that the text will be yanked back in the proper place. To try this out, move your cursor up six lines. Be careful that the cursor is at the *beginning* of the line. Now, type `<ctrl-Y>` again. The text reappeared *above* where the cursor was positioned, and the cursor has not moved from its position at the beginning of the line — which is not what would have happened had you positioned it in the middle or at the end of a line.

Although the text you are working with has only 23 lines, you can move much larger portions of text using only these three commands. Remember, too, that you can use this technique to duplicate large portions of text at several positions to save yourself considerable time in typing and reduce the number of possible typographical errors.

Capitalization and Other Tools

The next commands perform a number of tasks to help with your editing. Before you begin this section, destroy the old text on your screen with the *quit* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>`, and read into MicroEMACS a fresh copy of the program, as you did earlier.

Capitalization and Lowercasing

The following MicroEMACS commands automatically capitalize a word (that is, make the first letter of a word upper case), or make an entire word upper case or lower case.

<code><esc>C</code>	Capitalize a word
<code><esc>L</code>	Lowercase an entire word
<code><esc>U</code>	Uppercase an entire word

To try these commands, do the following: First, move the cursor to the letter *d* of the word *different* on line 2. Type the *capitalize* command `<esc>C`. The word is now capitalized, and the cursor is now positioned at the space after the word. Move the cursor forward so that it is over the letter *t* in *rates*. Press `<esc>C` again. The word changes to *raTes*. When you press `<esc>C`, MicroEMACS capitalizes the *first* letter

the cursor meets.

MicroEMACS can also change a word to all upper case or all lower case. (There is very little need for a command that will change only the first character of an upper-case word to lower case, so it is not included.)

Type `<esc>B` to move the cursor so that it is again to the left of the word **Different**. It does not matter if the cursor is directly over the **D** or at the space to its left; as you will see, this means that you can capitalize or lowercase a number of words in a row without having to move the cursor.

Type the *uppercase* command `<esc>U`. The word is now spelled **DIFFERENT**, and the cursor has jumped to the space after the word.

Again, move the cursor to the left of the word **DIFFERENT**. Type the *lowercase* command `<esc>L`. The word has changed back to **different**. Now, move the cursor to the space at the beginning of line 3 by typing `<ctrl-N>` then `<ctrl-A>`. Type `<esc>L` once again. The character "*" is not affected by the command, but the letter **U** is now lower case. `<esc>L` not only shifts a word that is all upper case to lower case: it can also uncapitalize a word.

The *uppercase* and *lowercase* commands stop at the first punctuation mark they meet *after* the first letter they find. This means that, for example, to change the case of a word with an apostrophe in it you must type the appropriate command twice.

Transpose Characters

MicroEMACS allows you to reverse the position of two characters, or *transpose* them, with the *transpose* command `<ctrl-T>`.

Type `<ctrl-T>`. MicroEMACS transposes the character that is under the cursor with the character immediately to its *left*. In this example,

```
* use this
```

in line 3 now appears:

```
* us ethis
```

The space and the letter **e** have been transposed. Type `<ctrl-T>` again. The characters have returned to their original order.

Screen Redraw

`<ctrl-L>` Redraw screen

Occasionally, while you are working on a text another COHERENT user will write or mail you a message. COHERENT will write the message directly on your screen, which scrambles your screen. A message sent from another user or a message from the COHERENT system is *not* recorded into your text; however, you may wish to erase the message and continue editing. The *redraw screen* command `<ctrl-L>` will redraw your screen to the way it was before it was scrambled.

Type `<ctrl-L>`. Notice how the screen flickers and the text is rewritten. Had your screen been spoiled by extraneous material, that material would have been erased and the original text rewritten.

The `<ctrl-L>` command also has another use: it can move the line on which the cursor is positioned to the center of the screen. If you have a file that contains more than one screenful of text and you wish to have that particular line in the center of the screen, position the cursor on that line and type `<ctrl-U><ctrl-L>`. Immediately, MicroEMACS redraws the screen, and places the line you selected in the center of the screen.

Return Indent

`<ctrl-J>` Return and indent

You may often be faced with a situation in which, for the sake of programming style, you need to indent many lines of text: before every line you must tab the correct number of times before typing the text. These *block indents* can be a time-consuming typing chore. The MicroEMACS `<ctrl-J>` command makes this task easier. `<ctrl-J>` moves the cursor to the next line on the screen and automatically positions the cursor at the previous line's level of indentation.

To see how this works, first move the cursor to the line that reads

```
w3 *= 1.10:
```

Press `<ctrl-E>`, to move the cursor to the end of the line. Now, type `<ctrl-J>`.

As you can see, a new line opens up and the cursor is indented the same amount as the previous line. Type

```
/* Here is an example of auto-indentation */
```

This line of text begins directly under the previous line.

Word Wrap

`<ctrl-X>F` Set word wrap

Although you have not yet had much opportunity to use it, MicroEMACS will automatically wrap text that you are typing. Word-wrapping is controlled with the *word wrap* command `<ctrl-X>F`. To see how the word wrap command works, first exit from MicroEMACS by typing `<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>`; then reinvoke MicroEMACS by typing

```
me cucumber
```

When MicroEMACS re-appears, type the following text; however, do *not* type any carriage returns:

A cucumber should be
well sliced, and dressed
with pepper and vinegar,
and then thrown out, as
good for nothing.

When you reached the edge of your screen, a dollar sign was printed and you were allowed to continue typing. MicroEMACS accepted the characters you typed, but it placed them at a location beyond the right edge of your screen.

Now, move to the beginning of the next line and type `<ctrl-U>`. MicroEMACS will reply with the message:

Arg: 4

Type 30. The line at the bottom of your screen now appears as follows:

Arg: 30

(The use of the *argument* command `<ctrl-U>` will be explained in a few minutes.) Now type the *word-wrap* command `<ctrl-X>F`. MicroEMACS will now say at the bottom of your screen:

[Wrap at column 30]

This sequence of commands has set the word-wrap function, and told it to wrap to the next line all words that extend beyond the 30th column on your screen.

The *word wrap* feature automatically moves your cursor to the beginning of the next line once you type past a preset border on your screen. When you first enter MicroEMACS, that limit is automatically set at the first column, which in effect means that word wrap has been turned off.

When you type prose for a report or a letter of some sort, you probably will want to set the border at the 65th column, so that the printed text will fit neatly onto a sheet of paper. If you are using MicroEMACS to type in a program, however, you probably will want to leave word wrap off, so you do not accidentally introduce carriage returns into your code.

To test word wrapping, type the above text again, without using the carriage return key. When you finish, it should appear as follows:

A cucumber should be well
sliced, and dressed with
pepper and vinegar, and then
thrown out, as good for nothing.

MicroEMACS automatically moved your cursor to the next line when you typed a space character after the 30th column on your screen.

If you wish to fix the border at some special point on your screen but do not wish to go through the tedium of figuring out how many columns from the left it is, simply position the cursor where you want the border to be, type `<ctrl-X>F`, and then type a carriage return. When `<ctrl-X>F` is typed without being preceded by a `<ctrl-U>` command, it

sets the word-wrap border at the point your cursor happens to be positioned. When you do this, MicroEMACS will then print a message at the bottom of your terminal that tells you where the word-wrap border is now set.

To re-word wrap the text between the cursor and the mark, type `<ctrl-X>H`.

If you wish to turn off the word wrap feature again, simply set the word wrap border to one.

Search and Reverse Search

When you edit a large text, you may wish to change particular words or phrases. To do this, you can roll through the text and read each line to find them; or you can have MicroEMACS find them for you. Before you continue, close the present file by typing `<ctrl-X> <ctrl-C>`; then reinvoke the editor to edit the file `example1.c`, as you did before. The following sections perform some exercises with this file.

Search Forward

<code><ctrl-S></code>	Search forward incrementally
<code><esc>S</code>	Search forward with prompt

As you can see from the display, MicroEMACS has two ways to search forward: incrementally, and with a prompt.

An *incremental* search is one in which the search is performed as you type the characters. To see how this works, first type the *beginning of text* command `<esc><` to move the cursor to the upper left-hand corner of your screen. Now, type the *incremental search* command `<ctrl-S>`. MicroEMACS will respond by prompting with the message

```
i-search forward:
```

at the bottom of the screen.

We will now search for the pointer `*msg`. Type the letters `*msg` one at a time, starting with `*`. The cursor has jumped to the first place that a `*` was found: at the second character of the first line. The cursor moves forward in the text file and the message at the bottom of the screen changes to reflect what you have typed.

Now type `m`. The cursor has jumped ahead to the letter `s` in `*msg`. Type `s`. The cursor has jumped ahead to the letter `g` in `*msg`. Finally, type `g`. The cursor is over the space after the token `*msg`. Finally, type `<esc>` to end the string. MicroEMACS replies with the message

```
[Done]
```

which indicates that the search is finished.

If you attempt an incremental search for a word that is not in the file, MicroEMACS will find as many of the letters as it can, and then give you an error message. For example, if you tried to search incrementally for the word `*msgs`, MicroEMACS would move the cursor to the phrase `*msg`; when you typed `'s'`, it would tell you

failing i-search forward: *msgs

With the *prompt search*, however, you type in the word all at once. To see how this works, type `<esc><`, to return to the top of the file. Now, type the *prompt search* command `<esc>S`. MicroEMACS responds by prompting with the message

Search [*msgs]:

at the bottom of the screen. The word `*msgs` is shown because that was the last word for which you searched, and so it is kept in the search buffer.

Type in the words `editing text`, then press the carriage return. Notice that the cursor has jumped to the period after the word `text` in the next to last line of your text. MicroEMACS searched for the words `editing text`, found them, and moved the cursor to them.

If the word you were searching for was not in your text, or at least was not in the portion that lies between your cursor and the end of the text, MicroEMACS would not have moved the cursor, and would have displayed the message

Not found

at the bottom of your screen.

Reverse Search

<code><ctrl-R></code>	Search backwards incrementally
<code><esc>R</code>	Search backwards with prompt

The search commands, useful as they are, can only search forward through your text. To search backwards, use the reverse search commands `<ctrl-R>` and `<esc>R`. These work exactly the same as their forward-searching counterparts, except that they search toward the beginning of the file rather than toward the end.

For example, type `<esc>R`. MicroEMACS replies with the message

Reverse search [editing text]:

at the bottom of your screen. The words in square brackets are the words you entered earlier for the *search* command; MicroEMACS remembered them. If you wanted to search for `editing text` again, you would just press the carriage return. For now, however, type the word `program` and press the carriage return.

Notice that the cursor has jumped so that it is under the letter `p` of the word `program` in line 1. When you search forward, the cursor moves to the *space after* the word for which you are searching, whereas when you reverse search the cursor moves to the *first letter* of the word for which you are searching.

Cancel a Command

<ctrl-G> Cancel a search command

As you have noticed, the commands to move the cursor or to delete or kill text all execute immediately. Although this speeds your editing, it also means that if you type a command by mistake, it executes before you can stop it.

The *search* and *reverse search* commands, however, wait for you to respond to their prompts before they execute. If you type **<esc>S** or **<esc>R** by accident, MicroEMACS will interrupt your editing and wait for you to initiate a search that you do not want to perform. You can evade this problem, however, with the *cancel* command **<ctrl-G>**. This command tells MicroEMACS to ignore the previous command.

To see how this command works, type **<esc>R**. When the prompt appears at the bottom of your screen, type **<ctrl-G>**. Three things happen: your terminal beeps, the characters **^G** appear at the bottom of your screen, and the cursor returns to where it was before you first typed **<esc>R**. The **<esc>R** command has been cancelled, and you are free to continue editing.

If you cancel an *incremental search* command, **<ctrl-S>** or **<esc-S>**, the cursor returns to where it was before you began the search. For example, type **<esc><** to return to the top of the file. Now type **<ctrl-S>** to begin an incremental search, and type **m**. When the cursor moves to the **m** in *simple*, type **<ctrl-G>**. The bell rings, and your cursor returns to the top of the file, where you began the search.

Search and Replace

<esc>% Search and replace

MicroEMACS also gives you a powerful function that allows you to search for a string and replace it with a keystroke. You can do this by executing the *search and replace* command **<esc>%**.

To see how this works, move to the top of the text file by typing **<esc><**; then type **<esc>%**. You will see the following message at the bottom of your screen:

Old string:

As an exercise, type **msg**. MicroEMACS will then ask:

New string:

Type **message**, and press the carriage return. As you can see, the cursor jumps to the first occurrence of the string **msg**, and prints the following message at the bottom of your screen:

Query replace: [msg] -> [message]

MicroEMACS is asking if it should proceed with the replacement. Type a carriage return: this displays the options that are available to you at the bottom of your screen:

<SP>[,] replace, [.] rep-end, [n] dont, [!] repl rest <C-G> quit

The options are as follows:

Typing a space or a comma executes the replacement, and moves the cursor to the next occurrence of the old string; in this case, it replaces `msg` with `message`, and moves the cursor to the next occurrence of `msg`.

Typing a period '.' replaces this one occurrence of the old string and ends the search and replace procedure. In this example, typing a period replaces this one occurrence of `msg` with `message` and ends the procedure.

Typing the letter 'n' tells MicroEMACS *not* to replace this instance of the old string, but move to the next occurrence of the old string. In this case, typing 'n' does *not* replace `msg` with `message`, and the cursor jumps to the next place where `msg` occurs.

Typing an exclamation point '!' tells MicroEMACS to replace all instances of the old string with the new string automatically, without checking with you any further. In this example, typing '!' replaces all instances of `msg` with `message` without further queries from MicroEMACS.

Finally, typing <ctrl-G> aborts the search and replace procedure.

Saving Text and Exiting

This set of basic editing commands allows you to save your text and exit from the MicroEMACS program. They are as follows:

<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>	Save text
<ctrl-X><ctrl-W>	Write text to a new file
<ctrl-Z>	Save text and exit
<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>	Exit without saving text

You have used two of these commands already: the *save* command <ctrl-X><ctrl-S> and the *quit* command <ctrl-X><ctrl-C>, which respectively allow you to save text or to exit from MicroEMACS without saving text. (Commands that begin with <ctrl-X> are called *extended* commands; they are used frequently in the commands described later in this tutorial.)

Write Text to a New File

<ctrl-X> <ctrl-W>	Write text to a new file
-------------------	--------------------------

If you wish, you can copy the text you are currently editing to a text file other than the one from which you originally read the text. Do this with the *write* command <ctrl-X><ctrl-W>.

To test this command, type <ctrl-X><ctrl-W>. MicroEMACS displays the following message on the bottom of your screen:

Write file:

MicroEMACS is asking for the name of the file into which you wish to write the text.

Type **sample**. MicroEMACS replies:

```
[Wrote 23 lines]
```

The 23 lines of your text have been copied to a new file called **sample**. The status line at the bottom of your screen has changed to read as follows:

```
-- MicroEMACS -- example1.c -- File: sample -----
```

The significance of the change in file name will be discussed in the second half of this tutorial.

Before you copy text into a new file, be sure that you have not selected a file name that is already being used. If you do, MicroEMACS will erase whatever is stored under that file name, and the text created with MicroEMACS will be stored in its place.

Save Text and Exit

Finally, the *store* command `<ctrl-Z>` will save your text *and* move you out of the MicroEMACS editor. To see how this works, watch the bottom line of your terminal carefully and type `<ctrl-Z>`. MicroEMACS has saved your text, and now you can issue commands directly to COHERENT.

Advanced Editing

The second half of this tutorial introduces the advanced features of MicroEMACS.

The techniques described here will help you execute complex editing tasks with minimal trouble. You will be able to edit more than one text at a time, display more than one file on your screen at a time, enter a long or complicated phrase repeatedly with only one keystroke, and give commands to COHERENT without having to exit from MicroEMACS.

Before beginning, however, you must prepare a new text file. Type the following command to COHERENT:

```
me example2.c
```

In a moment, **example2.c** will appear on your screen, as follows:

```
/* Use this program to get better acquainted
 * with the MicroEMACS interactive screen editor.
 * You can use this text to learn some of the
 * more advanced editing features of MicroEMACS.
 */
```

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
    FILE *fp;
    int ch;
    int filename[20];

    printf("Enter file name: ");
    gets(filename);

    if ((fp =fopen(filename,"r")) !=NULL) {
        while ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != EOF)
            fputc(ch, stdout);
    } else
        printf("Cannot open %s.\n", filename);
    fclose(fp);
}
```

Arguments

Most of the commands already described in this tutorial can be used with *arguments*. An argument is a subcommand that tells MicroEMACS to execute a command a given number of times. With MicroEMACS, arguments are introduced by typing **<ctrl-U>**.

Arguments: Default Values

By itself, **<ctrl-U>** sets the argument at *four*. To illustrate this, first type the *next line* command **<ctrl-N>**. By itself, this command moves the cursor down one line, from being over the *'/* at the beginning of line 1, to being over the *space* at the beginning of line 2.

Now, type **<ctrl-U>**. MicroEMACS replies with the message:

Arg: 4

Now type **<ctrl-N>**. The cursor jumps down *four* lines, from the beginning of line 2 to the letter *m* of the word *main* at the beginning of line 6.

Type **<ctrl-U>**. The line at the bottom of the screen again shows that the value of the argument is four. Type **<ctrl-U>** again. Now the line at the bottom of the screen reads:

Arg: 16

Type **<ctrl-U>** once more. The line at the bottom of the screen now reads:

Arg: 64

Each time you type **<ctrl-U>**, the value of the argument is *multiplied* by four. Type the *forward* command **<ctrl-F>**. The cursor has jumped ahead 64 characters, and is now

over the *i* of the word **file** in the *printf* statement in line 11.

Selecting Values

Naturally, an argument does not have to be a power of four. You can set the argument to whatever number you wish, simply by typing `<ctrl-U>` and then typing the number you want.

For example, type `<ctrl-U>`, and then type 3. The line at the bottom of the screen now reads:

```
Arg: 3
```

Type the *delete* command `<esc>D`. MicroEMACS has deleted three words to the right.

You can use arguments to increase the power of any *cursor movement* command, or any *kill* or *delete* command. The sole exception is `<ctrl-W>`, the *block kill* command.

Deleting With Arguments: An Exception

Killing and *deleting* were described in the first part of this tutorial. They were said to differ in that text that was killed was stored in a special area of the computer and could be yanked back, whereas text that was deleted was erased outright. However, there is one exception to this rule: any text that is deleted using an argument can also be yanked back.

To see how this works, first type the *begin text* command `<esc><` to move the cursor to the upper left-hand corner of the screen. Then, type `<ctrl-U> 5 <ctrl-D>`. The word **Use** has disappeared. Move the cursor to the right until it is between the words **better** and **acquainted**, then type `<ctrl-Y>`. The word **Use** has been moved within the line (although the spaces around it have not been moved). This function is very handy, and should greatly speed your editing.

Remember, too, that unless you move the cursor between one set of deletions and another, the computer's storage area will not be erased, and you may yank back a jumble of text.

Buffers and Files

Before beginning this section, replace the edited copy of the text on your screen with a fresh copy. Type the *quit* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>` to exit from MicroEMACS without saving the text; then return to MicroEMACS to edit the file **example2.c**, as you did earlier.

Now, look at the status line at the bottom of your screen. It should appear as follows: As noted in the first half of this tutorial, the name on the left of the command line is that of the program. The name in the middle is the name of the *buffer* with which you are now working, and the name to the right is the name of the *file* from which you read the text.

Definitions

A *file* is a mass of text that has been given a name and has been permanently stored on your disk. A *buffer* is a portion of the computer's memory that has been set aside for you to use, which may be given a name, and into which you can put text temporarily. You can place text into the buffer either by typing it at your keyboard or by *copying* it from a file.

Unlike a file, a buffer is not permanent: if your computer were to stop working (because you turned the power off, for example), a file would not be affected, but a buffer would be erased.

You must *name* your files because you work with many different files, and you must have some way to tell them apart. Likewise, MicroEMACS allows you to *name* your buffers, because MicroEMACS allows you to work with more than one buffer at a time.

File and Buffer Commands

MicroEMACS gives you a number of commands for handling files and buffers. These include the following:

<code><ctrl-X> <ctrl-W></code>	Write text to file
<code><ctrl-X> <ctrl-F></code>	Rename file
<code><ctrl-X> <ctrl-R></code>	Replace buffer with named file
<code><ctrl-X> <ctrl-V></code>	Switch buffer or create a new buffer
<code><ctrl-X> K</code>	Delete a buffer
<code><ctrl-X> <ctrl-B></code>	Display the status of each buffer

Write and Rename Commands

The *write* command `<ctrl-X> <ctrl-W>` was introduced earlier when the commands for saving text and exiting were discussed. To review, `<ctrl-X> <ctrl-W>` changes the name of the file into which the text is saved, and then copies the text into that file.

Type `<ctrl-X> <ctrl-W>`. MicroEMACS responds by printing

Write file:

on the last line of your screen.

Type `junkfile`, then `<return>`. Two things happen: First, MicroEMACS writes the message

[Wrote 21 lines]

at the bottom of your screen. Second, the name of the file shown on the status line changes from `example2.c` to `junkfile`. MicroEMACS is reminding you that your text is now being saved into the file `junkfile`.

The *file rename* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-F>` allows you rename the file to which you are saving text, *without* automatically writing the text to it. Type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-F>`. MicroEMACS will reply with the prompt:

Name :

Type `example2.c` and `<return>`. MicroEMACS does *not* send you a message that lines were written to the file; however, the name of the file shown on the status line has changed from `junkfile` back to `example2.c`.

Replace Text in a Buffer

The *replace* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-R>` allows you to replace the text in your buffer with the text from another file.

Suppose, for example, that you had edited `example2.c` and saved it, and now wished to edit `example1.c`. You could exit from MicroEMACS, then re-invoke MicroEMACS for the file `example2.c`, but this is cumbersome. A more efficient way is to simply replace the `example2.c` in your buffer with `example1.c`.

Type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-R>`. MicroEMACS replies with the prompt:

Read file:

Type `example1.c`. Notice that `example2.c` has rolled away and been replaced with `example1.c`. Now, check the status line. Notice that although the name of the *buffer* is still `example2.c`, the name of the *file* has changed to `example1.c`. You can now edit `example1.c`; when you save the edited text, MicroEMACS will copy it back into the file `example1.c` — unless, of course, you again choose to rename the file.

Visiting Another Buffer

The last command of this set, the *visit* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>`, allows you to create more than one buffer at a time, to jump from one buffer to another, and move text between buffers. This powerful command has numerous features.

Before beginning, however, straighten up your buffer by replacing `example1.c` with `example2.c`. Type the *replace* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-R>`; when MicroEMACS replies by asking

Read file:

at the bottom of your screen, type `example2.c`.

You should now have the file `example2.c` read into the buffer named `example2.c`.

Now, type the *visit* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>`. MicroEMACS replies with the prompt

Visit file:

at the bottom of the screen. Now type `example1.c`. Several things happen. `example2.c` rolls off the screen and is replaced with `example1.c`; the status line changes to show that both the buffer name and the file name are now `example1.c`; and the

message

[Read 23 lines]

appears at the bottom of the screen.

This does *not* mean that your previous buffer has been erased, as it would have been had you used the *replace* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-R>`. MicroEMACS is still keeping **example2.c** “alive” in a buffer and it is available for editing; however, it is not being shown on your screen at the present moment.

Type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>` again, and when the prompt appears, type **example2.c**. **example1.c** scrolls off your screen and is replaced by **example2.c**, and the message

[Old buffer]

appears at the bottom of your screen. You have just jumped from one buffer to another.

Move Text From One Buffer to Another

The *visit* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>` not only allows you to jump from one buffer to another: it allows you to *move text* from one buffer to another as well. The following example shows how you can do this.

First, kill the first line of **example2.c** by typing the *kill* command `<ctrl-K>` twice. This removes both the line of text *and* the space that it occupied. If you did not remove the space as well the line itself, no new line would be created for the text when you yank it back. Next, type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>`. When the prompt

Visit file:

appears at the bottom of your screen, type **example1.c**. When **example1.c** has rolled onto your screen, type the *yank back* command `<ctrl-Y>`. The line you killed in **example2.c** has now been moved into **example1.c**.

Checking Buffer Status

The number of buffers you can use at any one time is limited only by the size of your computer. You should create only as many buffers as you need to use immediately; this will help the computer run efficiently.

To help you keep track of your buffers, MicroEMACS has the *buffer status* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-B>`. Type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-B>`. The status line moves up to the middle of the screen, and the bottom half of your screen is replaced with the following display:

C	Size	Lines	Buffer	File
-	----	-----	-----	----
*	655	24	example1.c	example1.c
*	403	20	example2.c	example2.c

This display is called the *buffer status window*. The use of windows will be discussed more fully in the following section.

The letter **C** over the leftmost column stands for **Changed**. An asterisk indicates that that buffer has been changed since it was last saved, whereas a space means that the buffer has not been changed. **Size** indicates the buffer's size, in number of characters; **Buffer** lists the buffer name, and **File** lists the file name.

Now, kill the second line of `example1.c` by typing the *kill* command `<ctrl-K>`. Then type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-B>` once again. The size of the buffer `example1.c` shrinks from 657 characters to 595 to reflect the decrease in the size of the buffer.

To make this display disappear, type the *one window* command `<ctrl-X>1`. This command will be discussed in full in the next section.

Renaming a Buffer

One more point must be covered with the *visit* command. COHERENT does not allow you to have more than one file with the same name. For the same reason, MicroEMACS does not allow you to have more than one *buffer* with the same name.

Ordinarily, when you visit a file that is not already in a buffer, MicroEMACS creates a new buffer and gives it the same name as the file you are visiting. However, if for some reason you already have a buffer with the same name as the file you wish to visit, MicroEMACS stops and asks you to give a new, different name to the buffer it is creating.

For example, suppose that you wanted to visit a new *file* named `sample`, but you already had a *buffer* named `sample`. MicroEMACS would stop and give you this prompt at the bottom of the screen:

Buffer name:

You would type in a name for this new buffer. This name could not duplicate the name of any existing buffer. MicroEMACS would then read the file `sample` into the newly named buffer.

Delete a Buffer

If you wish to delete a buffer, simply type the *delete buffer* command `<ctrl-X>K`. This command allows you to delete only a buffer that is hidden, not one that is being displayed.

Type `<ctrl-X>K`. MicroEMACS will give you the prompt:

Kill buffer:

Type `example2.c`. Because you have changed the buffer, MicroEMACS asks:

Discard changes [y/n]?

Type `y`. Now, type the *buffer status* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-B>`. The buffer status window no longer shows the buffer `example2.c`. Although the prompt refers to *killing* a buffer, the buffer is in fact *deleted* and cannot be yanked back.

Windows

Before beginning this section, it will be necessary to create a new text file. Exit from MicroEMACS by typing the *quit* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>`; then reinvok MicroEMACS for the text file `example1.c` as you did earlier.

Now, copy `example2.c` into a buffer by typing the *visit* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>`. When the message

```
Visit file:
```

appears at the bottom of your screen, type `example2.c`. MicroEMACS reads `example2.c` into a buffer, and shows the message

```
[Read 21 lines]
```

at the bottom of your screen.

Finally, copy a new text, called `example3.c`, into a buffer. (You can find it in the same place where the files `example1.c` and `example2.c` are kept.) Type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>` again. When MicroEMACS asks which file to visit, type `example3.c`. The message

```
[Read 123 lines]
```

appears at the bottom of your screen.

The first screenful of text appears as follows:

```
/*
 * Factor prints out the prime factorization of numbers.
 * If there are any arguments, then it factors these. If
 * there are no arguments, then it reads stdin until
 * either EOF or the number zero or a non-numeric
 * non-white-space character. Since factor does all of
 * its calculations in double format, the largest number
 * which can be handled is quite large.
 */
#include <stdio.h>
#include <math.h>
#include <ctype.h>

#define NUL '\0'
#define ERROR 0x10 /* largest input base */
#define MAXNUM 200 /* max number of chars in number */

main(argc, argv)
int argc;
register char *argv[];
```

-- MicroEMACS -- example3.c -- File: example3.c -----

At this point, **example3.c** is on your screen, and **example1.c** and **example2.c** are hidden.

You could edit first one text and then another, while remembering just how things stood with the texts that were hidden; but it would be much easier if you could display all three texts on your screen simultaneously. MicroEMACS allows you to do just that by using *windows*.

Creating Windows and Moving Between Them

A *window* is a portion of your screen that can be manipulated independent of the rest of the screen. The following commands let you create windows and move between them:

<ctrl-X>2	Create a window
<ctrl-X>1	Delete extra windows
<ctrl-X>N	Move to next window
<ctrl-X>P	Move-to-previous-window

The best way to grasp how a window works is to create one and work with it. To begin, type the *create a window* command <ctrl-X>2.

Your screen is now divided into two parts, an upper and a lower. The same text is in each part, and the command lines give **example3.c** for the buffer and file names. Also, note that you still have only one cursor, which is in the upper left-hand corner of the screen.

The next step is to move from one window to another. Type the *next window* command <ctrl-X>N. Your cursor has now jumped to the upper left-hand corner of the *lower* window.

Type the *previous window* command <ctrl-X>P. Your cursor has returned to the upper left-hand corner of the top window.

Now, type <ctrl-X>2 again. The window on the top of your screen is now divided into two windows, for a total of three on your screen. Type <ctrl-X>2 again. The window at the top of your screen has again divided into two windows, for a total of four.

It is possible to have as many as 11 windows on your screen at one time, although each window will show only the control line and one or two lines of text. Neither <ctrl-X>2 nor <ctrl-X>1 can be used with arguments.

Now, type the *one window* command <ctrl-X>1. All of the extra windows have been eliminated, or *closed*.

Enlarging and Shrinking Windows

When MicroEMACS creates a window, it divides into half the window in which the cursor is positioned. You do not have to leave the windows at the size MicroEMACS creates them, however. If you wish, you may adjust the relative size of each window on your screen, using the *enlarge window* and *shrink window* commands:

<code><ctrl-X>Z</code>	Enlarge window
<code><ctrl-X><ctrl-Z></code>	Shrink window

To see how these work, first type `<ctrl-X>2` twice. Your screen is now divided into three windows: two in the top half of your screen, and the third in the bottom half.

Now, type the *enlarge window* command `<ctrl-X>Z`. The window at the top of your screen is now one line bigger: it has borrowed a line from the window below it. Type `<ctrl-X>Z` again. Once again, the top window has borrowed a line from the middle window.

Now, type the *next window* command `<ctrl-X>N` to move your cursor into the middle window. Again, type the *enlarge window* command `<ctrl-X>Z`. The middle window has borrowed a line from the bottom window, and is now one line larger.

The *enlarge window* command `<ctrl-X>Z` allows you to enlarge the window your cursor is in by borrowing lines from another window, provided that you do not shrink that other window out of existence. Every window must have at least two lines in it: one command line and one line of text.

The *shrink window* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-Z>` allows you to decrease the size of a window. Type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-Z>`. The present window is now one line smaller, and the lower window is one line larger because the line borrowed earlier has been returned.

The *enlarge window* and *shrink window* commands can also be used with arguments introduced with `<ctrl-U>`. However, remember that MicroEMACS will not accept an argument that would shrink another window out of existence.

Displaying Text Within a Window

Displaying text within the limited area of a window can present special problems. The *view* commands `<ctrl-V>` and `<esc>V` roll window-sized portions of text up or down, but you may become disoriented when a window shows only four or five lines of text at a time. Therefore, three special commands are available for displaying text within a window:

<code><ctrl-X><ctrl-N></code>	Scroll down
<code><ctrl-X><ctrl-P></code>	Scroll up
<code><esc>!</code>	Move within window

Two commands allow you to move your text by one line at a time, or *scroll* it: the *scroll up* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-N>`, and the *scroll down* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-P>`.

Type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-N>`. The line at the top of your window has vanished, a new line has appeared at the bottom of your window, and the cursor is now at the beginning of what had been the second line of your window.

Now type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-P>`. The line at the top that had vanished earlier has now returned, the cursor is at the beginning of it, and the line at the bottom of the window has vanished. These commands allow you to move forward in your text slowly so that you do not become disoriented.

Both of these commands can be used with arguments introduced by `<ctrl-U>`.

The third special movement command is the *move within window* command `<esc>!`. This command moves the line your cursor is on to the top of the window.

To try this out, move the cursor down three lines by typing `<ctrl-U>3<ctrl-N>`; now type `<esc>!`. (Be sure to type an exclamation point '!', not a numeral one '1', or nothing will happen.) The line to which you had moved the cursor is now the first line in the window, and three new lines have scrolled up from the bottom of the window. You will find this command to be very useful as you become more experienced at using windows.

All three special movement commands can also be used when your screen has no extra windows, although you will not need them as much.

One Buffer

Now that you have been introduced to the commands for manipulating windows, you can begin to use windows to speed your editing.

~~To begin with, scroll up the window you are in until you reach the top line of your text.~~ You can do this either by typing the *scroll up* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-P>` several times, or by typing `<esc><`.

Kill the first line of text with the *kill* command `<ctrl-K>`. The first line of text has vanished from all three windows. Now, type `<ctrl-Y>` to yank back the text you just killed. The line has reappeared in all three windows.

The main advantage to displaying one buffer with more than one window is that each window can display a different portion of the text. This can be quite helpful if you are editing or moving a large text.

To demonstrate this, do the following: First, move to the end of the text in your present window by typing the *end of text* command `<esc>>`, then typing the *previous line* command `<ctrl-P>` four times. Now, kill the last four lines.

You could move the killed lines to the beginning of your text by typing the *beginning of text* command `<esc><`; however, it is more convenient simply to type the *next window* command `<ctrl-X>N`, which moves you to the beginning of the text as displayed in the next window. MicroEMACS remembers a different cursor position for each window.

Now yank back the four killed lines by typing `<ctrl-Y>`. You can simultaneously observe that the lines have been removed from the end of your text and that they have been restored at the beginning.

Multiple Buffers

Windows are especially helpful when they display more than one text. Remember that at present you are working with *three* buffers, named `example1.c`, `example2.c`, and `example3.c`, although your screen is displaying only the text `example3.c`. To display a different text in a window, use the *switch buffer* command `<ctrl-X>B`.

Type `<ctrl-X>B`. When MicroEMACS asks

Use buffer:

at the bottom of the screen, type `example1.c`. The text in your present window is replaced with `example1.c`. The command line in that window changes, too, to reflect the fact that the buffer and the file names are now `example1.c`.

Moving and Copying Text Among Buffers

It is now very easy to copy text among buffers. To see how this is done, first kill the first line of `example1.c` by typing the `<ctrl-K>` command twice. Yank back the line immediately by typing `<ctrl-Y>`. Remember, the line you killed has *not* been erased from its special storage area, and may be yanked back any number of times.

Now, move to the previous window by typing `<ctrl-X>P`, then yank back the killed line by typing `<ctrl-Y>`. This technique can also be used with the *block kill* command `<ctrl-W>` to move large amounts of text from one buffer to another.

Checking Buffer Status

The *buffer status* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-B>` can be used when you are already displaying more than one window on your screen.

When you want to remove the buffer status window, use either the *one window* command `<ctrl-X>1`, or move your cursor into the buffer status window using the *next window* command `<ctrl-X>N` and replace it with another buffer by typing the *switch buffer* command `<ctrl-X>B`.

Saving Text From Windows

The final step is to save the text from your windows and buffers. Close the lower two windows with the *one window* command `<ctrl-X>1`. Remember, when you close a window, the text that it displayed is still kept in a buffer that is *hidden* from your screen. For now, do *not* save any of these altered texts.

When you use the *save* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>`, only the text in the window in which the cursor is positioned is written to its file. If only one window is displayed on the screen, the *save* command will save only its text.

If you made changes to the text in another buffer, such as moving portions of it to another buffer, MicroEMACS would ask

Quit [y/n]:

If you answer 'n', MicroEMACS will *save* the contents of the buffer you are currently displaying by writing them to your disk, but it will ignore the contents of other buffers, and your cursor will be returned to its previous position in the text. If you answer 'y', MicroEMACS again will save the contents of the current buffer and ignore the other buffers, but you will exit from MicroEMACS and return to Exit from MicroEMACS by typing the *quit* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>`. To begin to create a macro, type the *begin macro* command `<ctrl-X>{`. Be sure to type an open parenthesis '{', not a numeral '9'. MicroEMACS will reply with the message

[Start macro]

Type the following phrase:

MAXNUM

Then type the *end macro* command <ctrl-X>. Be sure you type a close parenthesis ')', not a numeral '0'. MicroEMACS will reply with the message

[End macro]

Move your cursor down two lines and execute the macro by typing the *execute macro* command <ctrl-X>E. The phrase you typed into the macro has been inserted into your text.

If you give these commands in the wrong order, MicroEMACS warns you that you are making a mistake. For example, if you open a keyboard macro by typing <ctrl-X>(, and then attempt to open another keyboard macro by again typing <ctrl-X>(, MicroEMACS will say:

Not now

Should you accidentally open a keyboard macro, or enter the wrong commands into it, you can cancel the entire macro simply by typing <ctrl-G>.

Replacing a Macro

To replace this macro with another, go through the same process. Type <ctrl-X>(, then type the *buffer status* command <ctrl-X><ctrl-B>, and type <ctrl-X>. Remove the buffer status window by typing the *one window* command <ctrl-X>1.

Now execute your keyboard macro by typing the *execute macro* command <ctrl-X>E. The *buffer status* command has executed once more.

Sending Commands to COHERENT

The only remaining commands you need to learn are the *program interrupt* commands <ctrl-X>! and <ctrl-C>. These commands allow you to interrupt your editing, give a command directly to COHERENT, and then resume editing without affecting your text in any way.

The command <ctrl-X>! allows you to send *one* command line (one command, or several commands plus separators) to the operating system. To see how this command works, type <ctrl>! . The prompt ! has appeared at the bottom of your screen. Type **lc**. Observe that the directory's table of contents scrolls across your screen, followed by the message [end]. To return to your editing, simply type a carriage return. The *interrupt* command <ctrl-C> suspends editing indefinitely, and allows you to send an unlimited number of commands to the operating system. To see how this works, type <ctrl-C>. After a moment, the COHERENT system's prompt will appear at the bottom of your screen. Type **time**. The COHERENT system replies by printing the time and date. To resume editing, then simply type <ctrl-D>.

If you wish, you can suspend MicroEMACS's operation, tell the COHERENT system to invoke another copy of the MicroEMACS program, edit a file, then return to your previous editing. To see how this is done, type `<ctrl-C>`. When the prompt appears at the bottom of your screen, type

```
me example1.c
```

It doesn't matter that you are already editing `example1.c`. MicroEMACS will simply copy the `example1.c` file into a new buffer and let you work as if the other MicroEMACS program you just interrupted never existed.

Exit from this second MicroEMACS program by typing the *quit* command `<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>`. Then type `<ctrl-D>`. Your original MicroEMACS program has now been resumed. However, none of the changes you made in the secondary MicroEMACS program will be seen here.

It is not a good idea to use multiple MicroEMACS programs to edit the same program: it is too easy to become confused as to which edits were made to which version.

The only time this is advisable is if you wish to test to see how a certain edit would affect your text: you can create a new MicroEMACS program, test the command, and then destroy the altered buffer and return to your original editing program without having to worry that you might make errors that are difficult to correct.

Now type `<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>` to exit.

Compiling and Debugging Through MicroEMACS

MicroEMACS can be used with the compilation command `cc` to give you a reliable system for debugging new programs.

Often, when you're writing a new program, you face the situation in which you try to compile, but the compiler produces error messages and aborts the compilation. You must then invoke your editor, change the program, close the editor, and try the compilation over again. This cycle of compilation — editing — recompilation can be quite bothersome.

To remove some of the drudgery from compiling, the `cc` command has the *automatic*, or MicroEMACS option, `-A`. When you compile with this option, the MicroEMACS screen editor will be invoked automatically if any errors occur. The error or errors generated during compilation will be displayed in one window, and your text in the other, with the cursor set at the number of the line that the compiler indicated had the error.

Try the following example. Use MicroEMACS to enter the following program, which you should call `error.c`:

```
main() {  
    printf("Hello, world!\n")  
}
```

The semicolon was left off of the `printf` statement, which is an error. Now, try compiling `error.c` with the following `cc` command:

```
cc -A error.c
```

You should see no messages from the compiler because they are all being diverted into a buffer to be used by MicroEMACS. Then MicroEMACS will appear automatically. In one window you should see the message:

```
3: missing ';'

```

and in the other you should see your source code for `error.c`, with the cursor set on line 3.

If you had more than one error, typing `<ctrl-X>` would move you to the next line with an error in it; typing `<ctrl-X><` would return you to the previous error. With some errors, such as those for missing braces or semicolons, the compiler cannot always tell exactly which line the error occurred on, but it will almost always point to a line that is near the source of the error.

Now, correct the error by typing a semicolon at the end of line 2. Close the file by typing `<ctrl-Z>`. `cc` will be invoked again automatically.

`cc` will continue to compile your program either until the program compiles without error, or until you exit from MicroEMACS by typing `<ctrl-U>` followed by `<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>`.

The MicroEMACS Help Facility

MicroEMACS has a built-in help function. With it, you can ask for information either for a word that you type in, or for a word over which the cursor is positioned. The MicroEMACS help file contains the bindings for all library functions and macros included with COHERENT.

For example, consider that you are preparing a C program and want more information about the function `fopen`. Type `<ctrl-X>?`. At the bottom of the screen will appear the prompt

Topic:

Type `fopen`. MicroEMACS will search its help file, find its entry for `fopen`, then open a window and print the following:

```
fopen - Open a stream for standard I/O
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fopen (name, type) char *name, *type;
```

If you wish, you can kill the information in the help window and yank it into your program to ensure that you prepare the function call correctly.

Consider, however, that you are checking a program written earlier, and you wish to check the call to `fopen`. Simply move the cursor until it is positioned over one of the letters in `fopen`, then type `<esc>?`. MicroEMACS will open its help window, and show the same information it did above.

To erase the help window, type `<esc>l`.

Where To Go From Here

For a complete summary of MicroEMACS's commands, see the entry for `me` in the Lexicon. The COHERENT system includes two other editors: the stream editor `sed`, and the interactive line editor `ed`. Each can help you accomplish editing tasks that may not be well suited for MicroEMACS. For more information on these editors, see their tutorials or check their entries in the Lexicon.

Section 12:

nroff, The Text-Formatting Language

nroff is the text formatting program provided with the COHERENT system. Working with **nroff** is easy. You provide both the text you want formatted and commands to control the formatting; the commands are embedded in the lines of text. The **nroff** command will then process the text, following the commands that you embedded in the text, and print the formatted text on the standard output device.

This tutorial describes how to work with **nroff**. It assumes you are familiar with the basic features of the COHERENT system. In particular, you should know what a *command* is, what a *file* is, and how to create and edit a file. If you are not familiar with these concepts, read *Using the COHERENT System* before you read this tutorial. Other relevant COHERENT manuals include the tutorials to the **ed** and MicroEMACS text editors, and the *COHERENT Command Manual* (which gives concise descriptions of COHERENT commands).

What is nroff?

nroff is the text processor for the COHERENT system. A *text processor* is a utility that accepts commands and text, and uses the commands to format the text on a page. The commands may call for simple formatting, such as indenting each new paragraph five spaces, to complex formatting of columns and entire pages.

A file that contains text mixed with **nroff** commands is called a *script*. For example, the following **nroff** script

```
.nr Z 0 5
.nf
I tire of love,
.ti \n+Z
I sometimes tire of rhyme;
.ti \n-Z
But money makes me happy
.ti \n+Z
All the time!
.fi
```

produces the following printed text:

```
  I tire of love,
    I sometimes tire of rhyme;
  But money makes me happy
    All the time!
```

An **nroff** script allows you to change your output very easily. For example, change the minus sign '-' in line 7 of the **nroff** to a plus sign '+', and the formatted text suddenly becomes:

```
  I tire of love,
    I sometimes tire of rhyme;
      But money makes me happy
    All the time!
```

As you can see, **nroff** is a powerful and versatile formatter.

In truth, however, **nroff** is both a text formatter and a text formatting *language*. With **nroff**, you can write your own text-formatting commands to handle automatically the unique requirements of whatever formatting you need.

nroff input and output

Input is what you give to **nroff**. *Output* is what **nroff** returns to you. You can give **nroff** a script that you have written and stored, or you can tell **nroff** to accept input directly from your terminal; you choose either when you invoke **nroff**. In either case, **nroff** normally prints its output on your terminal.

If you simply type

```
nroff
```

then **nroff** accepts input from your keyboard, and prints its output on your screen. For example, if you want **nroff** to process a file named **script.r**, type the command line

```
nroff script.r
```

nroff then takes the file **script.r**, processes it, and in a few moments it displays the formatted text on your screen. Note that the suffix **.r** is used by convention to indicate that a file contains an unprocessed **nroff** script.

You can save **nroff**'s output by *redirecting* it into another file. For example, you can redirect **nroff**'s processed output of the file `script.r` into the file named `target` by using the following command:

```
nroff script.r > target
```

If your COHERENT installation provides a line printer, you can print copies of the output on it; you might use a *pipe* to funnel the output of **nroff**'s activity to the line printer:

```
nroff script.r | lpr
```

As you work through this tutorial, you will discover that you can control all significant aspects of your document's appearance. However, because you control almost everything, **nroff** does very few things without specifically being commanded to do them. It does not automatically leave margins at the top and bottom of pages; it does not automatically number pages; it does not automatically format paragraphs. You must use or create a set of formatting commands, called *macros*, to generate these features. This tutorial will teach you how to write macros that can solve nearly every conceivable formatting problem. As you have seen, too, your copy of the COHERENT system comes with a set of predefined macros, the **-ms** macro package.

The **-ms** Macro Package

A macro package called **-ms** is included with your copy of **nroff**. It provides macros to format paragraphs, produce headers and footers (the areas at the top and bottom of pages, respectively), and perform most other page-formatting tasks. **-ms** is easy to use. The command

```
nroff -ms
```

tells **nroff** to accept input from your keyboard, process it using the **-ms** macro package, and print the output on your screen. The command

```
nroff -ms script.r
```

tells **nroff** to process `script.r` with the **-ms** package and print the output on your terminal; while the command

```
nroff -ms script.r >target
```

redirects the output of **nroff** into the file `target`; and

```
nroff -ms script.r | lpr
```

prints the output on the line printer.

Working with the **-ms** macro package is a good way to gain confidence in working with **nroff** commands. Soon you will learn the correct way to encode **nroff** commands in your scripts.

Using this Tutorial

The only way to learn about **nroff** is to use it. You should type all the examples in this tutorial into your computer and observe how they work. You should also alter the example and examine how your changes affect what **nroff** produces. Don't hesitate to experiment! You can learn more from analyzing why something unexpected happens than you can from simply copying an example that works as you were told it would.

The first section describes how to use **nroff** with the **-ms** macro package. The second section describes how to perform sophisticated formatting. For most users, this chapter contains all the information they need to know.

The rest of the tutorial describes how **nroff** actually works with the input text to produce its output. This will teach you how to write your own **nroff** macros for your special word processing needs.

The **-ms** Macro Package

As explained above, **nroff** is the text formatter for the COHERENT system. You give **nroff** a *script* — that is, text interspersed with commands that control its processing; **nroff**, in turn, formats your text in the manner dictated by your commands.

nroff's most outstanding feature is its flexibility: you can control line length, page offset, page length, paragraph format, beginning- and end-of-page format, and every other aspect of formatting a document.

nroff has built into it a set of basic commands, called *primitives*, that are used to control formatting. A basic formatting function might require several primitives. For example, formatting a new paragraph requires one primitive to force the printing of the fragment of a line left at the end of the previous paragraph; another primitive to skip a blank line; and a third primitive to indent the first line of the new paragraph. If you were to type directly into your script all the primitives required to control every feature of your document, formatting would be a very difficult task, and mistakes would be common.

Fortunately, another feature of **nroff** makes it easier for you to prepare input: **nroff** allows you to bundle together a group of primitives and give the bundle its own name. Such a bundle is called a *macro*. Whenever you want all the commands in that bundle to be executed, you simply insert the name of the macro into the text. For example, you might group the primitives needed to format a paragraph, and call that bundle **PP**. Then, instead of retyping the primitives, all you need to do is insert the command **.PP** before the start of a paragraph.

-ms is a package of macros that are ready for you to use. When you include the option **-ms** on the **nroff** command line, **nroff** automatically uses the macros that have been defined in the **-ms** package. These macros will take care of setting line length and page length, numbering pages, formatting paragraphs, and all other formatting tasks. You do not need to know how **nroff**'s primitives are used in the macros; you only need to know the names of the macros and what they do, so that you can insert them correctly into your text.

Using the `-ms` package is a good way to become accustomed to preparing input for `nroff`, so that the features of the primitives will not seem so alien when you eventually choose to work with them. When you become familiar with `nroff`, you may wish to your own macro packages, to handle the unique requirements of different types of documents. For now, however, you will find that the `-ms` package will get you up and running with `nroff`.

Text and Commands

`nroff` input includes both *text* and *commands*. The commands control the processing of the text. `nroff` distinguishes between text and commands by looking at the first character of each input line. If that character is a period or an apostrophe, the line is a *command*; otherwise, it is *text*.

Earlier in this tutorial, you used the `-ms` package to format a text file that had already been prepared for you. To become more accustomed to using `nroff`, try entering the following text into a file that can be formatted later. Use a text editor (either `ed` or `MicroEMACS`) to create a file named `script2.r` that contains the following text. It is important for this exercise that you break up the lines as they are shown here:

```
London. Michaelmas Term lately over,
and the Lord Chancellor sitting in
Lincoln's Inn Hall. Implacable November weather.
As much mud in the streets, as if the waters
had but newly retired from the face of the
earth, and it would not be wonderful to meet
a Megalosaurus, forty feet long or so, waddling
like an elephantine lizard up Holborn Hill.
```

Note that this file contains no commands; every line is a text line. Process the file with the command:

```
nroff script.r | scat
```

The output is piped to `scat` so that it will not all rush past your screen. `nroff` will process the text, and in a moment you will see the following:

```
London. Michaelmas Term lately over, and the Lord Chan-
cellor sitting in Lincoln's Inn Hall. Implacable November
weather. As much mud in the streets, as if the waters had
but newly retired from the face of the earth, and it would
not be wonderful to meet a Megalosaurus, forty feet long or
so, waddling like an elephantine lizard up Holborn Hill.
```

When you see this example, the spacing will be different; the spacing for the examples in this tutorial is adjusted to conform to the rest of the tutorial text. Notice that `nroff` automatically adjusts the spacing between words to justify the right margin, even though the input text has a ragged right margin. Each output line contains 65 characters, and each output page contains 66 lines.

Now try processing `script.r` again, this time with the `-ms` macro package. Type

```
nroff -ms script.r
```

As you can see, `nroff` again adjusted the spacing to keep a strict right margin. Each line was indented with ten leading spaces, followed by 65 characters of text. The pages output by both the `nroff` command and the `nroff -ms` command both contain 66 lines, but the page built with the `-ms` package left blank lines at the top of the page and printed the page number in a blank space at the bottom of the page. When `nroff` constructs its output, it assumes that your printer prints ten characters per inch (Pica, or 10-pitch spacing) and six lines per inch. Given these assumptions, each page of output from `nroff -ms` fits onto an 8-1/2 by 11 inch page, with an inch of blank space at the top, at the bottom, and on each side.

As this example shows, `nroff` adjusts the spacing between words to keep a strict right margin. When you type in the text, don't worry about the right margin. You must, however, keep a strict left margin, because when `nroff` encounters a line of text that begins with blank spaces, it breaks the line it was working on and begins a new, indented line.

Also, do not hyphenate words; if you do, `nroff` treats each part as a separate "word" (the first ending with the hyphen character), rather than keeping them joined, as you want.

`nroff` normally interprets as a command every line that begins with a *period* or an *apostrophe*. However, to include an initial apostrophe or period as a literal part of your document, you must place the characters `\&` before the period or apostrophe.

The remainder of this will show you how to use commands in input text to change the appearance of the output. You can control many aspects of the printed document simply by including the appropriate commands within your text.

Command Names

The name of every `nroff` primitive consists of two lower-case letters. Some commands can also include additional information, or *arguments*. For example, `.sp` is the command to leave vertical space between output lines. The command line

```
.sp
```

leaves one space, whereas

```
.sp 2
```

leaves two spaces. The information that follows the command name on the command line is an argument. Each macro defined in the `-ms` macro package is named with one or two upper-case letters. For example, `.PP` is the name of the macro that begins a new paragraph.

Paragraphs

Every time you want to begin a new paragraph, enter the *paragraph* command `.PP`; that is, place the command line `.PP` in the text. To test this macro, enter the following text under the name `script3.r`:

```
.PP
It is a truth universally acknowledged,
that a single man in possession of a good fortune,
must be in want of a wife.
.PP
However little known the feelings or views of such
a man may be on first entering a neighbourhood, the
truth is so well fixed in the minds of the surrounding
families, that he is considered as the rightful
property of some one or the other of their daughters.
```

When you process this text with the command

```
nroff -ms script3.r >script3.p
```

the result, when displayed, resembles the following:

```
It is a truth universally acknowledged, that a single
man in possession of a good fortune, must be in want of a
wife.
```

```
However little known the feelings or views of such a man
may be on first entering a neighbourhood, the truth is so
well fixed in the minds of the surrounding families, that
he is considered as the rightful property of some one or the
other of their daughters.
```

As the output shows, the `.PP` command inserts a blank line before beginning a new paragraph, and indents the first line of the new paragraph by half an inch.

The `-ms` package also provides another paragraph format: the `.IP` command. This macro creates an *indented paragraph*. The `.PP` macro indents only the first line of each paragraph; however, `.IP` indents every line *except* the first. For example,

```
.IP
This is an indented paragraph.
All the lines are indented by
the same amount.
.PP
This is a normal paragraph.
nroff indents the first line
but does not indent the following lines.
```

gives the output

This is an indented paragraph. All the lines are indented by the same amount.

This is a normal paragraph. `nroff` indents the first line but does not indent the following lines.

Several options are available for the basic `.IP` macro. You can add two *arguments* to it. `nroff` interprets the first argument after the `.IP` as a *tag* to the paragraph, and it interprets the second argument as the amount of indentation you want. For example,

```
.IP A. 8
This is the first line of text.
nroff indents the following lines by the same
amount as the first.
The indent is eight spaces.
The paragraph includes a tag in the indent.
```

produces

```
A.      This is the first line of text. nroff indents the
        following lines by the same amount as the first. The
        indent is eight spaces. The paragraph includes a tag in
        the indent.
```

You must make sure the indent leaves enough spaces for the tag. If the tag contains blank spaces, enclose it within quotation marks. To see how this works, enter the following script under the title `script4.r`:

```
.IP "King Lear:" 16
Is man no more than this?
Consider him well.
Thou owest the worm no silk,
the beast no hide,
the sheep no wool,
the cat no perfume...
Unaccommodated man is no more
but such a poor, bare, forked
animal as thou art.
```

When processed with the command

```
nroff -ms script4.r >script4.p
```

you see:

```
King Lear:      Is man no more than this? Consider him well. Thou
                owest the worm no silk, the beast no hide, the sheep
                no wool, the cat no perfume... Unaccommodated man
                is no more but such a poor, bare, forked animal as
```

thou art.

As this example shows, this form of the **.IP** macro can be used to format the script for a play.

If you do not want a tag, but merely wish to set the indentation to something other than the default setting of five spaces, then use a pair of quotation marks with nothing between them for the first field:

```
.IP "" 8
```

If you forget the quotation marks, you will not get what you expect: **nroff** will interpret '8' as a tag and use the normal indentation of five spaces.

Once you set the amount of indentation, the new indentation stays in effect until you change it again. For example, if you format a paragraph with

```
.IP "" 8
```

and follow it with another paragraph that begins with **.IP**, **nroff** will also indent the second paragraph by eight spaces. ~~The indentation will remain in effect until you explicitly change it — for example, by beginning a paragraph with~~

```
.IP "" 6
```

which resets the indent to six spaces.

Normally, **nroff** measures the paragraph indentation from the left margin. Another variation of **IP** allows you to measure the indentation of a new indented paragraph from the left-hand edge of a previous indented paragraph, thus producing *relative indentation*. To do this, enclose the new paragraph between the macros **RS** and **RE** (for relative indent start and relative indent end). Copy the following script into the file **script5.r**:

```
.IP
And it came to pass in an eveningtide,
that David arose from off his bed ...
and from the roof he saw a woman washing
herself; and the woman was very beautiful
to look upon. And David sent and enquired
after the woman. And one said,
.RS
.IP
Is not this Bathsheba, the daughter of Eliam,
the wife of Uriah the Hittite?
.RE
.IP
And David sent messengers and took her; and
she came in unto him, and he ...
and she returned unto her house.
```

When processed through **nroff** with the command

```
nroff -ms script5.r >script5.p
```

the output resembles the following:

And it came to pass in an eveningtide, that David arose from off his bed ... and from the roof he saw a woman washing herself; and the woman was very beautiful to look upon. And David sent and enquired after the woman. And one said,

Is not this Bathsheba, the daughter of Eliam, the wife of Uriah the Hittite?

And David sent messengers and took her; and she came in unto him, and he ... and she returned unto her house.

You can include any number of indented paragraphs between **.RS** and **.RE**. Also, you can specify tags and different indents just as for ordinary indented paragraphs. You can even nest **.RS** and **.RE** pairs inside each other to produce multiple relative indents. Just remember that an **.RS** must always be balanced by an **.RE**. Type the following into the file **script6.r** to see how **nroff** handles nested flashbacks:

```
.IP
In England during World War II, a captain tells the
story of his Free French bomber squadron.
.RS
.IP
In the early days of the war, a French ship picks up
five men adrift in a small boat. One tells of their
life on Devil's Island.
.RS
.IP
A convict tells others of his past.
.RS
.IP
Publication of anti-Nazi material leads to arrest on
false charges.
.RE
.IP
The convicts escape to help France in the war.
.RE
.IP
When France surrenders, the crew overpowers pro-Vichy
officers and heads for England instead of Marseilles.
.RE
.IP
The captain concludes his story as the bombers return
from a mission.
```

When you process this file with the `-ms` package, the output file `script6.p` should resemble the following:

In England during World War II, a captain tells the story of his Free French bomber squadron.

In the early days of the war, a French ship picks up five men adrift in a small boat. One tells of their life on Devil's Island.

A convict tells others of his past.

Publication of anti-Nazi material leads to arrest on false charges.

The convicts escape to help France in the war.

When France surrenders, the crew overpowers pro-Vichy officers and heads for England instead of Marseilles.

The captain concludes his story as the bombers return from a mission.

As you can see, each `.RE` command peels away the current layer of indentation and moves you into the previous one. To return to an even earlier level, you must input the appropriate number of `.RE` commands before you begin a paragraph.

A third type of paragraph is the *quoted* paragraph. It produces a paragraph that is indented on both on the right side and on the left side, in order to set off a quotation from the surrounding text. To produce such a paragraph, precede it with the `.QS` macro and follow it with the `.QE` macro. To break the quotation into different sections, insert a blank line in the text before each line that you want to begin a new section. For example, type the following example as `script7.r`:

1. Through The Mandelbrot Set With Rod and Gun
with numbering starting at one.

Title Page

If you want your output to begin with a title page, begin the input with the following.

```
.TL  
Title of Document (may be more than one line)  
.AU  
Name(s) of Author(s) (may be more than one line)  
.AI  
Institution(s) of Author(s)  
.AB  
Abstract (line length 5.5 inches)  
.AE
```

The **.TL** macro indicates the *title*, the **.AU** macro indicates the *author*, the **.AI** macro indicates the *author's institution*, and the **.AB** macro precedes the *abstract*. The **.AE** macro, for *abstract end*, marks the end of the abstract. If you do not want some of these headings to appear, simply omit the relevant macros. Begin the body of the document immediately after the **.AE** macro. The body must begin with a formatting command, such as **.PP** or **.SH**.

Note that the *end abstract* macro **.AE** also prints today's date automatically. To do so, **nroff** reads the date as encoded in the COHERENT system. Before you use these macros, be sure that you have set the correct date in the COHERENT system.

To see how these macros work, type the following script into file **script8.r**:

.TL

Tickling in the Therapy of
von Muenchausen's Syndrome

.AU

P. R. Sanserif

.AI

The Department of Parapsychology
The University of Southern North Dakota
at Hoople

.AB

Study of 150 subjects (75 men and 76 women)
indicated that hard tickling may prove beneficial
to patients with von Muenchausen's syndrome.
Applications for a seven-figure grant have been
made to continue research in this area.

.AE

.PP

Due to complications in our experiment, this paper
has now been withdrawn.

After processing with the `-ms` macro package, you will see that in the outputfile `script8.p`, `nroff` placed the text on the same page as the title information. You may or may not want this to happen. If you do not, one solution is to insert two additional commands between the `.AE` macro and the body of your text:

.PP

.bp

Headers and Footers

The *header* macro controls the format of the top of each page. It automatically skips one inch at the top of the page. The *footer* macro controls the format of the bottom of each page. It stops printing text one inch above the bottom of the page, and prints the page number.

It is easy to print either a page header or a page footer. Both the page header and the page footer are three-part titles: `nroff` prints the first part on the left side of the page, the second part in the middle, and the third part on the right side of the page. The parts of the header title are named:

LT: left, top

CT: center, top

RT: right, top

and the parts of the footer title are named:

LF: left, footer
CF: center, footer
RF: right, footer

These parts are called *strings*. A later section of this tutorial describes strings in detail. Normally, these strings are undefined, except for CF, which prints the current page number; therefore, the header macro normally prints nothing, and the footer macro prints only the page number in the center of the block of space at the bottom of each page. However, you can set any portion of the header or footer to print what you like. To set the left portion of the header, for example, type the following:

```
.ds LT "Walnuts in History"
```

Note that you do *not* type a period before the LT. After you define LT in this fashion, **nroff** will print

```
Walnuts in History
```

at the top of each page on the left-hand side. If you want the date to appear on the right-hand side of the header, type:

```
.ds RT "\*(Ds"
```

The string Ds is automatically set to today's date, as set on your COHERENT system. A later section of this tutorial will present strings in detail. For now, all you need to know is that whenever you want **nroff** to insert today's date into your script automatically, just type the entry `*(Ds`. This entry does *not* have to be at the beginning of a line to work.

Use the same procedure to define the strings in the footer title. If you want something other than the page number to appear in the position allocated to CF, use the `.ds` primitive to redefine CF. If you want nothing to appear there, type

```
.ds CF ""
```

Wherever you want the current page number to appear in the header or footer, use the symbol `'%'`. For example, if you want the page number to appear in the upper right-hand corner of each page, type

```
.ds RT "Page %"
```

Be sure to type in all of the macros to define headers and footers *before* you begin to type in your text. Otherwise, your headers and footers will not appear on the first page of the formatted output.

To see how this works, try editing the file `script1.r`. At the top, insert the macro

```
.ds RT "\*(Ds"
```

and reprocess the file using the `-ms` macro package. Each output page should have today's date written in the upper right-hand corner.

Fonts

nroff normally prints ordinary, or "Roman", characters. In addition, **nroff** can print **boldface** and *italic* characters. Each of the three styles of type — Roman, boldface, and italic — is called a *font*, in keeping with typesetting terminology.

nroff prints each boldface and italic character by generating a special three-character output sequence. It prints the boldface character *c*, for example, by printing a 'c', then the backspace character <ctrl-H>, and then another 'c'. This sequence emphasizes 'c' by forcing your printer to print it twice. **nroff** represents an italic character *c* with the underscore character '_', followed by the backspace character <ctrl-H>, followed by 'c'.

Because of these special representations, the appearance of **nroff** boldface and italic fonts depends on the device on which you see the output. On your terminal, the <ctrl-H> backspaces the cursor, and the third character of each sequence replaces the first; therefore, boldface and italic characters appear the same as Roman characters. On a printer, the appearance depends on the characteristics of the printer. The COHERENT system provides a *filter* or a *printer driver* to print boldface and italic character sequences appropriately on certain devices.

The **-ms** macro package includes three commands for easy printing in specific fonts: the *boldface* command **.B**, the *italic* command **.I**, and the *Roman* command **.R**. To print a single word in boldface, do the following:

```
The last word is printed in
.B boldface.
```

Likewise for italics:

```
The last word is printed in
.I italics.
```

These examples printed a word in a different font. You can print several words in a different font by enclosing the words within quotation marks on the command line:

```
This sentence ends with
.B "three bold words".
```

You can also switch fonts by using one of the font commands with nothing after it on the command line. For example,

```
.B
This entire sentence is printed in boldface.
.R
```

or

```
.I
This entire sentence is printed in italics.
.R
```

In these examples, the Roman font command **.R** is needed to return to the normal font after completing the boldface or italic text.

On rare occasions, you might want different parts of one word to be in different fonts. You cannot use the `-ms` macros to produce mixed-font words directly. A later section of this tutorial gives additional information about `nroff` fonts. As explained there, the input

```
This manual describes \fBnroff\fr's powerful features.
```

produces the output:

```
This manual describes nroff's powerful features.
```

The word `nroff` is boldface but the following apostrophe and 's' are Roman.

Special Characters

A few characters have special meaning to `nroff`. You should be aware of these characters if you want `nroff` to process your text properly.

As mentioned earlier, the period and the apostrophe introduce `nroff` command lines. Each is a special character if it is the *first non-space character* on an input line. If you wish to use a period or an apostrophe at the start of an input line simply as part of your text, you must precede it with a backslash and ampersand “\&”. For example, the input

```
The footnote command
.DS
\&.FT
.DE
generates footnotes for you automatically.
```

produces the output

```
The footnote command
.FT
generates footnotes for you automatically.
```

Neither the period nor the apostrophe is a special character unless it is the first non-space character on a line.

The most important special character for `nroff` is the backslash ‘\’. It changes the meaning of the following character or characters. If you simply want a backslash to appear as part of your text, you must follow it with the letter ‘e’; that is, use “\e” in your input to have ‘\’ appear in your output. Later sections of this tutorial describe other special uses for backslash.

Footnotes

You can place footnotes between the *footnote start* command `.FS` and the *footnote end* command `.FE`, as in the following example:

```
.FS
*MicroKVETCH Electronic Nag is a
copyrighted trademark of Caveat Emptor
Software, Inc.
.FE
```

You should insert each footnote into your text where the reference to it occurs; **nroff** will see to it that the footnote appears at the bottom of the correct page. Footnotes should be inserted as follows:

```
The notion that we have been visited
by visitors from outer space may seem
outlandish(1)
```

```
.FS
1. Raucus J, O'Hooligan R: "Viruses
from Venus?" \fIJ Earth Med Assoc\fR,
1985;36:412-414.
```

```
.FE
but reason compels us to exclude no ...
```

The journal article cited in the footnote will appear at the bottom of the page, with the journal name in italics.

Displays and Keeps

A *display* is a portion of text, such as a graph or a table, that should appear in the output exactly as it is typed in the input. **nroff** normally alters the spacings between elements in your text, which, of course, would destroy the appearance of a display. Therefore, **nroff** has macros to tell it that a portion of text is a display, and so not to alter spacings between elements or split it between two pages. These macros are the *display start* macro **.DS** and the *display end* macro **.DE**. You should your display between these macros, as follows:

```
.DS
The text of the display goes here,
exactly
as
you
want
it
to appear in the output.
.DE
```

The **.DS** macro comes in three varieties. The *display start centered* macro **.DS C** centers every line of your display. Because **nroff** centers each line individually, both right and left margins are ragged. The *display start block-centered* macro **.DS B** takes the entire display at once and centers it. You can think of this as simply shifting the display to the right by an appropriate amount. The *display start indented* macro **.DS I** indents the entire display by half an inch.

If your display is longer than one page, do not use `.DS` or any of its variants. Instead, begin the display with one of the following.

The *centered display* macro `.CD` centers each line of the display. The *block-centered display* macro `.BD` considers the entire display as a block and centers it. The *left display* macro `.LD` performs no indenting or centering, but simply begins each line at the left margin. Finally, the *indented display* macro `.ID` indents each line by half an inch. If you begin the display with one of these macros, do *not* end it with `.DE`; rather, just type `.PP` or `.SH` or whatever other macro is needed at that point.

To see how displays work, type the following into the file `script9.r` and process it with the `-ms` macro package:

```
.PP
.DS C
Tyger! Tyger! burning bright
In the forests of the night,
What immortal hand or eye
Could frame thy fearful symmetry?
Burma Shave
.DE
```

When the output file `script9.p` is read, the results will appear as follows:

```
Tyger! Tyger! burning bright
  In the forests of the night,
    What immortal hand or eye
  Could frame thy fearful symmetry?
    Burma Shave
```

You must remember one important fact when you use display macros: the normal length of output lines is 6.5 inches, but if the display contains lines longer than this `nroff` simply prints them as they are. If a line is too long to fit onto the page, `nroff` extends it as far as possible to the right and then wraps the remainder of the line onto the next, without using a line indent. The effect can be quite unsightly. The only restriction on what you can safely put in a display, then, is that lines should be no longer than 6.5 inches. If you are using an indented display, lines should be no longer than six inches.

A *keep* is a display macro: you put text between the *keep start* macro `.KS` and the *keep end* macro `.KE` when you want it all kept on the same page. If you put a block of text between these macros that proves to be longer than one page, `nroff` moves the excess text onto a new page.

The major difference between the *keep* and the *display* is that normal processing occurs in the *keep*: `nroff` adjusts spacings between words, hyphenates words, justifies lines, and performs all other formatting tasks, just as it normally does.

Other Commands

Several of **nroff**'s primitives can be used with the **-ms** macro package. The primitive

```
.sp N
```

skips *N* lines on the output page; for example, **.sp 4** skips four lines.

The *begin page* primitive **.bp** tells **nroff** to begin a new page, no matter where it is on the current page.

The remaining sections of this tutorial provide more information about these other **nroff** primitives.

Introducing **nroff**'s Primitives

The rest of this tutorial describe **nroff**'s *basic commands* — the commands that are “built in” to **nroff**, and that are used to build macros. These basic macros, which are also called *primitives*, form **nroff**'s *text formatting language*. Once you have mastered the primitives, you will be able to write macros to control automatically even the most difficult text formatting tasks.

The rest of this tutorial includes a number of exercises. You should type them into your system and execute them as described in the tutorial; this will greatly increase the rate at which you master **nroff**. None of the following examples should be processed with the **-ms** macro package; the purpose of this portion of the tutorial is to teach you how to create your own text processing routines, rather than how to use ones that have already been written.

Page Format

When deciding how to process text, you must first decide how to position the text on the printed page. You must control line length, left and right margins, page offset (i.e., how far from the left edge of the page each line begins), and page length. Controlling these functions is quite easy with the appropriate **nroff** commands.

The *line length* primitive **.ll** controls the line length; and the *page offset* command **.po** controls the page offset. If you are writing an **nroff** script, you should include these commands before the beginning of your text, so that **nroff** can put them into effect immediately. The following example uses a line length of three inches and a page offset of two inches. Type this into your system under the name **ex1.r**. Note, by the way, that the text to the right of the characters “\” is a *comment*, and there is no need for you to type it into your system:

```
.ll 3i      \" set line length
.po 2i      \" set page offset
```

Along outside of the front fence ran the country road, dusty in the summertime, and a good place for snakes -- they liked to lie in it and sun themselves; when they were rattlesnakes or puff adders, we killed them; when they were black snakes, or racers, or belonged to the fabled "hoop" breed, we fled, without shame; when they were "house snakes", or "garters", we carried them home and put them in Aunt Patsy's work basket for a surprise; for she was prejudiced against snakes, and always when she took the basket in her lap and they began to climb out of it it disordered her mind.

Process this script by typing the command

```
nroff ex1.r >ex1.p
```

From this point on, you should *not* use the `-ms` macro package with your `nroff` examples. When you display the output stored in the file `ex1.p`, you will see that the length of each line is three inches, and each line begins two inches from the left-hand margin.

As you noticed, line length and page offset were set in *inches*. `nroff` output can be controlled using a number of different units of measurements, including inches, number of characters, or lines, or *machine units*. A following section discusses `nroff` units of measurement in detail.

As noted above, this example contains two *comments*. `nroff` ignores any text that appears on a line after "`\`". You should use comments, for the benefit of anyone who must read your `nroff` script (including yourself). The above example used the comments

```
\" set line length
\" set page offset
```

to help you understand the `.ll` and `.po` commands. Judicious comments can make a complex script much easier to understand.

Breaks

Before you look at the *break* primitive `.br`, it is helpful to examine how `nroff` constructs a finished line of output. Suppose, for example, that you tell `nroff` that you want each output line to be five inches long. `nroff` takes your input one word at a time, and attempts to squeeze that word into the space that has not yet been taken up in the line. When `nroff` finally picks up a word that is too large to fit into the amount of space left in the line, it either puts the word aside entirely, or hyphenates the word and places the hyphenated portion into the line. `nroff` then inserts extra blank spaces between the words to justify the line. The *break* primitive `.br`, however, tells `nroff` to print whatever words have already been put into the line, even if they do not form a complete line, and without performing right justification.

The idea of a break might seem strange at first, but you are familiar with a simple example: the end of a paragraph. You do not want the start of a new paragraph to be on the same line as the end of the previous paragraph; you want to print the end of the previous paragraph whether or not it fills a complete line; and you want to begin the new paragraph on a new line. As you will learn later, some **nroff** commands cause breaks automatically; you should be aware of this when you use them.

Fill and Adjust Modes

Two terms describe how **nroff** processes your input to create its output: *filling*, and *adjusting* or *justifying*. Unless you order it not to, **nroff** operates in the *fill* and *adjust* modes. The *no-fill* primitive **.nf** tells **nroff** to stop using fill mode. The *fill* primitive **.fi** tells it to resume using the fill mode. In a similar way, the *adjust* primitive **.ad** tells **nroff** to use adjust mode, whereas the *no adjust* primitive **.na** tells it to use no-adjust mode.

As mentioned above, **nroff** by default is in both fill mode and adjust mode, so you do not need to begin your script with **.fi** and **.ad** if you want **nroff** to fill and adjust your text. However, if you turn off filling and adjusting by using the **.nf** and **.na** commands, you must use the **.fi** and **.ad** commands to turn filling and adjusting back on.

When you use **.nf** to turn off fill mode, **nroff** no longer tries to fill lines to a fixed line length. It prints each line of input text exactly as received. However, a sufficiently long line of text run off the right-hand edge of the page if **nroff** were to print it as entered. If the input line cannot fit on one line, **nroff** prints as much as it can fit on one line, then breaks the line and prints the rest on the next line with no page offset.

In adjust mode, **nroff** inserts extra spaces between words to justify lines of text, as described above. When **nroff** is in no-fill mode, it is automatically in no-adjust mode: with no fixed line length, there is no need to insert extra spaces. *Moral:* you can fill without adjusting, but you cannot adjust without filling.

If you request filling but not adjusting, **nroff** fills the output line as described earlier, but does not insert extra spaces between words; that is, it does not try to keep an even right margin. Every output line either is shorter than the line length you specified, or exactly as long.

The **.ad** primitive includes several options. If you use the command **.ad** without an argument, **nroff** keeps strict left and right margins. The primitive **.ad l** justifies the left margin only; **.ad r** justifies the right margin only; and **.ad b** justifies both margins (this, of course, is the default). Finally, **.ad c** centers output lines while keeping their lengths less than or equal to the specified length.

Remember that **nroff** ignores adjustment requests if you are in no-fill mode. If **nroff** is in fill mode and you request any variety of adjustment, it adjusts accordingly until you issue either a no-fill or a no-adjust command. If you give a no-fill command, only a fill command restores adjustment; any plea for a different kind of adjustment is ignored while **nroff** is in no-fill mode.

To see how this works, type the following script under the name **ex2.r**, and process it as above:

```
.ll 3.75i
.sp      \" space
When we were alone, I introduced the subject
of death, and endeavored to maintain that the fear
of it might be got over. I told [Johnson] that
David Hume said to me, he was no more uneasy to
think that he should not be after this life, than
that he had not been before he began to exist.
.sp
.na      \"no adjust
JOHNSON: "Sir, if he really thinks so,
his perceptions are disturbed;
he is mad: if he does not think so, he
lies .... When he dies, he at
least gives up all he has."
.sp
.ad r    \"right-adjust
BOSWELL: "Foote, sir, told me that
he was not afraid to die."
.sp
.nf      \"no-fill
JOHNSON: "It is not true, sir.
Hold a pistol to Foote's
breast or to Hume's breast,
and threaten to kill them,
and you'll see how they behave."
.sp
.fi      \"fill
BOSWELL: "But may we not fortify our minds for
the approach of death?"
.sp
JOHNSON: "No, sir, let it alone. It matters not
how a man
dies, but how he lives. The act of dying is not of
importance, it lasts so short a time .... A man
knows it must be so, and submits.
It will do him no good to whine."
```

When you process this input with **nroff**, your output should look like this:

When we were alone, I introduced the subject of death, and endeavored to maintain that the fear of it might be got over. I told [Johnson] that David Hume said to me, he was no more uneasy to think that he should not be after this life, than that he had not been before he began to exist.

JOHNSON: "Sir, if he really thinks so, his perceptions are disturbed; he is mad: if he does not think so, he lies When he dies, he at least gives up all he has."

BOSWELL: "Foote, sir, told me that he was not afraid to die."

JOHNSON: "It is not true, sir. Hold a pistol to Foote's breast or to Hume's breast, and threaten to kill them, and you'll see how they behave."

BOSWELL: "But may we not fortify our minds for the approach of death?"

JOHNSON: "No, sir, let it alone. It matters not how a man dies, but how he lives. The act of dying is not of importance, it lasts so short a time A man knows it must be so, and submits. It will do him no good to whine."

After the `.na` primitive, `nroff` fills but does not adjust the second paragraph. After `.adr`, it fills and right adjusts the third paragraph. After `.nf`, it neither fills nor adjusts the fourth paragraphs. Finally, after `.fi`, it fills the fifth and sixth paragraphs and uses the `.adr` adjust option that was in effect previously.

Under certain extreme conditions, `nroff` cannot adjust a line even though it is in adjust mode. If, for example, you specified a line length of one inch, a seven-letter or eight-letter word would then take up most of a line. When such a word was then followed by a word that could not fit into the line after it, `nroff` would begin a new line with the second word rather than violate the right margin by inserting the into the line. When a line has only one word in it, `nroff` obviously cannot adjust the line by inserting extra spaces between words; therefore, the right margin is left uneven, as though `nroff` were in no-adjust mode.

Defining Paragraphs

What happens if you copy text from several pages of a book into a file without adding any formatting commands, and then process the file with `nroff`? There is no page offset, because `nroff`'s default page-offset setting is zero; and the processed lines are set to the default length of 6.5 inches (65 Pica characters).

More interesting things happen with paragraphs. Suppose you skip a line between paragraphs and begin each paragraph by indenting five spaces. The blank line in the input text causes a break, and forces `nroff` to print a blank line. The last line of each paragraph is unadjusted, and a blank line appears before the next paragraph. Initial blank spaces in a line of input also cause a break. In this example, the breaks caused by initial blank spaces at the beginning of each paragraph do nothing, because the preceding blank line forces out the last line of the preceding paragraph. `nroff` always considers initial blank spaces in a line to be significant, and preserves them in the output.

To see how blank lines and initial spaces affect `nroff`'s output, copy the following example and run it through `nroff`:

```
        Here is a little text so you can see
        whether nroff will ignore the initial
        indentation
                in this very very long sentence.
Here is a little bit more text.
```

```
                And here is something to mimic
        the beginning of a new paragraph.
```

The output should look like this:

```
        Here is a little text so you can see whether nroff will
        ignore the initial indentation
                in this very very long sentence. Here is a little
        bit more text.
```

```
                And here is something to mimic the beginning of a new
        paragraph.
```

Instead of leaving a blank line in the text, you could use the *space primitive* `.sp 1`, which causes a break and inserts one blank line into the output. In a similar way, `.sp 5` causes a break and inserts five blank lines in the output. Edit the example and replace the blank line with the command line:

```
.sp 1
```

You will see that it has the same effect. You can also use the form `.sp`; `nroff` assumes you want one space if you omit the argument.

Most `nroff` input consists of many paragraphs that contain text, and you probably want each paragraph to have the same format in the output. Rather than formatting each paragraph explicitly, as in this example, you can use the *macro facility* of `nroff` to define a sequence of commands to format a paragraph. Macros are described in detail later in this tutorial.

Centering

The *center* primitive `.ce` centers one or more lines of text. For example, you can center a two-line heading as follows:

```
.ce 2
Heading Printed
In Center of Page
```

If you use the `.ce` command with no argument, **nroff** assumes a default argument of one, and centers only the next line of input. The command `ce 0` cancels any earlier centering command that is in operation.

Tabs

If your **nroff** input includes tables, you may find it convenient to use tabs to separate items in a line of the table. **nroff** recognizes the `<tab>` character and expands it into spaces. If you use tabs to format a table, remember to use no-fill mode; otherwise, **nroff** tries to fill and adjust your output lines.

By default, **nroff** sets a tab stops after every eight characters. You can use the *tab* primitive `.ta` to change the positions of the tab stops. For example,

```
.ta 10 20 30 40 50 60
```

sets tab stops ten characters apart rather than eight. `.ta` can also be used to fix tab stops in inches rather than after a number of characters; for example,

```
.ta 0.8i 2.0i
```

sets tab stops after 0.8 inches and 2.0 inches on the output line. This is quite helpful when you are designing a table.

You can use the *tab character* command `.tc` to change the character **nroff** prints between its current position and the next tab stop. Enter the following text to see how this primitive works:

```
.ta 9 19 29 39
.tc *
.nf
<tab>1<tab>2<tab>3<tab>4
```

The output file, `ex3.p`, should appear as follows:

```
*****1*****2*****3*****4
```

Page Breaks

The *begin page* primitive `.bp` causes a break and forces `nroff` to the next output page. By default, `nroff` assumes a page length of 11 inches (66 lines). You can change the page length with the *page length* command `.pl`. For example,

```
.pl 2i
```

specifies a two-inch page length.

At this point, the question arises about how `nroff` top and bottom page margins, number pages, and other and other aspects of page layout. The answer is that `nroff` merely keeps track of the current output page number and the current line number on the current output page; designing top and bottom margins, page headers and footers, and other aspects of page layout is up to you.

Can `nroff` execute a set of commands whenever it reaches a certain position on the page? This would solve the problem of producing top and bottom margins, and you would not have to guess where to insert the commands in your script. In fact, you can tell `nroff` to do this, by using *traps*. The next section of this tutorial describes macros and traps and how to use them to format a page.

Macros and Traps

This section presents `nroff` macros: how to write them, how to tell `nroff` to execute them at a give point on every output page, and how to install a macro file under the COHERENT system

As with previous sections, this one uses a number of exercises. Working the exercises will help you master `nroff` quickly. When you format the exercise scripts, do not use the `-ms` option. Also, it is not necessary for you to copy the comments into your system; they are here to help you understand what each `nroff` command does, but they have no effect on how the script executes.

What Is a Macro?

To become familiar with the idea of a *macro*, consider the problem of formatting a paragraph. Whenever you come to a new paragraph, you want `nroff` to skip a line and indent the first line five spaces. Because `nroff` preserves blank lines and initial indentations, you could force `nroff` to break your text into paragraphs simply by inserting a blank line and spaces directly into your text. The same effect, however, can be achieved by inserting following set of `nroff` commands

```
.br          \" break  
.sp          \" skip a line  
.ti 5       \" indent next line 5 spaces
```

between the end of each paragraph and the start of the next paragraph. You should recognize the first two commands: `.br` causes a break, so that `nroff` prints the last line of the previous paragraph even though it might not be a complete line; `.sp` skips a line before the next paragraph begins. The third command is the *temporary indent* command

.ti, which tells **nroff** to indent the next line; the number indicates how many spaces to indent. The following exercise, **ex4.r**, demonstrates how this works:

```
.ll 31          \" line length
.po 3i         \" page offset
.ti 5          \" indent next line
Adam was human--this explains it all.  He did
not want the apple for the apple's sake, he
wanted it because it was forbidden.  The mistake
was in not forbidding the serpent; then he would
have eaten the serpent.
.br           \" break
.sp          \" skip a line
.ti 5        \" indent next line
Training is everything.  The peach was once a bitter
almond; cauliflower is nothing but cabbage with a
college education.
.br
.sp
.ti 5
Habit is habit, and not to be flung out of the window
by any man, but coaxed downstairs a step at a time.
```

After you have processed this file, the output file **ex4.p** should resemble the following:

Adam was human--this explains it all. He did not want the apple for the apple's sake, he wanted it because it was forbidden. The mistake was in not forbidding the serpent; then he would have eaten the serpent.

Training is everything. The peach was once a bitter almond; cauliflower is nothing but cabbage with a college education.

Habit is habit, and not to be flung out of the window by any man, but coaxed downstairs a step at a time.

Now, in a small file it would be easy to type all of the **nroff** primitives directly into your input text; however, what if your file is very long, with hundreds of paragraphs? Every time you wanted to begin a paragraph, you would have to include that set of commands within the text. You would save considerable agony if you could bundle these commands together under a common *name*; then you could simply put that *name* into your text whenever you wanted **nroff** to perform these commands, rather than typing the commands themselves over and over again.

As you probably have guessed by now, you can do just that; the set of commands is called a *macro*. The following shows the selections from Pudd'nhead Wilson's calendar set with a macro called **.PP** that takes care of formatting each paragraph. The following exercise, **ex5.r**, shows how to bundle together the **nroff** primitives for formatting

paragraphs into the **.PP** macro:

```
.de PP          \" define the PP macro
.br            \" break the line
.sp           \" insert a blank line
.ti 5         \" indent next line 5 spaces
..           \" two periods ends the macro definition
.PP          \" execute PP macro
```

Adam was human--this explains it all. He did not want the apple for the apple's sake, he wanted it because it was forbidden. The mistake was in not forbidding the serpent; then he would have eaten the serpent.

```
.PP
```

Training is everything. The peach was once a bitter almond; cauliflower is nothing but cabbage with a college education.

```
.PP
```

Habit is habit, and not to be flung out of the window by any man, but coaxed downstairs a step at a time.

As you can see, using a macro can save you a considerable amount of work when you prepare your script.

Introducing Traps

Now, consider the problem of formatting the beginning and ending of each page of output. You could define what are traditionally called *header* and *footer* macros, which contain the commands you want performed at the top and bottom of each page. However, how can you tell **nroff** when to execute these macros? You cannot possibly know where to call these macros in the input text, because you cannot know where any given text line will appear in the output until you have processed it through **nroff**. This problem is solved by using *traps*.

nroff keeps track of its vertical position on each output page. You can set a *trap* that tells **nroff** to execute a macro at a particular vertical position on every page. When a line of output reaches or extends past the position that is specified in your *trap*, **nroff** then executes the commands named in the trap command before processing any more input text.

You can set a trap by using the *when* command **.wh**. For example, if you want **nroff** to call your header macro **.HD** at the very top of each page, the command

```
.wh 0 HD      \" set header trap
```

sets a trap for the macro **.HD** at vertical position 0 (the very top of the page) of every output page. The macro **.HD** will then be executed every time **nroff** begins a new page. To have your footer macro **.FO** execute one inch from the bottom of each page, use the command


```
.wh -li FO      \" set footer trap
```

The negative number tells **nroff** to measure distance from the *bottom* of the page rather than from the top; the *i* is an abbreviation for inches. (**nroff** recognizes various units of measurement; this will be described in more detail later.)

Headers and Footers

Suppose you want to design the output page by defining the header and footer macros. A simple header macro merely skips an inch of space at the top of each page; a simple footer macro forces printing to stop an inch from the bottom of each page and prints the page number. **nroff** does not print page numbers automatically, but it does automatically keep track of which output page it is on. It stores the page number internally in a *number register* that you can access with the symbol '%'. (A later section gives more information about number registers and how to use them.)

The following gives a simple footer macro that prints the page number:

```
.de FO          \" define footer macro FO
'sp 4v         \" skip four vertical lines (no break)
.tl '- % -'    \" print hyphen, page number, hyphen
'bp           \" jump to new page
..            \" end macro definition
```

There are several points of interest raised by this macro.

First, notice that some commands are preceded with an apostrophe rather than with a period. The use of the apostrophe instead of the period tells **nroff** to suppress the break these commands normally cause. You might run into problems if you define your header macro as follows:

```
.de HD          \" header macro
.sp li         \" skip an inch (break)
..
```

You want this to leave a blank space of one inch at the top of each page; however, the `.sp` command causes a break, so that if a word were left over from the last line on the preceding page, **nroff** would print it at the very top of the next page. The effect would be quite unsightly. However, if you use `'sp` instead of `.sp` in the macro, **nroff** suppresses the break and does not print the partial word until *after* it performs the macro commands. The same is true for the footer macro: you do not want anything unplanned to be printed in the blank space at the bottom of the page. You should always be conscious of these considerations when you use commands that cause breaks.

Another new item in the above example is the *title* command `.tl`, which prints a three-part title. A three-part title contains a left part (aligned to the left margin of the page), a center part (centered), and a right part (aligned to the right margin). The command name `.tl` is followed by four apostrophes: **nroff** prints the characters between the first two apostrophes as the left part of the title line, those between the second and third apostrophes as the center part, and those between the third and fourth apostrophes as the right part of the three-part title. If you do not want **nroff** to print anything in one of these positions, simply put nothing between the appropriate pair of quotes. In the above

example, the `.tl` primitive tells `nroff` to print nothing in the left and right portions of the footer title line, but to print the page number in the center. If you want an apostrophe to appear as a part of the title, precede it with the backslash character `\`.

`nroff` considers the length of the title line to be independent of the length of normal output lines; therefore, you must set it with the *length of title* primitive `.lt` unless you want `nroff` to use the default title length of 6.5 inches. For example, to set the length of the title to five inches, use the command

```
.lt 5i
```

In light of all you now know, you should give Pudd'nhead Wilson's calendar the treatment it deserves:

```
.ll 3i          \" set line length to 3 inches
.po 2i          \" set page offset to 3 inches
.pl 9i          \" set page length to 9 inches
.wh 0 HD        \" set the header trap
.wh -1i FO      \" set the footer trap
.de HD          \" define header macro HD
.sp 1i          \" skip 1 inches of space
..             \" end macro definition
.de FO          \" define footer macro
.sp 2           \" skip 2 lines
.tl '- % -'     \" define footer title
.bp            \" begin new page
..            \" end macro definition
.de PP          \" define paragraph macro
.sp 1           \" skip 1 line of space
.ti 5           \" indent the first line 5 characters
..            \" end macro definition
.PP
```

Adam was human--this explains it all. He did not want the apple for the apple's sake, he wanted it because it was forbidden. The mistake was in not forbidding the serpent; then he would have eaten the serpent.

.PP

Training is everything. The peach was once a bitter almond; cauliflower is nothing but cabbage with a college education.

.PP

Habit is habit, and not to be flung out of the window by any man, but coaxed downstairs a step at a time.

As a point of technique, always set header and footer traps early in your input script; otherwise, `nroff` may not print the header on the first page.

Macro Arguments

You can affect how macros function by passing them modifiers, called *arguments*. An argument may be a bit of text that is arranged in a special way by the macro, or it may be a number or other parameter that dictates exactly what the macro does.

As an example of how a macro can handle arguments, consider a macro to format the list of ingredients for a recipe. You want the ingredients to be printed as follows:

```
3 cups of pumpkin
1 cup of milk
1 cup of sugar
1 tsp of ground ginger
1 tbl of cinnamon
```

Each of these lines has the same format: the amount of ingredient, the unit of measurement, the word "of", and the name of the ingredient. You can create a macro (call it **.RE**, for recipe) that encodes the format of these lines and contains three "slots": one slot for the amount, one for the unit of measurement, and one for the name of the ingredient. Each time you use the macro, you indicate what you want to go into each slot, and **nroff** substitutes it for you. The macro **.RE** can be constructed as follows:

```
.de RE          \" define macro RE
\\$1 \\$2 of \\$3\" set RE's arguments
..            \" end definition
Here is some text.
.nf          \" don't fill the recipe
.RE 3 cups pumpkin
.RE 1 cup milk
.RE 1 cup sugar
.RE 1 tsp "ground ginger"
.RE 1 tbl cinnamon
.fi          \" resume filling
Here is some more text.
.bp          \" begin a new page, to force printing
```

When you call a macro that takes arguments, the arguments must appear on the same line as the macro command itself. A macro may have up to nine arguments; they are denoted by **\\$1**, through **\\$9**, respectively: the first field after the macro name is called **\\$1**, the second **\\$2**, and so on.

If you want to use as an argument a string of characters that includes blank spaces, you must enclose the string within quotation marks, as with the words "ground ginger", in the example above. If you forget to include the quotation marks, **nroff** regards each word in the string as a separate argument, and treats them accordingly.

Note that macros that are called by traps cannot accept arguments.

Double vs. Single Backslashes

If you carefully examine the definition of **RE**, you will see that it identifies each argument with two backslashes:

```
\\$1 \\$2 of \\$3
```

Whenever you identify an argument within a macro, always preface it with two backslashes, rather than one. The reason is that **nroff** in effect processes a macro *twice*: when it first reads it, and later when you call it within your text. Prefacing an argument with *one* backslash tells **nroff** that you want to expand that argument when the macro is first read; prefacing it with two backslashes tells **nroff** that you want to expand it when the macro is called in your text. In nearly every circumstance, you want to expand the arguments in your text, so you should use two backslashes. As you will see, this rule also applies to the use of *strings* and *number registers* within macros.

To see how this works, consider again the **.RE** macro:

```
.de RE
\\$1 \\$2 of \\$3
..
Here is some text.
.nf
.RE 3 cups pumpkin
.RE 1 cup milk
.RE 1 cup sugar
.RE 1 tsp "ground ginger"
.RE 1 tbl cinnamon
.fi
Here is some more text.
.bp
```

Using two backslashes, as above, allows you to redefine what **\$1**, **\$2**, and **\$3** mean many times throughout your text, to generate the following output:

```
Here is some text.
3 cups of pumpkin
1 cup of milk
1 cup of sugar
1 tsp of ground ginger
1 tbl of cinnamon
Here is some more text.
```

If you used only one backslash, however, your output would appear as follows:

Here is some text.

of
of
of
of
of

Here is some more text.

nroff could not expand the argument calls (`\$1` etc.), because you had not yet defined them; therefore, it threw them away; and because all of the argument calls had been thrown away, **nroff** then threw all the arguments away. All that was left was word of.

Designing and Installing Macros

Now that you have been shown how to write a macro, the next step is to design some macros and install them, so you can call them over and over again.

The first step in designing a macro is to analyze the problem that you want to solve. Suppose that in this instance you want to print a list of names. Each name will consist of a first name, a last name, and the department with which he is associated, and the list will be printed in columns; for example:

```
Firstname      Lastname      Department
```

Moreover, you want to be able to switch the order in which the columns appear without having to retype your list; for example:

```
Lastname      Firstname      Department
```

or

```
Department    Lastname      Firstname
```

In effect, then, you want three macros: one for each of the three orders of columns shown above.

When you have finished designing your macros, they should look something the following. Type the following into the file `tmac.lst`; note that the symbol `<tab>` represents a *tab* character, and should not be entered literally:

```
.\ " List macros. $1 represents first name,  
.\ " $2 last name, $3 department  
.de LA  
.nf  
.ta 1.5i 2.75i  
\\$1<tab>\\$2:<tab>\\$3  
.Rt  
..  
.de LB  
.nf  
.ta 1.5i 2.75i  
\\$2,<tab>\\$1:<tab>\\$3  
.Rt  
..  
.de LC  
.nf  
.ta 1.5i 2.75i  
\\$3:<tab>\\$2,<tab>\\$1  
.Rt  
..
```

The first lines are *comments*, so that anyone who looks at these macros will know what they do. The first command line, introduced with the `.de` command, names each macro. These names were selected after checking the file `tmac.s`, which is where the `-ms` macro package is kept, to confirm that they are not used elsewhere. Naturally, using the same macro name in two different places can lead to a great deal of trouble.

The next command, `.nf`, turns off the `nroff`'s normal right justification, which otherwise would smear a table. The `.ta` command sets the tab characters at certain points on the page, measured from the left margin.

The next line gives the order in which the arguments appear. The arguments are separated by tab characters, and punctuation is inserted. The last command, `.Rt`, calls a macro in the file `tmac.s`; this macro resets `nroff` to its normal fill mode and returns the tab settings to normal. Note that these macros can be used only when you also use the `-ms` macro package.

After you have typed the macros into `tmac.lst`, carefully read over what you type to ensure that there are no errors; if you find any, be sure to correct them. The final step is to move `tmac.lst` into the directory `/usr/lib`, which is where `tmac.s` is also kept.

To test your new macros, type the following text into the file `ex6.r`:

The following lists give the personnel who are involved in this project:

```
.sp
.LA Ivan Sanderson Engineering
.LA Marian Maddux Design
.LA George Sutcliffe Electrical
.LA Catherine Williams "Metal Shop"
.LA Fred Wilson Carpentry
.LA Anne Bilecki "Machine Shop"
```

```
.sp
.LB Ivan Sanderson Engineering
.LB Marian Maddux Design
.LB George Sutcliffe Electrical
.LB Catherine Williams "Metal Shop"
.LB Fred Wilson Carpentry
.LB Anne Bilecki "Machine Shop"
```

```
.sp
.LC Ivan Sanderson Engineering
.LC Marian Maddux Design
.LC George Sutcliffe Electrical
.LC Catherine Williams "Metal Shop"
.LC Fred Wilson Carpentry
.LC Anne Bilecki "Machine Shop"
```

.sp
We expect that they will receive your full cooperation.

The same set of names is used three times; the only difference is the macro call employed.

Now, process this file with the following command:

```
nroff -ms -mlst ex6.r >ex6.p
```

As you can see, when you installed `tmac.list` into `/usr/lib`, you could invoke it in the same way that you invoke `tmac.s` with `-ms`.

When you look at the output file `ex6.p`, you should see something that resembles the following:

The following lists give the personnel who are involved in this project:

Ivan	Sanderson:	Engineering
Marian	Maddux:	Design
George	Sutcliffe:	Electrical
Catherine	Williams:	Metal Shop
Fred	Wilson:	Carpentry
Anne	Bilecki:	Machine Shop

Sanderson,	Ivan:	Engineering
Maddux,	Marian:	Design
Sutcliffe,	George:	Electrical
Williams,	Catherine:	Metal Shop
Wilson,	Fred:	Carpentry
Bilecki,	Anne:	Machine Shop
Engineering:	Sanderson,	Ivan
Design:	Maddux,	Marian
Electrical:	Sutcliffe,	George
Metal Shop:	Williams,	Catherine
Carpentry:	Wilson,	Fred
Machine Shop:	Bilecki,	Anne

We expect that they will receive your full cooperation.

As you grow proficient in writing **nroff** macros, you will probably find it most efficient to keep special macros in their own files; this will save time by ensuring that **nroff** does not have to process macros that are never called.

Strings

Suppose you are writing a script for **nroff** and, to relieve the tedium, decide to punctuate the text occasionally with a rousing cry of "FOOD FIGHT!!". If you plan to interject this phrase more than a few times in your script, you can take advantage of another labor-saving device, called a *string*. You can use a string name as an abbreviation for a long string of characters you use frequently. Like a macro, a string is a *name* that **nroff** associates with a *definition* that you supply. Wherever you put the name in your text, **nroff** prints the definition. Although macros refer to sets of *commands* that you define, strings refer to strings of *characters* that you define.

You define a string with the *define string* primitive **.ds**:

```
.ds FF "FOOD FIGHT!!"
```

The first field after the **.ds** gives the name of the string, in this case **FF**. Like a macro name, a string name may be either one or two characters. The second field after the **.ds** gives the definition of the string, in this case

```
"FOOD FIGHT!!"
```

As in this example, you must enclose the definition within quotation marks if it contains spaces.

Be careful whenever you define a macro or a string. If you already have a macro or a string named **X** and you define a new macro or string named **X**, **nroff** forgets the previous meaning of **X**.

Once you have defined a string, you can refer to it anywhere in your text. The string itself appears in the output text wherever a reference to it appears in the input text. You refer to the string **FF** in the following fashion:

`*(FF`

Use the left parenthesis '(' only when the name of the string is two characters long. If the string name is only a single character, such as **S**, refer to it as follows:

`*S`

As an example, type the following script into `ex7.r`, and process it through **nroff**; do *not* use the `-ms` macro package:

```
.ds FF "FOOD FIGHT!!"
.ds W "WHOOPEE!!"
.ce
From Aristotle's "Poetics"
.br
.sp
A tragedy is the imitation of an action \*(FF
that is serious and also, \*W as having magnitude,
complete in itself, with incidents \*(FF
arousing pity and fear, wherewith to accomplish \*W
\*(FF its purgation of such emotions \*(FF \*(FF.
.bp
```

nroff adjusts the spacings between words in a string but does not hyphenate any word that is within a string. If you use a very short line length, such as two inches, and define a string that includes a three-inch long word, that word would not be hyphenated but would extend past the right-hand margin.

You cannot include a newline character in a string. However, you can spread the definition of a string out over more than one line with the aid of *concealed* newlines (preceded by the backslash character '\'). **nroff** ignores each concealed newline. For example, add the following string to the previous example:

```
.ds PR "GO TEAM \
GO!!!"
```

As you can see, **nroff** ignores concealed newlines anywhere in its input.

Strings Within Strings

You can define a string that has embedded within it a reference to another string. Whenever you refer to the bigger string in your text, **nroff** substitutes the definition of the smaller string for any reference to the smaller string. When you embed strings, though, you should use *two* backslashes to refer to the embedded string, for the same reason that you should use two backslashes to refer to an argument within a macro:

```
.ds S "This string \\*x has embedded \\*y strings"
```

To help understand this better, type following three scripts into your computer and format them with **nroff**. The first script contains proper references to embedded strings (using double backslashes); it works as expected:

```
.ds S "strings \\*X, strings \\*Y, strings \\*Z"
.ds X "here"
.ds Y "there"
.ds Z "everywhere"
\\*S
```

The next script contains embedded references that use only single backslashes. Because the embedded strings are defined after the larger string, they are not available when **nroff** defines the larger string, and so the references are ignored:

```
.ds S "strings \\*X, strings \\*Y, strings \\*Z"
.ds X "here"
.ds Y "there"
.ds Z "everywhere"
\\*S
```

The third script again contains embedded references using single backslashes. This time, the embedded strings are defined *before* the larger string, and so are available when the larger string is defined:

```
.ds X "here"
.ds Y "there"
.ds Z "everywhere"
.ds S "strings \\*X, strings \\*Y, strings \\*Z"
\\*S
```

To avoid unnecessary worry, you should always play it safe and use double backslashes to refer to embedded strings.

Number Registers

You learned in previous sections that **nroff** keeps track of the output page number while it prints its output. You made use of this fact when you created a footer macro that printed page numbers. **nroff** also keeps track of other housekeeping information, such as the current line length, page offset, page length, and vertical position of the last output line. It keeps this information in storage locations called *number registers*.

You can use the *name* of a number register to refer to the number that is stored in it. When you place a reference to a number register in your text, **nroff** substitutes for the name whatever number is currently in the register.

Number register names are one or two characters long, just like macro and string names. You can have a number register with the same name as a string or a macro without confusing **nroff**, even though you cannot give a macro and a string the same name. However, *you* might become confused; **nroff** scripts usually are easier to understand if you keep all macro names, string names, and register names distinct.

Another difference between number registers, macros, and strings is that **nroff** itself does not define any macros or strings (although the **-ms** macro package does), but it does automatically define and update quite a few number registers. You can use these predefined number registers in much the same way that you use registers you define

yourself, except that you cannot change their values.

To define a number register, you must specify the *register name* and the *initial value* for the register. The *number register* primitive `.nr` looks like this:

```
.nr X 5
```

Here `X` is the name of the register and `5` is the initial value to store in it. To refer to number register `X` in your text, use `\nX`; if the name is two characters long (for example, `XY`), use `\n(XY`. This is exactly like the way you refer to a string, except that you use the letter 'n' instead of an asterisk '*'. When `nroff` sees a reference to number register `X`, it automatically substitutes the value stored in `X`. As you will see shortly, `nroff` can do arithmetic, and learning to use number registers is an important part of learning to take advantage of `nroff`'s arithmetic abilities.

A reference to a number register can occur anywhere a number would normally occur. For example, if you set register `X` to `5`, as above, you can set the line length to five inches as follows:

```
.ll \nXi
```

This command is essentially the same as

```
.ll 5i
```

if the current value of register `X` is `5`.

A familiar problem arises when you refer to a number register inside a macro or a string definition. If you use just one backslash, `nroff` substitutes the value in the register for the reference when it first processes the macro or string. If you have not yet defined the number register in your script, `nroff` inserts `0` into the macro or string. Normally, you should use a double backslash, such as `\\nX` or `\\n(XY`, when referring to a number register within a macro or string. Using the double backslash is particularly important if you *change* the value of the register throughout your script, and want the current value to appear in the macro or string each time you call it.

Try typing the following examples into your computer, and processing them with `nroff`. See if you can describe why `nroff` prints what it does in each case. The first example defines a string with a register reference preceded by a single backslash.

```
.ds S "Here is a number \nX"
.nr X 55
\*S
\nX
```

You should see the following output:

```
Here is number 0
55
```

`nroff` printed what it did because number register `X` had not yet been defined when it was called in string `S`; `nroff` therefore erased the reference to `X` and substituted zero for it. Number register `X` was then set to `55`, which was printed when the register was specifically called later in the script.

The second example is similar, but now the number register is set *before* the string is called:

```
.nr Y 56
.ds T "Here is a number \nY"
\*T
\nY
```

Now the output is

```
Here is a number 56
56
```

The third example uses a double backslash for the register reference.

```
.ds U "Here is a number \\nZ"
.nr Z 57
\*U
.nr Z 58
\*U
```

This script produces the following:

```
Here is a number 57
Here is a number 58
```

The final example uses a single backslash again.

```
.nr W 59
.ds V "Here is a number \nW"
\*V
.nr W 60
\*V
```

The following is produced:

```
Here is a number 59
Here is a number 59
```

The last example illustrates the danger of using a single backslash to refer to a number register within a string definition. You defined the number register **W** before you defined the string **V**, so the value for **W** was available when **nr** read the definition of **V**. **nr** substituted the value when it reads the definition; the reference to the number register **W** is no longer there. You then change the value of **W**, but as you see in the next call of **V**, the change does not affect the number that appears in **V**. In contrast to this, notice in the third example that the double backslash in the definition of **U** allows the reference to number register **Z** to remain within the definition of string **U**. Whenever you change the value of **Z** and then call **U**, **nr** substitutes the new value of **Z** for the reference to **Z** within **U**.

You can also use the `.nr` primitive to increase or decrease the value in a number register. For example, suppose you initially store the value five in `X`:

```
.nr X 5
```

Incrementing and Decrementing

You can change the value of `X` to 9 by adding 4, as follows:

```
.nr X +4
```

You can then change the value of `X` to 7 by subtracting 2:

```
.nr X -2
```

A plus or minus sign before a number on the `.nr` command line tells `nroff` to add or subtract the given amount to or from the value in the register. Because a negative number is always preceded by a minus sign whereas a positive number usually is not preceded by a plus sign, you can use `.nr` to set a register to a positive value in a way that cannot be imitated for negative values. For example, suppose you again start out with number register `X` set to a value of 5:

```
.nr X 5
```

If you immediately follow this with

```
.nr X 7
```

then `nroff` replaces the value of 5 with 7. The second `.nr` does not increase the value of `X` by 7 to produce 12; rather, it wipes out the previous value of 5 and replaces it by the value 7. The command line to increase `X` by 7 is

```
.nr X +7
```

If you again start with a value of 5 in `X` and want to change the value to -4, you cannot use the following command line:

```
.nr X -4
```

`nroff` interprets this as a command to *decrease* the current value of `X` by 4, which is not what you intended. This command places the value 1 in `X`, since $5-4=1$. If `X` initially has a value of 5 and you want to change the value to -4, you could use the command

```
.nr X -9
```

You can also increase or decrease the value of a number register without using `.nr`. If number register `X` currently has the value 10, the reference `\n+X` increases the value in `X` by 1 to 11 and substitutes the new value for the reference. The value in `X` becomes 11; `nroff` replaces the next reference `\nX` by 11, whereas another reference `\n+X` increments the value in `X` to 12 and replaces the reference by 12. Similarly, if number register `XY` currently has the value 15, the reference `\n+(XY` increases the value in `XY` to 16 and replaces the reference by 16.

You can also decrease a register's value. The reference `\n-X` decreases the current value in `X` by 1 and substitutes the new value for the reference. Likewise, the reference `\n-(XY)` decreases the current value in `XY` by 1 and substitutes the new value for the reference.

You can change the size of the increment or decrement by means of another option to the `nr` command. If you define `X` with

```
.nr X 1 5
```

then `nr`ff sets the value of `X` to 1 and sets the increment value for `X` to 5. The next reference `\n+X` increments the value in `X` from 1 to 6 (the '+' now causes `nr`ff to add 5 to the current value of `X` rather than adding 1) and substitutes 6 for the reference. In the same manner, `\n-X` subtracts 5 from the current value of `X` and substitutes the new value for the reference. This is convenient if you plan to repeatedly increment or decrement `X` by the same fixed amount. If you wish to change the size of the increment, simply redefine `X` with another `.nr` that specifies the new initial and increment values. If you define a number register but do not specify an increment value, `nr`ff assumes the increment value to be 1.

The following example of a macro illustrates a typical use of a number register and incrementing.

```
.nr W 1                \" set W to 1, inc by 1
.ds X \"Here's Wrestler No. \\nW,\" \" define string X
.de B                  \" define macro B
.br
\\*X \\$1!!!           \" define arg to macro B
.nr b \\n+W            \" increment W
..                    \" end definition
.B \"Alex 'Killer' Bovine\" \" call B with arguments
.B \"William 'Crusher' Risible\"
.B \"Vlad 'the Impaler' Acephalous\"
.bp                    \" force printing of page
```

to produce the following output:

```
Here's Wrestler No. 1, Alex 'Killer' Bovine!!!
Here's Wrestler No. 2, William 'Crusher' Risible!!!
Here's Wrestler No. 3, Vlad 'the Impaler' Acephalous!!!
```

A reference to a number register may appear any place a number can normally appear. For example:

```
.nr X \nY \nZ
```

sets register `X` to the value of register `Y` and sets the increment for `X` to the value of register `Z`.

As mentioned before, `nr`ff performs arithmetic. It understands and evaluates properly formed arithmetic expressions involving numbers, references to number registers, the arithmetic operators '+', '-', '*', '/', '%', and parentheses. The first four operators

represent addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. The '%' is the *modulus* or *remainder* operator: the value of $7\%3$ is 1, which is the remainder when 7 is divided by 3.

One word of caution: **nroff** evaluates expressions from left to right without any preference for performing some operations before others. For example,

```
.nr X 5+4*3/9
```

stores 3 in **X**. **nroff** does not perform the multiplication and division before the addition, as you might expect.

Another important fact is that number registers hold only integers. If you write

```
.nr X 3.6
```

nroff truncates the value 3.6 and stores 3 in **X**. Also, an assignment such as

```
.nr X 3.9*3.9
```

stores 9 in **X**; **nroff** truncates each factor before it performs the multiplication. The assignment

```
.nr X 0.4*8
```

stores 0 in **X** rather than 3: truncation occurs before **nroff** performs the multiplication rather than after.

A final word of caution: when you use numbers with commands other than **.nr**, the results may *not* be what you expect. **nroff** understands several different units of measurement and converts between units automatically. The next section explains units and conversion in detail.

Units of Measurement

As mentioned above, **nroff** maintains many number registers during processing. For example, it stores the current page length in the register **.l** (Note that the period '.' is actually part of the name of this register.) If you set the line length to five inches with the command

```
.ll 5i
```

nroff stores the length in register **.l** automatically; however, if you print the value in register **.l** by entering `\n(.l`, you find the value is 600. What does this mean?

Many **nroff** commands require that you specify lengths or measurements as arguments. You are already familiar with many of these commands: for example, **.ll**, **.po**, **.pl**, and **.lt**. **nroff** accepts various units of measurement, but for purposes of calculation, it converts each into a basic unit called a *machine unit*, which is abbreviated **u**. A machine unit is 1/120 of an inch long. Because one inch is 120 machine units, the length of a five-inch line is 5 times 120, or 600 machine units.

The conversion table for units of measurement is as follows:

inch:	1i = 120u
vertical line space:	1v = 20u
centimeter:	1c = 47u
em:	1m = 12u
en:	1n = 6u
pica:	1P = 20u
point:	1p = 1u

Most of these are traditional typesetting terms.

As noted briefly earlier, **nroff**'s output actually consists of a sequence of characters. It is useful, though, to think of the output as being "printed" at ten characters per inch (Pica or 10-pitch spacing) and six lines per inch. Many output devices use this spacing. With these assumptions, **5i** is equivalent to five inches of printed output.

Every **nroff** command has a default unit of measurement. For example, the default unit for **.ll** is **m**, whereas the default unit for **.sp** is **v**. If you type

```
.ll 5
```

nroff interprets it not as five inches or five centimeters, but as **5m**, which it converts to 5 times 12, or 60 machine units (60u).

nroff always assumes a unit specification as part of each number and automatically converts each number and its unit specification into machine units. If you append an explicit unit specification to the number, **nroff** uses it; if you do not, **nroff** uses the default unit for the command.

For example, suppose you write the following commands:

```
.nr X 2i
.ll \nX
```

What line length results? The first command stores the number 2 times 120, or 240, in register **X**. The second command is therefore equivalent to typing

```
.ll 240
```

However, the default unit for **.ll** is **m**. Because **1m** equals **12u**, **nroff** sets the line length to 12 times 240, or 2,880 machine units. If you wanted a line length of two inches to result from the above commands, you will be unpleasantly surprised, because **2i** equals only **240u**. Instead, you should write:

```
.nr X 2i
.ll \nXu
```

By including the **u** in the **.ll** primitive, you do not accidentally multiply your results by 12, as happened earlier.

You should think of the unit specification as a part of a number. Because **nroff** accepts so many different units of measurement, a number without a unit specification is ambiguous. What does '5' mean? Five inches? Centimeters? Ems? **nroff** must know what unit of measurement you are using. If you think of the unit specification as a part of the number, you will have less trouble with potentially mystifying situations like the

following. As mentioned, number registers store only integers and **nroff** truncates each number in an arithmetic expression to an integer before evaluating the expression. Therefore, the following stores 0 in register X:

```
.nr X 0.4*9
```

But now try the following:

```
.nr X 0.4i
\nX
```

This does not store 0 in X like the previous command; it stores 0.4 times 120, or 48 in X. The 0.4 is not truncated to 0 here! Truncation occurs *after* conversion to machine units, so **nroff** truncates 0.4u in the first example. But the number in the second example is given in inches i instead of machine units u. **nroff** converts it to u before truncating to get an integer.

As another example, the following stores 1 in X:

```
.nr X 0.01i
```

nroff converts 0.01 inches to 0.01 times 120, or 1.2u, and then truncates 1.2 to 1.

The following command illustrates that **nroff** understands *each* number in an arithmetic expression to have an attached unit specification, whether you supply one or not.

```
.ll 2*8
```

Recall that **nroff** stores the current line length in the register .l; if you type

```
\n(.l
```

you will receive the number 2,304. **nroff** interprets the 2 as 2m and the 8 as 8m, because the default unit for .ll is m. Then it converts each to machine units and multiplies to give the result: (2*12)*(8*12), or 2,304.

Consider one final example that illustrates the unusual consequences of seemingly innocent assignments. Suppose you set the page offset as follows:

```
.po 8/3
```

nroff stores the current page offset in register .o. To see what number it stores there, type

```
\n(.o
```

You see that the page offset is 2. Because the default unit for .po is m, the calculation is (8*12)/(3*12)=8/3, which **nroff** truncates to 2. Two machine units is equivalent to only 1/60 of an inch. This is not a physically reasonable value for most typewriter-like devices, so a page offset of 0 characters results. On the other hand,

```
.po 8/3u
```

produces a page offset of approximately 1/4 of an inch.

Conditional Input

Now that you have been introduced to number registers, you can use them in conjunction with powerful *conditional commands* to create more elaborate **nroff** scripts.

To see how conditional statements help you construct an **nroff** script, consider again the problem of creating header and footer macros. Earlier, you constructed macros that skipped space at the top of the page and printed the page number at the bottom of each page.

Suppose, however, that you are formatting a paper that has a title. You want to print the page number for page 1 at the bottom of the page, and to print the rest of the page numbers at the top of the page. Both the header and the footer need some kind of conditional mechanism to perform differently on the first page than on subsequent pages. On page 1, the header should skip to where the title will be printed; on other pages, the header should print the page number. On page 1, the footer should print the page number; on other pages, the footer should leave a block of blank space at the bottom of the page.

To execute commands conditionally, use the *if/else* commands `.ie` and `.el`, which are demonstrated in the following example. Note that the formation `' '`, which is used with the `.tl` command, represents two apostrophes, *not* a quotation mark.

```

.de HD          \" define header
.ie \\n%=1 .A
.el .B         \" else do B
..
.de A          \" define macro A
.sp |1.0i     \" space down to 1 inches from top of page
..
.de B          \" define macro B
'sp 2v       \" skip 2 spaces
.tl '- % -'  \" print page no.
'sp |1.0i    \" skip to 1 inch from top of page
..
.de FO        \" define footer
.ie \\n%=1 .C \" if page no. is 1 then do C
.el .D       \" else do D
..
.de C        \" define macro C
'sp |-4v    \" move to 4 in. above bottom of page
.tl '- % -' \" print page no.
'bp        \" begin new page
..
.de D        \" define macro D
'bp        \" begin new page
..

```

As you can see, the `.ie` and `.el` commands always occur in pairs. `.ie` consists of three parts: the command name `.ie`, then a *condition* that `nroff` tests, followed by a *command* `nroff` performs if the condition is true. If the condition on the `.ie` command line is not true, `nroff` performs the command on the `.el` line instead.

In the example, each conditional invokes a macro on the command line. Actually, the conditional can specify *input* text rather than the command after the condition. If you want to execute several commands or include several text lines conditionally, enclose the lines with the special sequences `{` and `}`.

Note, too, that one other new element was introduced in the construction of these macros. Some of the `.sp` commands have a vertical bar immediately in front of the measurement; for example,

```
.sp |1.0i
```

Normally, when `nroff` sees a command like `.sp 1.0i`, it moves down one inch on the output page. The movement is relative to where `nroff` happens to be on the output page when it received the request. The vertical bar tells `nroff` that the following measurement is an *absolute* measurement, measuring either from the top of the page (if positive) or from the bottom of the page (if negative). Therefore,

```
.sp |1.0i
```

tells **nroff** to move to one inch from the top of the page;

```
.sp |(-4v)
```

tells it to move to four vertical spaces from the bottom of the page.

The **.if** primitive is formed exactly like **.ie**. Unlike **.ie**, which must always be used with **.el**, the **.if** command may be used by itself. If the condition on the **.if** line is true, **nroff** performs the command that follows the condition; if the condition is false, it ignores the command altogether.

This chapter ends with two substantial examples that incorporate most of what you have studied so far. To illustrate the use of conditionals, the first example begins each even paragraph of output with the phrase **Even Paragraph:** and begins each odd paragraph with the phrase **Odd Paragraph:**. Type this into the file **ex8.r**, and process it through **nroff** without using the **-ms** macro package, and as before, there is no need to copy the comments:

```

.wh 0 HD          \" set header trap
.wh -2i FO       \" set footer trap
.nr EO 1         \" set EO register to 1
.po 2i          \" page offset 2 inches
.pl 6i          \" page length 6 inches
.lt 4i          \" title length 4 inches
.ll 4i          \" line length 4 inches
.de HD          \" define header
'sp |(1i-1v)    \" space down to 1 inch minus 1 line
.tl '\\*(WS'    \" set WS macro in title
'sp |1.5i       \" space down to 1.5 inches
..
.de FO          \" define footer
'sp |(3i+3v)    \" space down to 3 inches plus 3 lines
.tl '- % -'     \" set page number in footer
.bp            \" begin new page
..
.ds WS "From the Devil\'s Dictionary"
.              \" define string WS
.de PP         \" define paragraph macro
.ie \\n(EO=0 .EP\" if EO = 0 (even) then do EP
.el .OP       \" else do OP
..
.de EP         \" define EP (even paragraph)
.br
.nr EO 1      \" set register EO to 1
.sp 1v       \" skip 1 line
.ll 4i       \" set line length to 4 inches
.lt 4i       \" set title length to 4 inches
\\*E         \" insert string E
..

```

(Continued on next page)

```

.ds E "Even Paragraph:"
.      \ " define string E
.de OP      \ " define macro OP (odd paragraph)
.br
.nr EO 0      \ " set register EO to 0
.sp 1v
.ll 3i      \ " set line length to 3 inches
.lt 3i      \ " set title length to 3 inches
\\*O      \ " insert string O
..
.ds O "Odd Paragraph:"
.      \ " define string O
.PP
Debt, n. An ingenious substitute for the whip
and chain of the slave-driver.
.PP
Bore, n. One who talks when you wish him to listen.
.PP
Brandy, n. A cordial composed of one part
thunder-and lightning, one part remorse, two parts
bloody murder, one part death-hell-and-the-grave,
and four parts clarified Satan.
.PP
Responsibility, n. A detachable burden easily
shifted onto the shoulders of God, Fate, Fortune,
Luck, or one's neighbor.

```

This example uses an "even/odd" register called **EO** to determine whether you are beginning an even or an odd paragraph. To distinguish between even and odd paragraphs, it uses a line length of four inches for even paragraphs and one of three inches for odd paragraphs. It changes the title length with each paragraph, so **nroff** centers the page number with respect to whichever kind of paragraph happens to occur at the bottom of a page.

The final example illustrates a loop constructed with the **if/else** commands. The first paragraph is six inches long with no page offset; each succeeding paragraph is one inch shorter with a page offset one inch longer. The line length of the sixth paragraph is one inch; the next paragraph renews the cycle with a six-inch line length. Type this into file **ex9.r**, and process it as you did the above example:

```

.nr PO 0 1      \" set register PO to 0, increment by 1
.de PP         \" define paragraph macro
.ie \\n(PO=6 .A\" if register PO=6 then do A
.el .B        \" else do B
..
.de A          \" define macro A
.br
.nr PO 0       \" set register PO to 0
.nr LL 6-\\n(PO\" set register LL to 6 minus PO
.ll \\n(LLi    \" set line length to LL inches
.po \\n(POi    \" set page offset to PO inches
.nr PO \\n+(PO \" increment register PO
.sp           \" skip a space
..
.de B          \" define macro B
.br
.nr LL 6-\\n(PO\" set LL to 6 minus PO
.ll \\n(LLi    \" set line length to LL inches
.po \\n(POi    \" set page offset to PO inches
.nr PO \\n+(PO \" increment register PO
.sp           \" skip a space
..
.PP
Future, n. That period of time in which our affairs prosper,
our friends are true, and our happiness is assured.
.PP
Gallows, n. A stage for the performance of miracle plays, in
which the leading actor is translated into heaven.
.PP
Genealogy, n. An account of one's descent from an ancestor
who did not particularly care to trace his own.
.PP

```

(Continued on next page)

Guillotine, n. A machine which makes a Frenchman shrug his shoulders with good reason.

.PP

History, n. An account most false, of events most unimportant, which are brought about by rulers mostly knaves, and soldiers mostly fools.

.PP

Idiot, n. A member of a large and powerful tribe whose influence in human affairs has always been dominant and controlling.

.PP

Kiss, n. A word invented by the poets as a rhyme for "bliss".

You should try this example to see verify that "loop" works as advertised.

Environments and Diversions

Another aspect of **nroff**'s power is the ability to shift from one *environment* to another.

The **nroff environment** is the overall manner in which **nroff** processes your input text. The environment's definition includes such aspects as line length, fill and adjust modes, and indentation.

nroff allows you to define three independent environments, called **0**, **1**, and **2**. In each, you can set as you wish such parameters as line length, filling, adjustment, and indentation. You can call a different environment with the **.ev** command; the parameters you define for the new environment control text processing until you change them within the present environment or shift to another environment.

Not all **nroff** parameters change when you switch to a new environment. For example, different environments do *not* have independent page offsets; the **.po** command affects all environments. Parameters that may be set to different values in different environments are *environmental parameters*; parameters that cannot be switched according to environment, like page offset, are *global parameters*. Macro and string definitions are global.

When you first call **nroff**, you are by default in environment 0. In all the examples used in this tutorial thus far, everything happened in environment 0. The following example illustrates how to switch back and forth between environments. Type in the following **ex10.r** and process it to see the output as you go along.


```
.po 1i          \" set global page offset to 1 inch
.ll 4i          \" set line length in ev 0 to 4 inches
.de PP          \" define paragraph macro
.sp
.ti 0.5i        \" indent first line 1/2 inch
..
```

```
.PP
The heart of the righteous studieth to answer,
but the mouth of the wicked poureth out evil things.
```

```
.br
.ev 1           \" switch to environment 1
.ll 3i          \" set line length to 3 inches
.ls 2           \" line spacing now double space
.PP
```

```
A froward man soweth strife, and a whisperer
separateth chief friends.
```

```
.br
.ev             \" return to previous ev (0)
.PP
```

```
It is naught, it is naught, sayeth the buyer;
but when he is gone his way, then he boasteth.
```

```
.br
.ev 1           \" switch to ev 1
.PP
```

```
Wealth maketh many friends; but the poor is separated
from his neighbors.
```

```
.br
.ev             \" return to ev 0
```

The first `.ll` command sets a line length of four inches in environment 0. After defining the paragraph macro `.PP` and an initial paragraph in environment 0, you switched to environment 1 with the command

```
.ev 1
```

You now enter a new environment. If you do not explicitly set environmental parameters, such as line length, **nroff** automatically uses default values for them. **nroff** assigns the same default values in environments 1 and 2 as it does in environment 0.

The line length in environment 1 is set to three inches with the output text double-spaced. The *line space* primitive

```
.ls 2
```

leaves one blank line between each output line. Thus, paragraphs processed in environment 0 have four-inch single-spaced lines, whereas paragraphs processed in environment 1 have three-inch double-spaced lines.

The example used the command line

```
.ev
```

without an argument to *leave* environment 1. This leaves environment 1 and restores (or “pops”) the previous environment — in this case, environment 0. The next time you enter environment 1, you will not need to set the line length to three inches again: the value stays in effect in environment 1 until you specifically change it. The same is true of all environmental parameters.

To understand how **nroff** switches between environments, imagine that you have a set of plates, each marked with either a 0, a 1, or a 2. You have as many plates of each type as you wish. You stack the plates on a table; the top plate represents your current environment. You begin with a ‘0’ plate on the table, to represent the initial environment when you enter **nroff**.

Switching to environment 1 with the command `.ev 1` corresponds to placing a ‘1’ plate on top of the ‘0’ plate. You can again change the stack of two plates either by placing a new plate on top of the stack, or by removing the top plate from the stack: the former corresponds to calling a new environment, whereas the latter corresponds to restoring the previous environment with the command line `.ev`.

Because you can have as many plates of each type as you wish, you can call environment 1, then call environment 2, then restore environment 1, then call environment 0, and so on. The command `.ev N`, where *N* is 0, 1, or 2, places (or “pushes”) a plate onto the stack; the command `.ev` removes (or “pops”) the top plate from the stack.

To illustrate this, add the following text to the end of the previous example. Use a piece of paper and pencil to keep track of how the `.ev` commands add or remove environments. Because the line lengths are different in each environment, it should be easy to tell in which environment **nroff** has processed each paragraph:

```
.ev 2          \" introduce environment 2
.ll 5i        \" set line length
.in li        \" set indentation
.PP          \" paragraph in ev 2
A poor man that oppresseth the poor is like
a sweeping rain which leaveth no food.
.br
.ev 0          \" push ev 0
.PP
As a roaring lion, and a ranging bear; so is
a wicked ruler over the poor people.
.br
.ev 1          \" push ev 1
.PP
Wrath is cruel, and anger is outrageous;
but who is able to stand before envy?
.br
.ev 2          \" push ev 2
.PP
A good name is rather to be chosen than
great riches; and loving favour rather than
silver and gold.
.br
.ev 0          \" push ev 0
.PP
Pride goeth before destruction, and an haughty
spirit before a fall.
.br
.ev           \" return to ev 2
.ev           \" return to ev 1
.PP
He that answereth a matter before he heareth it,
it is folly and shame unto him.
.br
.ev           \" return to ev 0
.ev           \" return to ev 2
.PP
A merry heart doeth good like a medicine, but a
broken spirit drieth the bones.
.br
```

Buffers

Earlier, it was shown that **nroff** uses a buffer to assemble words from its input into output lines. Actually, each environment has its own buffer. Switching to a new environment does *not* cause a break. Suppose you are currently in environment 1 with an unfinished line in the buffer. When you give the command **.ev 2**, the unfinished line remains undisturbed in the environment 1 buffer until you return to environment 1. Text you process in the meantime in environment 2 or in environment 0 has no effect on the partial line in the environment 1 buffer, because **nroff** assembles text processed in other environments in different buffers.

In the following example, you process some text in environment 0 and then switch to environment 2. Any partial line collected in environment 0 when you switch to environment 2 waits patiently in the buffer until you return to environment 0 and issue the break command to flush the buffer. You then return to environment 2 and flush any partially filled line left when you restored environment 0. Enter the following into the file **ex11.r** and process it through **nroff**:

```
.ll 3i          \" set line length in ev 0
.po 2i          \" set page offset in ev 0
This is environment 0.
.ev 2           \" introduce ev 2
This is environment 2
.br            \" flush ev 2 buffer
.ev           \" return to ev 0
.br           \" flush ev 0 buffer
```

As you can see, the order of the two sentences is reversed from the way you entered them. If you were to delete the **.br** commands after the texts in **ex10.r**, the output would be very badly affected.

Headers and Footers

A common use of environment switching is for the creation of header and footer macros. As the following example demonstrates, the length of title set by the **.It** command is an environmental parameter. The following constructs header and footer macros that print strings of asterisks in the margins above and below the text; type it into your computer as **ex12.r**:

```

.wh 0 HD      \" set header trap
.wh |2.5i FO  \" set footer trap
.de HD       \" define header macro
.ev 1        \" define ev 1
.lt 5i       \" set title length to 5 inches
'sp 3v       \" move down three spaces
.tl '****' '****' \" define header title
'sp 2v       \" skip two more spaces
.ev         \" pop environment
..
.de FO       \" define footer macro
'sp 2
.ev 1        \" push ev 1
.tl '****%' '****' \" define footer title
.ev         \" pop environment
'bp         \" begin new page
..
.ll 4i       \" set line length in ev 0
.pl 3i       \" set page length
.in 1i       \" set indentation
.po 2i       \" set page offset
.de PP       \" define paragraph macro
.sp 1
.ti 0.5i     \" indent 1st line 1/2 inch
..
.PP

```

When in the course of human events ...

The following section explains why header and footer macros often use a different environment.

More About Fonts

As earlier described in some detail, **nroff** output includes representations for **boldface** and *italic* characters, in addition to the normal Roman characters. The visual appearance of boldface and italic characters depends on the device you use to print your **nroff** output.

If you want a word or a phrase to appear in boldface, enclose the word or phrase between **\fB** and **\fR**:

The last word of this sentence appears in **\fBboldface\fR**.

The sequence **\fB** tells **nroff** to print in boldface, whereas the sequence **\fR** tells **nroff** to return to the Roman font. Italics are used in a similar manner:

An entire phrase **\fI**appears in italics**\fR**.

To print more than a few words in a different font, you should use the *font* command **.ft**:

```
.ft I
Here is text you want to
appear in italics.
.ft R
```

The initial `.ft I` switches the print to italic font, and the concluding `.ft R` returns it to Roman font. As you might have suspected, the command `.ft B` switches to boldface.

You have two additional options when you use the `.ft` primitive. The command `.ft P` returns to the *previous* font. You can use `.ft P` within a macro or a string to return to the previous output font, even though you do not know which font was previously in effect. You can also use the sequence `\fP` to return to the previous font. The `.ft` primitive without an argument tells `nroff` to return to the Roman font.

In scripts that frequently change fonts, you should switch to a new environment for header and footer macros, in order to protect their font settings.

Diversions

The *diversion* is a powerful feature that allows you to suspend outputting lines until `nroff` has collected all of a block of text. For example, suppose you use `nroff` to format a chapter of a book. The chapter includes footnotes at various places in the text; you want `nroff` to collect these footnotes and print at the end of the chapter. To do this, `nroff` must store the processed footnote text somewhere until the end of the chapter, when you want it printed. Where do you store the text until the time comes for it to appear? To handle situations like this, `nroff` provides a *diversion* mechanism: you can *divert* text into temporary storage within a macro.

Diversion normally involves passing to a new environment to process the footnote without causing a break in the main environment. When the text of the diversion ends, `nroff` returns to the main environment, again without causing a break, and continues processing just as if the text of the note had never been in the input.

However, before you attempt to write a footnote macro, type the following text into the file `ex13.r`, and process it with `nroff`. This example illustrates the basic features of diversion. The example exchanges two paragraphs of text, so that `nroff` prints the second before the first.

```

.di X          \" divert the following to macro X
.sp
A soft answer turneth away wrath:
but grievous words stir up anger.
.br          \" send last line of paragraph to X
.di          \" end diversion
.sp
He that is slow to anger is better than the
mighty; and he that ruleth his spirit than he
that taketh a city.
.br
.sp
.X          \" print the paragraph diverted to X

```

The new command here is the *divert* primitive `.di`. The command `.di X` tells **nroff** to divert the text that follows into macro **X**; the matching `.di` with no argument marks the end-of-the diversion.

The break is necessary before the end of the diversion because **nroff** diverts *processed* text into the macro. Without the break, **nroff** would not divert any partially filled line in its buffer to **X**; the last few words of diverted text might not form a complete line in the buffer, so **nroff** might not divert them. However, if you break the input before you end the diversion, **nroff** will also divert those last few words.

As you saw earlier, the `.br` command must be used to flush that environment's buffer before switching environments.

The next example, `ex14.r`, illustrates a similar point.

```

.br          \" clear buffer
testword    \" put 'testword' into buffer
.di X      \" divert to X
Piracy, n. Commerce without its folly-swaddles,
just as God made it.
.br          \" divert last line
.di          \" end diversion
.X          \" print text in X

```

Here **nroff** diverts `testword` into **X** along with the text between `.di X` and `.di`. Why did this happen? The command `.di X` does *not* cause a break. Because you did not pass to a new environment in this example before you diverted, **nroff** formed the diversion text in the same buffer in which it stored `testword`. You did not break the input, so **nroff** appended the diverted text to `testword`.

To make sure **nroff** diverts only text between `.di X` and `.di` into **X**, do one of the following: If you want to process the diverted text within the current environment, empty the buffer by inserting the `.br` command before you start the diversion. If you switch to a new environment before starting the diversion, flush the buffer for the new environment before you begin to process diverted text.

Diverting processed text into a macro that already holds material will erase whatever had already been stored there. In some cases, such as the footnote example, you need to append information into the same macro. The *divert and append* variation `.da` of the diversion construction allows you to do so. The following example, `ex15.r`, demonstrates this command:

```
.ll 3i          \" set line length
.po 2i          \" set page offset
.de PP         \" define paragraph macro
.br
.sp 1
.ti 0.5i       \" indent first line 1/2 inch
..
.di X          \" divert the following into X
.PP
Litigation, n. A machine which you go into as a pig
and come out of as a sausage.
.br
.di           \" end diversion
.X           \" print what is in X
.br
.da X        \" divert and append material into X
.PP
Inventor, n. A person who makes an ingenious arrangement
of wheels, levers and springs, and believes it
civilization.
.br
.di          \" end diversion
.X          \" print what is now in X
```

In this example, you first diverted a single paragraph into the macro `X`. `nroff` stored in `X` the *processed* paragraph; in other words, the command line `.PP` is *not* stored in `X`; its *output* is. When you invoke `X` with the command line `.X`, `nroff` takes the processed text in `X` as input. To `nroff`, there is no difference between processed text and unprocessed text as input: it processes the contents of `X` in the current environment, just like any other text. Therefore, `nroff` processes diverted text *twice*: first when it stores the text within the macro, and again when you invoke the macro.

The fact that `nroff` processes diverted text twice can cause problems if you are not careful. Fortunately, nothing strange happens in the example above. You store a processed paragraph with lines three inches long in `X`. When you invoke `X`, the line length is three inches. Because each line in `X` is already exactly three inches long, nothing happens to it when reprocessed; the layout of the output paragraph is unchanged.

But now, consider what happens in the following example, `ex16.r`:


```

.ll 3i          \" set line length
.po 2i          \" set page offset
.de PP          \" define PP macro
.sp 1
.ti 0.5i        \" indent first line 1/2 inch
..
.di X           \" divert following into X
.ev 2           \" push environment 2
.ll 4i          \" set line length to 4 inches
.PP
Justice, n. A commodity which in a more or less
adulterated condition, the State sells to the
citizen as a reward for his allegiance, taxes
and personal service.
.br
.ev            \" pop environment (return to ev 0)
.di           \" end diversion
.X

```

A paragraph processed in environment 0 in this example has three-inch lines; you want your diverted paragraph to have four-inch lines. However, when you print the diverted paragraph with the command line **.X**, what happened? **nroff** did *not* print four-inch lines. The four-line text lines set in environment 2 were reprocessed into three-inch lines when the diversion macro is called in environment 0.

There are two ways to prevent such disasters. First, if you wish to invoke **X** in the main environment, use no-fill mode:

```

.nf            \" begin no-fill mode
.X
.fi           \" return to fill mode

```

In no-fill mode, **nroff** outputs lines of input exactly as it receives them, so it keeps four-inch lines four inches long and does not change the format of the diverted text. The second strategy is to return to environment 2 and then invoke **X**; again, the format of the diverted paragraph does not change, because the line length in environment 2 is four inches.

```

.ev 2          \" push environment 2
.X
.ev           \" restore original environment

```

A Footnote Macro

The footnote macro that follows does not print notes at the bottom of each page; rather, it prints everything at the end of the chapter. In the processed text, number register **Fn** is used to keep track of the footnote number; the footnote number will be printed in square brackets where the footnote originally appeared in the text.

Type this macro into the file `ex17.r`. If you wish to use it in your text processing, transfer it to the directory `/usr/lib` under the name `tmac.fn`. Then, whenever you wish to use this macro, be sure to include the option

```
-mfn
```

when you invoke `nroff`:

```
.de Fn          \" define macro Fn
[\\n+(Fn)      \" print footnote no. in main text
.ev 1         \" push environment 1
.da Z        \" divert and append following into Z
.sp
\\n(Fn. \\$2, \\fI\\$1\\fR,
  \\$3, \\$4.) \" format & print footnote in Z
.br          \" flush diversion buffer
.di         \" end diversion
.ev        \" pop environment (return to ev 0)
..
```

Note that requests to change fonts are preceded by double backslashes, because they are within a macro. The change to the italic font prints the first macro argument, which should be the title of the work, in italics. Number register `Fn` contains the number of the last footnote; you should initialize it with the command

```
.nr Fn 0 1
```

As shown above, each footnote entry in your text should have four arguments. In your input text, each footnote will look like this:

```
.FN "Personal narrative of a pilgrimage to\
El-Medinah and Mecca" "Richard F. Burton"\
London 1856.
```

When you print the diversion `.Z` at the end of the chapter, each footnote will be laid out as follows:

```
8.      Richard F. Burton,
        Personal narrative of a pilgrimage to
        El-Medinah and Mecca,
        London, 1856.
```

Command Line Options

In the previous sections, you learned how to control `nroff` by including *commands* in the input along with the *text*. You can also supply information in another way: on the command line you type to call `nroff`. Unlike the commands discussed above, this information is *not* part of the script you input into `nroff`.

You already know about some simple **nroff** command lines. For example, the command

```
nroff
```

forces **nroff** to accept input from the keyboard (sometimes called the *standard input*) and print output on the terminal (the *standard output*). Type **<ctrl-D>** (that is, hold down the **ctrl** key and type **D**) to exit from **nroff** if it is reading input from your terminal.

The command line

```
nroff script1.r
```

forces **nroff** to take accept input from the file **script1.r** instead of from your terminal, while the command

```
nroff -ms script.r
```

processes **script1.r** with the **-ms** macro package. You can also redirect **nroff** output to another file **target**:

```
nroff -ms script1.r >target
```

The general form of the **nroff** command line is:

```
nroff [ option ... ] [ file ... ]
```

This means that the command line consists of the **nroff** command, followed by zero or more *options*, followed by zero or more *files*. **nroff** processes each named *file* and prints the result on the standard output (the terminal, unless redirected). If no *file* argument is given, as in the first example above, **nroff** reads from the standard input.

Each *option* on the command line must begin with a hyphen '-' to distinguish it from a *file* specification. Using **nroff** with the **-ms** macro package is one example of entering an option. In general, the **-m** option takes the form

```
-mname
```

which means the option consists of the characters **-m** immediately followed by a *name*. This tells **nroff** to process the macro package found in the COHERENT file

```
/usr/lib/tmac.name
```

For example, the **ms** macro package discussed in chapter 2 is in the file **/usr/lib/tmac.s**, whereas the **man** macro package used for the **man** command and to process manual pages is in the file **/usr/lib/tmac.an**.

Any macro packages that you customize for your own use should be stored in the directory **/usr/lib** under such a name if you wish to use them with the **-mname** option.

The **-i** option tells **nroff** to read input from the standard input after processing each given *file*. This allows you to supply additional input interactively from your terminal.

The **-x** option tells **nroff** not to move to the bottom of the last output page when done. This is especially useful if you want to see the output on the screen of a CRT terminal.

The **-nN** option sets the page number of the first output page to the number *N*, rather than starting at page 1. This is useful for processing large documents with input text in several files which **nroff** processes separately.

The **-rXN** option sets the value of number register *X* to *N*. This option lets you initialize number registers when you invoke **nroff**.

The COHERENT system provides many useful features which can be helpful while you are using **nroff**. In particular, you can use a number of special characters. The *stop-output* and *start-output* characters, usually **<ctrl-S>** and **<ctrl-Q>**, stop and restart output on your terminal. The *interrupt* character, usually **<ctrl-C>**, interrupts program execution; you can use it to stop an **nroff** command if you typed the command line incorrectly. The *kill* character, usually **<ctrl-\>**, also terminates program execution. Some COHERENT systems use different characters than those mentioned above; consult *Using the COHERENT System* for details.

For Further Information

The Lexicon entry for **nroff** summarizes its primitives, dedicated number registers, escape sequences, and command-line options. The related program, **troff**, also performs text formatting, except that it produces proportionally spaced output that can be printed on the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet II printer. See the Lexicon entry for **troff** for more information on how to use this program.

The Lexicon also has entries for two macros packages that are included with the COHERENT system: **man**, which produces manual pages similar to those that appear in the Lexicon; and **ms**, which performs formatting somewhat similar to that seen in this tutorial. You will find that these two packages already perform practically all of the formatting tasks that you will commonly need to do.

The error messages generated by **nroff** are given in Appendix 2, at the rear of this manual.

Section 13:

Introduction to the sed Stream Editor

This is a tutorial for the COHERENT editor `sed`. It describes in elementary terms what `sed` does.

This guide is meant for two types of reader: the one who wants a tutorial introduction to `sed`, and the one who wants to use specific sections as references.

Related tutorials include *Using the COHERENT System*, which presents the basics of using COHERENT and introduces many useful programs, and the tutorials for the interactive line editor `ed` and for the screen editor MicroEMACS.

In a nutshell, `sed` edits files non-interactively; that is, `sed` applies your set of commands to every line of the file being edited. Although `sed` is not as easy to control as `ed` or MicroEMACS, both of which are interactive, it can edit a large file very quickly. You can use `sed` to change computer programs, natural language manuscripts, command files, electronic mail messages, or any other type of text file.

Getting to Know sed

`sed` is a text editor. It reads a text file one line at a time, and applies your set of editing commands to each line as it is read. Because it does not ask you for instructions after it executes each command, `sed` is a *non-interactive* text editor.

The advantages of `sed` are that it can readily apply the same editing commands to many files; it can edit a large file quickly; and it can readily be used with *pipes*. A pipe takes the product of one program and feeds it into another program for further processing. If you are unsure of how a pipe works, refer to *sh Shell Command Language Tutorial*.

`sed` resembles closely `ed`. `sed` and `ed` use almost all of the same commands, and locate lines in much the same way. However, there are important differences between `ed` and `sed`. `ed` is interactive: when you give `ed` a command from the keyboard, it executes that command immediately and then waits for you to enter the next command. `sed`, on the other hand, accepts your editing commands all at once, either from the keyboard or, more often, from a file you prepare; then, as it reads your text file one line at a time, it applies every command to every line of text. Therefore, *addressing* (that is, telling the

program what commands should be applied to which lines) is much more important with **sed** than with **ed**.

Keep in mind, too, that **sed** does not change your original text file; rather, **sed** copies it, changes it, and sends the edited file either to the standard output or to another file that you name in the command line.

Getting Started

Here are a few exercises to introduce you to **sed**. Type them into your COHERENT system to get a feel for how **sed** works.

As explained above, **sed** applies a set of editing commands to your text file. To edit a file with **sed**, you must prepare three elements: (1) the text file that you wish to edit; (2) a command file (or *script*) that contains the **sed** commands you want to apply to the text file; and (3) a command line that tells the COHERENT system what you want done and with which files.

To begin, then, type the following text into your computer using the **cat** command. (Remember that **<ctrl-D>** is typed by holding down the *ctrl* key and simultaneously typing *D*.)

```
cat >exercisel
No man will be a sailor who has contrivance enough
to get himself into a gaol; for being in a ship is
being in a gaol, with the chance of being drowned.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, type in the following **sed** script. This script will substitute *jail* for *gaol*:

```
cat >script1
s/gaol/jail/g
<ctrl-D>
```

The last step is to prepare the command line. The command line consists of the **sed** command, the options that tell **sed** where its instructions will be coming from (either from a file or directly from the command line), the name of the file to be edited, and where the edited file should be sent. The general form of the command line is as follows:

```
sed [-n] [-e commands] [-f scriptname] textfile [>file]
```

The **-n** option will be explained below, in the section on *Output*. The **-e** option tells **sed** that *commands* follow immediately. The **-f** option tells **sed** that the commands are contained in the file *scriptname*. *textfile* is the name of the text file to be edited. The greater-than symbol **>** followed by a file name redirects the edited version of the text file into *file*; if this option is not used, the edited copy of the text file will be sent to the standard output.

In this example, a command script has been prepared, so the **-f** option will be used. Also, the edited text should appear on the terminal screen, so the **>** will not be used. Type the command line as follows:

```
sed -f script1 exercisel
```

The following text will appear on your screen:

```
No man will be a sailor who has contrivance enough
to get himself into a jail; for being in a ship is
being in a jail, with the chance of being drowned.
```

You can use **sed** not only to substitute one word for another, but to add lines to files, delete lines, and perform more involved editing. No matter how complex your **sed** editing becomes, though, **sed** will always use the basic format just described.

The next few sections describe **sed**'s basic commands.

Simple Commands

Type in the exercises exactly as shown and examine the results. Use the **cat** command to enter the command file as well as the input file. The edited text will appear on your terminal. Usually when you edit, you will want to redirect the edited text to a new file; however, for the exercises presented here, let the edited text appear on your terminal so you can examine the results immediately.

Substituting

The substitution command is used very often when editing. **sed**'s substitution command **s** resembles the same command in **ed**. Its form is as follows:

```
s/term1/term2/
```

This tells **sed** to substitute *term2* for *term1*. To correct a misspelled word, for example, use this command form:

```
s/mispel/misspell/
```

As written, this command changes only the first occurrence of **mispel** in each line of your text file. To change *every* occurrence of *mispel* in each line, add **g** (the global option) at the end of the command:

```
s/mispel/misspell/g
```

If you want to change only the *third* occurrence of **mispel** on every line, put a **3** after the **s**:

```
s3/mispel/misspell/
```

When no digit follows the **s** and no **g** follows the command, only the first occurrence of the term in each line (should there be one) will be changed.

To practice the substitution, type the following file into your system (please include the misspellings):

```
cat >exercise2
From the Devils Dictionary:
Hemp, n. A plant from whose fiberosus bark is made
an article of neckware which is frequently put on
after public speaking in the open air and prevents
the wearer from tking cold.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the following `sed` script to correct the misspellings:

```
cat >script2
s/Devils/Devil's/
s/fiberosus/fibrous/
s/tking/taking/
<ctrl-D>
```

Invoke `sed` with the following command:

```
sed -f script2 exercise2
```

The following will appear on your screen:

```
From the Devil's Dictionary:
Hemp, n. A plant from whose fibrous bark is made
an article of neckwear which is frequently put on
after public speaking in the open air and prevents
the wearer from taking cold.
```

To see how the `g` command and the number option work, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercise3
sd sd sd sd
sd sd sd sd
sd sd sd sd
<ctrl-D>
```

The following `sed` script changes the *third* `sd` in each line to `sed`:

```
cat >script3
s3/sd/sed/
<ctrl-D>
```

Invoke `sed` with the following command line:

```
sed -f script3 exercise3
```

The following will appear on your screen:

```
sd sd sed sd
sd sd sed sd
sd sd sed sd
```

To change *every* `sd` to `sed`, use the `g` option. Prepare the following `sed` script:


```
cat >script3a
s/sd/sed/g
<ctrl-D>
```

The following will appear on your screen:

```
sed  sed  sed  sed
sed  sed  sed  sed
sed  sed  sed  sed
```

The `g` command will be most useful for editing prose, when you have no way to tell how many times a given error will appear on a line. The numeric option will be most useful for editing tables and lists.

Selecting Lines

Each of the substitution commands given above will be applied to every input line. Unlike `ed`, there is no error message if no line of text contains *term1*.

In certain instances, however, you may wish to apply a particular command only to specific lines. Lines can be specified (or *addressed*) by *preceding* the command with the identifying line number. The following exercise demonstrates line selection. First, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercise4
When a man is tired of London,
he is tired of life; for there
is in London all that life can afford.
<ctrl-D>
```

To change the word `tired` to `fatigued` on line 2 only, prepare the following `sed` script:

```
cat >script4
2s/tired/fatigued/
<ctrl-D>
```

Begin the editing of your text file by typing the following command line:

```
sed -f script4 exercise4
```

The following will appear on your screen:

```
When a man is tired of London,
he is fatigued of life; for there
is in London all that life can afford.
```

Remember that to specify a line number, you must place the number *before* the command; but to specify the numeric option (that is, position within the line), you must place the number *after* the command.

You can define a *range* of lines to be edited. One way to do this is to list the first and last line numbers, separated by commas, of the block of text in question. For example,

the following script will change **is** to **was** only in the first two lines of the text file you just prepared:

```
cat >script4a
1,2s/is/was/
<ctrl-D>
```

Entering the command line

```
sed -f script4a exercise4
```

will bring the following text to your screen:

```
When a man was tired of London,
he was tired of life, for there
is in London all that life can afford.
```

Note that the word **is** in line 3 was unaffected by the substitution command, because it lay outside the range of lines specified by the command.

You can also select lines by *patterns*. Patterns are *strings* (any collection of letters and numbers, such as a word) that can be combined with commands. A fuller description of *patterns* can be found in the tutorial for `ed`. Later on, when we show you other commands, you will see that line selection by pattern rather than by line number is quite useful.

You can use the end-of-file symbol '\$' for line selection. When you use this symbol, you do not have to know the exact number of lines in your text file. For example, if you want to apply a substitution command from line 10 through the end of your text file, the command form is:

```
10,$s/term1/term2/
```

p: Print Lines

When `sed` edits a text file, the edited text is by default sent to the *standard output*, which usually is your terminal's screen. (As noted above, the edited text can be optionally redirected to another file by using the shell's '>' operator.) Normally, `sed` prints every line in the text file, whether the line is changed or not.

The next exercise will demonstrate these defaults. First, type in the following text file:

```
cat >exercise5
Bill          g7          r115
Nora         g8          r115
Steve       g7          r120
Ella        g8          r120
Dave        g7          r115
Robert     g8          r120
<ctrl-D>
```

Next, create a script that contains no commands, by typing:

```
cat >script5
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, execute this empty script:

```
sed -f script5 exercise5
```

Note that **sed** simply copied your text file to the screen, without changing it in any way.

This default, however, can be inconvenient if you want to print only a selected portion of a file. Fortunately, with a couple of commands you can control **sed**'s printing.

The command line option **-n** changes **sed**'s printing behavior. When you invoke **-n**, the text file no longer is printed automatically. **sed** prints only the lines specified by the **p** command. The **p** command makes **sed** print whatever line (or lines) to which it is applied. Use **-n** on the command line to stop **sed** from printing every line automatically; then use the **p** command in the script to target the lines you want to print. The following exercise will help you grasp this point. First, type in the following **sed** script:

```
cat >script5a
/g7/p
<ctrl-D>
```

Enter the command line:

```
sed -n -f script5a exercise5
```

and the following text will appear on your terminal:

```
Bill          g7          r115
Steve         g7          r120
Dave          g7          r115
```

sed prints only the records of the students in grade 7 (**g7**).

It is important to note the order, or *syntax*, of the **-n** and **-f** command line options. The correct order is to enter **-n**, then **-f**. (**-nf** or **-fn** are also acceptable.) If you type **-f** and then **-n**, however, all you will get is an error message.

When you use the **p** option with a **sed** command, **sed** will print every line of text in which that command makes a substitution. This can be useful, but if you are not careful it can also create some problems. **sed** normally prints every line in your text file, whether or not it is changed by your script, unless you specify the **-n** option in your command line. Therefore, if you *do not* use the **-n** option in your command line and you **do** use the **p** option with your **s** commands, every line that **sed** edits will be printed more than once.

The following script illustrates this point:

```
cat >script5b
s/g7/g8/gp
s/r115/r120/gp
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, execute it with the following command:

```
sed -f script5b exercise5
```

The result will look like this:

Bill	g8	r115
Bill	g8	r120
Bill	g8	r120
Nora	g8	r120
Nora	g8	r120
Steve	g8	r120
Steve	g8	r120
Ella	g8	r120
Dave	g8	r115
Dave	g8	r120
Dave	g8	r120
Robert	g8	r120

Bill and **Dave** were printed three times: the first time because the **p** option was specified after editing the grade number, the second time because the **p** option was specified after editing the room number, and the third time because the **-n** option was *not* used on the command line. **Steve** and **Nora** were printed twice: the first time because their lines were edited once each, and the second time because the **-n** option was not used on the command line. **Ella** and **Robert** appeared once because their lines were not edited at all and the **-n** option was not specified in the command line.

To get around this problem, use the **-n** option and use **p** only once, on the last substitution:

```
cat >script5c
s/g7/g8/g
s/r115/r120/gp
<ctrl-D>
```

When you enter the following command line

```
sed -n -f script5c exercise5
```

the new result will be:

Bill	g8	r120
Nora	g8	r120
Dave	g8	r120

The **w** command acts like the **p** command, except that matched lines are written to the file whose name follows the **w**. The following script shows the correct form:

```
cat >script5d
s/g8/g9/w grade.9
s/gu/g8/w grade.8
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute `script5d` with this command:

```
sed -f script5d exercise5
```

the normal product will be seen produced at your terminal, and the edited lines will be written to files `grade.8` and `grade.9`. File `grade.8` will contain:

```
Bill      g8      r115
Steve    g8      r120
Dave     g8      r115
```

Note the order in which the two `s` commands were given. If their order were reversed, every text line with `g7` in it would have `g7` changed to `g8` by the first `s` command, then have this newly created `g8` changed to `g9` by the second `s` command. Thus, *all* the students would be shown to be in `g9`, and every text line would be printed into the file `grade.9`.

Line Location

When you edit a file with `sed`, it is hard to keep track of line numbers. As noted earlier, you can locate specific lines with `sed` by using patterns as *line locators*. To see how this works, type the following text file into your system:

```
cat >exercise6
From the Book of Proverbs:
As a door turneth upon his hinges, so the
slothful man turneth upon his bed.
A soft answer turneth away wrath: but grievous
words stir up anger.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the following `sed` script:

```
cat >script6
/door/,/bed/s/turneth/turns/
<ctrl-D>
```

Execute it by entering the following command line:

```
sed -f script6 exercise6
```

The text will appear on your terminal this way:

From the Book of Proverbs:
As a door turns upon his hinges, so the
slothful man turns upon his bed.
A soft answer turneth away wrath: but grievous
words stir up anger.

Note that the word *turns* was substituted for the word *turneth* only in the first proverb, not the second. The reason is that the `s` command in this instance was preceded by the *patterns* `door` and `bed`. These told `sed` to begin making the substitution on the first line in which the word `door` appears, and to stop making the substitution with the first line in which the word `bed` appears. In the text file, the fourth line also contained the word `turneth`, but because it lay outside the range of line specified by the line locators, no substitution was made.

When `sed` locates the last line of a block of text that you have defined, it will immediately look for the next occurrence of the first line locator. If it finds that first line locator, it will then resume making the substitution to your file until it again finds the second line locator or comes to the end of the file, whichever occurs first. In this example, when `sed` found the word `bed`, it began to look again for the word `door`; and if it had found the word `door`, it would have resumed substituting `turns` for `turneth`.

Remember that, as explained earlier, line numbers can also be used as line locators. For example, the `sed` script

```
2,3s/turneth/turns/
```

would have produced the same changes as did the script with the pattern line locators prepared earlier.

Add Lines of Text

`sed` can add lines to your text file. To see how `sed` does this, first prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercise7
From the Devil's Dictionary:
Syllogism, n. A logical formula consisting of a major
and a minor assumption and an inconsequent.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, type in the following script:

```
cat >script7
3a\
Economy, n. Purchasing the barrel of whiskey you do not \
need for the price of the cow you cannot afford.
<ctrl-D>
```

When you implement the script:

```
sed -f script7 exercise7
```

you will see this result:

```
From the Devil's Dictionary:
Syllogism, n. A logical formula consisting of a major
and a minor assumption and an inconsequent.
Economy, n. Purchasing the barrel of whiskey you do not
need for the price of the cow you cannot afford.
```

The append command **a** added text *after* the third line of the file. You defined where the text went. Notice the backslash `\` at the end of the line with the **a** command. This indicates that the next line is part of the command. When you append several lines of text, each line but the last one to be added must end with a `\` as in our example.

Note that no other editing command, such as **s**, can affect any line added with **a**. These lines go directly to your screen, or to a file, should you be sending the edited text there, and are invisible to all other **sed** commands.

The insert command **i** works like the **a** command, except that it adds its lines *before* the addressed line, rather than after. The following script shows how the **i** command works:

```
cat >script7a
2i\
Peace, n. In international affairs, a period of cheating\
between two periods of fighting.
<ctrl-D>
```

Invoking it with this command:

```
sed -f script7a exercise7
```

produces this:

```
From the Devil's Dictionary:
Peace, n. In international affairs, a period of cheating
between two periods of fighting.
Syllogism, n. A logical formula consisting of a major
and a minor assumption and an inconsequent.
```

As with the **a** command, no substitutions or other changes are performed on lines added with **i**.

Note, too, that you can *bracket* a text line by using the **a** and **i** commands at the same time. Adding a line with either **a** or **i** does not change line numbers of the text file you are editing (although it does, of course, change the line numbers of the file **sed** writes).

Delete Lines

The **d** command deletes lines that you do not want in the edited text. The original file stays unchanged, of course.

Lines that match the address (be it a line number, range, or pattern) of a **d** command do not appear in the output. Exercise 8 illustrates the **d** command:

```
cat >exercise8
The sun was shining on the sea,
Shining with all his might.
He did his very best to make
The billows smooth and bright --
And this was odd, because it was
The middle of the night.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, you have to define the lines to be deleted by matching them with a unique pattern or a line number. To delete lines 3 through 6, prepare this script:

```
cat >script8
/best/,/night/d
<ctrl-D>
```

The command:

```
sed -f script8 exercise8
```

generates this result:

```
The sun was shining on the sea,
Shining with all his might.
```

Note that when a line is deleted, no other commands are applied to it. Usually, if a **sed** script holds a number of commands, every one of those commands is applied to every line read from your text file; however, **sed** is logical enough to read the next text line immediately, should a **d** command delete the current line before the series of commands has finished.

Change Lines

The **c** command combines the **i** and **d** options. Text is inserted before the addressed lines, which are then deleted. To see how this command works, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercise9
Twas brillig, and the slithy toves
Did gyre and gimble in the wabe;
All mimsy were the borogoves,
And the mome raths outgrabe.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, type in the following script:


```

cat >script9
1,2c\
Twas brilliant, and the shining cove\
Did glare and glimmer in the wave;
<ctrl-D>

```

When you execute your script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script9 exercise9
```

the result is:

```

Twas brilliant, and the shining cove
Did glare and glimmer in the wave;
All mimsy were the borogoves,
And the mome raths outgrabe.

```

Like the **i** and **a** commands, the **c** command requires all added lines but the last to end with **'\'**.

Include Lines From a File

When you edit a file, you may wish to include, or *read in*, a second file as part of it. This is done with **r** command. To see how this works, type the following file into your computer, and call it **include**:

```

cat >include
    Then there comes the often-used refrain
    Whose repetitious writing dulls the brain.
<ctrl-D>

```

Now, prepare the file to be edited:

```

cat >exercisel0
To write a poem doesn't take much time;
Just string some words to rhythm and a rhyme.
What poets do to language is a crime,
Words and syntax twisted for a rhyme.
<ctrl-D>

```

When you write your script, you must tell **sed** where to read in **include**. The form of the command should be familiar by now:

```

cat >script10
/rhyme/r include
<ctrl-D>

```

The result is:

```
To write a poem doesn't take much time;
Just string some words to rhythm and a rhyme.
    Then there comes the often-used refrain
    Whose repetitious writing dulls the brain.
What poets do to language is a crime,
Words and syntax twisting for a rhyme.
    Then there comes the often-used refrain
    Whose repetitious writing dulls the brain.
```

Note that the `r` command inserted **include** *after* the addressed line. You can address lines by number, of course, as well as by pattern.

Quit Processing

The `q` command makes `sed` stop processing the text file. You will use this command most often to limit the application your `sed` script to a portion of your text file. For example, if you were editing a large file and you knew that your commands would be irrelevant to the last half of the file, you could insert an appropriately addressed `q` and save some computer time. You can also use this command to print portions of a file.

To see how this is done, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercisell
An hourglass has a very wide top,
a very narrow
middle
and a bottom
that is also extremely wide.
<ctrl-D>
```

The following script will print the top of the text file. Note how the script uses `middle` to address the line where the file is to be split.

```
cat >scriptll
/middle/q
<ctrl-D>
```

The command:

```
sed -f scriptll exercisell
```

produces:

```
An hourglass has a very wide top,
a very narrow
middle
```

To print out only the lines *after* the pattern `middle`, simply delete the first half of the file with the `d` command, as follows:

```
cat >script1a
1,/middle/d
<ctrl-D>
```

The result is the output:

```
and a bottom
that is also extremely wide.
```

Next Line

The `n` command advances to the next line of the text file. The `n` command is useful for instances when you have two or more interrelated lines, and you want to ensure that a particular set of patterns is matched over the entire set of lines. To see how `n` works, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercisel2
Alpha
One
Beta
Two
Gamma
Three
Delta
Four
Epsilon
Five .
<ctrl-D>
```

To print a list of letters alone, type the following script:

```
cat >script12
n
d
<ctrl-D>
```

and execute it with the following command line:

```
sed -f script12 exercisel2
```

The result will be the following:

```
Alpha
Beta
Gamma
Delta
Epsilon
```

Remember that `n` does *not* stop processing, go to the next text line, and begin processing all over again. Rather, it simply reads the next input line and continues processing from

where it left off. For example, if your `sed` file consisted of three commands, the second of which was the `n` command, `sed` would apply the first command to the first line it read, then jump to the second line and apply the last commands. Then, it would read the third line and begin the pattern over again. To see how this works, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercisel3
Alpha
Alpha
Alpha
Alpha
<ctrl-D>
```

Now type in this script:

```
cat >script13
s/Alpha/Apple/
/Apple/n
s/Alpha/Banana/
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute the script with this command line:

```
sed -f script13 script13
```

the following will appear on your terminal:

```
Apple
Banana
Apple
Banana
```

Note that the first substitution command changed the first **Alpha** to **Apple**; the `n` command moved `sed` to the next line; and the second `s` command changed that **Alpha** to **Banana**.

Advanced sed Commands

The following sections discuss `sed`'s advanced features. They also discuss the method of operation.

Work Area

As described earlier, `sed` reads your text file one line at a time, and applies all of your editing commands to that line. After the editing commands have been applied, the edited line is either sent to the *standard output*, written to a file you have named, or thrown away, depending on what you have told `sed` to do.

When `sed` reads a line from your text file, it copies that line into a *work area*, where it actually executes your editing commands. `sed` notes the number of the line in the work area, then executes each editing command in turn, first checking to see if the patterns or line numbers specified in each command actually apply to that line. After each command

is checked in turn and performed if indicated, `sed` prints the edited line (if it is supposed to be), and reads the next text line.

Add to Work Area

The exercises so far have used only one line in the work area. The `N` command, however, tells `sed` to read a second line into the work area. The following exercise illustrates the use of the work area and the `N` command.

```
cat >exercisel4
This exercise has a brok
en word.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the following `sed` script:

```
cat >script14
/brok$/N
s/brok\nen/broken/
s/has/had/
<ctrl-D>
```

and execute it with the following command line:

```
sed -f script14 exercisel4
```

which produces the following text:

```
This exercise had a broken sentence.
```

You will find it helpful to review this exercise in some detail. The first command in the script

```
/brok$/N
```

tells `sed` to search for the pattern `brok` at the *end* of the line of text. (The dollar sign '\$' in this instance indicates the end of the line; remember that when the '\$' is used with a line number, it indicates the end of the *file*.) The `N` command tells `sed` to keep this line in the working space, and copy the *next* line into the working space as well.

When `sed` executes this command on the present text file, the work area will look like this:

```
This example has a brok<newline>en word.
```

Note that the two lines now appear to `sed` as though they formed one long line. The word `<newline>` represents the end of line character that tells your terminal or printer to jump to a new line when the text file is printed out. This character is invisible, but it is there, and it can be changed or deleted. You can describe this character to `sed` by using the characters `\n`. The first substitution in this script

```
s/brok\nen/broken/
```

replaces `brok<newline>en` with `broken`. Because the newline character is deleted

from the text, what used to be printed out as two lines on your screen will now be printed out as one.

Note the difference, too, between the `n` and `N` commands. The `n` command will *replace* the text line in the work area with the next line from your text file. The `N` command, however, *appends* the next line from your text file to the end of the text already in the working area. The next exercise demonstrates this difference. First, create the following text file:

```
cat >exercisel5
Apple
Apple
Apple
Apple
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the following two scripts:

```
cat >script15
/Apple/n
s/Apple/Banana/g
<ctrl-D>
```

```
cat >script15a
/Apple/N
s/Apple/Banana/g
<ctrl-D>
```

When `script15` is executed with the following command line:

```
sed -f script15 exercisel5
```

this will appear on your screen:

```
Apple
Banana
Apple
Banana
```

The `n` command told `sed` to print out the line already in the work area before reading in the next line from the text file. This meant that `sed` substituted **Banana** for **Apple** only on the *second* line of each pair.

Note what happens, however, when you run `script15a`, using this command line:

```
sed -f script15a exercisel5
```

This text appears:

```
Banana
Banana
Banana
Banana
```

Because *both* lines of each pair were kept in the work area, the substitution command changed both of them.

Print First Line

The **P** command prints material from the work area. Unlike the **p** command, which prints *everything* in the work area, **P** prints only the *first* line in the work area. To see how this works, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercisel6
Student:  George
Teacher:  Mr. Starzynski
Student:  Marian
Teacher:  Miss Seidman
Student:  Ivan
Teacher:  Mr. Starzynski
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the following scripts:

```
cat >script16
/Student/N
/Mr. Starzynski/p
<ctrl-D>
```

```
cat >script16a
/Student/N
/Miss Seidman/P
<ctrl-D>
```

When the first of these scripts is executed with the following command line (note the use of the **-n** option):

```
sed -n -f script16 exercisel6
```

the result is

```
Student:  George
Teacher:  Mr. Starzynski
Student:  Ivan
Teacher:  Mr. Starzynski
```

whereas script16a, when executed as follows:

```
sed -n -f script16a exercisel6
```

produces

Student: George

Student: Ivan

Note that the **N** command lines pull both the name of the student and the name of the teacher into **sed**'s work area; then the **P** command allows you to print only the names of the students whose teacher is Mr. Starzynski. Obviously, **P** is a powerful tool that will allow you to select material from tables, lists, and other repetitive files.

Save Work Area

sed can create a second work area in addition to the primary work area in which **sed** performs its editing. **sed** does not execute any editing commands on the material stored in this secondary work area; rather, this work area can be used to store material that you want to edit or insert later.

The commands **h** and **H** copy material from the primary work area into the secondary work area. **h** and **H** differ in that **h** *displaces* any material in the secondary work area with the line being copied there, whereas **H** *appends* the line being copied onto the material already in the work area. Note, too, that both **h** and **H** merely *copy* the primary work area into the secondary work area — after these commands have been executed, the material in the primary work area remains intact, and can be edited further, printed out, or deleted, whichever you prefer.

The commands **g** and **G** copy material back from the secondary work area into the primary work area. Again, these commands differ in that **g** *displaces* whatever is in the primary work area with the material from the secondary work area, whereas **G** *appends* the material from the secondary work area onto the material already in the primary work area.

The following exercises will demonstrate how these commands are used. First, create the following text file:

```
cat >exercisel7
fruit: apple
berry: gooseberry
fruit: orange
berry: raspberry
fruit: pear
berry: blueberry
<ctrl-D>
```

The first script uses the **h** and **g** commands:

```
cat >script17
/fruit/h
/fruit/d
/berry/g
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute this script with the following command line:


```
sed -f script17 exercise17
```

you receive the following text on your screen:

```
fruit:  apple
fruit:  orange
fruit:  pear
```

Review the last script in detail. The first command, `/fruit/h`, copied the line beginning with "fruit" into the secondary work area, displacing whatever happened to be there. The command `/fruit/d` then deleted the line from the primary work area; if this were not done, it would then have been printed out. The third command, `/berry/g` then recopied the material from the secondary work area into the primary work area, displacing whatever was already in the primary work area. The result of all this shuffling and displacing was that the three lines that begin with `fruit` were printed out.

The next script demonstrates the `H` command:

```
cat >script17a
/fruit/H
/fruit/d
/berry/g
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script17a exercise 17
```

you see:

```
fruit:  apple
fruit:  apple
fruit:  orange
fruit:  apple
fruit:  orange
fruit:  pear
```

Because the `H` command *appends* material into the secondary work area, rather than replacing it as `h` does, all three lines that began with `fruit` were cumulatively stored in the secondary work area. Because the `g` command was used for every line that began with `berry`, the contents of the secondary work area (that is, the `fruit` lines) were written over each of the three lines that began with `berry`.

The next script demonstrates the use of the `G` command:

```
cat >script17b
/fruit/H
/fruit/d
/berry/G
s/berry://g
s/fruit://g
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script17b exercisel7
```

you will see:

```
gooseberry
apple
raspberry
apple
orange
blueberry
apple
orange
pear
```

The **H** command copies the lines that begin with **fruit** into the secondary work area. The **G** command then re-copies them from the secondary work area into the primary work area, and appends them to the material already in the primary work area — that is, to a line that begins with **berry**.

The two substitution commands then strip off the **fruit** and **berry** prefixes; obviously, these substitutions do not affect the operation of the **H** and **G** commands, but they do create a tidier result.

By the way, be sure you distinguish the **g** command from the **g** option used with the **s** command. If you do not, what **sed** finally prints out for you may appear very strange.

The final command that uses the secondary work area is **x**, which exchanges the two work areas. The following script shows how this is used:

```
cat >script17c
/fruit/H
/fruit/d
/blueberry/x
s/berry://g
s/fruit://g
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script17c exercisel7
```

you see:

```

gooseberry
raspberry
  apple
  orange
  pear

```

The text lines that began with **fruit** were moved into the secondary working area. The **x** command was executed when the line that contained the word **blueberry** was reached, and the two working areas exchanged their contents. The **fruit** lines were then printed out, while the **blueberry** line was simply left in the secondary working at the end of the program, and disappeared when the program concluded.

Note that **x** simply swaps the two working areas — there is no “**X**” command that appends the work areas onto each other.

Transform Characters

The **y** command is a special form of the **s** command. With the **y** command, you can replace a number of characters easily, without having to write a series of **s** commands.

The form of the command is:

```
y/123/abc/
```

In the above example, **1** will be replaced with **a**, **2** with **b**, and **3** with **c** throughout the document (no **g** option is needed). For **y** to work properly there must be a one-to-one relationship between the characters being replaced and the characters replacing them. Also, **y** cannot make exchanges that involve more than one character — it cannot, for example, replace **apple** with **banana**.

One useful task for the **y** command is to change all upper-case letters in a file to lower case. Prepare the following text file to see how this is done:

```

cat >exercisel8
NOW IS THE TIME FOR ALL GOOD MEN TO COME
TO THE AID OF THE PARTY.
<ctrl-D>

```

And prepare the following script, which will change these capitals:

```

cat >script18
y/ABCDEFGH/abcdefghi/
y/JKLMNOPQR/jklmnopqr/
y/STUVWXYZ/stuvwxyz/
<ctrl-D>

```

The alphabet is entered here in three chunks, to prevent the command from being too long to type easily. Execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script18 exercisel8
```

The result is:

now is the time for all good men to come
to the aid of the party.

Command Control

`sed` gives you advanced control over the execution of commands. The next subsections describe how these command controls help you write compact, powerful scripts.

{ }: Command Grouping

In several of the exercises presented so far, more than one command specified the same line locator. By using braces '{' and '}', you can bundle commands, which makes writing your scripts easier and lessens the chance of making a typographical error.

To see how this is done, type the following script:

```
cat >exercisel9
When my love swears that she is made of truth,
I do believe her, though I know she lies,
That she might think me some untutored youth,
Unlearned in the world's false subtleties.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the following script:

```
cat >script19
/truth/{N
P
}
/lies/d
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script19 exercisel9
```

the result on your terminal is:

```
When my love swears that she is made of truth,
That she might think me some untutored youth,
Unlearned in the world's false subtleties.
```

Note the syntax of this command. Each subsequent command must go on a line of its own, as must the right brace '}'. If this syntax is not observed, you will receive an error message.

!: All But

The `!` flag inverts a line selector; that is to say, the command will be performed on every line *but* the one named in the line selector. The following script will show how this works:

```
cat >script19a
2!d
<ctrl-D>
```

which, when run with the following command line:

```
sed -f script19a exercisel9
```

produces

```
I do believe her, though I know she lies,
```

This script deleted every line *except* line 2. The `!` flag may also be used with a range of lines, as indicated by line numbers or line patterns; in either case, you must place the `!` flag *after* the line selectors and immediately *before* the command. Obviously, the `!` flag is very powerful, and can be used to sift out a few desired lines from a large file.

= : Print Line Number

You may wish to print only the *line number* of lines that contain a selected pattern. This is done with the `=` command. For example, you may wish to know the number of each line in the exercise that contains the word *she*. The following script:

```
cat >script19b
/she/=
<ctrl-D>
```

when executed with the following command line (note the `-n` option):

```
sed -n -f script19b exercisel9
```

produces this result:

```
1
2
3
```

These numbers can be stored in a file and used in further editing, or included with the text of the fully edited file to provide a series of line markers.

Skipping Commands

`sed` normally processes editing commands in order, beginning with the first command and proceeding sequentially to the last. This behavior can be modified by the branching commands: `b`, `t`, and `:`.

These commands must be used with the colon (:) command, which defines a *label* point in the list of commands.

The **branch** command **b** allows you to skip unconditionally some editing commands in your script. The following exercise demonstrates how this can be used:

```
cat >exercise20
They went to sea in a sieve, they did;
In a sieve they went to sea;
In spite of all their friends could say,
On a winter's morn, on a stormy day,
In a sieve they went to sea.
<ctrl-D>
```

The following script uses the **b** command to avoid making certain changes to the first line of the poem:

```
cat >script20
s/sea/drink/g
/They/bend
s/sieve/ship/g
:end
```

When you execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script20 exercise20
```

you will see:

```
They went to drink in a sieve, they did;
In a ship they went to drink;
In spite of all their friends could say,
On a winter's morn, on a stormy day,
In a ship they went to drink.
```

Note that the word **sea** is changed to **drink** throughout the file; however, when **sed** noted that the word **They** appeared in line 1, the **b** command forced it to seek the **:** command that was labeled with the word **end**, and to continue editing only *after* it found the labelled **:** command. In so doing, **sed** skipped the command to substitute **ship** for **sieve**, which is why that substitution was not made in line 1.

Note the syntax of the **b** command: the label follows it without a break. The text of the label is unimportant, just so long as it matches that used in the **b** command; however, the use of a label allows you to place several **b** or (as will be seen) **t** commands in the same script without mixing them up.

t: Test Command

The **test** command, **t**, also allows you to change the order in which editing commands are executed. Unlike the **b** command, which simply examines a line for a given pattern, the **t** command *tests* to see if a particular substitution has been performed.

The following script demonstrates the use of the **t** command:

```
cat >script20a
s/They/they/g
tend
s/sieve/ship/
:end
s/sea/drink/g
<ctrl-D>
```

which, when executed with the following command line:

```
sed -f script20a exercise20
```

produces:

```
they went to drink in a sieve, they did;
In a ship they went to drink;
In spite of all their friends could say,
On a winter's morn, on a stormy day,
In a ship they went to drink.
```

Note that the **t** command checked to see that **they** was substituted for **They** before branching to the **:** command labeled with the word **end**.

Also note the syntax of the **t** command: Like the **b** command, the label immediately follows the command and is not separated by a space; unlike the **b** command, however, the **t** command appears on the line *below* the substitution command for which it is testing.

For More Information

The Lexicon entry for **sed** summarizes its command-line options and commands. The COHERENT line editor **ed** resembles **sed**, except that it works interactively instead of in a stream. For information on **ed**, see its tutorial or its entry in the Lexicon.

Section 14:

Introduction to sh, the Bourne Shell

The commands that you give the COHERENT operating system are interpreted and acted upon by a special COHERENT program called the *shell*. This program accepts every command that you type into the COHERENT system, interprets it, and executes it. In effect, the shell is your “window” into the COHERENT system: it gives you a simple and powerful way to manipulate the COHERENT system so that it does the work you want it to do.

Before you begin, we suggest that you first become familiar with the basic concepts of the COHERENT system. If you have not used COHERENT before, the best place to start is with *Using the COHERENT System*. It will show you how to log in to the COHERENT system and introduce you to basic concepts. This tutorial assumes that you are familiar with the structure of the COHERENT file system and with some basic commands.

We also suggest that you become familiar with one of the COHERENT system’s editors: the line editor `ed` or the MicroEMACS screen editor. Tutorials for these can be found elsewhere in this manual.

Getting Started With the Shell

This section illustrates basic operating system commands. First, you must *log in* to the COHERENT system. If you do not know how, read *Using the COHERENT System* before you proceed with this tutorial.

Simple Commands

Once you have logged in, you will see a *prompt*. This prompt is usually a dollar sign, ‘\$’, although it may be a different character on your system. The prompt indicates that the shell is waiting for you to type a command. Give the computer something to do and see what happens. Type:

```
lc <return>
```

The `<return>` symbol means you should stroke the carriage return key. You must

stroke **<return>** at the end of each line that you type into the shell.

The **lc** command tells the computer to list all the files in your home directory. When **lc** has finished listing your files, the shell displays '\$' to prompt you for a new command. Continue with this example by creating a file called **file01**, and put these lines into it:

```
this is a test
of some simple commands
```

(If you do not remember how to create a file, review *Using the COHERENT System*, or see the tutorials to **ed** or **MicroEMACS**.)

Now, print the contents of the file at your screen. Type:

```
cat file01
```

cat (short for *concatenate*) is a command with several uses; here, it is used to display a file. Note that **cat** is followed by **file01**, which acts as an *parameter* to the command. A parameter specifies what the command acts upon.

cat can take more than one parameter. To illustrate this, create a second file called **file02**, and type the following sentence into it:

```
This is a second file.
```

Now, join these two files together by typing:

```
cat file01 file02
```

You should see on your terminal:

```
This is a test
of some simple commands.
This is a second file.
```

cat printed both files, in the order they were typed on the command line, to your terminal.

Constructing Shell Commands

The shell command language is built around simple commands. Many have been shown in examples already, such as the **lc** command that lists your files and directories.

Several simple commands may be combined on one line by separating them with semicolons. Rather than typing a series of commands like this:

```
who
du
mail
```

it is quicker for you to use this form:

```
who; du; mail
```

In both of these examples, **du** will not begin execution until **who** is finished, and **mail** will not begin until **du** is done.

Commands in a File

Many of the commands that you use in the COHERENT system are *programs*, such as **ed** or **me** (the MicroEMACS editor). Others, like **man**, are just files that contain other commands to be executed by the shell.

It is often very useful to construct files that contain commands. For example, assume that every morning you go through this elaborate ritual: check the amount of disk space that you have used and the amount of disk space still available; determine which users are on the system; and, finally, read your mail. It is easy to do all this as just one command. Create a file called **good.am** that is composed of the appropriate commands:

```
du
df
who | sort
mail
```

To call up these commands, you need only type:

```
sh good.am
```

The command **sh** calls the shell to read commands from whatever file is identified on the command line, in this case **good.am**. Try it. You have just created a *command file*. Any commands that you issue from your terminal can be incorporated into a command file if you think it would be handy. Your command files can be turned into one line:

```
du; df; who|sort; mail
```

Note that a command file is often called a *script*.

Executable Files

If you do not want to bother using **sh** to implement your file, you can transform it into an *executable file*. To make a command file directly executable, use the **chmod** (change mode) command. Type:

```
chmod +x good.am
```

Now, all you do is type

```
good.am
```

and your routine morning tasks will be executed automatically.

If ever you wish to edit your file, you can alter it with **ed** or **MicroEMACS** and your file's executable status will be maintained.

Notice that a command file can invoke, or *call*, other command files. To see how this works, type the following text into a new file called **second.sh**:

```
good.am
lc
```

Then use **sh** to execute your latest file:

```
sh second.sh
```

sh will first execute **good.am** and then will list your files.

Dot: Read Commands

Similar to **sh** is the **'.'** (dot) command. Although it performs a similar function to **sh**, the **'.'** command does not take parameters (described below). Also, commands executed with the **'.'** use less active memory. This is important if you have limited amounts of memory on your system. The shell executes commands in a file directly when you use **'.'**; when you use **sh**, it executes a subshell which in turn executes the commands. For more information, see *Using the COHERENT System*.

Background Commands

Shell commands can be executed simultaneously rather than sequentially. If a command is followed by the character **'&'**, the shell will begin executing the command immediately, in *background*. The shell leaves you and your terminal free to continue with other tasks. Suppose, for example, that you want to sort a large file but want to continue with other tasks while the sort is taking place. To do this, you would type:

```
sort big.file > big.output &
```

Once shell starts the **sort**, it will prompt you with **'\$'**, and you are now free to do other work — to edit a file, for instance.

When you run a command with **'&'**, the shell responds by typing the *process id* of the command. The process id is a unique number that the COHERENT system assigns to each process to identify and keep track of it. In the COHERENT system, each running command or program is assigned a process id before it begins executing. Normally, there is no need to be concerned about these numbers. But when you run background commands, the shell tells you the process id of the background process so you can track its execution. This can become useful, for example if you start a large printing job, realize that there is an error, and have to stop, or *kill*, it and start over.

The command

```
ps
```

tells you the status of the processes you are running. If you have no jobs running in the background, the response on your terminal will resemble:

```
TTY PID
30: 362 -sh
30: 399 ps
```

The **TTY** column shows the number that COHERENT has internally assigned to your terminal. This is the same terminal number printed out by the command **who**, which indicates who is logged into the system. The **PID** column shows the process id, and the third column names the program or command executing. The characters **-sh** in the third column indicates the shell itself.

When you start a command in the background, `ps` shows you the process entry for it; the entry has the process id that the shell typed out for you. In this example, you can see the `sort` running in background and the `ps` command that you issued.

```
TTY PID
30: 362 -sh
30: 474 sort big.file
30: 495 ps
```

If you wish, you can wait for a background job to finish by issuing this command:

```
wait
```

The shell will then accept no further commands until all the background commands started by your current shell are finished. If there are no background commands, the shell will continue immediately because there is nothing to wait for.

Remember that a process running in the background is still connected to your terminal. If it types error messages or prints output to the standard output device, that output will appear on your terminal, even though you are working on another job. If you send a job to background that logically would be output onto your terminal — such as using `cat` on a file — it will simply disappear unless you redirect it, as shown in the previous section.

Substitution in Commands

The shell increases the flexibility and power of COHERENT commands by allowing you to give different kinds of parameters to a command. This is called *command substitution*. To increase the power of commands and command files, COHERENT can perform several kinds of substitutions.

First, you can substitute *file names* in commands. This lets you execute a command with the files present in your directory.

Second, you can give a command file a *parameters*, much like the parameters that are passed to a Pascal or C function or procedure. This allows you to target the action of a command file to a specific file when you call the command file.

Third, the output of one command can be substituted into, or *piped*, into another command to serve as that second command's input. The pipe symbol '|' is one way to invoke this kind of substitution, and there are a few others as well.

The `echo` command can be used to show the form of any substitutions that the shell makes, so it will be used to illustrate.

File-Name Substitution

Often, a command parameter names a file. For example, `cat file01` and `ed file01` name the file `file01` as a parameter. You can, however, use special shell characters to substitute file names in commands.

The character '*' matches any string of characters in file names in the current directory. Thus,

```
echo *
```

will echo all the file names in the current directory, while

```
echo f*
```

gives all file names that begin with the letter 'f'. Likewise, this variation of the command:

```
echo a*z
```

lists all files that begin with 'a' and end with 'z'. As you can see, you can use this special character with other characters, so that you can define your file name pattern a little more strictly.

To illustrate this, suppose you have two files called **file01** and **file02**. Then apply the **echo** command as follows:

```
echo file*
```

This will produce the output:

```
file01 file02
```

Thus, by using a single '*', you can substitute several file names into a command. In other words, the command:

```
echo file*
```

is here equivalent to:

```
echo file01 file02
```

Similarly, this usage:

```
cat file*
```

is equivalent to

```
cat file01 file02
```

assuming that these files are in the current directory.

When several file names are substituted by the shell in this manner, they will be inserted in alphabetical order.

If no file names match the pattern, the special characters are not translated but passed to the command exactly as typed. The following commands should be executed with caution, as they can remove all the files within a directory. Type:

```
rm file*  
echo file*
```

The first command will remove all files whose names begin with **file**, and is therefore equivalent, in this case, to:

```
rm file01 file02
```

The **echo** command that follows, however, will echo:

```
file*
```

because there are no file names beginning with **file**, as you just removed them.

If you want to stop the shell from matching the special letters in a command, you can enclose the command in apostrophes **' '**. To see how this work, first consider the program **grep**, which searches the contents of files for a given pattern. To use **grep** to search all the files in the current directory for a specific pattern, type:

```
grep 'q[0-9]*X' *
```

The first **'*'** is enclosed in single quotes and therefore will be passed on as a parameter to **grep** unprocessed by the shell. However, the second asterisk is not enclosed by asterisks, so the shell replaces it with the names of all the files in the current directory.

Another special character, **'?'**, will match any single letter. To see how this works, first create three files and name them **file1**, **file2**, and **file33**; then issue this command:

```
echo file?
```

The shell will reply by printing:

```
file1 file2
```

The character **'?'** does not match **file33** as there are two characters after the word *file*.

The bracket characters **'['** and **']'** can be used to indicate a choice of single characters for a match. When you type the command

```
echo file[12]
```

the shell will reply:

```
file1 file2
```

To match a range of characters, separate the beginning and end of the range with a hyphen. For example, the command

```
echo [a-m]*
```

prints all file names that begin with a lower-case letter between *a* and *m*. You can define a range of numbers just as easily. For example

```
echo *[1-3]
```

matches **file01**, **file02**, and **file33**.

Because the character **'/'** is important in file pathnames, it is not matched by **'*'** or **'?'**, but must be matched explicitly. Therefore, to list all user directories with a **.profile** file, type:

```
echo /usr/*/profile
```

The asterisk will match all the subdirectories of **/usr**. Likewise, to match all file names in the subdirectory **notes**, type:

```
echo notes/*
```

The special characters discussed in this section can appear anywhere within a command or a command file.

Note that a leading '.' attached to a file name is not matched by '*'.

Special Characters

If you are familiar with `ed`, you know that certain characters have special meaning to `ed` and must be used in certain ways. The shell also treats some characters specially. These special characters, sometimes called *metacharacters* or *wildcards*, are as follows:

```
* ? [ ] | ; ( ) $
= : ' ' " < > << >>
```

You have already been introduced to some wildcards; the function of the rest will be explained later in this tutorial. If you want to use one of these special characters but do not want the shell to treat it specially, then precede the character with a backslash '\ ' or enclose it in apostrophes. For example, the command

```
grep 'test*' temp
```

passes the word `test*` to the `grep` command, instead of all the file names that begin with `test`.

In addition, the shell treats the following words in a special way when they appear at the start of the command line:

```
break    do        else      for       then
case     done      esac     if        until
continue elif     fi       in        while
```

These are the shell's *keywords*; they name all commands that are specific to the shell, and as such are *reserved*. You cannot use them to name a command.

Redirection

Most of the COHERENT system's commands and programs accept input from your keyboard and put the output onto your terminal screen. This is done through two files called the *standard input* and the *standard output*. These two system files can be *redirected* to files or devices other than your terminal. This allows you to output a file to a printer or even tack one file onto the end of another, simply by redirecting it. Much of the COHERENT system's power stems from this simple-to-use tool.

Output Redirection

There are a number of different types of redirection, all using one or another of these symbols: '<', '>', and '|'. Begin by looking at output redirection. Type:

```
cat file01 file02 >file03
```

`cat` joins the two files that we have been using until now, to create a third file named

file03. This new file is just a *copy* of **file01** and **file02**. (If you had already had a file named **file03**, then its contents were been erased and then replaced by the redirection command.)

When you are redirecting, the you can place the '**>**' anywhere on the command line. For example, these two commands produce the same result as the first redirection command you just executed:

```
cat >file03 file01 file02
cat file01 >file03 file02
```

It seems to be more natural, however, if the command is written with the **file03** at the end.

So far, you have just used the most basic way of redirecting standard output into a file. This type of redirection will create a new file, or overwrite the contents of an old one. As such, the only way to combine two files is to create a third one that is just a doubled-up copy. This can be done more elegantly with another redirection command, '**>>**'. To get a sense of how this command works, type in the following:

```
lc >file01
who >>file01
```

The first command line overwrite **file01** with a list of the files in your home directory. The next command line appends the list of current users onto the end of **file01**. When you then type:

```
cat file01
```

you get a list of your home directory, followed by a list of the current users.

Input Redirection

As you have seen above, **cat** prints things on your screen. If you do not give it something to print, it waits for you to type something on your keyboard, and then prints that. **cat** can do very useful things with files. To begin with, type:

```
cat
This is a test of cat.
<ctrl-D>
```

In this form of the **cat** command, you must conclude your input "file" with **<ctrl-D>**. As you should remember, this entails holding down the **ctrl** key while striking the 'D' key. In this example, **<ctrl-D>** means end of file; as such, it terminates the input file. As soon as this command is implemented, your line of text is printed back onto your screen. Although the example we just showed you is not terribly important, the underlying principle of input redirection is. For example, you can type something at your terminal and redirect it to a file using **cat**, without going to the trouble of using the editor. For example, type:

```
cat >file01
Line number one
Line number two
<ctrl-D>
```

Now type **cat file01** to verify that your text went into the file.

Suppose you wanted to use **cat** to put something into a file, but didn't want to have to use a **<ctrl-D>** at the end. You can do this using the '<<' form of standard input redirection. The following example might seem a bit complex, but it is really quite simple. Type:

```
cat >file01 << .
This is a test
of redirection symbols.
```

This command has done two things: First, it redirected your keyboard input directly into **file01**. Second, the '<<' redirection symbol told the operating system to accept input from the keyboard until it comes across a *token* — in this case the '.' — that signaled the conclusion of the input. Basically, this tells the shell to redirect all the text between the two tokens. Note that this term *must* be placed on a line all by itself. (Note that this token is whatever you choose; we chose a period for this example because it duplicates the same function in **mail** or **ed**. Other people use **stop**, **end**, or **@@**.) This form of redirection is called a *here document*.

It is also possible to redirect standard input, using '<'. For example, *Using the COHERENT System* gives examples of using the **mail** command to send messages to other users. You can redirect the standard input so that your mail message will come from a file instead of from your keyboard. For example, this command:

```
mail fred < gossip
```

will send the file **gossip** to **fred** in the form of a mail message.

Redirecting the Standard Error

Besides redirecting the standard input and output files, you can also redirect the *standard error* file. When a COHERENT command generates an error (such as not finding a file), it prints an error message to the standard error file, which normally is directed to your terminal's screen. If, however, you want the error messages to be printed somewhere else, you can use the symbol '2>' to redirect them. This allows you to keep a copy of error messages in a file. To do this, write a command in this form:

```
cat file99 2>file02
```

In the above example, if the **cat** command cannot find **file99**, it will print the resulting error message into **file02**, instead of onto your screen.

A frequently used application of the redirection of standard error is with the file **/dev/null**. **/dev/null** is a device that is always empty, even if you write into it. Matter written into **/dev/null** disappears forever. Thus, the command

```
cat file1 2>/dev/null
```

throws away all error messages.

Pipes

Up until now, all the forms of redirection discussed have involved files. However, the COHERENT system lets you link the input and output of different commands in process. This final type of redirection is done with a special character called a *pipe*: '|'. This symbol makes the output of one command into the input of the next. For example, consider the command:

```
who | sort | scat
```

who lists all the people currently logged into your system. By putting the '|' between **who** and **sort**, the list of the users is then piped to **sort** command, which sorts the list of users into alphabetic order. Finally, by piping that that sorted list to **scat**, the sorted list is output to your screen a screenful at a time.

As you can see, the pipe symbol elegantly avoids the complications of having to create temporary files as intervening steps between the execution of commands.

The COHERENT system's philosophy of redirection is based on two concepts. First, all files "look" the same to the system, whether they are coming from or going to disk, tape, terminal, or printer. Second, just about every program acts like a filter in that it takes some input, manipulates it (e.g., editing or sorting), and produces output. Input can come from a terminal, a file, or from another program; output can go to the terminal, another file, or another program. Consequently, the program itself never has to get snarled up in these details.

When you combine that kind of flexibility with a toolbox of powerful commands and utilities, the result is power in a friendly environment.

Parameter Substitution

Each shell command file can have up to nine *positional parameters*. This lets you write a command file that can be used for many circumstances. Recall that parameters to a command follow the command itself and are separated by spaces or tabs. An example of a command reference with two parameters is:

```
show first second
```

where **first** and **second** are the positional parameters.

To substitute the positional parameters in the command file, use the character '\$' followed by the decimal number of the parameter. As an example, type the following text into the executable command file **show**:

```
cat $1
cat $2
diff $1 $2
```

Recall that you must type **chmod +x show** to make **show** executable. The tokens **\$1**

and **\$2** refer to the first and second parameters, respectively. Now, create this sample file and call it **first**:

```
line1
line two
line 3
```

Then, create another file, called **second**:

```
line 1
line 2
line 3
```

Then issue the **show** command:

```
show first second
```

Because the shell substitutes **first** for **\$1** and **second** for **\$2**, this has the same effect as typing:

```
cat first
cat second
diff first second
```

If you issue a command with fewer than the number of parameters referenced in the command, the shell will substitute an empty (or *null*) string in place of each missing parameter. For example, if you only give the parameter **first** to the **show** command, like this:

```
show first
```

then the shell will only substitute the first parameter:

```
cat first
cat
diff first
```

The empty string has been substituted for **\$2**.

The above example shows the parameter references separated from each other by a space. For positional parameters this is not necessary, because a positional parameter can only be one digit. To illustrate, build an executable command file and name it **pos**:

```
echo $167
```

Then call the command file with:

```
pos five
```

The result will be:

```
five67
```

There are also two special variables that you can use to let a shell script use all the positional parameters. The first is '\$*'. For example, consider the file `prt`:

```
cat $*
```

A script that contains this command will `cat` each of the files from the positional parameters. If you typed:

```
prt file01 file02 file03 file04 filezz
```

the script would `cat` all of the files onto your screen.

The variable '\$@' is basically the same as '\$*' except that it passes all the parameters as one variable. If the script `seek` contained:

```
grep "$@" addr.list
```

(`grep` is a powerful searching function) then you could type:

```
seek Fred Flintstone
```

and the `seek` command would use `grep` to search for the entire string "Fred Flintstone", not just "Fred" or "Flintstone".

Shell Variable Substitution

In addition to positional parameters, the shell provides *variables*. The variable name can be constructed from letters, numbers, and the underscore character '_'. Here are some sample names:

```
high_tension
a
directory
```

Variable names must not be single digits, because the shell will treat them as positional parameters. Upper-case letters and lower-case letters are treated as being different in shell variable names.

Values are given to variables by an assignment statement:

```
a=welcome
```

You can inspect parameter values with the `echo` command:

```
echo $a
```

Do not forget the '\$' when referring to the value. The '\$' is a special character that signals the shell that you want the *value* of the variable indicated. This holds true for shell variables and positional parameters.

To avoid problems with special characters when you are assigning values, enclose the value to be assigned in apostrophes. For example:

```
phrase='several words long'
```

There are several uses for variables. One is to hold a long string that you expect to type repeatedly as part of a command. If you are editing files in a subdirectory such as `/usr/wisdom/source/widget`, you can abbreviate the pathname by assigning it the variable `pw`. Type:

```
pw='/usr/wisdom/source/widget'
```

Then you can simply replace the complete pathname with:

```
$pw
```

You can also pass a shell variable as a parameter to a command. You can use it in place of positional parameters; when used in this way, they are called *keyword parameters*. To see how these work, create another executable command file, `show2`, which resembles `show` above:

```
cat $one
cat $two
diff $one $two
```

To use `show2`, issue the following command:

```
one=first two=second show2
```

Note that no semicolons separate the parts of this command. As we saw earlier, commands can be on the same line if they are separated by semicolons. In this instance, the declaration of the variables `one` and `two` must not be separated from the command `show2`.

The above command is equivalent to:

```
cat first
cat second
diff first second
```

In this case, assigning keyword parameters does not affect the variable after the command is executed. For example, if you type:

```
one=ordinal
one=first two=second show2
echo 'value of one is ' $one
```

echo will produce:

```
value of one is ordinal
```

If the reference to a variable or keyword parameter is immediately followed by other text, its name will not be properly recognized. To illustrate, create the following executable file, called `show3`:

```
echo $onetwo three
```

A reference to this command file of the form:

```
one=careful
show3
```

will result in the following output:

```
three
```

This is so because the variable `$onetwo` has not been defined. The shell will not be able to recognize that you want the variable `one` because it's butted up against the word `two`. To prevent this, enclose the name of the variable in braces, as follows:

```
echo ${one}two three
```

The result this time will be:

```
carefultwo three
```

Normally, variables that are not set on the line of a command are not accessible to a command. To illustrate, build an executable parameter display command file named **pars**:

```
echo 1 $1
echo 2 $2
echo p1 $p1
echo p2 $p2
```

pars can be used to show the behavior of parameters. First, the name of the parameter is echoed, then the value of the parameter is echoed (as indicated by the '\$' sign). To pass positional parameters, type:

```
pars ay bee
```

and the output will be:

```
1 ay
2 bee
p1
p2
```

To pass keyword parameters, type:

```
p1=start p2=begin pars
```

and the result will be:

```
1
2
p1 start
p2 begin
```

To illustrate that the setting of `p1` and `p2` did not "stick", type:

```
echo $p1 $p2 'to show'
```

To which **echo** will reply

to show

thus indicating that **p1** and **p2** are not set.

To illustrate that variables set separately from a command are not seen by the command, type:

```
p1=outsidel p2=outside2
pars
```

You will get this reply:

```
1
2
p1
p2
```

This may come as quite a surprise to you, but if you type:

```
echo $p1 $p2
```

you will get the value of **p1** and **p2** that you set above. Why does **sh** know the value of **p1** and **p2** for the **echo** command, but not for the command file **pars**? The reason is that **p1** and **p2** are set for your current shell, but not for any other shells. When you use **echo**, the variables are read from your current shell; but when you use the shell starts up *another* shell. This second shell is a copy of the first shell (except for the variables **p1** and **p2**), and is created for the sole purpose of running the **pars** command. Once **pars** is finished, the second shell disappears.

By using the **export** command, variables can be made available outside the current shell. The commands

```
export p1 p2
p1='see me' p2='hello'
pars
```

will receive the reply:

```
1
2
p1 see me
p2 hello
```

thus indicating that after the **export** of **p1** and **p2**, these two variables are available to all commands. A variable that has already appeared in an **export** command can be changed and will still be available to all commands.

Command Substitution

By enclosing a command in grave characters (*backwards* apostrophes) ` ` , you can feed the output of one command into another. This is a handy way to generate parameters for a command file from a prepared file. For example, assume that the file `listf` contains a list of parameters that you prepared with `ed`. These can be passed as parameters to the command file `scrfl`, thus:

```
scrfl `cat listf`
```

Special Shell Variables

The shell uses certain variables to determine the environment of the user, such as where his home directory is, where his mail is, or where to look for commands.

When you log in to the COHERENT system, the shell variable `HOME` is set to your *home* or default directory path. If your user name is `henry`, then the command:

```
echo $HOME
```

will reply:

```
/usr/henry
```

on most systems. The change directory command, `cd`, sets the working directory to the pathname described by `HOME` if no parameter is given.

The shell normally prompts you with '\$' for commands and with '>' if more information is needed to complete the command. These two prompts are taken by the shell from the variables `PS1` and `PS2`. You can change these if you want different prompts. For example:

```
PS1='!! '
PS2='Huh? '
```

To make these take effect each time you log in, put the assignment statements in your `.profile` file.

The shell variable `PATH` lists the directories that the shell searches to find commands. The contents of `PATH` that is illustrated when you type:

```
echo $PATH
```

is typically:

```
:/bin:/usr/bin
```

The pathnames are separated by a colon ':'. In this example, a null string precedes the first ':', which means that the shell will first look in the current directory. Then it looks in `/bin`. If the command is not found there, then it looks in `/usr/bin`. Another common setting for `PATH` is:

```
...:/bin:/usr/bin
```

This means that commands are first sought in the current directory, then in `..`, the parent directory to the current directory, then in `/bin`, and finally in `/usr/bin`. You can also set `PATH` so that it will search your own `bin` for commands. In your `.profile` you can put the following command:

```
export PATH=$PATH:$HOME/bin
```

This uses the old `PATH` variable and adds on the value in the `HOME` variable with `/bin` on the end. If you happen to be called `fred`, then `$HOME/bin` will become `/usr/fred/bin`.

Command Decisions

This section illustrates how you can write commands that act differently under different circumstances.

Values Returned by Commands

Most COHERENT commands return a value (called an *exit status*) indicating success or failure. You can examine this value by typing the command

```
echo $?
```

This tells you the value returned by the last command executed. The value zero indicates success or truth, while a non-zero value indicates failure or falsehood. Commands that return a failure value usually also type a message indicating an error condition.

Look at a couple of examples. Type:

```
cat file999 ; echo $? ; cat file01 ; echo $?
```

Unless there actually is a file called `file999`, then this series of commands will print an error message, then echo `1`, list out `file01`, which we created earlier in this tutorial, and then echo `0`. The `cat` command will not find `file999`, so it will print an error message, and the variable `'$?'` will consequently have a value of `1` because `cat` failed. The next `cat` command will find `file01` and print it, therefore `'$?'` will be equal to `0` because `cat` succeeded.

You can use the value returned by commands to affect decisions about executing other commands. For example, when you use the compare command, `cmp`, with an option of `-s`, it will *not* print the differences between two files; rather, it will return a value of `0` if the files are identical, and a value of `1` if they are different.

You can also set the exit status of a shell command by using the `exit` command. The format of the command is simple:

```
exit n
```

where `n` is an optional number with which you can set the value of the exit status.

Another handy command is the `shift` command. If the first positional parameter is to be used to select an option and all other positional parameters are then to be passed to a subsequent command, you can `shift` the positional parameters so that the '\$*' and '\$@' form of substitution will not include \$1, the first positional parameter. The form of the command is simply:

```
shift
```

The test Command: Condition Testing

The `test` command's only task is to return a value. Many conditions may be tested with this command.

To determine if a file exists, type:

```
test -f file01
```

This returns a true value (0) if `file01` exists and is not a directory, and a false value (1) otherwise. To check if it is a directory, use this form of the command:

```
test -d file01
```

You can also use `test` to examine strings. This is useful when you use parameter substitution. To illustrate, build the executable command file `test.ed` as follows:

```
test $1 = $2
echo 'test 1 & 2 for equal:' $?
test $1 != $2
echo 'test 1 & 2 for not equal:' $?
```

Be sure that the '=' in the test command is both preceded and followed by a space, as it is a parameter. When you use `test` in this manner, it can employ many different parameters:

```
s1 = s2      string s1 is equal to string s2
s1 != s2     string s1 is not equal to string s2
n1 -eq n2    number n1 is equal to number n2
n1 -ne n2    number n1 is not equal to number n2
n1 -gt n2    number n1 is greater than number n2
n1 -ge n2    number n1 is greater than or equal to n2
n1 -lt n2    number n1 is less than number n2
n1 -le n2    number n1 is less than or equal to n2
```

The expressions given above resemble the relational operators used by most programming languages. You can also use them with the following logical operators:

```
! exp        NOT - negates the logical value of exp
exp1 -a exp2 AND - true if both expressions true
exp1 -o exp2 OR  - true if either expression true
```

These expressions can also be grouped using parentheses '()'.

The command file that we created above, `test.ed`, will test the two parameters for equality, using the relational operators. To see how this works, create `file1` and in it put:

```
line one
line two
line three
```

Then create `file2` and put:

```
line one
two is different
line three
```

Now try out the command file `test.ed`. Type:

```
test.ed file1 file2
test.ed file1 file1
```

The first line will produce:

```
test 1 & 2 for equal: 0
test 1 & 2 for not equal: 1
```

and the second line will produce:

```
test 1 & 2 for equal: 1
test 1 & 2 for not equal: 0
```

Conditional Command Processing

Let's use the two files, `file1` and `file2`, to do a comparison:

```
cmp -s file1 file2
echo $?
```

This will print 1 since the files are not the same. The shell can use the variable `?` to determine whether it should run a subsequent command. This is done using the symbols `||` and `&&`.

```
cmp -s file1 file2 || cat file2
```

The characters `||` signify that the following command should be executed if and only if the `cmp` command returns a false (non-zero) value, which it will in this example.

The symbol `&&` executes the following command only if the preceding command returns a true (0) value. This sequence of commands:

```
cp file1 file3
cmp -s file1 file3 || rm file3
```

remove `file3` if the compare command indicates no differences. Because `cmp` is preceded by a copy command, `cp`, `file1` and `file3` have no differences; therefore, `file3` will be removed.

In general, the commands that precede '&&' or '||' operators may be other commands separated by ';', '&&' or '||'. You can do some interesting things with the sequencing of commands; for example, look at this series of commands:

```
cmd1; cmd2 & cmd3; cmd4 || cmd5 && cmd6
```

The above sequence of commands separated by semicolons is executed in left to right, except for **cmd2**, which executes simultaneously with **cmd3** (and possibly other following commands) because it is being run in the background (as indicated by the trailing '&').

The following is an English-language equivalent to the COHERENT command line given above. It should help you see the sequence of commands in the line above.

```
execute cmd1
execute cmd2 in background
execute cmd3
execute cmd4
if cmd4 failed, execute cmd5
if cmd5 succeeded, execute cmd6
```

Control Flow

The shell is actually an interpreter of its own programming language. This language provides the conditional and looping constructs **for**, **if**, **while**, and **case**. Also, a subshell can be executed within '(' and ')'.

The **for** construct can be used to process a set of commands once for each of a list of items. A common use is to provide a list of iterative values for a parameter.

To illustrate the use of **for**, type the following commands:

```
for i in a b c
do
echo $i
done
```

The items **a**, **b**, and **c** form a list of values to be taken on by **i**. The command **echo** will be executed with **i** set to each value in the list in turn. The output will be:

```
a
b
c
```

Notice that after you type the line containing **for**, the shell prompts you '>'. The shell uses this prompt to remind you that you must type more information. After you type the line containing **done**, the **for** command is executed and the prompt again becomes '\$'.

The **for** command is usually used within a command file. The list of values for the index variable can be left off, in which case the list is presumed to be all the parameters to the command file. To illustrate, create this executable command file and call it **script.for**:

```
for i
do echo $i
echo '---'
done
```

Notice that there are two commands to be repeated for each value of **i**. Call the script with this command:

```
script.for 1 2 3 4 test
```

The result is:

```
1
---
2
---
3
---
4
---
test
---
```

You can also use **for** on a single command line. For example:

```
for i in 1 2 3 4 test ; do ; echo $i ; echo '---' ; done
```

produces the same results as **script.for**. You can use this same process to execute **while** and **case** commands, described below.

The shell provides conditional command processing with its **if** command. **if** tests the result of a command and conditionally executes other commands, based upon the result of the test. For example, you can rewrite the above examples to use **if** instead of **&&** and **||**. Instead of

```
cmp -s file1 file2 || cat file2
```

you can use:

```
if cmp -s file1 file2
then cat file2
fi
```

for the same result. Note that the **if** command will prompt you for further input until it receives the **fi**, just as the **for** command prompted you for input until you typed **done**. The command line:

```
cat file2
```

is executed only if the **cmp** command returns a zero or true value. This is not the same as the **if** command in most other programming languages. The COHERENT system's **if** only tests the value returned by a subsequent command. It does not, for example, compare two strings.

To use **if** to get the same result as given by this previously illustrated command line:

```
cmp -s file1 file3 || rm file3
```

you must use the **else** statement as well:

```
if cmp -s file1 file2
then
else rm file3
fi
```

The commands between **else** and **fi** are executed if the result of the command after the **if** is false (non-zero). Here, the **then** part of the **if** command is empty.

Another form of the **if** statement allows you to test several conditions with one **if** statement, and act on the one that is true. You do this using the **elif** form:

```
if command1
then action1
elif command2
then action2
elif command3
then action3
else action4
```

The items labeled *command* and *action* are both commands or lists of commands.

First, *command1* is executed. If the result is true, *action1* is performed. If the result from *command1* is not true, then *command2* is executed. If its result is true, then *action2* is performed. This process continues until none of the *commands* returns a true result. If none of the *command* results is true, the *action4* following the **else** is executed.

To illustrate, the following script lists on your terminal only one of the three file-name parameters. This command:

```
test -f name
```

returns a value of true if *name* is an existing file. Create this executable command file and name it **cat.1**:

```
if test -f $1
then cat $1
elif test -f $2
then cat $2
elif test -f $3
then cat $3
else echo 'None are files'
```

To use **if** to compare two strings (like **if** statements in other programming languages), you must use the **test** command. For example, create the following command file, **script**, which will perform different commands depending upon the parameters it is given:

```
if test $1 = a
then ls -l $2
elif test $1 = b
then lc $2
elif test $1 = c
then pwd
else echo unknown parameter: $1
fi
```

Now, when you type:

```
script a
```

it is the equivalent of:

```
ls -l
```

When you type

```
script b
```

it is the equivalent of:

```
lc
```

The **test** command checks to see if parameter *\$1* is equal to **a**, **b**, **c**, or is unrecognized; and then **if** executes the appropriate command.

while is another looping or repetitive shell statement. The commands

```
while command1
do command2
done
```

first perform *command1*.

If its result is true, then *command2* is executed and *command1* is again executed. This process continues until the result from *command1* is no longer true. The value of *command1* is only tested at the beginning of each loop of the **while** statement. Consequently, if the value of *command1* is false inside the **while** loop but is true at the end of the loop, then the **while** loop will *continue* to execute.

The **case** statement resembles the **if** statement in that it offers a multiple decision. The **case** statement checks the value of a variable, and then chooses the option that is equal to that variable. To illustrate, create an executable command file named **dir** that gives a choice of listing your directory in different ways:


```

case $1 in
a) ls -l $2;;
b) lc $2;;
c) pwd;;
*) echo unknown parameter $1;;
esac

```

dir performs the same function as the command file **script**, which uses the **if** and **test** commands to make the same choices as the **case** command does.

The words **case** and **esac** bracket the entire case statement. The effect of the command

```
dir b
```

is equivalent to:

```
ls
```

This command

```
dir a file
```

is the same as:

```
ls -l file
```

Each choice within the case statement is indicated by a string followed by ')'. For example:

```
b)
```

indicates the choice for **\$1** having the value **b**.

The strings selecting the choices may be patterns. The '*' choice signifies that a match should be made on any string. Notice that this resembles the use of '*' to substitute any file name. If one of the other choices is matched first, then the '*' is not executed. In a case statement, an expression of the form

```
[1-9])
```

will match any digit from one through nine. A list of alternatives may be presented by separating the choices with vertical bars:

```
a|b|c) command
```

Notice that each command or command list in the case choice must be terminated by the double character ';;'.

Advanced Parameter Substitution

As you have seen earlier, the shell provides variables, called *parameters*, that you can use in programming. Sometimes you will want to change these parameters (e.g., to substitute a standard value when the parameter is undefined.) It is recommended that you have had some experience with the shell, and especially with using the shell command files, before you attempt any of the following techniques.

For example, suppose you have a script file that uses positional parameters, and you want the file to use all the available parameters. Normally, you would list them out:

```
$1
$2
$3
$4
$5
$6
$7
```

and so on. The following script file, called `test`, illustrates this problem:

```
cat $1 $2 $3 $4 $5 $6 $7... >file
```

Instead, you can use the single parameter `'$*'`, as follows:

```
cat $* >file
```

Whenever you execute this command file, the shell will substitute all of the available positional parameters. When you give the following command:

```
test file01 file02
```

the shell will execute the following from the command file:

```
cat file01 file02 >file
```

The shell substituted both of the available positional parameters into the command file.

The same kind of substitution can be done using `'$@'`, except the positional parameters would be substituted as one large parameter. This could be useful, for example, if you wished to use `grep` to search for people's phone numbers:

```
grep -y $@ phone.file
```

An example of using this command file could be:

```
findphone Bob Clark
```

The shell would pass the single parameter "Bob Clark" to the command file, to be searched for by `grep`. If you used `'$*'` instead of `'$@'`, then the shell would have passed "Bob Clark" as two parameters, ("Bob" and "Clark"), so that `grep` would have searched for the string "Bob" in the files `Clark` and `phone.file`.

What happens if a given parameter is empty? Until now, we have had to leave the parameter empty, but the shell can substitute other values, as listed below:

`${parameter-word}`

If parameter is set, then substitute its value; otherwise substitute *word*.

`${parameter=word}`

If parameter is not set, then set the parameter to *word*. Not applicable to positional parameters.

`${parameter?word}`

If *parameter* is set, then substitute its value; otherwise, print *word* and exit from the shell. If *word* is omitted, then a standard message is printed.

`${parameter+word}`

If *parameter* is set, then substitute *word*; otherwise, substitute nothing.

Here, *word* can be a string, another parameter (with the '\$' to indicate to the shell that you want the parameter's value, not the name), or even a command enclosed in graves, which would pass the output of the command.

Try an example of this substitution facility. Suppose you want a shell command file, **send**, that will write messages to **fred** most of the time, but to others at other times:

```
msg ${1-fred} `read x ; echo $x`
```

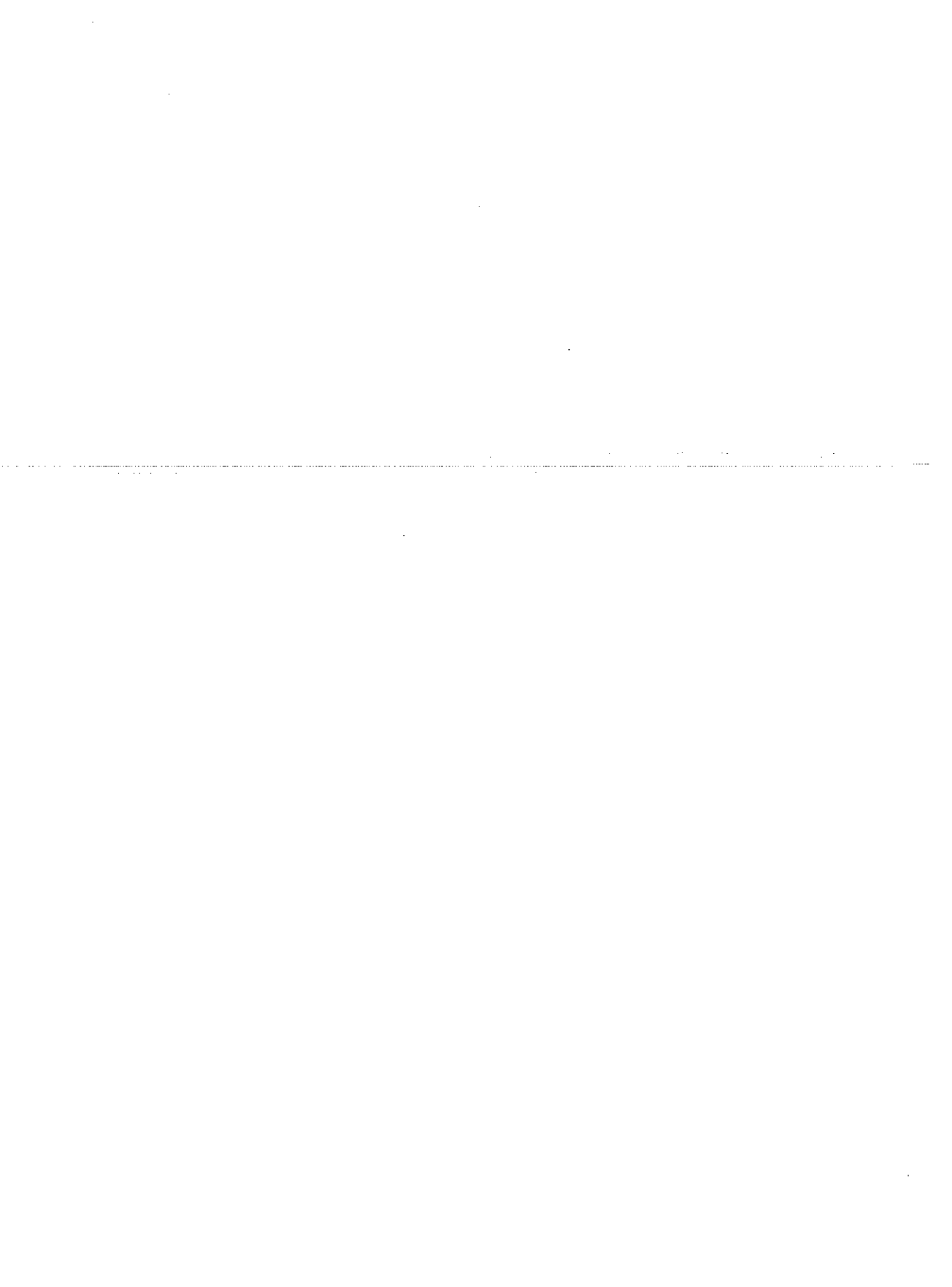
If you give **send** a positional parameter, it will send that person a message, otherwise it will send the message to **fred**.

In the above command file, we introduced a new feature of the shell: the **read** command. We used the graves to pass the value of a command to **msg**, and we used **read** to get input from your terminal. **read** reads one line from your terminal and puts it into the variable **x** (or any other variable that you give it). We used **echo** to pass the value of **x** to **msg**.

The following gives some other parameters that are set by the shell for use in command files:

- # The number of positional parameters in decimal.
- The options supplied to the shell.
- ? The value returned by the last command.
- \$ The process number of this shell.
- ! The process number of the last background command.

Describing the full use of these parameters is beyond the scope of this tutorial, but as you use the shell, you will find more uses for these parameters. A more complete list of parameters and commands that can be used in the shell is found in the *COHERENT Command Manual*, under **sh**.



Section 15:

UUCP, Remote Communications Utility

UUCP is a set of programs that together let you communicate in an unattended manner with remote COHERENT and UNIX sites. The term *UUCP* is an abbreviation for "UNIX to UNIX copy"; as its name implies, UUCP was developed under the UNIX operating system. Mark Williams Company has recreated UUCP for COHERENT.

UUCP allows your COHERENT system to talk over telephone lines to other computers that also run COHERENT or UNIX. It can transmit files and mail to other systems and receive material from them, without needing you to guide it by hand every step of the way. Moreover, you can instruct UUCP to telephone other computers at the same time each day; this permits regular, orderly exchange of mail, news, and files among computers, and allows you to take advantage of lower telephone rates during off-peak periods. In a similar fashion, UUCP allows other systems to log into your system, to exchange mail or other information, and otherwise perform useful tasks.

Numerous UUCP systems have linked together to create an informal network called the *Usenet*. Many megabytes of source code, news, and technical information are available across the Usenet. Anyone who is connected to the Usenet can exchange mail with anyone else who is also connected to the Usenet. All that is required to hook into the Usenet is to obtain a UUCP connection to anyone else who is connected to the Usenet.

You can use UUCP only if you have telephone access to another computer that runs UUCP, and if your system and the remote system with which you wish to communicate have been described to each other. UUCP is standard with COHERENT and UNIX, and can be purchased for MS-DOS. If you wish to copy files from another system, you must arrange with the system administrator of that system before you can begin to use UUCP. Likewise, if you want someone else to dial into your system to upload or download files, you must first describe that system to your copy of UUCP.

UUCP, however, is a system that supports thousands of interlinked computers that exchange millions of bytes of data daily; as you can imagine, a subject of this scope is difficult to encompass in a document as brief as this. If you wish to explore the heights and depths of UUCP, we urge you to acquire the following books:

- O'Reilly T, Todino G: *Managing UUCP and Usenet*. Sebastopol, Calif, O'Reilly & Associates Inc., 1987.
- Seyer MD: *RS-232 Made Easy: Connecting Computers, Printers, Terminals, and Modems*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ, Prentice-Hall Inc., 1984.
- !%@: *A Directory of Electronic Mail Addressing and Networks*. Sebastopol, Calif, O'Reilly & Associates Inc., 1989.

Contents of This Manual

This tutorial describes UUCP and tells you how to set up and run your UUCP system. It briefly describes how to attach a modem to your computer and how to describe it to the COHERENT system, and it describes how to dial out to other systems to exchange files. Future editions of this manual will contain information on how to allow other systems to dial into your system, so it can act as the hub of a network.

An Overview of UUCP

UUCP is a set of programs that exchange files with other computers that run UUCP. You can set aside files or mail messages to be transferred to another computer; UUCP regularly checks to see if material has been set aside to be transferred, dials the remote system, and exchanges the files without requiring your assistance.

This appears to be a simple function, but it can be extremely useful to you. Suppose, for example, that you run a real-estate office that is a member of an organization with regional and national offices. You can tell UUCP to call your regional office each night, to send a file of your new listings and to accept a file of new listings in your district that had come from other local offices. Likewise, your association's regional office can telephone the national office each night to receive new listings in your region, which can then be passed on automatically to the appropriate neighborhood offices. All of this information can be transferred at night, when telephone rates are lowest, and without needing you to be at the console. When you come to work the next morning, you will have the latest listings instantly available on your terminal.

In brief, what UUCP offers is the ability to join a *network* of computers, in which every user of every computer can exchange information with every user on every other computer, automatically. What computer networks can do is limited only by your need to exchange information with other computer users, and by your imagination.

The Programs

UUCP consists of the following programs:

- uucp** The UUCP user interface. **uucp** copies files from one computer to another. Be sure not to confuse the **uucp** command with the UUCP system, despite their similar names.
- uucico** Call remote systems: log in to the remote system, and transfer files.

- uudecode** Translate files encoded by **uuencode** back into object code.
- uuencode** Translate binary files into printable ASCII characters for transmission to another system.
- uuninstall** This program displays a template on your screen, and helps you describe a system to UUCP relatively painlessly.
- uulog** Read the UUCP logs, which records the processes that UUCP has initiated recently.
- uunvlog** Copy the current UUCP log files into backup files, named after the day on which they were generated. Throw away all log files older a requested number of days. UUCP logs everything that it does; and since it does a lot, its log files can grow very large very quickly. **uunvlog** helps to ensure that you have enough information on your system to see where UUCP has gone wrong, yet the UUCP log files do not grow large enough to overwhelm your system.
- uuname** List the systems that your computer can reach.
- uutouch** Create a file that triggers a call to a named remote system.
- uuxqt** Execute files with the prefix "X." in the directory `/usr/spool/uucp/sitename`.
- Three other programs, while not part of UUCP per se, are used by it:
- ttystat** Check the status of your asynchronous ports. If UUCP is not receiving files from other systems or not sending files to other systems, it may be because the appropriate ports have not been enabled.
- mail** Send "electronic mail" to another person, either on your system or on another system via UUCP.
- uux** Execute commands on remote systems.

Directories and Files

UUCP uses the following files and directories.

/bin/uulog

The **uulog** command.

/etc/domain

This file lists the UUCP domain. It is read by **mail**.

/etc/modemcap This file holds descriptions of modems that are understood by the COHERENT system.

/etc/uucpname

Holds the name of your system, as it is known to other UUCP sites.

/usr/bin/uucp

The **uucp** command. Copy a file to another system that runs UUCP.

/usr/bin/uuname

The **uuname** command.

/usr/bin/uudecode

The **uudecode** command.

/usr/bin/uuencode

The **uuencode** command.

/usr/lib/uucp

Contains UUCP commands and system data files.

/usr/lib/uucp/L-devices

Describe the outgoing lines. Note whether they are directly wired or modems; give the protocol needed to manipulate them.

/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys

Gives login data for remote sites. It gives the way to call remote sites and the sites that only call you.

/usr/lib/uucpp/Permissions

For each site, list the programs that that site has permission to execute on your system.

/usr/lib/uucp/ttystat

The **ttystat** command.

/usr/lib/uucp/uucico

The **uucico** command.

/usr/lib/uucp/uumvlog

The **uumvlog** command.

/usr/lib/uucp/uutouch

The **uutouch** command.

/usr/lib/uucp/uuxqt

The **uuxqt** command.

/usr/spool/logs/uucp

Log of UUCP activity.

/usr/spool/uucp/.Log

Directory containing UUCP logfiles, as follows:

/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucico/sitename

/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uux/sitename

/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucp/sitename

/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uuxqt/sitename

/usr/spool/uucp/sitename/C.*

Files that instruct the local system either to send or to receive files.

/usr/spool/uucp/sitename/D.*

Work files for outgoing and incoming files.

/usr/spool/uucp/LCK.*

The "lock" files UUCP uses to coordinate its resources. When UUCP invokes one of its subordinate programs, it writes a lock file; another version of that subordinate program cannot be invoked until the first exits and thereby erases its lock file. This prevents different invocations of the same program from cancelling out each other's work.

/usr/spool/uucp/.Sequence

This directory contains the sequence number of the last file handled by UUCP.

/usr/spool/uucp/TM*

These are temporary files generated by uucico while receiving files from remote sites.

/usr/spool/uucp/sitename/X.*

Executed files. These files will be executed by the command `uuxqt`, and are generated by a remote system.

/usr/spool/uucppublic

Public directory accessible by all remote UUCP systems.

Attaching a Modem to Your Computer

It is straightforward to attach a modem to your computer.

First, read the documentation that comes with your modem, and look for the following: (1) the baud rate at which the modem operates, and (2) the command protocol that your modem uses.

Second, check the plug on the back of your modem. The modem will connect to your computer via a nine-pin or 25-pin D plug, also known as an RS-232 interface. Such a plug can be either *male* or *female*: the male plug has nine or 25 small pins projecting from it, whereas the female does not.

Third, obtain a cable to connect one of the serial ports on your computer to the modem. The serial ports on an IBM AT or AT compatible are almost always male; if your modem has a female plug, you will need a male-to-female cable, whereas if your modem's plug is male (which is very rare), you will need a female-to-female plug. Be sure to purchase a standard modem cable for an IBM AT; practically all computer dealers carry them. The cable you purchase should support "full modem control"; if it doesn't say on the package, be sure to ask your dealer before you buy it. If you are handy with a soldering iron you may be able to solder up such a cable for yourself, but unless you know precisely what you are doing it probably is not worth the trouble. When you plug in your cable, be sure to note whether you plugged it into port `com1`, `com2`, `com3` or `com4`.

Fourth, reconfigure the serial port to suit your modem. This involves the following steps:

1. Log in as the superuser **root**.
2. Edit the file `/etc/ttys`. This file normally has three lines in it, one that describes the console and one for each serial port. Each line has four fields: a one-character field that indicates whether a login prompt should be displayed (used only for devices from which people will be logging into your system); a one-character field that describes whether the device is local or remote (a local would be a modem from which you wished to dial out, a remote device would be a modem from which someone could dial in); a one-character field that describes the speed (or baud rate) at which the device operates; and a field of indefinite length that names the device being described. If you have plugged into serial port **com1** a 1200-baud modem that will allow remote logins, edit the line for **com1** to read as follows:

```
1rIcom1r
```

If you have plugged into serial port **com2** a 2400-baud modem from which you are only going to dial out, edit the line for **com2** to read as follows:

```
01Lcom2l
```

Note that the second and last character are a lower-case `el`, not a one. For more information, see the Lexicon entries for **com**, **getty** and **ttys**.

3. When you have finished editing `/etc/ttys`, type the following command:

```
kill quit 1
```

This will force COHERENT to read `/etc/ttys` and set up its ports in the manner that you have configured them.

Finally, test if you have connected your modem. Turn on your modem; then log in as the superuser **root** and type the following command:

```
echo "FOO" >/dev/port
```

where *port* is the "local" version of the port, depending on which serial port you have plugged your modem. If the systems are connected, the lights on your modem should blink briefly. For a more sophisticated test, try to communicate with your modem by using the command **kermit**. If you are not familiar with **kermit**, see its entry in the Lexicon for details.

If you continue to have problems making connections with your modem, see the volume *RS-232 Made Easy*, referenced above. It describes in lavish detail how to connect all manner of devices via the RS-232 interface.

Installing UUCP

Installing UUCP on your system means giving UUCP information about both your system and about the remote systems with which it will be making contact.

Before you can use UUCP to log into a remote system, you must find a remote system that will let you log in via UUCP. If you ask around among your friends or check local bulletin boards, you should have no trouble finding a UUCP system that will let you log in.

When you find a system that will let you log in, you must tell the administrator of that system what your system is called. If you have not yet selected a name for your system, do so now. The name must be eight characters or fewer, and must be unique — or unique, at least, to the system into which you will log in.

The administrator of the remote system, in turn, will give you the following information: (1) the name of his system; (2) the telephone number of his system and the speed of his modem; (3) your login name (this is apart from your system name); and (4) your password. He may also tell you when he would prefer for you to log into his system. This information should always be kept confidential, just as you would keep confidential the combination to a friend's locker.

Once you have exchanged information with the administrator of the remote system, you must describe that remote system to your local UUCP system. This is an involved process that has many pitfalls; however, COHERENT includes a program to make this task easier for you: `uinstall`. This program displays a template on the screen; you fill in the blanks, and it does the rest.

To begin, log in as the superuser `root`, and type `uinstall`. In a moment, the screen will clear and the following menu will appear:

```
H - Help for screens
S - Sitename
L - Lsys
D - Devices
P - Permissions
```

You should type `H` first. `uinstall` will show you the keystrokes it expects to move from one field to another. These keystrokes are the same as used by the MicroEMACS screen editor; if you're not familiar with MicroEMACS, the keystrokes are easy enough to learn.

Setting Up Your Local Site

If you are describing a system to UUCP for the first time, type `S` for site name. This will ask you for two bits of information: the name you have given your site, and your local domain. Type in the site name in the space indicated. The "domain" is used to organize groups of users on your system; the Mark Williams edition of UUCP does not yet use domains, but the `mail` program expects domain information to be included for use with mail headers. Therefore, enter something into the domain slot; you may wish to use your site name followed by `.UUCP` (e.g., `mwc.UUCP`), or something similar. When you have finished entering information, type `<ctrl-Z>` to exit this screen and return to the main menu.

If you are working with UUCP for the first time, type `D` for devices. This will let you describe to UUCP the type of modem it will working with. You will see the following template:

Type:
 Line:
 Remote:
 Baudrate:
 brand:

Type **N** to go to the next entry. Keep pressing **N** until you see the entry for the communications port you wish to use. If you wish to add a device not already listed, type **A** to "add" an entry.

The first entry, **Type**, can have one of two entries: **DIR** or **ACU**. The former indicates devices that are directly wired into the computer, such as terminals; the latter is for remote devices like modems. Type **ACU**, then **<ctrl-N>** to move to the next field.

In the next field, **Line**, enter the serial port into which you've plugged your modem: **com11**, **com21**, etc. Then type **<ctrl-N>**.

The next field, **Remote**, gives the name of the port into which a remote device is connected. Enter the port into which you plugged your modem, followed by the letter 'r'. For example, if your modem is plugged into port **com2**, enter **com2r**. Type **<ctrl-N>** to move to the next field.

The next field, **Baudrate**, is the speed at which your modem operates, e.g., 2400 or 9600. Enter it, then type **<ctrl-N>**.

Finally, enter the type of modem that you are using. The COHERENT system's file **/etc/modemcap** contains descriptions for a number of popular modems, to spare you the trouble of typing control sequences for your modem. The following table gives the code name for each of the modems described in **/etc/modemcap**, plus a description of it:

hayes	Hayes Smartmodem 1200
tbfast	Trailblazer, 9600 baud
xtb2400	Trailblazer, 2400 baud
avatex	Hayes clone, 2400 baud
promodem	Prometheus Promodem 1200
mk12	Signalman Mark XII
dc300	Radio Shack Direct-Connect 300

"direct" for null modem connection

Enter the code name for the appropriate modem. One hint: if you have a Hayes or Hayes-compatible modem that runs at 2400 baud, enter **avatex** instead of **hayes** — their **modem** descriptions are virtually identical except for the baud rate.

Please note that the dialing commands in **modemcap** assume that you have a Touch-Tone telephone. If you have a pulse telephone, you must modify your modem's entry in **modemcap**. First, consult the documentation for your modem and find the correct command for dialing a pulse telephone; on Hayes and Hayes-compatible modems, it is **DP**. Then open the file **/etc/modemcap** and locate the description of your modem; then change the characters that follow the string **ds=** to the command you just looked up. For example, to edit the **avatex** entry in **modemcap** so it will dial a pulse telephone, change the string **ds=DT** to **ds=DP**.

If you have described your modem correctly, there should be no need for you to do it again. Type <ctrl-Z> to save your changes and return you to the main menu.

Describing a Remote Site

Next, type **L** for **L.sys**. **L.sys** is a file that hold a description of every system to which you will make connection. You will see the following template:

```
System
Line
baud rate
phone number

Day to Call Time From   Time To
Any
```

```
Expect  ""
Send    ""
Expect  ogin -
Send
Expect  ssword:
Send
```

Type **M**, to modify this entry.

In the first entry, **System**, type the name of the system with which you will be connecting. For example, if the system for International Widget is named **intwidget**, type that followed by <ctrl-N>. If a system is described more than once in the file **L.sys**, UUCP will use the first description.

The next field, **Line**, names the line to which you have connected your modem, either **ACU** or a port from the aforementioned "devices" screen, followed by <ctrl-N>. This may seem redundant with the description in the **device** file; however, it's not, because it's possible to connect to a remote system via more than one route or device.

In the next field **baud rate**, enter your modem's baud rate; then <ctrl-N>.

In the next field, **phone number**, enter the remote system's telephone number. If the remote system has an area code other than yours, be sure to include the '1' before the telephone number; also, do not include the hyphens in the telephone number, or it will not fit into the space allotted for it. Then type <ctrl-N>.

Day and Time of Connection

The next of fields let you set the days of the week and times at which you wish to dial the remote system. **Day to Call** recognizes the following values:

Wk	Every weekday, i.e., Monday through Friday
Su	Sunday
Mo	Monday
Tu	Tuesday
We	Wednesday
Th	Thursday
Fr	Friday
Sa	Saturday
Never	Don't call remote system
Any	Call at any time

Time From and **Time To** set a "window" during which UUCP will attempt to contact the remote system. Both are set using a 2400-hour clock; for example, with the following setting

```
We 2100 2300
```

UUCP will try to contact this remote system between 9:00 PM and 11:00 PM. Likewise, with the following setting

```
We 2300 0200
```

UUCP will try to contact this remote system between 11:00 PM and 2:00 AM the following morning. If on the first try UUCP fails to make connection with the remote system (the line is busy, say), it will try again periodically until either it connects with the remote system or the time period for that system and day has ended. (The following section will tell you how to set when UUCP checks for newly queued files.) When the next "legal" time comes around, UUCP will then try again.

If you do not set the time for a given day, then UUCP will attempt to contact the remote system as soon as it discovers that a file for that system has been queued. The advantage of setting times is that you can force UUCP to work in the evening and on weekends, when telephone rates are cheaper, and you can spread UUCP's work around so it never overloads the system at any given point. After all, if you need your modem yourself during the day, you don't want to wait for UUCP to finish a call before you use it.

As you can see, the template for days and times has seven rows. This lets you establish different times for each day of the week; for weekdays and weekends; for weekdays alone; or weekends alone. Note that you do not have to dial a remote site every day! Depending on the importance of the site, weekdays or weekends alone may be sufficient. Consider the following set of entries:

Day to Call	Time From	Time To
Wk	2300	0200
Sat	2300	0200
Sun	1300	1500

This scheme dials the remote site between 11 PM and 2 AM Monday through Saturday, and between 1 PM and 3 PM on Sunday. This takes advantage of the fact that on Sundays, lower telephone rates are in the afternoon rather than the evening; and it also takes advantage of the fact that like most sensible people, you have better things to do on a Sunday afternoon besides work on your computer.

Note that the default setting, **Any** with no times, forces UUCP to transmit files as soon as the are queued. If you wish to change this, do so; in any case, you can move from field to field and from line to line by typing `<ctrl-N>`.

If you are interacting with a number of remote sites, be sure to stagger the times during which UUCP attempts to contact them. The more systems UUCP has to contact during a given time period, the fewer attempts it will be able to make to contact any of them.

The Chat Script

The last six fields on this template

```
Expect  ""
Send    ""
Expect  ogin:
Send
Expect  ssword:
Send
```

In the UUCP world, this is called the "chat script". Basically, it walks your UUCP system through the prompts and responses by which you actually log into the remote system.

To understand the structure of the chat script, consider the process by which a user logs into the system for Universal Widget. When he makes the connection, the phrase

```
Welcome to the Wonderful World of Widgets!
```

appears on the screen. What he really wants to see, however, is the prompt

```
Login:
```

so he hits the carriage return key to demonstrate his impatience to the system. The remote system then displays the **Login:** prompt, and the user replies by typing his user ID, say "frank". Finally, the system displays the prompt

```
Password:
```

and he replies by typing his password, say "bahHumBug". All then proceeds accordingly.

The chat script is designed to imitate this sequence of events. The first **Expect/Send** pair should hold the prompt that you need to log in and how you respond if you *don't* get it. In most cases, you should set the **Expect** field to 'ogin:' and leave the **Send** field as the pair of quotation marks, which sends a carriage return.

If we were to automate the "International Widget" example above, the first **Expect/Send** pair of our chat script should read as follows:

```
Expect: ogin:
Send:  ""
```

Note the following: First, not all systems use the word **Login:** to prompt for logins. Be sure to check with the administrator of the remote system to make sure. Second, you do not have to enter the entire prompt, only what comes at the end of it; for example, for the prompt **Login:**, the fragment **n:** is sufficient. Third, you should set these fields even if the remote system displays the login prompt immediately; the prompt may be garbled through line noise, and setting the first **Expect/Send** pair will help UUCP to cope with this.

The second **Expect/Send** pair should hold your response when you *do* receive the prompt you expect. The **Expect** half of this pair usually (but not always) holds the same prompt as the **Expect** slot of the previous **Expect/Send** pair. The **Send** half, however, should hold your login ID, as established by the administrator of the remote system. In our Widget example, the second **Expect/Send** should read:

```
Expect: ogin:
Send:  frank
```

The third **Expect/Send** pair should hold the prompt for the password, and the password itself. In our example, the third **Expect/Send** pair should read as follows:

```
Expect: ssword:
Send:  bahHumBug
```

When you have finished writing the chat script, your description of the remote system is complete. Type <ctrl-Z> to indicate that you have finished editing, and then type **X** to exit from this screen and return to the main menu. Then type **P** to enter the last template needed for installation: the one that sets permissions on your system.

Granting Permissions

The last task in describing a remote site is setting its permissions. Unless you grant the remote system permissions, it can execute nothing on your system, not even the **mail** program to send you a letter. When you grant permissions, you name the remote system in question, name the programs it can execute on your system, name the directories into which it can write files, and the directories from which it can copy files. If permissions were not set rigidly, then every UUCP connection would be potentially a breach of system security.

uuinstall's "permissions" appears as follows:

Remote site name

Provide an entry for that site calling in <y/n>

Provide an entry for calling that site <y/n>

MACHINE

LOGNAME

Commands which can be executed at this computer by this remote site:

Read directory list

Exceptions to read directory list

Write directory list

Exceptions to write directory list

Can the remote site request file transfers from this computer <y/n>

Can this computer initiate file transfers to the remote site <y/n>

The first slot in the template asks you to name the remote site. Enter the name of the site as you entered it in the L.sys template. Note that `uuinstall` will automatically translate that into entries in the `MACHINE` and `LOGNAME` slots, below " by default, the `MACHINE` slot is set to the remote site's name, and the `LOGNAME` is the site name with the letter 'u' appended to the beginning.

The second slot in the template asks if you want to provide an entry in `/usr/lib/uucp/Permissions` for that site to call you. Enter 'y' only if that site will be dialing into your system; otherwise, enter 'n'.

The third slot asks if you want to provide an entry in `Permissions` for calling the remote site. If your system will be dialing into that system, enter 'y'.

The next slot asks you to name the commands that the remote site can execute on your computer. Enter `rmail:rnews`; the former lets the remote system send electronic mail on your system, and `rnews` lets it transfer news files to you. Add other commands if you like, but remember that the shorter the list is, the less the chance an intruder will be able to mischief on your system.

In the next slot, enter the directories from which the remote system can copy files. Enter `/usr/spool/uucp/uucppublic:/tmp`, plus whatever directories are appropriate.

The next slot requests exceptions to the read list. When you enter a directory on the read list, that directory plus all of its children become available for reading. If you wish to place "off limits" a subdirectory of any directory named in the previous slot, enter it here.

The next slot asks you to name the directories into which the remote system can write files. Enter `/usr/spool/uucp/uucppublic:/tmp`, plus any others that you wish.

Next, enter the list of exceptions to the write list.

The next slot asks if the remote system can ask your system to transfer files to it. If you wish to grant this permission, enter "y", which is the usual order of things.

Finally, **uinstall** asks if your computer can ask the remote system to transfer files to you. If you can do so, enter 'y'.

This concludes the process of describing a remote system to UUCP. Type <ctrl-Z> to end data entry and return to the main menu; then enter 'X' to exit. Type 'y' when asked if you wish to save your changes into the system's files. And that's all there is to it.

Every time you wish to make contact with a new system, you must use **uinstall** as described above.

This description may need several revisions, as you attempt to make contact with the remote system. Writing these descriptions is something of a black art. Be patient and persistent: once contact is made, the connection should work without further maintenance being needed for months to come.

Setting a Polling Time

The next step in setting up your UUCP system is to edit the file `/usr/lib/crontab`. This file contains a description of programs that are to be executed periodically. The program **cron** reads this file once every minute, checks its contents against the system time, and executes the appropriate programs. By inserting descriptions of the UUCP commands into `/usr/lib/crontab`, you will ensure that UUCP will execute regularly to poll the remote sites you have described to it. If you do not insert entries into `/usr/lib/crontab`, UUCP will connect with a remote system only if it has a file to upload to it.

The format of `/usr/lib/crontab` is described in detail in the Lexicon entry for **cron**. Basically, a crontab entry has six fields:

1. The minute in the hour when a command is to be executed (0 through 59).
2. The hour of the day when the command is to be executed (0 through 23)
3. The day of the month (1 through 31).
4. The month of the year (1 through 12).
5. The day of the week (0 through 6, with 0 indicating Sunday).
6. The command to be executed.

Fields are delimited by space characters. Note that a command can be executed more than once in any given period; just separate the multiple entries with commas. For example, if you wish to print the date and time on your terminal every 15 minutes around the clock, insert the following entry into `/usr/lib/crontab`:

```
0,15,30,45 * * * * *    date >/dev/console
```

An asterisk in a field indicates that every value of the field is to be used.

The command **utouch** forces UUCP to schedule a poll to a remote site, regardless of whether any files are waiting to be uploaded to that system. To poll the site called **george** on a regular basis, insert the following lines into `/usr/lib/crontab`:

```
30 * * * * /usr/lib/uucp/uucico -sgeorge
0 22 * * * /usr/lib/uucp/uutouch george
```

The first line invokes the program **uucico** every hour on the half hour around the clock. **uucico** checks to see if there is a file to be sent to site **george**, and dispatches it if need be.

The second line invokes the program **uutouch** every night at 10 PM. **uutouch** will schedule a poll to site **george** to see if it has a file to send to you. The next time that **uucico** is invoked, it will then call site **george**.

Finally, the command **uumvlog** should be invoked daily by **cron**. **uumvlog** copies all of UUCP's log files into backup files that are named by the date they were saved. This command takes one argument, the number of days' worth of backup files to save. For example, the command

```
uumvlog 2
```

saves two days' worth of backup files; when a backup file becomes more than two days old, **uumvlog** throws it away. UUCP is designed to log everything that it does; and since it does a great many things, the log files can grow very large, very quickly. On a small system especially, you should be ruthless in purging your UUCP log files, or you may find them overwhelming the available disk space on your system. For most users, two days' worth of log files is sufficient.

The following entry in file **/usr/lib/crontab** will purge your backup files at the stroke of midnight every day:

```
0 0 * * * /usr/lib/uucp/uumvlog 2
```

Sending files via UUCP

Suppose, for example that site **santa** has been described to your UUCP system, and everyone has permission to read from your current directory. Suppose, too, that you have permission to write into directory **/usr/spool/reports/parents**. To send the files **good.kids** and **bad.kids** to **santa**, type the following command:

```
uucp good.kids bad.kids santa!/usr/spool/reports/parents
```

The **uucp** command compels UUCP to copy one or more files from your site to a remote site. UUCP queues both files automatically and sends them at the next scheduled time.

Note, too, the use of the **!** in the above command. The **!** separates a site name from another site name, from a directory name, or from a user ID. In the above example, the **!** indicates that directory **/usr/spool/reports/parents** can be found at site **santa**. One feature of a UUCP network is that any member can send files to any other member. That does not mean that every member must have full permissions with every other member; rather, for the sake of efficiency it is possible to route files through one or more intermediate computers, to allow batch transmissions of files. For example, to send the file **visibility** to user **blitzen** via machines **santa** and **reindeer**, use the following command:

```
uucp visibility santa!reindeer!blitzen!usr/spool/weather/usa
```

In this example, the string `santa!reindeer!blitzen!usr/spool/weather` indicates that directory `/usr/spool/weather` can be contacted at site `blitzen`, which in turn can be contacted via site `reindeer`, which in turn can be contacted via site `santa`. This scenario assumes that site `reindeer` has permission to write into directory `/usr/spool/weather` on site `blitzen`, and that site `santa` has permission to upload files to site `reindeer`. (And, of course, that you have permission to upload files to site `santa`.) If any of these are not true, the transaction will fail.

With UUCP networks growing to international dimensions, such path names can become quite complex. The command `mail` has an `alias` function that allows you to define a user's UUCP path name under a simpler name that serves as that user's alias. `mail` reads the file `/usr/lib/mail/aliases` for every user listed on its command line. If it finds a match, then it substitutes the description in `aliases` for the user name. If the entry in `aliases` consists of two or more fields separated by exclamation points, `mail` then invokes the `uucp` command to copy the mail message to the named site. For example, if you regularly send mail to user `joe` at site `widget`, then insert the following entry into `/usr/lib/mail/aliases`:

```
joe: widget!joe
```

Make sure, first, that you have described site `widget` to UUCP or this will not work. Second, make sure that your local system does not have a user named `joe`; if it does, his mail thereafter will be shipped to the other `joe` at the remote site.

UUCP Administration

Once you have written and debugged the descriptions of your devices, systems, and permissions, administering UUCP consists mainly of reviewing the log files periodically to ensure that all connections are being made, and all programs executed correctly. The command `uulog` will assist you in this. When you type the command

```
uulog widget
```

`uulog` will open all of the log files associated with site `widget`, and display them for you. Given that the log files for given site are kept in four different directories, this can be a great convenience.

Logfiles are organized as follows:

```
/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucico/sitename  
/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucp/sitename  
/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uux/sitename  
/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uuxqt/sitename
```

As you can see, one logfile for each site is kept in a directory named after a given UUCP command. UUCP records every transaction; so by reading these files, you can see whether your UUCP commands are succeeding.

If you are having trouble with your UUCP connections, send files through UUCP and observe how they fail. You may need to use `uuninstall` a few times to tweak your description of the remote site. If all else fails, contact Mark Williams Company.

If all is going well, you should run `/usr/lib/uucp/uumvlog` every day. This keeps the log files from getting out of hand. The previous section on setting the polling time describes how to do this.

The main task of the UUCP administrator is to monitor the UUCP log files to see that hardware is functioning correctly, and that files are transferred correctly. For example, failure to connect with a remote site after several attempts may mean that the remote site is having problems with its modem, or that it is scheduling outgoing calls for when you were scheduled to call in. Likewise, failure to receive scheduled calls from several sites may indicate equipment failure on your end. You must also monitor the alias file, to see to it that mail is routed to the correct recipient.

Finally, the UUCP administrator must monitor the use of disk space on the system. Old mail and messages, multiple copies of files, and files automatically input by various subscription and network services can eat up disk space rapidly; extraneous material must be pruned ruthlessly.

Where to Go From Here

For further information, check the Lexicon entry for each UUCP command.



Section 16:

Introduction to yacc

The first high-level programming language compiler took a very long time to write. Since then, much has been learned about how to design languages and how to translate programs written in high-level languages into machine instructions. With what is known today, the writing of a compiler takes a fraction of the time it used to require.

Much of this improvement is due to the use of more powerful software development methods. In addition, we know about the mathematical properties of computer programming languages. Software tools that apply this mathematical knowledge have played a large part in this improvement.

The COHERENT system provides two tools to simplify the generation of compilers. These tools are the lexical analyzer generator **lex** and the parser generator **yacc**. The following introduces **yacc**, and gives a basic course in its use.

Although initially intended for the development of compilers, **lex** and **yacc** have proven their utility in other, simpler, tasks. Examples of very simple languages are included in this tutorial.

yacc accepts a free-form description of a programming language and its associated parsing, and generates a C program that, when compiled, will parse a program written in the described language. It uses a left-to-right, bottom-up technique, to detect errors in the input as soon as theoretically possible. **yacc** generates parsers that handle certain grammatical ambiguities properly.

This manual presumes that you are familiar with computer-language parsing and formal methods of description of languages. Because **yacc** generates its programs in C and uses many of C's syntactic conventions, you should have a working knowledge of C. Related documents include *Using the COHERENT System* and *Introduction to lex*.

Examples

The following presents a few small examples that you can experiment with to get a feel of how to use **yacc**. Feel free to experiment with the examples to investigate new ideas.

Phrases and Parentheses

The first example describes a language we call **slang**, or *simple language*. **slang** consists of sentences. A sentence, in turn, consists of strings of letters or groups of letters enclosed in parentheses, terminated by a period. A group of letters can also include other groups of letters.

The simplest "sentence" in **slang** is:

a.

The following demonstrates a sentence that consists only of a group:

(ab).

As described above, a group can have another group inside it:

ab(cd(ef)).

The following gives the **yacc** grammar for **slang**. Type it into the file **slang.y**. Note that the lexical-analyzer routine **yylex** is included in the **yacc** input file. Note also that, as in C, comments are strings placed between the characters **/*** and ***/**.

```
/* Tokens (terminals) are all caps */
%token LPAREN RPAREN OTHER PERIOD
%%
run   :      sent      /* Input can be a single */
      |      run sent /* sentence or several */
      ;
sent  :      phrase PERIOD
      {printf ("sentence\n");}
      ;
group :      LPAREN phrase RPAREN
      {printf ("group\n");}
      ;
```



```

phrase      :          /* empty */
            |
            | others
            | group
            | others group
            ;
others      : OTHER /* letters and other chars */
            | others OTHER
            ;

%%

#include <stdio.h>
#include <ctype.h>
/* Called by the parser to get a token */
yylex ()
{
    int c;
    c = 0;

    while (c == 0) {
        c = getchar();
        if (c == '.') return (PERIOD);
        else if (c == '(') return (LPAREN);
        else if (c == ')') return (RPAREN);
        else if (c == EOF) return (EOF);
        else if (! isalpha(c)) c = 0;
    }
    return (OTHER);
}

```

To generate and compile the parser described by this input, issue the commands

```

yacc slang.y
cc y.tab.c -ly -o slang

```

Now, invoke your new parser by typing

```

slang

```

and test it by typing the following input:

```

a
a.
abc(def).
aaa(bbb(ccc)).
(a).

```

slang will reply as follows:

```
sentence
group
sentence
group
group
sentence
group
sentence
```

As you can see, **slang** recognized groups and sentences within the input you typed, and reacted by printing an appropriate message on the screen.

Simple Expression Processing

The next example creates a small language that includes two types of statements. The first type of statement resembles a procedure call, and the second is an expression. Procedure names are in upper-case letters, whereas the variables in expressions are in lower-case letters. Both procedures and expressions are terminated by a semicolon.

The following code generates a parser that identifies either the procedure being called or the arithmetic expression being calculated. The lexical input routine is independently generated by **lex**.

Enter the following program into the file **calc.y**:

```
%token VARIABLE PROCEDURE
%%
prog  :      stmt
      |      prog stmt
      ;
stmt  :      stat
      |      stat '\n'
      |      error '\n'
      ;
```

```
stat : PROCEDURE ';'
      {printf ("PROCEDURE is %c\n", $1);}
      |
      expr ';'
      {printf ("Expression\n");}
      ;
expr  : expr '-' expr
      {printf
        ("Subtract %c from %c giving E\n",
         $3, $1);
        $$ = 'E';
        }
      | VARIABLE
      {$$ = $1;}
      ;
```

Enter the lexical-analyzer part of the program into the file `calc.lex`:

```
%{
#include "y.tab.h"
}%
%%
[A-Z]      {
            yylval = yytext [0];
            return PROCEDURE;
            }
[a-z]      {
            yylval = yytext [0];
            return VARIABLE;
            }
\n         return ('\n');
.         return (yytext [0]);
```

Now, generate the programs and compile them by typing:

```
yacc calc.y
lex calc.lex
cc y.tab.c lex.yy.c -ly -ll -o calc
```

The following messages will appear on your console:

```
1 S/R conflict
y.tab.c:
lex.yy.c:
```

To invoke the newly generated program, type:

calc

To test it, type the following:

```
A;B;
C;
a-b-c;
a-b-c-d-e;
<ctrl-D>
```

calc will reply as follows:

```
PROCEDURE is A
PROCEDURE is B
PROCEDURE is C
Subtract c from b giving E
Subtract E from a giving E
Expression
Subtract e from d giving E
Subtract E from c giving E
Subtract E from b giving E
Subtract E from a giving E
Expression
```

Background

Now that you have tried **yacc**, the following gives some background to it, and how the parsers that it generates operate.

LR Parsing

yacc generates a “bottom up” parser. More specifically, **yacc** generates parsers that read LALR(1) languages.

LR parsers scan the input in a left-to-right fashion. Unfortunately, LR parsers for interesting languages are unpractically large. LALR(k) parsers, which are derived from LR parsers, use a “look ahead” technique, in which the next *k* elements of the input stream are used to help determine reductions. LALR(1) parsers are small enough to be practical, are easy to generate, and are fast.

Input Specification

To generate a language with **yacc**, you must specify its grammar in Backus-Naur Form (BNF). (For a good introduction to BNF, see the section on parsing in *Applied C.*) The languages recognized by **yacc**-generated parsers are rich and compare favorably with modern programming languages. The time required to generate the parser from the input grammar is very small — less than the time required to compile the generated parsers.

In addition to generating the parser to recognize the input language, yacc lets you include compiler actions within the grammar rules that are executed as the constructs are recognized. This greatly simplifies the entire task of writing your compiler. When used in combination with lex, yacc can make the process of writing a recognizer for a simple language the task of an afternoon.

Parser Operation

yacc generates a compilable C program that consists of a routine named `yyparse`, and the information about the grammar encoded into tables. Routines in the yacc library are also used.

The basic data structure used by the parser is a *stack*, or *push down list*. At any time during the parse, the stack contains information describing the state of the parse. The state of the parse is related to parts of grammar rules already recognized in the input to the parser.

At each step of the parse, the parser can take one of four actions.

The first action is to *shift*. Information about the input symbol or nonterminal is pushed onto the stack, along with the state of the parser.

The second type of action is to *reduce*. This occurs when a grammar rule is completely recognized. Items describing the component parts of the rule are removed from the stack, and the new state is pushed onto the stack. Thus, the stack is *reduced*, and the symbols corresponding to the grammar rule are *reduced* to the left part of the rule.

Third, the parser can execute an *error* action. If the current input symbol is incorrect for the state of the stack, it is not proper for the parser either to shift or reduce. As a minimum, this state will result in an error message being issued, usually

Syntax error

yacc provides capabilities for using this error state to recover gracefully from errors in the input.

Finally, the parser can *accept* the input. This means that the *start* symbol, such as *program*, has been properly recognized and that the entire input has been accepted.

Later sections discuss how you can have the parser describe its parsing actions step-by-step.

Form of yacc Programs

A yacc program can have up to three sections. Each section is marked by the symbol `%%`. The first section contains declarations. The second section contains the rules of the grammar. User-written routines that are to be part of the generated program can be included in the third section. The outline of yacc specifications is as follows:

```
definitions
%%
rules
%%
user code
```

If there are no definitions or user code, the input can be abbreviated to

```
%%
rules
```

Rules

Your language's grammar rules must be entered in a variant of BNF. The two following rules illustrate how to define an expression:

```
exp  : VARIABLE;
exp  : exp '-' exp;
```

Action statements that are enclosed in braces { } specify the semantics of the language, and are embedded within the rules. More information about how rules are built is given below.

Definitions

The first section in a `yacc` specification is the definitions section. This section includes information about the elements used in the `yacc` specification. Additional items are user-defined C statements, such as `include` statements, that are referenced by other statements in the generated program.

Each token, such as `VARIABLE` in example program `calc`, must be predefined in a `token` statement in the definitions section:

```
%token VARIABLE
```

Tokens are also called **terminals**. Only nonterminals appear as the left part of a rule, and terminals can appear only on the right side of a rule. This helps `yacc` distinguish terminals from nonterminals. Other types of statements that assist in ambiguity resolution appear here, and will be discussed in later sections.

Each grammar that `yacc` generates a parser for must have a **start** symbol. Once the start symbol has been recognized by the parser, its input is recognized and accepted. For a programming-language grammar, this nonterminal represents the entire program.

The start symbol should be declared in the definitions section as:

```
%start program
```

If no start symbol is declared, it is taken to be the left side of the first rule in the rules section.

User Code

Action statements may require other routines, such as common code-generating routines, or symbol table building routines. Such user code can be included in the generated parser after the rules section and a %% delimiter.

The following sections discuss definitions and rules in detail.

Rules

Rules describe how programming-language constructs are put together. Any given language can be described by many configurations of rules. This frees you to write the rules for clarity and readability.

A rule consists of a left part and a right part. The left part is said to *produce* the right part; or, the right part is said to *reduce to* the left part. A rule can also include the action the parser is to perform once it (the rule) is reduced.

General Form of Rules

Blanks and tabs are ignored within rules (except in the action parts). Comments can be enclosed between /* and */. The left part of the rule is followed by a colon. Then come the elements of the right part, followed by a semicolon.

Rules that have the same left part can be grouped together with the left part omitted and a vertical bar signifying "or". For example, the grammar

```
exp  :    VARIABLE;
exp  :    exp '-' exp;
```

can be written as:

```
exp  :    VARIABLE
      |    exp '-' exp;
```

Note that these are equivalent to the BNF:

```
<exp> ::= VARIABLE
<exp> ::= <exp> - <exp>
```

A rule can also contain C statements that are the compiler actions themselves. These actions are enclosed in braces { and } and are executed by the generated parser when the grammar rule has been recognized. More will be said about actions in the following section.

Suggested Style

Rules can be written completely free form for yacc. For example, the rules for the above rule can be written:

```
exp:VARIABLE|exp'-'exp;
```

However, this form is much less readable.

Two styles of `yacc` grammar are in common use. The first of these is used throughout this manual.

First, start the left part at the beginning of the line; follow it with a tab; then a colon. The right part should be on the same line, also preceded by a tab.

Second, group all rules with the same left part together, and use the vertical bar aligned under the colon for all but the first rule in the group.

Third, place action items on a separate line following the associated rule, preceded by three tabs.

Finally, precede the terminating semicolon with a single tab, to align it with the colon and vertical bar.

The outline of this style is:

```
left :      right1 right2
        {action1}
      |      right3 right4
        {action2}
      ;
```

This style is compact and works well for languages whose rules and actions together are simple.

For somewhat more extensive languages, or for additional flexibility in adding statements to the action part, use the following modification of the style.

```
left :      right1 right2 {
                action1
            }
      |      right3 right4 {
                action2
            }
      ;
```

For specifications that have larger rules or more complex actions, another style is recommended.

As in the first style, group rules with the same left part, and use the vertical bar. Place the left part, with its terminating colon, on a line by itself. Then indent the right parts of the rule one or more tabs as necessary to make the rule and actions readable. Finally, the vertical bar and the semicolon should be at the beginning of the line.

The outline for this style is as follows:


```
left:
    right1 right2 {
        action1
    }
|   right3 right4 {
    action2
    }
;
```

Since the input to **yacc** can be entirely free form, there is no restriction on how to write your rules. However, if you use a consistent style throughout, it will make your job easier.

Actions

In addition to generating a parser to recognize a specific language, **yacc** also lets you include parsing action statements. With this feature, you can include C-language action statements that will be performed when specified constructs are recognized.

Basic Action Statements

The example language **slang**, described above, the action statements simply print information on the terminal as productions are recognized:

```
sent :   phrase PERIOD
      {printf ("sentence\n");}
;
group :  LPAREN phrase RPAREN
      {printf ("group\n");}
;
```

Even if your actions will be more complex, using **printf** statements in this way can help verify your grammar early in the development process.

Action Values

If the specification is for the grammar of a programming language, the actions will normally interface to routines that access symbol tables or generate code.

yacc lets rules assume a *value* to help keep track of intermediate results within rules. These values can contain symbol-table information, code-generation information, or other semantic information.

To set a value for a rule, simply use a statement of the form

```
$$ = <value>;
```

within an action statement. The symbol **\$\$** is the value of the production. This value can be used by other rules that use this rule as a non-terminal part.

The example program **calc**, given above, illustrates the use of the value of productions:

```

expr :      expr '-' expr {
          printf
            ("Subtract %c from %c giving E\n",
             $3, $1);
          $$ = 'E';
        }
      |      VARIABLE
          { $$ = $1; }
;

```

The first rule's action statement sets the value of the production **expr** to 'E':

```
$$ = 'E';
```

The *value* of a rule is significant in that it can be used in productions including that rule as a nonterminal part.

An example is given in the first rule above. The **printf** statement refers to the items **\$1** and **\$3**. **yacc** interprets these symbols to mean the value of elements one and three of the right side, respectively; that is to say, **\$1** refers to the value of the first **expr** in the right side of the first rule, and **\$3** refers to the second **expr**, as illustrated below:

```

expr :      expr '-' expr
          $1 $2 $3

```

calc does not reference **\$2**.

The value for the tokens is provided by the lexical analyzer. The second rule for **expr** uses this to get the value of the token **VARIABLE**. The value represented by **\$1** is provided by the lexical analyzer in the statement

```
yyval = yytext [0];
```

To give another example, here is a simple calculator language, called **digit**, which performs arithmetic on one-digit numbers and prints the results. Type the following grammar into the file **digit.y**:

```

%token DIGIT
%%
session      :      calcn
              |      session calcn
              ;

calcn :      expr '\n' /* print results */
           { printf ("%d\n", $1); }
           ;

```

```

expr :   term '+' term
      |   term '-' term
      ;
      { $$ = $1 + $3; }
      { $$ = $1 - $3; }

term :   DIGIT
      ;
      { $$ = $1; }

```

```

%%
#include <stdio.h>
yylex ()
{
    int c;
    c = 0;

    while (c == 0) { /* ignore control chars and space */
        c = getchar();
        if (c <= 0) return (c) /* could be EOF */;
        if (c == '\n') return (c); /* set c to ignore */

        if ((c <= '9') && (c >= '0')) {
            yylval = c - '0';
            return (DIGIT);
        }
        if (c <= ' ') c = 0;
    }
    return (c);
}

```

This creates the yacc specification file. To turn it into a program, type

```

yacc digit.y
cc y.tab.c -ly -o digit

```

To invoke the compiled progra, type:

```
digit
```

And to test it, type the following:

```

1+2
2+2
8+9

```

digit will reply:

3
4
17

This program is essentially an interpreter — results are calculated as numbers are typed in. When you type in

```
1+1
```

the parser recognizes the construct

```
term '+' term
```

and executes the statement that adds two numbers together. The two numbers each in turn came from the construct

```
term :    DIGIT
```

and the value of the digit came from `yylex`. When the statement `calen` is recognized, the value is printed as the result. Thus, the calculations are performed at the time that the constructs are recognized. If a compiler were being generated, the actions would likely build some form of intermediate code, or expression tree, as in:

```
expr :    term '+' term
        { $$=tree (plus, $1, $3); }
```

Structured Values

All the examples thus far have shown action values as simple `int` types. This is not sufficient for a large interpreter or compiler, because at different points in the language a value can represent a constant values, a pointer to code generation trees, or symbol table information.

To solve this problem, `yacc` allows you to define the values of `$$` and `$n` as a *union* of several types. This is done in the definitions section with the `union` statement. For example, to declare action values as an integer, tree pointer, or a symbol-table pointer, you would use the following code:

```
%union {
    int cval;
    struct tree_t tree;
    struct sytp_t sytp;
}
```

This says that action values can be a constant value `cval`, a code tree pointer `tree`, or a symbol-table pointer `sytp`.

To ensure that the correct types are used in assignments and calculations in actions in the generated C program, each token whose value will be used is declared with the appropriate type:

```
%token <tree> A B
%token <cval> CONST
```

In addition, the rules themselves can have a type declaration, as they also can pass action values. Their type is declared in the `%type` statement:

```
%type <sytp> variable
```

This declares the nonterminal `variable` to reference the `sytp` field of the value union.

The values referenced in the action statements do not need to be qualified (unless they are referencing a field of one of the union elements). yacc generates the necessary qualification for the references, based upon the type information provided in the `type` and `token` statements.

Keep in mind that productions that do not have explicit actions will default to an action of

```
$$ = $1
```

which might cause a type clash when compiling the generated parser. This is more likely to arise during debugging, when you have defined the types but have not put in the actions.

Handling Ambiguities

The ideal grammar for a language is readable and unambiguous. If the grammar is readable, its users will find it easy to use. If the language is unambiguous, the parser generator will parse the programs correctly. However, many common programming language constructs are ambiguous. Consider the following definition of an `if` statement:

```
statement      :   if_statement
                |   others
if_statement   :   IF cond THEN statement
                |   IF cond THEN statement ELSE statement
```

Consider a program that contains a statement

```
if a > b then if c < d then a = d else b = c;
```

The parser does not know by the grammar specification which `if` statement the `else` belongs with. At the point of the `else`, the parser could correctly recognize it as part of the first `if` or the second `if`. The indentations illustrate the interpretation of the ambiguity associating the `else` with the first `if`.

```
if a > b then
    if c < d then
        a = d;
    else
        b = c;
```

Associating it with the second `if`:

```
if a > b then
    if c < d then
        a = d;
    else
        b = c;
```

One solution to this ambiguity is to modify the language and rewrite the grammar. Some programming languages (including the COHERENT shell) have a closing element to the `if` statement, such as `fi`. The grammar for this approach is:

```
statement : if_statement
           | others
if_statement : IF cond THEN statement FI
            | IF cond THEN statement ELSE statement FI
```

Another ambiguity arises from a grammar for common binary arithmetic expressions. The following sample specifies binary subtraction:

```
exp : TERM
    | exp '-' exp
    ;
```

For the program fragment

```
a - b - c
```

the parser can correctly interpret the expression as

```
(a - b) - c
```

or as

```
a - (b - c)
```

While for the `if` example, the language can be reasonably modified to remove the ambiguity, it is unreasonable in the case of expressions. The grammar can be rewritten for `exp` but it is less convenient.

How yacc Reacts

Because some ambiguities, such as the ones detailed above, are common, `yacc` automatically handles some of them.

The ambiguity exemplified by the `if then else` grammar is called a *shift-reduce* conflict. The parser generator can either choose to shift, meaning to add more elements to the parse stack, or to reduce, meaning to generate the smaller production. In the terms of `if`, the shift would match the `else` with the first `then`. Alternatively, the reduce choice will match the `else` with the latest (rightmost) unmatched `then`.

Unless otherwise specified, `yacc` resolves shift-reduce conflicts in favor of the shift. This means that the `if` ambiguity will be resolved in favor of matching the `else` with the rightmost unmatched `then`. Likewise, the expression

a - b - c

will be interpreted as

a - (b - c)

Additional Control

yacc provides tools to help resolve some of these ambiguities. When yacc detects shift-reduce conflicts, it consults the precedence and associativity of the rule and the input symbol to make a decision.

For the case of binary operators, you can define the associativity of each of the operators by use of the defining words **left** and **right**. These appear in the definition section with **token**. Any symbol appearing in **left** or **right**.

The usual interpretation of

a - b - c

is

(a - b) - c

which is called *left* associative. However, the shift/reduce conflict inherent in

exp '-' exp

is resolved in favor of the reduce, or in a right-associative manner:

a - (b - c)

To signal yacc that you want the left-associative interpretation, enter the grammar as:

```
%left '+' '-'
%token TERM
%%
expr :    TERM
      |    expr '-' expr
      |    expr '+' expr
      ;
```

Some operators, such as assignment, require right associativity. The statement

a := b + c

is to be interpreted as

a := (b + c)

The **%right** keyword tells yacc that the following terminal is to right associate.

Precedence

Most arithmetic operators are left associative. For example, with the grammar

```
%right =
%left '-' '+' '*' '/'
%%
expr :      expr '-' expr
      |      expr '*' expr
      |      expr '+' expr
      |      expr '/' expr
      |      expr '=' expr
      ;
```

The expression

$$a = b + c * d - e$$

based on associativity alone will be evaluated

$$a = ((b + c) * d) - e)$$

which is not according to custom. We normally think of $*$ as having higher precedence than $+$ or $-$, meaning that it is evaluated before other operators with the same associativity. The evaluation preferred is

$$a = (b + (c * d) - e)$$

To generate a parser with this evaluation, use several lines of `%left`, one line for each level of precedence. Each line containing `%left` describes tokens of the same precedence. The precedence increases with each line. Thus, to get the common notion of arithmetic precedence, use a grammar of

```
%right =
%left '-' '+'
%left '*' '/'
%%
expr :      expr '-' expr
      |      expr '*' expr
      |      expr '+' expr
      |      expr '/' expr
      |      expr '=' expr
      ;
```

This method of `%left` and `%right` gives tokens a precedence and an associativity. This can eliminate ambiguities where these operators are involved. But what about the precedence of rules or nonterminals?

To specify the precedence of rules, the `%prec` keyword at the end of the rule sets the precedence of the rule to the token following the keyword. To add unary minus to the grammar above, and to give it the precedence of multiply, use `%prec *` at the end of the unary rule.

```

%right =
%left '-' '+' '*' '/'
%%
expr :      expr '-' expr
      |      expr '*' expr
      |      expr '+' expr
      |      expr '/' expr
      |      expr '=' expr
      |      '-' expr %prec *
      ;

```

If associativity is not specified, yacc will report the number of shift/reduce conflicts. When associativity is specified with `%left`, `%right` or `%nonassoc`, this is considered to reduce the number of conflicts, and thus the number of conflicts reported will not include the count of these.

Error Handling

Parsers generated by yacc are designed to parse correct programs. If an input program contains errors, the LALR(1) parser will detect the error as soon as is theoretically possible. The error is identified, and the programmer can correct the error and recompile.

However, in most programming environments, it is unacceptable to stop compiling after the detection of a single error. yacc parsers attempt to go on so that the programmer may find as many errors as possible.

When an error is detected, the parser looks for a special token in the input grammar named `error`. If none is found, the parser simply exits after issuing the message

```
Syntax error
```

If the special token `error` is present in the input grammar error recovery is modified. Upon detection of an error, the parser removes items from the stack until `error` is a legal input token and processes any action associated with this rule. `error` is the lookahead token at this point.

Processing is resumed with the token causing the error as the lookahead token. However, the parser attempts to resynchronize by reading and processing three more tokens before resuming normal processing. If any of these three are in error, they are deleted and no error message is given. Three tokens must be read without error before the parser leaves the error state.

A good place to put the `error` token is at a statement level. For example, the `calc.y` example in chapter 2 defines a statement as

```
stmt :      stat
      |      stat '\n'
      |      error '\n'
      ;
```

Thus, any error on a line will cause the rest of the line to be ignored.

There is still a chance for trouble, however. If the next line contains an error in the first two tokens, they will be deleted with no error message and parsing will resume somewhere in the middle of the line. To give a truly fresh start at the beginning of the line, the function `yerror` will cause the parser to resume normal processing immediately. Thus, an improved grammar is

```
stmt :      stat
      |      stat '\n'
      |      error '\n'
           {yerror;}
      ;
```

will cause normal processing to begin with the start of the next line.

Error recovery is a complex issue. This section covers only what the parser can do in recovering from syntax errors. Semantic error recovery, such as retracting emitted code, or correcting symbol table entries, is even more complex, and is not discussed here.

`yacc` reserves a special token `error` to aid in resynchronizing the parse. After an error is detected, the stack is readjusted, and processing cautiously resumes while three error-free tokens are processed. `yerror` will cause normal processing to resume immediately. The token causing the error is retained as the lookahead token unless `YYCLEARIN` is executed.

Summary

`yacc` is an efficient and easy-to-use program to help automate the input phase of programs that benefit by strict checking of complex input. Such programs include compilers and interactive command language processors.

`yacc` generates an LALR(1) parser, that implements the grammar specifying the structure of the input. A simple lexical analyser routine can be hand-constructed to fit in among the rules, or you can use the COHERENT command `lex` to generate a lexical analyzer that will fit with the parser.

As the structured input is analyzed and verified, you assign meaning to the input by writing semantic **actions** as part of the grammatical rules describing the structure of the input.

`yacc` parsers are capable of handling certain *ambiguities*, such as that inherent in typical **if then else** constructs. This simplifies the construction of many common grammars.

`yacc` provides a few simple tools to aid in error recovery. However, the area of error recovery is complex and must be approached with caution.

Helpful Hints

Until you have mastered **yacc**, the best way to build your program is to do it a piece at a time. For example, if you are writing a Pascal compiler, you might start with the grammar

```
%token PROG BEG END OTHER
program : PROG tokens BEG END ' '
;
tokens : OTHER
      | tokens OTHER
;
```

and with a simple lexical analyzer of:

```
PROGRAM      return (PROG);
BEGIN        return (BEG);
END          return (END);
.            return (yytext [0]);
```

With the generated program, you can easily test the grammar by feeding it simple programs. Then add items to both the lexical analyzer and **yacc** grammar. With this approach, you can see the parser working, and if it behaves differently than you expect, you can more easily pinpoint the cause.

If you have difficulty understanding what actions your parser is taking, **yacc** will produce for you a complete description of the generated parser. To use this, you should be familiar with the way LALR(1) parsers work. To get this verbose output, specify the **-v** option on the command line. The result will appear in the file **y.output**.

In addition, you can have the parser give you a token-by-token description of its actions while it does them, by specifying the debug option **-d**. This also generates the file **y.output**, which is helpful in reading the debug output. The debug code is generated when the **-d** option is used, but is not activated unless the **YYDEBUG** identifier is defined. Include some code in the definitions section to activate it:

```
%{
    define YYDEBUG
%}
```

Your parser can turn on and off the debugging at execution time by setting the variable **yydebug**: one for on, zero for off.

A frequent cause of grammar conflicts is the empty statement. You should use it with caution. **yacc** generates empty statements when you specify actions in the middle of a rule rather than at the end; for example:

```
def      :      DEFINE {defstart();}
          identifier {defid ($2);}
;
```

yacc generates an additional rule:

```
$def : /* empty */
      {defstart();}
;
def  : DEFINE $def identifier {defid ($2);}
;
```

The resulting empty statement can cause parser conflicts if there are similar rules and the empty statement is not sufficient to distinguish between them.

Example

This tutorial closes with a larger example that incorporates most of the features of yacc discussed here. You can type it as shown, and modify it to improve its operation.

This example, called `nav`, calculates the great circle path and bearing from one point on the globe to another. Each pair of points is input on one line. The coordinates of the origin and destination are preceeded, respectively, by the keywords **FROM** and **TO**, and can appear in either order. Longitude and latitude are followed, respectively, by the letters **E** or **W**, and **N** and **S**. Lower-case may also be used for these letters.

The numeric part of the coordinates may be entered in degrees, minutes, and optional seconds, or in fractional degrees. You can use the symbols **^**, **o**, or **d** to specify degrees because the raised circle customarily used for degrees is not available on most terminals. An apostrophe **'** follows minutes, and a quotation mark **"** follows seconds.

As an example of using `nav`, calculate the great circle distance and initial heading from Charlestown, Indiana, to Charlestown, Australia:

```
from 38d27'n 85d40'w to 151d42'e 32d58's;
```

The result will be:

```
From lat 38.450 long 85.667 To lat -32.967 long -151.700
Distance 8030.623, Init course is 258.417
```

Here, the coordinates are echoed in decimal degrees. To exit the program, type `<ctrl-D>`.

To begin, type the following yacc specification file into the `nav.y`:

```
%{
#include "ll.h"
#define YYTNAMES
      double fromlat, fromlon, tolat, tolon;
      extern calcpath();
%}
```

```

%union {
    double dgs;
    long dgsi;
    struct ll wh;
}

%token NEWLINE FROM TO CIRCLE QUOTE DQUOTE SEP SEMI COMMA
%token NSYM SSYM WSYM ESYM
%token <dgs> FNUM
%token <dgsi> NUM
%type <dgs> degrees long lat deg
%type <wh> where from to
%%

prob :    single
      |    prob single
      ;

single :    sing {
            calcpath();
          }
      |    error NEWLINE {
            yyerrok; YYCLEARIN;
            printf ("Enter line again.\n");
          }
      ;

sing :    from SEP to SEMI NEWLINE {
            fromlat = $1.lat;
            fromlon = $1.lon;
            tolat = $3.lat;
            tolon = $3.lon;
          }
      |    to SEP from SEMI NEWLINE {
            tolat = $1.lat;
            tolon = $1.lon;
            fromlat = $3.lat;
            fromlon = $3.lon;
          }
      ;

```

```
    | to SEMI NEWLINE {
      tolat = $1.lat;
      tolon = $1.lon;
    }
;

from : FROM SEP where {
      $$ = $3;
    }
;

to   : TO SEP where {
      $$ = $3;
    }
;

where : lat SEP long {
        $$ .lat = $1;
        $$ .lon = $3;
      }
      | long SEP lat {
        $$ .lon = $1;
        $$ .lat = $3;
      }
;

lat  : degrees NSYM {
      $$ = $1;
    }
      | degrees SSYM {
        $$ = - $1;
      }
;

long : degrees WSYM {
      $$ = $1;
    }
      | degrees ESYM {
        $$ = - $1;
      }
;
```

```

degrees      :      FNUM /* e. g. 128.3 */ {
                $$ = $1;
                }
            |      NUM CIRCLE NUM QUOTE /* deg min */ {
                $$=$1 + $3/60.0;
                }
            |      NUM CIRCLE NUM QUOTE NUM DQUOTE
                /* and seconds */ {
                $$=$1 + $3/60.0 + $5/3600.0;
                }
            |      NUM CIRCLE NUM QUOTE FNUM DQUOTE {
                $$=$1 + $3/60.0 + $5/3600.0;
                }
            ;

%%

#include <stdio.h>
yyerror (s)

char *s;
{
    struct yytnam *p;
    fprintf (stderr, "%s ", s);

    for (p = yytnames; p -> tn_name != NULL; ++p)
        if (p->tn_val == yychar) {
            fprintf (stderr, "at %s", p->tn_name);
            break;
        }
    fprintf (stderr, "\n");
}

```

Both the lexical analyzer and the parser need the following header file **ll.h**:

```

struct ll {
    double lat;
    double lon;
};

```

To turn yacc file **nav.y** into a program, type

```

yacc -hdr nav.tab.h -d -v nav.y
mv y.tab.c nav.y.c

```

The grammar is straightforward. The types used in the actions require a **union**, because integer degrees, floating-point degrees, and pairs of floating point degrees are used as action values. The lexical analyzer recognizes integer and floating-point numbers, and passes the value through `yylval`. The rule for **degrees** combines different degree representations to one double-precision number.

The **N**, **S**, **E**, and **W** symbols convert a location to a signed representation: **S** and **E** result in negative degrees, **N** and **W** as positive.

The rule for **where** converts the single-numbered latitude and longitude into a double number of `<wh>` type. Note that it can process the coordinates in either order.

The rule **single** handles the destination and origin in either order. It takes the pairs of coordinates from **from** and **to** and stores them in the global variables that the calculation routine uses. The error token will halt error recovery at the end of the line, so that in case of error the user can reenter the correct line. If many great circles are being computed from the same origin, you need to enter only the destination after the first time.

Once a set of coordinates has been recognized, the function `calcpath` calculates the great circle.

The error routine `yyerror` accepts an error message from the parser, and examines the table of tokens to find the name of the token where the error is detected. If it is found, it is printed. To get these token names in the program, the symbol `YYTNAMES` must be defined.

The following code gives the lexical analyzer. Type it into the file `nav.l`:

```
%{
#include "ll.h"
#include "nav.tab.h"
%}

int integer;
double real;

%%

[nN]      return (NSYM);
[sS]      return (SSYM);
[eE]      return (ESYM);
[wW]      return (WSYM);
o|"^"|d  return (CIRCLE);
\"        return (DQUOTE);
\'        return (QUOTE);
\n        return (NEWLINE);
from      return (FROM);
FROM      return (FROM);
to        return (TO);
TO        return (TO);
```



```

[0-9]+          {
                sscanf (yytext, "%d", &integer);
                yylval.dgsi = (long) integer;
                return (NUM);
                }

[0-9]+"."([0-9]+)? {
                sscanf (yytext, "%f", &real);
                yylval.dgs = (double) real;
                return (FNUM);
                }
,              return (COMMA);
;              return (SEMI);
[ \t]         return (SEP);
.              {
                printf ("Illegal character [%s]\n", yytext);
                return (yytext [0]);
                }

```

The lexical analyzer partitions the input into the tokens expected by the parser. For the symbols in the grammar, it returns the token type. It also recognizes integer and floating-point numbers, and converts them to integers.

Note that the `ll.h` file is required even though there is no explicit reference to its contents. This is needed because the `%union` in `nav.y` generates the header file `nav.tab.h`, referring to the `ll` structure.

Turn lex file `nav.l` into program by typing:

```

lex nav.l
mv lex.yy.c nav.l.c

```

Finally, you should type the following code into file `navcalc.c`. It is C code that calculates the great circle route:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <math.h>
/*
 *   Given latitude and longitude of start and finish,
 *   calculate the great circle path.
 */
extern      double fromlon, fromlat, tolon, tolat;

```

```
calcpath ()
{
    double rad = PI / 180.0;
    double initcourse, arg, dist, d60;
    double rfromlat, rfromlon, rtolat, rtolon;

    printf ("From lat %.3f long %.3f ",
            fromlat, fromlon);
    printf ("To lat %.3f long %.3f\n",
            tolat, tolon);

    rfromlat = fromlat * rad;
    rfromlon = fromlon * rad;
    rtolat = tolat * rad;
    rtolon = tolon * rad;

    d60 = acos (
        sin (rfromlat) * sin (rtolat) +
        cos (rfromlat) * cos (rtolat) *
            cos (rfromlon - rtolon)
    );
    dist = 60 * d60 / rad;

    arg = (sin (rtolat) - cos (d60) * sin (rfromlat))
          /
          (sin (d60) * cos (rfromlat));

    initcourse = acos (arg) / rad;
    if (sin (rfromlon - rtolon) < 0)
        initcourse = 360 - initcourse;

    printf ("Distance %.3f, Init course is %.3f\n\n",
            dist, initcourse);
}
```

And now compile all three programs together.

```
cc nav.y.c nav.l.c navcalc.c -ly -lm -ll -f -o nav
```

The standard formula is used to calculate great circle path and bearing. Note that there are several limitations that are not checked for here; For example, diametrically opposite points on the globe have no unique great circle path between them. In addition, neither of the points should be at either of the poles. These checks can be added if you wish to use `nav` program as a general rather than a tutorial tool.

Section 17:

The Lexicon

The rest of this manual consists of the Lexicon. The Lexicon consists of several hundred articles, each of which describes a function or command, defines a term, or otherwise gives you useful information. The articles are organized in alphabetical order.

Internally, the Lexicon has a *tree structure*. The “root” entry is the one for **Lexicon**. It, in turn, refers to a series of **Overview** entries. Each Overview entry introduces a group of entries. Each entry cross-references other entries. These cross-references point up the documentation tree, to an overview article and, ultimately, to the entry for **Lexicon** itself; down the tree to subordinate entries; and across to entries on related subjects. For example, the entry for **getchar** cross-references **STDIO**, which is its Overview article, plus **putchar** and **getc**, which are related entries of interest to the user. The Lexicon is designed so that you can trace from any one entry to any other, simply by following the chain of cross-references up and down the documentation tree. For a detailed view of the Lexicon’s internal structure, see the **Logic Tree** that appears as an appendix to this manual.

For more information on how to use the Lexicon and how it is organized, see the entry in the Lexicon on **Lexicon**.

Example

example — Example

Give an example of Mark Williams Lexicon format

```
#include <example.h>  
char *example(foo, bar) int foo; long bar;
```

This is an example of the Mark Williams Lexicon format of software documentation. At this point, each entry has a brief narration that discusses the topic in detail.

The lines in **boldface** describe how to use the function being described. The first line, **#include <example.h>**, indicates that this function requires the imaginary header file **example.h**. The second line gives the syntax of the function. **char *example** means that the imaginary function **example** returns a pointer to a **char**. *foo* and *bar* are **example**'s arguments: *foo* must be declared to be an **int**, and *bar* must be declared to be a **long**.

Example

The following program gives an example of an example.

```
main()  
{  
    printf("Many entries include examples\n");  
}
```

See Also

Lexicon, all other related topics and functions

Notes

If a Lexicon entry uses a technical term that you do not understand, look it up in the Lexicon. In this way, you will gain a secure understanding of how to use COHERENT.

! to ~

— Preprocessing Operator

String-ize operator

The preprocessing operator # can be used within the replacement list of a function-like macro. It and its operand are replaced by a string literal, which names the sequence of preprocessing tokens that replaces the operand throughout the macro.

For example, the consider the macro:

```
#define display(x) show((long)(x), #x)
```

When the preprocessor reads the following line

```
display(abs(-5));
```

it replaces it with the following:

```
show((long)(abs(-5)), "abs(-5)");
```

Here, the preprocessor replaced #x with a string literal that gives the sequence of tokens that replaces x.

The following rules apply to interpreting the # operator:

1. If a sequence of white-space characters occurs within the preprocessing tokens that replace the argument, it is replaced with one space character.
2. All white-space characters that occur before the first preprocessing token and after the last preprocessing token are deleted.
3. The original spelling of the preprocessing tokens is preserved. This means that you must take care to preserve certain characters: a backslash '\' should be inserted before every quotation mark '"' that marks a string literal, and before every backslash that introduces a character constant.

Example

The following uses the operator # to display the result of several mathematics routines.

```
#include <errno.h>
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void show(value, name)
double value, char *name;
{
    if (errno)
        perror(name);
    else
        printf("%10g %s\n", value, name);
    errno = 0;
}

#define display(x) show((double)(x), #x)
```

```

main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    double x;
    char string[64];
    for(;;) {
        printf("Enter a number: ");
        fflush(stdout);
        if(gets(string) == NULL)
            break;

        x = atof(string);
        display(x);
        display(cos(x));
        display(sin(x));
        display(tan(x));
        display(acos(cos(x)));
    }
}

```

See Also

##, #define, C preprocessor

— Preprocessing Operator

Token-pasting operator

The preprocessing operator **##** can be used in both object-like and function-like macros. When used immediately before or immediately after an element in the macro's replacement list, **##** joins the corresponding preprocessor token with its neighbor. This is sometimes called "token pasting".

As an example of token pasting, consider the macro:

```
#define printvar(number) printf("%s\n", variable ## number)
```

When the preprocessor reads the following line

```
printvar(5);
```

it substitutes the following code for it:

```
printf("%s\n", variable5);
```

The preprocessor throws away all white space both before and after the **##** operator. This gives you an easy way to print any one of a set of strings.

must not be used as the first or last entry in a replacement list. All instances of the **##** operator are resolved before further macro replacement is performed.

For more information on object-like and function-like macros, see **#define**.

See Also

#, **#define**, C preprocessor

Notes

Token pasting has been performed by separating the tokens to be pasted with an empty comment, but this is no longer necessary.

The order of evaluation of multiple **##** operators is unspecified.

#define — Preprocessing Directive

Define an identifier as a macro

```
#define identifier lparen identifier-listopt ) replacement-list
```

The preprocessing directive **#define** tells the C preprocessor to regard *identifier* as a macro.

#define can define two kinds of macros: *object-like*, and *function-like*.

An object-like macro has the syntax

```
#define identifier replacement-list
```

This type of macro is also called a *manifest constant*. The preprocessor searches for *identifier* throughout the text of the translation unit, and replaces it with the elements of *replacement-list*, which is then rescanned for further macro substitutions.

For example, consider the directive:

```
#define BUFFERSIZE 75
```

When the preprocessor reads the line

```
malloc(BUFFERSIZE);
```

it replaces it with:

```
malloc(75);
```

A given *identifier* is replaced only once by a given *replacement-list*. This is to prevent such code as

```
#define FOO FOO
```

or

```
#define FOO BAR
#define BAR FOO
```

from generating an infinite loop.

A function-like macro is more complex. It has the syntax:

```
#define identifier lparen identifier-listopt ) replacement-list
```

The preprocessor looks for *identifier*, which is a macro that resembles a function in that it is followed by a pair of parentheses that may enclose an *identifier-list*. It replaces *identifier* with the contents of *replacement-list*, up to the first lparen '(' within *replacement-list*.

The preprocessor then examines *identifier-list* for further macros, which it expands. The modified *identifier-list* is then replaced with the rest of *replacement-list*. Pairs of parentheses that are nested between the lparen that begins *replacement-list* and the ‘)’ that ends it are copied into *identifier-list* as literal characters. The identifiers within *identifier-list* are preserved after it has been modified by *replacement-list*. The only exceptions are identifiers that are prefixed by the preprocessing operators # or ##; these are handled appropriately.

For example, the consider the macro:

```
#define display(x) show((long)(x), #x)
```

When the preprocessor reads the following line

```
display(abs(-5));
```

it replaces it with the following:

```
show((long)(abs(-5)), "abs(-5)");
```

When an argument to a function-like macro contains no preprocessing tokens, or when an argument to a function-like macro contains a preprocessing token that is identical to a preprocessing directive, the behavior is undefined.

Example

For an example of using a function-like macro in a program, see #.

See Also

#, ##, #undef, C preprocessor

Notes

A macro expansion always occupies exactly one line, no matter how many lines are spanned by the definition or the actual parameters. If you have defined macros that span more than one line, you must either redefine them to occupy one line, or somehow embed the newline character within the macro itself; otherwise, the macro will not expand correctly.

A macro definition can extend over more than one line, provided that a backslash ‘\’ appears before the newline character that breaks the lines. The size of a **#define** directive is therefore limited by the maximum size of a logical source line, which can be up to at least 509 characters long.

Some implementations allowed a user to re-define a macro with a new **#define** directive. The Standard, however, allows only a “benign” redefinition; that is, the body of the new definition must exactly match the old definition, including parameter names and white space.

#elif – Preprocessing Directive

Include code conditionally

The preprocessing directive **#elif** conditionally includes code within a program. It can be used after any of the instructions **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef**.

If the conditional expression of the preceding **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** directive is false (i.e., evaluates to zero) and if the current condition is true (i.e., evaluates to a value

other than zero), then *group* is included within the program, up to the next `#elif`, `#else`, or `#endif` directive. An `#if`, `#ifdef`, or `#ifndef` directive may be followed by any number of `#elif` directives.

The *constant-expression* must be an integral expression, and it cannot include a `sizeof` operator, a cast, or an enumeration constant. All macro substitutions are performed upon the *constant-expression* before it is evaluated. All integer constants are treated as long objects, and are then evaluated. If *constant-expression* includes character constants, all escape sequences are converted into characters before evaluation.

See Also

`#else`, `#endif`, `#if`, `#ifdef`, `#ifndef`, C preprocessor

`#else` — Preprocessing Directive

Include code conditionally

The preprocessing directive `#else` conditionally includes code within a program. It is preceded by one of the directives `#if`, `#ifdef`, or `#ifndef`, and may also be preceded by any number of `#elif` directives. If the conditional expressions of all preceding directives evaluate to false (i.e., to zero), then the code introduced by `#else` is included within the program, up to the `#endif` directive.

A `#if`, `#ifdef`, or `#ifndef` directive can be followed by only one `#else` directive.

See Also

`#elif`, `#endif`, `#if`, `#ifdef`, `#ifndef`, C preprocessor

`#endif` — Preprocessing Directive

End conditional inclusion of code

The preprocessing directive `#endif` must follow any `#if`, `#ifdef`, or `#ifndef` directive. It may also be preceded by any number of `#elif` directives and an `#else` directive. It marks the end of a sequence of source-file statements that are included conditionally by the preprocessor.

Example

For an example of using this directive in a program, see `assert`.

See Also

`#elif`, `#else`, `#if`, `#ifdef`, `#ifndef`, C preprocessor

`#if` — Preprocessing Directive

Include code conditionally

The preprocessing directive `#if` tells the preprocessor that if *constant-expression* is true (i.e., that it evaluates to a value other than zero), then include the following lines of code within the program until it reads the next `#elif`, `#else`, or `#endif` directive.

The *constant-expression* must be an integral expression, and it cannot include a `sizeof` operator, a cast, or an enumeration constant. All macro substitutions are performed upon the *constant-expression* before it is evaluated. All integer constants are treated as long objects, and are then evaluated. If *constant-expression* includes character constants, all escape sequences are converted into characters before evaluation.

See Also

#elif, #else, #endif, #ifdef, #ifndef, C preprocessor

#ifdef – Preprocessing Directive

Include code conditionally

The preprocessing directive **#ifdef** checks whether *identifier* has been defined as a macro name. If *identifier* has been defined as a macro, then the preprocessor includes *group* within the program, up to the next **#elif**, **#else**, or **#endif** directive. If *identifier* has not been defined, however, then *group* is skipped.

An **#ifdef** directive can be followed by any number of **#elif** directives, by one **#else** directive, and must be followed by an **#endif** directive.

Example

For an example of using this directive in a program, see **assert**.

See Also

#elif, #else, #endif, #if, #ifndef, C preprocessor

#ifndef – Preprocessing Directive

Include code conditionally

The preprocessing directive **#ifndef** checks whether *identifier* has been defined as a macro name. If *identifier* has *not* been defined as a macro, then the preprocessor includes *group* within the program, up to the next **#elif**, **#else**, or **#endif** directive. If *identifier* has been defined, however, then *group* is skipped.

An **#ifndef** directive can be followed by any number of **#elif** directives, by one **#else** directive, and by one **#elif** directive.

See Also

#elif, #else, #endif, #if, #ifndef, C preprocessor, defined

#include – Preprocessing Directive

Read another file and include it

#include <file>

#include "file"

The preprocessing directive **#include** tells the preprocessor to replace the directive with the contents of *file*.

The directive can take one of two forms: either the name of the file is enclosed within angle brackets (<*header.h*>), or it is enclosed within quotation marks ("*header.h*"). Angle brackets tell **cpp** to look for *file.h* in the directories named with the **-I** options to the **cc** command line, and then in the standard directory. Quotation marks tell **cpp** to look for *file.h* in the source file's directory, then in directories named with the **-I** options, and then in the standard directory.

Most often, the file being included is a *header*, which is a file that contains function prototypes, macro definitions, and other useful material; as its name implies, it most often appears at the head of a program. The header name must be a string of characters, possibly followed by a period '.' and a single letter, usually (but not always) 'h'. A header

name may have up to 12 characters to the left of the period, and names may be case sensitive.

#include directives may be nested up to at least eight deep. That is to say, a file included by an **#include** directive may use an **#include** directive to include a third file; that third file may also use a **#include** directive to include a fourth file; and so on, up to at least eight files.

Note, too, that a subordinate header file is sought relative to the original source file, rather than relative to the header that calls it directly. For example, suppose that a file **example.c** resides in directory **/v/fred/src**. If **example.c** contains the directive **#include <header1.h>**. The operating system will look for **header1.h** in the standard directory, **/usr/include**. If **header1.h** includes the directive **#include <../header2.h>** then COHERENT looks for **header2.h** not in directory **/usr**, but in directory **/v/fred**.

A **#include** directive may also take the form **#include string**, where *string* is a macro that expands into either of the two forms described above.

See Also

header files, C preprocessor

#line — Preprocessing Directive

Reset line number

#line number newline

#line number filename newline

#line macros newline

#line is a preprocessing directive that resets the line number within a file. The ANSI Standard defines the line number as being the number of newline characters read, plus one.

#line can take any of three forms. The first, **#line number**, resets the current line number in the source file to *number*. The second, **#line number filename**, resets the line number to *number* and changes the name of the file to *filename*. The third, **#line macros**, contains macros that have been defined by earlier preprocessing directives. When the macros have been expanded by the preprocessor, the **#line** instruction will then resemble one of the first two forms and be interpreted appropriately.

See Also

C preprocessor

Notes

Most often, **#line** is used to ensure that error messages point to the correct line in the program's source code. A program generator may use this directive to associate errors in generated C code with the original sources. For example, the program generator **yacc** uses **#line** instructions to link the C code it generates with the **yacc** code written by the programmer.

#undef — Preprocessing Directive

Undefine a macro
#undef *identifier*

The preprocessing directive **#undef** tells the C preprocessor to disregard *identifier* as a macro. It undoes the effect of the **#define** directive.

See Also

#define, C preprocessor

_ _DATE_ _ — Macro

Date of translation

_ _DATE_ _ is a preprocessor constant that is defined by the C preprocessor. It represents the date that the source file was translated. It is a string literal of the form

"Mmm dd yyyy"

where **Mmm** is the same three-letter abbreviation for the month as is used by **asctime**; **dd** is the day of the month, with the first **d** being a space if translation occurs on the first through the ninth day of the month; and **yyyy** is the current year.

The value of **_ _DATE_ _** remains constant throughout the processing of the a module of source code. It may not be the subject of a **#define** or **#undef** preprocessing directive.

Example

The following prints the preprocessor constants set by COHERENT:

```
main()
{
    printf("Date: %s\n", _ _DATE_ _);
    printf("Time: %s\n", _ _TIME_ _);
    printf("File: %s\n", _ _FILE_ _);
    printf("Line No.: %d\n", _ _LINE_ _);
    printf("ANSI C? %s\n", _ _STDC_ _ ? "Yes" : "No");
}
```

See Also

_ _FILE_ _, **_ _LINE_ _**, **_ _STDC_ _**, **_ _TIME_ _**, C preprocessor

_ _FILE_ _ — Macro

Source file name

_ _FILE_ _ is a preprocessor constant that is defined by the C preprocessor. It represents, as a string constant, the name of the current source file being translated.

_ _FILE_ _ may not be the subject of a **#define** or **#undef** preprocessing directive, but it may be altered with the **#line** preprocessing directive.

Example

For an example of how to use `__FILE__` in a program, see `__DATE__`.

See Also

`__DATE__`, `__LINE__`, `__STDC__`, `__TIME__`, C preprocessor

`__LINE__` — Macro

Current line within a source file

`__LINE__` is a preprocessor constant that is defined by the C preprocessor. It represents the current line within the source file. The ANSI Standard defines the current line as being the number of newline characters read, plus one.

`__LINE__` may not be the subject of a `#define` or `#undef` preprocessing directive.

Example

For an example of how to use `__LINE__` in a program, see `__DATE__`.

See Also

`__DATE__`, `__FILE__`, `__STDC__`, `__TIME__`, C preprocessor

`__STDC__` — Macro

Mark a conforming translator

`__STDC__` is a preprocessor constant that is defined by the C preprocessor. If it is defined to be equal to one, then it indicates that the translator conforms to the ANSI Standard.

The value of `__STDC__` remains constant throughout the entire program, no matter how many source files it comprises. It may not be the subject of a `#define` or `#undef` preprocessing directive.

Example

For an example of using `__STDC__` in a program, see `__DATE__`.

See Also

`__DATE__`, `__FILE__`, `__LINE__`, `__TIME__`, C preprocessor

`__TIME__` — Macro

Time source file is translated

`__TIME__` is a preprocessor constant that is defined by the C preprocessor. It represents the time that a source file is translated. It is a string literal of the form:

"hh:mm:ss"

This is the same format used by the function `asctime`.

The value of this preprocessor constant remains constant throughout the processing of the translation unit. It may not be the subject of a `#define` or `#undef` preprocessing directive.

Example

For an example of how to use `__TIME__` in a program, see `__DATE__`.

See Also

`__DATE__`, `__FILE__`, `__LINE__`, `__STDC__`, C preprocessor

`_exit()` – COHERENT System Call (libc)

Terminate a program

```
void _exit(status) int status;
```

`_exit` terminates a program directly. It returns *status* to the calling program, and exits. Unlike the library function `exit`, `_exit` does not perform extra termination cleanup, such as flushing buffered files and closing open files.

`_exit` should be used only in situations where you do *not* want buffers flushed or files closed. For example, you may wish to call `_exit` if your program detects an irreparable error condition and you want to “bail out” to keep your data files from being corrupted.

`_exit` should also be used with programs that do not use `STDIO`. Unlike `exit`, `_exit` does not use `STDIO`. This will help you create programs that are extremely small when compiled.

See Also

`close()`, COHERENT system calls, `wait()`

Notes

If a program leaves `main()` by an error condition, contents of register `AX` becomes the exit code. Usually, these register contents are random. If you want to test a program’s return code, you must to exit or return from `main()`.

A

abort() — General Function (libc)

End program immediately

void abort()

abort terminates a process with a core dump, creating a file called **core**, and prints a message on the screen. It is normally invoked in situations that “should not happen”. For example, **malloc** invokes **abort** if it discovers a corrupt storage arena.

Where possible, **abort** executes a machine instruction that causes the processor to trap. If the signal associated with the trap is caught or ignored, the dump will not be produced.

See Also

_exit(), core, exit(), general functions

abs() — General Function (libc)

Return the absolute value of an integer

int abs(*n*) int *n*;

abs returns the absolute value of integer *n*. The *absolute value* of a number is its distance from zero. This is *n* if *n* ≥ 0, and *-n* otherwise.

Example

This example prompts for a number, and returns its absolute value.

```
#include <ctype.h>
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    extern int atoi();
    char string[64];
    int counter;
    int input;

    printf("Enter an integer: ");
    fflush(stdout);
    gets(string);
    for (counter=0; counter < strlen(string); counter++) {
        input = string[counter];
        if (!isascii(input)) {
            fprintf(stderr,
                "%s is not ASCII\n", string);
            exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

```

        if (!isdigit(input))
            if (input != '-' || counter != 0) {
                fprintf(stderr,
                    "%s is not a number\n", string);
                exit(1);
            }
    }
    input = atoi(string);
    printf("abs(%d) is %d\n", input, abs(input));
    exit(0);
}

```

See Also

fabs(), **floor()**, **general functions**, **int**

Notes

On two's complement machines, the **abs** of the most negative integer is itself.

ac — **Command**

Summarize login accounting information

ac [**-dp**] [**-w wfile**] [*username ...*]

One of the accounting mechanisms available on the COHERENT system is login accounting, which keeps track of the time each user spends logged into the system. Login accounting is enabled by creating the file `/usr/adm/wtmp`. Thereafter, the routines **date**, **login**, and **init** write raw accounting data to `/usr/adm/wtmp` to record the time, the name of the terminal, and the name of the user for each date change, login, logout, or system reboot.

The command **ac** summarizes the raw accounting data. By default, **ac** prints the total connect time found in `/usr/adm/wtmp`. Any *username* restricts the summary to each specified user.

The following options are available:

- d** Itemize the output into daily (midnight to midnight) periods.
- p** Print individual totals.
- w** Use *wfile* rather than `/usr/adm/wtmp` as the raw data file.

Files

`/usr/adm/wtmp`

See Also

commands, **date**, **init**, **login**, **sa**, **utmp.h**

Notes

The file `/usr/adm/wtmp` can become very large; therefore, it should be truncated periodically. Special care should be taken if login accounting is enabled on a COHERENT system with a small disk.

access() — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Check if a file can be accessed in a given mode

```
#include <access.h>
```

```
int access(filename, mode) char *filename; int mode;
```

access checks whether a file or directory can be accessed in the mode you wish. *filename* is the full path name of the file or directory you wish to check. *mode* is the mode in which you wish to access *filename*, as follows:

AREAD	Read a file
ALIST	List the contents of a directory
AWRITE	Write into a file
ADEL	Delete files from a directory
AEXEC	Execute a file
ASRCH	Search a directory
AAPPND	Append to a file
ACREAT	Create a file in a directory

The header file **access.h** defines these values, which may be logically combined to produce the *mode* argument.

If *mode* is set to zero, **access** tests only whether *filename* exists, and whether you have permission to search all directories that lead to it.

access returns zero if *filename* can be accessed in the requested mode, and a number greater than zero if it cannot.

access uses the *real* user id and *real* group id (rather than the *effective* user id and *effective* group id), so set user id programs can use it.

Example

The following example checks if a file can be accessed in a particular manner.

```
#include <access.h>
#include <stdio.h>

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    int mode;
    extern int access();

    if (argc != 3) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Usage: access filename mode\n");
        exit(1);
    }

    switch (*argv[2]) {
        case 'x':
            mode = AEXEC;
            break;
```

```
    case 'w':
        mode = AWRITE;
        break;

    case 'r':
        mode = AREAD;
        break;

    default:
        fprintf(stderr,
            "modes: x = execute, w = write, r = read\n");
        exit(1);
        break;
}

if (access(argv[1], mode)) {
    printf("file %s not found in mode %d\n", argv[1], mode);
    exit(0);
} else
    printf("file %s accessible in mode %d\n",
        argv[1], mode);
exit(0);
}
```

See Also

access.h, **COHERENT** system calls, **path()**

access.h — Header File

Check accessibility
#include <**access.h**>

The header file **access.h** declares the function **access** and a set of associated manifest constants. You can use these to check the accessibility of a given file.

See Also

access, header files

acct() — **COHERENT** System Call (**libc**)

Enable/disable process accounting
acct(file)
char *file;

Process accounting records who initiates each system process and how long each process takes to execute. These data can be analyzed, to administer the system most efficiently.

The system call **acct** enables or disables process accounting. If *file* is not **NULL**, then accounting is turned on; if *file* is **NULL**, however, then process accounting is turned off.

It is usual, but not necessary, that *file* be **/usr/adm/acct**. *file* must exist. When enabled, the system appends a raw accounting data record in the format described by **acct.h** to *file* as each process terminates.

acct is restricted to the superuser.

See Also

ac, **acct.h**, **accton**, **COHERENT** system calls, **exit()**, **sa**, **times()**

Diagnostics

Successful calls return zero. **acct** returns -1 for errors, such as nonexistent *file* or invocation by a user other than the superuser.

Notes

The system writes accounting records for a process only when the process exits. Processes that never terminate and processes running at the time of a system crash do not produce accounting information.

acct.h — Header File

Format for process-accounting file

```
#include <acct.h>
```

Process accounting is a feature of the COHERENT system that allows it record what processes each user executes and how long each process takes. These data can be used to track how much each user uses the system.

The function **acct** turns process accounting off or on. When process accounting has been turned on, the COHERENT system writes raw process-accounting information into an accounting file as each process terminates. Each entry in the accounting file, normally **/usr/adm/acct**, has the following form, as defined in the header file **acct.h**:

```
struct acct {
    char    ac_comm[10];
    comp_t  ac_utime;
    comp_t  ac_stime;
    comp_t  ac_etime;
    time_t  ac_btime;
    short   ac_uid;
    short   ac_gid;
    short   ac_mem;
    comp_t  ac_io;
    dev_t   ac_tty;
    char    ac_flag;
};

/* Bits from ac_flag */
#define AFORK    01 /* has done fork, but not exec */
#define ASU     02 /* has used superuser privileges */
```

Every time a process performs an **exec** call, the contents of **ac_comm** are replaced with the first ten characters of the file name. The fields **ac_utime** and **ac_stime** represent the CPU time used in the user program and in the system, respectively. **ac_etime** represents the elapsed time since the process started running, whereas **ac_btime** is the time the process started. The effective user id and effective group id are **ac_uid** and **ac_gid**. **ac_mem** gives the average memory usage of the process. **ac_io** gives the number of blocks of input-output. **ac_tty** gives the controlling typewriter device major and minor numbers.

For some of the above times, the **acct** structure uses the special representation **comp_t**, defined in the header file **types.h**. It is a floating point representation with three bits of base-8 exponent and 13 bits of fraction, so it fits in a **short** integer.

See Also

acct(), **accton**, **header files**, **sa**

accton – Command

Enable/disable process accounting
/etc/accton [*file*]

One of the accounting mechanisms available on the COHERENT system is *process accounting*, also called *shell accounting*. Process accounting each process, who initiates it, and how long it takes to execute.

By issuing the command **accton** with a *file* argument, you enable process accounting. The system then writes raw accounting data into *file*, which normally should be **/usr/adm/acct**. The command **sa** summarizes the resulting raw statistics. If issued with no argument, **accton** disables process accounting.

accton is normally invoked by the initialization command file **/etc/rc**.

Files

/usr/adm/acct — Raw accounting data

See Also

ac, **acct**, **acct.h**, **commands**, **init**, **sa**

Notes

As the file **/usr/adm/acct** can become very large, special care should be taken if process accounting is enabled on a COHERENT system with a small disk file system.

acos() – Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate inverse cosine
#include <math.h>
double acos(arg) double arg;

acos calculates the inverse cosine. *arg* should be in the range of -1.0, 1.0. It returns the result, which is in the range of from zero to π radians.

Example

This example demonstrates the mathematics functions **acos**, **asin**, **atan**, **atan2**, **cabs**, **cos**, **hypot**, **sin**, and **tan**.

```
#include <math.h>
#define display(x) dodisplay((double)(x), #x)

dodisplay(value, name)
double value; char *name;
```

```

{
    if (errno)
        perror(name);
    else
        printf("%10g %s\n", value, name);
    errno = 0;
}

main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    double x;
    char string[64];
    for(;;) {
        printf("Enter number: ");
        if(gets(string) == NULL)
            break;

        x = -atof(string);
        display(x);
        display(cos(x));
        display(sin(x));
        display(tan(x));
        display(acos(cos(x)));

        display(asin(sin(x)));
        display(atan(tan(x)));
        display(atan2(sin(x), cos(x)));
        display(hypot(sin(x), cos(x)));
        display(cabs(sin(x), cos(x)));
    }
}

```

See Also

errno, errno.h, mathematics library, perror()

action.h – Header File

Describe parsing action and goto tables

#include <action.h>

action.h is a header that defines structures and manifest constants used in parsing and goto tables.

See Also

header files

address — Definition

An **address** is the location where an item of data is stored in memory.

On the i8086, a physical address is a 20-bit number. The i8086 builds an address by left-shifting a 16-bit segment address by four bits, and then adding it to a 16-bit offset address. The segment address points to a particular chunk of memory. The i8086 uses four segment registers, each of which governs a different portion of a program, as follows:

CS	Address of code segment
DS	Address of data segment
ES	Address of “extra” segment
SS	Address of stack segment

SMALL-model programs use only the offset address; hence, their pointers are only 16 bits long, equivalent to an `int`. LARGE-model programs use both segment and offset addresses. Their addresses are 20 bits long, which must be stored in a 32-bit pointer, equivalent to a `long`. COHERENT currently supports SMALL model.

On the M68000, an address is simply a 24-bit integer that is stored as a 32-bit integer. The upper eight bits are ignored; this is not true with the more advanced microprocessors in this family, such as the M68020. The M68000 uses no segmentation; memory is organized as a “flat address space”, with no restrictions set on the size of code or data.

On machines with memory-mapped I/O, such as the 68000, some addresses may be used to control or communicate with peripheral devices.

Example

The following prints the address and contents of a given byte of memory.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    char byte = 'a';
    printf("Address == %x\tContents == \"%c\"\n",
           &byte, byte);
}
```

See Also

data formats, definitions, pointer

Notes

COHERENT is in i8086 SMALL model; thus, its addresses are 16 bits long.

alarm() — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Set a timer

alarm(*n*)

unsigned *n*;

alarm sets a timer associated with the requesting process to go off in *n* seconds. After *n* seconds, the system sends the signal `SIGALRM` to the process. An argument of zero

turns off the alarm timer.

By default, the receipt of the **SIGALRM** signal terminates the process. However, it may be caught or ignored by using **signal**. Because of scheduling variation and the one second granularity, the action of **alarm** is predictable only to within one second.

alarm is useful for such things as timeouts. For example, the login process on a dial-in port might hang up the line after a sufficient time has elapsed with no user response.

alarm returns the previous alarm value, which represents the time remaining from the previous call. Time remaining is superseded by the new alarm value.

See Also

COHERENT system calls, **signal()**, **sleep()**

alignment — Definition

Alignment refers to the fact that some microprocessors require the address of a data entity to be *aligned* to a numeric boundary in memory so that *address modulo number* equals zero. For example, the M68000 and the PDP-11 require that an integer be aligned along an even address, i.e., *address%2 = 0*.

Generally speaking, alignment is a problem only if you write programs in assembly language. For C programs, **COHERENT** ensures that data types are aligned properly under foreseeable conditions. You should, however, beware of copying structures and of casting a pointer to **char** to a pointer to a **struct**, for these could trigger alignment problems.

Processors react differently to an alignment problem. On the VAX or the i8086, it causes a program to run more slowly, whereas on the M68000 it causes a bus error.

See Also

data types, definitions

alloc.h — Header File

Define the allocator

```
#include <sys/alloc.h>
```

alloc.h defines manifest constants and structures that are used internally with memory allocation.

See Also

header files

ar — Command

The librarian/archiver

```
ar option [modifier][position] archive [member ...]
```

The librarian **ar** edits and examines libraries. It combines several files into a file called an *archive* or *library*. Archives reduce the size of directories and allow many files to be handled as a single unit. The principal use of archives is for libraries of object files. The linker **ld** understands the archive format, and can search libraries of object files to resolve undefined references in a program.

The mandatory *option* argument consists of one of the following command keys:

- d** Delete each given *member* from *archive*. The **ranlib** header is updated if present.
- m** Move each given *member* within *archive*. If no *modifier* is given, move each *member* to the end. The **ranlib** header is modified if present.
- p** Print each *member*. This is useful only with archives of text files.
- q** Quick append: append each *member* to the end of *archive* unconditionally. The **ranlib** header is not updated.
- r** Replace each *member* of *archive*. If *archive* does not exist, create it. The optional *modifier* specifies how to perform the replacement, as described below. The **ranlib** header is modified if present.
- t** Print a table of contents that lists each *member* specified. If none is given, list all in *archive*. The modifier **v** tells **ar** to give you additional information.
- x** Extract each given *member* and place it into the current directory. If none is specified, extract all members. *archive* is not changed.

The *modifier* may be one of the following. The modifiers **a**, **b**, **i**, and **u** may be used only with the **m** and **r** options.

- a** If *member* does not exist in *archive*, insert it after the member named by the given *position*.
- b** If *member* does not exist in *archive*, insert it before the member named by the given *position*.
- c** Suppress the message normally printed when **ar** creates an archive.
- i** If *member* does not exist in *archive*, insert it before the member named by the given *position*. This is the same as the **b** modifier, described above.
- k** Preserve the modify time of a file. This modifier is useful only with the **r**, **q**, and **x** options.
- s** Modify an archive's **ranlib** header, or create it if it does not exist. This is used only with the **r**, **m**, and **d** options.
- u** Update *archive* only if *member* is newer than the version in the *archive*.
- v** Generate verbose messages.

All archives are written into a specialized file format. Each archive starts with a "magic number" called **ARMAG**, which identifies the file as an archive. The members of the archive follow the magic number; each is preceded by an **ar_hdr** structure. For information on this structure, see **ar.h**. The structure is followed the data of the file, which occupy the number of bytes specified by the variable **ar_size**.

See Also

ar.h, **commands**, **ld**, **nm**, **ranlib**

Notes

It is recommended that each object-file library you create with **ar** have a name that begins with the string **lib**. This will allow you to call that library with the **-l** option to the **cc** command.

ar.h — Header File

Format for archive files

```
#include <ar.h>
```

An *archive* is a file that has been built from a number of files. Archives are maintained by the **ar** command. Usually, an archive is a library of object files used by the linker **ld**.

The header **ar.h** describes the format of an archive. All archives start with a magic number **ARMAG**, which identifies the file as an archive. The members of the archive follow the magic number, each preceded by the structure **ar_hdr**:

```
#define DIRSIZ 14 /* from <dir.h> */
#define ARMAG 0177535 /* magic number */

struct ar_hdr {
    char ar_name[DIRSIZ]; /* member name */
    time_t ar_date; /* time inserted */
    short ar_gid; /* group owner */
    short ar_uid; /* user owner */
    short ar_mode; /* file mode */
    size_t ar_size; /* file size */
};
```

The structure at the head of each member is immediately followed by **ar_size** bytes, which are the data of the file.

To enhance the performance of **ld**, the command **ranlib** provides a random library facility. **ranlib** produces archives that contain a special entry named **__SYMDEF** at the beginning.

All integer members of the structure (everything but **ar_name**) are in canonical form to ease portability. See **canon.h** for more information.

See Also

ar, **canon.h**, header files, **ld**, **ranlib**

arena — Definition

An **arena** is the area of memory that is available for a program to allocate dynamically at run time. It is divided into *allocated* and *unallocated* blocks. The unallocated blocks together form the “free memory pool”.

Portions of the arena can be allocated using the functions **malloc**, **calloc**, or **realloc**; returned to the free memory pool with **free**; or checked to see if they are allocated or not with **notmem**. To check whether the arena has been corrupted or not, use the function **memok**.

See Also

calloc(), definitions, **free()**, **malloc()**, **memok()**, **notmem()**, **realloc()**

argc — C LanguageArgument passed to `main()`**int** `argc`;

argc is an abbreviation for “argument count”. It is the traditional name for the first argument to a C program’s `main` routine. By convention, it holds the number of arguments that are passed to `main` in the argument vector `argv`. Because `argv[0]` is always the name of the command, the value of `argc` is always one greater than the number of command-line arguments that the user enters.

Example

For an example of how to use `argc`, see the entry for `argv`.

See Also

`argv`, C language, `envp`, `main()`

argv — C LanguageArgument passed to `main()`**char** *`argv`[];

argv is an abbreviation for “argument vector”. It is the traditional name for a pointer to an array of string pointers passed to a C program’s `main` function; by convention, it is the second argument passed to `main`. By convention, `argv[0]` always points to the name of the command itself.

Example

This example demonstrates both `argc` and `argv`, to recreate the command `echo`.

```
main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    int i;
    for (i = 1; i < argc; ) {
        printf("%s", argv[i]);
        if (++i < argc)
            putchar(' ');
    }
    putchar('\n');
    return 0;
}
```

See Also

`argc`, C language, `envp`, `main()`

array — Definition

An array is a concatenation of data elements, all of which are of the same type. All the elements of an array are stored consecutively in memory, and each element within the array can be addressed by the array name plus a subscript.

For example, the array `int foo[3]` has three elements, each of which is an `int`. The three `ints` are stored consecutively in memory, and each can be addressed by the array name `foo` plus a subscript that indicates its place within the array, as follows: `foo[0]`, `foo[1]`, and `foo[2]`. Note that the numbering of elements within an array always begins with '0'.

Arrays, like other data elements, may be automatic (`auto`), `static`, or external (`extern`).

Arrays can be multi-dimensional; that is to say, each element in an array can itself be an array. To declare a multi-dimensional array, use more than one set of square brackets. For example, the multi-dimensional array `foo[3][10]` is a two-dimensional array that has three elements, each of which is an array of ten elements. The second sub-script is always necessary in a multi-dimensional array, whereas the first is not. For example, `foo[][10]` is acceptable, whereas `foo[10][]` is not. The first form is an indefinite number of ten-element arrays, which is correct C, whereas the second form is ten copies of an indefinite number of elements, which is illegal.

You can initialize automatic arrays and structures, provided that you know the size of the array, or of any array contained within a structure. An automatic array is initialized in the same manner as aggregate, but initialization is performed on entry to the routine at run time, instead of at compile time.

Flexible Arrays

A **flexible array** is one whose length is not declared explicitly. Each has exactly one empty '[' array-bound declaration. If the array is multidimensional, the flexible dimension of the array must be the *first* array bound in the declaration; for example:

```
int example1[][20]; /* RIGHT */
int example2[20][ ]; /* WRONG */
```

The C language allows you to declare an indefinite number of array elements of a set length, but not a set number of array elements of an indefinite length.

Flexible arrays occur in only a few contexts; for example, as parameters:

```
char *argv[];
char p[][8];
```

as `extern` declarations:

```
extern int end[];
```

or as a member of a structure — usually, though not necessarily, the last:

```
struct nlist {
    struct nlist *next;
    char name[];
};
```

Example

The following program initializes an automatic array, and prints its contents.

```
main()
{
    int foo[3] = { 1, 2, 3 };
    printf("Here's foo's contents: %d %d %d\n",
          foo[0], foo[1], foo[2]);
}
```

*See Also***definitions, struct***The C Programming Language*, ed. 2, pages 25, 83, 210**as** — Command

i8086 assembler

as [-glx] [-ofile] file ...

as is the Mark Williams assembler. It is a multipass assembler that turns files of assembly language into relocatable object modules similar to those produced by the compiler. **as** is designed for writing small assembly-language subroutines. Because it is not intended to be used for full-scale assembly-language programming, it lacks many of the more elaborate facilities of full-fledged assemblers. For example, there are no facilities for conditional compilation or user-defined macros. However, it does optimize span-dependent instructions (for example, branches).

*Features***as** includes the following features:

- It automatically compiles jump instructions into either regular (three-byte) jumps or short (two-byte) jumps, whichever is required. There is no explicit short jump instruction.
- The assembler supports temporary labels, which conserves symbol table space and relieves the you of having to invent many unique labels.
- Program modules are relocatable. They can be linked with each other and with C program modules produced by the COHERENT compiler. All assembled modules must be linked before they can be executed.
- The assembler does not support file inclusion, but multiple source files can be concatenated and assembled by including their names in the command line to run the assembler.
- The assembler generates SMALL model objects in the COHERENT **l.out** object format.

Usage

Normally, the assembler is invoked via the **cc** command, which will automatically assemble and link any file of source code that has the suffix **.s**. If you wish, however, you can invoke the assembler as a separate program, by using the following command line:

```
as [-glx] [-o file] file ...
```

The named *files* are concatenated and the resulting object code is written to the file specified by the `-o` option, or to file `l.out` if no `-o` option is given.

The option `-g` causes all symbols that are undefined at the end of the first pass to be given the type undefined external, as though they had been declared with a `.globl` directive.

The option `-l` tells the assembler to generate a listing. It writes the listing to the standard output, normally the terminal; it may be easily redirected to a file or printer using the `>` operator.

The option `-x` strips from the symbol table of the object module all non-global symbols that begin with the character 'L'. This speeds up the loading of files by removing compiler-generated labels from the symbol table.

Register Names

The following lists the identifiers that represent the i8086 machine registers, which are predefined:

AX	SP	AL	AH	CS
BX	BP	BL	BH	DS
CX	SI	CL	CH	ES
DX	DI	DL	DH	SS

Lexical Conventions

Assembler tokens consist of identifiers (also known as "symbols" or "names"), constants, and operators.

An identifier is a sequence of alphanumeric characters (including the period '.' and the underscore '_'). The first character must not be numeric. Only the first 16 characters of the name are significant; it throws away the remainder. Upper case and lower case are different. The machine instructions, assembly directives, and built-in symbols that are used frequently are in lower case.

Numeric constants are defined by the assembler by using the same syntax as the C compiler: a sequence of digits that begins with a zero '0' is an octal constant; a sequence of digits with a leading '0x' is a hexadecimal constant ('A' through 'F' have the decimal values 10 through 15); and any strings of digits that do not begin with '0' are interpreted as decimal constants.

A character constant consists of an apostrophe followed by an ASCII character. The constant's value is the ASCII code for the character, right-justified in the machine word. For example, an instruction to move the letter 'A' to the register `al` could be expressed in either of two equivalent ways:

```
mov al,$0x41
mov al,$'A'
```

The dollar sign indicates an immediate operand.

A blank space can be represented either `0x20` (its ASCII value in hexadecimal), or as an apostrophe followed by a space (' '), which on paper looks like just an apostrophe alone.

The following gives the multi-character escape sequences that can be used in a character constant to represent special characters:

<code>\b</code>	Backspace	(0010)
<code>\f</code>	Formfeed	(0014)
<code>\n</code>	Newline	(0012)
<code>\r</code>	Carriage return	(0015)
<code>\t</code>	Tab	(0011)
<code>\v</code>	Vertical tab	(0013)
<code>\nnn</code>	Octal value	(0nnn)

A blank space can be represented either as 0x20 (its ASCII value in hexadecimal), or as an apostrophe followed by a space (' '), which on the page would look like just an apostrophe.

Blanks and Tabs

Blanks and tab characters may be used freely between tokens, but not within identifiers. A blank or a tabulation character is required to separate adjacent tokens not otherwise separated, e.g., between an instruction opcode and its first operand.

Comments

Comments are introduced by a slash ('/') and continue until the end of the line. All characters in comments are ignored by the assembler.

Program Sections

The assembler permits you to divide programs into sections, each corresponding (roughly) to a functional area of the address space. Each program section has its own location counter during assembly. There are eight program sections, subdivided into three groups containing code, data and tables:

code:	shri	Shared instruction
	bssi	Uninitialized instruction
	prvi	Private instruction
data:	prvd	Private data
	shrd	Shared data
	bssd	Uninitialized data
	strn	Strings
tables:	synt	Symbol table

All Mark Williams assemblers use the same set of sections. This increases the portability of programs between operating systems. Not all the sections are distinct under COHERENT, however; the meanings of the sections under (including hints as to how the C compiler uses them) are as follows:

shri (shared instruction) is the same as **prvi** (private instruction); the adjective *shared* refers to the sharing of physical memory between two or more concurrent processes. **prvi** is used for all code generated by the C compiler.

Similarly, there is no distinction between **shrd** and **prvd**. The compiler uses the latter for all external and static data that are explicitly initialized in a C program.

Uninitialized sections are actually initialized to zeros. The reason is that the C compiler uses the **bssd** (uninitialized data) section for external or static data that are not explicitly initialized: the C language guarantees that these data are in fact initialized to zeros. The **bssi** (uninitialized instruction) section is not used by the compiler.

The **strn** (strings) section is actually a special part of the data section, used by the C compiler to store string constants. It is synonymous with **prvd** under COHERENT.

The **synt** (symbol table) section contains the symbol table used by the linker. Both the C compiler and the assembler generate symbol tables that go in this section.

In most cases, you need not worry about what all these program sections are, and can simply write code under the keyword **.prvi** or **.shri**, and write data under the keyword **.prvd** or **.shrd**. You are advised not to place items in the **synt** section, as this section is used for internal communication among the C compiler, the assembler, and the linker.

At the end of assembly, the sections of a program are concatenated so that in the assembly listing the program looks like a monolithic block of code and data. All **code** sections are combined into the i8086 **code** segment, and all **data** sections into the i8086 **data** segment. The symbol table is not linked when the program is executed, and so is not assigned to any i8086 segment.

The Current Location

The special symbol '.' (period) is a counter that represents the current location. The current location can be changed by an assignment; for example:

```
. = .+START
```

The assignment must not cause the value to decrease, and it must not change the program section, i.e., the right-hand operand must be defined in the same section as the current section.

Expressions

An expression is a sequence of symbols representing a value and a program section. Expressions are made up of identifiers, constants, operators, and brackets. All binary operators have equal precedence and are executed in a strict left-to-right order (unless altered by brackets).

Notice that square brackets, '[' and ']', group expression elements, because parentheses are used for indexed register addressing.

Types

Every expression has a type determined by its operands. The simplest operands are symbols. The types of symbols are as follows:

- | | |
|-----------|--|
| Undefined | A symbol is defined if it is a constant or a label, or when assigned a defined value; otherwise, it is undefined. A symbol may become undefined if it is assigned the value of an undefined expression. It is an error to assemble an undefined expression in pass 2. Pass 1 allows assembly of undefined expressions, but phase errors may be produced if undefined expressions are used in certain contexts, such as in a .blkw or .blkb . |
| Absolute | An absolute symbol is one defined ultimately from a constant or from the difference of two relocatable values. |
| Register | These are the machine registers. |

Relocatable All other user symbols are relocatable symbols in some program section. Each program section is a different relocatable type.

Each keyword in the assembler has a secret type that identifies it internally; however, all of these secret types are converted to absolute in expressions. Thus, any keyword may be used in an expression to obtain the basic value of the keyword. This is useful when employing the keywords that define machine instructions. The basic value of a machine operation is usually the opcode with any operand-specific bits set to zero.

Notice that the type of an expression does not include such attributes as length (word or byte), so the assembler will not remember whether you defined a particular variable to be a word or a byte. Addresses and constants have different types, but the assembler does not treat a constant as an immediate value unless it is preceded by a dollar sign '\$'. If you use a constant where an address is expected, as will treat the constant like an address (and vice versa). It is up to you to distinguish between variables and addresses or immediate values.

Operators

The following figure shows various characters interpreted as operators in expressions.

+	Addition
-	Subtraction
*	Multiplication
-	Unary negation
~	Unary complement
^	Type transfer
|	Segment construction

You can group expressions by means of square brackets ('[' and ']'); parentheses are reserved for use in address mode descriptions.

Type Propagation

When operands are combined in expressions, the resulting type is a function of both the operator and the types of the operands. The operators '*', '~', and unary '-' can only manipulate absolute operands and always yield an absolute result.

The operator '+' signifies the addition of two absolute operands to yield an absolute result, and the addition of an absolute to a relocatable operand to yield a result with the same type as the relocatable operand.

The binary operator '-' allows two operands of the same type, including relocatable, to be subtracted to yield an absolute result. It also allows an absolute to be subtracted from a relocatable, to yield a result with the same type as the relocatable operand.

The binary operator '^' yields a result with the value of its left operand and the type of its right operand. It may be used to create expressions (usually intended to be used in an assignment statement) with any desired type.

Statements

A program consists of a sequence of statements separated by newlines or by semicolons. There are four kinds of statements: null statements, assignment statements, keyword statements, and machine instructions.

Labels

You can precede any statement by any number of labels. There are two kinds of labels: *name labels* and *temporary labels*.

A name label consists of an identifier followed by a colon (:). The program section and value of the label are set to that of the current location counter. It is an error for the value of a label to change during an assembly. This most often happens when an undefined symbol is used to control a location counter adjustment.

A temporary label consists of a digit (0 to 9) followed by a colon (:). Such a label defines temporary symbols of the form *xf* and *xb*, where *x* is the digit of the label. References of the form *xf* refer to the first temporary label *x*: forward from the reference; those of the form *xb* refer to the first temporary label *x*: backward from the reference. Such labels conserve symbol table space in the assembler.

Null Statements

A null statement is an empty line, or a line containing only labels or a comment. Null statements can occur anywhere. They are ignored by the assembler, except that any labels are given the current value of the location counter.

Assignment Statements

An assignment statement consists of an identifier followed by an equal sign '=' and an expression. The value and program section of the identifier are set to that of the expression. Any symbol defined by an assignment statement may be redefined, either by another assignment statement or by a label. An assignment statement is equivalent to the *equ* keyword statement found in many assemblers.

Assembler Directives

Assembler directives give instructions to the assembler. Each directive keyword begins with a period, and in general they are followed by operands.

The following directives change the current program section to the named section:

- .bssd
- .bssi
- .prvd
- .prvi
- .shrd
- .shri
- .strn
- .synt

The current location counter is set to the highest previous value of the location counter for the selected section.

The following describes the directives in detail.

.ascii string

The first non-white space character, typically a quotation mark, after the keyword is taken as a delimiter. *as* assembles successive characters from the string into successive bytes until it encounters the next instance of this delimiter. To include a quotation mark in a string, use some other character for the delimiter.

It is an error for a newline to be encountered before reaching the final delimiter. You can use a multi-character constant in the string to represent newlines and other special characters.

.blkb *expression*

Assemble a block of bytes that are filled with zeroes. The block is *expression* bytes long.

.blkw *expression*

Assemble a block of words that are filled with zeroes. The block is *expression* words long.

.byte *expression* [, *expression*]

The *expressions* in the list are truncated to byte size and assembled into successive bytes. Expressions in the list are separated by commas.

.even

Force alignment by inserting a null byte of data, if necessary, to set the location counter to the next even location.

.odd

Force alignment by inserting a null byte of data, if necessary, to set the location counter to the next odd location.

.globl *identifier* [, *identifier*]

The identifiers in the comma-separated list are marked as global. If they are defined in the current assembly, they may be referenced by other object modules; if they are undefined, they must be resolved by the linker before execution.

.page

Force the printed listing of your assembly-language program to skip to the top of a new page by inserting a form-feed character into the file. The title is printed at the top of the page.

.title *string*

Print *string* at the top of every page in the listing. This directive also causes the listing to skip to a new page.

.word *expression* [, *expression*]

Truncate *expressions* to word length and assemble the resulting data into successive words. Expressions in the list are separated by commas.

Address Descriptors

The following syntax is used for general source and destination address descriptors. The symbol 'r' refers to a register and the symbol 'e' to an expression. Please refer to the following figure.

<i>Syntax</i>	<i>Addressing Mode</i>	<i>Example</i>
r	Register	mov ax, cx
e	Direct address	mov ax, 0800
(r)	Indexing, no displacement	mov ax, (bx)
e(r)	Indexing with displacement	mov ax, 2(bx)
(r,r)	Double indexing, no displacement	mov ax, (bx, si)
e(r,r)	Double indexing with displacement	mov ax, 2(bx, si)
\$e	Immediate	mov ax, \$0800

Note that the dollar sign is always used to indicate an immediate value, even if the expression is a constant.

A direct address is interpreted as either a direct address or a PC-relative displacement, depending on the requirements of the instruction.

If an address descriptor indicates an indexing mode and the base expression is of type absolute, the assembler uses the shortest displacement length (zero, one, or two bytes) that can hold the expression's value. Relocatable base expressions, whose values cannot be completely determined until the program is loaded, are always assigned two-byte displacements.

Any address descriptor may be modified by a segment escape prefix. A segment escape prefix consists of a segment register name followed by a colon ':'. The escape causes the assembler to produce a segment override prefix that uses the specified segment register as an operand. The assembler does not produce segment override prefixes unless explicitly required by an instruction.

8086 Instructions

The following machine instructions are defined. The examples illustrate the general syntax of the operands. Combinations that are syntactically valid may be forbidden for semantic reasons.

The examples use the following references:

<i>a</i>	General address
<i>al</i>	AL register
<i>ax</i>	AX register
<i>cl</i>	CL register
<i>d</i>	Direct address
<i>dx</i>	DX register
<i>e</i>	Expression
<i>\$e</i>	Immediate expression
<i>m</i>	Memory address (not an immediate)
<i>p</i>	Port address

as treats as ordinary one-byte machine operations some operations that the Intel assembler ASM86 handles with special syntax; these include the *lock* and *repeat* prefixes. as makes no attempt to prevent the generation of incorrect sequences of these prefix bytes.

Although every machine operation has a type and value associated with it, in most cases the value was chosen to help as format the machine instructions.

For more information on these instructions, see the Intel *ASM86 Assembly Language Reference Manual*.

aaa		ASCII adjust AL after addition
aad		ASCII adjust AX before division
aam		ASCII adjust AX after multiply
aas		ASCII adjust AL after subtraction
adcb	<i>r, a</i>	Add with carry, byte
adc	<i>r, a</i>	Add with carry, word
adcb	<i>a, r</i>	Add with carry, byte
adc	<i>a, r</i>	Add with carry, word
adcb	<i>a, \$e</i>	Add with carry, byte
adc	<i>a, \$e</i>	Add with carry, word
addb	<i>r, a</i>	Add, byte
add	<i>r, a</i>	Add, word
addb	<i>a, r</i>	Add, byte
add	<i>a, r</i>	Add, word
addb	<i>a, \$e</i>	Add, byte
add	<i>a, \$e</i>	Add, word
andb	<i>r, a</i>	Logical and, byte
and	<i>r, a</i>	Logical and, word
andb	<i>a, r</i>	Logical and, byte
and	<i>a, r</i>	Logical and, word
andb	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical and, byte
and	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical and, word
call	<i>d</i>	Near call, PC-relative
cbw		Convert byte into word
cld		Clear carry flag
cld		Clear direction flag
cli		Clear interrupt flag
cmc		Complement carry flag
cmpb	<i>r, a</i>	Compare two operands, byte
cmp	<i>r, a</i>	Compare two operands, word
cmpb	<i>a, r</i>	Compare two operands, byte
cmp	<i>a, r</i>	Compare two operands, word
cmpb	<i>a, \$e</i>	Compare two operands, byte
cmp	<i>a, \$e</i>	Compare two operands, word
cmps		Compare string operands, bytes
cmpsb		Compare string operands, bytes
cmpsw		Compare string operands, words
cwd		Convert word to double
daa		Decimal adjust AL after addition
das		Decimal adjust AL after subtraction
decb	<i>a</i>	Decrement by one, byte
dec	<i>a</i>	Decrement by one, word
divb	<i>m</i>	Unsigned divide, byte
div	<i>m</i>	Unsigned divide, word
esc	<i>a</i>	Escape 0xD8
hlt		Halt

icall	<i>a</i>	Near call, absolute offset at EA word
idivb	<i>m</i>	Signed divide, byte
idiv	<i>m</i>	Signed divide, word
ijmp	<i>a</i>	Jump short, absolute offset at EA word
imulb	<i>m</i>	Signed multiply, byte
imul	<i>m</i>	Signed multiply, word
inb	<i>al, p</i>	Input, byte
in	<i>ax, p</i>	Input, word
inb	<i>al, dx</i>	Input, byte
in	<i>ax, dx</i>	Input, word
incb	<i>a</i>	Increment by one, byte
inc	<i>a</i>	Increment by one, word
int	<i>e</i>	Call to interrupt
into		Call to interrupt, overflow
iret		Interrupt return
ja	<i>d</i>	Jump short if greater
jae	<i>d</i>	Jump short if greater or equal
jb	<i>d</i>	Jump short if less
jbe	<i>d</i>	Jump short if less or equal
jc	<i>d</i>	Jump short if carry
jcxz	<i>d</i>	Jump short if CX equals zero
je	<i>d</i>	Jump short if equal to
jg	<i>d</i>	Jump short if greater
jge	<i>d</i>	Jump short if greater or equal
jl	<i>d</i>	Jump short if less
jle	<i>d</i>	Jump short if less or equal
jmp	<i>d</i>	Jump short, PC-relative word offset
jmpb	<i>d</i>	Jump short, PC-relative byte offset
jmp1	<i>d</i>	Jump long
jna	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not above
jnae	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not above or equal
jnb	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not below
jnbe	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not below or equal
jnc	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not carry
jne	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not equal
jng	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not greater
jnge	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not greater or equal
jnl	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not less
jnle	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not less or equal
jno	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not overflow
jnp	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not parity
jns	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not sign
jnz	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not zero
jo	<i>d</i>	Jump short if overflow
jp	<i>d</i>	Jump short if parity
jpe	<i>d</i>	Jump short if parity even
jpo	<i>d</i>	Jump short if parity odd
js	<i>d</i>	Jump short if sign
jz	<i>d</i>	Jump short if zero
lahf		Load flags into AH register

lds	<i>r, a</i>	Load double pointer into DS
lea	<i>r, a</i>	Load effective address offset
les	<i>r, a</i>	Load double pointer into ES
lock		Assert BUS LOCK signal
lodsb		Load byte into AL
lods		Load byte into AL
lodsw		Load byte into AL
loop	<i>d</i>	Loop; decrement CX, jump short if CX less than zero
loope	<i>d</i>	Loop; decrement CX, jump short if CZ not zero and equal
loopne	<i>d</i>	Loop; decrement CX, jump short if CX not zero and not equal
loopnz	<i>d</i>	Loop; decrement CX, jump short if CZ not zero and ZF equals zero
loopz	<i>d</i>	Loop; decrement CX, jump short if CX not zero and zero
movb	<i>r, a</i>	Move, byte
mov	<i>r, a</i>	Move, word
movb	<i>a, r</i>	Move, byte
mov	<i>a, r</i>	Move, word
movb	<i>a, \$e</i>	Move, byte
mov	<i>a, \$e</i>	Move, word
movb	<i>a, s</i>	Move, byte
mov	<i>a, s</i>	Move, word
movb	<i>s, a</i>	Move, byte
mov	<i>s, a</i>	Move, word
movsb		Move string byte-by-byte
movs		Move string word-by-word
movsw		Move string word-by-word
mulb	<i>m</i>	Multiply, byte
mul	<i>m</i>	Multiply, word
negb	<i>a</i>	Two's complement negation, byte
neg	<i>a</i>	Two's complement negation, word
nop		No operation
notb	<i>a</i>	One's complement negation, byte
not	<i>a</i>	One's complement negation, word
orb	<i>r, a</i>	Logical inclusive OR, byte
or	<i>r, a</i>	Logical inclusive OR, word
orb	<i>a, r</i>	Logical inclusive OR, byte
or	<i>a, r</i>	Logical inclusive OR, word
orb	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical inclusive OR, byte
or	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical inclusive OR, word
outb	<i>p, al</i>	Output to port, byte
out	<i>p, ax</i>	Output to port, word
outb	<i>dx, al</i>	Output to port, byte
out	<i>dx, ax</i>	Output to port, word
pop	<i>m</i>	Pop a word from the stack
pop	<i>s</i>	Pop a word from the stack
popf		Pop from stack into flags register

push	<i>m</i>	Push a word onto the stack
push	<i>s</i>	Push a word onto the stack
pushf		Push flags register onto the stack
rclb	<i>a, \$1</i>	Rotate left \$1 times, byte
rclb	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate left CL times, byte
rcl	<i>a, \$1</i>	Rotate left \$1 times, word
rcl	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate left CL times, word
rcrb	<i>a, \$1</i>	Rotate right \$1 times, byte
rcrb	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate right CL times, byte
rcr	<i>a, \$1</i>	Rotate right \$1 times, word
rcr	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate right CL times, word
rep		Repeat following string operation
repe		Find nonmatching bytes
repne		Repeat, not equal
repnz		Repeat, not equal
repz		Repeat, equal
ret		Return from procedure
rolb	<i>a, \$1</i>	Rotate left, byte
rolb	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate left, byte
rol	<i>a, \$1</i>	Rotate left, word
rol	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate left, word
rorb	<i>a, \$1</i>	Rotate right, byte
rorb	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate right, byte
ror	<i>a, \$1</i>	Rotate right, word
ror	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate right, word
sahf		Store AH into flags
salb	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift left, byte
salb	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift left, byte
sal	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift left, word
sal	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift left, word
sarb	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift right, byte
sarb	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift right, byte
sar	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift right, word
sar	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift right, word
sbbb	<i>r, a</i>	Integer subtract with borrow, byte
sbb	<i>r, a</i>	Integer subtract with borrow, word
sbbb	<i>a, r</i>	Integer subtract with borrow, byte
sbb	<i>a, r</i>	Integer subtract with borrow, word
sbbb	<i>a, \$e</i>	Integer subtract with borrow, byte
sbb	<i>a, \$e</i>	Integer subtract with borrow, word
scasb		Compare string data, byte
scas		Compare string data, word
shlb	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift left, byte
shlb	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift left, byte
shl	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift left, word
shl	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift left, word
shrb	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift right, byte
shrb	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift right, byte
shr	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift right, word
shr	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift right, word

stc		Set carry flag
std		Set direction flag
sti		Set interrupt enable flag
stosb		Store string data, byte
stos		Store string data, byte or word
stosw		Store string data, word
subb	<i>r, a</i>	Integer subtraction, byte
sub	<i>r, a</i>	Integer subtraction, word
subb	<i>a, r</i>	Integer subtraction, byte
sub	<i>a, r</i>	Integer subtraction, word
subb	<i>a, \$e</i>	Integer subtraction, byte
sub	<i>a, \$e</i>	Integer subtraction, word
testb	<i>r, a</i>	Logical compare, byte
test	<i>r, a</i>	Logical compare, word
testb	<i>a, r</i>	Logical compare, byte
test	<i>a, r</i>	Logical compare, word
testb	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical compare, byte
test	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical compare, word
wait		Wait until BUSY pin is inactive
xcall	<i>d, d</i>	Far call, immediate four-byte address
xchgb	<i>r, a</i>	Exchange memory, byte
xchg	<i>r, a</i>	Exchange memory, word
xcall		Far call, address at EA double word
xjmp		Jump far, address at memory double word
xjmp	<i>d, d</i>	Jump far, immediate four-byte address
xlat		Table look-up translation
xor	<i>r, a</i>	Logical exclusive OR, byte
xor	<i>r, a</i>	Logical exclusive OR, word
xorb	<i>a, r</i>	Logical exclusive OR, byte
xor	<i>a, r</i>	Logical exclusive OR, word
xorb	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical exclusive OR, byte
xor	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical exclusive OR, word
xret		Return, intersegment

80286 Instructions

The following instructions implement 80286-specific actions. Programs that use them cannot be run on 8086-based machines.

pusha		Push all general registers
popa		Pop all general registers
insb		Input byte from port DX to ES:(DI)
ins		Input word from port DX to ES:(DI)
outsb		Output byte from port DX from ES:(DI)
outs		Output word from port DX from ES:(DI)
enter	<i>\$e, \$e</i>	Make stack frame for procedure
leave		Tear down stack frame for procedure
bound	<i>r, e</i>	Check array index against bounds
sldt	<i>a</i>	Store Local Descriptor Table Register

str	<i>a</i>	Store Task Register
lldt	<i>a</i>	Load Local Descriptor Table Register
ltr	<i>a</i>	Load Task Register
verr	<i>a</i>	Verify a segment for reading
verw	<i>a</i>	Verify a segment for writing
sgdt	<i>m</i>	Store Global Descriptor Table register
sidt	<i>m</i>	Store Interrupt Descriptor Table register
lgdt	<i>m</i>	Load Global Descriptor Table register
lidt	<i>m</i>	Load Interrupt Descriptor Table register
smsw	<i>a</i>	Store Machine Status Word
lmsw	<i>a</i>	Load Machine Status Word
lar	<i>r,a</i>	Load access rights byte
lsl	<i>r,a</i>	Load segment limit
clts		Clear Task Switched Flag
arpl		Adjust RPL field of Selector
push	<i>\$e</i>	Push sign extended byte

Also the *\$1* forms become *\$e* on **rol**, **rolb**, **ror**, **rorb**, **sal**, **salb**, **shrb**, **shr**, and **shrb**. This is because 8086 task of shifting and rotating by an immediate value could only take an immediate value of 1; however, on the 80286 the immediate value may be up to 31.

i8087 Op Codes

The assembler can also generate object files for use with the i8087 mathematics co-processor. The following listing presents the assembly language op codes for this feature. **st0** indicates floating point register 0 and **st1** indicates any floating point register but 0; **d** is the same as in the above listing.

<i>d</i>	Direct address
<i>st0</i>	Floating point register 0
<i>st1</i>	Any floating point register <i>except</i> 0

The following lists the i8087 instructions:

fabs		Absolute value
fadd	<i>st0, st1</i>	Add real
fadd	<i>st1, st0</i>	Add real
ffadd	<i>d</i>	Add real, float
fdadd	<i>d</i>	Add real, double
faddp		Add real and pop
faddp	<i>st, st0</i>	Add real and pop
fbsd	<i>d</i>	Load packed decimal (BCD)
fbstp	<i>d</i>	Store packed decimal (BCD) and pop
fchs		Change sign
fclex		Clear exception
fnclx		Clear exception
fcom		Compare real
ffcom	<i>d</i>	Compare real, float
fdcom	<i>d</i>	Compare real, double
fcomp		Compare real and pop
fcomp	<i>st1</i>	Compare real and pop

ffcomp	<i>d</i>	Compare real and pop, float
fdcomp	<i>d</i>	Compare real and pop, double
fcomp		Compare real and pop twice
fdecstp		Decrement stack pointer
fdisi		Disable interrupts
fn disi		Disable interrupts, no operands
fdiv	<i>st0, st1</i>	Divide real
fdiv	<i>st1, st0</i>	Divide real
ffdiv	<i>d</i>	Divide real, float
fddiv	<i>d</i>	Divide real, double
fdivp		Divide real and pop
fdivp	<i>st1</i>	Divide real and pop
fdivr	<i>st0, st1</i>	Divide real reversed
fdivr	<i>st1, st0</i>	Divide real reversed
ffdivr	<i>d</i>	Divide real reversed, float
fddivr	<i>d</i>	Divide real reversed, double
fdivr		Divide real reversed and pop
fdivr	<i>st1</i>	Divide real reversed and pop
feni		Enable interrupts
fneni		Enable interrupts, no operands
ffree	<i>st1</i>	Free register
fiadd	<i>d</i>	Integer add
fladd	<i>d</i>	Integer add, long
ficom	<i>d</i>	Integer compare
ficom	<i>d</i>	Integer compare, long
ficom	<i>d</i>	Integer compare and pop
ficom	<i>d</i>	Integer compare and pop, long
fidiv	<i>d</i>	Integer divide
fidiv	<i>d</i>	Integer divide, long
fidivr	<i>d</i>	Integer divide reversed
fidivr	<i>d</i>	Integer divide, long reversed
fil	<i>d</i>	Integer load
fld	<i>d</i>	Integer load, long
fqld	<i>d</i>	Integer load, quad
fimul	<i>d</i>	Integer multiply
fimul	<i>d</i>	Integer multiply, long
fincstp		Increment stack pointer
finit		Initialize processor
fninit		Initialize processor
fist	<i>d</i>	Integer store
flst	<i>d</i>	Integer store, long
fistp	<i>d</i>	Integer store and pop
flstp	<i>d</i>	Integer store and pop, long
fqstp	<i>d</i>	Integer store and pop, quad
fisub	<i>d</i>	Integer subtract
fisub	<i>d</i>	Integer subtract, long
fisubr	<i>d</i>	Integer subtract reversed
fisubr	<i>d</i>	Integer subtract reversed, long
fld	<i>st1</i>	Load real
ffld	<i>d</i>	Load real, float

fldld	<i>d</i>	Load real, double
ftld	<i>d</i>	Load real, temp
fldcw	<i>d</i>	Load control word
fldenv	<i>d</i>	Load environment
fldlg2		Load log(10)2
fldln2		Load log(e)2
fldl2e		Load log(2)e
fldl2t		Load log(2)10
fldpi		Load pi
fldz		Load +0.0
fld1		Load +1.0
fmul		Multiply real
fmul	<i>st0, st1</i>	Multiply real
ffmul	<i>st1, st0</i>	Multiply real, float
fdmul	<i>d</i>	Multiply real, double
fmulp	<i>d</i>	Multiply real and pop
fnop	<i>st1</i>	No operation
fpatan		Partial arctangent
fprem		Partial remainder
fptan		Partial tangent
frndint		Round to integer
frstor	<i>d</i>	Restore saved state
fsave	<i>d</i>	Save state
fnsave	<i>d</i>	Save state
fscale		Scale
fsetpm		Set protected mode
fsqrt		Square root
fst	<i>st1</i>	Store real
ffst	<i>d</i>	Store real, float
fdst	<i>d</i>	Store real, double
fstcw	<i>d</i>	Store control word
fnstcw	<i>d</i>	Store control word
fstenv	<i>d</i>	Store environment
fnstenv	<i>d</i>	Store environment
fstp	<i>st1</i>	Store real and pop
ffstp	<i>d</i>	Store real and pop, float
fdstp	<i>d</i>	Store real and pop, double
fstp	<i>d</i>	Store real and pop, temp
fstsw	<i>d</i>	Store status word
fnstsw	<i>d</i>	Store status word
fsub	<i>st0, st1</i>	Subtract real
fsub	<i>st1, st0</i>	Subtract real
ffsub	<i>d</i>	Subtract real, float
fdsub	<i>d</i>	Subtract real, double
fsubp		Subtract real and pop
fsubp	<i>st1</i>	Subtract real and pop
fsubr	<i>d</i>	Subtract real reversed
ffsubr	<i>d</i>	Subtract real reversed, float
fdsubr	<i>d</i>	Subtract real reversed, double
fsubrp		Subtract real reversed and pop

fsubrp	<i>st1</i>	Subtract real reversed and pop
ftst		Test stack top against +0.0
fwait		Wait while 8087 is busy
fxam		Examine stack top
fxch	<i>st1</i>	Exchange registers
fxch		Exchange registers
fxtract		Extract exponent and significance
fyl2x		$Y * \log(2)X$
fyl2xp1		$Y * \log(2)(X+1)$

C Compiler Conventions

as is often used to write small functions that perform tasks not easily or efficiently done in C. Such functions are intended to be called from a C program. As long as the assembly language source code follows compiler conventions, the assembler routine will be fully compatible with C functions. These conventions are (1) the names of external variables and (2) calling functions.

Naming Conventions

The C compiler appends an underline character '_' to the end of every external declared in a C source file. When referring to any external variable or function declared in a C source file, append an underscore to the name. In a similar manner, when defining a function or variable in an assembly language source file that is to be accessed from a C source file, append an underline character.

Function-Calling Conventions

Function-calling conventions deal with how arguments are passed to functions, how values are returned, and which registers are used for special purposes and must be protected.

Arguments

Function arguments are passed on the stack. They are pushed by the calling function, which also removes them when the called function returns. Looking at the declaration of the function, the order in which they are pushed onto the stack is from right to left; that is, the C compiler pushes the argument list in reverse order of declaration. The instruction **call** to jump to the function also pushes the return address, so that when the called routine gains control the first argument is found at offset 2 from the stack pointer.

Integer and pointer arguments are word size, and are simply pushed with a **push** instruction. Characters, although byte size, are not passed as bytes. The C language requires that *char* variables be promoted to the type *int* before being passed. The promotion is signed or unsigned, depending on the type of the *char* variable. **longs** are pushed one word at a time; the higher-address word is pushed first. This ensures that the words of the **long** are in the correct order on the stack, because the stack grows toward low-addressed memory.

Passing **floats**, **doubles**, or structure arguments is more involved. C requires **floats** to be promoted to and passed as **doubles**, so this conversion must be performed first. **doubles** and structures are passed so that as they sit on the stack, all bytes are in the correct order; this is analogous to the passing of **longs**. This means, for example, that **doubles** may be pushed with four *push word* instructions, beginning with the highest addressed word in the 64-bit double, and ending with the lowest addressed word.

If in doubt about how to apply any of this, try writing a simple C program that uses what you need, and compile it with the `-vasm` option to the `cc` command. This produces an assembly-language version of the C program, which can be studied to see exactly what the compiler does, and mimicked to good effect.

Return Values

Functions return values in various registers according to their type. **ints** and pointers are returned in the **ax** register. **chars** are returned by first promoting them to **ints** and returning the result in the **ax** register; effectively, this means that **chars** are returned in the **al** register. **longs** are returned in the **dx:ax** register pair, with the most significant word (also the high-address word) in the **dx** register, and the least significant word in the **ax** register.

floats, **doubles**, and structures are returned in a more complex fashion. C requires **floats** be returned as **doubles**, so they are converted. **doubles** are returned in a special eight-byte array named `_fpac` (of course, in assembly language the name is `_fpac_`). This array is defined by the compiler. In the event that a function returns a structure, the contents of the structure are saved in memory, and the function returns a pointer to that structure in the **ax** register. The calling function then moves the bytes into the actual destination.

Again, if in doubt about how to do this in assembly language, try compiling a function with assembly language output to see how the compiler does it.

Important Registers

Every function must preserve the value of the **bp** register, which is the caller's stack frame pointer. Also, the compiler uses the **si** and **di** registers for register variables, so they must be preserved.

Example of an Assembly Language Program

The following assembly language file, `strchar.s` defines a function `strchar` that returns the number of occurrences of a character in a string.

FILE: strchar.s

```

/
/
/ Count and return the occurrences
/ of a character in a string.
/
/     int
/     strchar(s, c)
/     char *s;
/     int c;
/
/
```

```

.globl    strchar_ / Make the name known externally.

strchar_:
    push    si      / Standard C function
    push    di      / linkage. Save the
    push    bp      / si, di, and bp registers
    mov     bp, sp  / and set up new frame pointer.

    mov     si, 8(bp) / String ptr -> si.
    mov     bx, 10(bp) / Char -> bx (actually bl).
    sub     ax, ax   / Clear ax (count register).
    sub     cx, cx   / Clear cx.

0:   movb   cl, (si) / Get character from string.
     jcxz  2f       / End of string?
     cmpb  bl, cl   / No. Do chars match?
     jnz   1f       / No.
     inc   ax       / Yes. Increment count.

1:   inc   si       / Bump string pointer
     jmp  0b       / and loop again.

2:   pop   bp       / Standard C return
     pop   di       / linkage. Restore
     pop   si       / saved registers and
     ret                    / go home.

```

The following C program, `main.c` uses `strchar`. The assembly language listing that follows, `main.s` was produced from `main.c` by the `-vasm` option in `cc`. The listing has been edited, and comments added, to illustrate what is happening.

FILE: main.c

```

main()
{
    int n;
    n = strchar("aardvark", 'a');
}

```

FILE: main.s

```

.shri                    / ``code'' program section.

    .globl    main_

main_:

    .strn                    / ``string'' program section.

```

```

L2:  .byte    0x61      / This is the string
     .byte    0x61      /  'aardvark'
     .byte    0x72
     .byte    0x64
     .byte    0x76
     .byte    0x61
     .byte    0x72
     .byte    0x6B
     .byte    0x00

     .shri                      / Back to 'code'

     push    si                / Standard C function
     push    di                / linkage. Save registers,
     push    bp                / set up new frame pointer (bp),
     mov     bp, sp            / and make room on stack
     sub     sp, $0x02         / for the auto int, 'n'

     mov     ax, $0x61         / Push the
     push    ax                / character 'a'.
     mov     ax, $L2           / Push the address
     push    ax                / of the string 'aardvark'
     call   strchar_          / Function call.
     add     sp, $0x04         / Remove args from stack.
     mov     -0x02(bp), ax     / Assign result to auto 'n'.

     mov     sp, bp           / Standard C return
     pop     bp                / linkage. Adjust stack
     pop     di                / pointer, then restore
     pop     si                / registers and
     ret                       / go home.

```

Diagnostics

All errors detected by the assembler are reported on the screen as an error message that is tagged with a line number. If a symbol is associated with the error message (for example, if a symbol is undefined), then the symbol's name is also given. If more than one input file appears on the command line, error messages are tagged with the name of the source file.

If a listing is generated, errors are reported on the listing in the same format, with the error flags at the left margin. The total number of errors is displayed on the screen at the end of the assembly.

For a full listing of as error messages, see the tutorial for the C compiler, which appears earlier in this manual.

See Also

cc, commands

ASCII — Technical Information

ASCII is an acronym for the American Standard Code for Information Interchange. It is a table of seven-bit binary numbers that encode the letters of the alphabet, numerals, punctuation, and the most commonly used control sequences for printers and terminals. ASCII codes are used on all microcomputers sold in the United States.

The following table gives the ASCII characters in octal, decimal, and hexadecimal numbers, their definitions, and expands abbreviations where necessary.

000	0	0x00	NUL	<ctrl-@>	Null character
001	1	0x01	SOH	<ctrl-A>	Start of header
002	2	0x02	STX	<ctrl-B>	Start of text
003	3	0x03	ETX	<ctrl-C>	End of text
004	4	0x04	EOT	<ctrl-D>	End of transmission
005	5	0x05	ENQ	<ctrl-E>	Enquiry
006	6	0x06	ACK	<ctrl-F>	Positive acknowledgement
007	7	0x07	BEL	<ctrl-G>	Bell
010	8	0x08	BS	<ctrl-H>	Backspace
011	9	0x09	HT	<ctrl-I>	Horizontal tab
012	10	0x0A	LF	<ctrl-J>	Line feed
013	11	0x0B	VT	<ctrl-K>	Vertical tab
014	12	0x0C	FF	<ctrl-L>	Form feed
015	13	0x0D	CR	<ctrl-M>	Carriage return
016	14	0x0E	SO	<ctrl-N>	Shift out
017	15	0x0F	SI	<ctrl-O>	Shift in
020	16	0x10	DLE	<ctrl-P>	Data link escape
021	17	0x11	DC1	<ctrl-Q>	Device control 1 (XON)
022	18	0x12	DC2	<ctrl-R>	Device control 2 (tape on)
023	19	0x13	DC3	<ctrl-S>	Device control 3 (XOFF)
024	20	0x14	DC4	<ctrl-T>	Device control 4 (tape off)
025	21	0x15	NAK	<ctrl-U>	Negative acknowledgement
026	22	0x16	SYN	<ctrl-V>	Synchronize
027	23	0x17	ETB	<ctrl-W>	End of transmission block
030	24	0x18	CAN	<ctrl-X>	Cancel
031	25	0x19	EM	<ctrl-Y>	End of medium
032	26	0x1A	SUB	<ctrl-Z>	Substitute
033	27	0x1B	ESC	<ctrl-[>	Escape
034	28	0x1C	FS	<ctrl-\>	Form separator
035	29	0x1D	GS	<ctrl-]>	Group separator
036	30	0x1E	RS	<ctrl-^>	Record separator
037	31	0x1F	US	<ctrl-_>	Unit separator
040	32	0x20	SP		Space
041	33	0x21	!		Exclamation point
042	34	0x22	"		Quotation mark
043	35	0x23	#		Pound sign (sharp)
044	36	0x24	\$		Dollar sign
045	37	0x25	%		Percent sign
046	38	0x26	&		Ampersand
047	39	0x27	'		Apostrophe

050	40	0x28	(	Left parenthesis
051	41	0x29	)	Right parenthesis
052	42	0x2A	*	Asterisk
053	43	0x2B	+	Plus sign
054	44	0x2C	,	Comma
055	45	0x2D	-	Hyphen (minus sign)
056	46	0x2E	.	Period
057	47	0x2F	/	Virgule (slash)
060	48	0x30	0	
061	49	0x31	1	
062	50	0x32	2	
063	51	0x33	3	
064	52	0x34	4	
065	53	0x35	5	
066	54	0x36	6	
067	55	0x37	7	
070	56	0x38	8	
071	57	0x39	9	
072	58	0x3A	:	Colon
073	59	0x3B	;	Semicolon
074	60	0x3C	<	Less-than symbol (left angle bracket)
075	61	0x3D	=	Equal sign
076	62	0x3E	>	Greater-than symbol (right angle bracket)
077	63	0x3F	?	Question mark
0100	64	0x40	@	At sign
0101	65	0x41	A	
0102	66	0x42	B	
0103	67	0x43	C	
0104	68	0x44	D	
0105	69	0x45	E	
0106	70	0x46	F	
0107	71	0x47	G	
0110	72	0x48	H	
0111	73	0x49	I	
0112	74	0x4A	J	
0113	75	0x4B	K	
0114	76	0x4C	L	
0115	77	0x4D	M	
0116	78	0x4E	N	
0117	79	0x4F	O	
0120	80	0x50	P	
0121	81	0x51	Q	
0122	82	0x52	R	
0123	83	0x53	S	
0124	84	0x54	T	
0125	85	0x55	U	
0126	86	0x56	V	
0127	87	0x57	W	
0130	88	0x58	X	
0131	89	0x59	Y	

0132	90	0x5A	Z	
0133	91	0x5B	[	Left bracket (left square bracket)
0134	92	0x5C	\	Backslash
0135	93	0x5D	]	Right bracket (right square bracket)
0136	94	0x5E	^	Circumflex
0137	95	0x5F	_	Underscore
0140	96	0x60	`	Grave
0141	97	0x61	a	
0142	98	0x62	b	
0143	99	0x63	c	
0144	100	0x64	d	
0145	101	0x65	e	
0146	102	0x66	f	
0147	103	0x67	g	
0150	104	0x68	h	
0151	105	0x69	i	
0152	106	0x6A	j	
0153	107	0x6B	k	
0154	108	0x6C	l	
0155	109	0x6D	m	
0156	110	0x6E	n	
0157	111	0x6F	o	
0160	112	0x70	p	
0161	113	0x71	q	
0162	114	0x72	r	
0163	115	0x73	s	
0164	116	0x74	t	
0165	117	0x75	u	
0166	118	0x76	v	
0167	119	0x77	w	
0170	120	0x78	x	
0171	121	0x79	y	
0172	122	0x7A	z	
0173	123	0x7B	{	Left brace (left curly bracket)
0174	124	0x7C	|	Vertical bar
0175	125	0x7D	}	Right brace (right curly bracket)
0176	126	0x7E	~	Tilde
0177	127	0x7F	DEL	Delete

Files

`/usr/pub/ascii`

See Also

string, **technical information**

ascii.h — Header File

Define non-printable ASCII characters

```
#include <ascii.h>
```

ascii.h defines a set of manifest constants that describe the non-printable ASCII characters.

See Also

ASCII, header files

asctime() — Time Function (libc)

Convert time structure to ASCII string

```
#include <time.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
char *asctime(tmp) tm *tmp;
```

asctime takes the data found in *tmp*, and turns it into an ASCII string. *tmp* is of the type **tm**, which is a structure defined in the header file **time.h**. This structure must first be initialized by either **gmtime** or **localtime** before it can be used by **asctime**. For a further discussion of **tm**, see the entry for **time**.

asctime returns a pointer to where it writes the text string it creates.

Example

The following example demonstrates the functions **asctime**, **ctime**, **gmtime**, **localtime**, and **time**, and shows the effect of the environmental variable **TIMEZONE**. For a discussion of the variable **time_t**, see the entry for **time**.

```
#include <time.h>
#include <types.h>
main()
{
    time_t timenumber;
    tm *timestruct;

    /* read system time, print using ctime */
    time(&timenumber);
    printf("%s", ctime(&timenumber));

    /* use gmtime to fill tm, print with asctime */
    timestruct = gmtime(&timenumber);
    printf("%s", asctime(timestruct));

    /* use localtime to fill tm, print with asctime */
    timestruct = localtime(&timenumber);
    printf("%s", asctime(timestruct));
}
```

See Also

time

Notes

asctime returns a pointer to a statically allocated data area that is overwritten by successive calls.

asin() – Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate inverse sine

#include <math.h>**double asin(arg) double arg;**

asin calculates the inverse \sin of *arg*, which must be in the range $[-1., 1.]$. The result will be in the range $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$.

Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos**.

*See Also***mathematics library***Diagnostics*

Out-of-range arguments set **errno** to **EDOM** and return zero.

ASKCC – Environmental Variable

Force prompting prompting for CC names

ASKCC=YES/NO

The environmental variable **ASKCC** directs the program **mail** to prompt for carbon-copy names. A carbon-copy (or CC) name gives another person to whom a mail message should be sent. To turn on prompting, use the command:

```
export ASKCC=YES
```

*See Also***environmental variables, mail****assert()** – Macro Diagnostics (assert.h)

Check assertion at run time

#include <assert.h>**void assert(expression) int expression;**

assert checks the value of *expression*. If *expression* is false (zero), **assert** sends a message into the standard-error stream and calls **exit**. It is useful for verifying that a necessary condition is true.

The error message includes the text of the assertion that failed, the name of the source file, and the line within the source file that holds the expression in question. These last two elements consist, respectively, of the values of the preprocessor macros `__FILE__` and `__LINE__`.

assert calls **exit**, which never returns.

To turn off **assert**, define the macro **NDEBUG** prior to including the header **assert.h**. This forces **assert** to be redefined as

```
#define assert(ignore)
```

*See Also***exit()**, **assert.h**, **C preprocessor***Notes*

The Standard requires that **assert** be implemented as a macro, not a library function. If a program suppresses the macro definition in favor of a function call, its behavior is undefined.

Turning off **assert** with the macro **NDEBUG** will affect the behavior of a program if the expression being evaluated normally generates side effects.

assert is useful for debugging, and for testing boundary conditions for which more graceful error recovery has not yet been implemented.

assert.h — Header FileDefine **assert()****#include** <**assert.h**>

assert.h is the header file that defines the macro **assert**.

*See Also***assert()**, **header files****at** — Device Driver

Drivers for hard-disk partitions

/dev/at* are the COHERENT system's drivers for the hard-disk's partitions. Each driver is assigned major-device number 11, and may be accessed as a block- or character-special device.

The **at** set of hard-disk drivers handle two drives with up to four partitions each. Minor devices 0 through 3 identify the partitions on drive 0. Minor devices 4 through 7 identify the partitions on drive 1. Minor device 128 allows access to all of drive 0. Minor device 129 allows access to all of drive 1. To modify the offsets and sizes of the partitions, use the command **fdisk** on the special device for each drive (minor devices 128 and 129).

To access a disk partition through COHERENT, directory **/dev** must contain a device file that has the appropriate type, major and minor device numbers, and permissions. To create a special file for this device, invoke the command **mknod** as follows:

```
/etc/mknod /dev/at0a b 11 0 ; : drive 0, partition 0
/etc/mknod /dev/at0b b 11 1 ; : drive 0, partition 1
/etc/mknod /dev/at0c b 11 2 ; : drive 0, partition 2
/etc/mknod /dev/at0d b 11 3 ; : drive 0, partition 3
/etc/mknod /dev/at0x b 11 128 ; : drive 0, partition table
```

Drive Characteristics

To read the characteristics of a hard disk, use the call to **ioctl** of the following form:

```
#include <sys/hdioctl.h>
hdparm_t hdparms;

ioctl(fd, HDGETA, (char *)&hdparms);
```

where *fd* is a file descriptor for the hard disk device and *hdparms* receives the disk characteristics.

Files

/dev/at* — Block-special files

/dev/rat* — Character-special files

See Also

device drivers, **fdisk**

at — Command

Execute commands at given time

at [**-v**] [**-c** *command*] *time* [[*day*] **week**] [*file*]

at [**-v**] [**-c** *command*] *time* *month* *day* [*file*]

at executes commands at a given time in the future.

If the **-c** option is used, **at** executes the following *command*. If *file* is named, **at** reads the commands from it. If neither is given, **at** reads the standard input for commands.

If *time* is a one-digit or two-digit number, **at** interprets it as specifying an hour. If *time* is a three-digit or four-digit number, **at** interprets it as specifying an hour and minutes. If *time* is followed by **a**, **p**, **n**, or **m**, **at** assumes **AM**, **PM**, **noon**, or **midnight**, respectively; otherwise, it assumes that *time* indicates a 24-hour clock.

For example, the command

```
at -c "time | msg henry" 1450
```

set the **time** command to be executed at 2:50 PM, and pipe **time**'s output to the **msg** command, which will pass it to the terminal of user **henry**. Note that argument to the **-c** option had to be enclosed in quotation marks because it contains spaces and special characters; if this were not done, **at** would not be able to tell when the argument ended, and so would generate an error message. Also note that if you wish pass information to a user's terminal with the **at** command, you must tell **at** to whom to send the information. The command

```
at 250p commandfile
```

will set the file **commandfile** to be read and executed at 2:50 PM. Note that it is *not* necessary to use the file's full path name. Also, if the suffix **p** were not appended to the time, the file would be set to be read at 2:50 AM.

The time set in **at**'s command line is *not* the exact time that the command is executed. Rather, the daemon **cron** wakes up the file **/usr/lib/atrun** periodically to see if any commands have been scheduled commands to be executed at or before that time. The frequency with which **cron** executes **atrun** determines the "granularity" of **at** execution times; it may be changed by editing the file **/usr/lib/crontab**. For example, the entry

```
0,5,10,15,20,25,30,35,40,45,50,55 * * * * /usr/lib/atrun
```

sets **/usr/lib/atrun** to be executed every five minutes. Thus, the **at** command that is set, for example, to 2:53 PM will actually be executed at 2:55 PM. **atrun** executes specified commands when it discovers that the given time is past; therefore, **at** commands are executed even if the system is down at the specified time or if the system's

time is changed.

The **at** command has two forms, as shown above. In the first form, the option *day* names a day of the week (lower case, spelled out). If **week** is specified, **at** interprets the given *time* and *day* as meaning that time and day the following week. For example, the command

```
at -c "time | msg henry" 1450 friday week
```

executes **time** and sends its output to **henry's** terminal one week from Friday at 2:50 PM.

In the second form given above, *month* specifies a month name (lower case, spelled out) and the number *day* specifies a day of the month. For example, the command

```
at 1450 july 4 commandfile
```

set the file **commandfile** to be read at 2:50 PM on July 4.

If the **-v** flag is given, **at** prints the time when the commands will be executed, giving you enough information to plan for the execution of the command. For example, if it is now August 13, 1990, at 2:30 PM, and you type the command

```
at -v -c "/usr/games/fortune | msg henry" 1435
```

at will reply:

```
Tue Aug 13 14:35:00
```

indicating that the command will be executed five minutes from now. However, if you type

```
at -v -c "/usr/games/fortune | msg henry" 1435 august 10
```

at will reply

```
Sun Aug 10 14:35:00 1991
```

which indicates that on Sunday, August 10 of next year, at 2:35 PM, the COHERENT system will print a **fortune** onto your terminal.

Should you create such a long-distance **at** file by accident, you can correct the error by simply deleting the file that encodes it from the directory **/usr/spool/at**. The file will be named after the time that it is set to execute, plus a unique two-character suffix, should more than one command be scheduled to run at the same time. For example, the file for the above command would be named **9108101435.aa**.

Finally, note that the current working directory, exported shell variables, file creation mask, user id, and group id are restored when the given command is executed.

Files

- /bin/pwd** — To find current directory
- /usr/lib/atrun** — Execute scheduled commands
- /usr/spool/at** — Scheduled activity directory
- /usr/spool/at/yymmddhhmm.xx** — Commands scheduled at given time

See Also

at, **commands**, **cron**

atan() – Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate inverse tangent

#include <math.h>

double atan(arg) double arg;

atan calculates the inverse tangent of *arg*, which may be any real number. The result will be in the range $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$.

Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos**.

See Also

errno, **mathematics library**

atan2() – Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate inverse tangent

double atan2(num, den) double num, den;

atan2 calculates the inverse tangent of the quotient of its arguments *num/den*. *num* and *den* may be any real numbers. The result will be in the range $[-\pi, \pi]$. The sign of the result will have the same sign as *num*, and the cosine will have the same sign as *den*.

Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos**.

See Also

errno, **mathematics library**

ATclock – System Maintenance

Read or set the AT realtime clock

/etc/ATclock [yy[mm[dd[hh[mm[ss]]]]]]]

ATclock reads or sets the system realtime clock in an IBM PC-AT system. With no argument, it reads the realtime clock and returns a string in the format expected by the command **date**. With an argument, it sets the realtime clock to the given date.

The system startup files **/etc/brc** and **/etc/rc** typically contain a command of the form

```
date -s '/etc/ATclock'
```

to reset the time properly when the COHERENT system starts up. The AT realtime clock typically contains the current local standard time (not adjusted for daylight savings time).

See Also

date, **rc**, **system maintenance**

atof() — General Function (libc)

Convert ASCII strings to floating point

double atof(*string*) **char** * *string*;

atof converts *string* into the binary representation of a double-precision floating point number. *string* must be the ASCII representation of a floating-point number. It can contain a leading sign, any number of decimal digits, and a decimal point. It can be terminated with an exponent, which consists of the letter 'e' or 'E' followed by an optional leading sign and any number of decimal digits. For example,

123e-2

is a string that can be converted by **atof**.

atof ignores leading blanks and tabs; it stops scanning when it encounters any unrecognized character.

Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos**.

See Also

atoi(), **atol()**, **float**, **general functions**, **long**, **printf()**, **scanf()**

Notes

atof does not check to see if the value represented by *string* fits into a **double**. It returns zero if you hand it a string that it cannot interpret.

atoi() — General Function (libc)

Convert ASCII strings to integers

int atoi(*string*) **char** **string*;

atoi converts *string* into the binary representation of an integer. *string* may contain a leading sign and any number of decimal digits. **atoi** ignores leading blanks and tabs; it stops scanning when it encounters any non-numeral other than the leading sign, and returns the resulting **int**.

Example

The following demonstrates **atoi**. It takes a string typed at the terminal, turns it into an integer, then prints that integer on the screen. To exit, type <ctrl-C>.

```
main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    extern int atoi();
    char string[64];
```

```
    for(;;) {
        printf("Enter numeric string: ");
        if(gets(string))
            printf("%d\n", atoi(string));
        else
            break;
    }
}
```

See Also

`atof()`, `atoi()`, `general functions`, `int`, `printf()`, `scanf()`

Notes

`atoi` does not check to see if the number represented by *string* fits into an `int`. It returns zero if you hand it a string that it cannot interpret.

`atol()` — General Function (libc)

Convert ASCII strings to long integers

`long atol(string) char *string;`

`atol` converts the argument *string* to a binary representation of a **long**. *string* may contain a leading sign (but no trailing sign) and any number of decimal digits. `atol` ignores leading blanks and tabs; it stops scanning when it encounters any non-numeral other than the leading sign, and returns the resulting **long**.

Example

```
main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    extern long atol();
    char string[64];

    for(;;) {
        printf("Enter numeric string: ");
        if(gets(string))
            printf("%ld\n", atol(string));
        else
            break;
    }
}
```

See Also

`atof()`, `atoi()`, `float`, `long`, `printf()`, `scanf()`

Notes

No overflow checks are performed. `atol` returns zero if it receives a string it cannot interpret.

atrun — System Maintenance

Execute commands at a preset time

atrun is a program that executes programs at a time set by the command **at**.

When user **steve** types

```
at 1230 /v/steve/lunchtime
```

the command **at** creates a shell script in directory **/usr/spool/at** that contains the information needed to execute command **/v/steve/lunchtime** at a later time—in this instance, 12:30. The spooled file sits **/usr/spool/at** until **/usr/lib/atrun** sees that the specified time has been reached, then it executes the spooled command and removes the entry from **/usr/spool/at**.

atrun is not a daemon; that is, it is invoked by another program, does its work and exits. Thus, it is typically run periodically from an entry in the file **/usr/lib/crontab**. See the article on **at** for more details.

See Also

at, system maintenance

Notes

Although **atrun** technically is a command, is never invoked directly by a user.

auto — C Keyword

Note an automatic variable

auto is an abbreviation for an *automatic variable*. This is a variable that applies only to the function that invokes it, and vanishes when the functions exits. The word **auto** is a C keyword, and must not be used to name any function, macro, or variable.

See Also

C keywords, extern, static, storage class

awk — Command

Pattern-scanning language

```
awk [-y][-F c][-f progfile][prog][file ...]
```

awk is a general-purpose language designed for processing input data. Its features allow you to write programs that scan for patterns, produce reports, and filter relevant information from a mass of input data. It acts on each input *file* following the commands you write into an **awk** program. **awk** reads the standard input if no *file* is specified, which allows it to act as a filter in a pipeline; the *file* name **'-'** means the standard input.

You can specify the program either as an argument *prog* (usually enclosed in quotation marks to prevent interpretation by the shell **sh**) or in the form **-f progfile**, where *progfile* contains the **awk** program. If no **-f** option appears, the first non-option argument is the **awk** program *prog*.

The option flag **-y** specifies that any lower-case alphabetic character in a regular expression pattern should match both itself and the corresponding upper-case letter. This is identical to the matching found in the pattern-matching program **grep** with the **-y** op-

tion.

awk views its input as a sequence of records, each consisting of zero or more fields. By default, newlines separate records and white space (spaces or tabs) separates fields. The option **-Fc** changes the input field separator characters to the characters in the string *c*. An **awk** program can also change the field and record separators. The program can access the values of each field and the entire record through built-in variables.

For details on the construction of **awk** programs, consult the tutorial to **awk** that appears in this manual. Briefly, an **awk** program consists of one or more lines, each containing a *pattern* or an *action*, or both. A *pattern* determines whether **awk** performs the associated *action*. It may consist of regular expressions, line ranges, boolean combinations of variables, and beginning and end of input-text predicates. If no *pattern* is specified, **awk** executes the *action* (the pattern matches by default).

An *action* is enclosed in braces. The syntax of actions is C-like, and consists of simple and compound statements constructed from constants (numbers, strings), input fields, built-in and user-defined variables, and built-in functions. If an *action* is missing, **awk** prints the entire input record (line).

Unlike **lex** or **yacc**, **awk** does not compile programs into an executable image, but interprets them directly. Thus, **awk** is ideal for quickly-implemented, one-shot efforts.

Examples

The following examples illustrate the economy of expression of **awk** programs.

The first example prints all lines containing the string "COHERENT" (identical to **grep COHERENT**):

```
/COHERENT/
```

The built-in variable **NR** is the number of the current input record, so the following program prints the number of records (lines) in the input stream.

```
END { print NR }
```

The built-in variable **\$3** gives the value of the third field of the current record, so the following program sums the elements in column three of an input table and prints the total:

```
{ sum += $3 }
END { print sum }
```

See Also

commands, grep, lex, sed, yacc

Introduction to the awk Language

Notes

There is no way to have a null field, such as is necessary to describe the colon-separated fields in **/etc/passwd**.

awk converts between strings and numbers automatically. Adding zero to a string forces **awk** to treat it as a number; concatenating "" to a number forces **awk** to treat it as a string.

B

bad — Command

Maintain list of bad blocks

bad *option filesystem* [*block ...*]

A hard disk or floppy disk may have bad blocks on it: a “bad block” is a portion of disk that cannot be used reliably because read or write errors occur on them. The COHERENT system keeps a list of bad blocks so it can avoid using them.

The command **bad** maintains the bad-block list for the given *filesystem*, which must be a block-special file. *option* must be exactly one of the characters **acdli**, which tell **bad** to do one of the following:

- a** Add each given *block* to the bad-block list
- c** Clear the bad-block list
- d** Delete each given *block* from the bad-block list
- l** List all blocks on the bad-block list

bad does not deallocate any i-node associated with a block when adding it to the bad-block list. You should run the command **icheck** with the **-s** option immediately after **bad** to correct the problem, or run the command **fsck**.

filesystem should be unmounted if possible. The user who invokes **bad** must have appropriate permissions for the given *filesystem*. For many file systems, only the superuser may use **bad** to change the bad-block list. Use the command **badscan** to create a prototype file.

When the **mkfs** command creates a file system, the prototype specification may include a bad block list for the new file system.

See Also

badscan, **commands**, **icheck**, **mkfs**, **umount**

badscan — Command

Build bad block list

/etc/badscan [**-v**] [**-o proto**] [**-b boot**] *device size*

/etc/badscan [**-v**] [**-o proto**] [**-b boot**] *device xdevice*

badscan scans a disk for bad blocks and writes a prototype file, which lists all bad blocks on the disk, onto the standard output. It recognizes the following options:

- v** Print an estimate of time needed to finish examining the device.
- o proto** Redirect output into file *proto*.
- b boot** Insert a given *boot* into the proto file as the bootstrap. The default is **/conf/boot**.

device names the special device to scan.

size gives the size of the device, in blocks. For hard disks, *xdevice* specifies **at0x** or **at1x**, which uses the partition-table information in the master boot block of the drive to find the size of the device.

See Also
commands

banner — Command

Print large letters

banner [*argument ...*]

banner prints large (seven-character by five-character) letters on the standard output. Each *argument* produces one large text output line. If there is no *argument*, each line from the standard input produces one line of large-text output.

See Also
commands, lpr, pr

basename — Command

Strip file name

basename *file* [*suffix*]

basename strips its argument *file* of any leading directory prefixes. If the result contains the optional *suffix*, **basename** also strips it. **basename** prints the result on the standard output.

For example, the command

```
basename /usr/fred/source.c
```

returns

```
source.c
```

basename is most useful when it is used with other shell commands. For example, the command

```
for i in *.c
do
    cp $i `basename $i .c`.backup
done
```

copies every file that has the suffix **.c** into an identically named file that has the suffix **.backup**.

See Also
commands, sh

bc — Command

Interactive calculator with arbitrary precision

bc [**-l**] [*file ...*]

bc is a language that performs calculations on numbers with an arbitrary number of digits. **bc** is most commonly used as an interactive calculator, where the user types arithmetic expressions in a syntax reminiscent of C. If **bc** is invoked with no *file* arguments on its command line, it reads the standard input. For example:

<i>Input</i>	<i>Output</i>
bc	
(1000+23)*42	42966
k = 2^10	
16 * k	16384
2 ^ 100	1267650600228229401496703205376

bc may also be invoked with one or more *file* arguments. After **bc** reads each *file*, it reads the standard input. This provides a convenient way to access programs in files. A library of mathematical functions is available, obtained by using the **-l** option.

The following summarizes briefly the facilities provided by **bc**. More information is available in the tutorial to **bc** that is included with this manual.

Comments are enclosed between the delimiters **'/*'** and ***/**. Names of variables or functions must begin with a lower-case letter, and may have any number of subsequent letters or digits. Names may not begin with an upper-case letter because numbers with a base greater than ten may need need upper-case letters for their notation. The three built-in variables **obase**, **ibase**, and **scale** represent the number base for printing numbers (default, ten), the number base for reading numbers (default, ten), and the number of digits after the decimal (radix) point (default, zero), respectively. Variables may be simple variables or arrays, and need not be pre-declared, with the exception of variables internal to functions. Some examples of variables and array elements are **x25**, **array[10]**, and **number**.

Numbers are any string of digits, and may have one decimal point. Digits are taken from the ordinary digits (0-9) and then the upper-case letters (A-F), in that order.

Certain names are reserved for use as key words. The key words recognized by **bc** include the following:

if, for, do, while

Test conditions and define loops, with syntax identical to C

break, continue

Alter control flow within **for** and **while** loops.

quit Tell **bc** to exit immediately

define function (arg, ..., arg)

Define a **bc** function by a compound statement, as in C.

auto var, ..., var

Define variables that are local to a function, rather than having global scope.

return (value)

Return a value from a function.

scale (value)

Return the number of digits to the right of the decimal point in *value*.

sqrt (value)

Return the square root of *value*

length (*value*)

Return the number of decimal digits in *value*.

The following operators are recognized:

```

+   -   *   /   %   ^   ++
--  =   +=  -=  *=  /=  %=
^=  ==  !=  <  <=  >  >=

```

These operators are similar to those in C, with the exception of \wedge and $\wedge=$, which are exponentiation operators. Expressions can be grouped with parentheses. Statements are separated with semicolons or newlines, and may be made into compound statements with braces. **bc** prints the value of any statement that is an expression but is not an assignment.

As in the editor **ed**, an **!** at the beginning of a line causes that line to be sent as a command to the COHERENT shell **sh**.

The built-in mathematics library contains the following functions and variables:

```

atan(z)   Arctangent of z
cos(z)    Cosine of z
exp(z)    Exponential function of z
j(n,z)    nth order Bessel function of z
ln(z)     Natural logarithm of z
pi        Value of pi to 100 digits
sin(z)    Sine of z

```

Examples

The first example calculates the factorial of its positive integer argument by recursion.

```

/*
 * Factorial function implemented by recursion.
 */
define fact(n) {
    if (n <= 1) return (n);
    return (n * fact(n-1));
}

```

The second example also calculates the factorial of its positive integer argument, this time by iteration.

```

/*
 * Factorial function implemented by iteration.
 */
define fact(n) {
    auto result;

    result = 1;
    for (i=1; i<=n; i++) result *= i;
    return (result);
}

```


Files

`/usr/lib/lib.b` — Source code for the library

See Also

commands, **conv**, **dc**, **multi-precision arithmetic**
bc Desk Calculator Language, tutorial

Notes

Line numbers do not accompany error messages in source files.

bit – Definition

bit is an abbreviation for “binary digit”. It is the basic unit of data processing. A bit can have a value of either zero or one. Bits can be concatenated to form bytes.

A bit can be used either as a placeholder to construct a number with an absolute value, or as a flag whose value has a particular meaning under specially defined circumstances. In the former use, a string of bits builds an integer. In the latter use, a string of bits forms a **map**, in which each bit has a meaning other than its numeric value.

See Also

bit map, **byte**, **definitions**, **nybble**

bit-fields – Definition

A *bit-field* is a member of a structure or union that is defined to be a cluster of bits. It provides a way to represent data compactly. For example, in the following structure

```
struct example {
    int member1;
    long member2;
    unsigned int member3 :5;
}
```

member3 is declared to be a bit-field that consists of five bits. A colon ‘:’ precedes the integral constant that indicates the *width*, or the number of bits in the bit-field. Also, the bit-field declarator must include a type, which must be one of **int**, **signed int**, or **unsigned int**.

A bit-field that is not given a name may not be accessed. Such an object is useful as “padding” within an object so that it conforms to a template designed elsewhere.

A bit-field that is unnamed and has a length of zero can be used to force adjacent bit-fields into separate objects. For example, in the following structure

```
struct example {
    int member1;
    int member2 :5;
    int :0;
    int member3 :5;
};
```

the zero-length bit-field forces **member2** and **member3** to be written into separate objects.

Finally, it is illegal to take the address of a bit-field.

See Also

bit, bit map, byte, definitions

Notes

Because bit-fields have many implementation-specific properties, they are not considered to be highly portable. Bit-fields use minimal amounts of storage, but the amount of computation needed to manipulate and access them may negate this benefit. Bit-fields must be kept in integral-sized objects because many machines cannot directly access a quantity of storage smaller than a “word” (a word is generally used to store an `int`).

bit map – Definition

A **bit map** is a string of bits in which each bit has a symbolic, rather than numeric, value.

See Also

bit, byte, definitions

The C Programming Language, ed. 2, page 136

Notes

C permits the manipulation of bits within a byte through the use of bit-field routines. These generate code rather than calls to routines. Bit fields are generally less efficient than masking because they always generate masking and shifting.

block – Technical Information

A *block* is a mass of data that is read at one time. Blocks are different lengths under different operating systems; COHERENT defines a block as being `BSIZE` bytes long.

Information is read in blocks from block-special devices, such as the hard disk or floppy disks. This is done to increase the speed with which data are read from these devices; reading characters one at a time, such as is done with character-special devices such as terminals or modems, would be too slow.

See Also

technical information

boot – Driver

Boot block for hard-disk partition/nine-sector diskette

To be bootable, a COHERENT file system must contain a boot block that lives in the first block of the file system. In addition, all hard disks must contain the master boot block `mboot` or an equivalent.

boot is a boot block for a hard-disk partition or a floppy disk. It must be installed as the first sector of the partition or diskette; for example, the following commands format and create a file system on a high-density, 5.25-inch diskette:

```

/etc/fdformat -v -i 4 /dev/fha0
/etc/mkfs /dev/fha0 2400
/bin/cp /conf/boot.fha /dev/fha0

```

boot searches its root directory '/' for file *autoboot*. If it finds this kernel, **boot** loads and runs it. Otherwise, it gives the prompt `?`, to which the user must type the name of the operating-system kernel to load (typically, "coherent"). If **boot** cannot find the requested kernel or if an error occurs, **boot** does not print an error message, but re-prompts with `?`.

Creating a Bootable Floppy Disk

In some cases, it is necessary to create a mini-version of COHERENT that can be booted from a floppy disk. For example, you may wish to test a device driver or a tricky program written in assembly language; by using a floppy-disk version of COHERENT, you can test your program yet protect your hard disk's file systems from damage should something go wrong.

The following describes how to create a floppy-disk version of COHERENT. If your drive A is a 5.25-inch, high-density device, type:

```

export DEV=/dev/fha0
export BS=30b

```

If, however, your drive A is a 3.5-inch, high-density device, type:

```

export DEV=/dev/fva0
export BS=36b

```

The rest of the commands will be the same for either device.

The next step is to copy disk 1 of your COHERENT release onto the hard disk. Insert disk 1 into drive A and type:

```
dd if=$DEV of=file_name count=80 bs=$BS
```

where *file_name* is the file into which you are copying the disk.

Now, remove the COHERENT release disk and insert a blank floppy disk. The next step is to format it; type the following command:

```
/etc/fdformat $DEV
```

Now, copy the file that contains your copy of COHERENT release disk 1 onto the newly formatted floppy disk:

```
dd if=file_name of=$DEV count=80 bs=$BS
```

where *file_name* is the file that holds COHERENT.

Now, mount the new floppy disk:

```
/etc/mount $DEV /f0
```

From this point on, you must have superuser status. If you have not yet done so, type

```
su root
```

and type the password if prompted.

The final steps further prepare the new floppy disk:

```
cd /f0
mv begin autoboot
rm Coh_300.1
cd etc
rm brc*
rm build
```

The bootable floppy is now done. Type <ctrl-D> to return from superuser status, and then type the command

```
/etc/umount $DEV
```

to unmount the floppy disk. Put it away in a safe place.

Your bootable floppy disk contains about 700 blocks (350 kilobytes) of an information. We suggest that you put on it a handful of the most commonly used programs, such as the MicroEMACS screen editor.

Files

/conf/boot* — Various diskette boot blocks

See Also

device drivers, fdisk, mboot, mkfs

boot.fha — Device Driver

Boot block for floppy disk

To be bootable, a COHERENT file system must contain a boot block (either **boot** or **boot.fha**). In addition, all hard disks must contain the master boot block **mboot** or an equivalent.

boot.fha is a boot block for a hard disk partition or a 15-sector floppy. It must be installed as the first sector of the partition or diskette, as follows:

```
/etc/fdformat -v -i 4 /dev/fha0
/etc/badscan -o protol /dev/fha0 2400
/etc/mkfs /dev/fha0 protol
/bin/cp /conf/boot.fha /dev/fha0
```

boot.fha searches its root directory '/' for file **autoboot**. If it finds this kernel, **boot.fha** loads and runs it. Otherwise, it gives the prompt **?**, to which the user must type the name of the operating-system kernel to load (typically, **coherent**). If **boot.fha** cannot find the requested kernel or if an error occurs, **boot.fha** repeats the prompt and the user must type another name.

Files

/conf/boot.fha — Partition or 15-sector 96tpi floppy boot block

See Also

badscan, boot, device drivers, fdisk, mboot, mkfs

boottime — System Maintenance

Time the system was last booted

`/etc/boottime` is an empty file maintained by the `init` process and the `date` command. The modification time of `boottime`, as displayed by the command `ls -l`, is the time that the system was last booted. You can read the time shown by `boottime` with `ls -l`, or with the system calls `stat` or `fstat`.

Files

`/etc/boottime`

See Also

`date`, `init`, `mount`, `system maintenance`

Notes

Commands that depend upon `/etc/boottime` may malfunction if the system's date is not set correctly. For instance, the `mount` command depends on the relative modification times of `/etc/boottime` and `/etc/mstab` to detect whether the mount table has been invalidated by a system boot. If the date is set sufficiently far into the past, the mount table may appear to be valid when in fact it is not.

brc — System Maintenance

Perform maintenance chores, single-user mode

`/etc/brc`

The shell script `/etc/brc` is executed by the `init` process when the COHERENT system enters single-user mode. The commands in `brc` do such things as set system clock, set the local time zone, and call `fsck` to scan and (if necessary) fix all file systems on your machine.

See Also

`init`, `rc`, `system maintenance`

break — C Keyword

Exit from loop or switch statement

`break` is a C statement that causes an immediate exit from a `switch` sequence, or from a `while`, `for`, or `do` loop.

See Also

C keywords

break — Command

Exit from shell construct

`break [n]`

The command `break` is used with the shell `sh` to control how it performs loops. It is analogous to the `break` keyword in C.

When it is used without an argument, **break** forces **sh** to exit from the innermost current **for**, **until**, or **while** loop. If used with an argument, **break** exits from *n* levels of **for**, **until**, or **while** loops.

sh executes **break** directly.

See Also

commands, **continue**, **for**, **sh**, **until**, **while**

brk() — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Change size of data area

```
brk(addr)  
char *addr;
```

The *break* is the lowest address above the data area of a process. **brk** sets the break to the given *addr*, possibly rounding up by some machine-dependent factor. It returns zero on success, -1 on failure.

See Also

COHERENT system calls, **end**, **exec**, **malloc()**, **sbrk()**

Diagnostics

brk sets **errno** to **ENOMEM** if the request fails.

buf.h — Header File

Buffer header

```
#include <sys/buf.h>
```

buf.h defines the structure used to hold buffers.

See Also

header files

buffer — Definition

A **buffer** is a portion of memory set aside to hold data read from or to be written to another process or device. Often, although not always, this involves setting aside a portion of the arena with **malloc** or its related functions.

Buffering, and problems therewith, are encountered most often when using the standard input and output (STDIO) routines. Many operating systems (including COHERENT) automatically place data from a peripheral device into a buffer. Buffers normally can be cleared with **fflush**, by pressing the carriage return key on routines that perform input, or by sending a newline character on routines that perform output. The function **fclose**, which closes a file stream, flushes all buffers associated with that stream. **exit** calls **fclose**.

Combining unbuffered and buffered I/O functions on the same file or device within one program will produce results that are at best unpredictable.

Example

The following example demonstrates what does and does not happen when you use **fflush** with the output buffer.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
    extern char *malloc();
    char *buffer;

    /* use malloc() to create a 120-char buffer */
    if ((buffer = malloc(120)) == NULL) {
        /* if malloc() fails, bail out */
        fprintf(stderr, "malloc failed\n");
        exit(1);
    }

    printf("Type your name: ");
    fflush(stdout);
    gets(buffer);
    printf("Your name is %s\n", buffer);
}
```

See Also

arena, array, close, definitions, exit, fflush, malloc, STDIO

build — Command

Install COHERENT onto a hard disk

/etc/build

build installs COHERENT onto your hard disk. COHERENT runs **/etc/build** to install itself onto your hard disk. After installation, you should never have an occasion to run **build**.

See Also

commands

byte — Definition

A **byte** is a group of bits that encodes a character or a small-integer quantity. A byte, like a dollar, consists of eight bits.

The ANSI Standard defines the data type **char** as being equal to one byte. It defines all other data types as multiples of **char**.

See Also

bit, char, data formats, definitions, nybble

byte ordering — Technical information

Machine-dependent ordering of bytes

Byte ordering is the order in which a given machine stores successive bytes of a multi-byte data item. Different machines order bytes differently.

The following example displays a few simple examples of byte ordering:

```
main()
{
    union
    {
        char b[4];
        int i[2];
        long l;
    } u;
    u.l = 0x12345678L;
    printf("%x %x %x %x\n",
           u.b[0], u.b[1], u.b[2], u.b[3]);
    printf("%x %x\n", u.i[0], u.i[1]);
    printf("%lx\n", u.l);
}
```

When run on “big-endian” machines, such as the M68000 or the Z8000, the program gives the following results:

```
12 34 56 78
1234 5678
12345678
```

As you can see, the order of bytes and words from low to high memory is the same as is represented on the screen.

However, when this program is run on “little-endian” machines, such as the PDP-11, you see these results:

```
34 12 78 56
1234 5678
12345678
```

As you can see, the PDP-11 inverts the order of bytes within words in memory.

Finally, when the program is run on the i8086 you see these results:

```
78 56 34 12
5678 1234
12345678
```

The i8086 inverts both words and long words.

See Also

C language, canon.h, data formats, technical information

C

c — Command

Print multi-column output

c [*-l N*] [*-w N*] [*-012*]

c reads lines from the standard input and writes them in columns on the standard output. The longest input line and the width of the page determine how many columns will fit across the page.

c recognizes the following options:

- l N** Set the length of the page to *N* lines. **c** columnizes its output by pages when this option is used with mode 1 or mode 2.
- w N** Set the width of the page to *N* characters. The default is 80.
- 0** Multi-column mode 0. Order the fields horizontally across the page.
- 1** Multi-column mode 1 (default mode). Order the fields vertically down each column; the last column may be short.
- 2** Multi-column mode 2. Order the fields similarly to mode 1, but place blank fields in the last output line rather than the last column.

Options may also be given in the environmental variable **C**, separated by white space. Command line options override options in the environment. For example,

```
export C="-156 -w72 -2"
c -w80 <file1
```

has the same effect as

```
c -156 -w72 -2 -w80 <file1
```

This command sets the page width to 80 rather than to 72.

See Also

commands, **export**, **pr**

Diagnostics

c prints "out of memory" and returns an exit status of one if it cannot allocate enough memory to process its input.

C keywords — Overview

A **keyword** is a word that is reserved within C, and must not be used to name variables, functions, or macros. COHERENT recognizes the following C keywords:

alien	extern	signed
auto	float	sizeof
break	for	static
case	goto	struct
char	if	switch
const	int	typedef
continue	long	union
default	readonly	unsigned
do	register	void
double	return	volatile
else	short	while
enum		

In conformity with the ANSI standard, the keyword **entry** is no longer recognized. The keywords **const** and **volatile** are now recognized, but not implemented.

See Also

C language

C language — Overview

The following summarizes how COHERENT implements the C language.

Identifiers

Characters allowed: **A-Z, a-z, _, 0-9**

Case sensitive.

Number of significant characters in a variable name:

at compile time: **128**

at link time: **16**

C appends '_' to end of external identifiers

Reserved Identifiers (Keywords)

See C keywords, above.

Data Formats (bits)

char	8
unsigned char	8
double	64
float	32
int	16
unsigned int	16
long	32
unsigned long	32
pointer	16

Limits

Maximum bitfield size: 16 bits

Maximum number of cases in a switch: no formal limit

Maximum block nesting depth: no formal limit

Maximum parentheses nesting depth: no formal limit

Maximum structure size: 64 kilobytes

Preprocessor Instructions:

#define	#ifdef
#else	#ifndef
#elif	#include
#endif	#line
#if	#undef

Structure Name-Spaces

Supports both Berkeley and Kernighan-Ritchie conventions for structure in union.

Register Variables

Two available for ints
Two available for pointers

Function Linkage

Return values for ints: AX
Return values for longs: DX:AX
Return values for SMALL-model pointers: AX
Return values for LARGE-model pointers: DX:AX
Return values for doubles in DX:AX
Parameters pushed on stack in reverse order, chars and shorts pushed as words, longs and pointers pushed as longs, structures copied onto stack
Caller must clear parameters off stack
Stack frame linkage is done through SP register

Special Features and Optimizations

- Branch optimization is performed: this uses the smallest branch instruction for the required range.
- Unreached code is eliminated.
- Duplicate instruction sequences are removed.
- Jumps to jumps are eliminated.
- Multiplication and division by constant powers of two are changed to shifts when the results are the same.
- Sequences that can be resolved at compile time are identified and resolved.

See Also

argc, argv, C keywords, C preprocessor, header files, Lexicon, libraries, linker-defined symbols, main()

C preprocessor — Overview

Preprocessing encompasses all tasks that logically precede the translation of a program. The preprocessor processes headers, expands macros, and conditionally includes or excludes source code.

Directives

The C preprocessor recognizes the following directives:

#if	Include code if a condition is true
#elif	Include code if directive is true
#else	Include code if preceding directives fail
#endif	End of code to be included conditionally
#ifdef	Include code if a given macro is defined
#ifndef	Include code if a given macro is not defined
#define	Define a macro
#undef	Undefine a macro
#include	Read another file and include it
#line	Reset current line number

A preprocessing directive is always introduced by the '#' character. The '#' must be the first non-white space character on a line, but it may be preceded by white space and it may be separated from the directive name that follows it by one or more white space characters.

Preprocessing Operators

The Standard defines two operators that are recognized by the preprocessor: the "stringize" operator #, and the "token-paste" operator ##.

The operator # indicates that the following argument is to be replaced by a string literal; this literal names the preprocessing token that replaces the argument. For example, consider the macro:

```
#define display(x) show((long)(x), #x)
```

When the preprocessor reads the line

```
display(abs(-5));
```

it replaces it with the following:

```
show((long)(abs(-5)), "abs(-5)");
```

The ## operator performs "token pasting" — that is, it joins two tokens together, to create a single token. For example, consider the macro:

```
#define printvar(x) printf("%d\n", variable ## x)
```

When the preprocessor reads the line

```
printvar(3);
```

it translates it into:

```
printf("%d\n", variable3);
```

In the past, token pasting had been performed by inserting a comment between the tokens to be pasted. This no longer works.

Predefined Macros

The ANSI Standard describes the following macros that must be recognized by the preprocessor:

<code>--DATE--</code>	Date of translation
<code>--FILE--</code>	Source-file name
<code>--LINE--</code>	Current line within source file
<code>--STDC--</code>	Conforming translator and level
<code>--TIME--</code>	Time of translation

For more information on any one of these macros, see its entry.

Conditional Inclusion

The preprocessor will conditionally include lines of code within a program. The directives that include code conditionally are defined in such a way that you can construct a chain of inclusion directives to include exactly the material you want.

Macro Definition and Replacement

The preprocessor performs simple types of macro replacement. To define a macro, use the preprocessor directive `#define identifier value`. The preprocessor scans the translation unit for preprocessor tokens that match *identifier*; when one is found, the preprocessor substitutes *value* for it.

cpp

Under COHERENT, C preprocessing is done by the program `cpp`. The `cc` command runs `cpp` as the first step in compiling a C program. `cpp` can also be run by itself.

`cpp` reads each input *file*; it processes directives, and writes its product on `stdout`.

If the `-E` option is not used, `cpp` also writes into its output statements of the form `#line n filename`, so that the parser `cc0` can connect its error messages and debugger output with the original line numbers in your source files.

See the Lexicon entry on `cpp` for more information.

See Also

C language, `cc`, `cpp`

cabs() — Mathematics Function (libm)

Complex absolute value function

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double cabs(z) struct { double r, i; } z;
```

`cabs` computes the absolute value, or modulus, of its complex argument z . The absolute value of a complex number is the length of the hypotenuse of a right triangle whose sides are given by the real part r and the imaginary part i . The result is the square root of the sum of the squares of the parts.

Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for `acos`.

See Also

hypot(), mathematics library

cal — Command

Print a calendar

cal [*month*] [*year*]

cal prints a calendar for the specified *year* (by default, the current year), or for the given *month* if one is specified. If neither is specified, a calendar of the current month is printed. *year* must be between 1 and 9999. *month* may be either the month name (lower case, spelled out or first three letters) or a number between 1 and 12.

For example, try:

```
cal september 1752
```

See Also

commands

Notes

cal assumes that the Gregorian calendar was adopted on September 3, 1752, which is the date of its adoption throughout the British empire.

calendar — Command

Reminder service

calendar [-a]

calendar is the COHERENT system's "reminder service". It reads a user's **\$HOME** directory and looks for a file called **.calendar**. This file contains information organized by date. If **calendar** finds **.calendar**, it reads it and checks the date of each entry; if an event is scheduled to happen today or tomorrow, it prints it. Thus, you can use **calendar** to remind you of both one-time events (such as appointments) and yearly events (such as anniversaries).

The following gives an example of a **.calendar** file. Note that **calendar** understands different formats of dates:

```
Apr 16   Dave's birthday
7/6     Dad's birthday
Sep 26  Mom's birthday
Jun 30  Barry's birthday
10/4    Marianne's birthday
Jul 31  Anniversary!
Mar 16  Pot luck luncheon
```

Don't put year in, or it will only remind you for that year.
If you want to use year, make it appear as two numbers i.e. '91'

Each user can run **calendar** by embedding the command

```
calendar
```

in his **.profile**.

If you wish, you can run **calendar** automatically for all users on your system, by inserting it into file **/usr/lib/crontab**. In this case, **calendar** should be used with its **-a** option; this forces **calendar** to search every user's **\$HOME** directory for a **.calendar** file,

and mail the appointments it finds to that user.

Note that `calendar`'s definition of tomorrow understands weekends but not holidays; thus, if invoked on a Friday, it will return the events for that day and the following Saturday, Sunday, and Monday. If Monday is a holiday, however, you will not receive appointments for Tuesday.

See Also
commands

calling conventions — Technical Information

The following presents the calling conventions for COHERENT.

The design of the calling conventions had to take into account the fact that C does not require that the number of arguments passed to a function be the same as the number of arguments specified in the function's declaration. Routines with a variable number of arguments are not uncommon; for example, `printf` and `scanf` can take a variable number of arguments. Another consideration was the availability of register variables.

Therefore, COHERENT uses the following calling sequence. The function arguments are pushed onto the stack from the first, or rightmost, through the last, or leftmost. longs are pushed high-half first; this makes the word order compatible with the `dd` instruction. The function is then called with a near call. An `add` instruction after the call removes the arguments from the stack.

For example, the function call

```
int a;
long b;
char c;

foo()
{
    example(a, b, c);
}
```

generates the code

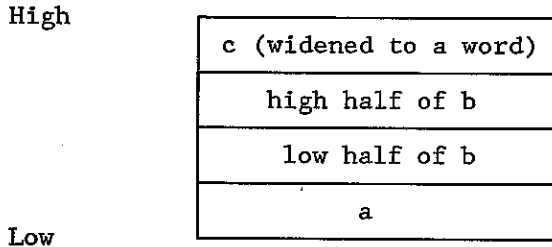
```
movb    al,c
cbw
push    ax
push    b+2
push    b
push    a
call    example_
add     sp,8
```

Note that an underbar character '_' has been appended to the function name. This serves two purposes. First, it makes it harder to accidentally call routines written in other languages. Second, it means that two routines with the same name can be called from C and another language in identical fashions.

The parameters and local variables in the called function are referenced as offsets from the bp register. The arguments begin at offset 8 and continue toward higher addresses,

whereas the local variables begin at offset -2 and continue toward lower addresses.

The `sp` register points the local variable with the lowest address. Thus, when `example_` is reached in the above model, the stack frame resembles the following:



Functions return **ints** in the `ax` register, **longs** in the `dx:ax` register pair, **pointers** in the `ax` register and **doubles** in `fpac_`. The following program

```
example(a, b, c)
int a, b, c;
{
    return (a * b - c);
}
```

when compiled with the `-VASM` option, produces the following assembly-language code:

```
.shri
.globl example_
example_:
    push    si
    push    di
    push    bp
    mov     bp, sp
    mov     ax, 10(bp)
    imul   8(bp)
    sub    ax, 12(bp)
    pop     bp
    pop     di
    pop     si
    ret
```

The runtime startup initializes the registers `cs`, `ds`, `es`, and `ss`, and the segment registers remain unchanged. Other registers may be overwritten.

COHERENT pushes function arguments as follows.

char	Widened to int , then pushed
int	Pushed in machine word order
long	Pushed high order word, then low-order word
float	Widened to double , then pushed
double	Pushed high order, then low order
struct	Pushed in memory order
union	Pushed in memory order

Functions return values as follows:

char	In al
int	In ax
long	In dx:ax
float	Same as double
double	In fpac_
struct	Pointer in ax
union	Pointer in ax
pointer	In ax

A function that returns a **struct** or **union** actually returns a pointer; the code generated for the function call block-moves the result to its destination. Functions that return a **float** or **double** return it in the global double fpac_.

For example, consider the call

```
example(i, l, c, cp);
```

where **i** is an **int**, **l** is a **long**, **c** is a **char**, **cp** is a pointer to a **char**, and **example** declares two automatic ints. After execution of the call and the prologue of **example**, the stack contains the following 11 words:

High

cp
c
high word of l
low word of l
i
return address
saved SI
saved DI
saved BP
space for auto 1
space for auto 2

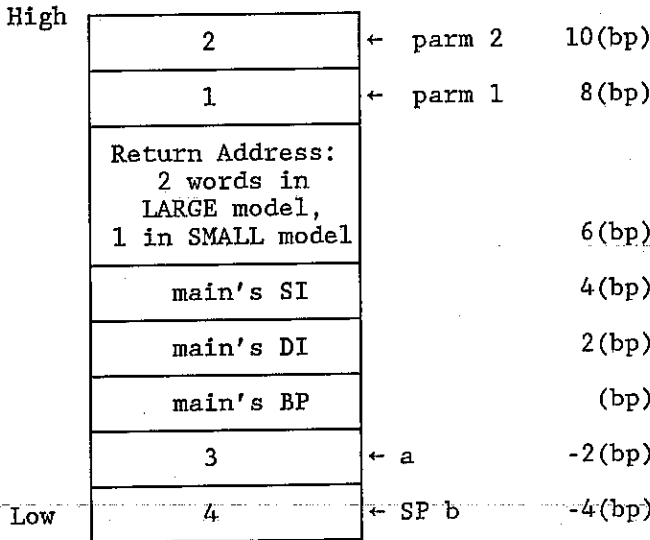
Low

The following example performs a simple function call:

```
main()
{
    example(1, 2); /* call sample routine */
}

example(p1, p2)
{
    int a, b;
    a = 3;
    b = 4;
}
```

When the function **example** is about to return, the stack appears as follows:



See Also

C language, technical information

calloc() – General Function (libc)

Allocate dynamic memory

char *calloc(*count, size*) unsigned *count, size*;

calloc is one of a set of routines that helps manage a program's arena. **calloc** calls **malloc** to obtain a block large enough to contain *count* items of *size* bytes each; it then initializes the block to zeroes. When this memory is no longer needed, you can return it to the free pool by using the function **free**.

calloc returns the address of the chunk of memory it has allocated, or NULL if it could not allocate memory.

Example

This example attempts to **calloc** a small portion of memory; it then reallocates it to demonstrate **realloc**.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    register char *ptr, *ptr2;
    extern char *calloc(), *realloc();
    unsigned count, size;

    count = 4;
    size = sizeof(char *);
```

```
if ((ptr = calloc(count, size)) != NULL)
    printf("%u blocks of size %u calloced\n",
           count, size);
else
    printf("Insuff. memory for %u blocks of size %u\n",
           count, size);
if ((ptr2 = realloc(ptr, (count*size) + 1)) != NULL)
    printf("1 block of size %u reallocated\n",
           (count*size)+1);
}
```

See Also

arena, **free()**, **general functions**, **malloc()**, **memok()**, **realloc()**, **setbuf()**

candaddr() – General Function (libc)

Convert a **daddr_t** to canonical format

```
#include <canon.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
void candaddr(s)
daddr_t s;
```

candaddr performs canonical conversion upon a **daddr_t**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For details on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

Example

For an example of this function, see **canon.h**.

See Also

canon.h, **general functions**

candev() – General Function (libc)

Convert a **dev_t** to canonical format

```
#include <canon.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
void candev(s)
dev_t s;
```

candev performs canonical conversion upon a **dev_t**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

See Also

canon.h, **general functions**

canino() – General Function (libc)

Convert an **ino_t** to canonical format

```
#include <canon.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
void canino(s)
ino_t s;
```

canino performs canonical conversion upon a **ino_t**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

See Also

canon.h, general functions

canint() — General Function (libc)

Convert an **int** to canonical format

```
#include <canon.h>
```

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
void canint(s)
```

```
int s;
```

canint performs canonical conversion upon a **int**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

See Also

canon.h, general functions

canlong() — General Function (libc)

Convert a **long** to canonical format

```
#include <canon.h>
```

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
void canlong(s)
```

```
long s;
```

canlong performs canonical conversion upon a **long**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

See Also

canon.h, general functions

canon.h — Header file

Portable layout of binary data

```
#include <canon.h>
```

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

The layout of binary data varies among machines. For example, the byte order of a 16-bit word on the PDP-11 is low-byte.high-byte, whereas on the Z8000 it is high-byte.low-byte.

To ensure that file systems can be ported among machines with differing byte orders, COHERENT uses a canonical layout of binary data. (The word “canonical” in this context means, “of or conforming to a general rule”.) Data not in primary memory (e.g., on disk or communications line) must conform to COHERENT’s canonical layout.

To insulate programs from the details of the difference between the ‘natural’ and canonical layouts, the COHERENT system provides a set of procedures to convert from one layout to another. They are as follows:

canshort()	Convert a short
canint()	Convert an int
canlong()	Convert a long
canvaddr()	Convert vaddr_t
cansize()	Convert fsize_t
candaddr()	Convert daddr_t
cantime()	Convert time_t
candev()	Convert dev_t
canino()	Convert ino_t

Each procedure takes an lvalue of the indicated type, converts it in place, and returns nothing. The argument should not have side-effects. Each procedure is its own inverse. Several procedures are designed for elements of file systems.

The file formats that contain canonical binary data and the commands that deal with them are as follows:

<i>Format</i>	<i>Commands</i>
ar.h	ar, ld, ranlib
dir.h	ls, tar
l.out.h	as, cc, db, ld, nm, size, strip

Any program that manipulates binary data within files must perform canonical conversion immediately upon input and immediately before output. The following fragment of the source code to the command **df** should be instructive:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <canon.h>
#include <filsys.h>
char    superb[BSIZE];
.
.
.
df(fs)
char *fs;
{
    register struct filsys *sbp = &superb;
    FILE *fp;
    daddr_t nfree;

    if ((fp = fopen(fs, "r")) == NULL) {
        perror(fs);
        return (1);
    }

    fseek(fp, (long)BSIZE, 0);
    if (fread(superb, sizeof superb, 1, fp) != 1) {
        fprintf(stderr, "%s: read error\n", fs);
        return (1);
    }
}
```

```

candaddr(sbp->s_tfree);
candaddr(sbp->s_fsize);
canshort(sbp->s_ysize);
nfree = sbp->s_tfree;

if (nfree > sbp->s_fsize-sbp->s_ysize || nfree < 0) {
    fprintf(stderr, "%s: bad free count\n", fs);
    return (1);
}

printf("%s: %ld\n", fs, nfree);
fclose(fp);
return (0);
}

```

*Files***<canon.h>***See Also*

ar.h, byte_ordering, candaddr(), candev(), canino(), canint(), canlong(), canshort(), cansize(), cantime(), canvaddr(), dir.h, l.out.h, header files

canshort() — General Function (libc)

Convert a short to canonical format

#include <canon.h>

#include <sys/types.h>

void canshort(s)

short s;

canshort performs canonical conversion upon a **short**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

Example

For an example of this function, see **canon.h**.

See Also

canon.h, general functions

cansize() — General Function (libc)

Convert an **fsize_t** to canonical format

#include <canon.h>

#include <sys/types.h>

void cansize(s)

size_t s;

cansize performs canonical conversion upon a **size_t**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

See Also

canon.h, general functions

cantime() – General Function (libc)

Convert a `time_t` to canonical format

```
#include <canon.h>
```

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
void cantime(s)
```

```
time_t s;
```

`cantime` performs canonical conversion upon a `time_t`. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see `canon.h`.

See Also

`canon.h`, general functions

canvaddr() – General Function (libc)

Convert a `vaddr_t` to canonical format

```
#include <canon.h>
```

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
void canvaddr(s)
```

```
vaddr_t s;
```

`canvaddr` performs canonical conversion upon a `vaddr_t`. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see `canon.h`.

See Also

`canon.h`, general functions

case – Command

Execute commands conditionally according to pattern

```
case token in
```

```
[ pattern [ | pattern ] ... ) sequence ;; ] ...
```

```
esac
```

`case` is a construct that used by the shell `sh`. It tells the shell to execute commands conditionally, according to a pattern. It tests the given *token* successively against each *pattern*, in the order given. It then executes the commands in the *sequence* corresponding to the first matching pattern. Optional `|` clauses specify additional patterns corresponding to a single *sequence*. If no *pattern* matches the *token*, the `case` construct executes no commands.

Each *pattern* can include text characters (which match themselves), special characters `?` (which matches any character except newline) and `*` (which matches any sequence of non-newline characters), and character classes enclosed in brackets `[]`; ranges of characters within a class may be separated by `-`. In particular, the last *pattern* in a `case` construct is often `*`, which will match any *token*.

The shell executes `case` directly.

See Also

`commands`, `sh`

case — C Keyword

Introduce entry in switch statement

The C keyword **case** is a label within a **switch** statement. For example:

```
while ((int = getchar()) != EOF)
    switch (foo) {
        case 'q':
        case 'Q':
            exit(0);
        case ' ':
            n++;
        default:
            break;
    }
```

case labels each of the three possibilities recognized by the **switch** statement: a space, 'q', and 'Q'. The statements that follow a **case** statement behave as if they were enclosed within braces.

Note that a **case** statement is simply a label: it sets a point to which the **switch** statement jumps, and execution continues from that point. Once a **switch** statement jumps to the point marked by a given **case** label, execution continues until an **exit**, **break**, or **return** is read, or the closing brace of the **switch** statement is encountered.

See Also

break, C keywords, **switch**

cast — Definition

The **cast** operation “coerces” a variable from one data type to another.

There are two reasons to cast a variable. The first is to convert a variable’s data into a form acceptable to a given function. For example, the function **hypot** takes two **doubles**. If the variables **leg_x** and **leg_y** are **floats**, the rules of C require that they be cast automatically to **double**. If the compiler did not do not do this, **hypot** would grab a **double**’s worth of memory: the four bytes of your **float**, plus four bytes of whatever happens to be sitting on the stack. The leads to results that are less than totally accurate.

The other reason to cast a variable is when you cast one type of pointer to another. For example,

```
char *foo;
int *bar;
bar = (int *)foo;
```

Although **foo** and **bar** are of the same length, you would cast **foo** in this instance to stop the C compiler from complaining about a type mismatch.

See Also

data formats, data types, definitions

cat — Command

Concatenate/print files

cat [**-u**] [*file ...*]

cat copies each *file* arguments to the standard output. A '-' tells **cat** to read the standard input. If no *file* is specified, **cat** reads the standard input.

The **-u** option makes the output unbuffered. Otherwise, **cat** buffers the output in units of the machine's disk block size (e.g., 512 bytes).

See Also

commands

Notes

If you redirect **cat**'s the output to one of its input files, it will loop forever, reading from the file the text that it has just written into it: in effect, **cat** will chase its own tail endlessly.

cc — Command

Compiler controller

cc [*compiler options*] *file ...* [*linker options*]

cc is the program that controls compilation of C programs. It guides files of source and object code through each phase of compilation and linking. **cc** has many options to assist in the compilation of C programs; in essence, however, all you need to do to produce an executable file from your C program is type **cc** followed by the name of the file or files that hold your program. It checks whether the file names you give it are reasonable, selects the right phase for each file, and performs other tasks that ease the compilation of your programs.

File Names

cc assumes that each *file* name that ends in **.c** or **.h** is a C program and passes it to the C compiler for compilation.

cc assumes that each *file* argument that ends in **.s** is in Mark Williams assembly language and processes it with the assembler **as**.

cc also passes all files with the suffixes **.o** or **.a** unchanged to the linker **ld**.

How cc Works

cc normally works as follows: First, it compiles or assembles the source files, naming the resulting object files by replacing the **.c** or **.s** suffixes with the suffix **.o**. Then, it links the object files with the C runtime startup routine and the standard C library, and leaves the result in file *file*. If only one object file is created during compilation, it is deleted after linking; however, if more than one object file is created, or if an object file of the same name existed before you began to compile, then the object file or files are not deleted.

Options

The following lists all of **cc**'s command-line options. **cc** passes some options through to the linker **ld** unchanged, and correctly interprets to it the options **-o** and **-u**.

A number of the options are esoteric and normally are not used when compiling a C program. The following are the most commonly used options:

- c** Compile only; do not link
 - f** Include floating-point **printf**
 - lname** Pass library *libname.a* to linker
 - o name** Call output file *name*
 - V** Print verbose listing of **cc**'s action
- A** MicroEMACS option. If an error occurs during compilation, **cc** automatically invokes the MicroEMACS screen editor. The error or errors are displayed in one window and the source code file in the other, with the cursor set to the line number indicated by the first error message. Typing **<ctrl-X>** moves to the next error, **<ctrl-X><** moves to the previous error. To recompile, close the edited file with **<ctrl-Z>**. Compilation will continue either until the program compiles without error, or until you exit from the editor by typing **<ctrl-U>** followed by **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**.
- B[*string*]**
Backup option. Use alternate versions of the compiler for **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc2**, and **cc3**. If *string* is supplied, **cc** prepends it to the names of the phases of the compiler to form the pathnames where these are found. Otherwise, **cc** prepends the name of the current directory. If a **-t** option was previously given, only the parts of the compiler specified by it are affected. Any number of **-B** and **-t** options may be used, with each **-t** option specifying the passes affected by the subsequent **-B** option. For example, the command
- ```
cc -tp2 -Bnew hello.c
```
- compiles **hello.c** using **newcc2** in place of the ordinarily used **/lib/cc2**, and using **newcpp** in place of the ordinarily used **/lib/cpp**.
- c**    Compile option. Suppress linking and the removal of the object files.
- Dname[=*value*]**  
Define *name* to the preprocessor, as if set by a **#define** directive. If *value* is present, it is used to initialize the definition.
- E**    Expand option. Run the C preprocessor **cpp** and write its output onto the standard output.
- f**    Floating point option. Include library routines that perform floating-point arithmetic. Because the floating-point routines require approximately five kilobytes of memory, the standard C library does not include them; the **-f** option tells the compiler to include them. If a program is compiled without the **-f** option but attempts to print a floating point number during execution by using the **e**, **f**, or **g** format specifications to **printf**, the message

You must compile with **-f** option for floating point  
will be printed and the program will exit.

**-I name**

Include option. Specify a directory the preprocessor should search for files given in **#include** directives, using the following criteria: If the **#include** statement reads

```
#include "file.h"
```

**cc** searches for **file.h** first in the source directory, then in the directory named in the **-Iname** option, and finally in the system's default directories. If the **#include** statement reads

```
#include <file.h>
```

**cc** searches for **file.h** first in the directories named in the **-Iname** option, and then in the system's default directories. Multiple **-Iname** options are executed in the order of their of appearance.

**-K** Keep option. Do not erase the intermediate files generated during compilation. Temporary files will be written into the current directory.

**-l name**

library option. Pass the name of a library to the linker. **cc** expands **-lname** into **/lib/libname.a**. If an alternative library prefix has been specified by the **-tl** and **-Bstring** options, then **-lname** expands to **stringlibname.a**. Note that this is a linker option, and so must appear at the end of the **cc** command line, or it will not be processed correctly.

**-M string**

Machine option. Use an alternate version of **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc1a**, **cc1b**, **cc2**, **cc3**, **as**, **lib\*.a**, and **crtso.o**, named by fixing *string* between the directory name and the pass and file names.

**-n** Instruct the linker **ld** to bind the output with separate shared and private segments, and which each starting on a separate hardware-segment boundary. This allows several processes to simultaneously use one copy of the shared segment. Note that programs linked with this option will run a little more slowly than if they were not so linked; however, if a program forks (e.g., **kermit**) or will be used by more than one user at a time (e.g., **MicroEMACS**), this slightly slower time will be more than offset by the program's being spared having to read an entire copy of itself from the disk.

**-N[p0123sdlrt]string**

Name option. Rename a specified pass to *string*. The letters **p0123sdlrt** refer, respectively, to **cpp**, **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc2**, **cc3**, the assembler, the linker, the libraries, the run-time start-up, and the temporary files.

**-o name**

Output option. Rename the executable file from the default to *name*. If this option is not used, the executable will be named after the first **.c** or **.o** file on the command line.

**-O** Optimize option. Run the code generated by the C compiler through the peephole optimizer. The optimizer pass is mandatory for the **i8086**, **Z8000**, and **M68000** compilers, and need not be requested. It is optional for the **PDP11** compiler, but is

recommended for all files except those that consist entirely of initialized tables of data.

**-q[p0123s]**

Quit option. Terminate compilation after running the specified pass. The letters **p0123s** refer, respectively, to **cpp**, **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc2**, **cc3**, and the assembler. For example, to terminate compilation after running the parser **cc0**, type **-q0**.

**-Q** Quiet option. Suppress all messages.

**-S** Suppress the object-writing and link phases, and invoke the disassembler **cc3**. This option produces an assembly-language version of a C program for examination, for example if a compiler problem is suspected. The assembly-language output file name replaces the **.c** suffix with **.s**. This is equivalent to the **-VASM** option.

**-t[p01ab23sdlrt]**

Take option. Use alternate versions of the compiler phases and other files specified in the following string. If no following string is given, the **cc** uses alternate version of every phase of the compiler, except the preprocessor. If the **-t** option is followed by a **-B** option, **cc** prepends the prefix string named in the **-B** option to the phases and files named in the **-t** option; otherwise, the it looks for the alternate forms in the current directory.

**-U name**

Undefine symbol *name*. Use this option to undefine symbols that the preprocessor defines implicitly, such as the name of the native system or machine.

**-V** Verbose option. **cc** prints onto the standard output a step-by-step description of each action it takes.

**Vstring**

Variant option. Toggle (i.e., turn on or off) the variant *string* during the compilation. Variants that are marked **on** are turned on by default. Options marked **Strict**: generate messages that warn of the conditions in question. **cc** recognizes the following variants:

**-VASM**

Output assembly-language code. Identical to **-S** option, above. It can be used with the **-VLINES** option, described below, to generate a line-numbered file of assembly language. Default is **off**.

**-VCOMM**

Permit **.com**-style data items. Default is **on**.

**-VFLOAT**

Include floating point **printf** routines. Same as **-f** option, above.

**-VLINES**

Generate line number information. Can be used with the option **-VASM**, described above, to generate assembly language output that uses line numbers. Default is **off**.

- VQUIET**  
Suppress all messages. Identical to **-Q** option. Default is **off**.
- VSBOOK**  
Strict: note deviations from *The C Programming Language*, ed. 1. Default is **off**.
- VSCCON**  
Strict: note constant conditional. Default is **off**.
- VSINU**  
Implement struct-in-union rules instead of Berkeley-member resolution rules. Default is **off**, i.e., Berkeley rules are the default.
- VSLCON**  
Strict: **int** constant promoted to **long** because value is too big. Default is **on**.
- VSMEMB**  
Strict: check use of structure/union members for adherence to standard rules of C. Default is **on**.
- VSNREG**  
Strict: register declaration reduced to auto. Default is **on**.
- VSPVAL**  
Strict: pointer value truncated. Default is **off**.
- VSRTVC**  
Strict: risky types in truth contexts. Default is **off**.
- VSTAT**  
Give statistics on optimization.
- VS**  
Turn on all strict checking. Default is **on**.
- VSUREG**  
Strict: note unused registers. Default is **off**.
- VSUVAR**  
Strict: note unused variables. Default is **on**.
- V3GRAPH**  
Translate ANSI trigraphs. Default is **off**.

*See Also*

**as**, C language, **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc2**, **cc3**, **commands**, **cpp**, **ld**  
*The C Language*, tutorial

**cc0** — Definition

**cc0** is the COHERENT *parser*. It parses C programs using the method of recursive descent and translates the program into a logical tree format.

*See Also*

**cc**, **cc1**, **cc2**, **cc3**, **cpp**, definitions

### **cc1** — Definition

**cc1** is the COHERENT code generator. This phase generates code from the trees created by the parser, **cc0**. The code generation is table driven, with entries for each operator and addressing mode.

*See Also*

**cc**, **cc0**, **cc2**, **cc3**, **cpp**, definitions

### **cc2** — Definition

**cc2** is the optimizer/object generator phase of COHERENT. It optimizes the code generated by **cc1**, and writes the object code. COHERENT uses multiple optimization algorithms. One optimizes jump sequences: it eliminates common code, optimizes span-dependent jumps, and removes jumps to jumps. The other function scans the generated code repeatedly to eliminate unnecessary instructions.

*See Also*

**cc**, **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc3**, **cpp**, definitions

### **cc3** — Definition

**cc3** is the output phase of COHERENT. It writes a file of assembly language rather than a relocatable object module. This phase is optional; it allows you to examine the code generated by the compiler. To produce an assembly-language output of a C program, use the **-S** option on the **cc** command line. For example,

```
cc -S foo.c
```

tells **cc** to produce a file of assembly language called **foo.s**, instead of an object module.

*See Also*

**cc**, **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc2**, **cpp**, definitions

### **cd** — Command

Change directory

**cd** *directory*

The shell **sh** keeps track of the directory in which the user is currently working. If a command is not specified by a complete path name beginning with '/', **sh** prefixes it with the name of the current working directory. **cd** changes the current working directory to *directory*. If no *directory* is specified, the directory named in the **\$HOME** environmental variable becomes the current working directory.

*See Also*

commands, **pwd**, **sh**

**ceil()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Set numeric ceiling

**#include <math.h>****double ceil(z) double z;**

`ceil` returns a double-precision floating point number whose value is the smallest integer greater than or equal to `z`.

*Example*The following example demonstrates how to use `ceil`:

```
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#define display(x) dodisplay((double)(x), #x)

dodisplay(value, name)
double value; char *name;
{
 if (errno)
 perror(name);
 else
 printf("%10g %s\n", value, name);
 errno = 0;
}

main()
{
 extern char *gets();
 double x;
 char string[64];
 for (;;) {
 printf("Enter number: ");
 if (gets(string) == NULL)
 break;
 x = atof(string);

 display(x);
 display(ceil(x));
 display(floor(x));
 display(fabs(x));
 display(sqrt(x));
 }
 putchar('\n');
}
```

*See Also***abs(), fabs(), floor(), frexp(), mathematics library**



**char** — C Keyword

**char** is a C data type. It is the smallest addressable unit of data. According to the ANSI Standard, a **char** consists of exactly one byte of storage; a byte, in turn, must be composed of at least eight bits. `sizeof(char)` returns one by definition, with all other data types defined as multiples thereof. All Mark Williams compilers sign-extend **char** when it is cast to a larger data type.

Under COHERENT, a **char** by default is signed.

*See Also*

**byte**, C keywords, data formats, unsigned

**chars.h** — Header File

Character definitions

`#include <chars.h>`

**chars.h** defines manifest constants for some commonly used characters.

*See Also*

header files

**chdir()** — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Change working directory

`chdir(directory) char *directory;`

The *working directory* (or *current directory*) is the directory from which the search for a file name begins if a path name does not begin with '/'. By convention, the working directory has the name '.'. **chdir** changes the working directory to the directory pointed to by *directory*. This change is in effect until the program exits or calls **chdir** again.

*See Also*

**cd**, **chmod()**, **chroot()**, COHERENT system calls, directory

*Diagnostics*

**chdir** returns zero if successful. It returns -1 if an error occurred, e.g., that *directory* does not exist, is not a directory, or is not searchable.

**check** — Command

Check file system

`check [-s] filesystem ...`

**check** uses the commands **icheck** and **dcheck** to check the consistency of a file system. It acts on each argument *filesystem* in turn; it calls first **icheck** and then **dcheck** on each to detect problems.

If **-s** is specified, **check** attempts to repair any errors automatically. You should first unmount the file system, if possible. If the root device is involved, you should be in single-user mode and then reboot the system immediately (without typing **sync**).

*See Also*

**clri, commands, icheck, ncheck, sync, umount**

*Notes*

Certain errors, such as duplicated blocks, cannot be fixed automatically. Decisions must be made by a human.

In earlier releases of COHERENT, **check** acted upon a default file system if none was specified.

This command has largely been superceded by **fsck**.

### **chgrp – Command**

Change the group owner of files

**chgrp** *group file ...*

**chgrp** changes the group owner of each *file* to *group*. The *group* may be specified by a valid group name or a valid numerical group identifier.

Only the superuser may use **chgrp**.

*Files*

**/etc/group** — Convert group name to group identifier

*See Also*

**chmod, chown, commands**

### **chmod() – COHERENT System Call (libc)**

Change file-protection modes

**#include <sys/stat.h>**

**chmod**(*file, mode*)

**char** \**file*; **int** *mode*;

**chmod** sets the mode bits for *file*. The mode bits include protection bits, the set-user-id bit, and the sticky bit.

*mode* is constructed from the logical OR of the following, which are defined symbolically in the header file **stat.h**:

|       |                                                 |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 04000 | Set user identifier                             |
| 02000 | Set group identifier                            |
| 01000 | Save file on swap device ("sticky bit")         |
| 00400 | Read permission for owner                       |
| 00200 | Write permission for owner                      |
| 00100 | Execute permission for owner                    |
| 00040 | Read permission for members of owner's group    |
| 00020 | Write permission for members of owner's group   |
| 00010 | Execute permission for members of owner's group |
| 00004 | Read permission for other users                 |
| 00002 | Write permission for other users                |
| 00001 | Execute permission for other users              |

For directories, some protection bits have a different meaning: write permission means files may be created and removed, whereas execute permission means that the directory may be searched.

The save-text bit (or "sticky bit") is a flag to the system when it executes a shared for of a load module. After the system runs the program, it leaves shared segments on the swap device to speed subsequent reinvocation of the program. Setting this bit is restricted to the superuser (to control depletion of swap space which might result from overuse).

Only the owner of a file or the superuser may change its mode.

*See Also*

**COHERENT system calls, creat()**

*Diagnostics*

**chmod** returns -1 for errors, such as *file* being nonexistent or the invoker being neither the owner nor the superuser.

## **chmod** — Command

Change the modes of a file

**chmod +modes file**

**chmod -modes file**

The COHERENT system assigns a *mode* to every file, to govern how users access the file. The mode grants or denies permission to read, write, or execute a file.

The mode grants permission separately to the owner of a file, to users from the owner's group, and to all other users. For a directory, execute permission grants or denies the right to search the directory, whereas write permission grants or denies the right to create and remove files.

In addition, the mode contains three bits that perform special tasks: the set-user-id bit, the set-group-id bit, and the save-text or "sticky" bit. See the Lexicon entry for the COHERENT system call **chmod** for more information on how to use these bits.

The command **chmod** changes the permissions of each specified *file* according to the given *mode* argument. *mode* may be either an octal number or a symbolic mode. Only the owner of a *file* or the superuser may change a file's mode. Only the superuser may set the sticky bit.

A symbolic mode may have the following form. No spaces should separate the fields in the actual *mode* specification.

*[which] how perm ... [, ...]*

*which* specifies the permissions that are affected by the command. It may consist of one or more of the following:

- a** All permissions, equivalent to **gou**
- g** Group permissions
- o** Other permissions
- u** User permissions

If no *which* is given, *a* is assumed and **chmod** uses the file creation mask, as described in **umask**.

*how* specifies how the permissions will be changed. It can be

|   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| = | Set permissions       |
| + | Add permissions       |
| - | Take away permissions |

*perm* specifies which permissions are changed. It may consist of one or more of the following:

|          |                           |
|----------|---------------------------|
| <b>g</b> | Current group permissions |
| <b>o</b> | Current other permissions |
| <b>r</b> | Read permission           |
| <b>s</b> | Setuid upon execution     |
| <b>t</b> | Save text (sticky bit)    |
| <b>u</b> | Current user permissions  |
| <b>w</b> | Write permission          |
| <b>x</b> | Execute permission        |

Multiple *how/perm* pairs have the same *which* applied to them. One or more specifications separated by commas tell **chmod** to apply each specification to the file successively.

The octal modes (see **stat**) are as follows:

|              |                             |
|--------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>04000</b> | Set user id upon execution  |
| <b>02000</b> | Set group id upon execution |
| <b>01000</b> | Sticky bit (save text)      |
| <b>00400</b> | Owner read permission       |
| <b>00200</b> | Owner write permission      |
| <b>00100</b> | Owner execute permission    |
| <b>00040</b> | Group read permission       |
| <b>00020</b> | Group write permission      |
| <b>00010</b> | Group execute permission    |
| <b>00004</b> | Others read permission      |
| <b>00002</b> | Others write permission     |
| <b>00001</b> | Others execute permission   |

An octal *mode* argument to **chmod** is obtained by *oring* the desired mode bits together.

### *Examples*

The first example below sets the owner's permissions to read + write + execute, and the group and other permissions to read + execute. The second example adds execute permission for everyone.

```
chmod u=rwx,go=rx file
chmod +x file
```

### *See Also*

**chgrp**, **chown**, **commands**, **ls**, **stat**, **umask**

**chown()** — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Change ownership of a file

**chown**(*file*, *uid*, *gid*)

**char** \**file* ;

**short** *uid*, *gid*;

**chown** changes the owner of *file* to user id *uid* and group id *gid*.

To change only the user id without changing the group id, **stat** should be used to determine the value of *gid* to pass to **chown**.

**chown** is restricted to the superuser, because granting the ordinary user the ability to change the ownership of files might circumvent file space quotas or accounting based upon file ownership.

**chown** returns -1 for errors, such as nonexistent *file* or the caller not being the superuser.

*See Also*

**chmod()**, COHERENT system calls, **passwd**, **stat()**

**chown** — Command

Change the owner of files

**chown** *owner file ...*

**chown** changes the owner of each *file* to *owner*. The *owner* may be specified by valid user name or a valid numerical user id.

Only the superuser may use **chown**.

*Files*

**/etc/passwd** — To convert user name to user id

*See Also*

**chgrp**, **chmod**, **commands**

**chroot()** — COHERENT System Call

Change process's root directory

**int** **chroot**(*directory*)

**char** \**directory*;

The *root directory* is the directory from which file-name searches commence when a path name begins with '/'. **chroot** changes the root directory to *directory* for the requesting process and all of its children.

Because of security problems, **chroot** is restricted to the superuser. It is sometimes useful for a system administrator; for example, to test a new system environment that resides on a mounted file system.

*See Also*

**chdir()**, COHERENT system calls, **fork()**

*Diagnostics*

**chroot** returns zero for a successful call. It returns -1 on errors, such as the caller not being the superuser or the *directory* being nonexistent or not a directory.

**clearerr() – STDIO Macro (stdio.h)**

Present stream status  
**#include** <stdio.h>  
**clearerr(fp) FILE \*fp;**

**clearerr** resets the error flag of the argument *fp*. If an error condition is detected by the related macro **ferror**, **clearerr** can be called to clear it.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **ferror**.

*See Also*

**ferror()**, **STDIO**

**close() – COHERENT System Call (libc)**

Close a file  
**int close(fd) int fd;**

**close** closes the file identified by the file descriptor *fd*, which was returned by **creat**, **dup**, **open**, or **pipe**. **close** also frees the associated file descriptor.

Because each program can have only a limited number of files open at any given time, programs that process many files should **close** files whenever possible. The function **exit** automatically calls **fclose** for all open files; however, the system call **\_exit** does not.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **open**.

*See Also*

**COHERENT system calls**, **creat()**, **open()**

*Diagnostics*

**close** returns -1 if an error occurs, such as its being handed a bad file descriptor; otherwise, it returns zero.

**clri – Command**

Clear i-node  
**/etc/clri filesystem inumber ...**

**clri** zeroes out each i-node with a given *inumber* on *filesystem*. *filesystem* is almost always a device-special file that corresponds to a disk device. The raw device should be used.

The user must have read and write permission on the *filesystem*. If the *inumber* corresponds to an open file, the **clri** has a very high probability of being ineffective: the system maintains in core memory a copy of all active i-nodes, and this copy will eventually be written out to disk, undoing the effects of **clri**. To counter this problem, unmount the file system before running **clri**. If the i-node is for the root file system, you must reboot the system immediately after running **clri**.

*See Also*

commands, dcheck, fsck, icheck, i-node, umount

**cmp** — Command

Compare bytes of two files

**cmp** [-ls] *file1 file2* [*skip1 skip2*]

**cmp** is a command that is included with COHERENT. It compares *file1* and *file2* character by character for equality. If *file1* is '-', **cmp** reads the standard input.

Normally, **cmp** notes the first difference and prints the line and character position, relative to any skips. If it encounters EOF on one file but not on the other, it prints the message "EOF on file*n*". The following are the options that can be used with **cmp**:

- l Note each differing byte by printing the positions and octal values of the bytes of each file.
- s Print nothing, but return the exit status.

If the skip counts are present, **cmp** reads *skip1* bytes on *file1* and *skip2* bytes on *file2* before it begins to compare the two files.

*See Also*

commands, diff, sh

*Diagnostics*

The exit status is zero for identical files, one for non-identical files, and two for errors, e.g., bad command usage or inaccessible file.

**COHERENT system calls** — Overview

The COHERENT system makes many services available to the C programmer. A programmer can use a COHERENT service through a system call. COHERENT's libraries include the following system calls:

|                 |                                             |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>_exit()</b>  | Terminate a process                         |
| <b>access()</b> | Check if file can be accessed in given mode |
| <b>acct()</b>   | Enable/disable process accounting           |
| <b>alarm()</b>  | Set a timer                                 |
| <b>brk()</b>    | Change size of data area                    |
| <b>chdir()</b>  | Change working directory                    |
| <b>chmod()</b>  | Change file protection modes                |
| <b>chown()</b>  | Change ownership of a file                  |
| <b>chroot()</b> | Change process's root directory             |
| <b>close()</b>  | Close a file                                |
| <b>creat()</b>  | Create/truncate a file                      |
| <b>dup()</b>    | Duplicate a file descriptor                 |
| <b>dup2()</b>   | Duplicate a file descriptor                 |
| <b>execl()</b>  | Execute a load module                       |
| <b>execle()</b> | Execute a load module                       |
| <b>execlp()</b> | Execute a load module                       |
| <b>execv()</b>  | Execute a load module                       |

|                  |                                           |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <b>execve()</b>  | Execute a load module                     |
| <b>execvp()</b>  | Execute a load module                     |
| <b>fork()</b>    | Create a new process                      |
| <b>fstat()</b>   | Find file attributes                      |
| <b>getegid()</b> | Get effective group id                    |
| <b>geteuid()</b> | Get effective user id                     |
| <b>getgid()</b>  | Get real group id                         |
| <b>getpid()</b>  | Get process id                            |
| <b>getuid()</b>  | Get real user id                          |
| <b>gtty()</b>    | Terminal initialization                   |
| <b>ioctl()</b>   | Device-dependent control                  |
| <b>kill()</b>    | Send a signal to a process                |
| <b>link()</b>    | Create a link                             |
| <b>lock()</b>    | Prevent process from swapping             |
| <b>lseek()</b>   | Set read/write position                   |
| <b>mknod()</b>   | Create a special file                     |
| <b>mount()</b>   | Mount a file system                       |
| <b>msgctl()</b>  | Control message operation                 |
| <b>msgget()</b>  | Get a message queue                       |
| <b>msgrcv()</b>  | Receive a message                         |
| <b>msgsnd()</b>  | Send a message                            |
| <b>open()</b>    | Open a file                               |
| <b>pause()</b>   | Wait for signal                           |
| <b>pipe()</b>    | Create a pipe                             |
| <b>ptrace()</b>  | Trace process execution                   |
| <b>read()</b>    | Read from a file                          |
| <b>sbrk()</b>    | Increase a program's data space           |
| <b>semctl()</b>  | Control semaphore operations              |
| <b>semget()</b>  | Get a set of semaphores                   |
| <b>semop()</b>   | Perform semaphore operations              |
| <b>setgid()</b>  | Set group id and user id                  |
| <b>setuid()</b>  | Set user id                               |
| <b>shmctl()</b>  | Control shared-memory operations          |
| <b>shmget()</b>  | Get the shared-memory segment             |
| <b>signal()</b>  | Specify disposition of a signal           |
| <b>sload()</b>   | Load device driver                        |
| <b>stat()</b>    | Find file attributes                      |
| <b>stime()</b>   | Set the time                              |
| <b>stty()</b>    | Device-dependent control                  |
| <b>suload()</b>  | Unload device driver                      |
| <b>sync()</b>    | Flush system buffers                      |
| <b>times()</b>   | Obtain process execution times            |
| <b>umask()</b>   | Set file creation mask                    |
| <b>umount()</b>  | Unmount a file system                     |
| <b>unlink()</b>  | Remove a file                             |
| <b>utime()</b>   | Change file access and modification times |
| <b>wait()</b>    | Await completion of child process         |
| <b>write()</b>   | Write to a file                           |



*See Also*

Lexicon, libraries, STDIO

**col** — Command

Remove reverse and half-line motions

**col** [ *-bdfx* ] [ *-pn* ]

The command **col** reads the standard input and writes to the standard output. It removes reverse and half-line motions from the output of **nroff** for the benefit of output devices that cannot perform them. It maintains an image of the page in memory and performs these motions virtually so they do not appear on the output.

**col** understands four escape sequences: **<esc> 7** for reverse line feed, **<esc> 8** for half reverse line feed, **<esc> 9** for half forward line feed, and **<esc> B** for a forward line feed. It removes **<esc>** (ASCII 033) from the input stream if it is followed by any other character.

Eight control characters besides **<esc>** are interpreted by **col**. Newline, return, space, backspace, and tab carry their usual meaning. **VT** (013) is an alternate form of reverse line feed. The characters **SO** (017) and **SI** (016) signal the start and end of text in an alternate character set. **col** remembers the character set for each character and uses **SO** and **SI** to distinguish them on the output. **col** removes all other control characters from the input stream.

**col** recognizes the following options:

- b** The output device cannot backspace. Only the last of a set of characters destined for a given position will appear.
- d** Double-space the output. This doubles the length of a document but preserves relative vertical spacing. The **-f** option has precedence.
- f** The output device can perform half-forward line feeds. Full lines appear single spaced with half lines between them. This is the only situation in which half forward line feeds appear in the output of **col** — reverse line motions never appear.
- x** Suppress the default conversion of white space to tabs on output.
- p n** Set the internal page buffer size to *n* full lines (default, 128).

If neither **-f** nor **-d** is chosen, **col** moves non-empty half lines to the next lower full line and pushes all later lines down one line. This can distort the appearance of the document.

*See Also*

ASCII, commands, nroff

*Notes*

Backing up past the start of a document or of the page buffer loses characters.

**com** — Device Driver

Device drivers for asynchronous serial lines

The COHERENT system has drivers for four asynchronous serial lines, **com1** through **com4**.

A serial line can be opened into any of four different “flavors”, as follows:

|               |                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <b>com?l</b>  | Interrupt driven, local mode (no modem control) |
| <b>com?r</b>  | Interrupt driven, remote mode (modem control)   |
| <b>com?pl</b> | Polled, local mode (no modem control)           |
| <b>com?pr</b> | Polled, remote mode (modem control)             |

“Local mode” means that the line will have a terminal plugged into it, to directly access the computer. “Modem control” means that the line will have a modem plugged into it. Modem control is enabled on a serial line by resetting the modem control bit (bit 7) in the minor number for the device. This allows the system to generate a hangup signal when then modem indicates loss of carrier by dropping DCD (Data Carrier Detect). A modem line should always have its DSR, DCD and CTS pins connected. If left hanging, spurious transitions can cause severe system thrashing. To disable modem control on a given serial line, use the minor device which has the modem control bit set (bit 7). An **open** to a modem-control line will block until a carrier is detected (DCD goes true).

“Interrupt mode” means that the port can generate an interrupt to attract the attention of the COHERENT system; “polled mode” means that the port cannot generate an interrupt, but must be checked (or “polled”) constantly by the COHERENT system to see if activity has occurred on it.

The COHERENT system uses two device drivers to manage serial lines: one driver manages COM1 and COM3, and the other manages COM2 and COM4. Due to limitations in the design of the ports, you can enable interrupts on either COM1 or COM3 (or on COM2 or COM4), but not both. If you wish to use both ports simultaneously, one must be run in polled mode. For example, if you wish to open all four serial lines, you can open two of the lines in interrupt mode: you can open either COM1 or COM3 in interrupt mode, and you can open either COM2 or COM4 in interrupt mode. The other two lines must be opened in polled mode.

Opening a device in polled mode consumes many CPU cycles, based upon the speed of the highest baud rate requested. For example, on a 20 MHz 80386-based machine, polling at 9600-baud was found to consume about 15% of the CPU time. As only one device can use the interrupt line at any given time, the best approach is to make the high-speed line of the pair interrupt driven and open the low-speed or less-frequently used line in polled mode. However, if you enable a polled line for logins, the port is open and will be polled as long as the port remains open (enabled). Thus, even if a port is not in use, the fact that it has a **getty** on it consumes CPU cycles. As a rule of thumb, try and **open** a port in interrupt mode. If you cannot, use the polled version.

If you intend to use a modem on your serial port, you must insure that the DCD signal from the modem actually *follows* the state of carrier detect. Some modems allow the user to “strap” or set the DCD signal so that it is always asserted (true). This incorrect setup will cause COHERENT to think that the modem is “connected” to a remote modem, even when there is no such connection.

In addition, if you wish to allow remote logins to your COHERENT system via your modem, you must insure that the modem does **not** echo any commands or status information. Failure to do so will result in severe system thrashing due to the **getty** or **login** processes endlessly “talking” to your modem.

*See Also*

**com1, com2, com3, com4, device drivers**

*Diagnostics*

An attempt to open a non-existent device will generate error messages. This can occur if hardware is absent or not turned on.

## **com1 – Device Driver**

Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM1

**/dev/com1** is the COHERENT system’s standard interface to asynchronous serial line COM1. The interface is assigned major device 5, and is accessed as a character-special device. The I/O address for the corresponding 8250 SIO is 0x3F8 (COM1). **com1** generates interrupt IRQ4.

Four versions of device **com1** are in directory **/dev**, as follows:

| <i>Device Name</i> | <i>Major</i> | <i>Minor</i> | <i>I/O Type</i> | <i>Modem Control?</i> |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| <b>/dev/com1l</b>  | 5            | 128          | Interrupts      | No                    |
| <b>/dev/com1r</b>  | 5            | 0            | Interrupts      | Yes                   |
| <b>/dev/com1pl</b> | 5            | 192          | Polled          | No                    |
| <b>/dev/com1pr</b> | 5            | 64           | Polled          | Yes                   |

For details on how these versions differ, see the entry for **com**.

*Files*

**/dev/com1l** — Interrupt-driven, non-modem (local) line

**/dev/com1r** — Interrupt-driven, modem (non-local) line

**/dev/com1pl** — Polled, non-modem (local) line

**/dev/com1pr** — Polled, modem (non-local) line

*See Also*

**com, com3, stty**

## **com2 – Device Driver**

Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM2

**/dev/com2** is the COHERENT system’s standard interface to asynchronous serial line COM2. The interface is assigned major device 6, and is accessed as a character-special device. The I/O address for the corresponding 8250 SIO is 0x2F8 (COM2). **com2** generates interrupt IRQ3.

Four versions of device **com2** are in directory **/dev**, as follows:

| <i>Device Name</i> | <i>Major</i> | <i>Minor</i> | <i>I/O Type</i> | <i>Modem Control?</i> |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| <b>/dev/com2l</b>  | 6            | 128          | Interrupts      | No                    |
| <b>/dev/com2r</b>  | 6            | 0            | Interrupts      | Yes                   |
| <b>/dev/com2pl</b> | 6            | 192          | Polled          | No                    |
| <b>/dev/com2pr</b> | 6            | 64           | Polled          | Yes                   |

For details on how these differ, see the entry for **com**.

#### *Files*

**/dev/com2l** — Interrupt-driven, non-modem (local) line  
**/dev/com2r** — Interrupt-driven, modem (non-local) line  
**/dev/com2pl** — Polled, non-modem (local) line  
**/dev/com2pr** — Polled, modem (non-local) line

#### *See Also*

**com**, **com4**, **stty**

### **com3 — Device Driver**

Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM3

**/dev/com3** is the COHERENT system's standard interface to asynchronous serial line COM3. The interface is assigned major device 5, and is accessed as a character-special device. The I/O address for the corresponding 8250 SIO is 0x3E8 (COM3). **com3** generates interrupt IRQ4.

Four versions of device **com3** are in directory **/dev**, as follows:

| <i>Device Name</i> | <i>Major</i> | <i>Minor</i> | <i>I/O Type</i> | <i>Modem Control?</i> |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| <b>/dev/com3l</b>  | 5            | 129          | Interrupts      | No                    |
| <b>/dev/com3r</b>  | 5            | 1            | Interrupts      | Yes                   |
| <b>/dev/com3pl</b> | 5            | 193          | Polled          | No                    |
| <b>/dev/com3pr</b> | 5            | 65           | Polled          | Yes                   |

For details on how these differ, see the entry for **com**.

#### *Files*

**/dev/com3l** — Interrupt-driven, non-modem (local) line  
**/dev/com3r** — Interrupt-driven, modem (non-local) line  
**/dev/com3pl** — Polled, non-modem (local) line  
**/dev/com3pr** — Polled, modem (non-local) line

#### *See Also*

**com**, **com1**, **stty**

### **com4 — Device Driver**

Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM4

**/dev/com4** is the COHERENT system's standard interface to asynchronous serial line COM4. The interface is assigned major device 6, and is accessed as a character-special device. The I/O address for the corresponding 8250 SIO is 0x2E8 (COM4). **com4** generates interrupt IRQ3.

Four versions of device **com4** are in directory **/dev**, as follows:

| <i>Device Name</i> | <i>Major</i> | <i>Minor</i> | <i>I/O Type</i> | <i>Modem Control?</i> |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| <b>/dev/com4l</b>  | 6            | 129          | Interrupts      | No                    |
| <b>/dev/com4r</b>  | 6            | 1            | Interrupts      | Yes                   |
| <b>/dev/com4pl</b> | 6            | 193          | Polled          | No                    |
| <b>/dev/com4pr</b> | 6            | 65           | Polled          | Yes                   |

For details on how these differ, see the entry for **com**.

### *Files*

**/dev/com4l** — Interrupt-driven, non-modem (local) line  
**/dev/com4r** — Interrupt-driven, modem (non-local) line  
**/dev/com4pl** — Polled, non-modem (local) line  
**/dev/com4pr** — Polled, modem (non-local) line

### *See Also*

**com, com2, stty**

## **comm** — Command

Print common lines

**comm** [ -123 ] *file1 file2*

The command **comm** prints the lines unique to *file1* in the first column, the lines unique to *file2* in the second column, and the lines common to both in the third. Both *file1* and *file2* should be sorted in ASCII order. Any or all columns may be suppressed by indicating the column or columns to suppress in the optional flag. The file **'.'** means standard input.

### *See Also*

**cmp, commands, diff, sort, uniq**

## **commands** — Overview

The following lists the commands included with COHERENT. The command name is given on the left and a description on the right.

|                 |                                                              |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ac</b>       | Summarize login accounting information                       |
| <b>accton</b>   | Enable/disable process accounting                            |
| <b>ar</b>       | The librarian/archiver                                       |
| <b>as</b>       | Mark Williams assembler                                      |
| <b>at</b>       | Execute commands at given time                               |
| <b>awk</b>      | Report generation, pattern scanning, and processing language |
| <b>bad</b>      | Maintain bad block list                                      |
| <b>badscan</b>  | Examine a device for bad blocks                              |
| <b>banner</b>   | Print large sized letters                                    |
| <b>basename</b> | Strip file name                                              |
| <b>bc</b>       | Interactive calculator with arbitrary precision              |
| <b>break</b>    | Exit from shell construct                                    |
| <b>build</b>    | Install COHERENT onto a hard disk                            |
| <b>c</b>        | Print multi-column output                                    |

|                 |                                                     |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>cal</b>      | Print a calendar                                    |
| <b>calendar</b> | Electronic reminder service                         |
| <b>case</b>     | Execute commands conditionally according to pattern |
| <b>cat</b>      | Concatenate/print files                             |
| <b>cc</b>       | Compiler controller                                 |
| <b>cd</b>       | Change directory                                    |
| <b>check</b>    | Check file system                                   |
| <b>chgrp</b>    | Change the group owner of files                     |
| <b>chmod</b>    | Change the modes of a file                          |
| <b>chown</b>    | Change ownership of a file                          |
| <b>clri</b>     | Clear i-node                                        |
| <b>cmp</b>      | Compare bytes of two files                          |
| <b>col</b>      | Remove reverse and half line motions                |
| <b>comm</b>     | Print common lines                                  |
| <b>compress</b> | Compress a file                                     |
| <b>continue</b> | Terminate current iteration of shell construct      |
| <b>conv</b>     | Numeric base converter                              |
| <b>cp</b>       | Copy a file                                         |
| <b>cpp</b>      | C preprocessor                                      |
| <b>cpdir</b>    | Copy directory hierarchy                            |
| <b>crypt</b>    | Encrypt/decrypt text                                |
| <b>date</b>     | Print/set the date and time                         |
| <b>db</b>       | Assembler-level symbolic debugger                   |
| <b>dc</b>       | Desk calculator                                     |
| <b>dd</b>       | File conversion                                     |
| <b>deroff</b>   | Remove text formatting control information          |
| <b>df</b>       | Measure free space on disk                          |
| <b>diff</b>     | Summarize differences between two files             |
| <b>diff3</b>    | Summarize differences among three files             |
| <b>dos</b>      | Transfer files to/from an MS-DOS file system        |
| <b>drvld</b>    | Load loadable drivers into memory                   |
| <b>du</b>       | Summarize disk usage                                |
| <b>dump</b>     | File system dump                                    |
| <b>dumpdate</b> | Print dump dates                                    |
| <b>dumpdir</b>  | Print the directory of a dump                       |
| <b>echo</b>     | Repeat/expand an argument                           |
| <b>ed</b>       | Interactive line editor                             |
| <b>egrep</b>    | Extended pattern search                             |
| <b>epson</b>    | Print a file on an Epson printer                    |
| <b>exec</b>     | Execute command directly                            |
| <b>eval</b>     | Evaluate arguments                                  |
| <b>exit</b>     | Exit from a noninteractive shell                    |
| <b>expr</b>     | Compute a command line expression                   |
| <b>factor</b>   | Factor a number                                     |
| <b>false</b>    | Unconditional failure                               |
| <b>file</b>     | Name a file's type                                  |
| <b>find</b>     | Search for files satisfying a pattern               |
| <b>fixstack</b> | Alter size of a program's stack                     |
| <b>fdformat</b> | Format a floppy disk                                |
| <b>fnkey</b>    | Set a function key                                  |

|                |                                                           |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>for</b>     | Execute commands for tokens in list                       |
| <b>fortune</b> | Print random selected, hopefully humorous, text           |
| <b>from</b>    | Generate list of numbers                                  |
| <b>fsck</b>    | Check and repair file systems interactively               |
| <b>grep</b>    | Pattern search                                            |
| <b>head</b>    | Print the beginning of a file                             |
| <b>help</b>    | Print concise description of command                      |
| <b>hp</b>      | Prepare files for HP LaserJet-compatible printer          |
| <b>hpd</b>     | Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer spooler daemon           |
| <b>hpr</b>     | Send to Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer spooler          |
| <b>hpskip</b>  | Abort/restart current listing on Hewlett-Packard LaserJet |
| <b>icheck</b>  | i-node consistency check                                  |
| <b>if</b>      | Conditional command execution                             |
| <b>install</b> | Install a COHERENT update                                 |
| <b>join</b>    | Join two data bases                                       |
| <b>kermit</b>  | Remote system communication and file transfer             |
| <b>kill</b>    | Signal a process                                          |
| <b>lc</b>      | Categorize files in a directory                           |
| <b>ld</b>      | Link relocatable object files                             |
| <b>lex</b>     | Lexical analyzer generator                                |
| <b>ln</b>      | Create a link to a file                                   |
| <b>login</b>   | Log in or change user name                                |
| <b>look</b>    | Find matching lines in a sorted file                      |
| <b>lpr</b>     | Send to line printer spooler                              |
| <b>lpskip</b>  | Terminate/restart current line printer listing            |
| <b>ls</b>      | List directory's contents                                 |
| <b>m4</b>      | Macro processor                                           |
| <b>mail</b>    | Computer mail                                             |
| <b>make</b>    | Program building discipline                               |
| <b>man</b>     | Print online manual sections                              |
| <b>me</b>      | MicroEMACS screen editor                                  |
| <b>mesg</b>    | Permit/deny messages from other users                     |
| <b>mkdir</b>   | Create a directory                                        |
| <b>mkfs</b>    | Make a new file system                                    |
| <b>mknod</b>   | Make a special file or named pipe                         |
| <b>mount</b>   | Mount a file system                                       |
| <b>msg</b>     | Send a brief message to other users                       |
| <b>msgs</b>    | Read messages intended for all COHERENT users             |
| <b>mv</b>      | Rename files or directories                               |
| <b>ncheck</b>  | Print file names corresponding to i-numbers               |
| <b>newgrp</b>  | Change to a new group                                     |
| <b>newusr</b>  | Add new user to COHERENT system                           |
| <b>nm</b>      | Print a program's symbol table                            |
| <b>nroff</b>   | Text processor                                            |
| <b>od</b>      | Print an octal dump of a file                             |
| <b>passwd</b>  | Set/change login password                                 |
| <b>phone</b>   | Print numbers and addresses from phone directory          |
| <b>pr</b>      | Paginate and print files                                  |
| <b>prep</b>    | Produce a word list                                       |
| <b>ps</b>      | Print process status                                      |

|                   |                                                   |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <b>pwd</b>        | Print the name of the current directory           |
| <b>quot</b>       | Summarize file-system usage                       |
| <b>ranlib</b>     | Create index for library                          |
| <b>read</b>       | Assign values to shell variables                  |
| <b>reboot</b>     | Reboot the COHERENT system                        |
| <b>restor</b>     | Restore file system                               |
| <b>rev</b>        | Reverse text in lines of files                    |
| <b>rm</b>         | Remove files                                      |
| <b>rmdir</b>      | Remove directories                                |
| <b>sa</b>         | Process accounting                                |
| <b>scat</b>       | Print text files one screenful at a time          |
| <b>sed</b>        | Stream editor                                     |
| <b>set</b>        | Set shell option flags and positional parameters  |
| <b>sh</b>         | Command language interpreter                      |
| <b>shift</b>      | Shift positional parameters                       |
| <b>shutdown</b>   | Shut down the COHERENT system                     |
| <b>size</b>       | Print size of an object file                      |
| <b>sleep</b>      | Stop executing for a specified time               |
| <b>sort</b>       | Sort lines of text                                |
| <b>spell</b>      | Find spelling errors                              |
| <b>split</b>      | Split a large file into smaller files             |
| <b>strip</b>      | Strip tables from executable file                 |
| <b>stty</b>       | Set/print terminal modes                          |
| <b>su</b>         | Substitute user id, become superuser              |
| <b>sum</b>        | Print checksum of a file                          |
| <b>sync</b>       | Flush system buffers                              |
| <b>tail</b>       | Print the end of a file                           |
| <b>tar</b>        | Tape archive manager                              |
| <b>tee</b>        | Branch pipe output                                |
| <b>test</b>       | Evaluate conditional expression                   |
| <b>time</b>       | Time the execution of a command                   |
| <b>times</b>      | Obtain process execution times                    |
| <b>touch</b>      | Update modification time of a file                |
| <b>tr</b>         | Translate characters                              |
| <b>trap</b>       | Execute command on receipt of signal              |
| <b>troff</b>      | Proportional-spaced typesetting                   |
| <b>true</b>       | Unconditional success                             |
| <b>tsort</b>      | Topological sort                                  |
| <b>tty</b>        | Print the user's terminal name                    |
| <b>ttystat</b>    | Get terminal status                               |
| <b>typo</b>       | Detect possible typographical and spelling errors |
| <b>umount</b>     | Set file creation mask                            |
| <b>uncompress</b> | Uncompress a file                                 |
| <b>uniq</b>       | Remove/count repeated lines in a sorted file      |
| <b>units</b>      | Convert measurements                              |
| <b>unmkfs</b>     | Create a prototype file system                    |
| <b>until</b>      | Execute commands repeatedly                       |
| <b>uucico</b>     | Connect to a remote system                        |
| <b>uucp</b>       | Copy a file to or from a remote system            |
| <b>uudecode</b>   | Decode a transmitted UUCP file                    |



|                 |                                                    |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>uuencode</b> | Encode a transmitted UUCP file                     |
| <b>uustall</b>  | Install UUCP                                       |
| <b>uuname</b>   | Print names of recognized systems                  |
| <b>uutouch</b>  | Force polling of a remote site                     |
| <b>uuwatch</b>  | Monitor operation of UUCP                          |
| <b>uuxqt</b>    | Execute file as requested by remote system         |
| <b>wait</b>     | Await completion of background process             |
| <b>wall</b>     | Send a message to all logged in users              |
| <b>wc</b>       | Count words, lines, and characters in files        |
| <b>while</b>    | Execute commands repeatedly                        |
| <b>who</b>      | Print who is logged in                             |
| <b>write</b>    | Conduct interactive conversation with another user |
| <b>yacc</b>     | Parser generator                                   |
| <b>yes</b>      | Print infinitely many responses                    |
| <b>zcat</b>     | Concatenate a compressed file                      |

For more information on any of these commands, see its entry within the Lexicon.

*See Also*

Lexicon

## compress — Command

Compress a file

**compress** [ *file ...* ]

**compress** compresses a file using the Lempel-Ziv algorithm. With text files and archives, it often can achieve 50% rate of compression.

If one or more *files* are specified on the command, **compress** compresses them and appends the suffix **.Z** onto the end of each compressed file's name. If no *file* is specified on the command line, **compress** compresses text from the standard input and writes the compressed text to the standard output.

*See Also*

commands, uncompress, zcat

## con.h — Header File

Configure device drivers

**#include** <con.h>

The header file **con.h** gives the configuration for each device driver included with the COHERENT system. Each driver is defined using the structure **CON**, which is declared in **con.h**.

*See Also*

header files, sload()

## console — Device Driver

Console device driver

**/dev/console** is the device driver for the console of a COHERENT system on the IBM AT. It is assigned major device number 2 and minor device number 0.

`/dev/console` interprets escape sequences in console output to control output on the console monitor. These escape sequences are compatible with ANSI X3.25. Thus, they are similar to those used by the DEC VT-100 and VT-220 terminals.

The special sequences include the following:

- `<esc> =` Enter alternate keypad mode.
- `<esc>>` Exit alternate keypad mode.
- `<esc>n` Print the corresponding special graphics character.
- `<esc>7` Save the current cursor position.
- `<esc>8` Restore the previously saved cursor position.
- `<esc>c` Reset to power-up configuration
- `<esc>D` Move the cursor down one line without changing the column position. This command moves the scrolling region text up and inserts blank lines if required.
- `<esc>E` Move the cursor to the first column of the next line. This command move the scrolling region down and inserts blank line if required.
- `<esc>M` Move the cursor up one line without changing column position
- `<esc>[ A` Cursor up; stop at top of page.
- `<esc>[ B` Cursor down; stop at bottom edge of scrolling region.
- `<esc>[ C` Cursor right. Stop at right bottom corner of scrolling region.
- `<esc>[ D` Cursor left.
- `<esc>[ E` Cursor next line. Move scrolling region up and insert a blank line if required.
- `<esc>[ F` Move scrolling region text down and insert a blank line if required.
- `<esc>[ n G` Move the cursor to the *n*th column of the current line.
- `<esc>[ n;m H` Move the cursor to position *m n*. Position is relative to the scrolling region.
- `<esc>[ I` Move the cursor position to the next horizontal tabulation stop.
- `<esc>[ n J` Erase display:
  - `0` Erase from cursor to end of screen.
  - `1` Erase from beginning of screen to cursor.
  - `2` Erase the entire screen.
- `<esc>[ n K` Erase line:
  - `0` Erase from cursor to end of line.
  - `1` Erase from beginning of line to cursor.
  - `2` Erase entire line.

- <esc>[ L** Insert a line.
- <esc>[ M** Delete a line.
- <esc>[ n O** Erase scrolling region:
- 0** Erase from cursor to end of scrolling region.
  - 1** Erase from beginning of scrolling region to cursor.
  - 2** Erase entire scrolling region. Reposition cursor at top left corner of scrolling region.
- <esc>[ S** Scroll the characters in the scrolling region up one line. The bottom of the scrolling region is cleared to blanks.
- <esc>[ T** Scroll the characters in the scrolling region down one line. The top line of the scrolling region is cleared to blanks.
- <esc>[ Z** Move the cursor backwards to the last tabulation stop.
- <esc>[ n ‘** Move the cursor to column *n* of the current line.
- <esc>[ n a** Move the cursor forward *n* columns in the current line.
- <esc>[ n d** Move the cursor to row *n* of the display.
- <esc>[ n e** Move the cursor down *n* rows.
- <esc>[ n;m f** Move the cursor to column *m* of row *n* in the display.
- <esc>[ n;m g** Position cursor to column *m* of line *n*. Positioning is relative to the scrolling region.
- <esc>[ n m** Select graphics rendition:
- 0** All attributes off.
  - 1** Bold intensity.
  - 4** Underscore on.
  - 5** Blink on.
  - 7** Reverse video.
  - 30** Black foreground.
  - 31** Red foreground.
  - 32** Green foreground.
  - 33** Brown foreground.
  - 34** Blue foreground.
  - 35** Magenta foreground.
  - 36** Cyan foreground.
  - 37** White foreground.
  - 40** Black background.
  - 41** Red background.
  - 42** Green background.
  - 43** Brown background.
  - 44** Blue background.
  - 45** Magenta background.
  - 46** Cyan background.

|    |                   |
|----|-------------------|
| 47 | White background. |
| 50 | Black border.     |
| 51 | Red border.       |
| 52 | Green border.     |
| 53 | Brown border.     |
| 54 | Blue border.      |
| 55 | Magenta border.   |
| 56 | Cyan border.      |
| 57 | White border.     |

**<esc>[ n;m r** Display lines *n* through *m* become the scrolling region.

**<esc>[ n v** Select cursor rendition:

|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| 0 | Cursor visible.   |
| 1 | Cursor invisible. |

**<esc>[?4h** Enable smooth scrolling. This eliminates snow at the expense of speed.

**<esc>[?4l** Disable smooth scrolling (default).

**<esc>[?7h** Enable wraparound. Typing past column 80 moves the cursor to the first column of the next line, scrolling if necessary.

**<esc>[?7l** Disable wraparound. The cursor will not move past column 80. This is useful if the screen is being used as a block mode interface.

**<esc>‘** Disable manual input. Terminal “beeps” (outputs **<ctrl-G>**) when a key is typed on the keyboard. Interrupt and quit signals are still passed to the terminal process. Input may be renabled via **<esc>c** (power up reset) or **<esc>b** (enable manual input).

**<esc>b** Enable keyboard input that has been disabled by **<esc>‘** (disable manual input).

**<esc>t** Enter keypad-shifted mode.

**<esc>u** Exit keypad-shifted mode.

The console keyboard sends the expected ASCII characters for the usual alphabetic, numeric, and punctuation keys. The numeric keypad normally sends editing escape sequences, as described below. When shifted or in num-lock mode, it sends ‘0’ to ‘9’ and ‘.’ instead. In num-lock mode (i.e., when the **<num-lock>** key is depressed, **<shift>** restores the normal escape sequences. In alternate-keypad mode, the numeric keypad sends “**<esc>? p**” to “**<esc>? y**” for ‘0’ to ‘9’ and “**<esc>? n**” for ‘.’.

**<home>** Send “cursor home” (**<esc>[ H**).

**<up>** Send “cursor up” (**<esc>[ A**).

**<pg up>** Send (**<esc>[ V**).

**<left>** Send “cursor left” (**<esc>[ D**).

|                      |                                                     |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>&lt;right&gt;</b> | Send "cursor right" (<esc>[ C).                     |
| <b>&lt;end&gt;</b>   | Send cursor to bottom left of screen (<esc>[ 24 H). |
| <b>&lt;down&gt;</b>  | Send "cursor down" (<esc>[ B).                      |
| <b>&lt;pg dn&gt;</b> | Move cursor to previous page (<esc>[ U).            |
| <b>&lt;ins&gt;</b>   | Toggle insert mode (<esc>[ @).                      |
| <b>&lt;del&gt;</b>   | Delete the character at the cursor (<esc>[ P).      |

The effects of the remaining keys are described below:

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>F1-F10</b>              | Send <esc>[ 1 x ... <esc>[ 9 x, <esc>[ 0 x.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>&lt;alt&gt;F1-F10</b>   | Send <esc>[ 1 y ... <esc>[ 9 y, <esc>[ 0 y.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>&lt;esc&gt;</b>         | Mark the beginning of an escape sequence; <esc><esc> sends ASCII ESC.                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>&lt;tab&gt;</b>         | Send ASCII HT.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>&lt;ctrl&gt;</b>        | When combined with 'A' through '~', send the corresponding ASCII control character; when combined with <return>, send ASCII LF; when combined with <backspace> send ASCII DEL; when combined with <alt> and <del>, issue system reset. <ctrl-X> cancels an escape sequence. |
| <b>&lt;shift&gt;</b>       | Change alphabetic keys from lower case to upper case, or from upper case to lower case in "caps lock" mode.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>&lt;alt&gt;</b>         | When combined with <ctrl-alt-del>, issue a system reset.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>&lt;backspace&gt;</b>   | Send ASCII BS; when combined with <ctrl>, send ASCII DEL.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>&lt;return&gt;</b>      | Send ASCII CR; when combined with <ctrl>, send ASCII LF.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>*</b>                   | Send ASCII '*'.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>&lt;caps lock&gt;</b>   | Toggle "caps lock" mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>&lt;num lock&gt;</b>    | Toggle the interpretation of the numeric keypad, as described above.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>&lt;scroll lock&gt;</b> | Toggle console output, like <ctrl-S> and <ctrl-Q>; when combined with <ctrl>, send signal SIGINT; when combined with <alt>, sends signal SIGQUIT.                                                                                                                           |
| <b>-</b>                   | Send '-'.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>+</b>                   | Send '+'.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

### Files

/dev/console

### See Also

ASCII, device drivers, signal()

**const** — C Keyword

Qualify an identifier as not modifiable

The type qualifier **const** marks an object as being unmodifiable. An object declared as being **const** cannot be used on the left side of an assignment (an *lvalue*), or have its value modified in any way. Because of these restrictions, an implementation may place objects declared to be **const** into a read-only region of storage.

*See Also*

**C keywords, volatile**

*Notes*

Mark Williams C recognizes this keyword, but its semantics are not yet implemented. Thus, storage declared with the **const** qualifier will *not* be treated as unmodifiable by the compiler, and no warnings will be generated.

**const.h** — Header File

Declare machine-dependent constants

```
#include <sys/const.h>
```

The header file **const.h** declares most machine-dependent constants. These are constants that change among the various machines for which the COHERENT system is available; an example is the clock speed of the processor.

*See Also*

**header files, times()**

**continue** — C Keyword

Force next iteration of a loop

**continue** forces the next iteration of a **for**, **while**, or **do** loop. For example,

```
while ((foo = getchar()) != EOF) {
 if ((foo < 'a') && (foo > 'z'))
 continue;
 ... /* do something */
}
```

forces the **while** loop to throw away everything except lower-case alphabetic characters.

*See Also*

**C keywords, for, while**

**continue** — Command

Terminate current iteration of shell construct

```
continue [n]
```

The command **continue** helps to control the flow of commands given to the shell **sh**. When it is used without an argument, **continue** terminates the execution of the current iteration of the innermost **for**, **until**, or **while** shell construct; that is, it acts like a branch to the enclosing **done**, after which loop execution may continue or terminate. If an argument is given, **continue** terminates the current iteration of the *n*th enclosing

for, until, or while loop.

The shell executes **continue** directly.

*See Also*

**break, commands, for, sh, until, while**

## conv — Command

Numeric base converter

**conv** [*number*]

**conv** converts *number* to hexadecimal, decimal, octal, binary, and ASCII characters, and prints the results on the standard output. If no *number* is given, **conv** reads one number per line from the standard input until you type the end-of-file character <ctrl-D>.

*number* may be in hexadecimal, decimal, octal, binary, or character format, as shown below. Each example represents the decimal number 97.

| <i>Base</i> | <i>Representation</i> |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| hexadecimal | 0x61                  |
| hexadecimal | #61                   |
| decimal     | 97                    |
| octal       | 0141                  |
| binary      | \$1100001             |
| character   | 'a'                   |

**conv** represents an ASCII control character in its output by preceding the character by a caret (^). For example, it prints <ctrl-X> as ^X. **conv** prints "bad digit" if anything is wrong with the input.

*See Also*

**bc, commands, conv, dd, od, units**

*Notes*

**conv** represents the input *number* internally as a long integer. If *number* does not fit in a long, **conv** silently truncates it.

## core — File Format

Core dump file format

**#include** <sys/uproc.h>

When a process terminates abnormally because of a process fault or because it receives an asynchronous signal from another process, COHERENT tries to write a memory dump of the process into a file called **core**. This file contains an image of the process code, data segments, the system description segment for the aborted process. The following lists the segment types and the symbolic names of their locations in the file:

|                |                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>SIUSERP</b> | User process description segment |
| <b>SISTACK</b> | User stack segment               |
| <b>SISTEXT</b> | Shared text segment              |
| <b>SIPTEXT</b> | Private text segment             |
| <b>SISDATA</b> | Shared data segment              |
| <b>SIPDATA</b> | Private data segment             |

Not every dump necessarily contains all of the above segments. Neither shared text nor shared data segments are dumped. They are write-protected in memory, and the load module that was running when the dump occurred contains shared segment data.

The best way for a program (such as a debugger) to read the `core` file is to first read the user process description segment, which is always at the front and has a fixed size. It should be read into an area `UPASIZE` bytes long, but referenced with structured type `UPROC` (somewhat smaller than `UPASIZE` because of the system stack, which contains the user registers and other information in fixed places).

The `u_seg1` member of the `UPROC` structure is a list of segment reference descriptors that contain the virtual address and length of each segment, which correspond exactly to its size in the dump. `NUSEG` segments are possible; the flag `SRFDUMP` in the field `sr_flag` indicates that a segment was dumped. By using the above method, you can use the entire file to reference program data and code at the time of the dump.

Other information found in the user process structure may be pertinent; the header file `sys/uproc.h` contains more information.

*See Also*

`db`, file formats, `kill`, `l.out.h`, `signal()`, `wait()`

*Diagnostics*

`COHERENT` will not write `core` if it already exists as a non-ordinary file or if there is more than one link to it. The 0200 bit in the status returned to the parent process by `wait` indicates a successful dump.

## `cos()` – Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate cosine

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double cos(radian) double radian;
```

`cos` calculates the cosine of its argument *radian*, which must be in radian measure.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for `acos`.

*See Also*

mathematics library

## `cosh()` – Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate hyperbolic cosine

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double cosh(radian) double radian;
```



**cosh** calculates the hyperbolic cosine of *radian*, which is in radian measure.

### Example

The following program prompts you for a number; it then uses **cosh**, **sinh**, and **tanh** to generate, respectively, the hyperbolic cosine, sine, and tangent of your number.

```
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#define display(x) dodisplay((double)(x), #x)

dodisplay(value, name)
double value; char *name;
{
 if (errno)
 perror(name);
 else
 printf("%10g %s\n", value, name);
 errno = 0;
}

main()
{
 extern char *gets();
 double x;
 char string[64];

 for(;;) {
 printf("Enter number: ");
 if(gets(string) == NULL)
 break;
 x = atof(string);

 display(x);
 display(cosh(x));
 display(sinh(x));
 display(tanh(x));
 }
}
```

### See Also

**mathematics library**

### Diagnostics

When overflow occurs, **cosh** returns a huge value that has the same sign as the actual result.

## cp — Command

Copy a file

**cp** [-d] *oldname newname*

**cp** [-d] *file1 ... fileN directory*

**cp** copies files. In its first form, **cp** copies the contents of *oldname* to *newname*, which it creates if necessary. If *newname* is a directory, **cp** copies *oldname* to a file of the same name in directory *newfile*.

In its second form, **cp** copies each *file*, from *file1* through *fileN*, into *directory*.

With the **-d** option, **cp** preserves the date (modification time) of the source file or files on the target file or files. By default, target files get the current time.

A file cannot be copied to itself.

*See Also*

commands, **mv**, **sh**, wildcards

## **cpdir** — Command

Copy directory hierarchy

**cpdir** [*option ...*] *dir1 dir2*

**cpdir** copies source directory hierarchy *dir1* to target hierarchy *dir2*, which is created if necessary. Either hierarchy may straddle device boundaries.

**cpdir** preserves as much as possible of the source structure. Files under *dir1* go to identically named files under *dir2*. Links between source files are preserved as links between corresponding target files. Preserved source file attributes include mode, subject to the user's file creation mask. If the user is not the superuser, **cpdir** cannot preserve the owner, group, and sticky bits in the mode, and the invoking user owns all new files; under the superuser it preserves these as well. In addition, the superuser may "copy" special nodes and pipe nodes; **cpdir** copies only the facility, not the contents. It also preserves real major and minor device numbers of special nodes.

If the target file corresponding to a source file exists and is not a directory, **cpdir** unlinks it before copying. This differs from the action of **cp**.

**cpdir** recognizes the following options:

- a** Give a verbose account on one line of the files copied.
- d** Preserve the last-modified date instead of using the present date.
- e** Print error message and continue execution after an error. The default action is to exit on any error.
- r** [*n*] Descend no more than *n* levels in the source hierarchy. Contents of *dir1* are at level 1. If missing, *n* defaults to 1.
- s** *name* Suppress the copy of file *name*, which should be the pathname of the file relative to *dir1*.
- t** Test only, make no changes. With this option, **cpdir** prints a report of all errors (**-e** is implied), all unlinked target files, and other useful information, including a summary of all external links into the target hierarchy that would have been broken had the unlinking actions been executed.
- u** Update regular files. Copy the source only if it was created or altered more recently than the target file, or if the target does not exist.

- v Print a verbose account of its activities. **cp** prints a file-by-file account of its actions, in addition to the information listed under -t.

*See Also*

**cp**, **commands**, **link()**, **umask()**, **unlink()**

## cpp — Command

C preprocessor

**cpp** [*option...*] [*file...*]

The command **cpp** calls the C preprocessor to perform C preprocessing. It performs the operations described in section 3.8 of the ANSI Standard; these include file inclusion, conditional code selection, constant definition, and macro definition. See the entry on **preprocessing** for a full description of the C's preprocessing language.

Normally, **cpp** is used to preprocess C programs, but it can be used as a simple macro processor for other types of files as well. **cpp** reads each input *file*, processes directives, and writes its product on **stdout**. If the option -E is not used, **cpp** also writes into its output statements of the form **#*lineno* filename**, so that the parser will be able to connect its error messages and debugger output with the original line numbers in your source files.

### Options

The following summarizes **cpp**'s options:

#### -DVARIABLE

Define *VARIABLE* for the preprocessor at compilation time. For example, the command

```
cc -DLIMIT=20 foo.c
```

tells the preprocessor to define the variable **LIMIT** to be 20. The compiled program acts as though the directive **#define LIMIT 20** were included before its first line.

- E Strip all comments and line numbers from the source code. This option is used to preprocess assembly-language files or other sources, and should not be used with the other compiler phases.

#### -I *directory*

C allows two types of **#include** directives in a C program, i.e., **#include "file.h"** and **#include <file.h>**. The -I option tells **cpp** to search a specific directory for the files you have named in your **#include** directives, in addition to the directories that it searches by default. You can have more than one -I option on your **cc** command line.

#### -o *file*

Write output into *file*. If this option is missing, **cpp** writes its output onto **stdout**, which may be redirected.

#### -UVARIABLE

Undefine *VARIABLE*, as if an **#undef** directive were included in the source program. This is used to undefine the variables that **cpp** defines by default.

*See Also*

**C** preprocessor, **cc**, **commands**

### **creat()** – COHERENT System Call (libc)

Create/truncate a file

**int creat(file, mode) char \*file; int mode;**

**creat** creates a new *file* or truncates an existing *file*. It returns a file descriptor that identifies *file* for subsequent system calls. If *file* already exists, its contents are erased. In this case, **creat** ignores the specified *mode*; the mode of the *file* remains unchanged. If *file* did not exist previously, **creat** uses the *mode* argument to determine the mode of the new *file*. For a full definition of file modes, see **chmod** or the header file **stat.h**. **creat** masks the *mode* argument with the current **umask**, so it is common practice to create files with the maximal mode desirable.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this routine, see the entry for **open**.

*See Also*

**chmod()**, **COHERENT system calls()**, **fopen()**, **open()**, **stat.h**, **STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

If the call is successful, **creat** returns a file descriptor. It returns -1 if it could not create the file, typically because of insufficient system resources or protection violations.

### **cron** – System Maintenance

Execute commands periodically

**/etc/cron&**

**cron** is a daemon that executes commands at preset times. The commands and their scheduled execution times are kept in the file **/usr/lib/crontab**.

Once each minute **cron** searches through **crontab**. For each command stored there, **cron** compares the current time with the scheduled execution time and executes the command if the times match. When it finishes the search, **cron** sleeps until the next minute. Because it never exits, **cron** should be executed only once (customarily by **/etc/rc**).

**crontab** consists of lines separated by newlines. Each line consists of six fields separated by white space (tabs or blanks). The first five fields describe the scheduled execution time of the command. Respectively, they represent the minute (0-59), hour (0-23), day of the month (1-31), month of the year (1-12), and day of the week (0-6, 0 indicates Sunday). Each field may contain a single integer in the appropriate range, a pair of integers separated by a hyphen '-' (meaning all integers between the two, inclusive), an asterisk '\*' (meaning all legal values), or a comma-separated list of the above forms. The remainder of the line gives the command to be executed at the given time.

For example, the **crontab** entry

```
29 * * 7 0 msg henry Succotash!
```

means that every hour on the half-hour during each Sunday in July, **cron** will invoke the command **msg**, and the user named **henry** will have the message

daemon: Succotash!

written on his terminal's screen (if he is logged in).

**cron** recognizes three special characters and escape sequences in the **crontab**. If a command contains the percent character '%', **cron** executes only the portion up to the first '%' as a command and passes the remainder to the command as its standard input. **cron** translates any percent characters '%' in the remainder to newlines. The special interpretation of '%' can be prevented by preceding it with a backslash, '\%'. Finally, **cron** removes the sequence \**<newline>** from the text before passing it to the shell **sh**; this can be used to make an entry in the **crontab** more legible.

**cron** is designed for commands that must be executed regularly. Temporal commands that need to be executed only once should be handled with the command **at**.

### Files

/usr/lib/crontab for stored commands

### See Also

**at**, **init**, **system maintenance**

## crypt() — General Function (libc)

Encryption using rotor algorithm

```
char *crypt(key, extra); char *key, *extra;
```

**crypt** implements a version of rotor encryption. **crypt** produces encrypted passwords that are verified by comparing the encrypted clear text against an original encryption.

*key* is an ASCII string that contains the user's password. *extra* is a string of two additional characters, stored in the password file with the encrypted password. Each character must come from an alphabet of 64 symbols, which consists of the upper-case and lower-case letters, digits, the period '.', and the slash '/'.

**crypt** returns a string built from the 64-character alphabet described above; the first two characters returned are the *extra* argument, and the rest contain the encrypted password.

### See Also

ASCII, general functions

## crypt — Command

Encrypt/decrypt text

```
crypt [password]
```

The command **crypt** encrypts data. It emulates a rotor-encryption machine, such as the Enigma or Hagelin C-48 cipher machines. Unlike these machines, **crypt** uses only one rotor, with a 256-character alphabet and a keying sequence of period  $2^{32}$ .

**crypt** reads text from standard input and writes the encrypted text to standard output. *password* is used to construct the model of the machine and to start the keying sequence. If no *password* is given, **crypt** prompts for a password on the terminal and disables echo while it is being typed in. The *password* may be up to ten characters long, but must not be empty; all characters past the first ten are ignored. All characters are legal, although

it may not be possible to input certain characters from the terminal.

**crypt** uses the same *password* for both encryption and decryption. For example, the commands

```
crypt COHERENT <file1 >file2
crypt COHERENT <file2 >file3
```

leave *file3* identical to *file1*.

Encrypted files produced by **ed** with its **-x** option may be read by **crypt**, and vice versa, as **ed** uses **crypt** to perform its encryption.

Security of a cryptosystem depends on several factors:

1. Brute-force attempts to break the system should be infeasible. Passwords should be at least five characters long; although the construction of the machine model from the password takes a substantial fraction of a second, it is still plausible that encrypted files could be read by a brute-force search of a portion of the password space (say, all passwords less than four characters long).
2. Cryptanalysis of the basic encryption scheme should be very hard. Analysis of rotor machines is understood, but it is difficult and in most cases probably not worth the trouble.
3. Passwords must be kept secret. **crypt** erases *password* as soon as it can, to avoid the possibility that it could appear in the output of **ps**.
4. Privileged access to the system must be guarded. Under COHERENT, the security of **crypt** can be no better than the security governing access to superuser status, because the superuser can do practically anything. This is probably **crypt**'s most vulnerable point.

### *Files*

**/dev/tty** — Typed passwords

### *See Also*

#### **commands**

Kahn D: *The Code Breakers*. New York, Macmillan, 1967.

Morris R: The Hagelin cipher machine (M-209). *Cryptologia*, July 1978.

## **ct** — Device Driver

### Controlling terminal driver

For each process, the controlling terminal driver **/dev/tty** is an interface to the appropriate terminal driver. COHERENT passes any input-output call (e.g. **close**, **ioctl**, **open**, **read**, or **write**) on this special file directly to the controlling terminal device for the requesting process.

Normally, the controlling terminal is the default standard input, output, and error device. This is not the case for daemon processes started by the initial process.

*Files*`/dev/tty`*See Also*device drivers, `init`*Diagnostics*

When a call finds no valid controlling terminal for a process, it returns a value of -1 and sets `errno` to `ENXIO`.

**ctime()** — Time Function (libc)

Convert system time to an ASCII string

`#include <time.h>``#include <sys/types.h>``char *ctime(time_t *timep);`

`ctime` converts the system's internal time into a string that can be read by humans. It takes a pointer to the internal time type `time_t`, which is defined in the header file `time.h`, and returns a fixed-length string of the form:

```
Thu Mar 7 11:12:14 1989\n
```

`time_t` is defined in the header `types.h`.

`ctime` is implemented as a call to `localtime` followed by a call to `asctime`.

*Example*

For another example of this function, see the entry for `asctime`.

`#include <time.h>``#include <sys/types.h>``main()`

```
{
 time_t t;
 time(&t);
 printf(ctime(&t));
}
```

*See Also*`time`, `time.h`*Notes*

`ctime` returns a pointer to a statically allocated data area that is overwritten by successive calls.

**ctype** — Overview`#include <ctype.h>`

The `ctype` macros and functions test a character's *type*, and can transform some characters into others. They are as follows:

```
isalnum() Test if alphanumeric character
isalpha() Test if alphabetic character
```

|                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>isascii()</b>  | Test if ASCII character         |
| <b>isctrl()</b>   | Test if a control character     |
| <b>isdigit()</b>  | Test if a numeric digit         |
| <b>islower()</b>  | Test if lower-case character    |
| <b>isprint()</b>  | Test if printable character     |
| <b>ispunct()</b>  | Test if punctuation mark        |
| <b>isspace()</b>  | Test if a tab, space, or return |
| <b>isupper()</b>  | Test if upper-case character    |
| <b>_tolower()</b> | Change to lower-case character  |
| <b>_toupper()</b> | Change to upper-case character  |

These are defined in the header file `ctype.h`, and each is described further in its own Lexicon entry.

### *Example*

The following example demonstrates the macros `isalnum`, `isalpha`, `isascii`, `isctrl`, `isdigit`, `islower`, `isprint`, `ispunct`, and `isspace`. It prints information about the type of characters it contains.

```
#include <ctype.h>
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
 FILE *fp;
 char fname[20];
 int ch;
 int alnum = 0;
 int alpha = 0;
 int allow = 0;
 int control = 0;
 int printable = 0;
 int punctuation = 0;
 int space = 0;

 printf("Enter name of text file to examine: ");
 fflush(stdout);
 gets(fname);

 if ((fp = fopen(fname, "r")) != NULL) {
 while ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != EOF) {
```



```
 if (isascii(ch)) {
 if (isalnum(ch))
 alnum++;
 if (isalpha(ch))
 alpha++;
 if (islower(ch))
 allow++;
 if (iscntrl(ch))
 control++;
 if (isprint(ch))
 printable++;
 if (ispunct(ch))
 punctuation++;
 if (isspace(ch))
 space++;
 } else {
 printf("%s is not ASCII.\n",
 fname);
 exit(1);
 }
 }

 printf("%s has the following:\n", fname);
 printf("%d alphanumeric characters\n", alnum);
 printf("%d alphabetic characters\n", alpha);
 printf("%d alphabetic lower-case characters\n",
 allow);
 printf("%d control characters\n", control);
 printf("%d printable characters\n", printable);
 printf("%d punctuation marks\n", punctuation);
 printf("%d white space characters\n", space);
 exit(0);
} else {
 printf("Cannot open \"%s\".\n", fname);
 exit(2);
}
}
```

*See Also*

**ctype.h**, libraries

## **ctype.h** – Header File

Header file for data tests

**#include <ctype.h>**

**ctype.h** is a header file that holds the texts of the macros described in the overview entry **ctype**.

*See Also*

**ctype, header files**

## **curses — Overview**

Library of screen-handling functions

**curses** is a set of routines that allow you to manipulate the screen in a sophisticated manner. These routines use the **termcap** functions to read information about the user's terminal. This allows you to write programs that can perform rudimentary graphics on a wide variety of terminals.

**curses** contains routines that do the following:

- Move the cursor about the screen.
- Insert text onto the screen, either in normal or reverse video (if supported by the display device).
- Read what is typed by the user and display it properly.
- Organize the screen into one or more rectangular regions, or *windows*, optionally draw a border around each, and manage each independently.

**curses** organizes the screen into a two-dimensional array of cells, one cell for every character that the device can display. It maintains in memory an image of the screen, called the *curscr*. A second image, called the *stdscr*, is manipulated by the user; when the user has finished a given manipulation, **curses** copies the changes from the *stdscr* to the *curscr*, which results in their being displayed on the physical screen. This act of copying from the *stdscr* to the *curscr* is called *refreshing* the screen. **curses** keeps track of where all changes have begun and ended between one refresh and the next; this lets it rewrite only the portions of the *curscr* that the user has changed, and so speed up rewriting of the screen.

**curses** records the position of a "logical cursor", which points to the position in the *stdscr* that is being manipulated by the user, and also records the position of the physical cursor. Note that the two are not necessarily identical: it is possible to manipulate the logical cursor without repositioning the physical cursor, and vice versa, depending on the task you wish to perform.

Most **curses** routines work by manipulating **WINDOW** object. **WINDOW** is defined in the header **curses.h** as follows:

```
#define WINDOW _win_st
struct _win_st {
 short _cury, _curx;
 short _maxy, _maxx;
 short _begy, _begx;
 short _flags;
 short _ch_off;
 bool _clear;
 bool _leave;
 bool _scroll;
 char *__y;
 short *_firstch;
 short *_lastch;
 struct _win_st *_nextp, *_orig;
};
```

Type **bool** is defined in **curses.h**; an object of this type can hold the value of true (non-zero) or false (zero).

The following describes each **WINDOW** field in detail.

**\_cury, \_curx**

Give the Y and X positions of the logical cursor. The upper left corner of the window is, by definition, position 0,0. Note that **curses** by convention gives positions as Y/X (column/row) rather than X/Y, as is usual elsewhere.

**\_maxy, \_maxx**

Width and height of the window.

**\_begy, \_begx**

Position of the upper left corner of the window relative to the upper left corner of the physical screen. For example, if the window's upper left corner is five rows from the top of the screen and ten columns from the left, then **\_begy** and **\_begx** will be set to ten and five, respectively.

**\_flags**

One or more of the following flags, logically OR'd together:

- \_SUBWIN** — Window is a sub-window
- \_ENDLINE** — Right edge of window touches edge of the screen
- \_FULLWIN** — Window fills the physical screen
- \_SCROLLWIN** — Window touches lower right corner of physical screen
- \_FULLLINE** — Window extends across entire physical screen
- \_STANDOUT** — Write text in reverse video
- \_INSL** — Line has been inserted into window
- \_DELL** — Line has been deleted from window

**\_ch\_off**

Character offset.

**\_clear**

Clear the physical screen before next refresh of the screen.

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>_leave</b>   | Do not move the physical cursor after refreshing the screen.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>_scroll</b>  | Enable scrolling for this window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>-y</b>       | Pointer to an array of pointers to the character arrays that hold the window's text.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>_firstch</b> | Pointer to an array of integers, one for each line in the window, whose value is the first character in the line to have been altered by the user. If a line has not been changed, then its corresponding entry in the array is set to <b>_NOCHANGE</b> . |
| <b>_lastch</b>  | Same as <b>_firstch</b> , except that it indicates the last character to have been changed on the line.                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>_nextp</b>   | Point to next window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>_orig</b>    | Point to parent window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

When **curses** is first invoked, it defines the entire screen as being one large window. The programmer has the choice of subdividing an existing window or creating new windows; when a window is subdivided, it shares the same *curscr* as its parent window, whereas a new window has its own *stdscr*.

Mark Williams Company will document its **curses** library in full in a later release of this manual. The following table, however, summarizes the functions and macros that that compose the **curses** library.

**addch(ch) char ch;**

Insert a character into *stdscr*.

**addstr(str) char \*str;**

Insert a string into *stdscr*.

**box(win, vert, hor) WINDOW \*win; char vert, hor;**

Draw a box. *vert* is the character used to draw the vertical lines, and *hor* is used to draw the horizontal lines. For example

```
box(win, '|', '-');
```

draws a box around window *win*, using '|' to draw the vertical lines and '-' to draw the horizontal lines.

**clear()**

Clear the *stdscr*.

**clearok(win,bf) WINDOW \*win; bool bf;**

Set the clear flag for window *win*. This will clear the screen at the next refresh, but not reset the window.

**clrtoeol()**

Clear from the position of the logical cursor to the bottom of the window.

**clrtoeol()**

Clear from the logical cursor to the end of the line.

**crmode()**

Turn on control-character mode; i.e., force terminal to receive cooked input.

**delch()**

Delete a character from *stdscr*; shift the rest of the characters on the line one position to the left.

**deleteln()**

Delete all of the current line; shift up the rest of the lines in the window.

**delwin(win) WINDOW \*win;**

Delete window *win*.

**echo()**

Turn on both physical and logical echoing; i.e., character are automatically inserted into the current window and onto the physical screen.

**endwin()**

Terminate text processing with **curses**.

**erase()**

Erase a window; do not clear the screen.

**getch()**

Read a character from the terminal.

**getstr(str) char \*str;**

Read a string from the terminal.

**getyx(win,y,x) WINDOW \*win; short y,x;**

Read the position of the logical cursor in *win* and store it in *y,x*. Note that this is a macro, and due to its construction the variables *y* and *x* must be integers, not pointers to integers.

**inch()** Read the character pointed to by the *stdscr*'s logical cursor.

**WINDOW \*initscr()**

Initialize **curses**.

**insch(ch) char ch;**

Insert character *ch* into the *stdscr*.

**insertln()**

Insert a blank line into *stdscr*, above the current line.

**leaveok(win,bf) WINDOW \*win; bool bf;**

Set `_leave` in *win* to *bf*.

**char \*longname(termbuf, name) char \*termbuf, \*name;**

Copy the long name for the terminal from *termbuf* into *name*.

**move(y,x) short y,x;**

Move logical cursor to position *y,x* in *stdscr*.

**mvaddbytes(y,x,da,count) int y,x; char \*da; int count;**

Move to position *y,x* and print *count* bytes from the string pointed to by *da*.

**mvaddch**(*y,x,ch*) **short y,x; char ch;**

Move the logical cursor to position *y,x* and insert character *ch*.

**mvaddstr**(*y,x,str*) **short y,x; char \*str;**

Move the logical cursor to position *y,x* and insert string *str*.

**mvcur**(*y\_cur,x\_cur,y\_new,x\_new*) **int y\_cur, x\_cur, y\_new, x\_new;**

Move cursor from position *y\_cur,x\_cur* to position *y\_new,x\_new*.

**mvdelch**(*y,x*) **short y,x;**

Move to position *y,x* and delete the character found there.

**mvgetch**(*y,x*) **short y,x;**

Move to position *y,x* and get a character through *stdscr*.

**mvgetstr**(*y,x,str*) **short y,x; char \*str;**

Move to position *y,x*, get a string through *stdscr*, and copy it into *string*.

**mvinch**(*y,x*) **short y,x;**

Move to position *y,x* and get the character found there.

**mvinsch**(*y,x,ch*) **short y,x; char ch;**

Move to position *y,x* and insert a character into *stdscr*.

**mvwaddbytes**(*win,y,x,da,count*) **WINDOW \*win; int y,x; char \*da; int count;**

Move to position *y,x* and print *count* bytes from the string pointed to by *da* into window *win*.

**mvwaddch**(*win,y,x,ch*) **WINDOW \*win; int y,x; char ch;**

Move to position *y,x* and insert character *ch* into window *win*.

**mvwaddstr**(*win,y,x,str*) **WINDOW \*win; short y,x; char \*str;**

Move to position *y,x* and insert character *ch*.

**mvwdelch**(*win,y,x*) **WINDOW \*win; int y,x;**

Move to position *y,x* and delete character *ch* from window *win*.

**mvwgetch**(*win,y,x*) **WINDOW \*win; short y,x;**

Move to position *y,x* and get a character.

**mvwgetstr**(*win,y,x,str*) **WINDOW \*win; short y,x; char \*str;**

Move to position *y,x*, get a string, and write it into *str*.

**mvwin**(*win,y,x*) **WINDOW \*win; int y,x;**

Move window *win* to position *y,x*.

**mvwinch**(*win,y,x*) **WINDOW \*win; short y,x;**

Move to position *y,x* and get character found there.

**mvwinsch**(*win,y,x,ch*) **WINDOW \*win; short y,x; char ch;**

Move to position *y,x* and insert character *ch* there.

**WINDOW \*newwin**(*lines, cols, y1, x1*) **int lines, cols, y1, x1;**

Create a new window. The new window is *lines* lines high, *cols* columns wide, with the upper-left corner at position *y1,x1*.

- nl()** Turn on newline mode; i.e., force terminal to output `<newline>` after `<linefeed>`.
- nocrmode()**  
Turn off control-character mode; i.e., force terminal to accept raw input.
- noecho()**  
Turn off echo mode.
- nonl()**  
Turn off newline mode.
- noraw()**  
Turn off raw mode.
- overlay(*win1*,*win2*) WINDOW \**win1*, *win2*;**  
Copy all characters, except spaces, from their current positions in *win1* to identical positions in *win2*.
- overwrite(*win1*,*win2*) WINDOW \**win1*, *win2*;**  
Copy all characters, including spaces, from *win1* to their identical positions in *win2*.
- printw(*format*[,*arg1*,...*argN*]) char \**format*; [*data type*] *arg1*,...*argN*;**  
Print formatted text on the standard screen.
- raw()** Turn on raw mode; i.e., kernel does not process what is typed at the keyboard, but passes it directly to `curses`. In normal (or *cooked*) mode, the kernel intercepts and processes the control characters `<ctrl-C>`, `<ctrl-S>`, `<ctrl-Q>`, and `<ctrl-Y>`. See the entry for `stty` for more information.
- refresh()**  
Copy the contents of *stdscr* to the physical screen.
- resetty()**  
Reset the terminal flags to values stored by earlier call to `savetty`.
- savetty()**  
Save the current terminal settings.
- scanw(*format*[,*arg1*,...*argN*]) char \**format*; [*data type*] *arg1*,...*argN*;**  
Read the standard input; translate what is read into the appropriate data type.
- scroll(*win*) WINDOW \**win*;**  
Scroll *win* up by one line.
- scrollok(*win*,*bf*) WINDOW \**win*; bool *bf*;**  
Permit or forbid scrolling of window *win*, depending upon whether *bf* is set to true or false.
- standend()**  
Turn off standout mode.
- standout()**  
Turn on standout mode for text. Usually, this means that text will be displayed in reverse video.

- WINDOW \*subwin**(*win,lines,cols,y1,x1*) **int** *win,lines,cols,y1,x1*;  
Create a sub-window in window *win*. New sub-window is *lines* lines high, *cols* columns wide, and is fixed at position *y1,x1*. Note that the position is relative to the upper-left corner of the physical screen.
- touchwin**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win**;  
Copy all characters in window *win* to the screen.
- waddch**(*win,ch*) **WINDOW \*win; char ch**;  
Add character *ch* *win*.
- waddstr**(*win,str*) **WINDOW \*win; char \*str**;  
Add the string pointed to by *str* to window *win*.
- wclear**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win**;  
Clear window *win*. Move cursor to position 0,0 and set the screen's clear flag.
- wclrtobot**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win**;  
Clear window *win* from current position to the bottom.
- wclrtoeol**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win**;  
Clear window *win* from the current position to the end of the line.
- wdelch**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win**;  
Delete the character at the current position in window *win*; shift all remaining characters to the right of the current position one position left.
- wdeleteln**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win**;  
Delete the current line and shift all lines below it one line up.
- werase**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win**;  
Clear window *win*. Move the cursor to position 0,0 but do not set the screen's clear flag.
- wgetch**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win**;  
Read one character from the standard input.
- wgetstr**(*win,str*) **WINDOW \*win; char \*str**;  
Read a string from the standard input; write it in the area pointed to by *str*.
- winch**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win**;  
Force the next call to **refresh()** to rewrite the entire screen.
- winsch**(*win,ch*) **WINDOW \*win; char ch**;  
Insert character *ch* into window *win* at the current position. Shift all existing characters one position to the right.
- winsertln**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win**;  
Insert a blank line into window *win* at the current position. Move all lines down by one position.
- wmove**(*win,y,x*) **WINDOW \*win; int y, x**;  
Move current position in the window *win* to position *y,x*.
- wprintw**(*win,format[,arg1,...argN]*) **WINDOW \*win; char \*format; [data type]**  
**arg1,...argN**;



Format text and print it to the current position in window *win*.

**wrefresh(*win*) WINDOW \**win*;**

Refresh a window.

**wscanw(*win*,*format*[,*arg1*,...*argN*]) WINDOW \**win*; char \**format*; [*data type*]  
*arg1*,...*argN*;**

Read standard input from the current position in window *win*, format it, and store it in the indicated places.

**wstandend(*win*) WINDOW \**win*;**

Turn off standout (reverse video) mode for window *win*.

**wstandout(*win*) WINDOW \**win*;**

Turn on standout (reverse video) mode for window *win*.

These routines are declared and defined in the header file **curses.h**.

### *Structure of a curses Program*

To use the **curses** routines, a program must include the header file **curses.h**, which declares and defines the functions and macros that comprise the **curses** library.

Before a program can perform any graphics operations, it must call the function **initscr()** to initialize the **curses** environment. Then, the program must call **cmdwind()** to open the *curscr*.

As noted above, **curses** manipulates text in a copy of the screen that it maintains in memory. After a program has manipulated text, it must call **refresh()** to copy these alterations from memory to the physical screen. (This is done because writing to the screen is slow; this scheme permits mass alterations to be made to copy in memory, then written to the screen in a batch.)

Finally, when the program has finished working with **curses**, it must call the function **endwin()**. This frees memory allocated by **curses**, and generally closes down the **curses** environment gracefully.

### *Example*

The following program, called **curexample.c**, gives a simple example of programming with **curses**. To compile this program, use the command line:

```
cc curexample.c -lcurses -lterm
```

Note that order in which the libraries are called is significant.

When this program is run, it clears the screen, then waits for you to type a Y coordinate, a space, and then an X coordinate. Note that these do not echo on the screen. It moves the cursor to the requested coordinates, and there display any non-numeric string that you type. If you type numerals, **curexample** will assume that you wish to move the cursor to a new location. To exit, type **<ctrl-C>**.

```
#include <ascii.h>
#include <ctype.h>
#include <curses.h>
```

```
#define NORMAL 0
#define INY 1
#define INX 2
main()
{
 int c, y, x, state;
 initscr(); /* initialize curses */
 noecho();
 raw();
 clear();
 move(0, 0);
 for(state = NORMAL;;) {
 refresh();
 c = getch();
 if(isdigit(c)) {
 switch (state) {
 case NORMAL:
 y = x = 0;
 state = INY;
 case INY:
 y += 10;
 y += c - '0';
 break;
 case INX:
 x += 10;
 x += c - '0';
 }
 } else {
 if (c == A_ETX) { /* ctl-c */
 noraw();
 echo();
 endwin();
 exit(0);
 }
 }
 }
}
```

```
switch (state) {
 case INX:
 state = NORMAL;
 move(y, x);
 case NORMAL:
 addch(c);
 break;
 case INY:
 state = INX;
}
)
}
```

*See Also*

**curses.h, libraries, termcap**

Strang J: *Programming with curses*. Sebastopol, Calif, O'Reilly & Associates Inc., 1986.

*Notes*

**curses** is copyrighted by the Regents of the University of California.

## **curses.h** — Header File

Define functions and macros in curses library

**#include <curses.h>**

**curses.h** defines the macros and declares the functions that comprise the **curses** library.

*See Also*

**header files**

## D

### daemon — Definition

A **daemon** is a process that is designed to perform a particular task or control a particular device without requiring the intervention of a human operator.

*See Also*  
definitions

### data formats — Technical Information

Mark Williams Company has written C compilers for a number of different computers. Each has a unique architecture and defines data formats in its own way.

The following table gives the sizes, in **chars**, of the data types as they are defined by various microprocessors.

| Type           | i8086 |       | Z8001 | Z8002 | 68000 | PDP11 | VAX |
|----------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|
|                | SMALL | LARGE |       |       |       |       |     |
| <b>char</b>    | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1   |
| <b>double</b>  | 8     | 8     | 8     | 8     | 8     | 8     | 8   |
| <b>float</b>   | 4     | 4     | 4     | 4     | 4     | 4     | 4   |
| <b>int</b>     | 2     | 2     | 2     | 2     | 2     | 2     | 4   |
| <b>long</b>    | 4     | 4     | 4     | 4     | 4     | 4     | 4   |
| <b>pointer</b> | 2     | 4     | 4     | 2     | 4     | 2     | 4   |
| <b>short</b>   | 2     | 2     | 2     | 2     | 2     | 2     | 2   |

COHERENT places some alignment restrictions on data, which conform to all restrictions set by the microprocessor. Byte ordering is set by the microprocessor; see the Lexicon entry on **byte ordering** for more information.

*See Also*

**byte ordering**, **C language**, **data types**, **double**, **float**, **memory allocation**, **technical information**

*Notes*

The COHERENT system supports Intel SMALL model only.

### data types — Technical Information

The following table gives the data types that COHERENT recognizes:

**char**  
**double**  
**float**  
**int**  
**long**  
**long float**  
**long int**  
**short**  
**short int**  
**unsigned int**  
**unsigned long int**  
**unsigned long**  
**unsigned char**  
**unsigned short**  
**unsigned short int**

The terms **long** and **long int**, as are the terms **short** and **short int**, **double** and **long float**, **unsigned short int** and **unsigned short**, and **unsigned long int** and **unsigned long**. The type **unsigned char** was added to the language by the ANSI Standard; because COHERENT uses signed **chars** by default, you must declare a **char** to be **unsigned** if you want it to be so. If this type is used in arithmetic expressions, it is automatically cast to **unsigned int**.

*See Also*

**C language, char, data formats, double, float, int, long, pointer, short, technical information, unsigned**

## date — Command

Print/set the date and time

**date [-s] [-u] [[*yy**mm**dd*][*hh**mm*][*ss*]]**

**date** prints the time of day and the current date, including the time zone. If an argument is given, the system's current time and date is changed, as follows:

|           |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|
| <i>yy</i> | Year (00-99)    |
| <i>mm</i> | Month (01-12)   |
| <i>dd</i> | Day (01-31)     |
| <i>hh</i> | Hour (00-23)    |
| <i>mm</i> | Minute (00-59)  |
| <i>ss</i> | Seconds (00-59) |

The seconds fields are optional. For example, typing

```
date 860512141233
```

sets the date to May 12, 1986, and the time to 2:12:33 P.M. At least *hh* and *mm* must be specified—the rest are optional.

The date may be changed only by the superuser.

If option **-s** is specified, **date** suppresses daylight savings time conversion when setting the time.

If option **-u** is specified, dates are set and printed in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) rather than in local time.

The library time conversion routines used by **date** look for the environmental variable **TIMEZONE**, which specifies local time zone and daylight saving time information in the format described in **ctime**.

*See Also*

**ATelock**, **commands**, **ctime()**, **time**, **TIMEZONE**

## db — Command

Assembler-level symbolic debugger

**db** [**-cdefort**] [*mapfile*] [*datafile*]

**db** is an assembly language-level debugger. It allows you to run object files and executable programs under trace control (see **ptrace**), run programs with embedded breakpoints, and dump and patch files in a variety of forms. You can use it to debug assembly-language programs that have been assembled by **as**, the Mark Williams assembler, as well as those that have been compiled with the Mark Williams C compiler.

*What is db?*

**db** is a symbolic debugger, which means that it works with the symbol tables that the compiler builds into the object files it generates. Because **db** is designed to work on the level of assembly language, the user needs a working knowledge of the appropriate assembly language and microprocessor architecture.

*Invoking db*

To invoke **db**, type its name, plus the options you want (if any) and the name of the files with which you will be working. *mapfile* is an object file that supplies a symbol table. *datafile* is the executable program to be debugged. If both names are given, the options default to **-c**. If only one name is given, it is the *program*; in this case the options default to **-o**. If both names are omitted, *mapfile* defaults to **l.out** and *program* defaults to **core**. If possible, **db** accesses *datafile* with write permission.

The following options to the **db** command specify the format of *program*:

- c** *program* is a core file produced by a user core dump. **db** checks the name of the command that invoked the process that produced the core, against the name of the *mapfile*, if given. Pure segments are read from the *mapfile*.
- d** *program* is a system dump. If only one file is mentioned, *mapfile* defaults to **/coherent**.
- e** The next argument is an object file; **db** executes it as a child process and passes it the rest of the command line.
- f** Map *program* as a straight array of bytes (file).
- o** *program* is an object file. If *mapfile* is given, it is another object file that provides the symbol table.
- r** Read file only, even though you can write into it. This is used to give a file additional protection.

- t Perform input and output for **db** via `/dev/tty`. This permits the debugging of processes whose standard input or output have been redirected.

### Commands and Addresses

**db** executes commands that you give it from the standard input. A command usually consists of an *address*, which tells **db** where in the program to execute the command; and then the command name and its options, if any.

An address is represented by an *expression*, which can be built out of one or more of the following elements:

- The `'`, which represents the current address. When an address is entered, the current address is set to that location. The current address can be advanced by typing `<return>`.
- The name of a register. **db** recognizes the register names `r0` through `r7`, `sp`, and `pc` for the PDP-11; `r0` through `r15` and `pc` for the Z-8001 and Z-8002; and `ax`, `ah`, `al`, `bx`, `bh`, `bl`, `cx`, `ch`, `cl`, `dx`, `dh`, `dl`, `si`, `di`, `bp`, `sp`, `pc`, `cs`, `ds`, `es`, and `ss` for the i8086. Typing the name of a register displays its contents. The usual numeric base (octal on the PDP-11, hexadecimal on all other machines) is always used for register display and stack tracebacks, regardless of the current default radix.
- The symbols `d`, `i`, and `u`, which represent location 0 in, respectively, the data space, the instruction space, and the u-area.
- The names of global symbols and symbolic addresses can be used in place of the addresses where they occur. This is useful when setting a breakpoint at the beginning of a subroutine.
- An integer constant, which can be used in the same manner as a global symbol. The default is decimal; a leading `0` indicates octal and `0x` indicates hexadecimal.
- The following binary operators can be used:
  - + Addition
  - Subtraction
  - \* Multiplication
  - / Integer division

All arithmetic is done in longs.

- The following unary operators can be used:
  - ~ Complementation
  - Negation
  - \* Indirection

All operators are supported with their normal level of precedence. Parentheses `()` can be used for binding.

Every symbol refers to a segment: the data segment, the instruction segment, or the u-area. This segment, in turn, dictates the format in which **db** displays by default what it finds at that address. The format used by an expression is that of its leftmost operand. The symbols `d`, `i`, and `u` can name specific segments in the absence of other symbols.

### Display Commands

The following commands merely display information about *program*. The symbol '.' represents the *address*, which defaults to the current display address if omitted. *count* defaults to one.

*address[,count]?[format]*

Display the *format count* times, starting at *address*. The *format* string consists of one or more of the following characters:

|          |                                             |
|----------|---------------------------------------------|
| ^        | Reset display address to '.'                |
| +        | Increment display address                   |
| -        | Decrement display address                   |
| <b>b</b> | Byte                                        |
| <b>c</b> | <b>char</b> ; control and non-chars escaped |
| <b>C</b> | Like 'c' except '\0' not displayed          |
| <b>d</b> | Decimal                                     |
| <b>f</b> | float                                       |
| <b>F</b> | double                                      |
| <b>i</b> | Machine instruction, disassembled           |
| <b>l</b> | long                                        |
| <b>n</b> | Output '\n'                                 |
| <b>O</b> | octal                                       |
| <b>p</b> | Symbolic address                            |
| <b>s</b> | String terminated by '\0', with escapes     |
| <b>S</b> | String terminated by '\0', no escapes       |
| <b>u</b> | unsigned                                    |
| <b>W</b> | word                                        |
| <b>x</b> | Hexadecimal                                 |
| <b>Y</b> | time (as in i-node etc.)                    |

The format characters **d**, **o**, **u**, and **x**, which specify a numeric base, can be followed by **b**, **l**, or **w**, which specify a datum size, to describe a single datum for display. A format item may also be preceded by a count that specifies how many times the item is to be applied. Note that *format* defaults to the previously set format for the segment (initially **o** for data and u-area, and **i** for instructions). Except where otherwise noted, **db** increments the display address by the size of the datum displayed after each format item.

### Execution Commands

In the following commands, *address* defaults to the address where execution stopped, unless otherwise specified; *count* and *expr* default to 1. *commands* is an arbitrary string of **db** commands, terminated by a newline. A newline may be included by preceding it with a backslash '\ '.

*[address]=*

Print *address* in octal. *address* defaults to '.'. The command = assigns values to locations in the traced process. The size of the assigned value is determined from the last display format used. You can set and display the registers of the traced process, just like any other address in the traced process.

*[address[,count]]=value[,value[,value]...]*

Patch the contents starting at *address* to the given *value*. *address* defaults to '.'. Up to ten *values* can be listed.



**?** Print verbose version of last error message.

**[address] :a**  
Print *address* symbolically. *address* defaults to '.'.

**[address]:b[commands]**  
Set breakpoint at *address*; save *commands* to be executed when breakpoint is encountered. *commands* defaults to `.:a\ni+.?i\n:x`.

**:br [commands]**  
Set breakpoint at return from current routine. The defaults are the same as for **:b**, above.

**[address] :c**  
Continue execution from *address*.

**[address] :d[r][s]**  
Delete breakpoint at *address*. If optional *r* or *s* is specified, delete return or single-step breakpoint. *address* defaults to '.'.

**[address]:e[commandline]**  
Begin traced execution of the object file at *address* (default, entry point). The *commandline* is parsed and passed to the traced process. `argv[0]` must be typed directly after **:e** if supplied. For example, `:e3 foo bar baz` sets `argv[0]` to `3`, `argv[1]` to `foo`, `argv[2]` to `bar`, and `argv[3]` to `baz`. Quotation marks, apostrophes, and redirection are parsed as by `sh`, but special characters `'*[]'` and shell punctuation `'{}|;'` are not. For complete shell command line parsing use the **-e** option.

**:f** Print type of fault which caused core dump or stopped the traced process.

**:m** Display segmentation map.

**[expr] :n**  
Set default numeric display base to *expr*: `8`, `10`, and `16` indicate, respectively, octal, decimal, and hexadecimal.

**:p** Display breakpoints.

**[expr] :q**  
If *expr* is nonzero, quit the current level of command input (see **:x**). *expr* defaults to `1`. End of file is equivalent to **:q**.

**:r** Display registers.

**[address],[count]:s[c][commands]**  
Single-step execution starting at *address*, for *count* steps, executing *commands* at each step. *commands* defaults to `i+?.i`.

After a single-step command, `<return>` is equivalent to `.,1:s[c]`. If the optional **c** is present, **db** turns off single-stepping at a subroutine call and turns it back on upon return.

**[depth] :t**  
Print a call traceback to *depth* levels. If *depth* is `0` (default), unwind the whole stack.

*[expr]* :x

If *expr* is nonzero, read and execute commands from the standard input up to end of file or :q. *expr* defaults to 1.

*See Also*

commands, core, l.out.h, od, ptrace()

## dc — Command

Desk calculator

dc [*file*]

**dc** is an arbitrary precision desk calculator. It simulates a stacking calculator with ancillary registers. Input must be entered in reverse Polish notation. **dc** maintains the expected number of decimal places during addition, subtraction, and multiplication, but the user must make an explicit request to maintain any places at all during division.

**dc** reads input from *file* if specified, and then from the standard input. **dc** accepts an arbitrary number of commands per line; moreover, spaces need not be left between them.

The *scale factor* of a number is the number of places to the right of its decimal point. The *scale factor register* controls decimal places in calculations. The scale factor does not affect addition or subtraction. It affects multiplication only if the sum of the scale factors of the two operands is greater than it. The result of every division command has as many decimal places as it specifies. It affects exponentiation in that multiplication is performed as many times as the integer part of the exponent indicates; any fractional part of the exponent is ignored.

**dc** recognizes the following commands and constructions:

*number*

Stack the value of *number*. A number is a string of symbols taken from the digits '0' through '9', and the capital letters 'A' through 'F' (usual hexadecimal notation), with an optional decimal point. An underscore '\_' as a prefix indicates a negative number. The letters retain values ten through 15, respectively, regardless of the base chosen by the user.

+ - / \* % ^

The arithmetic operations: addition(+), subtraction(-), division(/), multiplication(\*), remainder(%), and exponentiation(^). **dc** pops the two top stack elements, performs the desired operation by calling the multiprecision routine desired (see **multiprecision arithmetic**), and stacks the result.

**c** Clear the stack.

**d** Duplicate the top of the stack (so that it occupies the top two positions of the stack).

**f** Print the contents of the stack and the values of all registers.

**i** Remove the top of the stack and use its integer part as the assumed input base (default, ten). The new input base must be greater than one and less than 17.

- I** Stack the current assumed input base.
- k** Remove the top of the stack and put it in the internal scale factor register.
- K** Put the value of the internal scale register (which the **k** command sets) on the top of the stack.
- l x** Load the value of register *x* to the top of the stack. The value of register *x* is unaltered. *x* may be any character.
- o** Remove the top of the stack and use its integer part as the assumed output base (default, ten). The specified base may be any positive integer.
- O** Stack the current assumed output base.
- p** Print the top of the stack. The value remains on the stack.
- q** Quit the program; control returns to the shell **sh**.
- s x** Remove the top of the stack and store it in register *x*. The previous contents of *x* are overwritten. *x* may be any character.
- v** Replace the top of the stack by its square root.
- x** Remove the top of the stack, interpret it as a string containing a sequence of **dc** commands, and execute it.
- X** Replace the top of the stack by its scale factor (i.e., the number of decimal places it has).
- z** Place the number of occupied levels of the stack on top of the stack.
- [...]** Place the bracketed character string on top of the stack. The string may be executed subsequently with the **x** command.
- <x >x =x !<x !>x !=x**  
Remove the top two elements of the stack and compare them. If there is no **!** sign before the relation, execute register *x* if the two elements obey the relation. If a **!** sign is present, execute register *x* if the elements do not obey the relation.
- !** Interpret the rest of the line as a command to the shell **sh**. Control returns to **dc** after command execution terminates.

### Example

The following example program prints the first 20 Fibonacci numbers. The characters **l** and **I** are printed in boldface to help you tell them apart.

```

lslslslslsc
[lalbdsa+psblcl+dsc21<y]sy
lyx

```

### See Also

**bc, commands**

*Diagnostics*

**dc** produces one of the following error messages should a problem occur:

|                 |                                                   |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Stack empty     | Not enough stack elements to perform as requested |
| Out of pushdown | No more room on the stack                         |
| Nesting depth   | Too many nested execution levels                  |
| Out of space    | Too many digits demanded                          |
| Out of headers  | Too many numbers being stored                     |

*Notes*

For most purposes the infix notation of **bc** is more convenient than the Polish notation of **dc**.

**dcheck** — Command Maintenance

Directory consistency check

**dcheck** [ **-s** ] [ **-i** *inumber* ... ] *filesystem* ...

**dcheck** performs a consistency check on each specified *filesystem*. It scans all the directories in each *filesystem* and keeps counts of all i-nodes referenced. It compares these counts against the link counts maintained in the i-nodes. **dcheck** notes any discrepancies, and notes allocated i-nodes with a 0 link count.

If the **-i** switch is present, **dcheck** compares each *inumber* in the list against those in each directory. It reports matches by printing the i-number, the i-number of the parent directory, and the name of the entry.

The **-s** switch causes **dcheck** to correct the link count of errant i-nodes to the entry count.

Since **dcheck** is two-pass, the file system should be unmounted. If **-s** is used on the root file system, the system should be rebooted immediately (without performing a **sync**). The raw device should be used.

*See Also*

**check**, **dir.h**, **icheck**, **ncheck**, **sync**, **umount**

*Diagnostics*

If the link count is 0 and there are entries, the file system must be mounted and all entries removed immediately. If the link count is nonzero and the entry count is *larger*, the **-s** option must be used to make the counts agree. In all other cases there may be wasted disk space but there is no danger of losing file data.

*Notes*

In earlier releases of COHERENT, **dcheck** acted upon a default file system if none was specified.

This command has largely been replaced by **fsck**.

**dd** — Command

File conversion

**dd** [*option=value*] ...

**dd** copies an input file to an output file, while performing requested conversions. Options include case and character set conversions, byte swapping conversion for other machines, and different input and output buffer sizes. **dd** can be used with raw disk files or raw tape files to do efficient copies with large block (record) sizes. Read and write requests can be changed with the **bs** option described below.

The following list gives each available *option*. Any numbers which specify block sizes or seek positions may be written in several ways. A number followed by **w**, **b**, or **k** is multiplied by two (for words), 512 (for blocks), or 1,024 (for kilobytes), respectively, to obtain the size in bytes. A pair of such numbers separated by **x** is multiplied together to produce the size. All buffer sizes default to 512 bytes if not specified.

**bs=n** Set the size of the buffer for both input and output to *n* bytes.

**cbs=n** Set the conversion buffer size to *n* bytes (used only with character set conversions between ASCII and EBCDIC).

**conv=list** Perform conversions specified by the comma-separated *list*, which may include the following:

|                |                                                        |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ascii</b>   | Convert EBCDIC to ASCII.                               |
| <b>ebsdic</b>  | Convert ASCII to EBCDIC.                               |
| <b>ibm</b>     | Convert ASCII to EBCDIC, IBM flavor.                   |
| <b>lcase</b>   | Convert upper case to lower.                           |
| <b>noerror</b> | Continue processing on I/O errors.                     |
| <b>swab</b>    | Swap every pair of bytes before output.                |
| <b>sync</b>    | Pad input buffers with 0 bytes to size of <b>ibs</b> . |
| <b>ucase</b>   | Convert lower case to upper.                           |

**count=n** Copy a maximum of *n* input records.

**files=n** Copy a maximum of *n* input files (useful for multifile tapes).

**ibs=n** Set the input buffer size to *n* (normally used if input and output blocking sizes are to be different).

**if=file** Open *file* for input; the standard input is used when no **if=** option is given.

**obs=n** Set the output buffer size to *n*.

**of=file** Open *file* for output; the standard output is used when no **of=** option is given.

**seek=n** Seek to position *n* bytes into the output before copying (does not work on stream data such as tapes, communications devices, and pipes).

**skip=n** Read and discard the first *n* input records.

*See Also*

ASCII, commands, conv, cp, tape, tr

*Diagnostics*

The command reports the number of full and partial buffers read and written upon completion.

*Notes*

Because of differing interpretations of EBCDIC, especially for certain more exotic graphic characters such as braces and backslash, no one conversion table will be adequate for all applications. The **ebcdic** table is the American Standard of the Business Equipment Manufacturers Association. The **ibm** table seems to be more practical for line printer codes at many IBM installations.

### default – C Keyword

Default label in switch statement

**default** is a prefix used in **switch** statement. If none of the **case** labels match the parameter in the **switch** statement, then the **default** label is used. A **switch** is not required to have a **default** case, but it is good programming practice to use one.

*See Also*

C keywords, case, switch

### definitions – Overview

The Lexicon contains the following articles that define aspects of COHERENT:

- address
- alignment
- arena
- array
- bit
- bit map
- buffer
- byte
- cast
- cc0
- cc1
- cc2
- cc3
- daemon
- directory
- executable file
- field
- file
- FILE
- file descriptor
- filter
- function
- GMT

**i-node**  
**interrupt**  
**lvalue**  
**macro**  
**manifest constant**  
**modulus**  
**NULL**  
**nybble**  
**object format**  
**operator**  
**pattern**  
**pipe**  
**port**  
**precedence**  
**process**  
**pun**  
**random access**  
**ranlib**  
**read-only memory**  
**register variable**  
**root**  
**rvalue**  
**stack**  
**standard error**  
**standard input**  
**standard output**  
**stderr**  
**stdin**  
**stdout**  
**sticky bit**  
**stream**  
**structure**  
**superuser**  
**wildcards**

*See Also*  
**Lexicon**

### **deftty.h** — Header File

Define default tty settings  
**#define** <sys/deftty.h>

**deftty.h** defines the default tty settings.

*See Also*

**header files**

**deroff** — Command

Remove text formatting control information

**deroff** [-w] [-x] [*file* ...]

**deroff** removes text formatting control information from each input text *file*, or from the standard input if no *file* is specified. It regards all lines that begin with '.' or '"' as being **nroff** commands and deletes them. **deroff** also recognizes some additional control lines. It deletes **eqn** information (between **.EQ** and **.EN** lines), **tbl** information (between **.TS** and **.TE** lines), and macro definitions. It also deletes embedded **.eqn** requests. It expands source file inclusion with **.so** and **.nx** requests, with the proviso that no input file is read twice. It also deletes some **troff** escape sequences, such as those for font and size change.

When the **-x** flag is present, **deroff** uses some additional knowledge about the **nroff -ms** macro package.

When the **-w** flag is present, **deroff** divides the remaining text into words and prints them to the standard output, one per line. A **word** comprises a sequence of letters, digits, and apostrophes which commences with a letter. **deroff** strips apostrophes from the output. All other characters between words are not printed. The spelling checking programs **spell** and **typo** use this option.

*See Also*

**nroff**, **spell**, **typo**

**device drivers** — Overview

A *device driver* is a program that controls the action of one of the physical devices attached to your computer system.

The following table lists the device drivers included with this edition of the COHERENT system. The first field gives the device's major device number; the second gives its name; and the third describes it. When a major device number has no driver associated with it, that device is available for a driver yet to be written.

|     |              |                                       |
|-----|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| 0:  | <b>*mem</b>  | Interface to memory                   |
| 1:  | <b>tty</b>   | Primitive tty driver                  |
| 2:  | <b>kb/mm</b> | Keyboard and video                    |
| 3:  | <b>lp</b>    | Parallel line printer                 |
| 4:  | <b>fl</b>    | Floppy drive                          |
| 5:  | <b>a10</b>   | Serial line 0 (COM1 and COM3)         |
| 6:  | <b>a11</b>   | Serial line 1 (COM2 and COM4)         |
| 7:  | <b>hs</b>    | Generic polled multi-port serial card |
| 8:  | <b>rm</b>    | Dual RAM disk                         |
| 9:  |              |                                       |
| 10: |              |                                       |
| 11: | <b>at</b>    | AT hard disk                          |
| 12: |              |                                       |
| 13: | <b>scsi</b>  | SCSI device driver                    |
| 14: |              |                                       |
| 15: |              |                                       |
| 16: |              |                                       |



17:  
 18:  
 19:  
 20:  
 21:  
 22:  
 23:   **sem**           System V compatible semaphores  
 24:   **shm**           System V subset shared memory  
 25:   **msg**           System V compatible messaging  
 26:  
 27:  
 28:  
 29:  
 30:  
 31:

Also included are drivers for the following devices:

**console**       Console driver  
**ct**           Controlling terminal driver  
**null**         The "bit bucket"

#### *See Also*

**at, boot, com, console, ct, fl, Lexicon, lp, mboot, mem, msg, null, sem, shm, tape, termio**

#### *Notes*

See the Release Notes for your release of COHERENT for a list of supported devices and device drivers.

The devices **msg**, **sem**, and **shm** are loadable drivers that can be loaded into memory using the command **drvld**. See their respective entries for more information.

## **df** — Command

Measure free space on disk

**df** [-ait] *device*

**df** measures the amount of free space left on a floppy disk, on a logical device on a hard disk, or on a RAM disk. *device* is the name of the device you wish to check; for example, to check the amount of space left on the disk in filesystem **x**, type:

```
df /x
```

The default device is the one you are currently using.

**df** recognizes the following options:

- a   Prints the amount of space left on all devices.
- i   Show the number and percentage of i-nodes available.
- t   Show the total disk space available.

*See Also*  
**commands**

## **diff** — Command

Summarize differences between two files  
**diff** [-bdefh] [-c *symbol*] *file1 file2*

**diff** compares *file1* with *file2*, and prints a summary of the changes needed to turn *file1* into *file2*.

Two options involve input file specification. First, the standard input may be specified in place of a file by entering a hyphen '-' in place of *file1* or *file2*. Second, if *file1* is a directory, **diff** looks within that directory for a file that has the same name as *file2*, then compares *file2* with the file of the same name in directory *file1*.

The default output script has lines in the following format:

```
1,2 c 3,4
```

The numbers *1,2* refer to line ranges in *file1*, and *3,4* to ranges in *file2*. The range is abbreviated to a single number if the first number is the same as the second. The command was chosen from among the **ed** commands 'a', 'c', and 'd'. **diff** then prints the text from each of the two files. Text associated with *file1* is preceded by '<', whereas text associated with *file2* is preceded by '>'.

The following summarizes **diff**'s options.

- b Ignore trailing blanks and treat more than one blank in an input line as a single blank. Spaces and tabs are considered to be blanks for this comparison.
- c *symbol*  
Produce output suitable for the C preprocessor **cpp**; the output contains **#ifdef**, **#ifndef**, **#else**, and **#endif** lines. *symbol* is the string used to build the **#ifdef** statements. If you define *symbol* to the C preprocessor **cpp**, it will produce *file2* as its output; otherwise, it will produce *file1*. This option does *not* work for files that already contain **#ifdef**, **#ifndef**, **#else**, and **#endif** statements.
- e Create an **ed** script that will convert *file1* into *file2*.
- f Produce a script in the same manner as the -e option, but with line numbers taken directly from the two input files. This will work properly only if applied from end to beginning; it cannot be used directly by **ed**.
- h Compare large files that have a minimal number of differences. This option uses an algorithm that is not limited by file length, but may not discover all differences.
- d Select the -h algorithm only for files larger than 25,000 bytes; otherwise, use the normal algorithm.

*See Also*  
**ed, egrep, commands**

### Diagnostics

**diff**'s exit status is zero when the files are identical, one when they are different, and two if a problem was encountered (e.g., could not open a file).

### Notes

**diff** cannot handle files with more than 32,000 lines. Handing **diff** a file that exceeds that limit will cause it to fail, with unpredictable side effects.

## diff3 — Command

Summarize differences among three files

**diff3** [-ex3] *file1 file2 file3*

**diff3** summarizes the differences among three text files. Each difference encountered is headed by one of the following separators, which categorizes how many of the three input files differ in a given range. The headers are as follows

====

All of the files are different.

====n

Only the *n*th file differs, where *n* may be 1, 2, or 3.

For each set of changes marked as above, the actual change is indicated for each file using a notation similar to commands to **ed**. For each *file<sub>n</sub>* the following is printed:

*n: la* Text is to be appended after line *l* in *file<sub>n</sub>*.

*n: l,mc* The text from line *l* to line *m* is to be changed for *file<sub>n</sub>*. The original text from *file<sub>n</sub>* follows this line. If this text is identical for two of the files, only the latter (higher numbered) of the two is printed.

Options are available to print a script of commands to **ed**. With the **-e** option, a script that will make all changes between *file2* and *file3* to *file1* is produced. This script is based upon all changes flagged with ==== or ====3 separators, as described above.

The **-x** option prints only those changes where all three files differ, i.e., those flagged with ==.=.

The **-3** option requests only those changes where *file3* differs.

### Example

The following command sequence produces a script, applies it to *file1*, and sends the result to the standard output.

```
(diff3 -e file1 file2 file3; echo '1,$p') | ed - file1
```

### Files

/tmp/d3\*  
/usr/lib/diff3

### See Also

commands, diff, ed

### *Diagnostics*

An exit status of zero indicates all three files were identical, one indicates differences, and two indicates some other failure.

### **dir.h** – Header File

Directory format  
**#include** <dir.h>

A COHERENT directory is exactly like an ordinary file, except that a user's process may write on it only through system calls such as **creat**, **link**, **mknod**, or **unlink**. The system distinguishes directories from other types of files by the mode word **S\_IFDIR** in the i-node. (For more information on i-nodes, see **stat**).

Every directory is an array of entries of the following structure, as defined in the header file **dir.h**:

```
#define DIRSIZ 14

struct direct {
 ino_t d_ino; /* i-number */
 char d_name[DIRSIZ]; /* name */
};
```

Any entry in which **d\_ino** has a value of zero is unused.

The command **mkdir** creates a directory, with the convention that its first two entries are **'.'** and **'..'**. The name **'.'** is self-referential — a link to the directory itself. The name **'..'** is a link to the parent directory. Because the root directory has no parent, its **'..'** is a link to itself.

The **d\_ino** entry of the directory structure is stored in the file system in canonical form, as described in **canon.h**.

*See Also*

**canon.h**, header files, **mkdir**, **stat()**

### **directory** – Definition

A **directory** is a table that maps names to files; in other words, it associates the names of a file with their locations on the mass storage device. Under some operating systems, directories are also files, and can be handled like a file.

Directories allow files to be organized on a mass storage device in a rational manner, by function or owner.

*See Also*

**definitions**, file

### **dirent.h** – Header File

Define **dirent**  
**#include** <dirent.h>

**dirent.h** defines the manifest constant **dirent**.

*See Also*  
header files

## disable — Command Maintenance

Disable terminal port  
*/etc/disable port...*

**disable** tells the COHERENT system not to create a login process for each given asynchronous *port*. For example, the command

```
/etc/disable com1r
```

disables port */dev/com1r*. **disable** changes the entry for each given *port* in the terminal characteristics file */etc/ttys*, and signals **init** to rescan the *ttys* file.

The command **enable** enables a port. The command **ttystat** checks whether a port is enabled or disabled.

### *Files*

*/etc/ttys* — Terminal characteristics file

### *See Also*

**com**, **commands**, **enable**, **login**, **ttys**, **ttystat**

### *Diagnostics*

**disable** normally returns one if it disables the *port* successfully and zero if not. If more than one *port* is specified, **disable** returns the success or failure status of the last port it finds. It returns -1 if it cannot find any given *port*. An exit status of -2 indicates an error.

### *Notes*

Only the superuser **root** can execute **disable**.

## do — C Keyword

Introduce a loop

**do** is a C control statement that introduces a loop. Unlike **for** and **while** loops, the condition in a **do** loop is evaluated *after* the operation is performed. **do** always works in tandem with **while**; for example

```
do {
 puts("Next entry? ");
 fflush(stdout);
} while(getchar() != EOF);
```

prints a prompt on the screen and waits for the user to reply. The **do** loop is convenient in this instance because the prompt must appear at least once on the screen before the user replies.

### *See Also*

**break**, **C keywords**, **continue**, **while**

**dos** — Command

Transfer files to/from an MS-DOS file system

**dos dlrtx**[*flags*] [*device*][*file ...*]

The command **dos** allows the COHERENT user to manipulate an MS-DOS file system, which may be either a hard-disk partition or a floppy disk. It can format or label an MS-DOS file system, list the files in it, transfer files between it and COHERENT, or delete files from it.

The given *device* must be a special file that specifies an MS-DOS file system, such as floppy-disk drive `/dev/fha0` or hard-disk drive `/dev/at0a`. The default *device* is `/dev/dos`, which the system administrator should link to the most commonly used device name.

**dos** converts between the differing file-name conventions of COHERENT and MS-DOS. An MS-DOS *file* argument may be specified in lower or upper case, using '/' as the path-name separator. When transferring files from MS-DOS to COHERENT, **dos** converts an MS-DOS filename to a COHERENT filename in lower case only. If the MS-DOS filename contains no extension, the COHERENT filename contains no '.'. When transferring files from COHERENT to MS-DOS, **dos** converts all alphabetic characters in a COHERENT filename to upper case; if a period '.' appears at the beginning or end of a file name, **dos** converts it to '\_'. **dos** truncates the part of the filename before the last '.' to a maximum of eight characters and truncates the extension to a maximum of three characters.

The command line must specify exactly one of the following *functions*.

- d** Delete each *file* from the MS-DOS filesystem. This option also allows the user to delete empty directories.
- l** Label the MS-DOS file system. The command line must specify exactly one *file* argument, which gives the label.
- r** Replace each *file* on the MS-DOS file system with the COHERENT file of the same name. If a given *file* argument specifies a COHERENT directory, **dos** replaces its subdirectories recursively to the MS-DOS file system unless the *s* flag is used. If no *file* is specified, **dos** copies all files in the current directory to the MS-DOS file system.
- t** List the files on the MS-DOS file system. If no *file* argument is given, **dos** lists the entire MS-DOS filesystem; otherwise, it lists each *file*. If a *file* argument specifies an MS-DOS subdirectory, **dos** lists its contents.
- x** Extract each *file* from the MS-DOS file system to a COHERENT file of the same name. If a given *file* argument specifies an MS-DOS subdirectory, **dos** extracts its contents recursively unless the *s* flag is used. If no *file* is given, **dos** extracts all files from the MS-DOS file system to the current COHERENT directory.

The following *flags* are available.

- a** Perform ASCII newline conversion on file transfer. When moving files from COHERENT to MS-DOS, this option converts each COHERENT newline character '\n' (ASCII LF) to an MS-DOS end-of-line (ASCII CR and LF); when moving files from MS-DOS to COHERENT, it does the opposite. By default, **dos** per-

forms binary file transfer, without newline conversion.

- k** Keep the file modification time (mtime) on extract and replace operations. By default, **dos** gives extracted or replaced files the current time. With this option, **dos** gives the extracted or replaced file the same time as the original file.
- n** List files by newest file first rather than in alphabetical order. This option applies only to the table-of-contents function.
- p** Perform a piped extract or replace (for use in pipelines). The command line must specify exactly one *file* argument. For extract, **dos** reads the given *file* and writes it to the standard output. For replace, **dos** reads the standard input and writes it to the given *file*.
- s** Suppress extraction or replacement of subdirectories. By default, **dos** extracts or replaces subdirectories recursively.
- v** Verbose option. Provide additional information about each function performed.

*See Also*

**commands, fdformat, mkfs**

*Notes*

**dos** does not work with MS-DOS hard-disk file systems that hold more than 64-kilobyte clusters (i.e., with four-byte FAT entries rather than 1.5-byte or two-byte FAT entries). It does not understand MS-DOS 3.3 extended disk partitions (where a single partition contains more than one MS-DOS filesystem).

**dos** does not check for unusual characters in a COHERENT file name or for file names that differ from other file names only in case.

*use floppy*  
 1.44M = fva $\emptyset$   
 720K = fga $\emptyset$

## double — C Keyword

Data type

A **double** is the data type that encodes a double-precision floating-point number. On most machines, `sizeof(double)` is defined as four machine words, or eight **chars**. If you wish your code to be portable, do *not* use routines that depend on a **double** being 64 bits long.

Different formats are used to encode **doubles** on various machines. These formats include IEEE, DECVAX, and BCD (binary coded decimal), as described in the entry for **float**.

*See Also*

**C keywords, data formats, float, portability**

## drvld — Command

Load a loadable driver into memory  
`/etc/drvld driver`

**drvld** loads a loadable driver into memory. *driver* names a loadable driver. Only the superuser **root** can run **drvld**.

A loadable driver is one that is not linked into the kernel when it was built. The current suite of loadable drivers include cartridge tape driver, multiplexor, and a variety of add-

on cards. The COHERENT drivers for shared memory, semaphores, and message passing are also implemented as loadable drivers, due to the efficient size of the COHERENT kernel.

Note that **drvld** expects to find its entry in directory **/drv**, not in **/dev**.

### *Files*

**/drv** — directory containing loadable drivers

### *See Also*

**commands, device drivers, sload()**

### *Notes*

COHERENT supports user-written, loadable device drivers generated with the COHERENT device-driver kit.

## **du** — **Command**

Summarize disk usage

**du** [-a] [-s] [*directory* ...]

**du** prints the total number of disk blocks used by each named *directory*. If no *directory* is specified, **du** prints the disk usage of the current directory.

The **-a** (all) option causes **du** to print a line for every file and directory in the substructure. Normally it prints a line only for each directory.

The **-s** (summary) option prints only the line for the top level directory.

**du** understands links; it adds a file with more than one link to it into the total only once.

### *See Also*

**commands, df, find**

### *Notes*

**du** does not count file-system overhead such as indirect blocks, so occasionally a directory does not fit on a file system which appears to contain enough room for it.

## **dump** — **Command**

File system dump

**dump** [*options*] [*argument* ...]

**dump** dumps either all or a portion of file system *argument* to magnetic tape or floppy disks. File-system dumps are in a format that permits you to restore all or some of the files to the original file system, and to select files either by name or by i-number.

A file-system dump includes all files changed since the *dump since* date, plus each file's full path name (for the benefit of **dumpdir**).

*options* specifies both the dump-since date and the processing options. It is made up of characters from the set **0123456789bdfsSuv**, which have the following meanings.

**0-9** The digit gives the level number of the dump. The dump-since date is the most recent date in the dump-date file **/etc/ddate** that is (1) associated with this file system and (2) has a level number less than the current dump level. For example, if you request a level-3 dump, **dump** will back up all files not backed up since the



last level-2 dump. A level-0 dump by definition backs up all files in the file system.

- b** The next *argument* gives the output tape's *blocking factor*. The blocking factor is the number of **dumpdata** structures in each tape block. The default blocking factor is 20.
- d** The next *argument* gives the density of the output tape in bytes per inch. The default density is 1600 bytes per inch (bpi). **dump** uses the density to compute the quantity of tape needed.
- f** The next *argument* gives the path name of the output file. If no **f** option is given, **/dev/dump** is assumed.
- s** The next *argument* gives the length of the dump tape in feet. **dump** keeps a running total of the quantity of tape it has written, and it asks for a new reel if it appears that the end of the reel is near. The default length is 2,300 feet.
- S** The next *argument* gives the size of the dump output device, in blocks. This is used only if you are backing up the file system to floppy disks or streaming cartridge tape rather than to nine-track magnetic tape.
- u** If the dump completes without error, update the record of successful dumps kept in file **/etc/ddate**. There is an entry in this file for every file system and every dump level.
- v** Inform the user of the 'dump since' date and the length of tape used in feet. The length is useful for computing the quantity of tape remaining if multiple dumps are written onto a single reel of tape.

If no level number is given, **dump** assumes the *options 9u*.

### Files

**/dev/dump** — Default dump device

**/etc/ddate** — Dump date file

### See Also

**commands, dumpdate, dumpdir, restor**

*Administering COHERENT*

### Diagnostics

Most errors are fatal, caused by a table overflowing or a read or write error on the input or output device.

## dumpdate — Command

Print dump dates

**dumpdate** [*filesystem ...*]

**dumpdate** reads through the dump date file **/etc/ddate** and displays the dump date records associated with each specified *filesystem*.

If no *filesystem* is specified, the records for all file systems are displayed.

### *Files*

**/etc/ddate** — Dump date file

### *See Also*

**commands, dump, dumpdir, restor**

## **dumpdir** — Command

Print the directory of a dump  
**dumpdir** [**af** [*argument ...*]]

**dumpdir** reads through a file system dump created by the **dump** command, gathers up its directory blocks, and displays the names and i-numbers of all files on the dump.

The **a** option causes **dumpdir** to display the directory entries for **'.'** and **'..'**, which are normally suppressed.

The **f** option causes the next *argument* to be taken as the pathname of the dump device, which is otherwise assumed to be **/dev/dump**.

If no options are specified, **dumpdir** reads from the default dump device **/dev/dump** and suppresses the printing of **'.'** and **'..'** entries.

### *Files*

**/dev/dump** — Default dump device

**/tmp/ddXXXXXX** — To hold directory blocks

### *See Also*

**commands, dump**

### *Diagnostics*

The dump/restore format puts a header at the beginning of the dump that includes all the information about what lives where in the dump. **dumpdir** reads this header to discover what files are in the dump. If the header is too large to fit onto one disk, **dumpdir** will then prompt you to insert the additional disk or disks; if this happens, insert the requested disk and then type **<return>**.

## **dumptape.h** — Header File

Define data structures used on dump tapes  
**#include <dumptape.h>**

**dumptape.h** defines the data structures used on dump tapes. A dump tape begins with a header record. This contains the attributes of the tape. The remainder of the tape is filled with arrays of dumpdata records. The map comes first, then all the directories, then all the files.

### *See Also*

**dump, header files**

**dup()** – COHERENT System Call (libc)

Duplicate a file descriptor

**int dup(*fd*) int *fd*;**

**dup** duplicates the existing file descriptor *fd*, and returns the new descriptor. The returned value is the smallest file descriptor that is not already in use by the calling process.

*See Also*

**COHERENT system calls, dup2(), fopen(), fdopen(), STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**dup** returns a number less than zero when an error occurs, such as a bad file descriptor or no file descriptor available.

**dup2()** – COHERENT System Call (libc)

Duplicate a file descriptor

**int dup2(*fd, newfd*) int *fd, newfd*;**

**dup2** duplicates the file descriptor *fd*. Unlike its cousin **dup**, **dup2** allows you to specify a new file descriptor *newfd*, rather than having the system select one. If *newfd* is already open, the system closes it before assigning it to the new file. **dup2** returns the duplicate descriptor.

*See Also*

**COHERENT system calls, dup(), STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**dup2** returns a number less than zero when an error occurs, such as a bad file descriptor or no file descriptor available.

## E

### **ebcdic.h** — Header File

Define manifest constants for non-printable EBCDIC characters  
**#include <ebcdic.h>**

**ebcdic.h** defines manifest constants for non-printable characters used in the EBCDIC character set. The constants correspond to those defined in the header file **ascii.h**.

*See Also*

**ASCII, ascii.h, header files**

### **echo** — Command

Repeat/expand an argument  
**echo [-n] [argument ...]**

**echo** prints each *argument* on the standard output, placing a space between each *argument*. It appends a newline to the end of the output unless the **-n** flag is present.

If *argument* is a variable, **echo** will expand it before printing it. For example, if you type:

```
set ECHO=hello
echo $ECHO
```

the shell prints

```
hello
```

on your screen.

*See Also*

**commands, sh**

### **ed** — Command

Interactive line editor  
**ed [-] [+cmopsv] [file]**

**ed** is the COHERENT system's interactive line editor.

**ed** is a line-oriented interactive text editor. With it, you can locate and replace text patterns, move or copy blocks of text, and print parts of the text. **ed** can read text from input files and can write all or part of the edited text to other files.

**ed** reads commands from the standard input, usually one command per line. Normally, **ed** does not prompt for commands. If the optional *file* argument is given, **ed** edits the given file, as if the *file* were read with the **e** command described below.

**ed** manipulates a copy of the text in memory rather than with the file itself. No changes to a file occur until the user writes edited text with the **w** command. Large files can be divided with **split** or edited with the stream editor **sed**.

**ed** remembers some information to simplify its commands. The *current line* is typically the line most recently edited or printed. When **ed** reads in a file, the last line read be-

comes the current line. The *current file name* is the last file name specified in an **e** or **f** command. The *current search pattern* is the last pattern specified in a search specification.

**ed** identifies text lines by integer line numbers, beginning with one for the first line. Several special forms identify a line or a range of lines, as follows:

- n** A decimal number *n* specifies the *n*th line of the text.
- .** A period '.' specifies the current line.
- \$** A dollar sign '\$' specifies the last line of the text.
- +,-** Simple arithmetic may be performed on line numbers.

**/pattern/**

Search forward from the current line for the next occurrence of the *pattern*. If **ed** finds no occurrence before the end of the text, the search wraps to the beginning of the text. Patterns, also called *regular expressions*, are described in detail below.

**?pattern?**

Search backwards from the current line to the previous occurrence of the *pattern*. If **ed** finds no occurrence before the beginning of the text, the search wraps to the end of the text.

- 'x** Lines marked with the **kx** command described below are identified by 'x'. The *x* may be any lower-case letter.
- n,m** Line specifiers separated by a comma ',' specify the range of lines between the two given lines, inclusive.
- n;m** Line specifiers separated by a semicolon ';' specify the range of lines between the two given lines, inclusive. Normally, **ed** updates the current line after it executes each command. If a semicolon ';' rather than a comma separates two line specifiers, **ed** updates the current line before reading the second.
- \*** An asterisk '\*' specifies all lines; it is equivalent to **1,\$**.

### Commands

**ed** commands consist of a single letter, which may be preceded by one or two specifiers that give the line or lines to which the command is to be applied. The following command summary uses the notations [*n*] and [*n*,*m*] to refer to an optional line specifier and an optional range, respectively. These default to the current line when omitted, except where otherwise noted. A semicolon ';' may be used instead of a comma ',' to separate two line specifiers.

- .** Print the current line. Also, a line containing only a period '.' marks the end of appended, changed, or inserted text.
- [*n*] Print given line. If no line number is given (i.e., the command line consists only of a newline character), print the line that follows the current line.
- [*n*]= Print the specified line number (default: last line number).

- [n]&** Print a screen of 23 lines; equivalent to *n,n+22p*.
- !** *line* Pass the given *line* to the shell **sh** for execution. **ed** prompts with an exclamation point **!** when execution is completed.
- ?** Print a brief description of the most recent error.
- [n]a** Append new text after line *n*. Terminate new text with line that contains only a period **.**.
- [n[,m]]c**  
Change specified lines to new text. Terminate new text with a line that contains only a period **.**.
- [n[,m]]d[p]**  
Delete specified lines. If **p** follows, print new current line.
- e** [*file*]  
Edit the specified *file* (default: current file name). An error occurs if there are unsaved changes. Reissuing the command after the error message forces **ed** to edit the *file*.
- E** [*file*]  
Edit the specified *file* (default: current file name). No error occurs if there are unsaved changes.
- f** [*file*]  
Change the current file name to *file* and print it. If *file* is omitted, print the current file name.
- [n[,m]]g/[pattern]/commands**  
Globally execute *commands* for each line in the specified range (default: all lines) that contains the *pattern* (default: current search pattern). The *commands* may extend over several lines, with all but the last terminated by **\**.
- [n]i** Insert text before line *n*. Terminate new text with a line that contains only a period **.**.
- [n[,m]]j[p]**  
Join specified lines into one line. If *m* is not specified, use range *n, n+1*. If no range is specified, join the current line with the next line. With optional **p**, print resulting line.
- [n]kx**  
Mark given line with lower-case letter *x*.
- [n[,m]]l**  
List selected lines, interpreting non-graphic characters.
- [n[,m]]m[d]**  
Move selected lines to follow line *d* (default: current line).
- o options**  
Change the given *options*. The *options* may consist of an optional sign **+** or **-**, followed by one or more of the letters **cmopsv**. Options are explained below.

- [n[,m]][p]**  
Print selected lines. The **p** is optional.
- q** Quit editing and exit. An error occurs if there are unsaved changes. Reissuing the command after the error message forces **ed** to exit.
- Q** Quit editing and exit. No error occurs if there are unsaved changes.
- [n]r [file]**  
Read *file* into current text after given line (default: last line).
- [n[,m]]s[k]/[pattern1]/pattern2/[g][p]**  
Search for *pattern1* (default, remembered search pattern) and substitute *pattern2* for *k*th occurrence (default, first) on each line of the given range. If **g** follows, substitute every occurrence on each line. If **p** follows, print the resulting current line.
- [n[,m]]t[d]**  
Transfer (copy) selected lines to follow line *d* (default, current line).
- [n]u[p]**  
Undo effect of last substitute command. If optional **p** specified, print undone line. The specified line must be the last substituted line.
- [n[,m]]v/[pattern]/commands**  
Globally execute *commands* for each line in the specified range (default: all lines) not containing the *pattern* (default: current search pattern). The *commands* may extend over several lines, with all but the last terminated by '\'. The **v** command is like the **g** command, except the sense of the search is reversed.
- [n[,m]]w [file]**  
Write selected lines (default, all lines) to *file* (default, current file name). The previous contents of *file*, if any, are lost.
- [n[,m]]W [file]**  
Write specified lines (default, all lines) to the end of *file* (default, current file name). Like **w**, but appends to *file* instead of truncating it.

### Patterns

Substitution commands and search specifications may include *patterns*, also called *regular expressions*. A non-special character in a pattern matches itself. Special characters include the following.

- ^** Match beginning of line, unless it appears immediately after '[' (see below).
- \$** Match end of line.
- \*** Matches zero or more repetitions of preceding character.
- .** Matches any character except newline.

**[chars]**  
Matches any one of the enclosed *chars*. Ranges of letters or digits may be indicated using '-'.  
 For example, **[a-z]** matches any lowercase letter, and **[0-9]** matches any digit.

**[*^chars*]**

Matches any character *except* one of the enclosed *chars*. Ranges of letters or digits may be indicated using '-'.  
 \c Disregard special meaning of character *c*.

\c Disregard special meaning of character *c*.

**\(*pattern*\)**

Delimit substring *pattern* for use with \d, described below.

The replacement part *pattern2* of the substitute command may also use the following:

& Insert characters matched by *pattern1*.

\d Insert substring delimited by *d*th occurrence of delimiters '\(' and '\)', where *d* is a digit.

**Options**

The user may specify *ed* options on the command line, in the environment, or with the *o* command. The available options are as follows:

**c** Print character counts on *e*, *r*, and *w* commands.

**m** Allow multiple commands per line.

**o** Print line counts instead of character counts on *e*, *r*, and *w* commands.

**p** Prompt with an "\*" for each command.

**s** Match lower-case letters in a *pattern* to both upper-case and lower-case text characters.

**v** Print verbose versions of error messages.

The *c* option is normally set, and all others are normally reset. Options may be set on the command line with a leading '+' sign. The '-' command line option resets the *c* option.

Options may be set in the environment with an assignment, such as

```
export ED+=cv
```

Options may be set with the '+' prefix or reset with the '-' prefix.

**See Also**

**commands, me, sed**

*Introduction to ed*

**Diagnostics**

*ed* usually prints only the diagnostic '?' on any error. When the verbose option *v* is specified, the '?' is followed by a brief description of the nature of the error.

**egrep — Command**

Extended pattern search

```
egrep [option ...] [pattern] [file ...]
```

**egrep** is an extended and faster version of **grep**. It searches each *file* for occurrences of *pattern* (also called a regular expression). If no *file* is specified, it searches the standard input. Normally, it prints each line matching the *pattern*.



### Wildcards

The simplest *patterns* accepted by **egrep** are ordinary alphanumeric strings. Like **ed**, **egrep** can also process *patterns* that include the following wildcard characters:

- ^ Match beginning of line, unless it appears immediately after '[' (see below).
- \$ Match end of line.
- \* Match zero or more repetitions of preceding character.
- .

#### [chars]

Match any one of the enclosed *chars*. Ranges of letters or digits may be indicated using '-'.  
 [^chars]

#### [^chars]

Match any character *except* one of the enclosed *chars*. Ranges of letters or digits may be indicated using '-'.  
 \c

Disregard special meaning of character *c*.

### Metacharacters

In addition, **egrep** accepts the following additional metacharacters:

- | Match the preceding pattern *or* the following pattern. For example, the pattern **cat|dog** matches either **cat** or **dog**. A newline within the *pattern* has the same meaning as '|'.  
 + Match one or more occurrences of the immediately preceding pattern element; it works like '\*', except it matches at least one occurrence instead of zero or more occurrences.  
 ? Match zero or one occurrence of the preceding element of the pattern.  
 (...) Parentheses may be used to group patterns. For example, **(Ivan)+** matches a sequence of one or more occurrences of the four letters 'I' 'v' 'a' or 'n'.

Because the metacharacters '\*', '?', '\$', '(', ')', '[', ']', and '|' are also special to the shell **sh**, patterns that contain those literal characters must be quoted by enclosing *pattern* within single quotation marks.

### Options

The following lists the available options:

- b With each output line, print the block number in which the line started (used to search file systems).
- c Print how many lines match, rather than the lines themselves.
- e The next argument is *pattern* (useful if the pattern starts with '-').
- f The next argument is a file that contains a list of patterns separated by newlines; there is no *pattern* argument.

- h When more than one *file* is specified, output lines are normally accompanied by the file name; -h suppresses this.
- l Print the name of each file that contains the string, rather than the lines themselves. This is useful when you are constructing a batch file.
- n When a line is printed, also print its number within the file.
- s Suppress all output, just return exit status.
- v Print a line only if the pattern is *not* found in the line.
- y Lower-case letters in the pattern match lower-case *and* upper-case letters on the input lines. A letter escaped with `\` in the pattern must be matched in exactly that case.

### *See Also*

**awk**, **commands**, **ed**, **expr**, **grep**, **lex**, **sed**

### *Diagnostics*

**egrep** returns an exit status of zero for success, one for no matches, and two for error.

### *Notes*

Besides the difference in the range of patterns allowed, **egrep** uses a deterministic finite automaton (DFA) for the search. It builds the DFA dynamically, so it begins doing useful work immediately. This means that **egrep** is much faster than **grep**, often by more than an order of magnitude, and is considerably faster than earlier pattern-searching commands, on almost any length of file.

## **else — C Keyword**

Introduce a conditional statement

**else** is the flip side of an **if** statement: if the condition described in the **if** statement fails, then the statements introduced by the **else** statement are executed. For example,

```
if (getchar() == EOF)
 exit(0);
else
 dosomething();
```

exits if the user types EOF, but does something if the user types anything else.

### *See Also*

**C keywords**, **if**

## **enable — Command**

Enable terminal port  
*/etc/enable port...*

The COHERENT system is a multiuser operating system; it allows many users to use the system simultaneously. An asynchronous communication *port* connects each user to the system, normally by a terminal or a modem attached to the port. The system communicates with the port by means of a character special file in directory `/dev`, such as `/dev/com3r` or `/dev/com2l`.

The COHERENT system will not allow a user to log in on a port until the system creates a *login process* for the port. The **enable** command tells the system to create a login process for each given *port*. For example, the command

```
/etc/enable com1r
```

enables port **/dev/com1r**.

**enable** changes the entry for each given *port* in the terminal characteristics file **/etc/ttys**. The baud rate specified in **/etc/ttys** must be the appropriate baud rate for the terminal or modem connected to the port. See the Lexicon entry for **ttys** for more information.

The command **disable** disables a port. The command **ttystat** checks whether a port is enabled or disabled.

### Files

**/etc/ttys** — Terminal characteristics file  
**/dev/com\*** — Devices serial ports

### See Also

**com**, **commands**, **disable**, **getty**, **login**, **ttys**, **ttystat**

### Diagnostics

**enable** normally returns one if it enables the *port* successfully and zero if not. If more than one *port* is specified, **enable** returns the success or failure status of the last port it finds. It returns -1 if it cannot find any given *port*. An exit status of -2 indicates an error.

### Notes

It is not recommended that you attempt to enable a port that is already enabled. To make sure, run **/etc/disable** before running **/etc/enable**.

Only the superuser **root** can execute **enable**.

## end — Linker-Defined Symbol

```
extern int end[];
```

**end** is the location after the uninitialized data segment. It is defined by the linker when it binds the program together for execution. The value of **end** is merely an address. The location to which it points contains no known value, and may be illegal memory locations for the program. The value of **end** does not change while the program is running.

### Example

```
main()
{
 extern int end[];
 printf("end=%lx\n", (long) end);
}
```

*See Also*

**etext**, **ld**, **linker-defined symbols**, **malloc()**

**endgrent()** — General Function (libc)

Close group file

**#include** <grp.h>

**endgrent()**

**endgrent** closes the file */etc/group*. It returns **NULL** if an error occurs.

*Files*

*/etc/group*

<grp.h>

*See Also*

**general functions**, **group**

**endpwent()** — General Function (libc)

Close password file

**#include** <pwd.h>

**endpwent()**

The COHERENT system has five routines that search the file */etc/passwd*, which contains information about every user of the system. **endpwent** closes the password file.

*Files*

*/etc/passwd*

<pwd.h>

*See Also*

**general functions**, **getpwent()**, **getpwnam()**, **getpwuid()**, **pwd.h**, **setpwent()**

*Diagnostics*

**endpwent** returns **NULL** for any error or on end of file.

**enum** — C Keyword

Declare a type and identifiers

An **enum** declaration is a data type whose syntax resembles those of the **struct** and **union** declarations. It lets you enumerate the legal value for a given variable. For example,

```
enum opinion {yes, maybe, no} GUESS;
```

declares type **opinion** can have one of three values: **yes**, **no**, and **maybe**. It also declares the variable **GUESS** to be of type **opinion**.

As with a **struct** or **union** declaration, the tag (**opinion** in this example) is optional; if present, it may be used in subsequent declarations. For example, the statement

```
register enum opinion *op;
```

declares a register pointer to an object of type **opinion**.

All enumerated identifiers must be distinct from all other identifiers in the program. The identifiers act as constants and be used wherever constants are appropriate.

COHERENT assigns values to the identifiers from left to right, normally beginning with zero and increasing by one. In the above example, the values of **yes**, **no**, and **maybe** are set, respectively, to one, two, and three. The values often are **ints**, although if the range of values is small enough, the **enum** will be an **unsigned char**. If an identifier in the declaration is followed by an equal sign and a constant, the identifier is assigned the given value, and subsequent values increase by one from that value; for example,

```
enum opinion {yes=50, no, maybe} guess;
```

sets the values of the identifiers **yes**, **no**, and **maybe** to 50, 51, and 52, respectively.

*See Also*

**C keywords**

## **environ — Technical Information**

Process environment

```
extern char **environ;
```

**environ** is an array of strings, called the *environment* of a process. By convention, each string has the form

```
name=value
```

Normally, each process inherits the environment of its parent process. The shell **sh** and various forms of **exec** can change the environment. The shell adds the name and value of each shell variable marked for *export* to the environment of subsequent commands. The shell adds assignments given on the same line as a command to the environment of the command, without affecting subsequent commands.

*See Also*

**exec**, **getenv()**, **sh**, **technical information**

## **environmental variables — Overview**

The *environment* is a set of information that is read by all programs that run on your system. It consists of one or more *environmental variables* that you set. For example, when you set the environmental variable **PATH**, you tell COHERENT that you wish to pass this information to all programs on your system, including COHERENT itself.

By changing the environment, you can change the way a command works without rewriting any commands that you may have embedded in batch files, scripts, or **makefiles**.

COHERENT uses the following environmental variables to set its environment. The programs that you write may use others that you define yourself, if you wish.

|                  |                                                    |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ASKCC</b>     | Have mail prompt for CC names                      |
| <b>HOME</b>      | User's home directory                              |
| <b>LASTERROR</b> | Program that last generated an error               |
| <b>MAIL</b>      | File that holds user's mail messages               |
| <b>PATH</b>      | Directories that hold executable files             |
| <b>PS1</b>       | User's default prompt                              |
| <b>PS2</b>       | Prompt when unbalanced quotation marks span a line |
| <b>SHELL</b>     | Name the default shell                             |
| <b>TERM</b>      | Name the default terminal type                     |
| <b>TIMEZONE</b>  | User's current time zone                           |
| <b>USER</b>      | Name user's ID                                     |

*See Also*

Lexicon

## envp — C Language

Argument passed to `main()`  
**char \*envp[];**

**envp** is an abbreviation for environmental parameter. It is the traditional name for a pointer to an array of string pointers passed to a C program's `main` function, and is by convention the third argument passed to `main`.

### *Example*

The following example demonstrates `envp`, `argc`, and `argv`.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main(argc, argv, envp)
int argc; /* Number of args */
char *argv[]; /* Argument ptr array */
char *envp[]; /* Environment ptr array */
{
 int a;

 printf("The command name (argv[0]) is %s\n", argv[0]);
 printf("There are %d arguments:\n", argc-1);
 for (a=1; a<argc; a++)
 printf("\targument %2d:\t%s\n", a, argv[a]);

 printf("The environment is as follows:\n");
 a = 0;
 while (envp[a] != NULL)
 printf("\t%s\n", envp[a++]);
}
```

*See Also*

`argc`, `argv`, C language, `environ`, `main()`

## EOF — Definition (Library/STDIO)

Indicate end of a file  
**#include <stdio.h>**

**EOF** is an indicator that is returned by several **STDIO** functions to indicate that the current file position is the end of the file.

Many **STDIO** functions, when they read **EOF**, set the end-of-file indicator that is associated with the stream being read. Before more data can be read from the stream, its end-of-file indicator must be cleared. Resetting the file-position indicator with the functions **fseek**, **fsetpos**, or **ftell** will clear the indicator, as will returning a character to the stream with the function **ungetc**.

*See Also*

**file**, **stream**, **STDIO**, **stdio.h**

## **epson** — Command

**epson** [ **-cdfwr8** ] [ **-b head** ] [ **-i n** ] [ **-o ofile** ] [ **-s n** ] [ *file ...* ]

**epson** prints each *file*, or the standard input if none, on an Epson MX-80 printer or compatible. **epson** normally sends its output directly to the line printer **/dev/lp**. It recognizes the **nroff** output sequences for boldface and italics and normally converts them to emphasized print and italics.

**epson** recognizes the following options:

- b head** Print the given *head* as a double-width banner at the top of the first output page.
- c** Use compressed printing mode.
- d** Print boldface as double strikes. Normally, **epson** recognizes the sequence "**c\bc**" as boldface and prints *c* in emphasized printing mode. **-d** is useful in conjunction with **-c**.
- f** Do not print a formfeed character at the end of each *file*.
- in** Indent *n* spaces at the start of each output line.
- o ofile** Send output to *ofile* instead of **/dev/lp**.
- r** Print all characters in Roman; do not use italics. Normally, **epson** recognizes the sequence "**\bc**" as italic and prints *c* in its italic character set.
- sn** Print *n* newlines at the end of each line. *n* must be 1, 2, or 3; the default is 1.
- w** Use double width printing mode.
- 8** Print lines with vertical spacing of eight lines per inch instead of the default six lines per inch.

*Files*

**/dev/lp** — Line printer

*See Also*

**commands**, **lpr**, **nroff**, **pr**

*Diagnostics*

**epson** prints appropriate messages on the standard error if it cannot open a *file* or if an argument is incorrect.

**errno** — Technical Information

External integer for return of error status

```
extern int errno;
```

**errno** is an external integer that COHERENT links into every program. COHERENT sets **errno** to the negative value of any error status returned by COHERENT to the functions that perform COHERENT system calls.

Mathematical functions use **errno** to indicate classifications of errors on return. **errno** is defined within the header file **errno.h**. Because not every function uses **errno**, it should be polled only in connection with those functions that document its use and the meaning of the various status values. For the names of the error codes (as defined in **errno.h**, their value, and the message returned by the function **perror**, see **errno.h**.

*Example*

For an example of using **errno** in a mathematics program, see the entry for **acos**.

*See Also*

**errno.h**, **mathematics** library, **perror()**, **signal()**, **technical information**

**errno.h** — Header File

Error numbers used by **errno()**

```
#include <errno.h>
```

**errno.h** is a header that defines and describes the error numbers returned in the external variable **errno**. The following lists the error numbers defined in **errno.h**:

**EIO**: I/O error

A physical I/O error occurred on a device driver. This could be a tape error, a CRC error on a disk, or a framing error on a synchronous HDLC link.

**ENXIO**: no such device or address

A specified minor device is invalid or the unit is powered off. This error might also indicate that a block number given to a minor device is out of range. **suload** returns this error code if the driver was not loaded.

**E2BIG**: argument list too long

The number of bytes of arguments passed in an **exec** is too large.

**ENOEXEC**: exec format error

The file given to **exec** or **load** is not a valid load module (probably because it does not have the magic number at the beginning), even though its mode indicates that it is executable.



**EBADF:** bad file descriptor

A file descriptor passed to a system call is not open or is inappropriate to the call. For example, a file descriptor opened only for reading may not be accessed for writing.

**ECHILD:** no children

A process issued a `wait` call when it had no outstanding children.

**EAGAIN:** no more processes

The system cannot create any more processes, either because it is out of table space or because the invoking process has reached its process quota.

**ENOMEM:** not enough memory

The system cannot accomodate the memory size requested (by `exec` or `brk`, for example).

**EACCES:** permission denied

The user is denied access to a file.

**EFAULT:** bad address

An address in a system call does not lie in the address space. Normally, this generates a `SIGSYS` signal, which terminates the process.

**ENOTBLK:** block device required

The `mount` and `umount` calls require block devices as arguments.

**EBUSY:** mount device busy

The special file passed to `mount` is already mounted, or the file system given to `umount` has open files or active working directories.

**EEXIST:** file exists

An attempt was made to `link` to a file that already exists.

**EXDEV:** cross-device link

A link to a file must be on the same logical device as the file.

**ENODEV:** no such device

An unsuitable I/O call was made to a device; for example, an attempts to read a line printer.

**ENOTDIR:** not a directory

A component in a path name exists but is not a directory, or a `chdir` or `chroot` argument is not a directory.

**EISDIR:** is a directory

Directories cannot be opened for writing.

**EINVAL:** invalid argument

An argument to a system call is out of range, e.g., a bad signal number to `kill` or `umount` of a device that is not mounted.

**ENFILE:** file table overflow

A table inside the COHERENT system has run out of space, preventing further `open` calls and related requests.

**EMFILE:** too many open files

A process is limited to 20 open files at any time.

**ENOTTY:** not a tty

An `ioctl` call was made to a file which is not a terminal device.

**ETXTBSY:** text file busy

The text segment of a shared load module is unwritable. Therefore, an attempt to execute it while it is being written or an attempt to open it for writing while it is being executed will fail.

**EFBIG:** file too large

The block mapping algorithm for files fails above 1,082,201,088 bytes.

**ENOSPC:** no space left on device

Indicates an attempt to write on a file when no free blocks remain on the associated device. This error may also indicate that a device is out of i-nodes, so a file cannot be created.

**ESPIPE:** illegal seek

It is illegal to `lseek` on a pipe.

**EROFS:** read-only file system

Indicates an attempt to write on a file system mounted read-only (e.g., with `creat` or `unlink`).

**EMLINK:** too many links

A new link to a file cannot be created, because the link count would exceed 32,767.

**EPIPE:** broken pipe

A write occurred on a pipe for which there are no readers. This condition is accompanied by the signal `SIGPIPE`, so the error will only be seen if the signal is ignored or caught.

**EDOM:** mathematics library domain error

An argument to a mathematical routine falls outside the domain of the function.

**ERANGE:** mathematics library result too large

The result of a mathematical function is too large to be represented.

**EKSPACE:** out of kernel space

No more space is available for tables inside the `COHERENT` system. Table space is dynamically allocated from a fixed area of memory; it may be possible to increase the size of the area by reconfiguring the system.

**ENOLOAD:** driver not loaded

Not used.

**EBADFMT:** bad exec format

An attempt was made to `exec` a file on the wrong type of processor.

**EDATTN:** device needs attention

The device being referenced needs operator attention. For example, a line printer might need paper.

**EDBUSY:** device busy

The indicated device is busy. For `load`, this implies that the given major device number is already in use.

*See Also*

`errno`, `header files`, `perror()`, `signal()`

## etext — Linker-Defined Symbol

```
extern int etext[];
```

`etext` is the location after the shared and private text (code) segments. It is defined by the linker when it binds the program together for execution. The value of `etext` is merely an address. The location to which it points contains no known value, and may be illegal memory locations for the program. The value of `etext` does not change while the program is running.

*Example*

```
main()
{
 extern int etext[];
 printf("etext=%ld\n", (long) etext);
}
```

*See Also*

`brk()`, `end`, `ld`, `linker-defined symbols`, `malloc()`

## eval — Command

Evaluate arguments

```
eval [token ...]
```

The shell `sh` normally evaluates each token of an input line before executing it. During evaluation, the shell performs parameter, command, and file name pattern substitution, as described in `sh`. The shell does *not* interpret special characters after performing substitution.

`eval` is useful when an additional level of evaluation is required. `eval` evaluates its arguments and treats the result as shell input. For example,

```
A='>file'
echo a b c $A
```

simply prints the output

```
a b c >file
```

because `'>'` has no special meaning after substitution, but

```
A='>file'
eval echo a b c $A
```

redirects the output

```
a b c
```

to **file**. Similarly,

```
A=' $B'
B='string'
echo $A
eval echo $A
```

prints

```
$B
string
```

In the first **echo** the shell performs substitution only once.

The shell executes **eval** directly.

*See Also*

**commands**, **sh**

### **exec** — Command

Execute command directly

**exec** [*command*]

The shell **sh** normally executes commands with a **fork** system call, which creates a new process. The shell command **exec** directly executes the given *command* with an **exec** system call instead. Normally, this terminates execution of the current shell.

If the *command* consists only of redirection specifications, as described in **sh**, **exec** redirects the input or output of the current shell accordingly without terminating it. If the *command* is omitted, **exec** has no effect.

*See Also*

**commands**, **exec**, **fork()**, **sh**

### **execl()** — COHERENT System Call (**libc**)

Execute a load module

**execl**(*file*, *arg1*, ..., *argn*, **NULL**)

**char** \**file*, \**arg1*, ..., \**argn*;

The COHERENT system includes six system calls that allow a process to execute another executable *file*. **execl** specifies arguments individually, as a **NULL**-terminated list of *arg* parameters. For more information on file execution, see **execution**.

*See Also*

**COHERENT system calls**, **execution**, **getuid()**

#### *Diagnostics*

**execl** does not return if successful. It returns -1 for errors, such as *file* being nonexistent, not accessible with execute permission, having a bad format, or too large to fit in memory.

**execle()** — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Execute a load module

```
execle(file, arg1, ..., argn, NULL, env)
char *file, *arg1, ..., *argn, char *env[];
```

The COHERENT system includes six functions that allow a process to execute another executable *file* (or load module, as described in the header `l.out.h`). **execle** initializes the new stack of the process to contain a list of strings that are command arguments. It specifies arguments individually, as a NULL-terminated list of *arg* parameters. The argument *envp* points to an array of pointers to strings that define *file*'s environment. For more information on program execution and environments, see **execution**.

*See Also*

COHERENT system calls, **environ**, **execution**

**Diagnostics**

**execle** does not return if successful. It returns -1 for errors, such as *file* being nonexistent, not accessible with execute permission, having a bad format, or being too large to fit into memory.

**execlp()** — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Execute a load module

```
execlp(file, arg1, ..., argn, NULL)
char *file, *arg1, ..., *argn;
```

The COHERENT system includes six functions that allow a process to execute another executable *file*. **execlp** initializes the new stack of the process to contain a list of strings that are command arguments. It specifies arguments individually, as a NULL-terminated list of *arg* parameters. Unlike the related function **execl**, **execlp** searches for *file* in all directories named in the environmental variable `PATH`. For more information on program execution, see **execution**.

*See Also*

COHERENT system calls, **environ**, **execl()**, **execle()**, **execv()**, **execve()**, **execvp()**, **fork()**, **ioctl()**, **sh**, **signal()**, **stat()**

**Diagnostics**

**execlp** does not return if successful. It returns -1 for errors, such as *file* not existing in the directories named in `PATH`, not accessible with execute permission, having a bad format, or too large to fit in memory.

**executable file** — Definition

An **executable file** is one that can be loaded directly by the operating system and executed. Normally, an executable file is one that has both been *compiled*, where it is rendered into machine language, and *linked*, where the compiled program has received all operating system-specific information and library functions.

*See Also*

definitions, file, object format

## execution — Technical Information

Program execution under COHERENT is governed by the various forms of the COHERENT system call `exec`. This call allows a process to execute another executable *file* (load module, as described in `l.out.h`). The code, data and stack of *file* replace those of the requesting process. The new stack contains the command arguments and its environment, in the format given below. Execution starts at the entry point of *file*.

During a successful `exec`, the system deactivates profiling, and resets any caught signals to `SIG_DFL`.

Every process has a real-user id, an effective-user id, a real-group id, and an effective-group id, as described in `getuid`. For most load modules, `exec` does not change any of these. However, if the *file* is marked with the set user id or set group id bit (see `stat`), `exec` sets the effective-user id (effective-group id) of the process to the user id (group id) of the *file* owner. In effect, this changes the file access privilege level from that of the real id to that of the effective id. The owner of *file* should be careful to limit its abilities, to avoid compromising file security.

`exec` initializes the new stack of the process to contain a list of strings which are command arguments. `execl`, `execle`, and `execlp` specify arguments individually, as a NULL-terminated list of *arg* parameters. `execv`, `execve`, and `execvp` specify arguments as a single NULL-terminated array *argv* of parameters.

The `main` routine of a C program is invoked in the following way:

```
main(argc, argv, envp)
int argc;
char *argv[], *envp[];
```

`argc` is the number of command arguments passed through `exec`, and `argv` is an array of the actual argument strings. `envp` is an array of strings that comprise the process environment. By convention, these strings are of the form *variable=value*, as described in the Lexicon entry `environ`. Typically, each *variable* is an exported shell variable with the given *value*.

`execl` and `execv` simply pass the old environment, referenced by the external pointer `environ`. `execle` and `execve` pass a new environment *env* explicitly. `execlp` and `execvp` search for *file* in each of the directories indicated by the shell variable `$PATH`, in the same way that the shell searches for a command. These calls will execute a shell command *file*.

### Files

`/bin/sh` — To execute command files

*See Also*

`environ`, `execl()`, `execle()`, `execlp()`, `execv()`, `execve()`, `execvp()`, `fork()`, `ioctl()`, `signal()`, `stat()`, technical information

*Diagnostics*

None of the **exec** routines returns if successful. Each returns -1 for errors, such as if *file* is nonexistent, not accessible with execute permission, has a bad format, or is too large to fit in memory.

**execv()** — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Execute a load module

```
execv(file, argv)
char *file, *argv[];
```

The COHERENT system includes six functions that allow a process to execute another executable *file* (or load module, as described in the header **l.out.h**). **execv** specifies arguments as a single, NULL-terminated array of parameters, called *argv*. Unlike the related program **execve**, **execv** passes the environment of the calling program to the called program. For more information on program execution, see **execution**.

*See Also*

COHERENT system calls, environ, execution

*Diagnostics*

**execv** does not return if successful. It returns -1 for errors, such as *file* being nonexistent, not accessible with execute permission, having a bad format, or too large to fit in memory.

**execve()** — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Execute a load module

```
execve(file, argv, env)
char *file, *argv[], *env[];
```

The COHERENT system includes six functions that allow a process to execute another executable *file* (or load module, as described in the header **l.out.h**). **execve** specifies arguments as a single, NULL-terminated array of parameters, called *argv*. The argument *env* is the address of an array of pointers to strings that define *file*'s environment. This allows **execve** to pass a new environment to the program being executed. For more information on program execution, see **execl**.

*Example*

The following example demonstrates **execve**, as well as **tmpnam**, **getenv**, and **path**. It finds all lines with more than **LIMIT** characters and call MicroEMACS to edit them.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <path.h>
#include <sys/stat.h>

#define LIMIT 70

extern char *getenv(), **environ, *tempnam();
```

```
main(argc, argv)
char *argv[];
{
 /*
 * me -e tmp file */
 char *cmda[5] = { NULL, "-e", NULL, NULL, NULL };
 FILE *ifp, *tmp;
 char line[256];
 int ct, len;

 if ((NULL == (cmda[3] = argv[1])) ||
 (NULL == (ifp = fopen(argv[1], "r")))) {
 fprintf(stderr, "Cannot open %s\n", argv[1]);
 exit(1);
 }

 if (cmda[0] = path(getenv("PATH"), "me", AEXEC) == NULL) {
 fprintf(stderr, "Cannot locate me\n");
 exit(1);
 }

 if (NULL == (tmp = fopen((cmda[2] = tempnam(NULL, "lmg")), "w"))) {
 fprintf(stderr, "Cannot open tmpfile\n");
 exit(1);
 }

 for (ct = 1; NULL != fgets(line, sizeof(line), ifp); ct++)
 if (((len = strlen(line)) > LIMIT) ||
 ('\n' != line[len - 1]))
 fprintf(tmp, "%d: %d characters long\n", ct, len);

 fclose(tmp);
 fclose(ifp);

 if (execve(cmda[0], cmda, environ) < 0) {
 fprintf(stderr, "cannot execute me\n");
 exit(1);
 }
 /* We never reach here ! */
}
```

### *See Also*

**COHERENT** system calls, **environ**, **execution**

### *Diagnostics*

**execve** does not return if successful. It returns -1 for errors, such as *file* being nonexistent, not accessible with execute permission, having a bad format, or too large to fit in memory.



**execvp()** – COHERENT System Call (libc)

Execute a load module

```
execvp(file, argv)
char *file, *argv[];
```

The COHERENT system includes six functions that allow a process to execute another executable *file* (or load module, as described in the header `l.out.h`). **execvp** specifies arguments as a single, NULL-terminated array of parameters, called *argv*. Unlike the related call **execv**, **execvp** searches for *file* in all of the directories named in the environmental variable **PATH**. For more information on program execution, see **execution**.

*See Also***COHERENT system calls, environ, execution***Diagnostics*

**execvp** does not return if successful. It returns -1 for errors, such as *file* being nonexistent, not accessible with execute permission, having a bad format, or too large to fit in memory.

**exit** – Command

Exit from a noninteractive shell

```
exit [status]
```

**exit** terminates a noninteractive shell **sh**. If the optional *status* is specified, the shell returns it; otherwise, the previous status is unchanged. From an interactive shell, **exit** sets the *status* if specified, but does not terminate the shell. The shell executes **exit** directly.

*See Also***commands, sh***Notes*

If a program leaves **main()** by an error condition, contents of register AX becomes the exit code. Usually, these register contents are random. If you want to test a program's return code, you must to **exit** or return from **main()**.

**exit()** – General Function (libc)

Terminate a program gracefully

```
void exit(status) int status;
```

**exit** is the normal method to terminate a program directly. *status* information is passed to the parent process. By convention, an exit status of zero indicates success, whereas an exit status greater than zero indicates failure. If the parent process issued a **wait** call, it is notified of the termination and is passed the least significant eight bits of *status*. As **exit** never returns, it is always successful. Unlike the related function **\_exit**, **exit** does extra cleanup, such as flushing buffered files and closing open files.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **fopen**.

*See Also*

**\_exit(), close(), general functions, wait()**

**exp()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute exponent

**#include <math.h>**

**double exp(z) double z;**

**exp** returns the exponential of  $z$ , or  $e^z$ .

*Example*

The following program prompts you for a number, then prints the value for it as returned by **exp**, **pow**, **log**, and **log10**.

```
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#define display(x) dodisplay((double)(x), #x)
```

```
dodisplay(value, name)
double value; char *name;
```

```
{
 if (errno)
 perror(name);
 else
 printf("%10g %s\n", value, name);
 errno = 0;
}
```

```
main()
```

```
{
 extern char *gets();
 double x;
 char string[64];
 for(;;) {
 printf("Enter number: ");
 if(gets(string) == NULL)
 break;
 x = atof(string);
 display(x);
 display(exp(x));
 display(pow(10.0,x));
 display(log(exp(x)));
 display(log10(pow(10.0,x)));
 }
}
```

*See Also*

**errno, mathematics library**

*Diagnostics*

**exp** indicates overflow by an **errno** of **ERANGE** and a huge returned value.

**export** — Command

Add shell variables to environment

**export** [*name* ...]

**export** [*name=value*]

When the shell **sh** executes a command, it passes the command an *environment*. By convention, the environment consists of assignments, each of the form *name=value*. For example, typing

```
export TERM=vt100
```

sets the environmental variable **TERM** to equal the string **vt100**.

A command may look for information in the environment or may simply ignore it. In the above example, a program that reads the variable **TERM** (such as MicroEMACS) will assume that you are working on a DEC VT-100 terminal or one that emulates it.

The shell places the *name* and the value of each shell variable that appears in an **export** command into the environment of subsequently executed commands. It does not place a shell variable into the environment until it appears in an **export** command.

With no arguments, **export** prints the name and the value of each shell variable currently marked for export.

The shell executes **export** directly.

*See Also*

**commands**, **environ**, **exec**, **sh**

**expr** — Command

Compute a command line expression

**expr** *argument* ...

The arguments to **expr** form an expression. **expr** evaluates the expression and writes the result on the standard output. Among other uses, **expr** lets the user perform arithmetic in shell command files.

Each *argument* is a separate token in the expression. An argument has a logical value 'false' if it is a null string or has numerical value zero, 'true' otherwise. Integer arguments consist of an optional sign followed by a string of decimal digits. The range of valid integers is that of signed long integers. No check is made for overflow or illegal arithmetic operations. Floating point numbers are not supported.

The following list gives each **expr** operator and its meaning. The list is in order of increasing operator precedence; operators of the same precedence are grouped together. All operators associate left to right except the unary operators '!', '.', and 'len', which associate right to left. The spaces shown are significant - they separate the tokens of the expression.

```
{ expr1, expr2, expr3 }
```

Return *expr2* if *expr1* is logically true, and *expr3* otherwise. Alternatively, { *expr1*, *expr2* } is equivalent to { *expr1*, *expr2*, 0 }.

*expr1* | *expr2*

Return *expr1* if it is true, *expr2* otherwise.

*expr1* & *expr2*

Return *expr1* if both are true, zero otherwise.

*expr1* *relation* *expr2*

Where *relation* is one of <, <=, >, >=, ==, or !=, return one if the *relation* is true, zero otherwise. The comparison is numeric if both arguments can be interpreted as numbers, lexicographic otherwise. The lexicographic comparison is the same as **strcmp** (see **string**).

*expr1* + *expr2*

*expr1* - *expr2*

Add or subtract the integer arguments. The expression is invalid if either *expr* is not a number.

*expr1* \* *expr2*

*expr1* / *expr2*

*expr1* % *expr2*

Multiply, divide, or take remainder of the arguments. The expression is invalid if either *expr* is not numeric.

*expr1* : *expr2*

Match patterns (regular expressions). *expr2* specifies a pattern in the syntax used by **ed**. It is compared to *expr1*, which may be any string. If the `\(...\)` pattern occurs in the regular expression the matching operator returns the matched field from the string; if there is more than one `\(...\)` pattern the extracted fields are concatenated in the result. Otherwise, the matching operator returns the number of characters matched.

**len** *expr*

Return the length of *expr*. It behaves like **strlen** (see **string**). *len* is a reserved word in **expr**.

**!expr** Perform logical negation: return zero if *expr* is true, one otherwise.

**-expr** Unary minus: return the negative of its integer argument. If the argument is non-numeric the expression is invalid.

( *expr* )

Return the *expr*. The parentheses allow grouping expressions in any desired way.

Several operators have special meanings to the shell **sh**, and must be quoted to be interpreted correctly. The characters that must be quoted are { } ( ) < > & | \*.

*See Also*

**commands, ed, sh, test**

### Notes

`expr` returns zero if the expression is true, one if false, and two if an error occurs. In the latter case an error message is also printed.

## extern — C Keyword

Declare storage class

**extern** indicates that a C element belongs to the *external* storage class. Both variables and functions may be declared to be **extern**. Use of this keyword tells the C compiler that the variable or function is defined outside of the present file of source code. All functions and variables defined outside of functions are implicitly **extern** unless declared **static**.

When a source file references data that are defined in another file, it must declare the data to be **extern**, or the linker will return an error message of the form:

```
undefined symbol name
```

For example, the following declares the array `tzname`:

```
extern char tzname[2][32];
```

When a function calls a function that is defined in another source file or in a library, it should declare the function to be **extern**. In the absence of a declaration, **extern** functions are assumed to return **ints**, which may cause serious problems if the function actually returns a 32-bit pointer (such as on the 68000 or i8086 LARGE model), a **long**, or a **double**.

For example, the function `malloc` appears in a library and returns a pointer; therefore, it should be declared as follows:

```
extern char *malloc();
```

If you do not do so, the compiler assumes that `malloc` returns an **int**, and generate the error message

```
integer pointer pun
```

when you attempt to use `malloc` in your program.

*See Also*

**auto**, **C keywords**, **pun**, **register**, **static**, **storage class**

## F

### **fabs()** – Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute absolute value

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double fabs(z) double z;
```

**fabs** implements the absolute value function. It returns  $z$  if  $z$  is zero or positive, or  $-z$  if  $z$  is negative.

#### *Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **ceil**.

#### *See Also*

**abs()**, **ceil()**, **floor()**, **frexp()**, **mathematics library**

### **factor** – Command

Factor a number

```
factor [number ...]
```

**factor** computes and prints the prime factorials for each of a list of given *numbers*. If no *numbers* are given on the command line, **factor** reads numbers from the standard input.

#### *See Also*

**commands**

### **false** – Command

Unconditional failure

**false** does nothing. It is guaranteed to fail. It can be useful in shell scripts, to force certain situations to occur.

#### *See Also*

**commands**, **true**

#### *Diagnostics*

**false** returns an exit status of one.

### **fblk.h** – Header File

Define the disk-free block

```
#include <sys/fblk.h>
```

**fblk.h** defines the disk-free block **fblk**.

#### *See Also*

**header files**

**fclose()** — STDIO Function (libc)

Close a stream

```
#include <stdio.h>
int fclose(fp) FILE *fp;
```

**fclose** closes the stream **fp**. It calls **fflush** on the given **fp**, closes the associated file, and releases any allocated buffer. The function **exit** calls **fclose** for open streams.

*Example*

For examples of how to use this function, see the entries for **fopen** and **fseek**.

*See Also*

STDIO

*Diagnostics*

**fclose** returns EOF if an error occurs.

**fcntl.h** — Header File

Manifest constants for file-handling functions

```
#define <sys/fcntl.h>
```

**fcntl.h** declares manifest constant that are used by the file-handling functions **open** and **fcntl**.

*See Also*

header files

**fd** — Device Driver

Floppy disk driver

The files **/dev/f\*** are entries for the diskette drives of COHERENT on the IBM AT. Each entry is assigned major device number 4, is accessed as a block-special device, and has a corresponding character-special device entry.

The device entries are linked to a driver that handles up to four 5.25 inch disk drives, each in one of several formats. The least-significant four bits of an entry's minor device number identify the type of drive. The next least-significant two bits identify the drive. The following table summarizes the name, minor device number, sectors per track, partition sector size, characteristics, and addressing method for each device entry of floppy disk drive 0.

*9 sectors/track*

|             |    |   |      |      |                      |
|-------------|----|---|------|------|----------------------|
| <b>f9d0</b> | 4  | 9 | 720  | DSDD | surface (5.25 inch)  |
| <b>f9a0</b> | 13 | 9 | 1440 | DSQD | cylinder (3.25 inch) |
| <b>f9a0</b> | 12 | 9 | 720  | DSDD | cylinder (5.25 inch) |

*15 sectors/track*

|             |    |    |      |      |                      |
|-------------|----|----|------|------|----------------------|
| <b>fha0</b> | 14 | 15 | 2400 | DSHD | cylinder (5.25 inch) |
|-------------|----|----|------|------|----------------------|

*18 sectors/track*

**fva0**      15      18      2880      DSHD      cylinder

Prefixing an **r** to a name given above gives the name of the corresponding character-device entry. Corresponding device entries for drives 1, 2, and 3 have minor numbers with offsets of 16, 32, and 48 from the minor numbers given above and have 1, 2, or 3 in place of 0 in the names given above.

For device entries whose minor number's fourth least-significant bit is zero (minor numbers 0 through 7 for drive 0), the driver uses surface addressing rather than cylinder addressing. This means that it increments tracks before heads when computing sector addresses and the first surface is used completely before the second surface is accessed. For devices whose minor number's fourth least significant bit is 1 (minor numbers 8 through 15 for drive 0), the driver uses cylinder addressing.

For a diskette to be accessible from the COHERENT system, a device file must be present in directory **/dev** with the appropriate type, major and minor device numbers, and permissions. The command **mknod** creates a special file for a device.

### *Files*

**<fdioctl.h>** — Driver command header file  
**/dev/fd\*** — Block-special files  
**/dev/rfd\*** — Character special files

### *See Also*

**device drivers, fdformat, mkfs, mknod,**

### *Diagnostics*

The driver reports any error status received from the controller and retries the operation several times before it reports an error to the program that initiated an operation.

### *Notes*

The driver assumes that the disk is formatted with eight, nine, 15, or 18 sectors of 512 bytes each per track, depending upon the **/dev** entry. Cylinder addressing is the norm for COHERENT.

Programs that use the raw device interface must read whole sectors into buffers that do not straddle DMA boundaries.

## **fd.h** — Header File

Declare file-descriptor structure

**#define <sys/fd.h>**

**fd.h** declares the file-descriptor structure **fd**, plus associated constants and the function **fdget**.

### *See Also*

**header files**



## fdformat — Command

Format a floppy disk

`/etc/fdformat [ option ... ] special`

**fdformat** formats a floppy disk. The given *special* should be the name of the special file that correspond to the floppy disk drive.

**fdformat** recognizes the following options:

**-a** Print information on the standard output device during format. As it formats a cylinder, it will print a line of the form

```
hd=0 cyl=25
```

on your screen.

**-i number**

Use *number* (0 through 7; default, 3) as the interleave factor in formatting.

**-o number**

Use *number* (default, 0) as the skew factor for sector numbering.

**-v** Verify formatting and verify data written with the **-w** option.

**-w file**

Format the floppy disk and then copy *file* to it track by track. The raw device should be used.

The command **mkfs** builds a COHERENT file system on a formatted floppy disk. The command **dos** builds a DOS file system on a formatted floppy disk and transfers files to or from it. The command **mount** mounts a floppy disk containing a file system to allow access to it through the COHERENT directory structure. The command **umount** unmounts a floppy disk.

### Example

The following command formats a 2400-block, 5.25-inch floppy disk in drive 0 (otherwise known as drive A):

```
/etc/fdformat /dev/fha0
```

The following command formats a 1440-block, 3.5-inch floppy disk in drive 1 (otherwise known as drive B):

```
/etc/fdformat /dev/fqa1
```

### See Also

commands, **dos**, **fd**, **mkfs**, **mount**, **umount**

### Diagnostics

When errors occur on floppy-disk devices, the driver prints on the system console an error message that describes the error.

*Notes*

**fdformat** formats a track at a time. **fdformat** can be interrupted between tracks, which may result in a partially formatted floppy disk.

**fdioctl.h** – Header File

Control floppy-disk I/O

**#define** <sys/fdioctl.h>

**fdioctl.h** declares constants and structures used to control floppy-disk I/O.

*See Also*

header files

**fdisk** – System Maintenance

Change hard disk partitioning

**/etc/fdisk** [-r] [-b *mboot*] *xdev*

The command **fdisk** supports flexible hard-disk partitioning among various operating systems (e.g. MS-DOS, CP/M, COHERENT, and XENIX). This capability means that up to four operating systems can be supported on one hard disk. **fdisk** recognizes the following flags:

**-r** Read-only access to partitioning information.

**-b** Use the first 446 bytes of *mboot* as master boot code to replace that in *xdev*.

**fdisk** accesses the first block from the special device *xdev* (e.g., /dev/at0x) for the partitioning information. **fdisk** then queries the user for changes. These changes are written to *xdev* only if the user requests the changes to be saved.

*Files*

<**fdisk.h**>

*See Also*

system maintenance

*Notes*

If the partition table is changed, the system should be rebooted; most device drivers will not recognize the revised partition information until a reboot occurs.

As the **-r** and **-b** options are contradictory, attempting to use them together generates an error message.

Please note that some versions of **fdisk** for other operating systems can rearrange the order of entries in the partition table. If this happens, you may lose the ability to run COHERENT until the table is restored to its previous order. A sign of this problem is getting the prompt **AT boot?** when trying to start COHERENT after running any **fdisk** program, and not being able to get past it.

**fdisk.h** — Header File

Fixed-disk constants and structures

#define &lt;sys/fdisk.h&gt;

**fdisk.h** declares structures and constants used to manipulate the fixed disk.*See Also*

header files

**fdopen()** — STDIO Function (libc)

Open a stream for standard I/O

#include &lt;stdio.h&gt;

FILE \*fdopen(*fd*, *type*) int *fd*; char \**type*;**fdopen** allocates and returns a **FILE** structure, or *stream*, for the file descriptor *fd*, as obtained from **open**, **creat**, **dup**, or **pipe**. *type* is the manner in which you want *fd* to be opened, as follows:

|   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| r | Read a file        |
| w | Write into a file  |
| a | Append onto a file |

*Example*The following example obtains a file descriptor with **open**, and then uses **fdopen** to build a pointer to the **FILE** structure.

```
#include <ctype.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void adios(message)
char *message;
{
 fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", message);
 exit(1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
 extern FILE *fdopen();
 FILE *fp;
 int fd;
 int holder;

 if (--argc != 1)
 adios("Usage: example filename");

 if ((fd = open(argv[1], 0)) == -1)
 adios("open failed.");
 if ((fp = fdopen(fd, "r")) == NULL)
 adios("fdopen failed.");
}
```

```
while ((holder = fgetc(fp)) != EOF) {
 if ((holder > '\177') && (holder < ' '))
 switch(holder) {
 case '\t':
 case '\n':
 break;
 default:
 fprintf(stderr, "Seeing char %d\n", holder);
 exit(1);
 }
 fputc(holder, stdout);
}
```

*See Also*

**creat(), dup(), fopen(), open(), STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**fdopen** returns NULL if it cannot allocate a FILE structure. Currently, only 20 FILE structures can be allocated per program, including **stdin**, **stdout**, and **stderr**.

### **feof() – STDIO Macro (stdio.h)**

Discover stream status

```
#include <stdio.h>
int feof(fp) FILE *fp;
```

**feof** is a macro that tests the status of the argument stream *fp*. It returns a number other than zero if *fp* has reached the end of file, and zero if it has not. One use of **feof** is to distinguish a value of -1 returned by **getw** from an EOF.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **fopen**.

*See Also*

**STDIO**

### **ferror() – STDIO Macro (stdio.h)**

Discover stream status

```
#include <stdio.h>
int ferror(fp) FILE *fp;
```

**ferror** is a macro that tests the status of the file stream *fp*. It returns a number other than zero if an error has occurred on *fp*. Any error condition that is discovered will persist either until the stream is closed or until **clearerr** is used to clear it. For write routines that employ buffers, **fflush** should be called before **ferror**, in case an error occurs on the last block written.

*Example*

This example reads a word from one file and writes it into another.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
{
 FILE *fpin, *fpout;
 int inerr = 0;
 int outerr = 0;
 int word;
 char infile[20], outfile[20];

 printf("Name data file you wish to copy:\n");
 gets(infile);
 printf("Name new file:\n");
 gets(outfile);

 if ((fpin = fopen(infile, "r")) != NULL) {
 if ((fpout = fopen(outfile, "w")) != NULL) {
 for (;;) {
 word = fgetw(fpin);
 if (ferror(fpin)) {
 clearerr(fpin);
 inerr++;
 }
 if (feof(fpin))
 break;
 fputw(word, fpout);
 if (ferror(fpout)) {
 clearerr(fpout);
 outerr++;
 }
 }
 } else {
 printf
 ("Cannot open output file %s\n",
 outfile);
 exit(1);
 }
 } else {
 printf("Cannot open input file %s\n", infile);
 exit(1);
 }

 printf("%d - read error(s) %d - write error(s)\n",
 inerr, outerr);
 exit(0);
}
```

*See Also*  
**STDIO**

**fflush()** — **STDIO** Function (**libc**)

Flush output stream's buffer

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int fflush(fp) FILE *fp;
```

**fflush** flushes any buffered output data associated with the file stream *fp*. The file stream stays open after **fflush** is called. **fclose** calls **fflush**, so there is no need for you to call it when normally closing a file or buffer.

*Example*

This example demonstrates **fflush**. When run, you will see the following:

```
Line 1

Line 1

Line 1
Line 2

```

The call

```
fprintf(fp, "Line 2\n");
```

goes to a buffer and is not in the file when file **foo** is listed. However if you redirect the output of this program to a file and list the file, you will see:

```
Line 1
Line 1
Line 1
Line 2


```

because the line

```
printf("-----\n");
```

goes into a buffer and is not printed until the program is over and all buffers are flushed by **exit()**.

Although the COHERENT screen drivers print all output immediately, not all operating systems work this way, so when in doubt, **fflush()**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
```

```
{
```

```
 FILE *fp;
```

```

if (NULL == (fp = fopen("foo", "w")))
 exit(1);
fprintf (fp, "Line 1\n");
fflush (fp);
system ("cat foo"); /* print Line 1 */

printf("-----\n");
fprintf(fp, "Line 2\n");
system("cat foo"); /* print Line 1 */
printf("-----\n");

fflush(fp);
system("cat foo"); /* print Line 1 Line 2 */
printf("-----\n");
)

```

*See Also*

**fclose(), setbuf(), STDIO, write()**

### *Diagnostics*

**fflush** returns **EOF** if it cannot flush the contents of the buffers; otherwise it returns a meaningless value.

Note, also, that all **STDIO** routines are buffered. **fflush** should be used to flush the output buffer if you follow a **STDIO** routine with an unbuffered routine.

## **fgetc()** — **STDIO** Function (**libc**)

Read character from stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int fgetc(fp) FILE \*fp;**

**fgetc** reads characters from the input stream *fp*. In general, it behaves the same as the macro **getc**: it runs more slowly than **getc**, but yields a smaller object module when compiled.

### *Example*

This example counts the number of lines and "sentences" in a file.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
```

```
{
```

```
 FILE *fp;
```

```
 int filename[20];
```

```
 int ch;
```

```
 int nlines = 0;
```

```
 int nsents = 0;
```

```
 printf("Enter file to test: ");
```

```
 gets(filename);
```

```
if ((fp = fopen(filename, "r")) == NULL) {
 printf("Cannot open file %s.\n", filename);
 exit(1);
}

while ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != EOF) {
 if (ch == '\n')
 ++nlines;

 else if (ch == '.' || ch == '!' || ch == '?') {
 if ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != '.')
 ++nsents;

 else
 while((ch=fgetc(fp)) == '.')
 ;
 ungetc(ch, fp);
 }

 printf("%d line(s), %d sentence(s).\n",
 nlines, nsents);
}
```

*See Also*

**getc(), STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**fgetc** returns EOF at end of file or on error.

### **fgets()** — STDIO Function (libc)

Read line from stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**char \*fgets(*s, n, fp*) char \*s; int n; FILE \*fp;**

**fgets** reads characters from the stream *fp* into string *s* until either *n*-1 characters have been read, or a newline or EOF is encountered. It retains the newline, if any, and appends a null character at the end of the string. **fgets** returns the argument *s* if any characters were read, and NULL if none were read.

*Example*

This example looks for the pattern given by **argv[1]** in standard input or in file **argv[2]**. It demonstrates the functions **pnmatch**, **fgets**, and **freopen**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXLINE 128
char buf[MAXLINE];
```



```

void fatal(s) char *s;
{
 fprintf(stderr, "pnmatch: %s\n", s);
 exit(1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
 if (argc != 2 && argc != 3)
 fatal("Usage: pnmatch pattern [file]");
 if (argc==3 && freopen(argv[2], "r", stdin)==NULL)
 fatal("cannot open input file");
 while (fgets(buf, MAXLINE, stdin) != NULL) {
 if (pnmatch(buf, argv[1], 1))
 printf("%s", buf);
 }
 if (!feof(stdin))
 fatal("read error");
 exit(0);
}

```

*See Also*

fgetc(), gets(), STDIO

*Diagnostics*

fgets returns NULL if an error occurs, or if EOF is seen before any characters are read.

### fgetw() — STDIO Function (libc)

Read integer from stream

#include <stdio.h>

int fgetw(*fp*) FILE \**fp*;

fgetw reads an integer from the stream *fp*.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **ferror**.

*See Also*

fputw(), STDIO

*Notes*

fgetw returns EOF on errors. A call to feof or ferror may be necessary to distinguish this value from a genuine end-of-file signal.

**field – Definition**

A **field** is an area that is set apart from whatever surrounds it, and that is defined as containing a particular type of data. In the context of C programming, a field is either an element of a structure, or a set of adjacent bits within an **int**.

*See Also*

**bit map, data formats, definitions, structure**

**file – Command**

Guess a file's type

**file file ...**

**file** examines each *file* and takes an educated guess as to its type. **file** recognizes the following classes of text files: files of commands to the shell; files containing the source for a C program; files containing **yacc** or **lex** source; files containing assembly language source; files containing unformatted documents that can be passed to **nroff**; and plain text files that fit into none of the above categories.

**file** recognizes the following classes of non-text or binary data files: the various forms of archives, object files, and link modules for various machines, and miscellaneous binary data files.

*See Also*

**commands, ls, size**

*Notes*

Because **file** only reads a set amount of data to determine the class of a text file, mistakes can happen.

**file – Definition**

A **file** is a mass of bits that has been given a name and is stored on a nonvolatile medium. These bits may form ASCII characters or machine-executable data. Under the COHERENT system and related operating systems, external devices can mimic files, in that they can be opened, closed, read, and written to in a manner identical to that of files.

To manipulate the contents of a file, you must first open it. This can be done with the COHERENT system call **open**, or with the function **fopen**. You can then read the file, write material to it, or append material onto it with the COHERENT system calls **read** and **write**, or with the functions **fread** and **fwrite**. See the entries on COHERENT system calls and entry **STDIO** for more information on manipulating material within a file.

*See Also*

**close(), definitions, executable file, fopen(), fclose(), FILE, open()**

**FILE — Definition**

Descriptor for a file stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**FILE** describes a *file stream* which can be either a file on disk or a peripheral device through which data flow. It is defined in the header file **stdio.h**.

A pointer to **FILE** is returned by **fopen**, **freopen**, **fdopen**, and related functions.

The **FILE** structure is as follows:

```
typedef struct FILE
{
 unsigned char *_cp,
 *_dp,
 *_bp;

 int _cc;
 int (*_gt)(),
 (*_pt)();

 int _ff;
 char _fd;
 int _uc;
} FILE;
```

**\_cp** points to the current character in the file. **\_dp** points to the start of the data within the buffer. **\_bp** points to the file buffer. **\_cc** is the number of unprocessed characters in the buffer. **\_gt** and **\_pt** point, respectively, to the functions **getc** and **putc**. **\_ff** is a bit map that holds the various file flags, as follows:

|                |      |                               |
|----------------|------|-------------------------------|
| <b>_FINUSE</b> | 0x01 | Unused                        |
| <b>_FSTBUF</b> | 0x02 | Used by macro <b>setbuf</b>   |
| <b>_FUNGOT</b> | 0x04 | Used by <b>ungetc</b>         |
| <b>_FEOF</b>   | 0x08 | Tested by macro <b>feof</b>   |
| <b>_FERR</b>   | 0x10 | Tested by macro <b>ferror</b> |
| <b>_FASCII</b> | 0x20 | File is in ASCII mode         |
| <b>_FWRITE</b> | 0x40 | File is opened for writing    |
| <b>_FDONTC</b> | 0x80 | Don't close file              |

**\_fd** is the file descriptor, which is used by low-level routines like **open**; it is also used by **reopen**. Finally, **\_uc** is the character that has been “ungotten” by **ungetc**, should it be used.

*See Also*

definitions, **fopen()**, **freopen()**, **stdio.h**, **stream**

**file descriptor — Definition**

A **file descriptor** is an integer between 1 and 20 that indexes an area in the operating system's list of internal file descriptors. It is used by routines like **open**, **close**, and **lseek** to work with files. A file descriptor is *not* the same as a **FILE** stream, which is used by routines like **fopen**, **fclose**, or **fread**.

*See Also*

COHERENT system calls, definitions, file, FILE

## file formats – Overview

The COHERENT system uses a number of different file formats. Each format is designed to order most efficiently the information that that file holds. This manual describes the following special file formats:

|               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| <b>core</b>   | Core dump file format |
| <b>group</b>  | Group file format     |
| <b>passwd</b> | Password file format  |
| <b>ttys</b>   | Active terminal ports |

The following header files also hold information on file formats:

|                |                                    |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>acct.h</b>  | Format for process-accounting file |
| <b>ar.h</b>    | Format for archive files           |
| <b>canon.h</b> | Portable layout of binary data     |
| <b>dir.h</b>   | Directory format                   |
| <b>l.out.h</b> | Object file format                 |
| <b>mtab.h</b>  | Currently mounted file systems     |
| <b>utmp.h</b>  | Login accounting information       |

See their respective entries in this Lexicon for a fuller description of their contents.

*See Also*

header files, Lexicon

## fileno() – STDIO Function (libc)

Get file descriptor

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int fileno(fp) FILE *fp;
```

**fileno** returns the file descriptor associated with the file stream *fp*. The file descriptor is the integer returned by **open** or **creat**. It is used by routines such as **fopen** to create a **FILE** stream.

### *Example*

This example reads a file descriptor and prints it on the screen.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main(argc, argv)
```

```
int argc; char *argv[];
```

```
{
```

```
 FILE *fp;
```

```
 int fd;
```

```
 if (argc != 2) {
```

```
 printf("Usage: fd_from_fp filename\n");
```

```
 exit(0);
```

```
 }
```

```

if ((fp = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL) {
 printf("Cannot open input file\n");
 exit(0);
}

fd = fileno(fp);
printf("The file descriptor for %s is %d\n",
 argv[1], fd);
}

```

*See Also*

**FILE**, file descriptor, **STDIO**

### filsys.h – Header File

Structures and constants for super block

**#define** <sys/filsys.h>

**filsys.h** declares structures and constants used to by functions that manipulate the super block.

*See Also*

header files

### filter – Definition

A *filter* is a program that reads a stream of input, transforms it in a precisely defined manner, and writes it to another stream. Two or more filters can be coupled with *pipes* to perform a complex transformation on a stream of input.

*See Also*

definitions, pipe

### find – Command

Search for files satisfying a pattern

**find** *directory* ... [*expression* ...]

**find** traverses each given *directory*, testing each file or subdirectory found with the *expression* part of the command line. The test can be the basis for deciding whether to process the file with a given command.

If the command line specifies no *expression* or specifies no execution or printing (**-print**, **-exec**, or **-ok**), by default **find** prints the pathnames of the files found.

In the following, *file* means any file: directory, special file, ordinary file, and so on. Numbers represented by *n* may be optionally prefixed by a '+' or '-' sign to signify values greater than *n* or less than *n*, respectively.

**find** recognizes the following *expression* primitives:

**-atime** *n* Match if the file was accessed in the last *n* days.

**-ctime** *n* Match if the i-node associated with the file was changed in the last *n* days, as by **chmod**.

- exec *command***  
Match if *command* executes successfully (has a zero exit status). The *command* consists of the following arguments to **find**, terminated by a semicolon ';' (escaped to get past the shell). **find** substitutes the current pathname being tested for any argument of the form '{}'.  
**-group *name***  
Match if the file is owned by group *name*. If *name* is a number, the owner must have that group number.
- inum *n*** Match if the file is associated with i-number *n*.
- links *n*** Match if the number of links to the file is *n*.
- mtime *n*** Match if the most recent modification to the file was *n* days ago.
- name *pattern***  
Match if the file name corresponds to *pattern*, which may include the special characters '\*', '?', and '['...] recognized by the shell **sh**. The *pattern* matches only the part of the file name after any slash '/' characters.
- newer *file***  
Match if the file is newer than *file*.
- nop** Always match; does nothing.
- ok *command***  
Same as **-exec** above, except prompt interactively and only executes *command* if the user types response 'y'.
- perm *octal***  
Match if owner, group, and other permissions of the file are the *octal* bit pattern, as described in **chmod**. When *octal* begins with a '-' character, more of the permission bits (setuid, setgid, and sticky bit) become significant.
- print** Always match; print the file name.
- size *n*** Match if the file is *n* blocks in length; a block is 512 bytes long.
- type *c*** Match if the type of the file is *c*, chosen from the set **bcdfmp** (for block special, character special, directory, ordinary file, multiplexed file, or pipe, respectively).
- user *name***  
Match if the file is owned by user *name*. If *name* is a number, the owner must have that user number.
- exp1 exp2*** Match if both expressions match. **find** evaluates *exp2* only if *exp1* matches.
- exp1 -a exp2***  
Match if both expressions match, as above.
- exp1 -o exp2***  
Match if either expression matches. **find** evaluates *exp2* only if *exp1* does not match.

- `! exp` Match if the expression does *not* match.  
`( exp )` Parentheses are available for expression grouping.

### Examples

A **find** command to print the names of all files and directories in user **fred**'s directory is:

```
find /usr/fred
```

The following, more complicated **find** command prints out information on all **core** and object (**.o**) files that have not been changed for a day. Because some characters are special both to **find** and **sh**, they must be escaped with `\` to avoid interpretation by the shell.

```
find / \ (-name core -o -name *.o \) -mtime +1 \
-exec ls -l () \;
```

### See Also

**chmod**, **commands**, **ls**, **sh**, **test**

## fixstack — Command

Change stack allocation

```
fixstack +-value [filename]
```

**fixstack** alters the stack size of an executable file. It enlarges or shrinks the stack by *value* bytes. *value* is assumed to be a hexadecimal number, and must be preceded by `+` or `-`.

If *filename* is not given, **fixstack** by default alters the stack size of file **l.out**.

### See Also

**cc**, **commands**, **size**

## float — C Keyword

Data type

Floating point numbers are a subset of the real numbers. Each has a built-in radix point (or “decimal point”) that shifts, or “floats”, as the value of the number changes. It consists of the following: one sign bit, which indicates whether the number is positive or negative; bits that encode the number's *exponent*; and bits that encode the number's *fraction*, or the number upon which the exponent works. In general, the magnitude of the number encoded depends upon the number of bits in the exponent, whereas its precision depends upon the number of bits in the fraction.

The exponent often uses a *bias*. This is a value that is subtracted from the exponent to yield the power of two by which the fraction will be increased.

Floating point numbers come in two levels of precision: single precision, called **floats**; and double precision, called **doubles**. With most microprocessors, `sizeof(float)` returns four, which indicates that it is four **chars** (bytes) long, and `sizeof(double)` returns eight.

Several formats are used to encode **floats**, including IEEE, DECVAX, and BCD (binary coded decimal). COHERENT uses DECVAX format throughout.

The following describes DECVAX, IEEE, and BCD formats, for your information.

### *DECVAX Format*

The 32 bits in a **float** consist of one sign bit, an eight-bit exponent, and a 24-bit fraction, as follows. Note that in this diagram, 's' indicates "sign", 'e' indicates "exponent", and 'f' indicates "fraction":

|           |        |
|-----------|--------|
| see eeee  | Byte 4 |
| efff ffff | Byte 3 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 2 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 1 |

The exponent has a bias of 129.

If the sign bit is set to one, the number is negative; if it is set to zero, then the number is positive. If the number is all zeroes, then it equals zero; an exponent and fraction of zero plus a sign of one ("negative zero") is by definition not a number. All other forms are numeric values.

The most significant bit in the fraction is always set to one and is not stored. It is usually called the "hidden bit".

The format for **doubles** simply adds another 32 fraction bits to the end of the **float** representation, as follows:

|           |        |
|-----------|--------|
| see eeee  | Byte 8 |
| efff ffff | Byte 7 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 6 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 5 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 4 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 3 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 2 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 1 |

### *IEEE Format*

The IEEE encoding of a float is the same as that in the DECVAX format. Note, however, that the exponent has a bias of 127, rather than 129.



Unlike the DECVAX format, IEEE format assigns special values to several floating point numbers. Note that in the following description, a *tiny* exponent is one that is all zeroes, and a *huge* exponent is one that is all ones:

- A tiny exponent with a fraction of zero equals zero, regardless of the setting of the sign bit.
- A huge exponent with a fraction of zero equals infinity, regardless of the setting of the sign bit.
- A tiny exponent with a fraction greater than zero is a denormalized number, i.e., a number that is less than the least normalized number.
- A huge exponent with a fraction greater than zero is, by definition, not a number. These values can be used to handle special conditions.

An IEEE double, unlike DECVAX format, increases the number of exponent bits. It consists of a sign bit, an 11-bit exponent, and a 53-bit fraction, as follows:

|           |        |
|-----------|--------|
| seee eeee | Byte 8 |
| eeee ffff | Byte 7 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 6 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 5 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 4 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 3 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 2 |
| ffff ffff | Byte 1 |

The exponent has a bias of 1,023. The rules of encoding are the same as for floats.

### BCD Format

The BCD format ("binary coded decimal", also called "packed decimal") is used to eliminate rounding errors that alter the worth of an account by a fraction of a cent. It consists of a sign, an exponent, and a chain of four-bit numbers, each of which is defined to hold the values zero through nine.

A BCD float has a sign bit, seven bits of exponent, and six four-bit digits. In the following diagrams, 'd' indicates "digit":

|           |        |
|-----------|--------|
| seee eeee | Byte 4 |
| dddd dddd | Byte 3 |
| dddd dddd | Byte 2 |
| dddd dddd | Byte 1 |

A BCD **double** has a sign bit, 11 bits of exponent, and 13 four-bit digits, as follows:

|           |        |
|-----------|--------|
| seee eeee | Byte 8 |
| eeee dddd | Byte 7 |
| dddd dddd | Byte 6 |
| dddd dddd | Byte 5 |
| dddd dddd | Byte 4 |
| dddd dddd | Byte 3 |
| dddd dddd | Byte 2 |
| dddd dddd | Byte 1 |

Passing the hexadecimal numbers A through F in a digit yields unpredictable results.

The following rules apply when handling BCD numbers:

- A tiny exponent with a fraction of zero equals zero.
- A tiny exponent with a fraction of non-zero indicates a denormalized number.
- A huge exponent with a fraction of zero indicates infinity.
- A huge exponent with a fraction of non-zero is, by definition, not a number; these non-numbers are used to indicate errors.

*See Also*

**C keywords, data formats, double**

*The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 2, page 180ff

**floor()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Set a numeric floor

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double floor(z) double z;
```

**floor** sets a numeric floor. It returns a double-precision floating point number whose value is the largest integer less than or equal to *z*.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **ceil**.

### See Also

**abs()**, **ceil()**, **fabs()**, **frexp()**, **mathematics library**

## floppy disks — Technical Information

To use a floppy disk with COHERENT, you must:

- (1) format it with **/etc/fdformat**,
- (2) build an empty filesystem on it with **/etc/mkfs**,
- (3) mount it with **/bin/mount** or **/etc/mount**,
- (4) copy files to or from it, e.g. with **cp** or **cpdir**, and
- (5) unmount it with **/bin/umount** or **/etc/umount**.

Some commonly used diskette device names and formats are:

| Device name | Sectors/track | Heads | Sectors | Bytes   | Format |
|-------------|---------------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| /dev/f9a0   | 9             | 2     | 720     | 360 KB  | 5.25"  |
| /dev/fqa0   | 9             | 2     | 1440    | 720 KB  | 3.5"   |
| /dev/fha0   | 15            | 2     | 2400    | 1.2 MB  | 5.25"  |
| /dev/fva0   | 18            | 2     | 2880    | 1.44 MB | 3.5"   |

Device names ending in '0' indicate drive A:, names ending in '1' indicate drive B:.

For example, to copy directory **/dir** to a 5.25" high density diskette in drive 0 (A:):

```
/etc/fdformat /dev/fha0
/etc/mkfs /dev/fha0 2400
/etc/mount /dev/fha0 /f0
cpdir -vd /dir /f0/dir
/etc/umount /dev/fha0
```

**/bin/mount** and **/bin/umount** provide handy abbreviations for mount and umount commands. For example,

```
mount f0
cpdir -vd /dir /f0/dir
umount f0
```

is a more convenient way to perform the last three commands in the above example.

### See Also

**fd**, **fdformat**, **technical information**

### Notes

Because COHERENT does not write cached disk data to the disk until a **sync** occurs or the disk device is unmounted, removing a disk from the disk drive without unmounting it can produce incorrect data or an invalid filesystem on the disk. Another disk inserted into the drive after a disk has removed without unmounting may be clobbered by data intended for the first disk. Always be sure to unmount disks before removing them from

the disk drive.

### **fnkey – Command**

Set/print function keys

**fnkey** [ *n* [ *string* ] ]

The console keyboard of an IBM AT COHERENT system includes 10 special function keys, labelled F1 through F10. Initially, typing these keys has no effect.

**fnkey** with a numeric argument *n* in the range 1 to 10 programs function key *F<sub>n</sub>* to send the given *string*. If no *string* is given, **fnkey** resets *F<sub>n</sub>* to send nothing. If *n* is 0, **fnkey** resets all function keys to send nothing.

With no argument, **fnkey** prints the current string for each function key.

#### *Example*

The following example programs function key F2 to execute the COHERENT command `date`:

```
fnkey 2 'date'
```

Note that this command sets F2 to the string `date\n`. If you type **fnkey** without any arguments, it prints the following on your screen:

```
F2: date\n
```

#### *Files*

`/dev/console`

#### *See Also*

**commands**

#### *Diagnostics*

**fnkey** prints “cannot open `/dev/console`” if the user lacks permission to open `/dev/console`.

### **fopen() – STDIO Function (libc)**

Open a stream for standard I/O

**#include** <stdio.h>

**FILE \*fopen** (*name*, *type*) **char** \**name*, \**type*;

**fopen** allocates and initializes a **FILE** structure, or *stream*; opens or creates the file *name*; and returns a pointer to the structure for use by other **STDIO** routines. *name* refers to the file to be opened. *type* is a string that consists of one or more of the characters “rwa”, to indicate the mode of the string, as follows:

|           |                                                           |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>r</b>  | Read; error if file not found                             |
| <b>w</b>  | Write; truncate if found, create if not found             |
| <b>a</b>  | Append to end of file; no truncation, create if not found |
| <b>r+</b> | Read and write; no truncation, error if not found         |

- w+ Write and read; truncate if found, create if not found
- a+ Append and read; no truncation, create if not found

The modes that contain 'a' set the seek pointer to point at the end of the file; all other modes set it to point at the beginning of the file. Modes that contain '+' both read and write; however, a program must call `fseek` or `rewind` before it switches from reading to writing or vice versa.

### Example

This example copies `argv[1]` to `argv[2]` using `STDIO` routines. It demonstrates the functions `fopen`, `fread`, `fwrite`, `fclose`, and `feof`.

```
#include <stdio.h>
/* BUFSIZ is defined in stdio.h */
char buf[BUFSIZ];

void fatal(message)
char *message;
{
 fprintf(stderr, "copy: %s\n", message);
 exit(1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
 register FILE *ifp, *ofp;
 register unsigned int n;

 if (argc != 3)
 fatal("Usage: copy source destination");
 if ((ifp = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
 fatal("cannot open input file");
 if ((ofp = fopen(argv[2], "w")) == NULL)
 fatal("cannot open output file");

 while ((n = fread(buf, 1, BUFSIZ, ifp)) != 0) {
 if (fwrite(buf, 1, n, ofp) != n)
 fatal("write error");
 }

 if (!feof(ifp))
 fatal("read error");
 if (fclose(ifp) == EOF || fclose(ofp) == EOF)
 fatal("cannot close");
 exit(0);
}
```

### See Also

`fclose()`, `fdopen()`, `freopen()`, `STDIO`

### *Diagnostics*

**fopen** returns NULL if it cannot allocate a FILE structure, if the *type* string is nonsense, or if the call to **open** or **creat** fails. Currently, only 20 FILE structures can be allocated per program, including **stdin**, **stdout**, and **stderr**.

### *Notes*

Many operating systems recognize a 'b' modifier to the *type* argument; this indicates that the file contains binary information, and lets the operating system handle "funny characters" correctly. COHERENT has no need of such a modifier, so if you append 'b' to *type*, it will be ignored. This modifier, however, is recognized by numerous other operating systems, including MS-DOS, OS/2, and GEMDOS. If you expect to port developed code to any of these operating systems, files should append the 'b' to *type*.

## **for** — C Keyword

Control a loop

**for**(*initialization*; *endcondition*; *modification*)

**for** is a C keyword that introduces a loop. It takes three arguments, which are separated by semicolons ';'. *initialization* is executed before the loop begins. *endcondition* describes the condition that ends the loop. *modification* is a statement that modifies *variable* to control the number of iterations of the loop. For example,

```
for (i=0; i<10; i++)
```

first sets the variable *i* to zero; then it declares that the loop will continue as long as *i* remains less than ten; and finally, increments *i* by one after every iteration of the loop. This ensures that the loop will iterate exactly ten times (from *i*=0 through *i*=9). The statement

```
for(;;)
```

will loop until its execution is interrupted by a **break**, **goto**, or **return** statement. Also, either or both of *initialization* and *modification* may consist of multiple statements that are separated by commas. For example,

```
for (i=0, j=0; i<10; i++, j++)
```

initializes both *i* and *j*, and increments both with each iteration of the loop.

### *See Also*

**break**, C keywords, **continue**, **while**

## **for** — Command

Execute commands for tokens in list

**for** *name* [**in** *token* ...]

**do**

*sequence*

**done**

The shell command **for** controls a loop. It assigns to the variable *name* each successive *token* in the list, and then executes the commands in the given *sequence*. If the **in** clause is omitted, **for** successively assigns *name* the value of each positional parameter to the current script ("@\$"). Because the shell recognizes a reserved word only as the unquoted

first word of a command, both **do** and **done** must either occur unquoted at the start of a command or be preceded by **"**.

The shell commands **break** and **continue** may be used to alter control flow within a **for** loop.

**sh** executes **for** directly.

*See Also*

**break, commands, continue, sh**

## **fork()** — COHERENT System Call

Create a new process

**fork()**

In the COHERENT system, many processes may be active simultaneously. **fork** creates a new process; the new process is a duplicate of the requesting process. In practice, the new process often issues a call to execute yet another new program.

The process that issues the **fork** call is termed the *parent* process, and the newly forked process is termed the *child* process. **fork** returns the process id of the newly created child to the parent process, and returns zero to the child process. The parent may call **wait** to suspend itself until the child terminates.

The following parts of the environment of a process are exactly duplicated by a **fork** call:

- Open files and their seek positions
- Current working and root directories
- The file creation mask
- The values of all signals
- The alarm clock setting
- Code, data, and stack segments

The system normally makes a fresh copy of the code, data, and stack segments for the child process. One advantage of *shared text* processes is that they do not need to copy the code segment. It is write protected, and therefore may be shared.

### *Example*

For an example of how to use this call, see **pipe**.

*See Also*

**alarm(), COHERENT system calls, execl(), exit(), sh, umask(), wait()**

### *Diagnostics*

**fork** returns -1 on failure, which usually involves insufficient system resources. On successful calls, **fork** returns zero to the child and the process id of the child to the parent.

**fortune** — Command

Print random selected, hopefully humorous, text  
 /usr/games/fortune [ file ]

**fortune** prints a message that is randomly selected from the contents of a text file. **fortune** reads *file* if it is named on the command line; otherwise, it reads the default file /usr/games/lib/fortunes.

*Files*

/usr/games/lib/fortunes — Default fortunes

*See Also*

**commands**

**fperr.h** — Header File

Constants used with floating-point exception codes

**#define** <fperr.h>

**fperr.h** declares constants used by routines that handle floating-point exceptions. It also defines the error messages they use.

*See Also*

**header files**

**fprintf()** — STDIO (libc)

Print formatted output into file stream

**int** fprintf(*fp*, *format*, [*arg1*, ..., *argN*])

**FILE** \**fp*; **char** \**format*;

[*data type*] *arg1*, ..., *argN*;

**fprintf** formats and prints a string. It resembles the function **printf**, except that it writes its output into the stream pointed to by **fp**, instead of to the standard output.

**fprintf** uses the *format* to specify an output format for *arg1* through *argN*.

See **printf** for a description of **fprintf**'s formatting codes.

*Example*

For an example of this routine, see the entry for **fscanf**.

*See Also*

**printf()**, **sprintf()**, **STDIO**

*Notes*

Because C does not perform type checking, it is essential that an argument match its specification. For example, if the argument is a **long** and the specification is for an **int**, **fprintf** will peel off the first word of that **long** and present it as an **int**.

At present, **fprintf** does not return a meaningful value.



**fputc()** — **STDIO (libc)**

Write character into file stream

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int fputc(c, fp) char c; FILE *fp;
```

**fputc** writes the character *c* into the file stream pointed to by *fp*. It returns *c* if *c* was written successfully.

**Example**

The following example uses **fputc** to write the contents of one file into another.

```
#include <stdio.h>

void fatal(message)
char *message;
{
 fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", message);
 exit(1);
}

main()
{
 FILE *fp, *fout;
 int ch;
 int infile[20];
 int outfile[20];

 printf("Enter name to copy: ");
 gets(infile);
 printf("Enter name of new file: ");
 gets(outfile);

 if ((fp = fopen(infile, "r")) == NULL)
 fatal("Cannot write input file");

 if ((fout = fopen(outfile, "w")) != NULL)
 fatal("Cannot write output file");

 while ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != EOF)
 fputc(ch, fout);
}
```

**See Also**

**STDIO**

**Diagnostics**

**fputc** returns EOF when a write error occurs, e.g., when a disk runs out of space.

**fputs()** – STDIO (libc)

Write string into file stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**void fputs(string, fp) char \*string; FILE \*fp;**

**fputs** writes *string* into the file stream pointed to by *fp*. Unlike its cousin **puts**, it does not append a newline character to the end of *string*.

**fputs** returns nothing.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **freopen**.

*See Also*

**puts(), STDIO**

**fputw()** – STDIO (libc)

Write an integer into a stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int fputw(word, fp) int word; FILE \*fp;**

**fputw** writes *word* into the file stream pointed to by *fp*, and returns the value written.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **fgetw**.

*See Also*

**fgetw(), STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**fputw** returns **EOF** when an error occurs. A call to **ferror** or **feof** may be needed to distinguish this value from a valid end-of-file signal.

**fread()** – STDIO Function (libc)

Read data from file stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int fread(buffer, size, n, fp)**

**char \*buffer; unsigned size, n; FILE \*fp;**

**fread** reads *n* items, each being *size* bytes long, from file stream *fp* into *buffer*.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **fopen**.

*See Also*

**fwrite(), STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**fread** returns zero upon reading **EOF** or on error; otherwise, it returns the number of items read.

**free()** – General Function (libc)

Return dynamic memory to free memory pool

```
void free(ptr) char *ptr;
```

**free** helps you manage the arena. It returns to the free memory pool memory that had previously been allocated by **malloc**, **calloc**, or **realloc**. **free** marks the block indicated by *ptr* as unused, so the **malloc** search can coalesce it with contiguous free blocks. *ptr* must have been obtained from **malloc**, **calloc**, or **realloc**.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this routine, see the entry for **malloc**.

*See Also*

**arena**, **calloc()**, **general functions**, **malloc()**, **realloc()**, **setbuf()**

*Diagnostics*

**free** prints a message and calls **abort** if it discovers that the arena has been corrupted. This most often occurs by storing data beyond the bounds of an allocated block.

**freopen()** – STDIO Function (libc)

Open file stream for standard I/O

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
FILE *freopen(name, type, fp)
```

```
char *name, *type; FILE *fp;
```

**freopen** reinitializes the file stream *fp*. It closes the file currently associated with it, opens or creates the file *name*, and returns a pointer to the structure for use by other STDIO routines. *name* names a file.

*type* is a string that consists of one or more of the characters “*rwa*” (for, respectively, read, write, and append) to indicate the mode of the stream. For further discussion of the *type* variable, see the entry for **fopen**. **freopen** differs from **fopen** only in that *fp* specifies the stream to be used. Any stream previously associated with *fp* is closed by **fclose**. **freopen** is usually used to change the meaning of **stdin**, **stdout**, or **stderr**.

*Example*

This example, called **match.c**, looks in **argv[2]** for the pattern given by **argv[1]**. If the pattern is found, the line that contains the pattern is written into the file **argv[3]** or to **stdout**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXLINE 128
char buffer[MAXLINE];
```

```
void fatal(message)
char *message;
```

```
{
 fprintf(stderr, "match: %s\n", message);
 exit(1);
}
```

```

main(argc,argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
 FILE *fpin, *fpout;
 if (argc != 3 && argc != 4)
 fatal("Usage: match pattern infile [outfile]");
 if ((fpin = fopen(argv[2], "r")) == NULL)
 fatal("Cannot open input file");

 fpout = stdout;
 if (argc == 4)
 if ((fpout = freopen(argv[3], "w", stdout)) == NULL)
 fatal("Cannot open output file");

 while (fgets(buffer, MAXLINE, fpin) != NULL) {
 if (pnmatch(buffer, argv[1], 1))
 fputs(buffer, stdout);
 }
 exit(0);
}

```

*See Also*

**fopen(), STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**freopen** returns NULL if the *type* string is nonsense or if the file cannot be opened. Currently, only 20 FILE structures can be allocated per program, including **stdin**, **stdout**, and **stderr**.

**frexp()** — General Function (libc)

Separate fraction and exponent

**double frexp**(*real*, *ep*) **double** *real*; **int** \**ep*;

**frexp** breaks double-precision floating point numbers into fraction and exponent. It returns the fraction *m* of its *real* argument, such that  $0.5 \leq m < 1$  or  $m=0$ , and stores the binary exponent *e* in the location pointed to by *ep*. These numbers satisfy the equation  $real = m * 2^e$ .

*Example*

This example prompts for a number, then uses **frexp** to break it into its fraction and exponent.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
```

```
{
 extern char *gets();
 extern double frexp(), atof();
 double real, fraction;
 int ep;
```

```

char string[64];
for (;;) {
 printf("Enter number: ");
 if (gets(string) == NULL)
 break;

 fraction = frexp(real, &ep);
 printf("%lf is the fraction of %lf\n",
 fraction, real);
 printf("%d is the binary exponent of %lf\n",
 ep, real);
}
putchar('\n');
)

```

*See Also*

**atof(), ceil(), fabs(), floor(), general functions, ldexp(), modf()**

## from — Command

Generate list of numbers

**from** *start* to *stop* [ *by incr* ]

**from** prints a list of integers on the standard output, one per line. It prints beginning with *start*, and then prints successive numbers incrementing by *incr* (default, one) the previous number. It continues until the generated value matches or exceeds *stop*. Each of *start*, *stop*, and optional *incr* is a decimal integer with an optional leading '-' sign.

Typical uses of **from** include generating a file of numbers and generating a loop index for the shell **sh**. The following example creates special files for eight terminal ports:

```

for i in `from 0 to 7`
do
 /etc/mknod /dev/tty3$i c 3 $i
done

```

*See Also*

**commands, sh**

### Diagnostics

**from** prints an error message if the generated list is empty.

## fscanf() — STDIO (libc)

Format input from a file stream

**#include** <stdio.h>

**int** fscanf(*fp*, *format*, *arg1*, ... *argN*)

**FILE** \**fp*; **char** \**format*;

[*data type*] \**arg1*, ... \**argN*;

**fscanf** reads the file stream pointed to by *fp*, and uses the string *format* to format the arguments *arg1* through *argN*, each of which must point to a variable of the appropriate

data type.

**fscanf** returns either the number of arguments matched, or EOF if no arguments matched.

For more information on **fscanf**'s conversion codes, see **scanf**.

### *Example*

The following example uses **fprintf** to write some data into a file, and then reads it back using **fscanf**.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main ()
{
 FILE *fp;
 char let[4];

 /* open file into write/read mode */
 if ((fp = fopen("tmpfile", "wr")) == NULL) {
 printf("Cannot open 'tmpfile'\n");
 exit(1);
 }

 /* write a string of chars into file */
 fprintf(fp, "1234");

 /* move file pointer back to beginning of file */
 rewind(fp);

 /* read and print data from file */
 fscanf(fp, "%c %c %c %c",
 &let[0], &let[1], &let[2], &let[3]);
 printf("%c %c %c %c\n",
 let[3], let[2], let[1], let[0]);
}
```

### *See Also*

**scanf()**, **sscanf()**, **STDIO**

### *Notes*

Because C does not perform type checking, it is essential that an argument match its specification. For that reason, **fscanf** is best used only to process data that you are certain are in the correct data format, such as data previously written out with **fprintf**.

## **fsck** — Command

Check and repair file systems interactively  
**/etc/fsck** [ **-fnqy** ] [ *filesystem ...* ]

**fsck** checks and interactively repairs file systems. If all is well, **fsck** merely prints the number of files used, the number of blocks used, and the number of blocks that are free. If the file system is found to be inconsistent in one of the aspects outlined below, **fsck** asks whether it should fix the inconsistency and waits for you to reply **yes** or **no**.

The following file system aspects are checked for consistency by **fck**:

- If a block is claimed by more than one i-node, by an i-node and the free list, or more than once in the free list.
- Whether an i-node or the free list claims blocks beyond the file system's range.
- Link counts that are incorrect.
- Whether the directory size is not aligned for 16 bytes.
- Whether the i-node format is correct.
- Whether any blocks are not accounted for.
- Whether a file points to an unallocated i-node.
- Whether a file's i-node number is out of range.
- Whether the super block refers to more than 65,536 i-nodes.
- Whether the super block assigned more blocks to the i-nodes than the system contains.
- Whether the format of the free block list is correct.
- Whether the counts of the total free blocks and the free i-nodes are correct.

**fck** prints a warning message when a file name is null, has an embedded slash '/', is not null-padded, or if '.' or '..' files do not have the correct i-node numbers.

When **fck** repairs a file system, any file that is orphaned (that is, allocated but not referenced) is deleted if it is empty, or copied to a directory called **lost+found**, with its i-node number as its name. The directory **lost+found** must exist in the root of the file system being checked before **fck** is executed, and it must have room for new entries without requiring that new blocks be allocated.

**fck** accepts the following options:

- f Fast check. **fck** only checks whether a block has been claimed by more than one i-node, by an i-node and the free list, or more than once in the free list. If necessary, **fck** will reconstruct the free list.
- n No option: a default reply of **no** is given to all of **fck**'s questions.
- q Quiet option: run quietly. **fck** automatically removes all unreferenced pipes, and automatically fixes list counts in the super block and the free list. File-name warning messages are suppressed, but **fck** still prints the number of files used, the number of blocks used, and the number of blocks that remain free.
- y Yes option: a default reply of **yes** is given to all of **fck**'s questions.

If no file system is named in the **fck** command line, **fck** will check the file systems named in the file **/etc/checklist**.

*Files**/etc/checklist**See Also***clri, commands, icheck, ncheck, sync, umount***Notes*

The correction of file systems almost always involves the destruction of data.

You can run **fsck** only when the COHERENT system is in single-user mode.

Previous editions of **fsck** could check no partition larger than 35 megabytes. This restriction has been lifted.

**fseek()** — STDIO Function (libc)

Seek on file stream

#include &lt;stdio.h&gt;

int fseek(*fp*, *where*, *how*)FILE \**fp*; long *where*; int *how*;

**fseek** changes where the next read or write operation will occur within the file stream *fp*. It handles any effects the seek routine might have had on the internal buffering strategies of the system. The arguments *where* and *how* specify the desired seek position. *where* indicates the new seek position in the file. It is measured from the start of the file if *how* equals zero, from the current seek position if *how* equals one, and from the end of the file if *how* equals two.

**fseek** differs from its cousin **lseek** in that **lseek** is a COHERENT system call and takes a file number, whereas **fseek** is a STDIO function and takes a **FILE** pointer.

*Example*

This example opens file **argv[1]** and prints its last **argv[2]** characters (default, 100). It demonstrates the functions **fseek**, **ftell**, and **fclose**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
extern long atol();

void fatal(message)
char *message;
{
 fprintf(stderr, "tail: %s\n", s);
 exit(1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
 register FILE *ifp;
 register int c;
 long nchars, size;
```



```

if (argc < 2 || argc > 3)
 fatal("Usage: tail file [nchars]");
nchars = (argc == 3) ? atol(argv[2]) : 100L;
if ((ifp = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
 fatal("cannot open input file");
/* Seek to end */
if (fseek(ifp, 0L, 2) == -1)
 fatal("seek error");

/* Find current size */
size = ftell(ifp);
size = (size < nchars) ? 0L : size - nchars;

/* Seek to point */
if (fseek(ifp, size, 0) == -1)
 fatal("seek error");
while ((c = getc(ifp)) != EOF)
 /* Copy rest to stdout */
 putchar(c);
if (fclose(ifp) == EOF)
 fatal("cannot close");
exit(0);
)

```

*See Also*

ftell(), lseek(), STDIO

### *Diagnostics*

For any diagnostic error, `fseek` returns -1; otherwise, it returns zero. If `fseek` goes beyond the end of the file, it will not return an error message until the corresponding read or write is performed.

## **fstat()** — General Function (libc)

Find file attributes

**#include <stat.h>**

**fstat(descriptor, statptr) int descriptor; struct stat \*statptr;**

`fstat` returns a structure that contains the attributes of a file including protection information, file type, and file size. *descriptor* is the file descriptor for the open file, and *statptr* points to a structure of the type `stat`, which is defined in the header file `stat.h`.

The following summarizes the structure `stat` and defines the permission and file type bits.

```

struct stat {
 dev_t st_dev;
 ino_t st_ino;
 unsigned short st_mode;
 short st_nlink;
 short st_uid;
 short st_gid;
 dev_t st_rdev;
 size_t st_size;
 time_t st_atime;
 time_t st_mtime;
 time_t st_ctime;
};

#define S_IFMT 0170000 /* file types */
#define S_IFREG 0100000 /* ordinary file */
#define S_IFDIR 0040000 /* directory */
#define S_IFCHR 0020000 /* character special */
#define S_IFBLK 0060000 /* block special */
#define S_ISUID 0004000 /* set user id */
#define S_ISGID 0002000 /* set group id */
#define S_ISVTX 0001000 /* save text bit */
#define S_IREAD 0000400 /* owner read permission */
#define S_IWRITE 000200 /* owner write permission */
#define S_IXEXEC 0000100 /* owner execute permission */

```

The entries `st_dev` and `st_ino` together form a unique description of the file. The former is the device on which the file and its i-node reside, whereas the latter is the index number of the file. The entry `st_mode` gives the permission bits, as outlined above. The entry `st_nlink` gives the number of links to the file. The user id and group id of the owner are `st_uid` and `st_gid`, respectively. The entry `st_rdev`, valid only for special files, holds the major and minor numbers for the file.

The entry `st_size` gives the size of the file, in bytes. For a pipe, the size is the number of bytes waiting to be read from the pipe.

Three entries for each file give the last occurrences of various events in the file's history. `st_atime` gives time the file was last read or written to. `st_mtime` gives the time of the last modification, write for files, create or delete entry for directories. `st_ctime` gives the last change to the attributes, not including times and size.

### *Example*

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for `pipe`.

### *Files*

<sys/stat.h>

### *See Also*

`chmod()`, `chown()`, COHERENT system calls, `ls`, `open()`, `stat()`

*Notes*

**fstat** differs from the related function **stat** mainly in that it accesses the file through its descriptor, which was returned by a successful call to **open**, whereas **stat** takes the file's path name and opens it itself before checking its status.

*Diagnostics*

**fstat** returns -1 if the file is not found or if *statptr* is invalid.

**ftell()** — STDIO Function (libc)

Return current position of file pointer

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
long ftell(fp) FILE *fp;
```

**ftell** returns the current position of the seek pointer. Like its cousin **fseek**, **ftell** takes into account any buffering that is associated with the stream *fp*.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **fseek**.

*See Also*

**fseek()**, **lseek()**, **rewind()**, **STDIO**

**ftime()** — Time Function (libc)

Get the current time from the operating system

```
#include <sys/timeb.h>
```

```
ftime(tbp) struct timeb *tbp;
```

**ftime** fills the structure **timeb**, which is pointed to *tbp*, with COHERENT's representation of the current time. **timeb** is defined in the header file **timeb.h**, as follows:

```
struct timeb {
 time_t time;
 unsigned short millitm;
 short timezone;
 short dstflag;
}
```

The member **time** is the number of seconds since January 1, 1970, 0h00m00s GMT. **millitm** is a count of **milliseconds**. **timezone** and **dstflag** are obsolete; they have been replaced by the environmental variable **TIMEZONE**.

*See Also*

**date**, **time**, **TIMEZONE**, **types.h**

**function** — Definition

A **function** is the C term for a portion of code that is named, can be invoked by name, and that performs a task. Many functions can accept data in the form of arguments, modify the data, and return a value to the statement that invoked it.

*See Also*

data types, definitions, executable file, library, portability

**fwrite()** — **STDIO Function (libc)**

Write into file stream

**#include** <stdio.h>

**int** fwrite(*buffer*, *size*, *n*, *fp*)

**char** \**buffer*; **unsigned** *size*, *n*; **FILE** \**fp*;

fwrite writes *n* items, each of *size* bytes, from *buffer* into the file stream pointed to by *fp*.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **fopen**.

*See Also*

fread(), **STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

fwrite normally returns the number of items written. If an error occurs, the returned value will not be the same as *n*.

## G

**gcd()** – Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Set variable to greatest common divisor

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void gcd(a, b, c)
```

```
mint *a, *b, *c;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. **gcd** sets *c* to the greatest common divisor of *a* and *b*.

*See Also*

multiple-precision mathematics

**general functions** – Overview

The library **libc** includes a number of functions that perform useful, general tasks:

|                   |                                                 |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <b>abort()</b>    | End program immediately                         |
| <b>abs()</b>      | Return the absolute value of an integer         |
| <b>assert()</b>   | Check assertion at run time                     |
| <b>atof()</b>     | Convert ASCII strings to floating point         |
| <b>atoi()</b>     | Convert ASCII strings to integers               |
| <b>atol()</b>     | Convert ASCII strings to long integers          |
| <b>calloc()</b>   | Allocate dynamic memory                         |
| <b>candaddr()</b> | Convert a <b>daddr_t</b> to canonical format    |
| <b>candev()</b>   | Convert a <b>dev_t</b> to canonical format      |
| <b>canino()</b>   | Convert a <b>ino_t</b> to canonical format      |
| <b>canint()</b>   | Convert a <b>int</b> to canonical format        |
| <b>canlong()</b>  | Convert a <b>long</b> to canonical format       |
| <b>canshort()</b> | Convert a <b>short</b> to canonical format      |
| <b>cansize()</b>  | Convert an <b>fsize_t</b> to canonical format   |
| <b>cantime()</b>  | Convert a <b>time_t</b> to canonical format     |
| <b>canvaddr()</b> | Convert a <b>vaddr_t</b> to canonical format    |
| <b>crypt()</b>    | Encryption using rotor algorithm                |
| <b>ecvt()</b>     | Convert floating-point numbers to strings       |
| <b>endgrent()</b> | Close group file                                |
| <b>endpwent()</b> | Close password file                             |
| <b>exit()</b>     | Terminate a program                             |
| <b>fcvt()</b>     | Convert floating point numbers to ASCII strings |
| <b>free()</b>     | Return dynamic memory to free memory pool       |
| <b>frexp()</b>    | Separate fraction and exponent                  |
| <b>gcvt()</b>     | Convert floating point number to ASCII string   |
| <b>getenv()</b>   | Read environmental variable                     |
| <b>getgrent()</b> | Get group file information                      |
| <b>getgrgid()</b> | Get group file information, by group id         |
| <b>getgrnam()</b> | Get group file information, by group name       |
| <b>getlogin()</b> | Get login name                                  |
| <b>getopt()</b>   | Get a command-line option                       |
| <b>getpass()</b>  | Get password with prompting                     |

|                          |                                                  |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <code>getpw()</code>     | Search password file                             |
| <code>getpwent()</code>  | Get password file information                    |
| <code>getpwnam()</code>  | Get password file information, by name           |
| <code>getpwuid()</code>  | Get password file information, by id             |
| <code>getwd()</code>     | Get current working directory name               |
| <code>isatty()</code>    | Check if a device is a terminal                  |
| <code>l3tol()</code>     | Convert file system block number to long integer |
| <code>ldexp()</code>     | Combine fraction and exponent                    |
| <code>longjmp()</code>   | Return from a non-local goto                     |
| <code>ltol3()</code>     | Convert long integer to file system block number |
| <code>malloc()</code>    | Allocate dynamic memory                          |
| <code>memok()</code>     | Check if the arena is sound                      |
| <code>mktemp()</code>    | Generate a temporary file name                   |
| <code>modf()</code>      | Separate integral part and fraction              |
| <code>mtype()</code>     | Return symbolic machine type                     |
| <code>nlist()</code>     | Symbol table lookup                              |
| <code>path()</code>      | Build a path name for a file                     |
| <code>perror()</code>    | System call error messages                       |
| <code>qsort()</code>     | Sort arrays in memory                            |
| <code>rand()</code>      | Generate pseudo-random numbers                   |
| <code>realloc()</code>   | Reallocate dynamic memory                        |
| <code>setgrent()</code>  | Rewind group file                                |
| <code>setjmp()</code>    | Perform non-local goto                           |
| <code>setpwent()</code>  | Rewind password file                             |
| <code>shellsort()</code> | Sort arrays in memory                            |
| <code>sleep()</code>     | Suspend execution                                |
| <code>srand()</code>     | Seed random number generator                     |
| <code>swab()</code>      | Swap a pair of bytes                             |
| <code>system()</code>    | Pass a command to the shell for execution        |
| <code>ttyname()</code>   | Identify a terminal                              |
| <code>ttyslot()</code>   | Return a terminal's line number                  |

*See Also*  
libraries

### `getc()` — STDIO Macro (`stdio.h`)

Read character from file stream

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int getc(fp) FILE *fp;
```

`getc` is a macro that reads a character from the file stream *fp*, and returns an `int`.

#### *Example*

The following example creates a simple copy utility. It opens the first file named on the command line and copies its contents into the second file named on the command line.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```

void fatal(string)
char *string;
{
 printf("%s\n", string);
 exit (1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
 int foo;
 FILE *source, *dest;
 if (--argc != 2)
 fatal("Usage: copy [source][destination]");
 if ((source = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
 fatal("Cannot open source file");
 if ((dest = fopen(argv[2], "w")) == NULL)
 fatal("Cannot open destination file");
 while ((foo = getc(source)) != EOF)
 putc(foo, dest);
}

```

*See Also***fgetc(), getchar(), putc(), STDIO***Diagnostics***getc** returns EOF at end of file or on read fatal.*Notes*

Because **getc** is a macro, arguments with side effects probably will not work as expected. Also, because **getc** is a complex macro, its use in expressions of too great a complexity may cause unforeseen difficulties. Use of the function **fgetc** may avoid this.

**getchar() — STDIO Macro (stdio.h)**

Read character from standard input.

**#include <stdio.h>****int getchar()**

**getchar** is a macro that reads a character from the standard input. It is equivalent to **getc(stdin)**.

*Example*

The following example gets one or more characters from the keyboard, and echoes them on the screen.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
 int foo;
 while ((foo = getchar()) != EOF)
 putchar(foo);
}
```

*See Also*

**getc(), putchar(), STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**getchar** returns **EOF** at end of file or on read error.

## **getegid() – COHERENT System Call**

Get effective group identifier

**getegid()**

Every process has two different versions of its *group identifier*, called the *real* group identifier and the *effective* group identifier. The group identifiers determine eligibility to access files and use system privileges. Normally, these two identifiers are identical. However, for a *set group identifier* load module (see **exec**), the real group identifier is that of the group's current group, whereas the effective group identifier is that of the load module owner. This distinction allows system programs to use files which are protected from groups that invoke the program.

**getegid** returns the effective group identifier.

*See Also*

**access, COHERENT system calls, exec, geteuid(), getgid(), getuid(), login, setuid()**

## **getenv() – General Function (libc)**

Read environmental variable

**char \*getenv(VARIABLE) char \*VARIABLE;**

A program may read variables from its *environment*. This allows the program to accept information that is specific to it. The environment consists of an array of strings, each having the form *VARIABLE=VALUE*. When called with the string *VARIABLE*, **getenv** reads the environment, and returns a pointer to the string *VALUE*.

*Example*

This example prints the environmental variable **PATH**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
 char *env;
 extern char *getenv();
```



```

if ((env = getenv("PATH")) == NULL) {
 printf("Sorry, cannot find PATH\n");
 exit(1);
}
printf("PATH = %s\n", env);
)

```

*See Also*

environmental variables, envp, exec, sh

*Diagnostics*

When *VARIABLE* is not found or has no value, `getenv` returns NULL.

**geteuid() – COHERENT System Call**

Get effective user identifier

`geteuid()`

Every process has two different versions of its *user id*, called the *real* user id and the *effective* user id. The user ids determine eligibility to access files or employ system privileges. Normally, these two ids are identical. However, for a *set user id* load module (see `exec`), the real user id is that of the user, whereas the effective user id is that of the load module owner. This distinction allows system programs to use files which are protected from the user who invokes the program.

`geteuid` returns the effective user identifier

*See Also*

`access()`, COHERENT system calls, `exec`, `getegid()`, `getgid()`, `getuid()`, `login`, `setuid()`

**getgid() – COHERENT System Call**

Get real group identifier

`getgid()`

Every process has two different versions of its *user id*, called the *real* user id and the *effective* user id. The user ids determine eligibility to access files or employ system privileges. Normally, these two ids are identical. However, for a *set user id* load module (see `exec`), the real user id is that of the user, whereas the effective user id is that of the load module owner. This distinction allows system programs to use files which are protected from the user who invokes the program.

`getgid` returns the real group id.

*See Also*

`access()`, COHERENT system calls, `exec`, `getegid()`, `geteuid()`, `getuid()`, `login`, `setuid()`

### `getgrent()` — General Function (libc)

Get group file information  
**#include** <grp.h>  
**struct group** \*getgrent();

`getgrent` returns the next entry from file `/etc/group`. It returns `NULL` if an error occurs or if the end of file is encountered.

#### *Files*

`/etc/group`  
<grp.h>

#### *See Also*

general functions, group

#### *Notes*

All structures and information returned are in a static area internal to `getgrent`. Therefore, information from a previous call is overwritten by each subsequent call.

### `getgrgid()` — General Function (libc)

Get group file information, by group name  
**#include** <grp.h>  
**struct group** \*getgrgid(*gid*);  
**int** *gid*;

`getgrgid` searches file `/etc/group` for the first entry with a numerical group id of *gid*. It returns a pointer to the entry if found; it returns `NULL` if an error occurs or if the end of file is encountered.

#### *Files*

`/etc/group`  
<grp.h>

#### *See Also*

general functions, group

#### *Notes*

All structures and information returned are in a static area internal to `getgrgid`. Therefore, information from a previous call is overwritten by each subsequent call.

### `getgrnam()` — General Function (libc)

Get group file information, by group id  
**#include** <grp.h>  
**struct group** \*getgrnam(*gname*);  
**char** \**gname*;

`getgrnam` searches file `/etc/group` for the first entry with a group name of *gname*. It returns a pointer to the entry for *gname* if it is found; it returns `NULL` for any error or if the end of the file is encountered.

*Files*

/etc/group  
<grp.h>

*See Also*

general functions, group

*Notes*

All structures and information returned are in a static area internal to `getgrnam`. Therefore, information from a previous call is overwritten by each subsequent call.

**getlogin()** – General Function (libc)

Get login name

**char \*getlogin()**

The name corresponding to the current user id is not always the same as the name under which a user logged into the COHERENT system. For example, the user may have issued a `su` command, or there may be several login names associated with a user id. **getlogin** returns the login name found in the file `/etc/utmp`.

In cases where **getlogin** fails to produce a result, **getpwuid** (described in `getpwent`) is normally used to determine the user name for a process.

*Files*

/etc/utmp login names

*See Also*

general functions, `getpwent()`, `getuid()`, `su`, `ttyname()`, `utmp.h`, `who`

*Diagnostics*

**getlogin** returns NULL if the login name cannot be determined.

*Notes*

**getlogin** stores the returned name in a static area that is destroyed by subsequent calls.

**getopt()** – General Function (libc)

Get option letter from argv.

**int getopt(*argc*, *argv*, *optstring*)**

**int *argc*;**

**char \*\**argv*;**

**char \**optstring*;**

**extern char \**optarg*;**

**extern int *optind*;**

**getopt** returns the next option letter in *argv* that matches a letter in *optstring*. *optstring* is a string of recognized option letters. If a letter is followed by a colon, the option is expected to have an argument, which may or may not be separated from it by white space. *optarg* is set to point to the start of the option argument on return from **getopt**.

**getopt** places into *optind* the *argv* index of the next argument to be processed. Because *optind* is external, it is normally initialized to zero automatically before the first call to **getopt**.

When all options have been processed (i.e., up to the first non-option argument), `getopt` returns EOF. The special option `--` may be used to delimit the end of the options: EOF will be returned, and `--` will be skipped.

### *Example*

The following code fragment shows how one might process the arguments for a command that can take the mutually exclusive options `a` and `b`, and the options `f` and `o`, both of which require arguments:

```
main(argc, argv)
int argc;
char **argv;
{
 int c;
 extern int optind;
 extern char *optarg;
 .
 .
 .
 while ((c = getopt(argc, argv, "abf:o:")) != EOF)
 switch (c) {
 case 'a':
 if (bflg)
 errflg++;
 else
 aflg++;
 break;
 case 'b':
 if (aflg)
 errflg++;
 else
 bflg++;
 break;
 case 'f':
 ifile = optarg;
 break;
 case 'o':
 ofile = optarg;
 break;
 case '?':
 default:
 errflg++;
 break;
 }
}
```

```

if (errflg) {
 fprintf(stderr, "Usage: ...");
 exit(2);
}
for (; optind < argc; optind++) {
 .
 .
 .
}
.
.
.
)

```

*See Also*

**general functions**

*Diagnostics*

*getopt* prints an error message on *stderr* and returns a question mark when it encounters an option letter not included in *optstring*.

*Notes*

It is not obvious how '-' standing alone should be treated. This version treats it as a non-option argument, which is not always right.

Option arguments are allowed to begin with '-'. This is reasonable, but reduces the amount of error checking possible.

## **getpass() — General Function (libc)**

Get password with prompting

**char \*getpass(prompt)**

**char \*prompt;**

*getpass* first prints the *prompt*. Then it disables echoing of input characters on the terminal device (either the file */dev/tty* or the standard input), reads a password from it, and restores echoing on the terminal. It returns the given password.

*Files*

*/dev/tty*

*See Also*

**crypt(), general functions, login, passwd, su**

*Notes*

The password is stored in a static location that is overwritten by successive calls.

**getpid() — COHERENT System Call**

Get process identifier  
**getpid()**

Every process has a unique number, called its *process id*. **fork** returns the process id of a created child process to the parent process.

**getpid** returns the process id of the requesting process. Typically a process uses **getpid** to pass its process id to another process which wants to send it a signal, or to generate a unique temporary file name.

*See Also*

**COHERENT system calls, fork(), kill, mktemp**

**getpw() — General Function (libc)**

Search password file  
**getpw(uid, line)**  
short *uid*;  
char *\*line*;

**getpw** searches the password file **/etc/passwd** for the first entry with numerical user id *uid*. If found, *line* receives the corresponding line from the password file.

*Files*

**/etc/passwd**

*See Also*

**general**

*Diagnostics*

**getpw** returns a nonzero value on error.

**getpwent() — General Function (libc)**

Get password file information  
**#include <pwd.h>**  
**struct passwd \*getpwent()**

The COHERENT system has five routines that search the file **/etc/passwd**, which contains information about every user of the system. The returned structure **passwd** is defined in the header file **pwd.h**. For a description of this structure, see **pwd.h**.

**getpwent** returns the next entry from **/etc/passwd**.

*Files*

**/etc/passwd**  
**<pwd.h>**

*See Also*

**endpwent(), general functions, getpwnam(), getpwuid(), pwd.h, setpwent()**

*Diagnostics*

getpwent returns NULL for any error or on end of file.

*Notes*

All structures and information returned are in static areas internal to **getpwent**. Therefore, information from a previous call is overwritten by each subsequent call.

**getpwnam()** — General Function (libc)

Get password file information, by name

```
#include <pwd.h>
```

```
struct passwd *getpwnam(uname)
```

```
char *uname;
```

The COHERENT system has five routines that search the file **/etc/passwd**, which contains information about every user of the system. The returned structure **passwd** is defined in the header file **pwd.h**. For a description of this structure, see **pwd.h**.

**getpwnam** attempts to find the first entry with a name of *uname*.

*Files*

```
/etc/passwd
```

```
<pwd.h>
```

*See Also*

**endpwent()**, **general functions**, **getpwent()**, **getpwuid()**, **pwd.h**, **setpwent()**

*Diagnostics*

**getpwnam** returns NULL for any error or on end of file.

*Notes*

All structures and information returned are in static areas internal to **getpwnam**. Therefore, information from a previous call is overwritten by each subsequent call.

**getpwuid()** — General Function (libc)

Get password file information, by id

```
#include <pwd.h>
```

```
struct passwd *getpwuid(uid)
```

```
int uid;
```

The COHERENT system has five routines that search the file **/etc/passwd**, which contains information about every user of the system. The returned structure **passwd** is defined in the header file **pwd.h**. For more information on this structure, see **pwd.h**.

**getpwuid** attempts to find the first entry with a numerical user id of *uid*.

*Files*

```
/etc/passwd
```

```
<pwd.h>
```

*See Also*

**endpwent()**, **general functions**, **getpwent()**, **getpwnam()**, **pwd.h**, **setpwent()**

*Diagnostics*

**getpwuid** returns NULL for any error or on end of file.

*Notes*

All structures and information returned are in static areas internal to **getpwuid**. Therefore, information from a previous call is overwritten by each subsequent call.

**gets()** — STDIO Function (libc)

Read string from standard input

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
char *gets(buffer) char *buffer;
```

**gets** reads characters from the standard input into a buffer pointed at by *buffer*. It stops reading as soon as it detects a newline character or EOF. **gets** discards the newline or EOF, appends a null character onto the string it has built, and returns another copy of *buffer*.

*Example*

The following example uses **gets** to get a string from the console; the string is echoed twice to demonstrate what **gets** returns.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
```

```
{
```

```
 char buffer[80];
```

```
 printf("Type something: ");
```

```
 /*
```

```
 * because of the way COHERENT's teletype
 * driver works, the following fflush has
 * no effect. It should be included for
 * portability to other operating systems.
 */
```

```
 fflush(stdout);
```

```
 printf("%s\n%s\n", gets(buffer), buffer);
```

```
}
```

*See Also*

**buffer**, **fgets()**, **getc()**, **STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**gets** returns NULL if an error occurs or if EOF is seen before any characters are read.

*Notes*

**gets** stops reading the input string as soon as it detects a newline character. If a previous input routine left a newline character in the standard input buffer, **gets** will read it and immediately stop accepting characters; to the user, it will appear as if **gets** is not working at all.

For example, if **getchar** is followed by **gets**, the first character **gets** will receive is the newline character left behind by **getchar**. A simple statement will remedy this:



```
while (getchar() != '\n')
;
```

This throws away the newline character left behind by `getchar`; `gets` will now work correctly.

## getty — System Maintenance

Terminal initialization  
*/etc/getty type*

The initialization process `init` invokes `getty` for each terminal indicated in the file */etc/tty*s. `getty` tries to read a user name from the terminal which is the standard input, adapting its mode settings accordingly. Then `getty` invokes `login` with the name read. This process may set delays, mapping of upper to lower case, speed, and whether the terminal normally uses carriage return or linefeed to terminate input.

If the terminal baud rate is wrong, the login message printed by `getty` will appear garbled. If the specified *type* indicates variable speeds, as described below, hitting `BREAK` will try the next speed.

`init` passes the third character in a line of the file */etc/tty*s as the *type* argument to `getty`. *type* conveys information about the terminal port. An upper-case letter in the range `A` to `S` specifies a hard-wired baud rate, as indicated in the header file *<sgtty.h>*. Other characters specify a range of speeds suitable to a dial-in modem. The following variable-speed settings are recognized:

- 0 Cycles through speeds 300, 1200, 150, and 110 baud, in that order. This is a good default setting for dial-in ports.
- Teletype model 33, fixed at 110 baud.
- 1 Teletype model 37, fixed at 150 baud.
- 2 9600 baud with delays (e.g., Tektronix 4104).
- 3 Cycles between 2400, 1200, and 300 baud. This is used with 2400-bps modems.
- 4 DECwriter (LA36) with delays.
- 5 Like 3, but starts at 300 baud.

`getty` recognizes the following fixed-speed settings, for hard-wired terminals:

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| A | 50 baud   |
| B | 75 baud   |
| C | 110 baud  |
| D | 134 baud  |
| E | 150 baud  |
| F | 200 baud  |
| G | 300 baud  |
| H | 600 baud  |
| I | 1200 baud |
| J | 1800 baud |
| K | 2000 baud |
| L | 2400 baud |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| M | 3600 baud  |
| N | 4800 baud  |
| O | 7200 baud  |
| P | 9600 baud  |
| Q | 19200 baud |
| R | EXT        |
| S | EXT        |

### *Files*

`/etc/tty`  
`<sgtty.h>`

### *See Also*

`init`, `ioctl()`, `login`, `sgtty.h`, system maintenance, `stty`, `ttys`

## `getuid()` – COHERENT System Call

Get real user identifier

`getuid()`

Every process has two different versions of its *user id*, called the *real* user id and the *effective* user id. The user ids determine eligibility to access files or employ system privileges. Normally, these two ids are identical. However, for a *set user id* load module (see `exec`), the real user id is that of the user, whereas the effective user id is that of the load module owner. This distinction allows system programs to use files which are protected from the user who invokes the program.

`getuid` returns the real user id.

### *See Also*

`access()`, COHERENT system calls, `exec`, `getegid()`, `geteuid()`, `getgid()`, `login`, `setuid()`

## `getw()` – STDIO Function (`libc`)

Read word from file stream

`#include <stdio.h>`

`int getw(fp) FILE *fp;`

`getw` reads a word (an `int`) from the file stream `fp`.

`getw` differs from `getc` in that `getw` gets and returns an `int`, whereas `getc` returns either a `char` promoted to an `int`, or EOF. To detect EOF while using `getw`, you must use `feof`.

### *See Also*

`canon`, `getc()`, `STDIO`

### *Notes*

`getw` returns EOF on errors.

`getw` assumes that the bytes of the word it receives are in the natural byte ordering of the machine. This means that such files might not be portable between machines.

**getwd()** — General Function (libc)

Get current working directory name

**char \*getwd()**

The *current working directory* is the directory from which file name searches commence when a pathname does not begin with '/'. **getwd** returns the name of the current working directory. It is useful for processes that need to generate full pathnames for files, such as spoolers and daemons.

If the invoker does not have permission to search all levels of directory hierarchy above the current directory, **getwd** will not be able to obtain the directory name.

*See Also*

**chdir()**, **general functions**, **pwd**

*Diagnostics*

**getwd** returns NULL if the current directory cannot be found.

*Notes*

The return value points to a static area that is limited in size to 400 characters. **getwd** will fail if the current directory name is longer.

The working directory may not be restored to its initial value if **getwd** fails.

**GMT** — Definition

**GMT** is an abbreviation of Greenwich Mean Time, the time recorded at the Greenwich Observatory in England, where by international convention the Earth's zero meridian is fixed.

By definition, COHERENT fixes system time in GMT. It calculates local time as an offset of GMT; for example, the time zone for Chicago is six hours (360 minutes) behind Greenwich, so the local time for Chicago is calculated by subtracting 360 minutes from GMT.

*See Also*

**definitions**, **gmtime()**, **localtime**, **time**, **time.h**, **TIMEZONE**

*Notes*

The ANSI Standard replaces GMT with UTC (*universal temps coordonne*, or universal coordinated time) for C programming. The change is mainly one of terminology rather than substance, as some signatories to international conventions object to naming the standard for global time after a village in England.

Under international convention, there are two UTC standards: UTC1 is based on solar time and is identical to current GMT, whereas UTC2 uses atomic clocks that are corrected by comparison with pulsars. These standards drift apart as the earth's rotation slows; thus, "leap seconds" are inserted periodically into UTC1 to bridge the difference.

**gmtime()** – Time Function (libc)

Convert system time to calendar structure

```
#include <time.h>
```

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
tm *gmtime(time_t *timep);
```

`gmtime` converts the internal time from seconds since midnight January 1, 1970 GMT, into fields that give integer years since 1900, the month, day of the month, the hour, the minute, the second, the day of the week, and yearday. It returns a pointer to the structure `tm`, which defines these fields, and which is itself defined in the header file `time.h`. Unlike its cousin, `localtime`, `gmtime` returns Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).

*Example*

For an example of how to use this function, see `asctime`.

*See Also*

GMT, `localtime()`, `time`, `TIMEZONE`

*Notes*

`gmtime` returns a pointer to a statically allocated data area that is overwritten by successive calls.

**goto** – C Keyword

Unconditionally jump within a function

A `goto` command jumps to the area of the program introduced by a label. A program can `goto` only within a function; to jump across function boundaries, you must use the functions `setjmp` and `longjmp`.

In the context of C programming, the most common use for `goto` is to exit from a control block or go to the top of a control block. It is used most often to write “rip cord” routines, i.e., routines that are executed when an major error occurs too deeply within a function for the program to disentangle itself correctly. Note that in most instances, `goto` is a bad solution to a problem that can be better solved by structured programming.

*Example*

The following example demonstrates how to use `goto`.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
 char line[80];
getline:
 printf("Enter line: ");
 fflush(stdout);
 gets(line);
```

```

/* a series of tests often is best done with goto's */
if (*line == 'x') {
 printf("Bad line\n");
 goto getline;
} else if (*line == 'y') {
 printf("Try again\n");
 goto getline;
} else if (*line == 'q')
 goto goodbye;
else
 goto getline;

goodbye:
printf("Goodbye.\n");
exit(0);
}

```

### See Also

C keywords

### Notes

The *C Programming Language* describes `goto` as “infinitely-abusable”: *caveat utilitor*.

## grep — Command

Pattern search

**grep** [**option ...**] [*pattern*] [*file ...*]

**grep** searches each *file* for occurrences of the *pattern* (sometimes called a regular expression). If no *file* is specified, **grep** searches the standard input. The *pattern* is given in the same manner as to `ed`. Normally, **grep** prints each line matching the *pattern*.

The following options are available.

- b** With each output line, print the block number in which the line started (used to search file systems).
- c** Print the count of matching lines rather than the lines.
- e** The next argument is *pattern* (useful if the pattern starts with '-').
- f** The next argument is a file containing a list of patterns separated by newlines; there is no *pattern* argument.
- h** When more than one *file* is specified, output lines are normally accompanied by the file name; **-h** suppresses this.
- l** Print the name of each file containing matching lines rather than the lines.
- n** The line number in the file accompanies each line printed.
- s** Suppress all output, just return status.

- v Print a line if the pattern is *not* found in the line.
- x Print the line only if it is exactly the same as the pattern; treat wildcards in the pattern as plain text.
- y Lower-case letters in the pattern match lower-case *and* upper-case letters on the input lines.

*See Also*

**awk, commands, ed, egrep, expr, lex, sed**

*Diagnostics*

**grep** returns an exit status of zero for success, one for no matches, two for error.

*Notes*

**egrep** is an extended and faster version of **grep**.

**group** — File Format

Group file format

The group file **/etc/group** describes the user groups that have been defined on your COHERENT system. This allows users to control the access that members of their group have to certain files. **/etc/group** contains the information to map any ASCII group name to the corresponding numerical group identifier, and vice versa. It also contains, in ASCII, the names of the members of each group. This information is used by, among others, the command **newgrp**.

Each group has an entry in the file **/etc/group** one line per entry. Each line consists of four colon-separated ASCII fields, as follows:

*group\_name* : *password* : *group\_number* : *member[,member...]*

Passwords are encrypted with **crypt**, so the group file is generally readable.

The COHERENT system has five system calls that manipulate **/etc/group**, as follows:

**endgrent**

Close **/etc/group**.

**getgrent**

Return the next entry from **/etc/group**.

**getgrnam**

Return the first entry with a given group name.

**getgrgid**

Return the first entry with a given group identifier.

**setgrent**

Rewind **/etc/group**, so that searches can begin again from the beginning of the file.

The calls **getgrent**, **getgrgid**, and **getgrnam** each return a pointer to structure **group**, which is defined in the header file **grp.h** as follows:

```

struct group {
 char *gr_name; /* Group name */
 char *gr_passwd; /* Group password */
 int gr_gid; /* Numeric group id */
 char **gr_mem; /* Group members */
};

```

*Files*

`/etc/group`

*See Also*

`chgrp()`, `crypt()`, `endgrent()`, file formats, `getgrent()`, `getgrgid()`, `getgrnam()`, `grp.h`, `newgrp`, `passwd`, `setgrent()`

*Notes*

At present the group password field cannot be set directly (no command similar to `passwd` exists for groups). One alternative is to set the password in the `/etc/passwd` file for a user with the `passwd` command, and then transcribe the password into the group file manually.

**grp.h** – Header File

Declare group structure

```
#include <grp.h>
```

The header file `grp.h` declares the structure `group`, which is composed as follows:

```

struct group (
 char *gr_name; /* group name */
 char *gr_passwd; /* group password */
 int gr_gid; /* numeric group id */
 char **gr_mem; /* group members */
);

```

This structure holds information about the group to which a given user belongs. It is used by the functions `endgrent`, `getgrent`, `getgrgid`, `getgrnam`, and `setgrent`.

*See Also*

header files

**gtty()** – COHERENT System Call (libc)

Device-dependent control

```
#include <sgtty.h>
```

```
int gtty(fd, sgp)
```

```
int fd;
```

```
struct sgttyb *sgp;
```

`gtty` gets attributes of a terminal. It is shorthand notation for `ioctl` calls with a *command* argument of `TIOCGETP`.

*Files*

**<sgtty.h>**

*See Also*

**COHERENT system calls, exec, ioctl(), open(), read(), stty, write()**



# H

## hdiioctl.h — Header File

Control hard-disk I/O

```
#define <sys/hdiioctl.h>
```

**hdiioctl.h** declares constants and structures used to control hard-disk I/O.

*See Also*

header files

## head — Command

Print the beginning of a file

```
head [+n[bcl]] [file]
```

```
head [-n[bcl]] [file]
```

**head** copies the first part of *file*, or of the standard input if none is named, to the standard output.

The given *number* tells **head** where to begin to copy the data. Numbers of the form *+number* measure the starting point from the beginning of the file; those of the form *-number* measure from the end of the file.

A specifier of blocks, characters, or lines (**b**, **c**, or **l**, respectively) may follow the number; the default is lines. If no *number* is specified, a default of +4 is assumed.

*See Also*

commands, **dd**, **egrep**, **sed**, **tail**

*Notes*

Because **head** buffers data measured from the end of the file, large counts may not work.

## header files — Overview

A *header file* is a file of C code that contains definitions, declarations, and structures commonly used in a given situation. By tradition, a header file always has the suffix “.h”. Header files are invoked within a C program by the command **#include**, which is read by **cpp**, the C preprocessor; for this reason, they are also called “include files”.

Header files are one of the most useful tools available to a C programmer. They allow you to put into one place all of the information that the different modules of your program share. Proper use of header files will make your programs easier to maintain and to port to other environments.

COHERENT includes the following header files:

|                    |                                         |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>access.h</b>    | Check accessibility                     |
| <b>acct.h</b>      | Format for process-accounting file      |
| <b>action.h</b>    | Describe parsing action and goto tables |
| <b>sys/alloc.h</b> | Define the allocator                    |
| <b>ar.h</b>        | Format for archive files                |
| <b>ascii.h</b>     | Define non-printable ASCII characters   |

|                      |                                                              |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>assert.h</b>      | Define <b>assert()</b>                                       |
| <b>sys/buf.h</b>     | Buffer header                                                |
| <b>canon.h</b>       | Portable layout of binary data                               |
| <b>sys/chars.h</b>   | Character definitions                                        |
| <b>sys/con.h</b>     | Configure device drivers                                     |
| <b>sys/const.h</b>   | Declare machine-dependent constants                          |
| <b>ctype.h</b>       | Header file for data tests                                   |
| <b>curses.h</b>      | Declare/define <b>curses</b> routines                        |
| <b>sys/deftty.h</b>  | Default tty settings                                         |
| <b>sys/dir.h</b>     | Directory format                                             |
| <b>dirent.h</b>      | Define constant <b>dirent</b>                                |
| <b>dumptape.h</b>    | Define data structures for dump tapes                        |
| <b>ebcdic.h</b>      | Define constants for non-printable EBCDIC characters         |
| <b>errno.h</b>       | Error numbers used by <b>errno()</b>                         |
| <b>sys/fblk.h</b>    | Define disk-free block                                       |
| <b>sys/fcntl.h</b>   | Manifest constants for file-handling functions"              |
| <b>sys/fd.h</b>      | Declare file-descriptor structure                            |
| <b>sys/fdioctl.h</b> | Control floppy-disk I/O                                      |
| <b>sys/fdisk.h</b>   | Fixed-disk constants and structures                          |
| <b>sys/filsys.h</b>  | Structures and constants for super block                     |
| <b>fperr.h</b>       | Constants used with floating-point exception codes           |
| <b>grp.h</b>         | Declare group structure                                      |
| <b>sys/hdioctl.h</b> | Control hard-disk I/O                                        |
| <b>sys/ino.h</b>     | Constants and structures for i-nodes                         |
| <b>sys/inode.h</b>   | Constants and structures for memory-resident i-nodes         |
| <b>sys/io.h</b>      | Constants and structures used by I/O                         |
| <b>sys/ipc.h</b>     | Declarations for process communications                      |
| <b>l.out.h</b>       | Object file format                                           |
| <b>sys/lpioctl.h</b> | Definitions for line-printer I/O control                     |
| <b>sys/machine.h</b> | Machine-dependent definitions                                |
| <b>sys/malloc.h</b>  | Definitions for memory-allocation functions                  |
| <b>math.h</b>        | Declare mathematics functions                                |
| <b>sys/mdata.h</b>   | Define machine-specific magic numbers                        |
| <b>mnttab.h</b>      | Structure for mount table                                    |
| <b>mon.h</b>         | Read profile output files                                    |
| <b>sys/mount.h</b>   | Define the mount table                                       |
| <b>mprec.h</b>       | Multiple-precision arithmetic                                |
| <b>sys/msg.h</b>     | Definitions for message facility                             |
| <b>sys/msig.h</b>    | Machine-dependent signals                                    |
| <b>mtab.h</b>        | Currently mounted file systems                               |
| <b>sys/mtioctl.h</b> | Magnetic-tape I/O control                                    |
| <b>mtype.h</b>       | List processor code numbers                                  |
| <b>n.out.h</b>       | Define <b>n.out</b> file structure                           |
| <b>sys/param.h</b>   | Define machine-specific parameters                           |
| <b>path.h</b>        | Define/declare constants and functions used with <b>path</b> |
| <b>sys/poll.h</b>    | Define structures/constants used with polling devices        |
| <b>sys/proc.h</b>    | Define structures/constants used with processes              |
| <b>pwd.h</b>         | Declare password structure                                   |
| <b>sys/sched.h</b>   | Define constants used with scheduling                        |
| <b>sys/seg.h</b>     | Definitions used with segmentation                           |

|                            |                                                         |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>sys/sem.h</code>     | Definitions used by semaphore facility                  |
| <code>setjmp.h</code>      | Define <code>setjmp()</code> and <code>longjmp()</code> |
| <code>sgtty.h</code>       | Definitions used to control terminal I/O                |
| <code>sys/shm.h</code>     | Definitions used with shared memory                     |
| <code>signal.h</code>      | Declare signals                                         |
| <code>sys/stat.h</code>    | Definitions and declarations used to obtain file status |
| <code>stddef.h</code>      | Declare/define standard definitions                     |
| <code>stdio.h</code>       | Declarations and definitions for I/O                    |
| <code>sys/stream.h</code>  | Definitions for message facility"                       |
| <code>string.h</code>      | Declare string functions                                |
| <code>termio.h</code>      | Definitions used with terminal input and output         |
| <code>time.h</code>        | Give time-description structure                         |
| <code>sys/timeb.h</code>   | Declare <code>timeb</code> structure                    |
| <code>timef.h</code>       | Definitions for user-level timed functions              |
| <code>sys/timeout.h</code> | Define the timer queue                                  |
| <code>sys/times.h</code>   | Definitions used with <code>times()</code> system call  |
| <code>sys/tty.h</code>     | Define flags used with tty processing                   |
| <code>sys/types.h</code>   | Declare system-specific data types                      |
| <code>sys/uproc.h</code>   | Definitions used with user processes                    |
| <code>utmp.h</code>        | Login accounting information                            |
| <code>sys/utsname.h</code> | Define <code>utsname</code> structure                   |
| <code>v7sgtty.h</code>     | UNIX Version 7-style terminal I/O                       |

*See Also*

C language, `#include`, portability

## help — Command

Print concise description of command

`help command`

`help` prints a concise description of the options available for each specified *command*. If the *command* is omitted, `help` prints a simple description of itself, followed by information about the command given by `$LASTERROR`, which is the last command returning a nonzero exit status.

`help` provides more information than the usage message printed by a command, but less than the detailed description given by the `man` command. The primary purpose of `help` is to refresh your memory if you have forgotten an option to *command*.

`help` prints information normally found between `.HS` and `.HE` macros in the `nroff` source for the manual pages. `nroff` ignores this information. If `help` finds no information in the manual pages, it looks in `/etc/helpfile` for additional system information and in `$HELP` for user-specific information. Information about a *command* begins with a line

`@command`

and ends with the next line beginning with '@' in `/etc/helpfile` or `$HELP`. `help` constructs the index file `/etc/helpindex` to make subsequent searches of `/etc/helpfile` faster.

### Files

**/etc/helpfile** — Additional system information

**/etc/helpindex** — Index for helpfile

**/usr/man/cmd/\*** — To extract summaries

**\$HELP** — User information

**\$LASTERROR** — Default command help

### See Also

**commands, man**

## HOME — Environmental Variable

User's home directory

**HOME**=*home directory*

The environmental variable **HOME** name's the user's home directory. Some commands use this name by default if they require the name of a directory and none is supplied. For example, if you type the change directory command **cd** without an argument, it will change the current directory to the one named by the **HOME**.

### See Also

**environmental variables**

## hp — Command

Prepare files for HP LaserJet-compatible printer

**hp** [ **-acfl** ] [ **-imarg** ] [ **-ttop** ] [ **-plines** ] *file ...*

The **hp** command translates **nroff** font specifications into the correct escape sequences for an HP LaserJet compatible printer. It also allows the user to set indentation, page length, landscape mode, and so on. Because some LaserJet printers stack pages in reverse order as they are printed, **hp** can put pages out in reverse order.

Option **-f** prints pages in the normal order; without this option, **hp** prints pages in reverse order.

Option **-imarg** sets the indent to the given *marg*.

Option **-l** prints pages in landscape mode.

Option **-plines** sets the page length to *lines*.

Option **-ttop** sets the top margin to *top*.

### See Also

**commands, hpd**

## hpd — System Maintenance

Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer spooler daemon

**/usr/lib/hpd**

**hpd** is a daemon program that runs in the background and prints listings queued by the **hpr** command. **hpd** is run automatically by **hpr**. If there is no printing to do, or if another daemon is already running (indicated by the **dpid** file), **hpd** exits immediately. Otherwise, it searches the spool directory for control files of listings to print. These control files contain the names of files to print, the user name, banner pages, and files to be

removed upon completion.

**hpd** does not print listings in any particular order. There is no prioritization of printing, either by size or by requester.

The **hpskip** command terminates or restarts the current hp printer listing.

### Files

**/dev/hp** — Printer  
**/usr/spool/hpd** — Spool directory  
**/usr/spool/hpd/cf\*** — Control files  
**/usr/spool/hpd/df\*** — Data files  
**/usr/spool/hpd/dpid** — Lock and process id

### See Also

**hpr**, **hpskip**, **init**, **lpd**, **system maintenance**

## hpr — Command

Send file to Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer spooler

**hpr** [ **-Bemnr** ] [ **-b banner** ] [*file ...*]

**hpr** lets you print each specified *file* on the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer, without conflicting with printing by other users. If no *file* is specified, **hpr** prints the standard input on the LaserJet printer.

**hpr** recognizes the following options:

- B** Suppress printing of a banner page.
- b** The next argument is the banner.
- c** Copy the files (allowing changes to be made before the printing completes).
- m** Send a message when the printing completes.
- n** Do not send a message (default).
- r** Remove the files when they have been spooled.

**hpskip** terminates or restarts the current listing. **hp** converts **nroff** output into forms usable by the Laserjet; it is also used to describe the format of the printing.

### Examples

To print the file **foo** on the LaserJet, type:

```
hpr foo
```

### Files

**/dev/hp** — Line printer  
**/usr/lib/hpd** — Line printer daemon  
**/usr/spool/hpd** — Spool directory  
**/usr/spool/hpd/dpid** — Daemon lockfile

*See Also*

**commands, hpd, hpskip, lpr, pr**

**hpskip – Command**

Abort/restart current listing on Hewlett-Packard LaserJet

**hpskip [-r]**

**hpskip** gives some control over printing with the LaserJet printer spooler. When invoked without the **-r** option, **hpskip** terminates the current listing with a message. When invoked with the **-r** option, **hpskip** restarts the current listing.

**hpr** spools files to the LaserJet printer.

*Files*

**/usr/lib/hpd** — LaserJet printer daemon

**/usr/spool/hpd** — Spool directory

**/usr/spool/hpd/dpid** — Daemon lockfile

*See Also*

**commands, hpd, hpr, lpskip, pr**

**hypot() – Mathematics Function (libm)**

Compute hypotenuse of right triangle

**#include <math.h>**

**double hypot(x, y) double x, y;**

**hypot** computes the hypotenuse, or distance from the origin, of its arguments *x* and *y*. The result is the square root of the sum of the squares of *x* and *y*.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos**.

*See Also*

**cabs(), mathematics library**

## I

**i-node** — Definition

COHERENT system file identifier

Each file on a COHERENT file system is identified by a unique number, called an *i-node number* or *i-number*. Each i-node contains information about a file: its mode, link count, user identifier, group identifier, size, location on the file system, access time, modify time, and creation time.

The user refers to a file by a file name, stored in a directory; the directory entry identifies the file by its i-node number. A device and i-node number together uniquely specify a file. The headers **ino.h** and **i-node.h** define, respectively, disk i-nodes and memory i-nodes.

*See Also*  
definitions

**icode** — Command

i-node consistency check

**icode** [-s] [-b N ...] [-v ] *filesystem* ...

Each block in a file system must be either free (i.e., in the free list) or allocated (i.e., associated with exactly one i-node). **icode** examines each specified *filesystem*, printing block numbers that are claimed by more than one i-node, or claimed by both an i-node and the free list. It also checks for blocks that appear more than once in the block list of an i-node or in the free list.

The option **-v** (verbose) causes **icode** to print a summary of block usage in the *filesystem*. The option **-s** causes **icode** to ignore the free list, to note which blocks are claimed by i-nodes, and to rebuild the free list with the remainder. A list of block numbers may be submitted with the **-b** flag; **icode** prints the data structure associated with each block as the file system is scanned.

The raw device should be used, and the *filesystem* should be unmounted if possible. If this is not possible (e.g., on the root file system) and the **-s** option is used, the system must be rebooted immediately to expunge the obsolete superblock.

The exit status bits for a bad return are as follows:

0x01 Miscellaneous error (e.g. out of space)  
 0x02 Too hard to fix without human intervention  
 0x04 Bad free block  
 0x08 Missing blocks  
 0x10 Duplicates in free list  
 0x20 Bad block in free list

*See Also*

**clri**, **commands**, **dcheck**, **fsck**, **ncheck**, **sync**, **umount**

### *Diagnostics*

The message “dups in free” indicates a block is in the free list more than once. “bad freelist” indicates the presence of bad blocks on the free list. A “bad” block is one that lies outside the bounds of the file system. A “dup” (duplicated) block is one associated with the free list and an i-node, or with more than one i-node. All the errors above *must* be corrected before the file system is mounted. “bad ifree” means allocated i-nodes are on the free i-node list; this is inconsequential.

This command has largely been replaced by **fsck**.

### **if – C Keyword**

Introduce a conditional statement

**if** is a C keyword that introduces a conditional statement. For example,

```
if (i==10)
 dosomething();
```

will **dosomething** only if **i** equals ten.

**if** statements can be used with the statements **else if** and **else** to create a chain of conditional statements. Such a chain can include any number of **else if** statements, but only one **else** statement.

#### *See Also*

**C keywords, else**

### **if – Command**

Conditional command execution

```
if sequence1
then sequence2
[elif sequence3
then sequence4] ...
[else sequence5]
fi
```

The shell construct **if** executes commands conditionally, depending on the exit status of the execution of other commands.

First, **if** executes the commands in *sequence1*. If the exit status is zero, it executes the commands in *sequence2* and terminates. Otherwise, it executes the optional *sequence3* if given, and executes *sequence4* if the exit status is zero. It executes additional **elif** clauses similarly. If the exit status of each tested command sequence is nonzero, it executes the optional **else** part *sequence5*.

Because the shell recognizes a reserved word only as the unquoted first word of a command, each **then**, **elif**, **else**, and **fi** must either occur unquoted at the start of a line or be preceded by ‘;’.

The shell executes **if** directly.



*Example*

For an example of this command, see the entry for `trap`.

*See Also*

`commands`, `sh`, `test`

**index()** — String Function (libc)

Find a character in a string

```
char *index(string, c) char *string; char c;
```

`index` scans the given *string* for the first occurrence of the character *c*. If *c* is found, `index` returns a pointer to it. If it is not found, `index` returns `NULL`.

Note that having `index` search for a null character will always produce a pointer to the end of a string. For example,

```
char *string;
assert(index(string, 0)==string+strlen(string));
```

will never fail.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for `strncpy`.

*See Also*

`pnmatch()`, `rindex()`, `string` functions

*Notes*

This function is identical to the function `strchr`, which is described in the ANSI standard. COHERENT includes `strchr` in its libraries. It is recommended that it be used instead of `index` so that programs more closely approach strict conformity with the ANSI standard.

**init** — System Maintenance

System initialization

`/etc/init`

The COHERENT boot procedure executes `init` as process 1 to perform initialization. `init` opens the console terminal `/dev/console` and invokes the shell script `/etc/brc` if it exists. If it does not, `init` invokes a shell `sh` on it with `HOME` set to `/etc`. The shell executes `/etc/profile` and `/etc/.profile` if present. The system then runs in single-user mode and accepts commands from the console.

When the console terminates the shell, normally by typing `<ctrl-D>`, `init` brings up the system in multiuser mode. It executes the shell command file `/etc/rc`, which performs standard bookkeeping and maintenance chores. Typically it mounts standard file systems, removes temporary files, and invokes `cron` and `update`. If desired, it may load device drivers, enable swapping with `swap`, and enable process accounting with `accton`.

Next, `init` opens terminals as specified in the file `/etc/ttys`. It invokes `getty` to read a user name and perform a `login` on each terminal.

When a user shell terminates, `init` updates the system accounting information in `/etc/utmp` and `/usr/adm/wtmp`. Then it reopens the appropriate terminal and in-

vokes **getty**, as above.

**init** rescans the file `/etc/ttys` for terminal changes if it receives the signal **SIGQUIT**. The command `kill quit 1` sends **SIGQUIT** to the **init** process. **init** then invokes **getty** as necessary.

**init** returns the system to single user mode if it receives the signal **SIGHUP**. The command `kill -1 1` sends **SIGHUP** to the **init** process.

### *Files*

`/dev/console` — Console terminal  
`/dev/tty??` — Terminal devices  
`/etc/brc` — Boot command file  
`/etc/rc` — initialization command file  
`/etc/ttys` — Active terminals  
`/etc/utmp` — Logged in users  
`/usr/adm/wtmp` — Login accounting data  
`/usr/spool/uucp/LCK.*` — Terminal locks

### *See Also*

**getty**, **kill**, **login**, **sh**, **system maintenance**, **ttys**

## **initialization** — Definition

The term *initialization* refers to setting a variable to its first, or initial, value.

### *Rules of Initialization*

Initializers follow the same rules for type and conversion as do assignment statements.

If a static object with a scalar type is not explicitly initialized, it is initialized to zero by default. Likewise, if a static pointer is not explicitly initialized, it is initialized to **NULL** by default. If an object with automatic storage duration is not explicitly initialized, its contents are indeterminate.

Initializers on static objects must be constant expressions; greater flexibility is allowed for initializers of automatic variables. These latter initializers can be arbitrary expressions, not just constant expressions. For example,

```
double dsin = sin(30.0);
```

is a valid initializer, where **dsin** is declared inside a function.

To initialize an object, use the assignment operator '='. The following sections describe how to initialize different classes of objects.

### *Scalars*

To initialize a scalar object, assign it the value of a expression. The expression may be enclosed within braces; doing so does not affect the value of the assignment. For example, the expressions

```
int example = 7+12;
```

and

```
int example = { 7+12 };
```

are equivalent.

### *Unions and Structures*

The initialization of a **union** by definition fills only its *first* member.

To initialize a **union**, use an expression that is enclosed within braces:

```
union example_u {
 int member1;
 long member2;
 float member3;
} = { 5 };
```

This initializes **member1** to five. That is to say, the **union** is filled with an **int**-sized object whose value is five.

To initialize a structure, use a list of constants or expressions that are enclosed within braces. For example:

```
struct example_s {
 int member1;
 long member2;
 union example_u member3;
};

struct example_s test1 = { 5, 3, 15 };
```

This initializes **member1** to five, initializes **member2** to three, and initializes the *first* member of **member3** to 15.

### *Strings and Wide Characters*

To initialize a string pointer or an array of wide characters, use a string literal.

The following initializes a string:

```
char string[] = "This is a string";
```

The length of the character array is 17 characters: one for every character in the given string literal plus one for the null character that marks the end of the string.

If you wish, you can fix the length of a character array. In this case, the null character is appended to the end of the string only if there is room in the array. For example, the following

```
char string[16] = "This is a string";
```

writes the text into the array **string**, but does not include the concluding null character because there is not enough room for it.

A pointer to **char** can also be initialized when the pointer is declared. For example:

```
char *strptr = "This is a string";
```

initializes **strptr** to point to the first character in **This is a string**. This declaration automatically allocates exactly enough storage to hold the given string literal, plus the terminating null character.

*Arrays*

To initialize an array, use a list of expressions that is enclosed within braces. For example, the expression

```
int array[] = { 1, 2, 3 };
```

initializes `array`. Because `array` does not have a declared number of elements, the initialization fixes its number of elements at three. The elements of the array are initialized in the order in which the elements of the initialization list appear. For example, `array[0]` is initialized to one, `array[1]` to two, and `array[2]` to three.

If an array has a fixed length and the initialization list does not contain enough initializers to initialize every element, then the remaining elements are initialized in the default manner: static variables are initialized to zero, and other variables to whatever happens to be in memory. For example, the following:

```
int array[3] = { 1, 2 };
```

initializes `array[0]` to one, `array[1]` to two, and `array[2]` to zero.

The initialization of a multi-dimensional array is something of a science in itself. The ANSI Standard defines that the ranks in an array are filled from right to left. For example, consider the array:

```
int example[2][3][4];
```

This array contains two groups of three elements, each of which consists of four elements. Initialization of this array will proceed from `example[0][0][0]` through `example[0][0][3]`; then from `example[0][1][0]` through `example[0][1][3]`; and so on, until the array is filled.

It is easy to check initialization when there is one initializer for each "slot" in the array; e.g.,

```
int example[2][3] = {
 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
};
```

or:

```
int example[2][3] = {
 { 1, 2, 3 }, { 4, 5, 6 }
};
```

The situation becomes more difficult when an array is only partially initialized; e.g.,

```
int example[2][3] = {
 { 1 }, { 2, 3 }
};
```

which is equivalent to:

```
int example[2][3] = {
 { 1, 0, 0 }, { 2, 3, 0 }
};
```

As can be seen, braces mark the end of initialization for a “cluster” of elements within an array. For example, the following:

```
int example[2][3][4] = {
 5, { 1, 2 }, { 5, 2, 4, 3 }, { 9, 9, 5 },
 { 2, 3, 7 } };
```

is equivalent to entering:

```
int example[2][3][4] = {
 { 5, 0, 0, 0 },
 { 1, 2, 0, 0 },
 { 5, 2, 4, 3 },

 { 9, 9, 5, 0 },
 { 2, 3, 7, 0 },
 { 0, 0, 0, 0 }
};
```

The braces end the initialization of one cluster of elements; the next cluster is then initialized. Any elements within a cluster that have not yet been initialized when the brace is read are initialized in the default manner.

*See Also*

array, definitions, struct, union

## ino.h — Header File

Constants and structures for disk i-nodes

```
#define <sys/inode.h>
```

**inode.h** declares structures and constants that are used to describe i-nodes.

*See Also*

i-node, header files

## inode.h — Header File

Constants and structures for memory-resident i-nodes

```
#define <sys/inode.h>
```

**inode.h** declares structures and constants for memory-resident i-nodes.

*See Also*

header files, i-node

## install — Command

Install COHERENT update

```
/etc/install id device ndisks
```

**install** installs an update of the COHERENT system onto your hard disk. *id* identifies the update to be installed. *device* is the device from which the update disks will be read. *ndisks* is the number of disks that comprise the update.

*Example*

The following installs COHERENT update **coh.301**, which consists of one disk, from a high-density 5.25-inch floppy drive:

```
/etc/install coh.301 /dev/fha0 1
```

*See Also*

**commands**

**int – C Keyword**

Data type

An **int** is the most commonly used numeric data type, and is normally used to encode integers. With COHERENT, **sizeof int** equals 2, that is, two **chars** (15 bits plus a sign bit); therefore, an **int** can contain values from -32768 to +32767. An **int** normally is sign extended when cast to a larger data type; an **unsigned int**, however, will be zero extended.

*See Also*

**C keywords, data formats, data types, long**

**interrupt – Definition**

An **interrupt** is an interruption of the sequential flow of a program. It can be generated by the hardware, from within the program itself, or from the operating system.

*See Also*

**definitions, signal()**

**io.h – Header File**

Constants and structures used by I/O

```
#define <sys/io.h>
```

**io.h** declares constants and structures used by various I/O routines.

*See Also*

**header files**

**ioctl() – COHERENT System Call**

Device-dependent control

```
ioctl(fd, command, info)
```

```
int fd, command;
```

```
char *info;
```

**ioctl** provides direct interaction with a device driver. Possible uses include setting or retrieving parameters for devices (line printers, communications lines, terminals) and non-standard spacing operations for tape drives.

**ioctl** acts upon a block special file or a character special file associated with the already open file descriptor *fd*. *command* points to the specific request. A system header file defines symbolic command parameters for each device type. For example, **sgtty.h** defines commands for terminals and **mtioctl.h** defines commands for magnetic tape drives. Using the symbolic command definitions from the header files promotes device

independence within each device type. The entry for **device drivers** names other sections that detail specific devices.

*info* passes a buffer of information (defined by structures in the appropriate header files) to the driver. For any *command* not needing additional information, this argument should be NULL.

Some **ioctl** requests work on all files, and are not passed to any driver. The *commands* **FIOCLEX** and **FIONCLEX** enable and disable closing of the given file descriptor when an **exec** call completes.

### Files

<sgtty.h>  
<lpioctl.h>  
<mtioctl.h>

### See Also

**COHERENT** system calls, **exec**, **getty**, **open()**, **read()**, **stty**, **write()**

### Diagnostics

**ioctl** returns -1 on errors, such as a bad file descriptor. Because the call is device dependent, almost any other error could be returned.

### Notes

The type of the *info* argument to **ioctl** is declared as **char \*** mainly for portability reasons. In most cases, the actual argument type will be something like **struct sgttyb \***, depending on the particular device and command. The actual argument should be cast to type **char \*** to ensure cross-machine portability.

## ipc.h — Header File

Definitions for process communications

```
#define <sys/ipc.h>
```

**ipc.h** defines constants and structures used by functions that perform inter-process communications.

### See Also

header files

## isalnum() — ctype Macro (ctype.h)

Check if a character is a number or letter

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isalnum(c) int c;
```

**isalnum** tests whether the argument *c* is alphanumeric (0-9, A-Z, or a-z). It returns a number other than zero if *c* is of the desired type, and zero if it is not. **isalnum** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

### Example

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

*See Also*

ASCII, ctype

**isalpha() – ctype Macro (ctype.h)**

Check if a character is a letter

**#include <ctype.h>**

**int isalpha(c) int c;**

**isalpha** tests whether the argument *c* is a letter (**A-Z** or **a-z**). It returns a number other than zero if *c* is an alphabetic character, and zero if it is not. **isalpha** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

*Example*

For an example of this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

*See Also*

ASCII, ctype

**isascii() – ctype Macro (ctype.h)**

Check if a character is an ASCII character

**#include <ctype.h>**

**int isascii(c) int c;**

**isascii** tests whether the argument *c* is an ASCII character ( $0 \leq c \leq 0177$ ). It returns a number other than zero if *c* is an ASCII character, and zero if it is not. Many other **ctype** macros will fail if passed a non-ASCII value other than EOF.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

*See Also*

ASCII, ctype

**isatty() – General Function (libc)**

Check if a device is a terminal

**int isatty(fd) int fd;**

**isatty** checks to see if a device is a terminal. It returns one if the file descriptor *fd* describes a terminal, and zero otherwise.

*Files*

**/dev/\*** — Terminal special files

**/etc/ttys** — Login terminals

*See Also*

general functions, **ioctl()**, **tty**, **ttyname()**, **ttyslot()**

**iscntrl() – ctype Macro (ctype.h)**

Check if a character is a control character

**#include <ctype.h>**

**int iscntrl(c) int c;**



**isctrl** tests whether the argument *c* is a control character (including a newline character) or a delete character. It returns a number other than zero if *c* is a control character, and zero if it is not. **isctrl** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

*See Also*

**ctype**

**isdigit()** — **ctype** Macro (**ctype.h**)

Check if a character is a numeral

```
#include <ctype.h>
```

```
int isdigit(c) int c;
```

**isdigit** tests whether the argument *c* is a numeral (0-9). It returns a number other than zero if *c* is a numeral, and zero if it is not. **isdigit** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

*See Also*

ASCII, **ctype**

**islower()** — **ctype** Macro (**ctype.h**)

Check if a character is a lower-case letter

```
#include <ctype.h>
```

```
int islower(c) int c;
```

**islower** tests whether the argument *c* is a lower-case letter (a-z). It returns a number other than zero if *c* is a lower-case letter, and zero if it is not. **islower** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

*See Also*

ASCII, **ctype**

**ispos()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Return if variable is positive or negative

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
int ispos(a)
```

```
mint *a;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. **ispos** returns true (nonzero) if *a* is not negative, false (zero) if *a* is negative.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

### **isprint() – ctype Macro (ctype.h)**

Check if a character is printable

```
#include <ctype.h>
```

```
int isprint(c) int c;
```

**isprint** is a macro that tests if *c* is printable, i.e., if it is neither a delete nor a control character. It returns a number other than zero if *c* is a printable character, and zero if it is not. **isprint** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

*See Also*

**ASCII, ctype**

### **ispunct() – ctype Macro (ctype.h)**

Check if a character is a punctuation mark

```
#include <ctype.h>
```

```
int ispunct(c) int c;
```

**ispunct** tests whether the argument *c* is a punctuation mark, i.e., neither an alphanumeric character nor a control character. It returns a number other than zero if the character tested is a punctuation mark, and zero if it is not. **ispunct** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

*See Also*

**ASCII, ctype**

### **isspace() – ctype Macro (ctype.h)**

Check if a character prints white space

```
#include <ctype.h>
```

```
int isspace(c) int c;
```

**isspace** tests whether the argument *c* is a space, tab, newline, carriage return, or form-feed character. It returns a number other than zero if *c* is a white-space character, and zero if it is not. **isspace** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

*See Also*

**ASCII, ctype**

**isupper()** — ctype Macro (ctype.h)

Check if a character is an upper-case letter

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isupper(c) int c;
```

**isupper** tests whether the argument *c* is an upper-case letter (A-Z). It returns a number other than zero if *c* is an upper-case letter, and zero if it is not. **isupper** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

*See Also*

ASCII, **ctype**

**itom()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Create a multiple-precision integer

```
#include <mprec.h>
mint *itom(n)
int n;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. **itom** creates a new multiple-precision integer (or **mint**), initializes it to the signed integer value *n*, and returns a pointer to it. You can use the function **mintfr** to reclaim the storage used by the **mint** created by **itom**.

*See Also*

multiple-precision mathematics

## J

**j0()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute Bessel function

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double j0(z) double z;
```

**j0** computes the Bessel function of the first kind for order 0 for its argument *z*.

*Example*

This example, called **bessel.c**, demonstrates the Bessel functions **j0**, **j1**, and **jn**. Compile it with the following command line

```
cc -f bessel.c -lm
```

to include floating-point functions and the mathematics library.

```
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#define display(x) dodisplay((double)(x), #x)
dodisplay(value, name)
double value; char *name;
{
 if (errno)
 perror(name);
 else
 printf("%10g %s\n", value, name);
 errno = 0;
}
main()
{
 extern char *gets();
 double x;
 char string[64];
 for(;;) {
 printf("Enter number: ");
 if(gets(string) == NULL)
 break;
 x = atof(string);
 display(x);
 display(j0(x));
 display(j1(x));
 display(jn(0,x));
 }
}
```

```

 display(jn(1,x));
 display(jn(2,x));
 display(jn(3,x));
 }
 putchar('\n');
}

```

*See Also*

**j1(), jn(), mathematics library**

### **j1()** – Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute Bessel function

**#include <math.h>**

**double j1(z) double z;**

**j1** takes *z* and computes the Bessel function of the first kind for order 1.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **j0**.

*See Also*

**j0(), jn(), mathematics library**

### **jn()** – Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute Bessel function

**#include <math.h>**

**double jn(n, z) int n; double z;**

**jn** takes *z* and computes the Bessel function of the first kind for order *n*.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **j0**.

*See Also*

**j0(), j1(), mathematics library**

### **join** – Command

Join two data bases

**join [-a [n] ] [-e string ] [-j[n] keyf] [-o n.m ...] [-tc] file1 file2**

**join** processes the text files *file1* and *file2*, each of which contains a relational data base. If either file name is '-', the standard input is used for that file.

For the purposes of **join**, a data base file contains a set of records, one per input line. Each record contains a number of *fields*. One field is differentiated as *key* field for each file. Each file must be sorted by key field, for example with **sort**.

By default, the key field is the first field in each record. The **-j** option changes the key field number to *keyf* for the desired file. In this and other options below, the optional file number *n* must be 1 to indicate *file1* or 2 to indicate *file2*. If no *n* is given, both *file1* and *file2* are assumed.

Normally, fields are separated by any amount of white space (blanks or tabs). Leading

blanks or tabs are not considered part of the fields. With the **-t** option, the separator character is *c*. With this option zero-length fields are possible; every occurrence of the separator ends the previous field and starts a new one.

Output consists only of records for which the key field occurs in both files. As a consequence of the sorted order of the input, the output is also sorted by the key field. Each output record has first the key field, then each field from the *file1* record but the key field, and then each field from the *file2* record but the key field. Fields are separated in the output with the specified field character, or with a space character if no **-t** option was given. Output records are always terminated with a newline. Under the **-e** option, *string* is printed for each empty field.

The **-a** option enables printing of records found in only file *n*. If *n* is missing, unpaired records are printed from both input files. To output only certain fields, the **-o** option precedes a list of desired fields to print. Each element is of the form *n.m* where *n* is the file number and *m* is the field number.

For example,

```
join -t: -j1 3 -o 1.3 2.4 1.4 1.1 2.2 filea fileb
```

joins *filea* and *fileb* which have fields separated by the colon (':') character. The join field number is 3 for *filea* and 1 (by default) for *fileb*. The selected five fields are produced in the output.

*See Also*

**awk, comm, commands, sort, uniq**

## K

**kermit** – Command

Remote system communication and file transfer

**kermit** *c*[*bel baud esc line*]

**kermit** *r*[*bdfhilt baud line*]

**kermit** *s*[*abdfhiltx baud line*] *file ...*

**kermit** allows the user to communicate with a remote computer system and to transfer files between the local and remote systems. **kermit** can transfer ASCII or binary files of any length in either direction. The two computers must be able to contact each other, such as through a serial line or by modem over a telephone line, and both systems must have **kermit** available. The user must have login privileges on both systems and appropriate permissions in directories used for file transfer.

The **kermit** command line specifies a *mode*, followed without intervening spaces by optional *flags*, perhaps followed by additional arguments and *files*. The three possible *modes* are as follows:

- c** Connect the two systems so they can communicate
- r** Receive files from the other system
- s** Send each *file* to the other system.

**kermit** normally uses a default communication line at a default baud rate; the defaults vary from system to system. **kermit** normally strips leading directory information from the path name of each *file* it sends and converts the name to upper case; it converts the file name to lower case when receiving.

The following *flags* modify **kermit**'s normal behavior.

- a** Specify complete path names for sending and receiving files. Used only with *s* mode. The *a* flag requires file names in pairs: first the file to be sent, then the receiving file. For example, the command

```
kermit sa /usr/joe/stuff.c /usr/tom/src/thing.c
```

sends the file */usr/joe/stuff.c* but specifies its name as */usr/tom/src/thing.c* for the receiving system. The target directory must exist on the receiving system. The *a* flag implies the use of the *f* and *x* flags described below.

- b** *baud* Set the baud rate of the port to *baud*.
- d** Debug mode. Tell **kermit** to print messages that describe its actions. Message appear on the standard output, not the standard error.
- e** *esc* Change the escape character from the default '^' to *esc*; used only with *c* mode. The escape character marks commands to **kermit** *c* while it is running, as described below.
- f** Suppress conversion of the case of file names.
- h** Host mode. Tell **kermit** to use the same line for file transfer and for communication; used with either *r* or *s* mode on the remote system only. When

invoked with the **h** flag, **kermit** resets the line modes properly when it completes a file transfer. If you do not use the **h** flag, **kermit** will probably leave the remote system line in raw, no-echo mode.

- i** Image mode. Tell **kermit** to send a full eight-bit byte for each character; this is necessary to transfer binary (non-ASCII) files. If you use **i** flag when sending, also use it on the receiving system.
- L** Log all **kermit** commands into file **Log**.
- l line** Use *line*. For example, the command

```
kermit clb /dev/tty50 1200
```

tells **kermit** to use line *tty50* at 1200 baud instead of the default line and baud rate.

- m** Macintosh mode. Necessary when sending files to an Apple Macintosh; used only with **s** mode.
- t** Tymnet mode. Allows Tymnet to keep up with file transmission.
- x** Allows the specification of a complete pathname for the receiving file; used only with **s** mode. For example, the command

```
kermit sx mydir/stuff
```

sends the file **mydir/stuff** to **mydir/stuff** on the receiving system. The target directory must exist on the receiving system and the user must have write permission in it.

**kermit c** recognizes two escape sequences. The default escape character '^' can be changed with the **e** flag, as noted above.

**^c** Exit from **kermit** and break the connection between the two systems. This notation does *not* mean <ctrl-C>; rather, you must literally type the escape character (by default, a caret '^') and then the letter 'c'.

**^s** Suspend **kermit** on the host system but do not hang up the line.

Unlike some file transfer protocols, **kermit** requires that you invoke it on both the sending and receiving systems to transfer a file. As shown in the example below, you normally use **kermit c** to connect to the remote system, invoke **kermit** with the **h** flag in either send or receive mode on the remote system only, type "^s" to suspend the local **kermit c**, and finally invoke **kermit** in receive or send mode on the local system.

The following example demonstrates the use of **kermit**. The example assumes the user is already logged in on the local system. The communication line is **/dev/com2** and runs at 2400 baud. The user wants to transfer **logfile** to the remote system and **remfile** from the remote system. System names are in *italics* on the left, user input is in Roman, system responses are in **bold**, and remarks are in parentheses.

```
local kermit clb /dev/com2 2400 (connect to remote system)
local kermit: connected... (type a carriage return)
```



|               |                                             |                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>remote</i> | <b>Coherent login:</b>                      | (perform login procedure)         |
| <i>remote</i> | kermit shi remfile                          | (send from remote)                |
| <i>remote</i> | )S~_@X#T                                    | (part of protocol, ignore)        |
| <i>remote</i> | ^s                                          | (suspend local <b>kermit</b> )    |
| <i>local</i>  | <b>kermit: suspended.</b>                   |                                   |
| <i>local</i>  | kermit rilb /dev/com2 2400                  | (receive on local)                |
| <i>local</i>  | <b>kermit: Receiving REMFILE as remfile</b> |                                   |
| <i>local</i>  | <b>kermit: done.</b>                        |                                   |
| <i>local</i>  | kermit clb /dev/com2 2400                   | (connect again)                   |
| <i>remote</i> | kermit rhi                                  | (receive on remote)               |
| <i>remote</i> | ^s                                          | (suspend local <b>kermit</b> )    |
| <i>local</i>  | <b>kermit: suspended.</b>                   |                                   |
| <i>local</i>  | kermit silb /dev/com2 2400 locfile          | (send from local)                 |
| <i>local</i>  | <b>kermit: Sending locfile as LOCFILE</b>   |                                   |
| <i>local</i>  | <b>kermit: done.</b>                        |                                   |
| <i>local</i>  | kermit clb /dev/com2 2400                   | (connect again)                   |
| <i>remote</i> | <ctrl-D>                                    | (log off the remote system)       |
| <i>remote</i> | <b>Coherent login:</b>                      |                                   |
| <i>remote</i> | ^c                                          | (disconnect local <b>kermit</b> ) |
| <i>local</i>  | <b>kermit: disconnected.</b>                |                                   |

*See Also*

**commands**

Kermit: A file-transfer protocol for universities, *BYTE*, June 1984 pp. 255ff, July 1984 pp. 143ff

*Diagnostics*

**kermit** may print the following error messages:

Aborting with following error from remote host  
 Problem appeared on receiving system.

Bad line speed  
 Transmission was attempted at an illegal baud rate.

Cannot create *name*  
 The receiving system cannot create *name*. Confirm that you have write permission on the receiving system.

Cannot open file *name*  
 The sending system cannot open *name*. Either you do not have read permission on the sending system, or the file is not present in the named directory.

Cannot open *line*  
 An incorrect *line* number was specified.

No line specified for connection  
 The *line* argument missing after the -l option.

**Receive failed**

The file being sent was not received; this could be due to any one of a number of reasons. Check that everything is functioning normally, and then try to send the file again.

**Send failed**

The requested file was not sent.

**Speed setting not implemented**

An unimplemented baud rate was selected for the **-b** option.

**Yes, I'm still here...**

The connect command was repeated.

**Notes**

If you type **kermit c** and get the message **kermit connected** but the remote system does not respond, check the line that connects the two systems and the ability of the remote system to accept a login on the line.

The file transfer protocol uses small (96-character) checksummed packets, with ACK/NAK responses from the receiving system. The timeout period is five seconds, and **kermit** does ten retries before it abandons an attempted file transfer.

The **kermit** protocol was developed at the Columbia University Center for Computing Activities. Tymnet is a trademark of Tymshare, Inc.

**kill()** – COHERENT System Call (libc)

Kill a system process

```
#include <signal.h>
```

```
kill(pid, sig)
```

```
int pid, sig;
```

**kill()** is the COHERENT system call that sends a signal to a process. *pid* is the process identifier of the process to be signalled, and *sig* identifies the signal to be sent, as set in the header file **signal.h**. This system call is most often used to kill processes, hence its name.

*See Also*

COHERENT system calls, **signal()**, **signal.h**

**kill** – Command

Signal a process

```
kill [- signal] pid ...
```

COHERENT assigns each active process a unique process id, or *pid*, and uses the *pid* to identify the process. **kill** sends *signal* to each *pid*. *signal* must be one of the numbers described in the header **<signal.h>** or **<sys/msig.h>**. The signal can be given by number or by name, as defined in these header files. By default, *signal* is **SIGTERM**, which terminates a given process.

If *pid* is zero, **kill** signals each process started by the user from the same tty.

The shell **sh** prints the process id of a process if the command is detached. The **ps** command prints a list of all active processes, with process ids and command line arguments.

A user can kill only the processes he owns; the superuser, however, can kill anything. A process cannot ignore or catch SIGKILL.

*Files*

<sys/msig.h> — Machine-dependent signal numbers  
<signal.h> — Machine invariant signal numbers

*See Also*

commands, getpid(), init, kill(), ps, sh, signal()

## L

**l.out.h** — Header File

Object file format

**#include** <l.out.h>

The header file **l.out.h** describes the format for the output of compilers, assemblers, and the linker.

The assembler outputs an unlinked object module, which must be bound with any required libraries (leaving no unresolved symbols) to produce an executable file, or *load module*. A call to one of the **exec** routines can then execute the load module directly.

The link module begins with a header, which gives global and size information about each segment. Segments of the indicated size follow the header in a fixed order. The header file **l.out.h** defines the header structure for the Z8000 and M68000 as follows:

```
struct ldheader {
 short l_magic;
 short l_flag;
 short l_machine;
 short l_tbase;
 size_t l_ssize[NLSEG];
 long l_entry;
};
```

It describes the header structure for the i8086, i8088, i80286, and PDP-11 as follows:

```
struct ldheader {
 int l_magic;
 int l_flag;
 int l_machine;
 vaddr_t l_entry;
 size_t l_ssize[NLSEG];
};
```

**Lmagic** is the magic number that identifies a link module; it always contains **L\_MAGIC**. **Lflag** contains flags indicating the type of the object. **Lmachine** is the processor identifier, as defined in the header file **mtype.h**. **Ltbase** is the start of the text segment. **Lentry** contains the machine address where execution of the module commences. **Lssize** gives the size of each segment.

*Files***l.out** — Default load module name

&lt;l.out.h&gt;

&lt;mtype.h&gt; — Machine identifiers

*See Also***as, cc, COHERENT system calls, core, exec, ld, mtype, nm**

### Notes

In the early releases of COHERENT, the header structure was defined only as shown above for i8086. It was changed to handle 32-bit addresses. In the future, the header structure defined above for Z8000 and M68000 machines will be implemented on i8086 and i80286 systems as well.

### l3tol() — General Function (libc)

Convert file system block number to long integer

**l3tol**(*lp*, *l3p*, *n*)

**long** \**lp*;

**char** \**l3p*;

**unsigned** *n*;

To conserve space inside i-nodes in COHERENT file systems, the system stores block addresses in three bytes. Programs that reference or maintain file systems use the functions **l3tol** and **ltol3** routines to convert between the three-byte representation and long numbers.

**l3tol** converts *n* three-byte block addresses at location *l3p* to an array of long integers at location *lp*.

*See Also*

**canon.h**, **general functions**, **ltol3()**

### LASTERROR — Environmental Variable

Program that last generated an error

**LASTERROR**=*program name*

The environmental variable **LASTERROR** names the last program to have returned an error to the shell. For example, if you had used the command set with an incorrect number of arguments, it would have failed to run and would have exited with an error condition, and **LASTERROR** would read **LASTERROR=set**.

The command **help** reads **LASTERROR** to determine what the last program was for which you needed help. Thus, if you type **help** without an argument, it will return information about the program named in **LASTERROR**.

*See Also*

**environmental variables**

### lc — Command

Categorize files in a directory

**lc** [ **-labcdfp** ] [ *directory* ... ]

**lc** lists the names of the files in each *directory*, or the current directory if no *directory* is named. The files are categorized by type (files, directories, and so on) and listed in columns within each category.

The following options modify the output.

**-1** List only one file name per line (do not print in columns).

- a List all file names, including '.' and '..'.
- b List block-special files only.
- c List character-special files only.
- d List directories only.
- f List regular files only.
- p List pipe files only.

*See Also*

**commands, ls**

## **ld** — Command

Link relocatable object files

**ld** [*option ...*] *file ...*

A compiler translates a file of source code into a *relocatable object*. This relocatable object cannot be executed by itself, for calls to routines stored in libraries have not yet been resolved. **ld** combines, or *links*, relocatable object files with routines stored in libraries produced by the archiver **ar** to construct an executable file. For this reason, **ld** is sometimes called a *linker*, a *link editor*, or a *loader*.

**ld** scans its arguments in order and interprets each option as described below. Each non-option argument is either a relocatable object file, produced by **cc**, **as**, or **ld**, or a library archive produced by **ar**. It rejects all other arguments and prints a diagnostic message.

Each relocatable file argument is bound into the output file if its machine type matches the machine type of the first file so bound; if it does not, **ld** prints a diagnostic message. The symbol table of the file is merged into the output symbol table and the list of defined and undefined symbols updated appropriately. If the file redefines a symbol defined in an earlier bound module, the redefinition is reported and the link continues. The last such redefinition determines the value that the symbol will have in the output file, which may be acceptable but is probably an error.

Each library archive argument is searched only to resolve undefined references, i.e., if there are no undefined symbols, the linker goes to the next argument immediately. The library is searched from first module to last and any module that resolves one or more undefined symbols is bound into the output exactly as an explicitly named relocatable file is bound. The library is searched repeatedly until an entire scan adds nothing to the executable file.

The order of modules in a library is important in two respects: it will affect the time required to search the library, and, if more than one module resolves an undefined symbol, it can alter the set of library modules bound into the output.

A library will link faster if the undefined symbols in any given library module are resolved by a library module that comes later in the library. Thus, the low-level library modules, those with no undefined symbols, should come at the end of the library, whereas the higher-level modules, those with many undefined symbols, should come at the beginning. The library module **ranlib.sym**, which is maintained by the **ar s** modifier, provides **ld** with a compressed index to the symbols defined in the library. But

even with the index, the library will link much faster if the modules occur in top-down rather than bottom-up order.

A library can be constructed to provide a type of "conditional" linking if alternate resolutions of undefined symbols are archived in a carefully thought-out order. For instance, **libc.a** contains the modules

```
finit.o
exit.o
_finish.o
```

in precisely the order given, though some other modules may intervene. **finit.o** contains most of the internals of the **STDIO** library, **exit.o** contains the **exit()** function, and **\_finish.o** contains an empty version of **\_finish()**, the function that **exit()** calls to close **STDIO** streams before process termination. If a program uses any **STDIO** routines, macros, or data, then **finit.o** will be bound into the output with its version of **finish()**. If a program uses no **STDIO**, then the "dummy" **\_finish.o** will be bound into the output because it is the first module that defines **\_finish()** that the linker encounters after **exit.o** adds the undefined reference. This saves approximately 3,000 bytes. To set the order of routines within a library, use the archiver **ar**.

The available options are as follows:

- d** Define common regions even if relocation information is retained. By default, **ld** leaves common areas undefined if there are undefined symbols or if the **-r** option is specified.
- e entry** Specify the *entry* point of the output module, either as a symbol or as an absolute octal address.
- k[system]** Bind the output as a kernel process or linkable driver. The starting address depends on the target machine, and **ld** scans the *system* link file symbol table for symbols that are currently undefined. *system* defaults to **/coherent**.
- l name** An abbreviation for the library **/lib/libname.a** or **/usr/lib/libname.a** if the first is not found.
- m** This option tells **ld** to perform in-memory load if possible. This requires more memory, but is faster than using a buffer file.
- n** Bind the output with separate shared and private segments, and with each starting on a hardware segment boundary, so that several processes can use a single copy of the shared segment simultaneously.
- o file** Write output to *file* (default, **l.out**.)
- R value** Relocation base option. By default, **ld** links executable files to run at the *user-base* for the computer. In almost all cases, the *user-base* is zero. If the **-R** option is used, **ld** will link the executable to run at *value* instead of at zero. *value* can be set to any C-style constant, or to a symbol name that **ld** can find in the object

files and archives being linked; remember that a C-accessible symbol *must* end with an underscore character ‘\_’. This option is used primarily to produce output files that can be burned into ROM. These programs must make their own provisions for relocating initialized data and other tasks.

- r** Retain relocation information in the output, and issue no diagnostic message for undefined symbols. By default **ld** discards relocation information from the output if there are no undefined symbols.
- s** Strip the symbol table from the output. The same effect may be obtained by using the command **strip**. The **-s** and **-r** options are mutually exclusive.
- u *symbol***  
Add *symbol* to the symbol table as a global reference, usually to force the linking of a particular library module.
- X** Discard local compiler-generated symbols of the form ‘L...’.
- x** Discard all local symbols.

### *Files*

**l.out** — Default output  
**/coherent** for **-k** option  
**/lib/lib\*.a** — Libraries  
**/usr/lib/lib\*.a** — More libraries

### *See Also*

**ar**, **ar.h**, **as**, **cc**, **commands**, **l.out.h**, **strip**

### *Notes*

By default, COHERENT allocates two kilobytes of stack to a process. This is sufficient for most processes. To change the amount of stack used by a given executable program, use the command **fixstack**. See its Lexicon entry for details. If you are linking a program by hand (that is, running **ld** independently from the **cc** command), be sure to include the appropriate run-time start-up routine with the **ld** command line; otherwise, the program will not link correctly.

## **ldexp()** – General Function (**libc**)

Combine fraction and exponent  
**double ldexp(*f*, *e*)** **double *f*; int *e*;**

**ldexp** combines the fraction *f* with the binary exponent *e* to return a floating-point value *real* that satisfies the equation  $real = m * 2^e$ .

### *See Also*

**atof()**, **ceil()**, **fabs()**, **floor()**, **frexp()**, **general functions**, **modf()**

## **lex** – Command

Lexical analyzer generator  
**lex [-t][-v][*file*]**  
**cc lex.yy.c -ll**



Many programs, e.g., compilers, process highly structured input according to rules. Two of the most complicated parts of such programs are *lexical analysis* and *parsing* (also called *syntax analysis*). The COHERENT system includes two powerful tools called **lex** and **yacc** to help you construct these parts of a program. **lex** converts a set of lexical rules into a lexical analyzer, and **yacc** converts a set of parsing rules into a parser.

The output of **lex** may be used directly, or may be used by a parser generated by **yacc**.

**lex** reads a specification from the given *file* (or from the standard input if none), and generates a C function called **yylex()**. **lex** writes the generated function in the file **lex.yy.c**, or on standard output if you use the **-t** option. The **-v** option prints some statistics about the generated tables.

The tutorial on **lex** that appear in this manual describes **lex** in detail. In brief, the generated function **yylex()** matches portions of its input to one pattern (sometimes called a regular expression) from a set of rules, or *context*, and executes associated C commands. Unmatched portions of the input are copied to the output stream. **yylex()** returns EOF when input has been exhausted.

**lex** uses the following macros that you may replace with the preprocessor directive **#undef** if you wish: **input()** (read the standard input stream), and **output(c)** (write the character *c* to the standard output stream). You may also replace the following functions if you wish: **main()** (main function), **error(...)** (print error messages; takes same arguments as **printf**), and **yywrap()** (handle events at the end of a file). If an action is desired on end of file, such as arranging for more input, **yywrap()** should perform it, returning zero to keep going.

A full **lex** specification has the following format:

- Macro definitions, of the form:  
    name pattern
- Start condition declarations:  
    %S NAME ...
- Context declarations:  
    %C NAME ...
- Code to be included in the header section:  
    %{  
    anything  
    %}  
    <tab or space> anything
- Rules section delimiter (must always be present):  
    %%
- Code to appear at the start of **yylex()**:  
    <tab or space> anything

- Rules for initial context, in any of the forms:

```
rule action;
rule | (means use next action)
rule {
<tab or space> action;
<tab or space> }
```

- For each additional context:

```
%C NAME
...rules for this context...
```

- End of rules section delimiter:

```
%%
```

- Code to be copied verbatim, such as user provided `input()`, `output()`, `yywrap()`, or other.

`lex` matches the longest string possible; if two rules match the same length string, the rule specified first takes precedence. `lex` puts the matched string, or *token*, in the `char` array `yytext[]`, and sets the variable `yylen` to its length.

Actions may use the following:

|                       |                                                 |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ECHO</b>           | Output the token                                |
| <b>REJECT</b>         | Perform action for lower precedence match       |
| <b>BEGIN NAME</b>     | Set start condition to <i>NAME</i>              |
| <b>BEGIN 0</b>        | Clear start condition                           |
| <b>yyswitch(NAME)</b> | Switch to context <i>NAME</i> , return current  |
| <b>yyswitch(0)</b>    | Switch to initial context                       |
| <b>yynext()</b>       | Steal next character from input                 |
| <b>yyback(c)</b>      | Put character <i>c</i> back into input          |
| <b>yyless(n)</b>      | Reduce token length to <i>n</i> , put rest back |
| <b>yymore()</b>       | Append next token to this one                   |
| <b>yylook()</b>       | Returns number of chars in input buffer         |

`lex` rules are contiguous strings of the form

```
[<NAME,... >] [^] token [/lookahead] [$]
```

where brackets '[' ]' indicate optional items.

|                   |                                              |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <NAME,... >       | Match only under given start conditions      |
| ^                 | Match the beginning of a line                |
| \$                | Match the end of a line                      |
| <i>token</i>      | Pattern that a given token is to match       |
| <i>/lookahead</i> | Pattern that given trailing text is to match |

Pattern elements:

|                 |                                                               |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>a</b>        | The character <b>a</b>                                        |
| <b>\a</b>       | The character <b>a</b> , even if special                      |
| <b>.</b>        | Any character except newline                                  |
| <b>[abx-z]</b>  | Any of <b>a</b> , <b>b</b> , or <b>x</b> through <b>z</b>     |
| <b>[^abx-z]</b> | Any except <b>a</b> , <b>b</b> , or <b>x</b> through <b>z</b> |
| <b>abc</b>      | The string <b>abc</b> , even if any are special               |
| <b>{name}</b>   | The macro definition <i>name</i>                              |
| <b>(exp)</b>    | The pattern <i>exp</i> (grouping operator)                    |

Optional operators on elements:

|               |                                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <b>e?</b>     | Zero or one occurrence of <i>e</i>                |
| <b>e*</b>     | Zero or more consecutive <i>es</i>                |
| <b>e+</b>     | One or more consecutive <i>es</i>                 |
| <b>e{n}</b>   | <i>n</i> (a decimal number) consecutive <i>es</i> |
| <b>e{m,n}</b> | <i>m</i> through <i>n</i> consecutive <i>es</i>   |

Patterns may be of the form:

**e1e2** Matches the sequence *e1 e2*  
**e1|e2** Matches either *e1* or *e2*

**lex** recognizes the standard C escapes: **\n**, **\t**, **\r**, **\b**, **\f**, and **\ooo** (octal representation).  
 The special characters

**\ ( ) < > { } % \* + ? [ - ] ^ / \$ . |**

must be prefixed with **\** or enclosed within quotation marks (excepting **"** and **\**) to be normal. Within classes, only the characters **.** **^** **-** **\** and **]** are special.

### Files

**/usr/lib/libl.a**

### See Also

**commands**, **yacc**

*Introduction to lex, the Lexical Analyzer*

## Lexicon -- Introduction

The Mark Williams Lexicon is a new approach to documentation of computer software. The Lexicon is designed to improve documentation and eliminate some limitations found in more conventional documentation.

### How to Use the Lexicon

The Lexicon consists of one large document that contains entries for every aspect of COHERENT. You will not have to search through a number of different manuals to find the entry you are looking for.

Every entry in the Lexicon has the same structure. The first line gives the name of the topic being discussed, followed by its type (e.g., **Command**).

The next lines briefly describe the item, then give the item's usage, where applicable. These are followed by a brief discussion of the item, and an example.

Cross-references follow. These can be to other entries or to other texts. Diagnostics and notes, where applicable, conclude each entry.

Internally, the Lexicon has a tree structure. The “root” entry is the present entry, for **Lexicon**. Below this entry comes the set of *Overview* entries. Each Overview entry introduces a group of entries; for example, the Overview entry for **string** introduces all of the string functions and macros, lists them, and gives a lengthy example of how to use them.

Each entry cross-references other entries. These cross-references point up the documentation tree, toward an overview article and, ultimately, to the entry for **Lexicon** itself. They also point down the tree to subordinate entries, and across to entries on related subjects. For example, the entry for **getchar** cross-references **STDIO**, which is its Overview article, plus **putchar** and **getc**, which are related entries of interest to the user. The Lexicon is designed so that you can trace from any one entry to any other, simply by following the chain of cross-references up and down the documentation tree.

See the **logic tree** that is included in the appendices to this manual for the full tree structure of the Lexicon.

### *Use the Lexicon*

If, while reading an entry, you encounter a technical term that you do not understand, look it up in the Lexicon. You should find an entry for it. For example, if a function is said to return a data type **float** and you do not know exactly what a **float** is, look it up. You will find it described in full. In this way, you should increase your understanding of COHERENT, and make your programming easier and more productive.

### *Overview Articles*

The Lexicon includes the following overview articles. Look at the appropriate overview article for information on the subject in which you are interested. The overview article will give you an overview of the topic, and tell you which Lexicon articles you should read to find detailed information.

- C language**
- commands**
- definitions**
- device drivers**
- environmental variables**
- file formats**
- system maintenance**
- technical information**

## **libraries** — Overview

A **library** is an archive file of commonly used functions that have been compiled, tested, and stored for inclusion in a program at link time.

The COHERENT system stores its libraries in two directories, **/usr/lib** and **/lib**. The following libraries are kept in **/usr/lib**:

|                    |                                      |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>libcurses.a</b> | curses library                       |
| <b>libl.a</b>      | lex library                          |
| <b>libmp.a</b>     | Multi-precision arithmetic library   |
| <b>libterm.a</b>   | termcap library                      |
| <b>liby.a</b>      | yacc library                         |
| <b>lib.b</b>       | bc's function library (in bc source) |

The following libraries are kept in `/lib`:

|               |                                    |
|---------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>libc.a</b> | General functions and system calls |
| <b>libm.a</b> | Mathematics routines               |

### *Library Functions*

The following overview articles introduce the library functions included with the COHERENT system:

#### **COHERENT system calls**

**ctype macros**

**curses**

**general functions**

**mathematics library**

**multiple-precision mathematics**

**STDIO**

**string functions**

**terminal-independent operations**

**time**

*See Also*

**ar, C language**

## **link()** — COHERENT System Call

Create a link

**link(*old*, *new*)**

**char \**old*, \**new*;**

A *link* to a file is another name for the file. All attributes of the file appear identical among all links.

**link** creates a link called *new* to an existing file named *old*.

For administrative reasons, it is an error for users other than the superuser to create a link to a directory. Such links can make the file system no longer tree structured unless carefully controlled, posing problems for commands such as **find**.

### *Example*

This example, called **lock.c**, demonstrates how **link** can be used to perform intertask locking. With this technique, a program can start a process in the background and stop any other user from starting the identical process.

```
main()
{
 if(link("lock.c", "lockfile") == -1) {
 printf("Cannot link\n");
 exit(1);
 }

 sleep(50); /* do nothing for 50 seconds */
 unlink("lockfile");
 printf("done\n");
 exit(0);
}
```

*See Also*

**COHERENT system calls, find, ln, unlink()**

*Diagnostics*

**link** returns zero when successful. It returns -1 on errors, e.g., *old* does not exist, *new* already exists, attempt to link across file systems, or no permission to create *new* in the target directory.

*Notes*

Because each mounted file system is a self-contained entity, links between different mounted file systems fail.

## **linker-defined symbols – Overview**

The following symbols are set by the linker **ld** when it links a program together:

|              |                                           |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <b>edata</b> | Location after shared and private data    |
| <b>end</b>   | Location after uninitialized data segment |
| <b>etext</b> | Location after text segments              |

These symbols may be read from the program's symbol table, e.g., for debugging.

*See Also*

**C language, ld**

## **ln – Command**

Create a link to a file

**ln [-f] *oldfile* [*newfile*]**

**ln [-f] *oldfile* ... *directory***

A *link* lets you give you a file more than one name. The file's contents or attributes may be changed via either name.

In its first form, **ln** links the name *newfile* to the file that is already named *oldfile*, provided that *newfile* does not already exist. If *newfile* is omitted, a link is created in the current directory with the same file name as *oldfile*, with leading directory information removed.

In the second form, **ln** links *oldfile* with an identical name in another *directory*. In effect, one file will "live" in two directories.

If *newfile* already exists, *-f* forces *ln* to unlink it and assign its name to *oldfile*.

Links to directories or across file systems are impossible.

*See Also*

commands, *cp*, *ls*, *mv*, *rm*

## localtime() — Time Function (libc)

Convert system time to calendar structure

```
#include <time.h>
```

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
tm *localtime(time_t *timep);
```

*localtime* converts the COHERENT internal time into the form described in the structure *tm*.

*timep* points to the system time. It is of type *time\_t*, which is defined in the header file *types.h*.

*localtime* returns a pointer to the structure *tm*, which is also defined in *types.h*. The function *asctime* turns *tm* into an ASCII string.

Unlike its cousin *gmtime*, *localtime* returns the local time, including conversion to daylight saving time, if applicable. The daylight saving time flag indicates whether daylight saving time is now in effect, *not* whether it is in effect during some part of the year. Note, too, that the time zone is set by *localtime* every time the value returned by

```
getenv("TIMEZONE")
```

changes. See the Lexicon entry for *TIMEZONE* for more information on how COHERENT handles time zone settings.

### Example

The following example recreates the function *asctime*. It builds a string somewhat different from that returned by *asctime* to demonstrate how to manipulate the *tm* structure.

```
#include <time.h>
#include <sys/types.h>

char *month[] = {
 "January", "February", "March", "April",
 "May", "June", "July", "August", "September",
 "October", "November", "December"
};

char *weekday[] = {
 "Sunday", "Monday", "Tuesday", "Wednesday",
 "Thursday", "Friday", "Saturday"
};
```

```

main()
{
 char buf[20];
 time_t tnum;
 struct tm *ts;
 int hour = 0;

 time(&tnum); /* get time from system */
 /* convert time to tm struct */
 ts=localtime(&tnum);
 if (ts->tm_hour == 0)
 sprintf(buf, "12:%02d:%02d A.M.",
 ts->tm_min, ts->tm_sec);
 else
 if (ts->tm_hour >= 12) {
 hour=ts->tm_hour-12;
 if (hour==0)
 hour=12;
 sprintf(buf, "%02d:%02d:%02d P.M.",
 hour, ts->tm_min, ts->tm_sec);
 } else
 sprintf(buf, "%02d:%02d:%02d A.M.", ts->tm_hour,
 ts->tm_min, ts->tm_sec);

 printf("\n%s %d %s 19%d %s\n",
 weekday[ts->tm_wday], ts->tm_mday,
 month[ts->tm_mon], ts->tm_year, buf);
 printf("Today is the %d day of 19%d\n",
 ts->tm_yday, ts->tm_year);
 printf("Daylight Saving Time %s in effect\n",
 ts->tm_isdst ? "is" : "is not");
}

```

**See Also****gmtime(), time, TIMEZONE****Notes**

**localtime** returns a pointer to a statically allocated data area that is overwritten by successive calls.

**lock() — COHERENT System Call**

Prevent process from swapping

**lock(flag)**

int flag;

The COHERENT system can swap a process in and out of memory. However, real-time response sometimes requires that a process be locked in memory.



When called with a nonzero *flag*, **lock** prevents the calling process from swapping (unless swapping is required to increase its memory size). Calling **lock** with a *flag* of zero unlocks the process.

This call is restricted to the superuser. Processes doing raw I/O are automatically locked into memory for the duration of the I/O operation.

*See Also*

**COHERENT** system calls, **ps**, **swap**

*Diagnostics*

**lock** returns zero if it performs the indicated action and -1 otherwise. An error occurs if the caller is not the superuser.

*Notes*

The existence of several locked processes may cause memory fragmentation. Therefore, all locked processes should be created just after the system is booted, if possible. In general, **lock** should be avoided if any alternative exists.

## log() – Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute natural logarithm

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double log(z) double z;
```

**log** returns the natural (base e) logarithm of its argument *z*.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **exp**.

*See Also*

**log10()**, **mathematics library**

*Diagnostics*

A domain error in **log** (*z* is less than or equal to zero) sets **errno** to **EDOM** and returns zero.

## log10() – Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute common logarithm

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double log10(z) double z;
```

**log10** returns the common (base 10) logarithm of its argument *z*.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **exp**.

*See Also*

**log()**, **mathematics library**

*Diagnostics*

A domain error in **log10** (*z* is less than or equal to zero) sets **errno** to **EDOM** and returns zero.

**login – Command**

Log in or change user name

**login** [*username*]

The COHERENT system normally invokes **login** as part of the log in sequence on an unused terminal. The user may also invoke **login** directly from the shell **sh**, usually to change to a different user name. If *username* is not present, **login** prompts the user. If the account has a password, **login** asks for it.

If the user logs in successfully, **login** then reads the file `/etc/motd` (which holds the “message of the day”) and prints its contents on the screen, then notifies the user if mail is waiting to be read. It then sets the working directory to the user’s base directory and sets the user id and group id, transfers ownership of the tty to the user, and updates the login accounting file. Finally, if a program is specified in `/etc/passwd`, **login** reads `/etc/profile` for lines beginning “export”, inserts the remainder of the line into the environment, then executes the specified program. If the program field is blank, **login** executes **sh**, which executes the contents of `$HOME/.profile` if it is present.

From the shell, a user may log in by typing **login** or by typing an end of file (normally `<ctrl-D>`) to terminate the previous shell.

When the superuser **root** logs in, **login** sets **HOME** to `/` and reads the file `/.profile` should one exist.

**Files**

`/etc/logmsg` — Login message (default, “Coherent login:”)

`/etc/passwd` — User information

`/etc/profile` — System profile

`/etc/motd` — Message of the day

`/etc/utmp` — Users currently using system

`/usr/adm/wtmp` — Login accounting history

`/usr/adm/failed` — Log of failed login attempts

`$HOME/.profile` — User profile

**See Also**

**ac**, **commands**, **getty**, **sh**, **su**, **utmp.h**

**logmsg – System Maintenance**

Hold COHERENT Login Message

`/etc/logmsg`

The file `/etc/logmsg` holds the message that COHERENT displays to prompt the user to log in. The superuser **bin** can use **ed** or **MicroEMACS** to change the message to whatever she prefers.

**See Also**

**system maintenance**

**Notes**

The default message consists of the bell character `<ctrl-G>` followed by the text **Coherent login:**. If the bell annoys you, simply delete the `<ctrl-G>` from `/etc/logmsg`.

**long** — C Keyword

Data type

A **long** is a numeric data type. By definition, a **long** is the largest integer data type. It cannot be smaller than an **int**, although on some machines an **int** and a **long** will be the same size. Under COHERENT, **sizeof long** equals two machine words, or four **chars** (31 data bits plus a sign bit).

*See Also*

C keywords, data formats, int

**longjmp()** — General Function (libc)

Return from a non-local goto

#include &lt;setjmp.h&gt;

int longjmp(env, rval) jmp\_buf env; int rval;

The function call is the only mechanism that C provides to transfer control between functions. This mechanism is inadequate for some purposes, such as handling unexpected errors or interrupts at lower levels of a program. To answer this need, **longjmp** provides a non-local *goto*.

**longjmp** restores an environment that had been saved by a previous call to the function **setjmp**. It returns the value *rval* to the caller of **setjmp**, just as if the **setjmp** call had just returned. Note that **longjmp** must not restore the environment of a routine that has already returned. The type declaration for **jmp\_buf** is in the header file **setjmp.h**. The environment saved includes the program counter, stack pointer, and stack frame. These routines do not restore register variables in the environment returned.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **longjmp**.

*See Also*

general functions, setjmp()

*Notes*

Programmers should note that many user-level routines cannot be interrupted and reentered safely. For that reason, improper use of **longjmp** and **setjmp** can result in the creation of mysterious and irreproducible bugs. Do not attempt to use **longjmp** within an exception handler.

**look** — Command

Find matching lines in a sorted file

**look** [-df] string [file]

The command **look** scans the sorted *file* and prints each line that begins with *string*.

The following options specify the order of the search:

-d Use dictionary order: the only characters tested are alphanumerics and blanks.

**-f** Convert all alphabetic characters to upper case.

If no *file* is specified, **look** uses `/usr/dict/words` with the **-df** option.

### Files

`/usr/dict/words` —File of words (sorted with **sort -df**).

*See Also*

**commands, sort**

### Notes

Because the file `/usr/dict/words` is quite large, it might not be included with COHERENT systems for machines with limited disk space. As a result, the command might not work as expected on all systems.

## lp — Device Driver

Line printer driver

Files `/dev/lp*` access the line-printer's device drivers for IBM AT COHERENT. The drivers are assigned major device number 3.

The COHERENT system supports three printers, in both cooked and raw modes. The following gives the device name, minor device, and I/O port:

|                         |     |       |                                              |
|-------------------------|-----|-------|----------------------------------------------|
| <code>/dev/lpt1</code>  | 0   | 0x3BC | <code>(/etc/mknod /dev/lpt1 c 3 0)</code>    |
| <code>/dev/lpt2</code>  | 1   | 0x378 | <code>(/etc/mknod /dev/lpt2 c 3 1)</code>    |
| <code>/dev/lpt3</code>  | 2   | 0x278 | <code>(/etc/mknod /dev/lpt3 c 3 2)</code>    |
| <code>/dev/rlpt1</code> | 128 | 0x3BC | <code>(/etc/mknod /dev/rlpt1 c 3 128)</code> |
| <code>/dev/rlpt2</code> | 129 | 0x378 | <code>(/etc/mknod /dev/rlpt2 c 3 129)</code> |
| <code>/dev/rlpt3</code> | 130 | 0x278 | <code>(/etc/mknod /dev/rlpt3 c 3 130)</code> |

“Cooked” processing processes the special characters BS (backspace), HT (horizontal tab), LF (line feed), FF (form feed), and CR (carriage return) appropriately; raw processing simply passes them on to the printer.

The driver uses a hybrid busy-wait/timeout discipline to support printers efficiently that have varying buffer sizes in a multi-tasking environment.

The kernel variable **LPWAIT** is the time during that the processor waits for the printer to accept the next character. If the printer is not ready within the **LPWAIT** time period, the then processor resumes normal processing for the number of ticks set by **LPTIME**. Thus, setting **LPWAIT** to a very large number (e.g., 30,000) and **LPTIME** to a very small number (e.g., one) results in a fast printer, but slow processing on other tasks. Conversely, setting **LPWAIT** to a small number (e.g., 50) and **LPTIME** to a large number (e.g., five) result in efficient multi-tasking, but also results in a slow printer unless the printer itself contains a buffer (as is presently normal with all except the least expensive printers). By default, **LPWAIT** is set to 100 and **LPTIME** to four. We recommend that you set **LPWAIT** to no less than 50, and **LPTIME** to no less than one.

### Files

`/dev/lp*` — “Cooked” printer interfaces

`/dev/rlp*` — Raw printer interfaces

In -f /dev/lpt2 /dev/lp  
 to print on printer attached to amstrad PC  
 (using lpr)

*See Also*

ascii, device drivers, epson, lpr

**lpd** — System Maintenance

Line printer spooler daemon

`/usr/lib/lpd`

**lpd** is a daemon program that runs in the background and prints listings queued by the command **lpr**. It is run automatically by **lpr**. If there is no printing to do, or if another daemon is already running (indicated by the file **dpid**), **lpd** exits immediately. Otherwise, it searches the spool directory for control files of listings to print. These control files contain the names of files to print, the user name, banners, and files to be removed upon completion.

**lpd** does not print listings in any particular order. Priority is not given to any priority, either by size nor by requester.

The command **lpskip** command terminates or restarts the current line printer listing.

*Files*`/dev/lp` — Printer`/usr/spool/lpd` — Spool directory`/usr/spool/lpd/cf*` — Control files`/usr/spool/lpd/df*` — Data files`/usr/spool/lpd/dpid` — Lock and process id*See Also*

init, lpr, lpskip, system maintenance

**lpioctl.h** — Header File

Definitions for line-printer I/O control

`#define <sys/lpioctl.h>`

**lpioctl.h** defines constants used by routines that control I/O on the line printer.

*See Also*

header files

**lpr** — Command

Send to line printer spooler

`lpr [-cmnr] [-b banner] [file ...]`

**lpr** lets a user print each specified *file* on the line printer, without conflicting with printing by other users. If no *file* is specified, **lpr** prints the standard input on the line printer.

**lpr** recognizes the following options:

**-B** Suppress printing of a banner.

**b banner**

Print *banner* at the beginning of the file. The default banner is the user's login name.

- c** Copy the files (allowing changes to be made before the printing completes).
- m** Send a message when the printing completes.
- n** Do not send a message (default).
- r** Remove the files when they have been spooled.

The command **lpskip** aborts or restarts the current listing.

#### *Files*

**/dev/lp** — Line printer  
**/usr/lib/lpd** — Line printer daemon  
**/usr/spool/lpd** — Spool directory  
**/usr/spool/lpd/dpid** — Daemon lockfile

#### *See Also*

**commands, lpd, lpskip, pr**

### **lpskip** — Command

Terminate/restart current line printer listing

**lpskip [-r]**

The command **lpskip** aborts or restarts the printing of a file. By default, **lpskip** aborts the current listing and prints a diagnostic message. When invoked with the **-r** option, it restarts the current listing. This is useful when a printing is spoiled due to, say, a paper jam.

**lpskip** works only with files that have been spooled to the line printer via the command **lpr**.

#### *Files*

**/usr/lib/lpd** — Line printer daemon  
**/usr/spool/lpd** — Spool directory  
**/usr/spool/lpd/dpid** — Daemon lockfile

#### *See Also*

**commands, lpd, pr**

### **ls** — Command

List directory's contents

**ls [-acdfgilrstu] [file ... ]**

The command **ls** prints information about each *file*. Normally, **ls** sorts its output by file name and prints only the name of each *file*. If a directory name is given as an argument, **ls** sorts and lists its contents, not including **.** and **..**. If no *file* is named, **ls** lists the contents of the current directory.

The following options control how **ls** sorts and displays its output.

- a** Print all directory entries, including **.**, **..**, any hidden files, and volume ID's.
- c** Sort by the time the files' attributes were last changed.

- d Treat directories as if they were files.
- f Force each argument to be treated as a directory. This disables the **-l** options and sorting, and enables the **-a** option.
- g Display group list rather than user ls of owner; only applicable with **-l**.
- i Print the i-number of each file.
- l Print information in long format. The fields give mode bits, link count, owner uid, owner gid, size in bytes, date, and file name. For special files, major and minor device numbers replace the size field.
- r Reverse the sense of the sort.
- R Recursively print directories.
- s Print the size in blocks of each file.
- t Sort by time, newest first.
- u Sort by the *access* time.

The date ls prints with the **-l** and **-t** options is the *modification* time, unless the **-c** or **-u** option is used as well.

The mode field in the long list format consists of ten characters. The first character will be one of the following:

- Regular file
- b Block special file
- c Character special file
- d Directory
- p Pipe
- x Bad entry (remove it immediately!)

The remaining nine characters are permission bits, in three sets of three characters each. The first set pertains to the owner of the file, the second to users from the owner's group, and the third to users from other groups. Each set may contain 3 characters from the following.

- r The file can be read
- s Set effective user ID or group ID on execution
- t Shared text is sticky
- w The file can be read
- x The file is executable
- No permission is given

*See Also*

**chmod, commands, lc, stat**

**lseek()** – COHERENT System Call (libc)

Set read/write position

**long** *lseek*(*fd*, *where*, *how*)

**int** *fd*, *how*; **long** *where*;

*lseek* changes the *seek position*, or the point within a file where the next read or write operation is performed. *fd* is the file's file descriptor, which is returned by **open**.

*where* and *how* describe the new seek position. *where* gives the number of bytes that you wish to move the seek position; it is measured from the beginning of the file if *how* is zero, from the current seek position if *how* is one, or from the end of the file if *how* is two. A successful call to *lseek* returns the new seek position. For example,

```
position = lseek(filename, 100L, 0);
```

moves the seek position 100 bytes past the beginning of the file; whereas

```
position = lseek(filename, 0L, 1);
```

merely returns the current seek position, and does not change the seek position at all.

Sparse files may be created by seeking beyond the current size of the file and writing. The "hole" between the end of the file and where the write occurs is read as zero and will occupy no disk space. For example, if you *lseek* 10,000 bytes past the current end of file and write a string, the data will be written 10,000 bytes past the old end of file and all intervening matter will be considered part of the file.

*lseek* differs from its cousin *fseek* in that *lseek* is a system call and uses a file descriptor, whereas *fseek* is a C function and uses a **FILE** pointer.

*See Also*

COHERENT system calls, **STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

*lseek* returns **-1L** on an error, such as seeking to a negative position. If no error occurs, it returns the new seek position.

*Notes*

*lseek* is permitted on character-special files, but drivers do not generally implement it. As a result, seeking a terminal will not generate an error but will have no discernible effect.

**ltol3()** – General Function (libc)

Convert long integer to file system block number

**ltol3**(*l3p*, *lp*, *n*)

**char** \**l3p*;

**long** \**lp*;

**unsigned** *n*;

To conserve space inside i-nodes in COHERENT file systems, the system stores block addresses in three bytes. Programs that reference or maintain file systems use the functions **l3tol** and **ltol3** to convert between the three byte representation and **long** numbers.



`ltoa3` converts  $n$  long integers at address  $lp$  to the more compact form at address  $l3p$ .

*See Also*

`canon.h`, general functions, `l3tol()`

## **lvalue** — Definition

An **lvalue** is an expression that designates a region of storage. The name comes from the assignment expression `e1=e2`, in which the left operand must be an lvalue.

An identifier has both an *lvalue* (its address) and an *rvalue* (its contents). Some C operators require lvalue operands; for example, the left operand of an assignment statement must be an lvalue. Some operators give lvalue results; for example, if  $e$  is a pointer expression, `*e` is an lvalue that designates the object to which  $e$  points.

A *variable* can be used as an lvalue, whereas a constant cannot. For example, you cannot say

```
6 = (foo+bar);
```

A pointer is a variable, and can be manipulated within limits. An array name, however, is a constant and cannot be altered legally. Thus, the code

```
int foo[10];
int *bar;
foo = bar;
```

will generate an error message when you attempt to compile it, whereas

```
int foo[10];
int *bar;
bar = foo;
```

will not.

The following example shows the use of both an lvalue and a rvalue:

```
int i, *ip;
ip = &i; /* ip is an lvalue, i and &i are rvalues */
i = 3; /* i is an lvalue, 3 is an rvalue */
ip = 4; / *ip is an lvalue, 4 is an rvalue */
```

*See Also*

definitions, **rvalue**

## M

**m4** — Command

Macro processor  
**m4** [*file* ...]

The command **m4** processes macros. It allows you to define strings for which **m4** is to search, and strings to replace them; **m4** then opens *file*, reads its contents, replaces each macro with its specified replacement string, and writes the results into the standard output stream.

**m4** can also perform file manipulation, conditional decision making, substring selection, and arithmetic. The *Introduction to the m4 Macro Processor* describes **m4** in detail.

The *files* are read in the order given; if no *file* is named, then **m4** reads the standard input stream. The file name ‘.’ indicates the standard input.

**m4** copies input to output until it finds a potential *macro*. A macro is a string of alphanumeric characters (letters, digits, or underscores) that begins with a non-digit character and is surrounded by non-alphanumeric characters. If **m4** does not recognize the *macro*, it simply copies it to the output and continues processing. If **m4** recognizes the *macro* and the next character is a left parenthesis ‘(’, an *argument set* follows:

```
macro(arg1, ..., argn)
```

The arguments are collected by processing them in the same manner as other text (thus, an argument may itself be another macro), and resulting output text is diverted into storage. **m4** stores up to nine arguments; any more will be processed but not saved. An argument set consists of strings of text separated by commas (commas inside quotation marks or parentheses do not terminate an argument), and must contain balanced parentheses that are free of quotation marks (i.e., that are *unquoted*). **m4** strips arguments of unquoted leading space (blanks, tabs, newline characters).

**m4** then removes the *macro* and its optional argument set from the input stream, processes them, and replaces them in the input stream with the resulting value. The value becomes the next piece of text to be read.

Quotation marks, of the form ‘ ’, inhibit the recognition of *macro*. **m4** strips off one level of quotation marks when it encounters them (quotation marks are nestable). Thus, ‘*macro*’ is not processed, but is changed to *macro* and passed on.

**m4** determines the *value* of a user-defined macro by taking the text that constitutes the macro’s *definition* and replacing any occurrence within that text of ‘\$*n*’ (where *n* is ‘0’ through ‘9’) with the text of the *n*th argument. Argument 0 is the *macro* itself.

**m4** recognizes the following predefined macros:

**changequote**[(*openquote*),(*closequote*)]

Changes the quotation characters. Missing arguments default to ‘ for open or ’ for close. Quotation characters will not nest if they are defined to be the same character. Value is null.

**decr**(*number*)

Decrement *number* (default, 0) by one and returns resulting value.

**define**(*macro,definition*)

Define or redefine *macro*. If a predefined macro is redefined, its original definition is irrecoverably lost. Value is null.

**divert**(*n*)

Redirects output to output stream *n* (default is 0). The standard output is 0, and 1 through 9 are maintained as temporary files. Any other *n* results in output being thrown away until the next **divert** macro. Value is null.

**divnum** Value is current output stream number.

**dnl** Delete to newline: removes all characters from the input stream up to and including the next newline. Value is null.

**dumpdef**(*macros*)

Value is quoted definitions of all *macros* specified, or names and definitions of all defined macros if no arguments.

**errprint**(*text*)

Print *text* on standard error file. Value is null.

**eval**(*expression*)

Value is a number that is the value of evaluated *expression*. It recognizes, in order of decreasing precedence: parentheses, \*\*, unary + -, \* / %, binary + -, relations, and logicals. Arithmetic is performed in longs.

**ifdef**(*macro,defvalue,undefvalue*)

Return *defvalue* if *macro* is defined, and *undefvalue* if not.

**ifelse**(*arg1,arg2,arg3...*)

Compares *arg1* and *arg2*. If they are the same, returns *arg3*. If not, and *arg4* is the last argument, return *arg4*. Otherwise, the process repeats, comparing *arg4* and *arg5*, and so on. Like other m4 macros, this takes a maximum of nine arguments.

**include**(*file*)

Value is the entire contents of the *file* argument. If *file* is not accessible, a fatal error results.

**incr**(*number*)

Increments given *number* (default, zero) by one and returns resulting value.

**index**(*text,pattern*)

Value is a number corresponding to position of *pattern* in *text*. If *pattern* does not occur in *text*, value is -1.

**len**(*text*)

Value is a number that corresponds to length of *text*.

**maketemp**(*filenameXXXXXX*)

Value is *filename* with last six characters, usually XXXXXX, replaced with current process id and a single letter. Same as system call **mktemp**.

**sinclude**(*file*)

Value is the entire contents of *file*. If *file* is not accessible, return null and continue processing.

**substr**(*text*[,*start*][,*count*])

Value is a substring of *text*. *start* may be left-oriented (nonnegative) or right-oriented (negative). *count* specifies how many characters to the right (if positive) or to the left (if negative) to return. If absent, it is assumed to be large and of the same sign as *start*. If *start* is omitted, it is assumed to be zero if *count* is positive or omitted, or -1 if *count* is negative.

**syscmd**(*command*)

Pass *command* to the shell **sh** for execution. Value is null. Same as system call **system**.

**translit**(*text*,*characters*[,*replacements*])

Replaces *characters* in *text* with the corresponding characters from *replacements*. If the *replacements* is absent or too short, replace *characters* with a null character. Value is *text* with specified replacements.

**undefine**(*macro*)

Remove macro definition. Value is null. If a predefined macro is redefined, its original definition is irrecoverably lost.

**undivert**[(*stream*[,...])] ]

Dumps each specified *stream* into the current output stream. With no arguments, **undivert** dumps all output streams in numeric order. **m4** will not dump any output stream into itself. At the end of processing, **m4** automatically dumps all diverted text to standard output in numeric order. Value is null.

*See Also*

**commands**, **mktemp**, **system**

*Introduction to the m4 Macro Processor*

**machine.h** — Header File

Machine-dependent definitions

**#define** <sys/machine.h>

**machine.h** defines macros, constants, and structures that are specific to the machine upon which COHERENT is being run.

*See Also*

header files

**macro** — Definition

A **macro** is a body of text that is given a name. When the name is used in a program, it is replaced with the text to which it refers; this is called macro *expansion*. For example, **getchar** is a macro that consists of the function call **getc(stdin)**.

Because macros may employ an argument *n* times, any arguments that have side effects will have the side effect repeated *n* times as well, which may be undesirable.

*See Also*

**#define, definitions, function, m4**

## **madd()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Add multiple-precision integers

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void madd(a, b, c)
```

```
mint *a, *b, *c;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. **madd** sets the multiple-precision integer (or **mints**) pointed to by *c* to the sum of the the **mints** pointed to by *a* and *b*.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

## **mail** — Command

Computer mail

```
mail [-mpqrv] [-f file] [user ...]
```

**mail** allows you to exchange electronic mail with other COHERENT system users, either on your own system or on other systems via UUCP. If one or more *users* are specified, **mail** reads a message from the standard input, appends the date and the sender's name, and sends the result to each *user*. **mail** prints the prompt

Subject:

on the screen, requesting that you give the message a title. A message can be terminated with an end-of-file character (<ctrl-D>), a line that contains only the character '.', or a line that contains only the character '?'. If a message is ended with a question mark, **mail** feeds the message into an editor for further editing. The editor used is the one named in the user's **.profile** with the command line **export EDITOR=editor**; if no editor is named in **.profile**, it uses **ed**.

**mail** looks up each *user* in file **/usr/lib/mail/aliases**. If there is a match, the new name is used in place of *user*. If *user* is of the form

```
sys!user
```

or

```
sys! ... !user
```

it is treated as a UUCP destination. **mail** then invokes **uucp** command to pass the message to **sys**, whose responsibility it becomes to pass the message to *user*.

For local users, **mail** writes its messages into the file **/usr/spool/mail/user**. This file is called the user's "mailbox"; Each *user* who has received mail is greeted by the message "You have mail." when she logs in. **mail** normally changes the contents of the mailbox as the user works with them; however, **mail** has options that allow the contents of the mailbox to remain unchanged if the user desires.

If no *user* is given, **mail** reads the user's mail message by message. The following commands allow the user to save, delete, or send each message to another user interactively.

- d** Delete the current message and print the next message.
  - m** [*user ...*]  
Mail the current message to each *user* given (default: yourself).
  - mx** [*user ...*]  
Encrypt the current message using public key encryption and send it to each *user* (default: yourself).
  - p** Print the current message again.
  - px** Decrypt the current message and print it.
  - q** Quit, and update mailbox file to reflect changes.
  - r** Reverse the direction in which the mailbox is being scanned.
  - s** [*file ...*]  
Save the current mail message with the usual header in each *file* (default: `$HOME/mbox`).
  - t** [*user ...*]  
Send a message read from the standard input, terminated by an end-of-file character or by a line containing only '.' or '?', to each *user* (default: yourself).
  - tx** [*user ...*]  
Send a message read from the standard input, terminated by an end-of-file or by a line containing only '.' or '?', using public-key encryption to each *user* (default: yourself).
  - w** [*file ...*]  
Write the current message without the usual header in each *file* (default: `$HOME/mbox`).
  - x** Exit without updating the mailbox file.
  - <newline>**  
Print the next message.
  - Print the previous message.
  - EOF** Quit, updating mailbox; same as **q**.
  - ?** Print a summary of available commands.
  - !command**  
Pass *command* to the shell for execution.
- The following command line options control the sending and reading of mail.
- f file** Read mail from *file* instead of from the default, `/usr/spool/mail/user`.
  - m** Send a message to the terminal of *user* if she is logged into the system when mail is sent.
  - p** Print all mail without interaction.

- q Quit without changing the mailbox if an interrupt character is typed. Normally, an interrupt character stops printing of the current message.
- r Reverse the order of printing messages. Normally, **mail** prints messages in the order in which they were received.
- v Verbose mode. Show the version number of the **mail** program, and display expanded aliases.

If you wish, you can create a signature file, **.sig.mail**, in your home directory. **mail** appends the contents of the signature file to the end of every mail message, as a signature. A signature can be your system's path name (for **uucp** messages), your telephone number, an amusing *bon mot*, or what you will.

### Files

**\$HOME/dead.letter** — Message that **mail** could not send  
**\$HOME/mbox** — Default saved mail  
**/etc/passwd** — User identities  
**/etc/utmp** — Logged in users  
**/tmp/mail\*** — Temporary and lock files  
**/usr/lib/mail/aliases** — Aliases of users  
**/usr/spool/mail** — Mailbox directory, filed by user name  
**/usr/spool/pubkey** — Public key directory, filed by user name

### See Also

**ASKCC, commands, enroll, msg, write**

### Notes

**mail** stores mail for a given *user* in file **/usr/spool/mail/user**. *user* owns this file, and can therefore permit or deny access to the mail by other users.

## main() — C Language

Introduce program's main function

A C program consists of a set of functions, one of which must be called **main**. This function is called from the runtime startup routine after the runtime environment has been initialized.

Programs can terminate in one of two ways. The easiest is simply to have the **main** routine **return**. Control returns to the runtime startup; it closes all open file streams and otherwise cleans up, and then returns control to the operating system, passing it the value returned by **main** as exit status.

In some situations (errors, for example), it may be necessary to stop a program, and you may not want to return to **main**. Here, you can use **exit**; it cleans up the debris left by the broken program and returns control directly to the operating system.

A second exit routine, called **\_exit**, quickly returns control to the operating system without performing any cleanup. This routine should be used with care, because bypassing the cleanup will leave files open and buffers of data in memory.

Programs compiled by COHERENT return to the program that called them; if they return from **main** with a value or call **exit** with a value, that value is returned to their caller. Programs that invoke other programs through the **system** function check the

returned value to see if these secondary programs terminated successfully.

*See Also*

`_exit`, `argc`, `argv`, C language, `envp`, `exit`

## **make** — Command

Program building discipline

**make** [*option ...*] [*argument ...*] [*target ...*]

**make** helps you build programs that consist of more than one file of source code.

Complex programs often consist of several *object modules*, each of which is the product of compiling a *source file*. A source file may refer to one or more **include** files, which can also be changed. Some programs may be generated from specifications given to program generators, such as **yacc**. Recompiling and relinking complicated programs can be difficult and tedious.

**make** regenerates programs automatically. It follows a specification of the structure of the program that you write into a file called **makefile**. **make** also checks the date and time that COHERENT has recorded for each source file and its corresponding object module; to avoid unnecessary recompilation, **make** will recompile a source file only if it has been altered since its object module was last compiled.

### *The Makefile*

A **makefile** consists of three types of instructions: *macro definitions*, *dependency definitions*, and *commands*.

A macro definition simply defines a macro for use throughout the **makefile**; for example, the macro definition

```
FILES=file1.o file2.o file3.o
```

Note the use of the equal sign '='.

A dependency definition names the object modules used to build the target program, and source files used to build each object module. It consists of the *target name*, or name of the program to be created, followed by a colon ':' and the names of the object modules that build it. For example, the statement

```
example: $(FILES)
```

uses the macro **FILES** to name the object modules used to build the program **example**. Likewise, the dependency definition

```
file1.o: file1.c macros.h
```

defines the object module **file1.o** as consisting of the source file **file1.c** and the header file **macros.h**.

Finally, a command line details an action that **make** must perform to build the target program. Each command line must begin with a space or tab character. For example, the command line

```
cc -o example $(FILES)
```



gives the **cc** command needed to build the program **example**. The **cc** command lists the *object modules* to be used, *not* the source files.

Note that if you prefix an action with a hyphen '-', **make** will ignore errors in the action. If the action is prefixed by '@', it tells **make** to be silent about the action — that is, do not echo the command to the standard output.

Finally, you can embed comments within a **makefile**. **make** recognizes any line that begins with a pound sign '#' as being a comment, and ignores it.

**make** searches for **makefile** first in directories named in the environmental variable **PATH**, and then in the current directory.

### Dependencies

The **makefile** specifies which files depend upon other files, and how to recreate the dependent files. For example, if the target file **test** depends upon the object module **test.o**, the dependency is as follows:

```
test: test.o
 cc -o test test.o
```

**make** knows about common dependencies, e.g., that **.o** files depend upon **.c** files with the same base name. The target **.SUFFIXES** contains the suffixes that **make** recognizes.

**make** also has a set of rules to regenerate dependent files. For example, for a source file with suffix **.c** and a dependent file with the suffix **.o**, the target **.c.o** gives the regeneration rule:

```
.c.o:
 cc -c $<
```

The **-c** option to the **cc** commands tells **cc** not to link or erase the compiled object module. **\$<** is a macro that **make** defines; it stands for the name of the file that causes the current action. The default suffixes and rules are kept in the files **/usr/lib/makemacros** and **/usr/lib/makeactions**.

### Macros

To simplify the writing of complex dependencies, **make** provides a *macro* facility. To define a macro, write

```
NAME = string
```

*string* is terminated by the end-of-line character, so it can contain blanks. To refer to the value of the macro, use a dollar sign '\$' followed by the macro name enclosed in parentheses:

```
$(NAME)
```

If the macro name is one character, parentheses are not necessary. **make** uses macros in the definition of default rules:

```
.c.o:
 $(CC) $(CFLAGS) -c $<
```

where the macros are defined as

```
CC=cc
CFLAGS=-V
```

The other built-in macros are:

```
$* Target name, minus suffix
$@ Full target name
$< List of referred files
$? Referred files newer than target
```

Each command line *argument* should be a macro definition of the form

```
OBJECT=a.o b.o
```

Arguments that include spaces must be surrounded by quotation marks, because blanks are significant to the shell **sh**.

Note that you can override any built-in macro by resetting its value in the environment.

### *Options*

The following lists the options that can be passed to **make** on its command line.

- d (Debug) Give verbose printout of all decisions and information going into decisions.
- f *file* *file* contains the **make** specification. If this option does not appear, **make** uses the file **makefile**, which is sought first in the directories named in the **PATH** environmental variable, and then in the current directory. If *file* is '.', **make** uses the standard input; note, however, that the standard input can be used *only* if it is piped.
- i Ignore all errors from commands, and continue processing. Normally, **make** exits if a command returns an error.
- n Test only; suppresses actual execution of commands.
- p Print all macro definitions and target descriptions.
- q Return a zero exit status if the targets are up to date. Do not execute any commands.
- r Do not use the built-in rules that describe dependencies.
- s Do not print command lines when executing them. Commands preceded by '@' are not printed, except under the -n option.
- t (Touch option) Force the dates of targets to be the current time, and bypass actual regeneration.

### *Files*

#### **makefile**

**Makefile** — List of dependencies and commands

**/usr/lib/makeactions** — Default actions

**/usr/lib/makemacros** — Default macros

*See Also***as, cc, commands, ld, touch***The make Programming Discipline, tutorial**Diagnostics*

**make** reports its exit status if it is interrupted or if an executed command returns error status. It replies "Target *name* not defined" or "Don't know how to make target *name*" if it cannot find appropriate rules.

*Notes*

The order of items in **makemacros/.SUFFIXES** is significant. The consequent of a default rule (e.g., **.o**) must *precede* the antecedent (e.g., **.c**) in the entry **.SUFFIXES**. Otherwise, **make** will not work properly.

**malloc()** — General Function (libc)

Allocate dynamic memory

**char \*malloc(size) unsigned size;**

**malloc** helps to manage a program's free-space arenas. It uses a circular, first-fit algorithm to select an unused block of at least *size* bytes, marks the portion it uses, and returns a pointer to it. The function **free** returns allocated memory to the free memory pool.

Each area allocated by **malloc** is rounded up to the nearest even number and preceded by an **unsigned int** that contains the true length. Thus, if you ask for three bytes you get four, and the **unsigned** that precedes the newly allocated area is set to four.

When an area is freed, its low order bit is turned on; consolidation occurs when **malloc** passes over an area as it searches for space. The end of each arena contains a block with a length of zero, followed by a pointer to the next arena. Arenas point in a circle.

The most common problem with **malloc** occurs when a program modifies more space than it allocates with **malloc**. This can cause later **mallocs** to crash with a message that indicates that the arena has been corrupted.

*Example*

This example reads from the standard input up to **NITEMS** items, each of which is up to **MAXLEN** long, sorts them, and writes the sorted list onto the standard output. It demonstrates the functions **qsort**, **malloc**, **free**, **exit**, and **strep**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#define NITEMS 512
#define MAXLEN 256
char *data[NITEMS];
char string[MAXLEN];
```

```
main()
{
 register char **cpp;
 register int count;
 extern int compare();
 extern char *malloc();
 extern char *gets();

 for (cpp = &data[0]; cpp < &data[NITEMS]; cpp++) {
 if (gets(string) == NULL)
 break;
 if ((*cpp = malloc(strlen(string) + 1)) == NULL)
 exit(1);
 strcpy(*cpp, string);
 }

 count = cpp - &data[0];
 qsort(data, count, sizeof(char *), compare);

 for (cpp = &data[0]; cpp < &data[count]; cpp++) {
 printf("%s\n", *cpp);
 free(*cpp);
 }
 exit(0);
}

compare(p1, p2)
register char **p1, **p2;
{
 extern int strcmp();
 return(strcmp(*p1, *p2));
}
```

### *See Also*

**arena**, **calloc()**, **free()**, **general functions**, **malloc.h**, **memok()**, **realloc()**, **setbuf()**

### *Diagnostics*

**malloc** returns NULL if insufficient memory is available.

### *Notes*

The commonest error associated with **malloc** is failing to declare it properly. You should always declare **malloc** as returning a pointer to **char**.

## **malloc.h** — Header File

Definitions for memory-allocation functions

**#include** <sys/malloc.h>

**malloc.h** defines constants, structures, and macros used with COHERENT's memory-allocation functions. Note that this header does not declare the library's memory-allocation functions.

*See Also*

header files

## man — Technical Information

Manual macro package

**nroff** -man file ...

The **nroff** macro package **man** formats manual pages in the style of the Lexicon. It includes the following macros:

**.B** Boldface font.  
**.BI** Bold/italic alternating fonts.  
**.BR** Bold/Roman alternating fonts.  
**.CO** COHERENT.  
**.DE** Display end.  
**.DS** Display start.  
**.DT** Default tabs.  
**.HE** Help end.  
**.HP** Hanging paragraph.  
**.HS** Help start.  
**.I** Italic font.  
**.IB** Italic/bold alternating fonts.  
**.IP** Indented paragraph.  
**.IR** Italic/Roman alternating fonts.  
**.LP** Paragraph, flush left.  
**.PD** Paragraph distance.  
**.PP** Paragraph, indented.  
**.RB** Roman/bold alternating fonts.  
**.RE** Relative indent end.  
**.RI** Roman/italic alternating fonts.  
**.RS** Relative indent start.  
**.SH** Subheader.  
**.SM** Smaller size.  
**.TH** Header.  
**.TP** Tagged paragraph.

### *Files*

/usr/lib/tmac.an — Macro package

*See Also*

**ms**, **nroff**, **technical information**, **troff**  
*nroff*, *The Text Processing Language*, tutorial

## man — Command

Print online manual sections

**man** [-w] [*title* ...]

**man** prints the COHERENT lexicon entries for each specified *title* on the standard output. It uses **scat** to display text (with the **-s** option to suppress blank lines). With no arguments, **man** prints a list of each available *title*.

When used with the `-w` option, it prints the path name of the file instead of printing the document itself.

*Files*

`/usr/man/*` – Directories that hold manual pages

*See Also*

**commands, help, scat**

*Introduction to nroff, Text Processing Language, tutorial*

**manifest constant – Definition**

A **manifest constant** is a numeric constant that is given a name so it can be defined differently under different computing environments. An example is **EOF**, the end-of-file marker, which has wildly different representations under different operating systems. Note, too, that numerals are manifest constants by definition.

The use of manifest constants in programs helps to ensure that code is portable by isolating the definition of these elements in a single header file, where they need to be changed only once.

*See Also*

**#define, definitions, NULL, portability**

**math.h – Header File**

Declare mathematics functions

**#include <math.h>**

**math.h** is the header file to be included with programs that use any of COHERENT's mathematics routines. It includes the following: definitions for mathematical functions; error return values, as used by the **errno** function; definitions of mathematical constants, e.g., **HUGE\_VAL**; the definition of structure **cpx**, which describes complex variables; definitions of internal compiler functions; and, finally, declarations of all mathematical functions.

*See Also*

**header files, mathematics library**

**mathematics library – Overview**

The following mathematics routines are available with COHERENT:

|                |                                       |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>acos()</b>  | Calculate inverse cosine              |
| <b>asin()</b>  | Calculate inverse sine                |
| <b>atan()</b>  | Calculate inverse tangent             |
| <b>atan2()</b> | Calculate inverse tangent of quotient |
| <b>cabs()</b>  | Calculate complex absolute value      |
| <b>ceil()</b>  | Set numeric ceiling                   |
| <b>cos()</b>   | Calculate cosine                      |
| <b>cosh()</b>  | Calculate hyperbolic cosine           |
| <b>exp()</b>   | Calculate exponent                    |
| <b>fabs()</b>  | Calculate absolute value function     |

|                |                                           |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <b>floor()</b> | Calculate floor function                  |
| <b>hypot()</b> | Calculate hypotenuse                      |
| <b>j0()</b>    | Calculate Bessel function, order 0        |
| <b>j1()</b>    | Calculate Bessel function, order 1        |
| <b>jn()</b>    | Calculate Bessel function, order <i>n</i> |
| <b>log()</b>   | Calculate natural logarithm               |
| <b>log10()</b> | Calculate common logarithm                |
| <b>pow()</b>   | Calculate power                           |
| <b>sin()</b>   | Calculate sine                            |
| <b>sinh()</b>  | Calculate hyperbolic sine                 |
| <b>sqrt()</b>  | Calculate square root                     |
| <b>tan()</b>   | Calculate tangent                         |
| <b>tanh()</b>  | Calculate hyperbolic tangent              |

*See Also*

Lexicon, Libraries, math.h

### Notes

When programs that contain mathematics routines are compiled, the mathematics libraries must be called specifically on the **cc** command line. For example, to compile the example presented under the entry for **acos**, use the following **cc** command line:

```
cc -f acos.c -lm
```

The **-f** option links in the floating point routines for **printf**, while the **-lm** option links in the mathematics libraries. Note that the **-lm** option must come *last* on the **cc** command line, or the library will not be searched properly.

## mboot — Device Driver

Master boot block for hard disk

To be bootable, a COHERENT file system must contain a boot block (either **boot** or **mboot**). In addition, all hard disks must contain the master boot block **mboot** or an equivalent.

**mboot** is the master boot block for a hard-disk drive. It is compatible with, and therefore can replace, the IBM master boot block installed by the MS-DOS command **FDISK**. It must be installed in the first sector of the hard disk, as follows:

```
/etc/fdisk -b /conf/mboot /dev/at0x
/bin/sync
```

**mboot** searches its internal partition table (updated by the command **fdisk**) for an active partition. The user can select an alternate partition by pressing 0-3 before the active partition is selected. If the selected partition is of non-zero size with a valid partition boot block, the partition's boot block is executed. Otherwise, the prompt

```
Select partition [0-7]
```

will appear.

*Files*

**/conf/mboot** — Hard-disk master boot block

*See Also*

**boot**, **device drivers**, **fdisk**, **mkfs**

**mcmp()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Compare multiple-precision integers

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
int mcmp(a, b)
```

```
mint *a, *b;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mcmp** compares the multiple-precision integers (or **mints**) pointed to by *a* and *b*. It returns a signed integer less than, equal to, or greater than zero according to whether the value pointed to by *a* is less than, equal to, or greater than that pointed to by *b*.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

**mcopy()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Copy a multiple-precision integer

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void mcopy(a, b)
```

```
mint *a, *b;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mcopy** sets the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *b* to the value pointed to by *a*.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

**mdata.h** — Header File

Define machine-specific magic numbers

```
#define <sys/mdata.h>
```

**mdata.h** defines the “magic numbers” for the machine upon which COHERENT is being run.

*See Also*

**header files**

**mdiv()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Divide multiple-precision integers

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void mdiv(a, b, q, r)
```

```
mint *a, *b, *q, *r;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mdiv** divides the multiple-precision integer (or



**mint**) pointed to by *a* with that pointed to by *b*. It writes the quotient and remainder into, respectively, *q* and *r*. *b* must not be zero. The results of the operation are defined by the following conditions:

1.  $a = q * b + r$
2. The sign of *r* equals the sign of *q*
3. The absolute value of *r* is greater than the absolute value of *b*.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

## me — Command

MicroEMACS screen editor

**me** [-e *errorfile*] [*file ...*]

**me** is the command for MicroEMACS, the screen editor for COHERENT. With MicroEMACS, you can insert text, delete text, move text, search for a string and replace it, and perform many other editing tasks. MicroEMACS reads text from files and writes edited text to files; it can edit several files simultaneously, while displaying the contents of each file in its own screen window.

### *Screen Layout*

If the command **me** is used without arguments, MicroEMACS opens an empty buffer. If used with one or more file name arguments, MicroEMACS will open each of the files named, and display its contents in a window. If a file cannot be found, MicroEMACS will assume that you are creating it for the first time, and create an appropriately named buffer and file descriptor for it.

The last line of the screen is used to print messages and inquiries. The rest of the screen is portioned into one or more *windows* in which text is displayed. The last line of each window shows whether the text has been changed, the name of the buffer, and the name of the file associated with the window.

MicroEMACS notes its *current position*. It is important to remember that the current position is always to the *left* of the cursor, and lies *between* two letters, rather than at one letter or another. For example, if the cursor is positioned at the letter 'k' of the phrase "Mark Williams", then the current position lies *between* the letters 'r' and 'k'.

### *Commands and Text*

The printable ASCII characters, from ' ' to '~', can be inserted at the current position. Control characters and escape sequences are recognized as *commands*, described below. A control character can be inserted into the text by prefixing it with <ctrl-Q> (that is, hold down the <control> key and type the letter 'Q').

There are two types of commands to remove text. *Delete* commands remove text and throw it away, whereas *kill* commands remove text but save it in the *kill buffer*. Successive kill commands append text to the previous kill buffer. Moving the cursor before you kill a line will empty the kill buffer, and write the line just killed into it.

Search commands prompt for a search string terminated by <return> and then search for it. Case sensitivity for searching can be toggled with the command <esc>@. Typing <return> instead of a search string tells MicroEMACS to use the previous search

string.

Some commands manipulate words rather than characters. MicroEMACS defines a word as consisting of all alphabetic characters, plus ‘\_’ and ‘\$’. Usually, a character command is a control character and the corresponding word command is an escape sequence. For example, <ctrl-F> moves forward one character and <esc>F moves forward one word.

MicroEMACS can handle blocks of text as well as individual characters, words, and lines. MicroEMACS defines a block of text as all the text that lies between the *mark* and the current position of the cursor. For example, typing <ctrl-W> kills all text from the mark to the current position of the cursor; this is useful when moving text from one file to another. When you invoke MicroEMACS, the mark is set at the beginning of the file; you can reset the mark to the cursor’s current position by typing <ctrl-@>.

### *Using MicroEMACS with the Compiler*

MicroEMACS can be invoked automatically by the compiler command `cc` to help you repair all errors that occur during compilation. The `-A` option to `cc` causes MicroEMACS to be invoked automatically when an error occurs. The compiler error messages are displayed in one window, the source code in the other, and the cursor is at the line on which the first error occurred. When the text is altered, exiting from MicroEMACS automatically recompiles the file.

This cycle will continue either until the file compiles without error, or until you break the cycle by typing <ctrl-U> <ctrl-X> <ctrl-C>.

The option `-e` to the `me` command allows you to invoke the error buffer by hand. For example, the commands

```
cc myprogram.c 2>errorfile
me -e errorfile myprogram.c
```

divert the compiler’s error messages into `errorfile`, and then invokes MicroEMACS to let you correct them interactively.

### *The MicroEMACS Help Facility*

MicroEMACS has a built-in help facility. With it, you can ask for information either for a word that you type in, or for a word over which the cursor is positioned. The MicroEMACS help file contains the bindings for all library functions and macros included with COHERENT.

For example, consider that you are preparing a C program and want more information about the function `fopen`. Type <ctrl-X>?. At the bottom of the screen will appear the prompt

Topic:

Type `fopen`. MicroEMACS will search its help file, find its entry for `fopen`, then open a window and print the following:

```
Open a stream for standard I/O
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fopen (name, type) char *name, *type;
```

If you wish, you can kill the information in the help window and copy it into your program, to ensure that you prepare the function call correctly.

Consider, however, that you are checking a program written earlier, and you wish to check the call for a call to `fopen`. Simply move the cursor until it is positioned over one of the letters in `fopen`, then type `<esc>?`. MicroEMACS will open its help window, and show the same information it did above.

To erase the help window, type `<ctrl-X>1`.

### Options

The following list gives the MicroEMACS commands. They are grouped by function, e.g., *Moving the cursor*. Some commands can take an *argument*, which specifies how often the command is to be executed. The default argument is 1. The command `<ctrl-U>` introduces an argument. By default, it sets the argument to four. Typing `<ctrl-U>` followed by a number sets the argument to that number. Typing `<ctrl-U>` followed by one or more `<ctrl-U>`s multiplies the argument by four.

### Moving the Cursor

- `<ctrl-A>` Move to start of line.
- `<ctrl-B>` (Back) Move backward by characters.
- `<esc>B` Move backward by words.
- `<ctrl-E>` (End) Move to end of line.
- `<ctrl-F>` (Forward) Move forward by characters.
- `<esc>F` (Forward) Move forward by words.
- `<esc>G` Go to an absolute line number in a file. Same as `<ctrl-X>G`.
- `<ctrl-N>` (Next) Move to next line.
- `<ctrl-P>` (Previous) Move to previous line.
- `<ctrl-V>` Move forward by pages.
- `<esc>V` Move backward by pages.
- `<ctrl-X>=` Print the current position.
- `<ctrl-X>G` Go to an absolute line number in a file. Can be used with an argument; otherwise, it will prompt for a line number. Same as `<esc>G`.
- `<ctrl-X>[` Go to matching C delimiter. For example, if the cursor is positioned under the character '{', then typing `<ctrl-X>[` moves the cursor to the next '}'. Likewise, if the cursor is positioned under the character '}', then typing `<ctrl-X>[` moves the cursor to the first preceding '{'. MicroEMACS recognizes the delimiters [, ], {, }, (, ), /\*, and \*/.
- `<ctrl-X>]` Toggle reverse-video display of matching C delimiters. For example, if reverse-video displaying is toggled on, then whenever the cursor is positioned under a '}' MicroEMACS displays the first preceding '{' in reverse video (should it be on the screen). MicroEMACS recognizes the delimiters [, ], {,

}, (, ), /\*, and \*/.

- <esc>! Move the current line to the line within the window given by *argument*; the position is in lines from the top if positive, in lines from the bottom if negative, and the center of the window if zero.
- <esc>< Move to the beginning of the current buffer.
- <esc>> Move to the end of the current buffer.

### *Killing and Deleting*

- <ctrl-D> (Delete) Delete next character.
- <esc>D Kill the next word.
- <ctrl-H> If no argument, delete previous character. Otherwise, kill *argument* previous characters.
- <ctrl-K> (Kill) With no argument, kill from current position to end of line; if at the end, kill the newline. With argument set to one, kill from beginning of line to current position. Otherwise, kill *argument* lines forward (if positive) or backward (if negative).
- <ctrl-W> Kill text from current position to mark.
- <ctrl-X> <ctrl-O>  
Kill blank lines at current position.
- <ctrl-Y> (Yank back) Copy the kill buffer into text at the current position; set current position to the end of the new text.
- <esc> <ctrl-H>  
Kill the previous word.
- <esc> <DEL>  
Kill the previous word.
- <DEL> If no argument, delete the previous character. Otherwise, kill *argument* previous characters.

### *Windows*

- <ctrl-X>1 Display only the current window.
- <ctrl-X>2 Split the current window into two windows. This command is usually followed by <ctrl-X>B or <ctrl-X> <ctrl-V>.
- <ctrl-X>N (Next) Move to next window.
- <ctrl-X>P (Previous) Move to previous window.
- <ctrl-X>Z Enlarge the current window by *argument* lines.
- <ctrl-X> <ctrl-N>  
Move text in current window down by *argument* lines.

**<ctrl-X> <ctrl-P>**  
Move text in current window up by *argument* lines.

**<ctrl-X> <ctrl-Z>**  
Shrink current window by *argument* lines.

### *Buffers*

**<ctrl-X> B** (Buffer) Prompt for a buffer name, and display the buffer in the current window.

**<ctrl-X> K** (Kill) Prompt for a buffer name and delete it.

**<ctrl-X> <ctrl-B>**  
Display a window showing the change flag, size, buffer name, and file name of each buffer.

**<ctrl-X> <ctrl-F>**  
(File name) Prompt for a file name for current buffer.

**<ctrl-X> <ctrl-R>**  
(Read) Prompt for a file name, delete current buffer, and read the file.

**<ctrl-X> <ctrl-V>**  
(Visit) Prompt for a file name and display the file in the current window.

### *Saving Text and Exiting*

**<ctrl-X> <ctrl-C>**  
Exit without saving text.

**<ctrl-X> <ctrl-S>**  
(Save) Save current buffer to the associated file.

**<ctrl-X> <ctrl-W>**  
(Write) Prompt for a file name and write the current buffer to it.

**<ctrl-Z>** Save current buffer to associated file and exit.

### *Compilation Error Handling*

**<ctrl-X> >** Move to next error.

**<ctrl-X> <** Move to previous error.

### *Search and Replace*

**<ctrl-R>** (Reverse) Incremental search backward; a pattern is sought as each character is typed.

**<esc> R** (Reverse) Search toward the beginning of the file. Waits for entire pattern before search begins.

**<ctrl-S>** (Search) Incremental search forward; a pattern is sought as each character is typed.

- <esc>S** (Search) Search toward the end of the file. Waits for entire pattern before search begins.
- <esc>%** Search and replace. Prompt for two strings; then search for the first string and replace it with the second.
- <esc>/** Search for next occurrence of a string entered with the **<esc>S** or **<esc>R** commands; this remembers whether the previous search had been forward or backward.
- <esc>@** Toggle case sensitivity for searches. By default, searches are case insensitive.

### *Keyboard Macros*

- <ctrl-X>(** Begin a macro definition. MicroEMACS collects everything typed until the next **<ctrl-X>)** for subsequent repeated execution. **<ctrl-G>** breaks the definition.
- <ctrl-X>)** End a macro definition.
- <ctrl-X>E** (Execute) Execute the keyboard macro.
- <ctrl-X>M** Bind current macro to a name.

### *Change Case of Text*

- <esc>C** (Capitalize) Capitalize the next word.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-L>**  
(Lower) Convert all text from current position to mark into lower case.
- <esc>L** (Lower) Convert the next word to lower case.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-U>**  
(Upper) Convert all text from current position to mark into upper case.
- <esc>U** (Upper) Convert the next word to upper case.

### *White Space*

- <ctrl-I>** Insert a tab.
- <ctrl-J>** Insert a new line and indent to current level. This is often used in C programs to preserve the current level of indentation.
- <ctrl-M>** (Return) If the following line is not empty, insert a new line; if empty, move to next line.
- <ctrl-O>** Open a blank line; that is, insert newline after the current position.
- <tab>** With argument, set tab fields at every *argument* characters. An argument of zero restores the default of eight characters. Setting the tab to any character other than eight causes space characters to be set in your file instead of tab characters.

### Send Commands to Operating System

**<ctrl-C>** Suspend MicroEMACS and execute a subshell. Typing **<ctrl-D>** returns you to MicroEMACS and allows you to resume editing.

**<ctrl-X>!** Prompt for a shell command and execute it.

These commands recognize the shell variable **SHELL** to determine the shell to which it should pass the command.

### Setting the Mark

**<ctrl-@>** Set mark at current position.

**<esc>.** Set mark at current position.

**<ctrl><space>**  
Set mark at current position.

### Help Window

**<ctrl-X>?** Prompt for word for which information is needed.

**<esc>?** Search for word over which cursor is positioned.

**<esc>2** Erase help window.

### Miscellaneous

**<ctrl-G>** Abort a command.

**<ctrl-L>** Redraw the screen.

**<ctrl-Q>** (Quote) Insert the next character into text; used to insert control characters.

**<esc>Q** (Quote) Insert the next control character into the text. Same as **<ctrl-Q>**.

**<ctrl-T>** Transpose the characters before and after the current position.

**<ctrl-U>** Specify a numeric argument, as described above.

**<ctrl-U><ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**  
Abort editing and re-compilation. Use this command to abort editing and return to COHERENT when you are using the **-A** option to the **cc** command.

**<ctrl-X>H** Use word-wrap on a region.

**<ctrl-X>F** Set word wrap to *argument* column. If argument is one, set word wrap to cursor's current position.

**<ctrl-X><ctrl-X>**  
Mark the current position, then jump to the previous setting of the mark. This is useful when moving text from one place in a file to another.

### Diagnostics

MicroEMACS prints error messages on the bottom line of the screen. It prints informational messages (enclosed in square brackets '[' and ']') to distinguish them from error messages) in the same place.

MicroEMACS manipulates text in memory rather than in a file. The file on disk is not changed until you save the edited text. MicroEMACS prints a warning and prompts you whenever a command would cause it to lose changed text.

*See Also*

**commands, ed, sed**

*Notes*

Because MicroEMACS keeps text in memory, it does not work for extremely large files. It prints an error message if a file is too large to edit. If this happens when you first invoke a file, you should exit from the editor immediately. Otherwise, your file on disk will be truncated. If this happens in the middle of an editing session, however, delete text until the message disappears, then save your file and exit. Due to the way MicroEMACS works, saving a file after this error message has appeared will take more time than usual.

This version of MicroEMACS does not include many facilities available in the original EMACS display editor, which was written by Richard Stallman at M.I.T. In particular, it does not include user-defined commands or pattern search commands.

Please note, too, that MicroEMACS has a number of features that could not be documented due to time pressure during the production of this manual. We suggest that you consult the source code for MicroEMACS, which is included with COHERENT, for a full description of all that MicroEMACS can do.

The current version of MicroEMACS, including source code, is proprietary to Mark Williams Company. The code may be altered or otherwise changed for your personal use, but it may *not* be used for commercial purposes, and it may not be distributed without prior written consent by Mark Williams Company.

MicroEMACS is based upon the public domain editor by David G. Conroy.

## **mem** — Device Driver

Physical memory file

The special file `/dev/mem` allows the physical memory of the host computer to be read and written just like an ordinary file. The location where I/O will occur can be positioned to any valid byte address by a call to `lseek`. Note that `ps` and related commands use `/dev/kmem`, which manipulates the kernel's data space.

Commands may examine or change addresses in physical memory. Addresses to use when changing the system itself normally are obtained from the system load module (`/coherent`) name list, so that they always reflect the currently running version of the system.

*Files*

`/dev/mem`

*See Also*

**core, device drivers, lseek, ps**



*Diagnostics*

On an error, such as nonexistent memory location, `mem` returns -1.

**memchr()** — String Function (libc)

Search a region of memory for a character

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *memchr(region, character, n);
```

```
char *region; int character; unsigned int n;
```

`memchr` searches the first  $n$  characters in `region` for `character`. It returns the address of `character` if it is found, or NULL if it is not.

Unlike the string-search function `strchr`, `memchr` searches a region of memory. Therefore, it does not stop when it encounters a null character.

*Example*

The following example deals a random hand of cards from a standard deck of 52. The command line takes one argument, which indicates the size of the hand you want dealt. It uses an algorithm published by Bob Floyd in the September 1987 *Communications of the ACM*.

```
#include <stddef.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <time.h>
#define DECK 52

main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
 char deck[DECK], *fp;
 int deckp, n, j, t;

 if(argc != 2 ||
 52 < (n = atoi(argv[1])) ||
 1 > n) {
 printf("usage: memchr n # where 0 < n < 53\n");
 exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
 }

 /* exercise rand() to make it more random */
 srand((unsigned int)time(NULL));
 for(j = 0; j < 100; j++)
 rand();
}
```

```
deckp = 0;
/* Bob Floyd's algorithm */
for(j = DECK - n; j < DECK; j++) {
 t = rand() % (j + 1);
 if((fp = memchr(deck, t, deckp)) != NULL)
 *fp = (char)j;
 deck[deckp++] = (char)t;
}

for(t = j = 0; j < deckp; j++) {
 div_t card;

 card = div(deck[j], 13);
 t += printf("%c%c ",
 /* note useful string addressing */
 "A23456789TJQK"[card.rem],
 "HCDS"[card.quot]);

 if(t > 50) {
 t = 0;
 putchar('\n');
 }

 putchar('\n');
 return(EXIT_SUCCESS);
}
}
```

*See Also*

**strchr()**, **string functions**, **string.h**

### **memcmp()** — String Function (libc)

Compare two regions

**#include <string.h>**

**int memcmp(region1, region2, count);**

**char \*region1; char \*region2; unsigned int count;**

**memcmp** compares *region1* with *region2* character by character for *count* characters.

If every character in *region1* is identical to its corresponding character in *region2*, then **memcmp** returns zero. If it finds that a character in *region1* has a numeric value greater than that of the corresponding character in *region2*, then it returns a number greater than zero. If it finds that a character in *region1* has a numeric value less than that of the corresponding character in *region2*, then it returns a number less than zero.

For example, consider the following code:

```
char region1[13], region2[13];
strcpy(region1, "Hello, world");
strcpy(region2, "Hello, World");
memcmp(region1, region2, 12);
```

**memcmp** scans through the two regions of memory, comparing **region1[0]** with **region2[0]**, and so on, until it finds two corresponding “slots” in the arrays whose contents differ. In the above example, this will occur when it compares **region1[7]** (which contains ‘w’) with **region2[7]** (which contains ‘W’). It then compares the two letters to see which stands first in the character table used in this implementation, and returns the appropriate value.

**memcmp** differs from the string comparison routine **strcmp** in a number of ways. First, **memcmp** compares regions of memory rather than strings; therefore, it does not stop when it encounters a null character.

Also, **memcmp** can be used to compare an **int** array with a **char** array is permissible because **memcmp** simply compares areas of data.

*See Also*

**strcmp()**, **string functions**, **string.h**

### memcpy() – String Function (libc)

Copy one region of memory into another

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *memcpy(region1, region2, n);
```

```
char *region1; char *region2; unsigned int n;
```

**memcpy** copies *n* characters from *region2* into *region1*. Unlike the routines **strcpy** and **strncpy**, **memcpy** copies from one region to another. Therefore, it will not halt automatically when it encounters a null character.

**memcpy** returns *region1*.

*See Also*

**strcpy()**, **string functions**, **string.h**

*Notes*

If *region1* and *region2* overlap, the behavior of **memcpy** is undefined. *region1* should point to enough reserved memory to hold *n* bytes of data; otherwise, code or data will be overwritten.

### memmove() – String Function (libc)

Copy region of memory into area it overlaps

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *memmove(region1, region2, count);
```

```
char *region1, char *region2, unsigned int count;
```

**memmove** copies *count* characters from *region2* into *region1*. Unlike **memcpy**, **memmove** correctly copies the region pointed to by *region2* into that pointed by *region1* even if they overlap. To “correctly copy” means that the overlap does not propagate, not that the moved data stay intact. Unlike the string-copying routines **strcpy** and **strncpy**, **memmove** continues to copy even if it encounters a null character.

**memmove** returns *region1*.

*See Also*

**string functions, string.h**

*Notes*

*region1* should point to enough reserved memory to hold the contents of *region2*. Otherwise, code or data will be overwritten.

### **memok() – General Function (libc)**

Test if the arena is corrupted

**memok();**

The library function **memok** checks to see if the area has been corrupted. It returns one if the arena is sound, and zero if it has been corrupted.

*Example*

The following example purposely corrupts the arena, to demonstrate **memok**. Please note that this is not a recommended programming practice.

```
extern char *malloc();
main()
{
 char *p;
 p = malloc(2); /* get 2 bytes of memory */
 printf("Arena is %s\n", memok() ? "OK" : "bad");
 strcpy(p, "too long"); /* clobber memory */
 printf("Arena is %s\n", memok() ? "OK" : "bad");
}
```

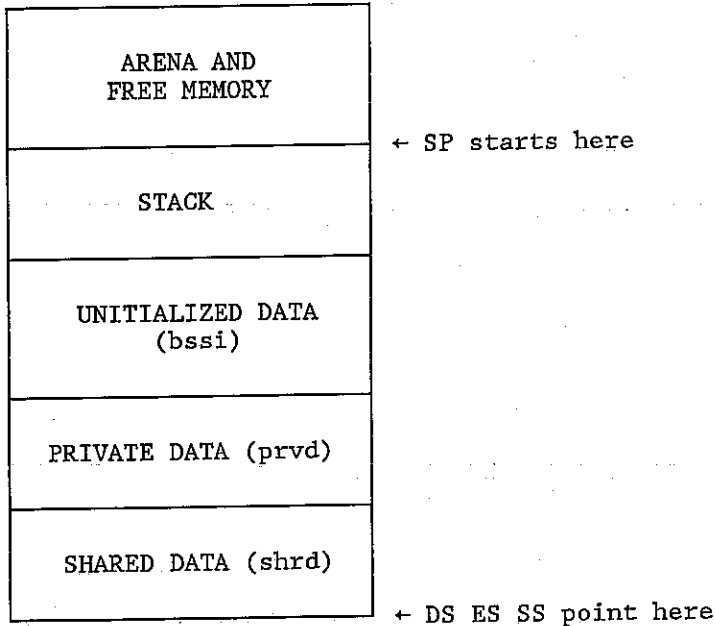
*See Also*

**arena, calloc(), general functions, malloc(), realloc()**

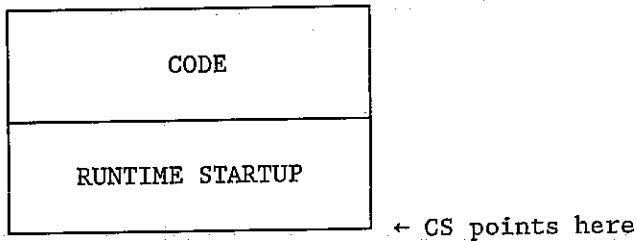
### **memory allocation – Technical Information**

The following diagram shows how COHERENT allocates memory.

Data Segment (maximum size 64 kilobytes)



Code Segment (maximum size 64 kilobytes)



Note that COHERENT can relocate the code and data segments at its own convenience and merely repoint the required segment registers.

The stack *descends* from the highest address in its space toward the static data area; new arguments are placed on the stack in its *lowest* address. Everything from the top of the stack space to the end of the data segment is free to accept dynamically allocated data.

The size of the stack cannot be altered while a program is running. By default, the runtime startup sets the stack size to two kilobytes (2,048 bytes). Note, however, that a highly recursive function may cause the stack to grow larger than two kilobytes so that it overwrites other data areas. This will cause your program to work incorrectly. To reset the amount of stack allocated to a program, use the command `fixstack`.

*See Also*

**data formats, fixstack, technical information**

### **memset() – String Function (libc)**

Fill an area with a character

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *memset(buffer, character, n);
```

```
char *buffer; int character; unsigned int n;
```

**memset** fills the first *n* bytes of the area pointed to by *buffer* with copies of *character*. It casts *character* to an **unsigned char** before filling *buffer* with copies of it.

**memset** returns the pointer *buffer*.

*See Also*

**string functions, string.h**

### **mesg – Command**

Permit/deny messages from other users

```
mesg [y] [n]
```

Normally, a user can communicate with other users by using the commands **msg** and **write**.

In certain situations, it is useful to suppress messages from other users. For example, if you are redirecting a shell script to a file and someone sends you a message, that message will land in your file. Therefore, COHERENT supplies the command **mesg**, which, lets you permit or suppress messages from other users. The argument *y* allows messages, whereas argument *n* disallows messages. With no argument, **mesg** tells you whether you can receive messages (as **yes** or **no**) without changing the message state.

*Files*

```
/dev/*
```

*See Also*

**commands, msg, write**

*Notes*

The owner-execute mode bit of the user's **tty** indicates whether messages are allowed.

### **min() – Multiple-Precision Mathematics**

Read multiple-precision integer from stdin

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void min(a)
```

```
mint *a;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **min** reads a multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) from the standard input and writes it at the address held by *a*. The base of the **mint** is indicated by the value held in the external variable **ibase**.

**min** accepts leading blanks and an optional leading minus sign; the number is terminated by the first non-legal digit.

*See Also*

multiple-precision mathematics

### minit() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Condition global or auto multiple-precision integer

**#include <mprec.h>**

**void minit(*a*)**

**mint \**a*;**

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **minit** helps to create a multiple-precision integer (or **mint**). If a new **mint** is declared to be global or automatic, you must call **minit** before using the variable. This prevents garbage values in the newly created **mint** structure from causing chaos. A **mint** conditioned by **minit** has no value; however, it may be used to receive the result of an operation.

*See Also*

multiple-precision mathematics

### mintfr() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Free a multiple-precision integer

**#include <mprec.h>**

**void mintfr(*a*)**

**mint \**a*;**

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **itom** creates a multiple-precision integer (or **mint**). You can call the function **mintfr** to free the storage used by a **mint**.

*See Also*

multiple-precision mathematics

### mitom() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Reinitialize a multiple-precision integer

**#include <mprec.h>**

**void mitom(*n*, *a*)**

**mint \**a*; int *n*;**

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mitom** reinitializes the existing multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* to *n*.

*See Also*

multiple-precision mathematics

### mkdir — Command

Create a directory

**mkdir [ -r ] *directory***

**mkdir** creates *directory*. Files or directories with the same name as *directory* must not already exist. *directory* will be empty except for the entries '.', the directory's link to it-

self, and '.', its link to its parent directory. The option **-r** creates directories recursively. For example, the command

```
mkdir -r /foo/bar/baz
```

creates directory **foo** in **/**; then creates directory **bar** in the newly created directory **foo**; and finally creates directory **baz** in the newly created directory **bar**.

*See Also*

**commands**, **rm**, **rmdir**

### *Diagnostics*

**mkdir** fails and prints an error message if you do not have permission to write into directory in which you are attempting to create a new directory, or if the directory in which you attempted to create a new directory does not exist.

## **mkfs** — Command

Make a new file system

```
/etc/mkfs filesystem proto
```

**mkfs** makes a new file system. *filesystem* names the file (normally a block special file) where the new file system will reside. The contents of the newly created file system are described in *proto*. *proto* can be either a number or a file name.

If *proto* is a number, **mkfs** creates an empty file system (containing only a root directory) of the size in blocks given by *proto*. The number of i-nodes is calculated as a percentage of this number. The command

```
/etc/mkfs /dev/fha0 2400
```

creates a file system on a high-density, 5.25-inch diskette in drive 0. If the disk is a high-density, 3.5-inch diskette, use the command:

```
/etc/mkfs /dev/fva0 2880
```

If *proto* is a file name, however, the contents of that file will be used as a prototype for modeling the new file system. This prototype file must be laid out in the following manner:

```
bootstrap_file_name file_system_name device_name
no._of_blocks no._of_i-nodes m n
%b XX XX XX
```

```
...
directory_name
 directory_name mode user_id group_id contents
```

```
...
```

```
$
```

Each line is described below.

The first line has three fields. Field 1, *bootstrap\_file\_name*, contains the name of a file that holds the boot strap, which must fit into block 0 of the disk. Field 2, *file\_system\_name*, gives the name of the file system; and field 3, *device\_name*, gives the name of file system's physical device (for example, **/dev/hd1**). Only the first six characters in



fields 2 and the first 11 in field 3 are significant; all characters after them are ignored.

The second line contains four fields. Field 1, *no\_of\_blocks*, gives the size of the file system in blocks; field 2, *no\_of\_i-nodes*, gives the number of i-nodes in the file system. Because each file or directory requires one i-node, this number represents the limit on the number of files that may be created in the file system. A ratio of seven blocks per i-node generally works well. Fields 3 and 4 control interleaving on your disk. *m* tells the system how many blocks to skip when it increments the virtual block number. *n* is the size of a "virtual cylinder". All the blocks on a virtual cylinder will be allocated before advancing to the next virtual cylinder. The value of *n* need not correspond to the size of an actual cylinder, although performance is improved when it does. *m* and *n* are specific for your hardware.

Next, the third line and following begin with %b. These list the bad blocks on your storage device. One or more block numbers may appear on each line, separated by white space. These blocks are allocated to the bad block file (i-node 1).

The remaining lines in the *proto* file define the names, modes, and contents of the directories and files in the file system. These lines are divided into fields separated by white space (blanks or tabs) as follows:

- The first field names the file or directory to be created. This field is missing on the first line, which describes the root directory of the file system.
- The second field describes the mode of the file, which is six characters long. The first character gives the file type, that is, whether the file is ordinary ('-'), directory ('d'), block special ('b'), or character special ('c'). The second character is 'u' for set user id on execution, and '-' otherwise. The third character is 'g' for set group id on execution, and '-' otherwise. Characters 4 through 6 specify permissions in octal; for example, 644 specifies read and write permission for the owner, read permission for other users from the same group, and read permission for users from other groups.  
If the above file type were a directory, subsequent files are recursively defined under that directory, until the current level of directory is terminated by a line containing a '\$' character.
- The next two fields specify the owner's numerical user id and group id.
- The last field describes file contents. For a directory, it is not needed. For an ordinary file, it is the name of a COHERENT file that will be copied into the newly created file. For block or character-special files, there are two fields that specify the numbers of the major and minor devices.

Finally, each directory's description and the entire *proto* file must terminate with dollar signs '\$'.

The *proto* file need not contain all of the above fields. However, it must contain the name of the boot block (line 1), the number of blocks and the number of i-nodes (line 2), the list of bad blocks, the name of at least one directory, and the dollar sign that ends the file.

The following example specifies a *proto* file for a high-density, 5.25-inch floppy disk; note that this floppy disk is faulty and contains a number of bad blocks:

```
/conf/boot.fha
2400 100
%b 55
%b 185 86
d--755 3 1
 coherent ---644 3 1 /coherent
 tmp d--777 3 1
 $
 bin d--755 3 1
 mail -u-755 0 1 /bin/mail
 $
 dev d--755 3 1
 tty30 c--644 0 1 3 0
 tty35 c--644 0 1 3 5
 mt0 b--600 0 1 12 0
 $
 $
```

You can use the command **badscan** to draw up the list of bad blocks on your disk and create a skeleton *proto* file.

### *See Also*

**badscan**, **chmod**, **commands**, **fsck**, **mount**, **restor**, **unmkfs**

### *Diagnostics*

Diagnostic message are generated for badly constructed *proto* files or for I/O errors on the file system.

## **mknod()** — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Create a special file

```
#include <sys/ino.h>
```

```
#include <sys/stat.h>
```

```
mknod(name, mode, addr)
```

```
char *name; int mode, addr;
```

**mknod** is the COHERENT system call that creates a special file. A *special file* is one through which a device is accessed, or a named pipe.

*mode* gives the type of special file to be created. It can be set to **IFBLK**, for a block-special device, such as a disk driver; to **IFCHR**, for a character-special device, such as a serial-port driver; or to **IFPIPE**, for a named pipe.

*address* is a parameter interpreted by the driver; it might specify the channel of a multiplexor or the unit number of a drive. Note that this is not used with named pipes.

### *See Also*

COHERENT system calls, pipe

**mknod** - Command

Make a special file or named pipe  
 /etc/mknod filename type major minor  
 /etc/mknod filename p

In the first form, **mknod** creates a *special file*, which provides access to a device by the *filename* specified. Special files are conventionally stored in the */dev* directory.

*type* can be either 'b' (for block-special file) or 'c' (for character-special file). Block-special files tend to be devices such as disks or magnetic tape, upon which COHERENT uses an elaborate buffering strategy. Character-special files are unstructured (character at a time) devices such as terminals, line printers, or communications devices. Character-special files may also be random-access devices; this circumvents system buffering, allowing transfers of arbitrary size directly between the user and the hardware.

The *major* device number uniquely identifies a device driver to COHERENT. The *minor* device number is a parameter interpreted by the driver; it might specify the channel of a multiplexor or the unit number of a drive.

The caller must be the superuser.

In the second form, **mknod** creates a pipe with the given *filename*. Named pipes can be used for communication between processes.

*Files*

*/dev/\**

*See Also*

commands, mount

**mktemp()** - General Function (libc)

Generate a temporary file name  
 char \*mktemp(pattern) char \*pattern;

**mktemp** generates a unique file name. It can be used, for example, to name intermediate data files. *pattern* must consist of a string with six X's at the end. **mktemp** replaces these X's with the five-digit process id of the requesting process and a letter that is changed for each subsequent call. **mktemp** returns *pattern*. For example, the call **mktemp("/tmp/sortXXXXXX");** might return the name */tmp/sort01234a*. It is normal practice to place temporary files in the directory */tmp*. The start of the file name identifies the originator of the file.

*See Also*

general functions, getpid(), tempnam(), tmpnam()

**mneg()** - Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Negate multiple-precision integer  
 #include <mprec.h>  
 void mneg(a, b)  
 mint \*a, \*b;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mneg** negates the value of the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a*, and writes the result into the **mint** pointed to by *b*.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

### **mnttab.h** — Header File

Structure for mount table

**#define** <**mnttab.h**>

**mnttab.h** defines the structure for the mount table maintained by the functions **/etc/mount** and **/etc/umount**.

*See Also*

**header files**, **mount**, **umount**

### **modemcap** — Technical Information

Modem description language

**modemcap** is a language for describing modems to your system. It resembles the **termcap** language in its syntax, although the two are by no means identical. With **modemcap**, you can describe your modem to any program that automatically dials out on your modem; this should spare you the tedium of continually describing your modem to one program after another.

The copy of **/etc/modemcap** included with your release of COHERENT already contains descriptions of many popular modems; the chances are good that yours has already been described for you.

Each **modemcap** command is one of three types: *flag*, *string*, or *number*. A *flag* command signals that your modem is performs a particular action or has a particular feature. A *string* command gives the command that your modem recognizes to perform a particular action. For example, many modems recognize that the string **at** means that you want to gain its attention. Finally, a *number* command sets a value or parameter for your modem, such as the highest baud rate it recognizes.

The following table describes each **modemcap** command:

| <i>Name</i> | <i>Type</i> | <i>Meaning</i>                                                    |
|-------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ad</b>   | number      | Delay after <b>as</b>                                             |
| <b>as</b>   | flag        | Numbers are in ASCII, not binary                                  |
| <b>at</b>   | string      | Attention string, forces model into command mode from online mode |
| <b>bd</b>   | number      | Highest online baud rate                                          |
| <b>bl</b>   | number      | Alternate lower baud rate                                         |
| <b>ce</b>   | string      | Command end string (required if <b>CS</b> is present)             |
| <b>cl</b>   | string      | String from modem on remote connection at <b>BL</b> baud rate     |
| <b>co</b>   | string      | String from modem on remote connection at <b>BD</b> baud rate     |
| <b>cs</b>   | string      | Command start string                                              |
| <b>de</b>   | string      | End dial command string (required if <b>DS</b> is present)        |
| <b>di</b>   | flag        | Modem has a dialer                                                |

|           |        |                                                               |
|-----------|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ds</b> | string | Start dial command string                                     |
| <b>id</b> | number | Delay after IS                                                |
| <b>is</b> | string | Initialization string, resets modem to offline, ready to dial |
| <b>hc</b> | flag   | Modem hangs up when DTR drops                                 |
| <b>hu</b> | string | Hangup command                                                |
| <b>tt</b> | flag   | Modem dials touchtone by default (or DS is set that way)      |

All commands, such as **ds** (dial command) and **hu** (hang up) will be prefixed by **cs** and ended with **ce**. If there is a common prefix and suffix, use this feature. Otherwise, each command will have to have the entire string built in.

*Example Entry*

The following gives the entry in **/etc/modemcap** for the Hayes Smartmodem 1200:

```
hy|h Hayes|Hayes Smartmodem 1200:\
:as:at=+++ :ad#3:bd#1200:bl#300:cs=AT:ce=\r:co=CONNECT:\
:c1=CONNECT:di:ds=DT :de=:is=ATQ0 V1 E1\r:id#2:\
:hc:hu=HO V0 E0 Q1:tt:
```

Each field is separated by a colon. A backslash '\ ' character at the end of each line but the last lets the description extend over more than one line.

The three fields gives three versions of the modem's name, separated by vertical bars '|'. The first version of the name is a two-character mnemonic; this must be unique. The other two versions give fuller versions of the name; these are optional.

The following explains each field in detail:

|                   |                                                                                  |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>as</b>         | Numbers are in binary mode.                                                      |
| <b>at=+++</b>     | To gain the attention of the modem, type + + +.                                  |
| <b>ad#3</b>       | Delay three milliseconds after a number.                                         |
| <b>bd#1200</b>    | Maximum baud rate is 1200.                                                       |
| <b>bl#300</b>     | Minimum baud rate is 300.                                                        |
| <b>cs=AT</b>      | To initiate a command string, type AT.                                           |
| <b>ce=\r</b>      | A command string is ended by a carriage-return character.                        |
| <b>co=CONNECT</b> | Modem returns the string <b>CONNECT</b> when it makes a connection at 1200 baud. |
| <b>c1=CONNECT</b> | Modem returns the string <b>CONNECT</b> when it makes a connection at 300 baud.  |
| <b>di</b>         | The modem can dial a telephone number.                                           |
| <b>ds=DT</b>      | Begin dialing, touch-tone mode.                                                  |
| <b>de=</b>        | No special string is needed to end the dial string.                              |

|                |                                                                                           |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>is=ATQ0</b> | To initialize the modem, type <b>ATQ0 V1 E1 &lt;return&gt;</b> .                          |
| <b>id#2</b>    | Delay two seconds after entering the initialization string.                               |
| <b>hc</b>      | The modem hangs up when DTR drops (i.e., it hangs up when the program requests a hangup). |
| <b>hu=H0</b>   | To hang up, type <b>H0 V0 E0 Q1</b> .                                                     |
| <b>tt</b>      | The modem dials touch-tone by default.                                                    |

### *Currently Recognized Modems*

The file **/etc/modemcap** includes descriptions of the following modems:

- Trailblazer, 9600 baud
- Trailblazer, 2400 baud
- Hayes Smartmodem 1200
- Avatex 2400 (clone of Hayes Smartmodem 2400)
- Prometheus Promodem 1200
- Signalman Mark XII
- Radio Shack Direct-Connect 300 Modem

### *See Also*

**technical information, termcap**

## **modf()** — General Function (libc)

Separate integral part and fraction

**double modf(real, ip) double real, \*ip;**

**modf** is the floating-point modulus function. It returns the fractional part of its argument *real*, which is a value *f* in the range  $0 \leq f < 1$ . It also stores the integral part in the **double** location referenced by *ip*. These numbers satisfy the equation  $real = f + *ip$ .

### *Example*

This example prompts for a number from the keyboard, then uses **modf** to calculate the number's fractional portion.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
 extern char *gets();
 extern double modf(), atof();
 double real, fp, ip;
 char string[64];

 for (;;) {
 printf("Enter number: ");
 if (gets(string) == 0)
 break;
 }
}
```

```

real = atof(string);
fp = modf(real, &ip);
printf("%lf is the integral part of %lf\n",
 ip, real);
printf("%lf is the fractional part of %lf\n",
 fp, real);
)
)

```

*See Also*

**atof(), ceil(), fabs(), floor(), frexp(), general function, ldexp()**

**modulus – Definition**

**Modulus** is the operation that returns the remainder of a division operation. For example, 12 modulus four equals zero, because when 12 is divided by four it leaves no remainder. The term “modulo” also refers to the product of a modulus operation; in the above example, the modulo is zero. In C, the modulus operation is indicated with a percent sign ‘%’; therefore, 12 modulus 4 is written **12%4**.

The modulus operation often is used to trim numbers to a preset range. For example, if you wanted to create a list of single-digit random numbers, you would use the command:

```
rand()%10
```

This is demonstrated by the following example.

*Example*

This example prints a list of 20 single-digit random numbers. The random-number table is seeded with a portion of the current system time.

```

main()
{
 long nowhere; /* place to put unused data */
 int counter;

 srand((int)time(&nowhere));
 for (counter = 0; counter <20; counter++)
 printf("%d\n", rand()%10);
}

```

*See Also*

**definitions, operator**

*Notes*

The implementation of C defines how a modulus operator behaves when it operates upon numbers with different signs. On the i8086,

```
10 % -4
```

yields -2. This is not mathematical modulus, which is +2.

**mon.h** — Header File

Read profile output files

```
#define <mon.h>
```

**mon.h** is used with programs that read the profile output files.

*See Also*

header files

**motd** — Technical Information

File that holds message of the day

```
/etc/motd
```

The file **motd** holds the message of the day. Its contents are displayed on every user's screen whenever he logs in.

Only the superuser can alter the contents of this file.

*See Also*

technical information

**mount()** — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Mount a file system

```
#include <sys/mount.h>
```

```
#include <sys/filsys.h>
```

```
mount (special, name, flag)
```

```
char *special, *name; int flag;
```

**mount()** is the COHERENT system call that mounts a file system. *special* names the physical device that through which the file system is accessed. *name* names the root directory of the newly mounted file system. *flag* controls the manner in which the file system is mounted, as set in header file **sys/mount.h**.

*See Also*

COHERENT system calls, fd

**mount** — Command

Mount a file system

```
/etc/mount [special directory [-ru]]
```

**mount** mounts a file system from the block special file *special* onto *directory* in the system's directory hierarchy. This operation makes the root directory of the mounted file system accessible using the specified *directory* name.

If the **-r** option is specified, the file system is read-only. This is useful for preventing inadvertent changes to precious file systems. The system will not update information such as access times if the **-r** option is used.

The **-u** option causes **mount** to write an entry into the mount table file **/etc/mstab** without actually performing the mount. This is used to note the file system.

When invoked with no arguments, **mount** summarizes the mounted file systems and where they attach.



The command **umount** unmounts a previously mounted file system.

The script **/bin/mount** calls **/etc/mount**, and provides convenient abbreviations for commonly used devices. For example,

```
mount f0
```

executes the command:

```
/etc/mount /dev/fha0 /f0
```

The system administrator should edit this script to reflect the devices used on your system.

### Files

**/etc/mtab** — Mount table

**/etc/mnttab** — Mount table

**/bin/mount** — Shell script that calls **/etc/mount**

### See Also

commands, **fsck**, **mkfs**, **mknod**, **umount**

### Diagnostics

Errors can occur if *special* or *directory* does not exist or if the user has no permissions on *special*.

The message

```
/etc/mtab older than /etc/boottime
```

indicates that **/etc/mtab** has probably been invalidated by booting the system.

Attempting to **mount** a block-special file which does not contain a COHERENT file system may have disastrous consequences. **mkfs** must be used to create a file system on a blank disk before it is mounted.

## mount.h — Header File

Define the mount table

```
#define <sys/mount.h>
```

**mount.h** defines the structures and constants that constitute the COHERENT system's mount table. It also declares functions that are used internally by routines that manipulate the mount table.

### See Also

header files

## mout() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Write multiple-precision integer to stdout

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void mout(a)
```

```
mint *a;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mout** writes the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* onto the standard output. The base of the output is set by the value of the external variable **obase**.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

### **mprec.h** – Header File

Multiple-precision arithmetic

**#include** <**mprec.h**>

The header file **mprec.h** declares a set of routines used to perform multiple-precision arithmetic. It also declares the structure **mint**, which holds multiple-precision integers.

*See Also*

**header files, multiple-precision arithmetic**

### **ms** – Technical Information

Manuscript macro package

**nroff** -**ms** file ...

The **nroff** macro package **ms** formats manuscripts. The tutorial on **nroff** describes the **ms** macros in detail.

**ms** includes the following macros:

- .AB** Begin the abstract portion of a document's title page.
- .AE** End the abstract
- .AI** Indicate author's institution on a document's title page.
- .AU** Name the author on the title page of a document.
- .B** Boldface font: set the following argument in boldface. If the argument is longer than one word, it must be enclosed in quotation marks. Anything on the line after the argument is thrown away.
- .BD** Block-centered display. Take a portion of text; do not adjust it or break it between two lines, but center it as a whole.
- .BT** Bottom title. This controls the printing of the footer title, should you want one. It uses three strings, all or any of which can be defined by the user: **LF**, for left-hand portion; **CF**, for center portion; and **RF**, for right-hand portion. **CF** has the default definition of printing the page number; the other two strings are undefined.
- .CD** Centered display. Center individually every line within a display.
- .DA** Set the date.
- .DE** Mark the end of a display. Do *not* use after the macros **.LD**, **.CD**, or **.RD**.

- .DS** Mark the beginning of a display. Do *not* use for displays longer than one page.
- .FE** Mark the end of a footnote entry.
- .FS** Mark the beginning of a footnote entry.
- .I** Italic font. Used like **.B**, above.
- .ID** Indent a display 1/2 inch before printing.
- .IP** Indent a paragraph of text before printing. This macro can take two arguments: argument 1 is used as a tag that is printed to the left of the first line of the paragraph; argument 2 indicates how far to indent the paragraph, in characters (the default is five characters, or 1/2 inch).
- .KE** Indicate the end of a *keep*, or a portion of text that must not be broken between two pages.
- .KF** Start floating keep.
- .KS** Indicate the beginning of a *keep*.
- .LD** Set a display flush left; used with displays that are longer than one page.
- .NH** Set a numbered heading. This macro takes two arguments. Argument 1 is the text of the heading; if longer than one word, it must be enclosed in quotation marks. Argument 2 is the *depth* of numbering; for example, a '4' here would yield a number of the format "1.1.1.1". No number higher than five is accepted here.
- .PP** Begin a new paragraph.
- .QE** Mark the end of a quoted paragraph.
- .QP** Quoted paragraph. Used like **.IP**, above.
- .QS** Mark the beginning of quoted text; text is indented by five characters (1/2 inch).
- .R** Roman font. Used like **.B**, above.
- .RE** Mark the end of a relative indentation.
- .RS** Mark the beginning of a relative indentation. A relative indentation is a block of text that is indented five characters (1/2 inch) more than the text before it.
- .SH** Subheading. One line of space is inserted, and the following line of text is set boldface and centered.
- .TA** Set tabs, in characters.
- .TL** Title: format the title entry on the cover page of a document.

### Files

/usr/lib/tmac.s

### See Also

**man**, **nroff**, technical information, **troff**  
*Introduction to nroff*, *Text Processing Language*, tutorial

## msg — Device Driver

Message device driver

The file `/dev/msg` is an interface to the message device driver. It is assigned major device 25 (minor device 0) and can be accessed as a character-special device.

All messaging operations are performed through the COHERENT system call `ioctl`. Each of the operations `msgctl`, `msgget`, `msgsnd`, and `msgrcv` is performed with an integer array as its parameter. The first element of the array is reserved for the return value (default, -1). Subsequent elements represent arguments. The call to `ioctl` passes `MSGCTL`, `MSGGET`, `MSGSEND`, or `MSGRCV` as the second argument, and an array of parameters as the third argument. The first argument is an open file descriptor to `/dev/msg`.

Prior to accessing the devices, an entry must be created in directory `/dev`, as follows:

```
/etc/mknod /dev/msg c 25 0
/bin/chmod 444 /dev/msg
```

### Notes

The total space allocated for message text (`NMSG * NMSC`) must be less than 64 kilobytes.

Allocation of too many message queues (`NMSQID`) or messages (`NMSG`) can exhaust kernel data space, thus preventing the system from running. Recommended safe limits are `NMSQID=16` and `NMSG=100`.

Private message queues are not supported. Message queues must be removed manually when no longer required. Queue identifiers consist of a scaled slot number plus a slot usage sequence number. Using the system call `msgctl` with the option `IPC_STAT` will obtain information on the specified slot, even when it returns an error.

To remove all message queues, compile and run the following C code:

```
msgget(0, 0); /* must do first */
for (qid = 0x100; qid < 0x4000; qid += 0x100) {
 struct msqid_ds msb;
 msb.msg_perm.seq = 0;
 msgctl(qid, IPC_STAT, &msb);
 if (msb.msg_perm.seq > 0)
 msgctl(msb.msg_perm.seq, IPC_RMID, 0);
}
```

To load `msg` use the command `drvld`.

### Files

```
/usr/include/sys/ipc.h
/usr/include/sys/msg.h
/dev/msg
```

See Also

device drivers, drvld, msgctl(), msgget(), msgop()

## msg - Command

Send a one-line message to another user

```
msg user
message
```

The command **msg** prints the one-line *message* on the screen of *user*.

The message is send as soon as you type <return> on the *message* line. If *user* is not logged in or is not known to the system, **msg** prints an error message on your screen.

See Also

commands

## msg.h - Header File

Definitions for message facility

```
#define <sys/msg.h>
```

**msg.h** defines the structures and constants used with the COHERENT message facility.

See Also

header files

## msgctl() - COHERENT System Call

Message control operations

```
#include <sys/msg.h>
```

```
int msgctl(msqid, cmd, buf)
```

```
int msqid; int cmd; struct msqid_ds *buf;
```

**msgctl** performs the message-control operations specified by *cmd*. The following *cmds* are available:

**IPC\_STAT** Place the current value of each member of the data structure associated with *msqid* into the structure pointed to by *buf*.

**IPC\_SET** Set the value of the following members of the data structure associated with *msqid* to the corresponding value found in the structure pointed to by *buf*:

```
msg_perm.uid
msg_perm.gid
msg_perm.mode /* only low 9 bits */
msg_qbytes
```

This *cmd* can only be executed by a process that has an effective-user identifier equal to either that of superuser or to the value of **msg\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *msqid*. Only super-user can raise the value of **msg\_qbytes**.

**IPC\_RMID** Remove the system identifier specified by *msqid* from the system and destroy the message queue and data structure associated with it. This *cmd* can only be executed by a process that has an effective-user iden-

tifier equal to either that of superuser or to the value of `msg_perm.uid` in the data structure associated with `msgid`.

`msgctl` fails if any of the following are true:

- `msgid` is not a valid message queue identifier. `msgctl` sets the global variable `errno` to `EINVAL`.
- `cmd` is not a valid command (`EINVAL`).
- `cmd` is equal to `IPC_STAT` and operation permission is denied to the calling process (`EACCES`).
- `cmd` is equal to `IPC_RMID` or `IPC_SET`, and the effective-user identifier of the calling process is not equal to that of superuser and it is not equal to the value of `msg_perm.uid` in the data structure associated with `msgid` (`EPERM`).
- `cmd` is equal to `IPC_SET`, an attempt is being made to increase to the value of `msg_qbytes`, and the effective-user identifier of the calling process is not equal to that of super user (`EPERM`).
- `buf` points to an illegal address (`EFAULT`).

### Return Value

Upon successful completion, `msgctl` returns zero. If a problem occurs, it returns -1 and sets `errno` to an appropriate value.

### Files

`/usr/include/sys/ipc.h`  
`/usr/include/sys/msg.h`  
`/dev/msg`

### See Also

COHERENT system calls, `msg`, `msgget()`, `msgrev()`, `msgsnd()`

### Notes

To improve portability, COHERENT implements the `msg` functions as a device driver rather than as an actual system call.

## `msgget()` — COHERENT System Call

Get message queue

```
#include <sys/msg.h>
```

```
msgget(key, msgflg)
```

```
key_t key; int msgflg;
```

`msgget` returns the message queue identifier associated with `key`, should it exist. If `key` has no message queue associated with it, `msgget` checks whether (`msgflg` & `IPC_CREAT`) is true; if it is, then `msgget` creates a message queue identifier and associated message queue and data structure for `key`.

Upon creation, the data structure associated with the new message queue identifier is initialized as follows:

- **msg\_perm.cuid**, **msg\_perm.uid**, **msg\_perm.cgid**, and **msg\_perm.gid** are set to, respectively, the effective user identifier and effective group identifier of the calling process.
- The low-order nine bits of **msg\_perm.mode** are set to the low-order nine bits of **msgflg**. These nine bits define access permissions: the top three bits specify the owner's access permissions (read, write, execute), the middle three bits specify the owning group's access permissions, and the low three bits specify access permissions for others.
- **msg\_ctime** is set to the current time.
- **msg\_qbytes** is set equal to the system limit, as defined by the kernel variable **NMSQB**.

**msgget** fails if any of the following is true. The term within parentheses gives the value to which **msgget** sets **errno**, as defined in the header file **errno.h**:

- A message queue identifier exists for *key* but operation permission as specified by the low-order nine bits of **msgflg** would not be granted (**EACCES**).
- A message queue identifier does not exist for *key* and (**msgflg** & **IPC\_CREAT**) is false (**ENOENT**).
- A message queue identifier is to be created but the number of message queue identifiers system-wide exceeds the system limit as specified in the kernel variable **NMSQID** (**ENOSPC**).
- A message queue identifier exists for *key*, but ((**msgflg** & **IPC\_CREAT**) && (**msgflg** & **IPC\_EXCL**)) is true (**EEXIST**).

### Return Value

Upon successful completion, **msgget** returns the message-queue identifier, which is always a non-negative integer. Otherwise, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### Files

```
/usr/include/sys/ipc.h
/usr/include/sys/msg.h
/dev/msg
```

### See Also

**COHERENT** system calls, **msg**, **msgctl()**, **msgrcv()**, **msgsnd()**

### Notes

To improve portability, the **msg** functions are presently implemented as a device driver rather than as an actual system call.

## msgrcv() — COHERENT System Call

Receive a message

```
#include <sys/msg.h>
```

```
msgrcv(msqid, msgp, msgsz, msgtyp, msgflg)
```

```
int msqid, msgsz, msgflg; struct msgbuf *msgp; long msgtyp;
```

**msgrcv** reads a message from the queue associated with the queue identifier *msqid* and writes it in the structure pointed to by *msgp*. This structure consists of the following members:

```
long mtype; /* message type */
char mtext[]; /* message text */
```

*mtype* is the received message's type, as specified by the sending process. *mtext* is the text of the message. *msgsz* gives the size of *mtext*, in bytes. The received message is truncated to *msgsz* bytes if it is larger than *msgsz* and (*msgflg* & **MSG\_NOERROR**) is true. The truncated portion of the message is lost, with no indication given to the calling process.

*msgtyp* specifies the type of message requested, as follows:

- If *msgtyp* equals 0L, the first message on the queue is received.
- If *msgtyp* is greater than 0L, the first message of type *msgtyp* is received.
- If *msgtyp* is less than 0L, the first message of the lowest type that is less than or equal to the absolute value of *msgtyp* is received.

*msgflg* specifies the action taken if a message of the desired type is not on the queue, as follows:

- If (*msgflg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true, the calling process immediately returns -1 and sets **errno** to **ENOMSG**.
- If (*msgflg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is false, the calling process suspends execution until one of the following occurs:
  1. A message of the desired type is placed on the queue.
  2. *msqid* is removed from the system. When this occurs, **msgrcv** sets **errno** to **EDOM**.
  3. The calling process receives a signal that is to be caught. In this case, a message is not received and the calling process resumes execution in the manner prescribed in **signal**.

**msgrcv** fails and no message is received if any of the following is true:

- *msqid* is not a valid message queue identifier. **msgrcv** sets **errno** to **EINVAL**.
- Operation permission is denied to the calling process (**EACCES**).
- *msgsz* is less than zero (**EINVAL**).
- *mtext* is greater than *msgsz* and (*msgflg* & **MSG\_NOERROR**) is false (**E2BIG**).
- The queue does not contain a message of the desired type and (*msgtyp* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true (**ENOMSG**).
- *msgp* points to an illegal address (**EFAULT**).

Upon successful completion, the following actions are taken with respect to the data structure associated with *msqid*:



- `msg_qnum` is decremented by one.
- `msg_lrpid` is set equal to the process identifier of the calling process.
- `msg_rtime` is set equal to the current time.

### Return Values

If `msgrev` returns due to the receipt of a signal, it returns -1 and sets `errno` to `EINTR`. If it returns due to the removal of `msgid` from the system, it returns -1 and sets `errno` to `EDOM`. Upon successful completion, `msgrev` returns a value equal to the number of bytes written into `mtext`. Otherwise, it returns -1 and sets `errno` to an appropriate value.

### Files

`/usr/include/sys/ipc.h`  
`/usr/include/sys/msg.h`  
`/dev/msg`

### See Also

COHERENT system calls, `msg`, `msgctl()`, `msgget()`, `msgsnd()`

### Notes

To improve portability, the COHERENT system implements the `msg` as a device driver rather than as an actual system call.

## msgs — Command

Read messages intended for all COHERENT users  
`msgs [-q] [number]`

`msgs` selects and displays messages that are intended to be read by all COHERENT users. Messages are mailed to the login `msgs`. They should contain information meant to be read once by most users of the system.

The command `msgs` normally is in a user's `.profile`, so that it is executed every time he logs in. When invoked, it prompts the user with the identifier of the user who sent the message and the message's size. `msgs` then asks the user if he wishes to see the rest of the message. The user should reply with one of the following:

|                             |                                                      |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>y</code>              | Display the message.                                 |
| <code>&lt;return&gt;</code> | Display the message.                                 |
| <code>n</code>              | Skip this message and go to the next one.            |
| <code>.</code>              | Redisplay the last message.                          |
| <code>q</code>              | Quit <code>msgs</code> .                             |
| <code>number</code>         | Display message <code>number</code> ; then continue. |

Long messages are broken into screen-length portions: a portion is displayed, and `msgs` then waits for the user's response before continuing. The valid responses are `<return>`, `/`, `<space>`, and `q`, which mean display next page, display next half page, display next line, and quit, respectively.

`msgs` writes into the file `$(HOME)/.msgsrc` the number of the next message the user will see when he invokes `msgs`. `msgs` keeps all messages in the directory `/usr/msgs`; each message is named with a sequential number, which indicates its message number. The file `/usr/msgs/bounds` contains the low and high numbers of the messages in the directory; `msgs` determines whether a user has not read a message by comparing the in-

formation in  $\$(HOME)/.msgsrc$  with that in  $/usr/msgsrc/bounds$ . If the contents of  $/usr/msgsrc/bounds$  are incorrect, the problem can be fixed by removing that file; **msgsrc** will create a new **bounds** file the next time it is run.

**msgsrc** also accepts the following command-line options:

**-q** Query whether there are messages; print "There are new messages" if there are, and "No new messages" if not. The command **msgsrc -q** is often used in profile scripts.

*number* Start at message *number* rather than at the message recorded in  $\$(HOME)/.msgsrc$ . If *number* is greater than zero, then start with that message; if *number* is less than zero, then begin *number* messages before the one recorded in  $\$(HOME)/.msgsrc$ .

### Files

$/usr/spool/mail/msgsrc$  — Mail messages file

$/usr/msgsrc/[1-9]*$  — Data base

$/usr/msgsrc/bounds$  — File that contains message number bounds

$\$(HOME)/.msgsrc$  — Number of next message to be presented

### See Also

**commands**, **mail**, **scat**

## **msgsnd()** — COHERENT System Call

Send a message

```
#include <sys/msg.h>
```

```
msgsnd(msqid, msgp, msgsz, msgflg)
```

```
int msqid, msgsz, msgflg; struct msgbuf *msgp;
```

The COHERENT system call **msgsnd** sends a message to the queue associated with the message queue identifier *msqid*. *msgp* points to a structure that contains the message. This structure consists of the following members:

```
long mtype; /* message type */
char mtext[]; /* message text */
```

*mtype* is a positive long integer that the receiving process uses to select messages. *mtext* is a string that is *msgsz* bytes long. *msgsz* can range from zero to a system-imposed limit as specified in the kernel variable **NMSC**.

*msgflg* specifies the action to be taken if one or more of the following are true:

- The number of bytes already on the queue is equal to **msg\_qbytes**.
- The number of messages on all queues system-wide equals the system limit specified in the kernel variable **NMSG**.

*msgflg* can specify any of the following actions:

- If (*msgflg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true, the message is not sent and the calling process returns immediately.
- If (*msgflg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is false, the calling process suspends execution until one of the following occurs:

1. The condition responsible for the suspension no longer exists, in which case the message is sent.
2. *msqid* is removed from the system. When this occurs, **msgsnd** sets **errno** to **EDOM** and returns -1.
3. The calling process receives a signal that is to be caught. In this case, the message is not sent and the calling process resumes execution in the manner prescribed in **signal**.

**msgsnd** fails and no message is sent if one or more of the following are true:

- *msqid* is not a valid message queue identifier. **msgsnd** sets **errno** to **EINVAL**.
- Operation permission is denied to the calling process (**EACCES**).
- *mtype* is less than one (**EINVAL**).
- The message cannot be sent for one of the reasons cited above and (*msgflg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true (**EAGAIN**).
- *msgsz* is less than zero or greater than the system-imposed limit (**EINVAL**).
- *msgp* points to an illegal address (**EFAULT**).

Upon successful completion, the following actions are taken with respect to the data structure associated with *msqid*.

- **msg\_qnum** is incremented by one.
- **msg\_lspid** is set equal to the process ID of the calling process.
- **msg\_stime** is set equal to the current time.

### Return Values

If **msgsnd** return because it has received a signal, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to **EINTR**. If it returns because *msqid* was removed from the system, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to **EDOM**.

Upon successful completion, **msgsnd** returns zero. Otherwise, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### Files

**/usr/include/sys/ipc.h**  
**/usr/include/sys/msg.h**  
**/dev/msg**

### See Also

**COHERENT** system calls, **msg**, **msgctl()**, **msgget()**, **msgrcv()**

### Notes

To improve portability, the **msg** functions are presently implemented as a device driver rather than as an actual system call.

**msig.h** – Header File

Machine-dependent signals

**#include** <**signal.h**>

The header file **msig.h** defines the machine-dependent signals that the COHERENT system uses to communicate with its processes. The header file **signal.h** declares constants for the machine-independent signals, and includes **msig.h**.

*See Also*header files, **signal.h****msqrt()** – Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Compute square root of multiple-precision integer

**#include** <**mprec.h**>**void msqrt**(*a*, *b*, *r*)**mint** \**a*, \**b*, \**r*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **msqrt** sets the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *b* to the integral portion of the positive square root of the **mint** pointed to by *a*. It sets the **mint** pointed to by *r* to the remainder. The value pointed to by *a* must not be negative. The result of the operation is defined by the condition

$$a = b * b + r.$$

*See Also*

multiple-precision mathematics

**msub()** – Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Subtract multiple-precision integers

**#include** <**mprec.h**>**void msub**(*a*, *b*, *c*)**mint** \**a*, \**b*, \**c*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **msub** subtracts the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* from the **mint** pointed to by *b*, and writes the result into the **mint** pointed to by *c*.

*See Also*

multiple-precision mathematics

**mtab.h** – Header File

Currently mounted file systems

**#include** <**mtab.h**>

The file **/etc/mtab** contains an entry for each file system mounted by the **mount** command. This does not include the root file system, which is already mounted when the system boots.

Both the **mount** and **umount** commands use the following structure, defined in **mtab.h**. It contains the name of each special file mounted, the directory upon which it is

mounted, and any flags passed to **mount** (such as read only).

```
#define MNAMSIZ 32
struct mtab {
 char mt_name[MNAMSIZ];
 char mt_special[MNAMSIZ];
 int mt_flag;
};
```

### *Files*

/etc/mtab  
<mtab.h>

### *See Also*

header files, **mount**, **umount**

## **mtioctl.h** – Header File

Magnetic-tape I/O control  
#define <sys/mtioctl.h>

**mtioctl.h** defines constants and structures used by routines that control magnetic-tape I/O.

### *See Also*

header files

## **mtoi()** – Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Convert multiple-precision integer to integer  
#include <mprec.h>  
int mtoi(a)  
mint \*a;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mtoi** returns an integer equal to the value of the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a*. The value pointed to by *a* should be in the range allowable for a signed integer.

### *See Also*

multiple-precision mathematics

## **mtos()** – Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Convert multiple-precision integer to string  
#include <mprec.h>  
char \*mtos(a) mint \*a;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mtos** converts the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* to a string. It returns a pointer to the string it creates. The string is allocated by **malloc**, and may be freed by **free**. The base of the string is set by the value of the external variable **obase**.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

### **mtype()** – General Function (libc)

Return symbolic machine type

**#include <mtype.h>**

**char \*mtype(*type*)**

**int *type*;**

**mtype** takes an integer machine *type* and returns the address of a string that contains the symbolic name of the machine. The header file **mtype.h** defines the possible machine types. For example,

```
mtype(M_PDP11)
```

returns the address of the string **PDP-11**.

*Files*

**<mtype.h>**

*See Also*

**general functions, l.out.h, ld**

*Diagnostics*

**mtype** returns **NULL** to indicate that it doesn't recognize the type of machine requested.

### **mtype.h** – Header File

List processor code numbers

**#include <mtype.h>**

The header file **mtype.h** assigns a code number to each of the processors supported by Mark Williams C compilers and operating systems. These include the Intel i8086, i8088, i80186, and i80286; the Zilog Z8001 and Z8002; the DEC PDP-11 and VAX; the IBM 370, and the Motorola 68000.

*See Also*

**header file**

### **mult()** – Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Multiply multiple-precision integers

**#include <mprec.h>**

**void mult(*a, b, c*)**

**mint \**a, \*b, \*c*;**

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mult** multiplies the multiple-precision integers (or **mint**s) pointed to by *a* and *b*, and writes the product into the **mint** pointed to by *c*.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

## multiple-precision mathematics — Overview

The COHERENT system includes the library **libmp**, whose routines allow you to perform multiple precision arithmetic. These functions manipulate a data structure called a **mint**, or “multiple-precision integer,” which the header file **mprec.h** defines as follows:

```
typedef struct {
 unsigned len;
 char *val;
} mint;
```

You should not depend on the details of this structure, because on some machines a different representation may be more efficient. Using the listed functions is always safe.

The following gives the multiple-precision routines:

|                 |                                                     |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>gcd()</b>    | Set variable to greatest common divisor             |
| <b>ispos()</b>  | Return if variable is positive or negative          |
| <b>itom()</b>   | Create a multiple-precision integer                 |
| <b>madd()</b>   | Add multiple-precision integers                     |
| <b>ncmp()</b>   | Compare multiple-precision integers                 |
| <b>ncpy()</b>   | Copy a multiple-precision integer                   |
| <b>mdiv()</b>   | Divide multiple-precision integers                  |
| <b>min()</b>    | Read multiple-precision integer from stdin          |
| <b>mint()</b>   | Condition global or auto multiple-precision integer |
| <b>mintfr()</b> | Free a multiple-precision integer                   |
| <b>mitom()</b>  | Reinitialize a multiple-precision integer           |
| <b>mneg()</b>   | Negate multiple-precision integer                   |
| <b>mout()</b>   | Write multiple-precision integer to stdout          |
| <b>msqrt()</b>  | Compute square root of multiple-precision integer   |
| <b>msub()</b>   | Subtract multiple-precision integers                |
| <b>mtoi()</b>   | Convert multiple-precision integer to integer       |
| <b>mtos()</b>   | Convert multiple-precision integer to string        |
| <b>mult()</b>   | Multiple multiple-precision integers                |
| <b>mvfree()</b> | Free multiple-precision integer                     |
| <b>pow()</b>    | Raise multiple-precision integer to power           |
| <b>rpow()</b>   | Raise multiple-precision integer to power           |
| <b>sdiv()</b>   | Divide multiple-precision integers                  |
| <b>smult()</b>  | Multiply multiple-precision integers                |
| <b>spow()</b>   | Raise multiple-precision integer to power           |
| <b>xgcd()</b>   | Extended greatest-common-divisor function           |
| <b>zerop()</b>  | Indicate if multi-precision integer is zero         |

**itom()** creates a new **mint**, initializes it to the signed integer value  $n$ , and returns a pointer to it. Storage used by a **mint** created with **itom** may be reclaimed using **mintfr()**.

A **mint** that already exists may be reinitialized by **mitom()**, which sets  $a$  to the value  $n$ . If the **mint** was declared as a global or automatic variable, it must be conditioned before first use by **mint()**, which prevents garbage values in the **mint** structure from causing chaos. A **mint** conditioned by **mint()** has no value; however, it may be used to receive the result of an operation. For **mints** automatic to a function, **mvfree()** should be used

before the function is exited to free the storage used by the `val` field of the `mint` structure. Otherwise, this storage will never be reclaimed.

`madd()`, `msub()`, and `mult()` set `c` to the sum, difference, or product of `a` and `b`. `mdiv` divides `a` by `b` and writes the quotient and remainder in `q` and `r`. `b` must not be zero. The results of the operation are defined by the following conditions:

1.  $a = q * b + r$
2. The sign of `r` equals the sign of `q`
3. The absolute value of `r` < the absolute value of `b`.

`smult()` is like `mult()`, except the second argument is an integer in the range  $0 \leq n \leq 127$ . `sddiv()` is like `mdiv()`, except the second argument is an integer in the range  $1 \leq n \leq 128$ , and the remainder argument points to an `int` instead of a `mint()`.

`pow()` sets `c` to `a` raised to the `b` power reduced modulo `m`. `rpow()` sets `c` to `a` raised to the `b` power. `spow()` is like `rpow()`, except the exponent is an integer. In no case may the exponent be negative.

`mcopy()` sets `b` equal to `a`. `mneg()` sets `b` equal to negative `a`.

`msqrt()` sets `b` to the integral portion of the positive square root of `a`; `r` is set to the remainder. `a` must not be negative. The result of the operation is defined by the condition

$$a = b * b + r$$

`gcd()` sets `c` to the greatest common divisor of `a` and `b`. `xgcd()` is an extended gcd routine that sets `g` to the greatest common divisor of `a` and `b`, and sets `r` and `s` so the relation

$$g = a * r + b * s$$

holds. For `xgcd()`, `r`, `s` and `g` must all be distinct.

`mints` may be compared with `ncmp()`, which returns a signed integer less than, equal to, or greater than zero according to whether `a` is less than, equal to, or greater than `b`. `ispos()` returns true (nonzero) if `a` is not negative, false (zero) if `a` is negative. `zerop` returns true if `a` is zero, false otherwise.

`mtoi()` returns an integer equal to the value of `a`. `a` should be in the allowable range for a signed integer.

The external integers `ibase` and `obase` govern the I/O and ASCII conversion routines. Allowable bases run from two to 16. Permissible digits are 0 through 9 and A through F (lower-case letters are not allowed). `min` reads a `mint` in base `ibase` from the standard input and sets `a` to that value. Leading blanks and an optional leading minus sign are allowed; the number is terminated by the first non-legal digit. `mout()` outputs `a` on the standard output in base `obase`. `mtos()` performs the same conversion as `mout()`, but the result is placed in a character string instead of being output; a pointer to the string is returned. The string is actually allocated by `malloc()`, and may be freed by `free()`.

`mzero()` and `mone()` point to `mints` with values zero and one. `mminint()` and `mmaxint()` point to `mints` containing the minimum and maximum values that will fit in a signed integer. These constants should never be used as the result of an operation.



All the necessary declarations for these constants and for the library functions are contained in the header file `mprec.h`. They need not be repeated.

To link `mp` modules with an executable object, use the argument `-lmp` with the `cc` or `ld` commands.

### Example

The following example converts a string into a multi-precision integer.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <mprec.h>
#include <ctype.h>

/*
 * "ibase" is an int which contains the input base used by "stom".
 * It should be between 2 and 16.
 */
int ibase = 10;

/*
 * stom() reads in a number in base ibase from string 'a' and returns
 * pointer to multiple-precision integer.
 */
mint *stom(s)
register char *s;
{
 char cval;
 mint c = {1, &cval};
 register int ch;
 char mifl = 0; /* leading minus flag */
 static mint number;

 mcopy(mzero, &number); /* set number to zero */
 if ((ch = *s) == '-') { /* skip leading '-' */
 mifl = 1;
 ch = *++s;
 }

 /* scan thru string 's', building result in "number" */
 while (isascii(ch) && isdigit(ch)) {
 cval = (isdigit(ch) ? ch - '0' : ch - 'A');
 smult(&number, ibase, &number);
 madd(&number, &c, &number);
 ch = *++s;
 }

 if (mifl) /* adjust sign of a "number" */
 mneg(&number, &number);
 return(&number);
}
```

```

/* simple test for "stom" */
main()
{
 char buffer[80];
 printf("Input string ? ");
 gets(buffer);
 mout(stom(buffer)); /* Print in stdout multiple-precision int */
}

```

**Files**

<mprec.h>  
/usr/lib/libmp.a

**See Also**

bc, dc, libraries, malloc, mprec.h

**Diagnostics**

On any error, such as division by zero, running out of space or taking the square root of a negative number, an appropriate message is printed on the standard error stream and the program exits with a nonzero status.

**mv — Command**

Rename files or directories

**mv** [-f] *oldfile* [*newfile*]

**mv** [-f] *file ... directory*

**mv** renames files. In the first form above, it changes the name of *oldfile* to *newfile*. If *newfile* already exists, **mv** replaces it with the file being moved; if not, **mv** creates it. If *newfile* is a directory, **mv** places *oldfile* under that directory.

In the second form, **mv** moves each *file* so that it resides under *directory*. If a file with the new name exists but is unwritable, **mv** will not delete it unless the -f option is specified.

**mv** will not copy directories between devices and will not remove directories that occupy the destination of the command.

Normally, **mv** creates a link to the old file with the new file and then removes the old file. If it cannot create the link (e.g., because the new file is on a different file system than the old), **mv** performs a copy and then removes the old file.

**See Also**

commands, cp, ln

**Notes**

**mv** tests the validity of directory moves by means of search permission. The superuser always has search permission and thus can use **mv** incorrectly.

## mvfree() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Free multiple-precision integer

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void mvfree(a)
```

```
mint *a;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function `mvfree` frees the space allocated to an automatic multiple-precision integer (or `mint`). You should call `mvfree` before exiting the function that uses the `mint`, or the storage used by the `val` field of the `mint` structure will never be reclaimed.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

## N

### **n.out.h** — Header File

Define **n.out** file structure  
**#define** <**n.out.h**>

**n.out.h** defines the **n.out** file structure. This file structure is used to encode executable files; it is the same as the standard COHERENT form **l.out**, except that it uses 32-bit addressing. This file structure is used internally in COHERENT, but is not available under the COHERENT C compiler or assembler.

*See Also*

header files, **l.out**

### **ncheck** — Command

Print file names corresponding to i-numbers  
**ncheck** [ *i number ...* ] [ **-as** ] *filesystem ...*

An *i-number* identifies an i-node. **ncheck** generates a list of file names by i-number for each *filesystem*, which should be the name of a device special file that contains a proper COHERENT file system. Using the raw device generally decreases the time **ncheck** requires to do its work.

The output is in the unsorted traversal order of the file system hierarchy. **ncheck** distinguishes directories from files by suffixing **/'** to directory names.

Under the **-i** option, **ncheck** prints the file name corresponding to each i-number *number* in the given list. Under the **-a** option, **ncheck** prints only the names of special files and set user-ID mode files; this option allows the system administrator to ascertain quickly whether these files represent possible security breaches.

*See Also*

commands, i-node

#### *Diagnostics*

**ncheck** appends **'??'** to the generated file name if it cannot find the proper parent structure while retrieving the file-name information. It represents any loops detected in the file name by the characters **'...'**. Extremely addled file systems may generate other reasonably self-explanatory diagnostics.

### **newgrp** — Command

Change to a new group  
**newgrp** *group*

**newgrp** changes the user's group identification to the specified *group*, if access is permitted. The file **/etc/group** determines group access. Group access may be unrestricted, or open to all users with specific exceptions, or restricted to certain users via a password.

The shell **sh** executes **newgrp** directly.

*Files*

*/etc/group* — Give group access

*See Also*

**commands, group, sh**

*Diagnostics*

If **newgrp** succeeds, no diagnostic is printed.

*Notes*

Interruption of **newgrp** can result in the user being logged off.

**newusr** — Command

Add new user to COHERENT system

*/etc/newusr login "User Name" parentdir*

**newusr** adds *login* to the user base of the COHERENT system. It adds an entry for *login* to the password file */etc/passwd*. *parentdir* is the parent of the directory *parentdir/login* which is created as the home directory for the new user. *User Name* is the human name of the person for whom *login* is being created.

For example, the command

```
/etc/newusr fwb "Fred Butzen" /v
```

creates new user Fred Butzen, with login **fwb** and home directory */v/fwb*.

*Files*

*/etc/group* — User groups

*/etc/passwd* — User passwords

*/parentdir/user* — User home directory

*/usr/spool/mail/user* — User mailbox

*See Also*

**commands, passwd**

*Diagnostics*

**newusr** complains if an entry for *user* already exists in the password file.

*Notes*

Only the superuser can add new users to the system with **newusr**.

**nlist()** — General Function (libc)

Symbol table lookup

```
#include <l.out.h>
```

```
int nlist(file, nlp)
```

```
char *file;
```

```
struct nlist *nlp;
```

**nlist** searches the name list (symbol table) of the load module *file* for each symbol in the array pointed to by *nlp*. For example, the command **ps** uses this routine on the system load module (*/coherent*) to obtain the addresses of system tables in memory (*/dev/mem*).

*nlp* points to an array of **nlist** structures, terminated by a structure with a null string as its **n\_name** member. The header file **l.out.h** defines **nlist** as follows:

```
#define NCPLN16
struct nlist {
 char n_name[NCPLN];
 int n_type;
 unsigned n_value;
};
```

The caller should set the entry **n\_name**; **nlist** will fill in the other entries. **nlist** sets both **n\_type** and **n\_value** to zero if the symbol is not found.

### Files

**l.out.h**

### See Also

general functions, **l.out.h**, **nm**, **strip**

### Diagnostics

If *file* is not a load module or has had its symbol table stripped, all returned **n\_type** and **n\_value** entries will be zero.

## nm — Command

Print a program's symbol table

**nm** [ **-adgnprtux** ] *file* ...

The command **nm** prints the symbol table of each *file*. Each *file* argument must be a COHERENT object module or an object library built with the archiver **ar**. If an argument is a library, **nm** prints the symbol table for each member of the library.

The first argument selects one of several options. It is optional; if present, it must begin with '-'. The options are as follows:

- a** Print all symbols. Normally, **nm** prints names that are in C-style format and ignores symbols with names inaccessible from C programs.
- d** Print only defined symbol.
- g** Print only global symbols.
- n** Sort numerically rather than alphabetically. **nm** uses unsigned compares when sorting symbols with this option.
- o** Append the file name to the beginning of each output line.
- p** Print symbols in the order in which they appear within the symbol table.
- r** Sort in reverse-alphabetical order.
- u** Print only undefined symbols.

By default, **nm** sorts symbol names alphabetically. Each symbol is followed by its value and its segment.

*See Also*

**cc**, **commands**, **ld**, **size**, **strip**

### **notmem()** — General Function (libc)

Check if memory is allocated

```
int notmem(ptr);
```

```
char *ptr;
```

**notmem** checks if a memory block has been allocated by **calloc**, **malloc**, or **realloc**. *ptr* points to the block to be checked.

**notmem** searches the arena for *ptr*. It returns one if *ptr* is not a memory block obtained from **malloc**, **calloc**, or **realloc**, and zero if it is.

#### *Example*

The following example prints a string, and frees it if it was **malloc**'d.

```
#include <sys/malloc.h>

pfree(s)
char *s;
{
 printf("%s\n", s);
 if(!notmem(s))
 free(s);
}

main()
{
 char *malloced_string;
 char notmalloced_string[50];

 if ((malloced_string = malloc(50)) == NULL)
 exit(1);

 strcpy(malloced_string, "This is a malloc'd string");
 strcpy(notmalloced_string, "This is not a malloc'd string");

 pfree(malloced_string);
 pfree(notmalloced_string);
}
```

*See Also*

**arena**, **calloc()**, **free()**, **general functions**, **malloc()**, **realloc()**, **setbuf()**

### **nroff** — Command

Text processor

```
nroff [option ...] [file ...]
```

**nroff** processes each given *file*, or the standard input if none is specified, and prints the formatted result on the standard output. The input must contain formatting instructions as well as the text to be processed.

Basic commands provide for such things as setting line length, page length, and page offset, generating vertical and horizontal motions, indentation, filling and adjusting output lines, and centering. The great flexibility of **nroff** lies in its acceptance of user-defined macros to control almost all higher-level formatting. For example, the formation of paragraphs, header and footer areas, and footnotes must all be implemented by the user via macros.

The following summarizes the commands and options that can be used with **nroff**. Four types of commands and options are described: (1) command line options; (2) **nroff**'s basic commands (also called *primitives*); (3) escape sequences that can be used with **nroff**; and (4) **nroff**'s dedicated number registers, and what information each one keeps.

### *Command-line Options*

Command-line options may be listed in any order. They are as follows:

- d** Debugging mode.
- i** Read from the standard input after reading the given *files*.
- mname** Include the macro file */usr/lib/tmac.name* in the input stream.
- nN** Number the first page of output *N*.
- raN** Set number register *a* to the value *N*.

### *Primitives*

The following lists the basic commands, or *primitives*, that are built into **nroff**. These primitives can be assembled into macros, or can be written directly into the text of your document.

- .ad** Enter adjust mode: that is, insert white space between words to create right-justified output.
- .af R X** Assign format *X* to number register *R*. The assigned format may be one of the following:
  - 1** Arabic numerals
  - i** Lower-case Roman numerals
  - I** Upper-case Roman numerals
  - a** Lower-case alphabetic characters
  - A** Upper-case alphabetic characters
- .am XX** Append the following to macro *XX*. Used like **.de**, below.
- .as XX** Append the following to string *XX*. Used like **.ds**, below.
- .bp** Begin a new page.
- .br** Break; print any fraction of a line of text that is hidden in a buffer before beginning formatting of new text.



- .ce** *N* Center *N* lines of text; the default is one.
- .ch** *XX N* Change the location of the trap for macro *XX* to location *N*. Used like command **.wh**, below.
- .da** *X* Divert and append the following text into macro *X*. A diversion is ended by a **.da** command that has no argument.
- .de** *X* Define macro *X*. Macro definition is ended by a line that contains only two periods “..”.
- .di** *X* Divert the following text into macro *X*. Diversion is ended by a **.da** command that has no argument.
- .ds** *X* Define string *X*.
- .el** *action*  
Executed when the test in an **.ie** command fails; otherwise, it is ignored. This command must be used with an **.ie** command.
- .ev** *N* Change the environment. When followed by 0, 1, 2, the command *pushes* that environment; when used without an argument, the command *pops* the present environment and returns to the previous environment.
- .fi** Enter fill mode.
- .ft** *X* Change to font *X*. **nroff** recognizes **R**, **B**, and **I**, for Roman, bold, and italic, respectively.
- .ie** *condition action*  
This command tests to see if *condition* is true; if true, it then executes *action*; otherwise, it performs the action introduced by an **.el** command. This command must be used with an **.el** command.
- .if** *condition action*  
This command tests to see if *condition* is true; if so, then *action* is executed; otherwise, *action* is ignored. The command **.if o** applies if the page number is odd, and the command **.if e** applies if the page number is even. The command **.if n** applies if the text is processed by **nroff**, and the command **.if t** applies if the text is processed by **troff**.
- .in** *NX* Change the normal indentation to *N* units of *X* scale. *X* can be **u** or **i**, for *machine units* or *inches*, respectively. If *N* is used without *X*, **nroff** assumes the indentation to be given in number of character-widths (in picas, or tenths of an inch). Default indentation is zero.
- .ll** *NX* Set the line length. Used like the **.in** command, above.
- .ls** *X* Leave spaces; insert *X* vertical spaces after each line of text. Default is zero.
- .lt** *NX* Length of title. Used like the **.in** command, above.
- .na** Enter no-adjust mode. Line lengths are not changed.

- .ne NX**  
Confirm that at least *N* portions of *X* units of measure of vertical space are needed before the next trap. If this amount of space is not available, then move the text to the top of the next page. *X* can be **i** or **v**, for inches or vertical spaces, respectively. This command is used in display macros and in paragraph macros to help prevent widows and orphans.
- .nf** Enter no-fill mode; no right justification is performed, although line lengths are changed to approximate uniform line length.
- .nh** Turn off hyphenation. **nroff** hyphenates according to built-in algorithms that are correct most of the time, but not always.
- .nr X N1 N2**  
Set number register *X* to value *N1*; set its default increment/decrement to *N2*; for example, **.nr X 2 3** sets number register *X* to 2, and sets its default increment to 3.
- .pl NX**  
Set the page length to *N*. The unit of measure *X* can be **V** or **i**, for vertical spaces (sixths of an inch) or inches, respectively. The default unit of measure is vertical spaces.
- .pn N** Set the page number to *N*.
- .po NX**  
Set the default page offset to *N*. The unit of measure *X* can be set to **i**, for inches. The default unit of measure is number of characters.
- .rm XX** Remove macro or string *XX*.
- .rn XX YY**  
Change the name of a macro or string from *XX* to *YY*.
- .rr X** Remove register *X*.
- .so file** Open *file*, read its contents, and process them. When the end of *file* is reached, resume process the contents of the present file.
- .sp |NX**  
Space down *N*. The unit of measure *X* can be **i**, for inches, with the default unit of measure being vertical spaces, or sixths of an inch. The optional vertical bar '|' indicates that *N* is an absolute value; for example, **.sp |1.5i** means to move to 1.5 inches below the top of the page, whereas **.sp 1.5i** means to move down 1.5 inches from the present position.
- .ta NX ...**  
Set the tab to *N*. The unit of measure *X* can be set to **i**, for inches; the default unit of measure is number of characters, or tenths of an inch. A tab setting, of course, is for an absolute, not a relative, value. If more than one tab setting is defined, the first defines the first tabulation character on a text line, the second defines the second tabulation character, etc. Any undefined tabulations are thrown away.

- .tc X** Fill any unused space within a tabulation field with the character *X*.
- .ti NX** Temporary indent; indent only the next line. Used like the **.in** command, above.
- .tl 'left'center'right'**  
Set a three-part title, with *left* being set flush left, *center* being centered on the line, and *right* being set flush right. Note the use of the apostrophes to separate the fields; the apostrophes for an undefined field must still be present, or a syntax error will be generated.
- .tm message**  
Print *message* on the standard error device. This is often used with **.if** or **.ie** commands to indicate an error condition.
- .vs Np**  
Reset the normal vertical spacing to *N* points *p*. One point equals 1/72 of an inch; the default setting is 12 points, or 1/6 of an inch.
- .wh NX action**  
Set a trap to perform *action* when point *N* is reached on every formatted page. If *N* is negative, it is measured up from the bottom of the page. The unit of measure *X* may be *i* or *v*, for inches or number of vertical lines, respectively; the default unit of measure is *v*.

### Escape Sequences

The following lists **nroff**'s escape sequences, or commands that suspend or work around the normal operation of **nroff**. All escape sequences are introduced by a backslash character **\**.

- \e** Set a backslash character in the output text.
- \\** Output a backslash character. This can be used to print a literal backslash character in the output text, or to defer the interpretation of a macro or string from the time it is processed to the time that it is called.
- \-** Print a minus sign.
- \&** Ignore what is normally a command string.
- \\$N** Call macro argument *N*.
- \"** Introduce a comment within your text. All text to the right of this escape sequence will be ignored by **nroff**. This sequence must read **\"** when used at the beginning of a line.
- \\*S** Call string *S*.
- \\*(ST**  
Call string *ST*.
- \h'NX'** Move horizontally by *N* units of *X*. If *N* is positive, move to the right; if negative, move to the left. The unit of measure *X* may be *i*, for inches; the default unit of measure is character-widths.

`\l'NX` Draw a horizontal line  $N$  units of  $X$  long. The unit of measure  $X$  may be `i`, for inches; the default unit of measure is character-widths.

`\L'NX` Draw a vertical line; used like `\l`, above.

`\nX` Read the value of number register  $X$ .

`\n(XY)` Read the value of number register  $XY$ .

`\v'NX` Vertical motion; move  $N$  units of  $X$  vertically. If  $N$  is positive, move down; if negative, move up. The unit of measure  $X$  may be `i` or `v`, for inches or vertical spaces (sixths of an inch), respectively. The default unit of measure is `v`.

`\w'argument'`

Measure the width of *argument*. For example

```
\w'stuff and nonsense'
```

measures the width of the phrase **stuff and nonsense**; or

```
\w'\$1'
```

measures the width of the first argument passed to a macro, whatever that argument might happen to be. Therefore, the command `.in \w'\$1'` will indent a line by the width of argument 1.

`\<newline>`

Ignore this `<newline>` character.

`\{` Begin conditional commands; used after an `.if`, an `ie`, or an `.el` command.

`\{\` Begin conditional commands, and ignore the following carriage return.

`\}` End conditional commands.

`\fX` Set font to  $X$ ; this can be either `R`, `I`, `B`, or `P`, for Roman, *italic*, **bold**, or previous font, respectively.

### *Dedicated Number Registers*

The following lists the number registers that are predefined in `nroff`. You can read or reset these registers to suit the need of any special formats that you wish to devise.

`.$` Number of arguments in a call to a macro.

`%` Present page number.

`dy` Day of the month, as set by `COHERENT`.

`.i` Present level of indentation.

`.l` Present line length.

`mo` Month, as set by `COHERENT`.

`.o` Present page offset.

`.p` Page length.

**yr** Year, as set by COHERENT.

### Miscellaneous

The **-ms** macro package is kept in file `/usr/lib/tmac.s`. The macros in this package are more than sufficient for most ordinary text processing. Beginners should work through this macro package rather than trying to deal at once with the basic program.

The tutorial to **nroff**, which is included with this manual, provides a detailed introduction to **nroff**, and lists all of its error messages.

### Files

`/tmp/rof*` — Temporary files  
`/usr/lib/tmac.*` — Standard macro packages

### See Also

**col**, **commands**, **deroff**, **man**, **ms**, **troff**  
*nroff*, *The Text Processing Language*, tutorial

## NULL — Definition

**NULL** is defined in the header file `stddef.h`. It is the null pointer (`char *)0`, which is a pointer initialized to zero. Numerous routines return this value to indicate failure; it is useful as a return value because it points nowhere, and so removes the possibility of accidentally destroying a section of memory after failure.

### See Also

**definitions**, **pointer**, **stdio.h**

## null — Device Driver

The “bit bucket”

All data written to the special file `/dev/null` is thrown away (sent to the “bit bucket”). This is useful, for example, to test a program’s side effects while ignoring its output.

A read from file `/dev/null` returns end of file (zero bytes of data). The shell **sh** uses `/dev/null` as input to background processes.

### Files

`/dev/null`

### See Also

**device drivers**, **sh**

## nybble — Definition

A **nybble** is four bits, or half of an eight-bit byte. The term is generally used to refer to the low four bits or the high four bits of a byte. Thus, a byte may be said to have a “low nybble” and a “high nybble”. One nybble encodes one hexadecimal digit.

### See Also

**bit**, **byte**, **definitions**

## O

## object format – Definition

An **object format** describes the form of compiled program that still contains relocation information. The linker **ld** reads file in object format to create executable files.

COHERENT creates object modules that are in the format **l.out**.

*See Also*

definitions, **l.out**, **ld**

## od – Command

Print an octal dump of a file

**od [-bcdox] [file] [ [+ ] offset[.][b] ]**

**od** prints the specified *file* as a sequence of octal numbers, or machine words. If no *file* is specified, **od** dumps the standard input.

The following options set the format of **od**'s output:

- b** Bytes in default base
- c** Bytes in ASCII characters
- d** Words in decimal
- o** Words in octal
- x** Words in hexadecimal

The default base is octal on the PDP-11 and hexadecimal on the i8086, Z-8001, and M68000 families of microprocessors.

Dumping can start at position *offset* into the file. The specified *offset* is octal unless the **'** suffix is present to signify decimal. *offset* is in bytes unless the **b** suffix is present to signify 512-byte blocks.

*See Also*

ASCII, commands, conv, db, scat

## open() – COHERENT System Call (libc)

Open a file

**int open(file, type) char \*file; int type;**

**open** opens a *file* to receive data, or to have its data read. When it opens *file*, **open** returns a file descriptor, which is a small, positive integer that identifies the open *file* for subsequent calls to **read**, **write**, **close**, **dup**, or **dup2**. *type* determines how the file is opened, as follows:

- 0** Read only
- 1** Write
- 2** Read and write

After *file* is opened, reading or writing begins at byte 0.

*Example*

This example copies the file named in `argv[1]` to the one named in `argv[2]` by using COHERENT system calls. It demonstrates the system calls `open`, `close`, `read`, `write`, and `creat`.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#define BUFSIZE (20*512)
char buf[BUFSIZE];

void fatal(s)
char *s;
{
 fprintf(stderr, "copy: %s\n", s);
 exit(1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
 register int ifd, ofd;
 register unsigned int n;

 if (argc != 3)
 fatal("Usage: copy source destination");
 if ((ifd = open(argv[1], 0)) == -1)
 fatal("cannot open input file");
 if ((ofd = creat(argv[2], 0666)) == -1)
 fatal("cannot open output file");

 while ((n = read(ifd, buf, BUFSIZE)) != 0) {
 if (n == -1)
 fatal("read error");
 if (write(ofd, buf, n) != n)
 fatal("write error");
 }

 if (close(ifd) == -1 || close(ofd) == -1)
 fatal("cannot close");
 exit(0);
}
```

*See Also*

COHERENT system calls, `fopen()`

*Diagnostics*

`open` returns -1 if the file is nonexistent, if the caller lacks permission, or if a system resource is exhausted.

*Notes*

`open` is a low-level call that passes data directly to COHERENT. It should not be mixed with high-level calls, such as `fread`, `fwrite`, or `fopen`.

**operator – Definition**

An **operator** relates one operand to another. For example, the statement

1+2

relates the operands **1** and **2** through the operation of addition; on the other hand, the statement

A>B

relates the operands **A** and **B** logically, by asserting that the former is greater than the latter; whereas

A=B

relates the operands **A** and **B** by assigning the value of the latter to the former. The following is a table of the C operators:

|    |                          |
|----|--------------------------|
| *  | Multiplication           |
| /  | Division                 |
| %  | Remainder                |
| +  | Addition                 |
| -  | Subtraction              |
| <  | Less than                |
| <= | Less than or equal to    |
| >  | Greater than             |
| >= | Greater than or equal to |
| && | Logical AND              |
| != | Inequality               |
| !  | Logical negation         |
| \|\| | logical OR               |
| &  | Bitwise AND              |
| ^  | Bitwise exclusive OR     |
| ~  | Bitwise complement       |
| \| | Bitwise inclusive OR     |
| << | Bitwise shift left       |
| >> | Bitwise shift right      |



|               |                                 |
|---------------|---------------------------------|
| =             | Assign                          |
| +=            | Increment and assign            |
| -=            | Decrement and assign            |
| *=            | Multiply and assign             |
| /=            | Divide and assign               |
| %=            | Modulus and assign              |
| ++            | Increment                       |
| --            | Decrement                       |
| ==            | Equivalence                     |
| &=            | Bitwise AND and assign          |
| ^=            | Bitwise exclusive OR and assign |
| \|= | Bitwise inclusive OR and assign |
| <<=           | Bitwise shift left and assign   |
| >>=           | Bitwise shift right and assign  |
| *             | Indirection                     |
| &             | Render an address               |
| ()            | Function indicator              |
| []            | Array indicator                 |
| ->            | Structure pointer               |
| .             | Structure member                |
| ?:            | Conditional expression          |
| <b>sizeof</b> | size of an object               |

For a table of the precedence of operators, see the entry for **precedence**.

*See Also*

**definitions, precedence, sizeof**

## P

### **param.h** – Header File

Define machine-specific parameters

```
#define <sys/param.h>
```

**param.h** defines machine-specific parameters. These parameters set limits on the operation of the COHERENT system; e.g., the number of files that can be open at any one time.

*See Also*

**header files**

### **passwd** – File Format

Password file format

The file **/etc/passwd** holds information about each user who has permission to use the COHERENT system. This information is read by the commands **login** and **passwd** whenever a user attempts to log in, to ensure that that user is really himself and not an impostor.

**/etc/passwd** holds one record for each user; each record, in turn, consists of seven colon-separated fields, as follows:

```
name:password:user_id:group_id:comments:home_dir:shell
```

*name* is the user's login name. *password* is his encrypted password. *user\_id* is a unique number that is also used to identify the user. *group\_id* identifies the group to which the user belongs, if any. *comments* holds miscellaneous data, such as names, telephone numbers, or office numbers. *home\_dir* gives the user's home directory. Finally, *shell* gives the program that is first executed when the user logs on; in most instances, this is an interactive shell (default, **/bin/sh**).

**/etc/passwd** includes a special entry for **remacc**. This entry controls access to the system by remote devices (for example, by a modem). If an entry in file **/etc/ttys** indicates that a serial line is remote (as set by placing an 'r' as the second character in its entry), COHERENT prompts

```
Remote access password:
```

when a user attempts to log in on that line.

To set the password for **remacc**, enter the following command while running as the superuser.

```
passwd remacc
```

*See Also*

**file formats, passwd (command)**

**Notes**

**/etc/passwd** can be read by anyone: if access to it were refused to a user, he could not log on. Thus, the passwords encrypted within it can be read and copied by anyone, and so may be vulnerable to brute-force decryption. For this reason, close attention should

be paid to passwords: they should not be common words or names, preferably mix cases or use unique spellings, and be at least six characters long.

## passwd — Command

Set/change login password  
**passwd** [*user*]

**passwd** sets or changes the password for the specified *user*. If *user* is not specified, **passwd** changes the password of the caller.

**passwd** requests that the old password (if any) be typed, to ensure the caller is who he claims to be. Next it requests a new password, and then requests it again in case of typing errors. **passwd** will ask for a longer password if the one given is too short or not unusual enough.

### Files

**/etc/passwd** — Encrypted passwords

### See Also

**commands**, **crypt()**, **login**

## PATH — Environmental Variable

Directories that hold executable files

**PATH** names a default set of directories that are searched by COHERENT when it seeks an executable file. You can set **PATH** with the command **PATH**. For example, typing

```
PATH=/bin:/usr/bin
```

tells COHERENT to search for executable files first in **/bin**, and then in **/usr/bin**. Note the use of the colon ':' to separate directory names.

### See Also

**environmental variables**, **path.h**

## path() — General Function

Path name for a file  
**#include** <path.h>  
**#include** <stdio.h>  
**char** \***path**(*path*, *filename*, *mode*);  
**char** \**path*, \**filename*;  
**int** *mode*;

The function **path** builds a path name for a file.

*path* points to the list of directories to be searched for the file. You can use the function **getenv** to obtain the current definition of the environmental variable **PATH**, or use the default setting of **PATH** found in the header file **path.h**, or, you can define *path* by hand.

*filename* is the name of the file for which **path** is to search. *mode* is the mode in which you wish to access the file, as follows:

- 1 Execute the file
- 2 Write to the file
- 4 Read the file

**path** calls the function **access** to check the access status of *filename*. If **path** finds the file you requested and the file is available in the mode that you requested, it returns a pointer to a static area in which it has built the appropriate path name. It returns NULL if either *path* or *filename* are NULL, if the search failed, or if the requested file is not available in the correct mode.

### Example

This example accepts a file name and a search mode. It then tries to find the file in one of the directories named in the **PATH** environmental variable.

```
#include <path.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

void
fatal(message)
char *message;
{
 fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", message);
 exit(1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
 char *env, *pathname;
 int mode;

 if (argc != 3)
 fatal("Usage: findpath filename mode");
 if (((mode=atoi(argv[2]))>4) || (mode==3) || (mode<1))
 fatal("modes: 1=execute, 2=write, 3=read");
 env = getenv("PATH");
 if ((pathname = path(env, argv[1], mode)) != NULL) {
 printf("PATH = %s\n", env);
 printf("pathname = %s\n", pathname);
 return;
 } else
 fatal("search failed");
}
```

### See Also

**access()**, **access.h**, **general functions**, **PATH**, **path.h**

**path.h** — Header File

Define/declare constants and functions used with path  
**#define** <path.h>

**path.h** declares constants used to handle the **path** environmental variable. These include, among others, the default path, the path separator, and the list separator. **path.h** also declares the function **path**.

*See Also*

header files, **path()**, **PATH**

**pattern** — Definition

A **pattern** is any combination of ASCII characters and wildcard characters that can be interpreted by a command.

The function **pnmatch** compares two patterns and signals if they match.

*See Also*

definitions, **egrep**, **pnmatch()**, wildcards

**pause()** — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Wait for signal  
**int** **pause()**

**pause** suspends execution until the process receives a signal. The awaited signal could come from **kill**, **alarm**, or the controlling terminal.

*See Also*

**alarm**, COHERENT system calls, **kill**, **signal()**, **sleep()**

**pclose()** — STDIO Function (libc)

Close a pipe  
**#include** <stdio.h>  
**int** **pclose(fp)**  
**FILE \*fp;**

**pclose** closes the pipe pointed to by *fp*, which must have been opened by the function **popen**.

**pclose** awaits the completion of the child process and performs other cleanup. It returns the value from a **WAIT** done on the child process. This value includes information in addition to the "simple" exit value of the child process.

*Files*

<stdio.h>

*See Also*

**fclose()**, **fopen()**, **pipe()**, **popen()**, **sh**, **STDIO**, **system()**, **wait()**

*Diagnostics*

**pclose** returns -1 if *fp* had not been created by a call to **popen**. Otherwise, **pclose** returns the exit status of the *command*, in the format described in the entry for **wait**: exit status in the high byte, signal information in the low byte.

**perror()** – General Function (libc)

System call error messages

```
#include <errno.h>
```

```
perror(string)
```

```
char *string; extern int sys_nerr; extern char *sys_errlist[];
```

**perror** prints an error message on the standard error device. The message consists of the argument *string*, followed by a brief description of the last system call that failed. The external variable **errno** contains the last error number. Normally, *string* is the **perror** of the command that failed or a file **perror**.

The external array **sys\_errlist** gives the list of messages used by **perror**. The external **sys\_nerr** gives the number of messages in the list.

*See Also*

**errno**, **errno.h**, **general functions**

**phone** – Command

Print numbers and addresses from phone directory

```
phone person ...
```

The command **phone** searches a number of telephone directory files for each *person* argument that is given. Any lines that matches any of the *person* arguments is printed. Typically, such lines contain the telephone number, name, and address of a person or organization. Lower-case letters in *person* can be matched by both the same letter and the corresponding upper-case letter in the phone directory.

The user may supply his own phone directory by setting the (exported) shell variable **PHONEBOOK**, to the name of that file. If given, this file is searched first. Then, the system-wide phone book is always searched.

*Files*

**\$PHONEBOOK** – User-supplied phonebook (searched first)

**/usr/pub/phonebook** – System-wide phone directory

*See Also*

**commands**

*Diagnostics*

**phone** exits with non-zero status if a call fails. A diagnostic message is written to **stderr** if no matching entries are found.

**pipe()** – COHERENT System Call

Open a pipe

```
int pipe(fd)
```

```
int fd[2];
```

A *pipe* is an interprocess communication mechanism. `pipe` creates a pipe, typically to construct pipelines in the shell `sh`.

`pipe` fills in `fd[0]` and `fd[1]` with *read* and *write* file descriptors, respectively. The file descriptors allow the transfer of data from one or more writers to one or more readers. Pipes are buffered to 5,120 bytes. If more than 5,120 bytes are written into the pipe, the `write` call will not return until the reader has removed sufficient data for the `write` to complete. If a `read` occurs on an empty pipe, its completion awaits the writing of data.

When all writing processes close their write file descriptors, the reader receives an end of file indication. A write on a pipe with no remaining readers generates a `SIGPIPE` signal to the caller.

`pipe` is generally called just before `fork`. Once the parent and child processes are created, the unused file descriptors should be closed in each process.

### Example

The following example prints the word **Waiting** until a line of data is entered. It illustrates how to use `pipe`, `fstat`, and `fork`.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <sys/stat.h>

main()
{
 struct stat s;
 char buff[10];
 int fd[2];

 if(pipe(fd) == -1) {
 fprintf(stderr, "Cannot open pipe");
 exit(1);
 }

 if(!fork()) { /* child process */
 buff[0] = getchar(); /* wait for the keyboard */
 write(fd[1], buff, 1); /* child's copy of buff */
 exit(0);
 }

 for(;;) { /* parent process. */
 fstat(fd[0], &s);
 if(s.st_size) { /* char in the pipe */
 read(fd[0], buff, 1); /* parent's copy */
 printf("Got data\n");
 exit(0);
 }

 printf("Waiting\n");
 }
}
```

*See Also*

close(), COHERENT system calls, mknod(), read(), sh, signal(), write()

*Diagnostics*

pipe returns zero on successful calls, or -1 if it could not create the pipe.

If it is necessary to create a pipe between tasks that are not parent and child, use /etc/mknod to create a named pipe. These named pipes can be opened and used by different programs for communication. Remember to give them the correct owner and permissions.

## pipe – Definition

A *pipe* directs the output stream of one program into the input stream of another program, thus coupling the programs together. With pipes, two or more programs (or *filters*) can be coupled together to perform complex transforms on streams of data. For example, in the following command

```
cat DATAFILE1 DATAFILE2 | sort | uniq -d
```

the filter *cat* opens two files and prints their contents. Its output is piped to the filter *sort*, which sorts it. The output of *sort* is piped, in turn, to the filter *uniq*, which (with the *-d* option) prints a single copy of each line that is duplicated within the file. Thus, with this simple set of commands and pipes, a user can quickly print a list of all lines that appear in both files.

*See Also*

definitions, filter

## pnmach() – String Function (libc)

Match string pattern

```
int pnmach(string, pattern, flag)
```

```
char *string, *pattern; int flag;
```

*pnmach* matches *string* with *pattern*, which is a regular expression. The shell *sh* uses patterns for file name expansion and case statement expressions.

*pnmach* returns one if *pattern* matches *string*, and zero if it does not. Each character in *pattern* must exactly match a character in *string*; however, the wildcards "\*", "?", "[", and "]" can be used in *pattern* to expand the range of matching.

*flag* must be either zero or one: zero means that *pattern* must match *string* exactly, whereas one means that *pattern* can match any part of *string*. In the latter case, the wildcards "^" and "\$" can also be used in *pattern*.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for *fgets*.

*See Also*

egrep, general functions, grep, sh



### Notes

*flag* must be zero or one for `pnmatch` to yield predictable results.

`pnmatch` is a more powerful version of the ANSI functions `strstr` and `strcmp`.

## pointer — C Language

A *pointer* is an object whose value is the address of another object. The name “pointer” derives from the fact that its contents “point to” another object. A pointer may point to any type, complete or incomplete, including another pointer. It may also point to a function, or to nowhere.

The term *pointer type* refers to the object of a pointer. The object to which a pointer points is called the *referenced type*. For example, an `int *` (“pointer to `int`”) is a pointer type; the referenced type is `int`. Constructing a pointer type from a referenced type is called *pointer type derivation*.

### The Null Pointer

A pointer that points to nowhere is a *null pointer*. The macro `NULL`, which is defined in the header `stdio.h`, defines the null pointer. The null pointer is an integer constant with the value zero. It compares unequal to a pointer to any object or function.

### Declaring a Pointer

To declare a pointer, use the indirection operator “\*”. For example, the declaration

```
int *pointer;
```

declares that the variable `pointer` holds the address of an `int`-length object. Likewise, the declaration

```
int **pointer;
```

declares that `pointer` holds the address of a pointer whose contents, in turn, point to an `int`-length object.

Failure to declare a function that returns a pointer will result in that function being implicitly declared as an `int`. This will not cause an error on microprocessors in which an `int` and a pointer have the same size; however, transporting this code to a microprocessor in which an `int` consists of 16 bits and a pointer consists of 32 bits will result in the pointers being truncated to 16 bits and the program probably failing.

C allows pointers and integers to be compared or converted to each other without restriction. The COHERENT C compiler flags such conversions with the strict message

```
integer pointer pun
```

and comparisons with the strict message

```
integer pointer comparison
```

These problems should be corrected if you want your code to be portable to other computing environments.

See **declarations** for more information.

### *Wild Pointers*

Pointers are omnipresent in C. C also allows you to use a pointer to read or write the object to which the pointer points; this is called *pointer dereferencing*. Because a pointer can point to any place within memory, it is possible to write C code that generates unpredictable results, corrupts itself, or even obliterates the operating system if running in unprotected mode. A pointer that aims where it ought not is called a *wild pointer*.

When a program declares a pointer, space is set aside in memory for it. However, this space has not yet been filled with the address of an object. To fill a pointer with the address of the object you wish to access is called *initializing* it. A wild pointer, as often as not, is one that is not properly initialized.

Normally, to initialize a pointer means to fill it with a meaningful address. For example, the following initializes a pointer:

```
int number;
int *pointer;

pointer = &number;
```

The address operator '&' specifies that you want the address of an object rather than its contents. Thus, **pointer** is filled with the address of **number**, and it can now be used to access the contents of **number**.

The initialization of a string is somewhat different than the initialization of a pointer to an integer object. For example,

```
char *string = "This is a string."
```

declares that **string** is a pointer to a **char**. It then stores the string literal **This is a string** in memory and fills **string** with the address of its first character. **string** can then be passed to functions to access the string, or you can step through the string by incrementing **string** until its contents point to the null character at the end of the string.

Another way to initialize a pointer is to fill it with a value returned by a function that returns a pointer. For example, the code

```
extern char *malloc(size_t variable);
char *example;

example = malloc(50);
```

uses the function **malloc** to allocate 50 bytes of dynamic memory and then initializes **example** to the address that **malloc** returns.

### *Reading What a Pointer Points To*

The indirection operator "\*" can be used to read the object to which a pointer points. For example,

```
int number;
int *pointer;

pointer = &number;

printf("%d\n", *pointer);
```

uses **pointer** to access the contents of **number**.

When a pointer points to a structure, the elements within the structure can be read by using the structure offset operator ' $\rightarrow$ '. See the entry for  $\rightarrow$  for more information.

### *Pointers to Functions*

A pointer can also contain the address of a function. For example,

```
char *(*example)();
```

declares **example** to be a pointer to a function that returns a pointer to a **char**.

This declaration is quite different from:

```
char **different();
```

The latter declares that **different** is a function that returns a pointer to a pointer to a **char**.

The following demonstrates how to call a function via a pointer:

```
(*example)(arg1, arg2);
```

Here, the '\*' takes the contents of the pointer, which in this case is the address of the function, and uses that address to pass to a function its list of arguments.

A pointer to a function can be passed as an argument to another function. The functions **bsearch** and **qsort** both take function pointers as arguments. A program may also use of arrays of pointers to functions.

### *Pointer Conversion*

One type of pointer may be converted, or *cast*, to another. For example, a pointer to a **char** may be cast to a pointer to an **int**, and vice versa.

Pointers to different data types are compatible in expressions, but only if they are cast appropriately. Using them without casting produces a *pointer-type mismatch*.

### *Pointer Arithmetic*

Arithmetic may be performed on all pointers to scalar types, i.e., pointers to **chars** or **int**. Pointer arithmetic is quite limited and consists of the following:

1. One pointer may be subtracted from another.
2. An **int** or a **long**, either variable or constant, may be added to a pointer or subtracted from it.
3. The operators **++** or **--** may be used to increment or decrement a pointer.

No other pointer arithmetic is permitted. No arithmetic can be performed on pointers to non-scalar objects, e.g., pointers to functions.

### *i8086 Pointers*

Intel designed the i8086 to use a segmented architecture. This means that the i8086 divides memory into 64-kilobyte segments. To program the i8086 requires that you use a specific *memory model*, which describes how the segments of memory are to be organized.

*See Also*

**C language, data formats, operators, portability**

### **poll.h** — Header File

Define structures/constants used with polling devices

```
#define <sys/poll.h>
```

**poll.h** defines structures and constants used by routines that poll devices.

*See Also*

**header files**

### **popen()** — STDIO Function (libc)

Open a pipe

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
FILE *popen(command, how)
```

```
char *command, *how;
```

**popen** opens a pipe. It resembles the function **fopen**, except that the opened object is a command line to the shell **sh** rather than a file.

The caller can read the standard output of *command* when *how* is **r**, or write to the standard input of *command* when *how* is **w**. **popen** returns a pointer to a **FILE** structure that may be read or written.

*Files*

<stdio.h>

*See Also*

**fclose(), fopen(), pclose(), pipe(), sh, STDIO, system(), wait()**

*Diagnostics*

**popen** returns **NULL** if the link to *command* could not be established.

### **port** — Definition

A **port** passes data to and receives data from a remote device.

*See Also*

**definitions, FILE, stream**

### **portability** — Technical Information

**Portability** means that code can be recompiled and run under different computing environments without modification. Although true portability is an ideal that is difficult to realize, you can take a number of practical steps to ensure that your code is portable:

1. Do not assume that an integer and a pointer have the same size. Remember that undeclared functions are assumed to return an `int`. If a function returns a pointer, declare it so.
2. Do not write routines that depend on a particular order of code evaluation, particular byte ordering, or particular length of data types.
3. Do not write routines that play tricks with a machine's "magic characters"; for example, writing a routine that depends on a file's ending with `<ctrl-Z>` instead of `EOF` ensures that that code can run only under operating systems that recognize this magic character.
4. Always use manifest constants, such as `EOF`, and make full use of `#define` statements.
5. Use header files to hold all machine-dependent declarations and definitions.
6. Declare everything explicitly. In particular, be sure to declare functions as `void` if they do not return a value; this avoids unforeseen problems with undefined return values.
7. Do not assume that integers and pointers have the same size or even the same kind of structure. Do not assume that pointers are all the same or can point anywhere. On the i8086, in `SMALL` model a pointer to a function addresses relative to the code segment, whereas a pointer to data addresses relative to the data segment. On some machines, character pointers are of a different size or structure than word pointers.
8. The constant `NULL` is defined as being different from any valid pointer. Use it and nothing else for that purpose.

*See Also*

header file, pointer, technical information, void

### pow() – Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Raise multiple-precision integer to power

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void pow(a, b, m, c)
```

```
mint *a, *b, *m, *c;
```

The `COHERENT` system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function `pow` sets the multiple-precision integer (or `mint`) pointed to by `c` to the value pointed to by `a` raised to the power of the value pointed to by `b`, reduced modulo of the value pointed to by `m`.

*See Also*

multiple-precision mathematics

### pow() – Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute a power of a number

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double pow(z, x) double z, x;
```

**pow** returns  $z$  raised to the power of  $x$ , or  $z^x$ .

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **exp**.

*See Also*

**mathematics library**

*Diagnostics*

**pow** indicates overflow by an **errno** of **ERANGE** and a huge returned value.

**pr** — Command

Paginate and print files

**pr** [ *options* ] [ *file* ... ]

**pr** paginates each named *file* and sends it to the standard output. The file name ‘.’ means standard input. If no *file* is named, **pr** reads the standard input.

Each page has a header that gives the date, file name, and page and line numbers. **pr** may be used with the following options.

+ *skip* Skip the first *skip* pages of each input file.

-*N* Print the text in *N* columns. This is used to print out material that was typed in one or more columns.

-**h** *header*

Use *header* in place of the text name in the title. If *header* is more than one word long, it must be enclosed in quotation marks.

-*lN* Set the page length to *N* lines (default, 66).

-**m** Print the texts simultaneously, in separate columns. Each text will be assigned an equal amount of width on the page, and any lines longer than that width will be truncated. This is used to print several similar texts or listings simultaneously.

-**n** Number each line as it is printed.

-**sc** Separate each column by the character *c*. You can separate columns with a letter of the alphabet, a period, or an asterisk. Normally, each column is left justified in a fixed-width field.

-**t** Suppress the printing of the header on each page, and the header and footer space.

-**wN** Set the page width to *N* columns (default, 80). Text lines are truncated to fit the column width. The maximum width is 256 columns.

*See Also*

**cat**, **commands**, **nroff**

*Diagnostics*

Messages are written on the standard error.

**precedence — Definition**

*Precedence* refers to the property of each C operator that determines priority of execution. Operators are executed in order of their degree of precedence, from highest to lowest.

The following table summarizes the precedence of C operators. They are listed in descending order of precedence: those listed higher in the table are executed before those lower in the table. Operators listed on the same line have the same level of precedence.

| <i>Operator</i>               | <i>Associativity</i> |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| () [] -> .                    | Left to right        |
| ! ~ ++ -- - (type) * & sizeof | Right to left        |
| * / %                         | Left to right        |
| + -                           | Left to right        |
| << >>                         | Left to right        |
| < <= > >=                     | Left to right        |
| == !=                         | Left to right        |
| &                             | Left to right        |
| ^                             | Left to right        |
| \| | Left to right        |
| &&                            | Left to right        |
| \|\| | Left to right        |
| ?:                            | Right to left        |
| = += -= *= /= %=              | Right to left        |
| ,                             | Left to right        |

You can always determine precedence in an expression by enclosing sub-expressions within parentheses: the expression enclosed within the innermost parentheses is always executed first.

*See Also*

**definitions, operators**

*The C Programming Language*, ed. 2, page 48

**prep** – Command

Produce a word list

```
prep [-dfp] [-i ifile] [-o ofile] [file ...]
```

The command **prep** prepares a word list that is useful for statistical processing from the textual data found in each input *file*. If no *file* is given, **prep** reads the standard input for text.

For the purposes of **prep**, a word consists of a string of alphabetic letters and apostrophes. Words are written, one per line, to the standard output. Hyphenated words are treated as two words. However, any word hyphenated between two lines is rejoined as one word.

**prep** recognizes the following options:

- d** Print a sequence number (of words in the input text) before each output word.
- f** Fold upper-case letters into lower case. This is sometimes useful for producing unique lists of words.
- i ifile** Ignore words found in *ifile*. *ifile* has words one per line that are matched again each input word independent of case.
- o ofile** Print only words found in *ofile*. Only one of **-i** or **-o** may be specified.
- p** In addition to printing words, also print each punctuation character (printable, non-numeric characters that separate words), one per line. These lines are not counted for **-d**.

*See Also*

**commands**, **deroff**, **sort**, **spell**, **typo**, **wc**

*Notes*

What constitutes a *word* is different in **deroff**, **prep**, and **wc**.

**printf()** – **STDIO** (libc)

Print formatted text

```
int printf(format [arg1, ..., argN])
```

```
char *format; [data type] arg1, ..., argN;
```

**printf** prints formatted text. It uses the *format* string to specify an output format for each *arg*, which it then writes on the standard output.

**printf** reads characters from *format* one at a time; any character other than a percent sign '%' or a string that is introduced with a percent sign is copied directly to the output. A '%' tells **printf** that what follows specifies how the corresponding *arg* is to be formatted; the characters that follow '%' can set the output width and the type of conversion desired. The following modifiers, in this order, may precede the conversion type:

1. A minus sign '-' left-justifies the output field, instead of the default right justify.
2. A string of digits gives the *width* of the output field. Normally, **printf** pads the field padded with spaces to the field width; it is padded on the left unless left justification is specified with a '.'. If the field width begins with '0', the field is padded with '0'



characters instead of spaces; the '0' does not cause the field width to be taken as an octal number. If the width specification is an asterisk "\*", the routine uses the next *arg* as an integer that gives the width of the field.

3. A period '.' followed by one or more digits gives the *precision*. For floating point (e, f, and g) conversions, the precision sets the number of digits printed after the decimal point. For string (s) conversions, the precision sets the maximum number of characters that can be used from the string. If the precision specification is given as an asterisk "\*", the routine uses the next *arg* as an integer that gives the precision.
4. The letter 'l' before any integer conversion (d, o, x, or u) indicates that the argument is a **long** rather than an **int**. Capitalizing the conversion type has the same effect; note, however, that capitalized conversion types are *not* compatible with all C compiler libraries, or with the ANSI standard. This feature will not be supported in future editions of COHERENT.

The following format conversions are recognized:

- % Print a '%' character. No arguments are processed.
- c Print the **int** argument as a character.
- d Print the **int** argument as signed decimal numerals.
- D Print the **long** argument as signed decimal numerals.
- e Print the **float** or **double** argument in exponential form. The format is *d.dddddесdd*, where there is always one digit before the decimal point and as many as the *precision* digits after it (default, six). The exponent sign *s* may be either '+' or '-'.
- f Print the **float** or **double** argument as a string with an optional leading minus sign '-', at least one decimal digit, a decimal point ('.'), and optional decimal digits after the decimal point. The number of digits after the decimal point is the *precision* (default, six).
- g Print the **float** or **double** argument as whichever of the formats d, e, or f loses no significant precision and takes the least space.
- o Print the **int** argument in unsigned octal numerals.
- O Print the **long** argument in unsigned octal numerals.
- r The next argument points to an array of new arguments that may be used recursively. The first argument of the list is a **char \*** that contains a new format string. When the list is exhausted, the routine continues from where it left off in the original format string.
- s Print the string to which the **char \*** argument points. Reaching either the end of the string, indicated by a null character, or the specified *precision*, will terminate output. If no *precision* is given, only the end of the string will terminate.
- u Print the **int** argument in unsigned decimal numerals.

- U** Print the **long** argument in unsigned decimal numerals.
- x** Print the **int** argument in unsigned hexadecimal numerals.
- X** Print the **long** argument in unsigned hexadecimal numerals.

*Example*

The following example demonstrates many **printf** statements.

```
main()
{
 extern void demo_r();
 int precision = 1;
 int integer = 10;
 float decimal = 2.75;
 double bigdec = 27590.21;
 char letter = 'K';
 char buffer[20];

 strcpy (buffer, "This is a string.\n");

 printf("This is an int: %d\n", integer);
 printf("This is a float: %f\n", decimal);
 printf("Another float: %3.*f\n", precision, decimal);
 printf("This is a double: %lf\n", bigdec);
 printf("This is a char: %c\n", letter);
 printf("%s", buffer);
 printf("%s\n", "This is also a string.");

 demo_r("Print everything: %d %f %lf %c",
 integer, decimal, bigdec, letter);
 exit(0);
}

void demo_r(string)
char *string;
{
 printf("%r\n", (char **)&string);
}

```

*See Also*

**fprintf()**, **putc()**, **puts()**, **scanf()**, **sprintf()**, **STDIO**

*Notes*

Because C does not perform type checking, it is essential that each argument match its counterpart in the format string.

The use of upper-case format characters to specify long arguments is not standard, and will be phased out to conform with the ANSI standard. You should use the 'l' modifier to indicate a **long**.

At present, **printf** does not return a meaningful value.

**proc.h** — Header File

Define structures/constants used with processes  
**#define** <sys/proc.h>

**proc.h** defines structures and constants used by routines that manipulate processes.

*See Also*

header files

**process** — Definition

A **process** is a program in the state of execution.

*See Also*

daemon, definitions, file

**profile** — Technical Information

Set user's environment

The **profile** is a set of commands that customizes how the COHERENT system deals with an individual user. The shell **sh** reads the file **/etc/profile** and executes the commands therein when a user logs in.

If **/etc/passwd** specifies a program in the login shell slot then **/etc/profile** is read by **/bin/sh** and those lines which begin **export** are recognized as global environments, and the remainder of the line is inserted into the environment.

Please note that if **/bin/sh** is not the shell, any constructions other than

```
export foo=value
```

are not likely to work.

*See Also*

**sh**, technical information

**ps** — Command

Print process status

```
ps [-afglmnrwx] [-c sys] [-k mem]
```

**ps** prints information about a process or processes. It prints the information in fields, followed by the command name and arguments. The fields include the following:

- TTY** The controlling terminal of the command, printed in short form. "44:" means **/dev/tty44** and "?:" means there is no controlling terminal.
- PID** Process id; necessary to know when the process is to be killed.
- GROUP** PID of the group leader of the process; the shell started up when the user logs in.
- PPID** PID of the parent of the process; very often a shell.

- UID** User id or name of the owner.
- K** Size of the process in kilobytes.
- F** Process flag bits, as follows:
- |               |       |                                  |
|---------------|-------|----------------------------------|
| <b>PFCORE</b> | 00001 | Process is in core               |
| <b>PFLOCK</b> | 00002 | Process is locked in core        |
| <b>PFSWIO</b> | 00004 | Swap I/O in progress             |
| <b>PFSWAP</b> | 00010 | Process is swapped out           |
| <b>PFWAIT</b> | 00020 | Process is stopped (not waited)  |
| <b>PFSTOP</b> | 00040 | Process is stopped (waited on)   |
| <b>PFTRAC</b> | 00100 | Process is being traced          |
| <b>PFKERN</b> | 00200 | Kernel process                   |
| <b>PFAUXM</b> | 00400 | Auxiliary segments in memory     |
| <b>PFDISP</b> | 01000 | Dispatch at earliest convenience |
| <b>PFNDMP</b> | 02000 | Command mode forbids dump        |
| <b>PFWAKE</b> | 04000 | Wakeup requested                 |
- S** State of the process, as follows:
- |          |                                                         |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>R</b> | Ready to run (waiting for CPU time)                     |
| <b>S</b> | Stopped for other reasons (I/O completion, pause, etc.) |
| <b>T</b> | Being traced by another process                         |
| <b>W</b> | Waiting for an existent child                           |
| <b>Z</b> | Zombie (dead, but parent not waiting)                   |
- EVENT** The condition which the process is anticipating; not applicable if the process is ready to run.
- CVAL SVAL IVAL RVAL**  
Scheduling information; bigger is better.
- UTIME** Time consumed while running in the program (in seconds).
- STIME** Time consumed while running in the system (in seconds).
- Normally, **ps** displays the **TTY** and **PID** fields of each active process started on the caller's terminal, as well as the command name and arguments. The following flags can alter this behavior.
- a** Display information about processes started from all terminals.
- c** The next argument **sys** gives the system executable image (default: **/coherent**). The namelist is searched for table addresses.
- d** Print information about status of loadable drivers.
- f** Blank fields have '-' place-holders. This enables field-oriented commands like **sort** and **awk** to process the output.
- g** Print the group leader field **GROUP** if the **l** option is given.
- l** Long format. In addition to the **TTY** and **PID** fields, prints the **PPID**, **UID**, **K**, **F**, **S** and **EVENT** fields.

- k** The next argument *mem* is the memory file (default: */dev/mem*).
- m** Print the scheduling fields CVAL, SVAL, IVAL and RVAL.
- n** Suppress the header line.
- r** Print the real size of the process, which includes the user and auxiliary segments assigned to the process. Because the user segment (usually 1 kilobyte) is shared by all processes owned by that user, this may give a misleading total size for all the user's processes.
- t** Print elapsed CPU time fields UTIME and STIME.
- w** Wide format output; print 132 columns instead of 80.
- x** Display processes which do not have a controlling terminal (e.g. the swapper).

### Files

*/coherent* — Default system file  
*/dev/mem* — Default memory file  
*/dev/tty\** — List of terminal names

### See Also

**commands, kill, mem, size, wait**

### Notes

Each process can modify or destroy its command name and arguments. The state of the system changes even as **ps** runs.

## PS1 – Environmental Variable

User's default prompt  
**PS1=prompt**

The environmental variable **PS1** sets the prompt for your shell. The default is **\$**.

### See Also

**environmental variables, PS2, sh**

## PS2 – Environmental Variable

Prompt when user continues command onto additional lines  
**PS2=prompt**

The environmental variable **PS2** sets the prompt that is displayed when a command extends onto additional input lines. The default is **>**.

### See Also

**environmental variables, PS1, sh**

## ptrace() – COHERENT System Call

Trace process execution  
**#include <signal.h>**  
**int ptrace(command, pid, location, value)**  
**int command, pid, \*location, value;**

**ptrace** provides a parent process with primitives to monitor and alter the execution of a child process. These primitives typically are used by a debugger such as **db**, which needs to examine and change memory, plant breakpoints, and single-step the child process being debugged.

Once a child process indicates it wishes to be traced, its parent issues various *commands* to control the child. *pid* identifies the affected process. The parent may issue a command only when the child process is in a stopped state, which occurs when the child encounters a signal. A special return value of 0177 from **wait** informs the parent that the child has entered the stopped state. The parent may then examine or change the child process memory space or restart the process at any point.

When the child process issues an **exec**, the child stops with signal **SIGTRAP** to enable the parent to plant breakpoints. The set user id and set group id modes are ineffective when a traced process performs an **exec**.

The following list describes each available *command*. A *command* ignores any arguments not mentioned.

- 0 This is the only *command* the child process may issue. It tells the system that the child wishes to be traced. Parent and child must agree that tracing should occur to achieve the desired effect. Only the *command* argument is significant.
- 1,2 The **int** at *location* is the return value. Command 1 signifies that *location* is in the instruction space, whereas command 2 signifies *data* space. Often these two spaces are equivalent.
- 3 The return value is the **int** of the process description, as defined in **sys/uproc.h**. This call may be used to obtain values such as hardware register contents and segment allocation information.
- 4,5 Modify the child process's memory by changing the **int** at *location* to *value*. Command 4 means instruction space and command 5 means *data* space. Shared segments may be written only if no other executing process is using them.
- 6 Modify the **int** at *location* in the process description area, as with command 3. The permissible values for *location* are restricted to such things as hardware registers and bits of machine status registers that the user may safely change.
- 7 This command restarts the stopped child process after it encounters a signal. The process resumes execution at *location*, or from where the process was stopped if *location* is **(int \*)1**. *value* gives a signal number that the process receives as it restarts. This is normally the number of the signal that caused the process to stop, fetched from the process description area by a 3 command. If *value* is zero, the effect of the signal is ignored.
- 8 Force the child process to exit.
- 9 Like command 7, except that the child stops again with signal **SIGTRAP** as soon as practicable after the execution of at least one instruction. The actual hardware method used to implement this command varies from machine to machine, explaining the imprecise nature of its definition. This call may provide part of the basis for breakpoints.

*Files*

<signal.h>  
 <sys/uproc.h>

*See Also*

db, COHERENT system calls, exec, signal(), wait()

*Diagnostics*

**ptrace** returns -1 if *pid* is not the process id of an eligible child process or if some other argument is invalid or out of bounds. Some commands may return an arbitrary data value, in which case **errno** should be checked to distinguish a return value of -1 from an error return.

*Notes*

There is no way to specify which signals should not stop the process.

**pun – Definition**

In the context of C, a **pun** occurs when a programmer uses one data form interchangeably with another. A pun most often occurs unintentionally when the programmer fails to declare a function as returning a pointer; by default, what the function returns is assumed to be an **int**, and is handled as such. No trouble will arise if the program is run on a machine that defines an **int** and a pointer to have the same length (e.g., i8086 SMALL model); however, such code cannot be transported to an environment in which this is not the case (e.g., i8086 LARGE model).

*See Also*

definitions, pointer, portability

**putc() – STDIO (stdio.h)**

Write character into stream

```
#include <stdio.h>
int putc(c, fp) char c; FILE *fp;
```

**putc** is a macro that writes a character *c* into the file stream pointed to by *fp*. It returns *c* upon success.

*Example*

The following example demonstrates **putc**. It opens an ASCII file and prints its contents on the screen. For another example of **putc**, see the entry for **getc**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
 FILE *fp;
 int ch;
 int filename[20];

 printf("Enter file name: ");
 gets(filename);
```

```
if ((fp = fopen(filename, "r")) != NULL) {
 while ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != EOF)
 putchar(ch, stdout);
} else
 printf("Cannot open %s.\n", filename);
fclose(fp);
}
```

*See Also*

**fputc(), getc(), putchar(), STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**putc** returns EOF when a write error occurs.

*Notes*

Because **putc** is a macro, arguments with side effects may not work as expected.

### **putchar() – STDIO (stdio.h)**

Write a character onto the standard output

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int putchar(c) char c;**

**putchar** is a macro that expands to **putc(c, stdout)**. It writes a character onto the standard output.

*Example*

For an example of this routine, see the entry for **getchar**.

*See Also*

**fputc(), putc(), STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**putchar** returns EOF when a write error occurs.

*Notes*

Because **putchar** is a macro, arguments with side effects may not work as expected.

### **puts() – STDIO (libc)**

Write string onto standard output

**#include <stdio.h>**

**void puts(string) char \*string**

**puts** appends a newline character to the string pointed to by *string*, and writes the result onto the standard output.

*Example*

The following uses **puts** to write a string on the screen.



```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
 puts("This is a string.");
}
```

*See Also*

**fputs(), STDIO**

*Notes*

For historical reasons, **fputs** outputs the string unchanged, whereas **puts** appends a newline character.

### **putw() — STDIO (stdio.h)**

Write word into stream

```
#include <stdio.h>
int putw(word, fp) int word; FILE *fp;
```

The macro **putw** writes *word* into the file stream pointed to by *fp*. It returns the value written.

**putw** differs from the related macro **putc** in that **putw** writes an **int**, whereas **putc** writes a **char** that is promoted to an **int**.

*See Also*

**ferror(), STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**putw** returns **EOF** when an error occurs. You may need to call **ferror** to distinguish this value from a genuine end-of-file flag.

*Notes*

Because **putw** is a macro, arguments with side effects may not work as expected. The bytes of *word* are written in the natural byte order of the machine.

### **pwd — Command**

Print the name of the current directory

```
pwd
```

**pwd** prints the name of the directory that you are in.

*See Also*

**cd, commands, sh**

### **pwd.h — Header File**

Declare password structure

```
#include <pwd.h>
```

The header file **pwd.h** declares the structure **passwd**, which is used to build COHERENT's password file. **passwd** is defined as follows:

```
struct passwd {
 char *pw_name; /* login user name */
 char *pw_passwd; /* login password */
 int pw_uid; /* login user id */
 int pw_gid; /* login group id */
 int pw_quota; /* file quota (unused) */
 char *pw_comment; /* comments (unused) */
 char *pw_gecos; /* (unused) */
 char *pw_dir; /* working directory */
 char *pw_shell; /* initial program */
};
```

For detailed descriptions of the above fields, see the entry for `passwd`.

*See Also*

`endpwent()`, `getpwent()`, `getpwnam()`, `getpwuid()`, header files, `setpwent()`

## Q

**qsort()** — General Function (libc)

Sort arrays in memory

```
void qsort(data, n, size, comp) char *data; int n, size; int (*comp)();
```

**qsort** is a generalized algorithm for sorting arrays of data in memory, using C. A. R. Hoare's "quicksort" algorithm. **qsort** works with a sequential array of memory called *data*, which is divided into *n* parts of *size* bytes each. In practice, *data* is usually an array of pointers or structures, and *size* is the **sizeof** the pointer or structure. Each routine compares pairs of items and exchanges them as required. The user-supplied routine to which *comp* points performs the comparison. It is called repeatedly, as follows:

```
(*comp)(p1, p2)
char *p1, *p2;
```

Here, *p1* and *p2* each point to a block of *size* bytes in the *data* array. In practice, they are usually pointers to pointers or pointers to structures. The comparison routine must return a negative, zero, or positive result, depending on whether *p1* is logically less than, equal to, or greater than *p2*, respectively.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **malloc**.

*See Also*

**general functions**, **shellsort()**, **strcmp()**, **strncmp()**

*The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 3

*Notes*

**qsort** differs from the other sorting function, **shellsort**, in that it uses a recursive algorithm that makes heavy use of the stack.

**quot** — Command

Summarize file-system usage

```
quot [-c] [-f] [-n] [-t] filesystem
```

**quot** produces several different summaries about the ownership of files for each *filesystem* argument given. When no options are specified, **quot** produces a two-column listing that gives the amount of space used by each user, sorted in decreasing order of file space used; the first column gives the number of blocks used and the second gives the use name. Space is always given in blocks.

Options are available to modify the normal output or specify a completely different action.

**quot** recognizes the following options:

- c Give a three-column breakdown of files by size. The first column contains all file sizes, in increasing order. The second column gives the number of files of the size indicated in the first. The third gives a cumulative sum of the sizes of all files less than or equal to the current size.

- f Add an initial column that contains the number of files to the front of the normal output.
- n Takes as input a list of i-numbers and file names, one per line and sorted in ascending order by i-number; ignore all lines not in this form. The output is in two columns: the first gives the owner and the second contains the file name for each entry in the output. This conforms to usage with the following pipeline:  

```
ncheck filesystem | sort +0n | quot -n filesystem
```
- t To the normal output, add a line that contains totals.

**quot** runs much faster with a raw device for *filesystem*.

*Files*

*/etc/passwd*

*See Also*

**ac, commands, ncheck, sort**

*Notes*

Sparse files are recorded as if they had all of their blocks allocated.

# R

## ram — Device Driver

### RAM device driver

The COHERENT **ram** devices allow the user to allocate and use the random access memory (RAM) of the computer system directly. A typical use is for a RAM disk, which is a COHERENT file system kept in memory rather than on a diskette or hard disk.

The COHERENT RAM device driver has major number 8. It can be accessed either as a block-special device or as a character-special device. The high-order bit of the minor number gives a RAM device number (0 or 1), allowing the use of up to two RAM devices simultaneously. The low-order seven bits specify the device size in 64 KB (128 block) increments. The first **open** call on a RAM device with nonzero size (1 to 127) allocates memory for the device; the **open** call fails if sufficient memory is not available. Accessing a RAM device with a minor number specifying size 0 frees the allocated memory, provided all earlier **open** calls have been closed.

Initially, COHERENT includes two 128 KB RAM block devices, `/dev/ram0` (8, 2) and `/dev/ram1` (8, 130). It also includes `/dev/ram0close` (8, 0) and `/dev/ram1close` (8, 128). The system administrator should change the RAM devices to sizes appropriate for available system memory.

### Examples

The following example formats and mounts a 128-kilobyte RAM disk on directory `/fast`.

```
mkdir /fast
/etc/mkfs /dev/ram0 256
/etc/mount /dev/ram0 /fast
```

When the RAM disk is no longer needed, its allocated memory can be freed as follows:

```
/etc/umount /dev/ram0
cat /dev/null >/dev/ram0close
```

The next example replaces the default `/dev/ram1` with a one-megabyte device containing a COHERENT file system. The new minor number 144 equals  $128 + 16$ , so it specifies RAM device 1 and size 16 times 64 kilobytes (i.e., one megabyte). The new RAM device contains 2,048 blocks of 512 bytes each.

```
rm /dev/ram1
/etc/mknod /dev/ram1 b 8 144
/etc/mkfs /dev/ram1 2048
```

### Files

`/dev/ram*`

### See Also

device drivers, `mkfs`, `mount`, `umount`

*Notes*

Moving frequently used commands or files to a RAM disk can improve system performance substantially. However, the contents of a RAM device are lost if the system loses power, reboots, or crashes, so changes to files kept on a RAM disk should be stored frequently to the hard disk or to diskette.

If a RAM device uses most but not all of available system memory, its **open** call will succeed but subsequent commands may fail because insufficient memory remains for the system.

**rand()** — General Function (libc)

Generate pseudo-random numbers  
**int rand()**

**rand** generates a set of pseudo-random numbers. It returns integers in the range 0 to 32,767, and purportedly has a period of  $2^{32}$ . **rand** will always return the same series of random numbers unless you first call the function **srand** to change **rand**'s *seed*, or beginning-point.

*Example*

This example demonstrates the functions **rand** and **srand**. It uses a threshold level that is passed in **argv[1]** (default, MAXVAL/2), the number of trials passed in **argv[2]** (default, 1,000), and a seed passed in **argv[3]** (default, no seeding).

```
#define MAXVAL 32767 /* range of rand: [0,2^15-1] */
main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
 register int i, hits, threshold, ntrials;
 hits = 0;
 threshold = (argc > 1) ? atoi(argv[1]) : MAXVAL/2;
 ntrials = (argc > 2) ? atoi(argv[2]) : 1000;
 if (argc > 3)
 srand(atoi(argv[3]));
 for (i = 1; i <= ntrials; i++)
 if (rand() > threshold)
 ++hits;
 printf("%d values above %d in %d trials (%D%).\n",
 hits, threshold, ntrials, (100L*hits)/ntrials);
}
```

*See Also*

**general functions, srand()**

*The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 2

## random access — Definition

In the context of computing, **random access** means that an entity, such as memory, can be accessed at any point, not just at the beginning. This means that all points within memory can be accessed equally quickly. This contrasts with *sequential access*, in which entities must be accessed in a particular order, so that some entities take longer to access than do others.

A tape drive is an example of a sequential access device, i.e., the order in which data are read is dictated by the order in which they stream past the tape head. Random-access memory (RAM) is an example of random access. Hard disks and floppy disks combine elements of random access and sequential access.

RAM, which usually consists of semiconductor integrated circuits, is also strictly random access. In this regard, the term "RAM" is slightly misleading; a more accurate name would be "read/write memory", to contrast RAM with read-only memory (ROM), which is also random access memory.

*See Also*

definitions, read-only memory

## ranlib — Definition

The **ranlib** is a "directory" that appears at the beginning of each library. It contains the name of each global symbol (i.e., function name) that appears within the library, and a pointer to the module in which that symbol is defined. Thus, the ranlib eliminates the need for the linker to search the entire library sequentially to find a given global symbol, which speeds up linking noticeably.

If the date on the library file is later than that in the ranlib header, the linker will ignore the ranlib and perform a sequential search through the library; the linker will also send the warning message

Outdated ranlib

to the standard error device. This is done to prevent the accidental use of an outdated ranlib, which could be disastrous. When you use the archiver **ar** to update a library or to create a new library, be sure to employ the options that update the ranlib as well as modify or create the library.

*See Also*

**ar**, **date**, **ld**, **libraries**, **touch**

## ranlib — Command

Create index for library  
**ranlib** *library* ...

**ranlib** creates an index for a library created by the archiver **ar**. This greatly increases the speed with which the linker **ld** can search a library, and so link your program.

**ranlib** inserts at the beginning of the library a sorted index of all global symbols defined in object modules in the library, together with the offset of the module in the library. If the index already exists, **ranlib** updates it.

*Files*

—**SYMDEF** — Index module

*See Also*

**ar, ar.h, commands, ld**

*Diagnostics*

**ranlib** issues appropriate messages for I/O errors or bad format files. It does not rewrite a library until the last possible moment, so the library is usually unchanged in case of error. **ranlib** processes each library independently. The exit status is the number of libraries in which errors were encountered.

**rc — System Maintenance**

Perform standard maintenance chores  
**/etc/rc**

The shell script **/etc/rc** is executed by the **init** process when the COHERENT system enters multi-user mode. The commands in **rc** do such things as set the local time zone, and initialize the time **/usr/adm/wtmp**, which holds records of user logins.

*See Also*

**brc, init, system maintenance**

**read() — COHERENT System Call (libc)**

Read from a file

**int read(*fd, buffer, n*) int *fd*; char \**buffer*; int *n*;**

**read** reads up to *n* bytes of data from the file descriptor *fd* and writes them into *buffer*. The amount of data actually read may be less than that requested if **read** detects EOF. The data are read beginning at the current seek position in the file, which was set by the most recently executed **read** or **lseek** routine. **read** advances the seek pointer by the number of characters read.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **open**.

*See Also*

**COHERENT system calls, STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

With a successful call, **read** returns the number of bytes read; thus, zero bytes signals the end of the file. It returns -1 if an error occurs, such as bad file descriptor, bad *buffer* address, or physical read error.

*Notes*

**read** is a low-level call that passes data directly to COHERENT. It should not be intermixed with high-level calls, such as **fread**, **fwrite**, or **fopen**.



**read – Command**

Assign values to shell variables

**read** *name* ...

**read** reads a line from the standard input. It assigns each token of the input to the corresponding shell variable *name*. If the input contains fewer tokens than the number of names specified, **read** assigns the null string to each extra variable. If the input contains more tokens than the number of names specified, **read** assigns the last *name* in the list the remainder of the input.

The shell **sh** executes **read** directly.

*Example*

The command

```
read foo bar baz
hello how are you
```

parses the line “hello how are you” and assigns the tokens to, respectively, the shell variables **foo**, **bar**, and **baz**. If you further type

```
echo $foo
echo $bar
echo $baz
```

you will see:

```
hello
how
are you
```

*See Also*

**commands, sh**

*Diagnostics*

**read** normally returns an exit status of zero. If it encounters end of file or is interrupted while reading the standard input, it then returns one.

**readonly – C Keyword**

Storage class

**readonly** is a C keyword that modifies data declarations. As its name implies, the **readonly** modifier declares that data are to be read only; this helps protect key data against casual modification by the user or another programmer.

*See Also*

**C keywords, keyword**

*Notes*

The ANSI standard for the C language eliminates this keyword.

### read-only memory – Definition

As its name suggests, **read-only memory**, or ROM, is memory that can be read but not overwritten. It most often is used to store material that is used frequently or in key situations, such as a language interpreter or a boot routine.

*See Also*

**definitions, random access**

### realloc() – General Function (libc)

Reallocate dynamic memory

**char \*realloc(ptr, size) char \*ptr; unsigned size;**

**realloc** helps you manage a program's arena. It returns a block of *size* bytes that holds the contents of the old block, up to the smaller of the old and new sizes. **realloc** tries to return the same block, truncated or extended; if *size* is smaller than the size of the old block, **realloc** will return the same *ptr*.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **calloc**.

*See Also*

**arena, calloc(), free(), general functions, malloc(), memok(), setbuf()**

*Diagnostics*

**realloc** returns NULL if insufficient memory is available. It prints a message and calls **abort** if it discovers that the arena has been corrupted, which most often occurs by storing past the bounds of an allocated block. **realloc** will behave unpredictably if handed an incorrect *ptr*.

### reboot – Command

Reboot the COHERENT system

**reboot [ -p ]**

**reboot** reboots the COHERENT system. The option **-p** prompts the user if he really wishes to reboot before executing the reboot.

**reboot** can be run only by the superuser.

*The COHERENT system should be rebooted only while in single-user mode. Failure to return to single-user mode before rebooting could damage the COHERENT file system and destroy data.*

*See Also*

**commands, shutdown**

### register – C Keyword

Storage class

**register** is a C keyword that declares a class of data storage. A variable so declared may be stored in a register, which may increase the speed with which it is read by a program.

*See also*

auto, C keywords, extern, register variable, static

## register variable — Definition

**register** is a C storage class. A register declaration tells the compiler to try to keep the defined local data item in a machine register. Under the COHERENT C compiler, the **int foo** can be declared to be a register variable with the following statement:

```
register int foo;
```

COHERENT places the first two register variables declared in a function into registers SI and DI if the variable type is appropriate, i.e., **int** or SMALL-model pointer. Subsequent **register** declarations are ignored, because no registers are left to hold them. Note because of this fact, declaring more than two register variables may slow processing rather than speed it.

By definition of the C language, registers have no addresses, so you cannot pass the address of register variable as an argument to a function. For example, the following code will generate an error message when compiled:

```
register int i;
dosomething(&i); /* WRONG */
```

This rule applies whether or not the variable is actually kept in a register.

Placing heavily-used local variables into registers often improves performance, but in some cases declaring register variables can degrade performance somewhat.

*See Also*

auto, definitions, extern, static, storage class

## restor — Command

Restore file system

```
restor command [dump_device][filesystem][file ...]
```

**restor** copies to the hard disk one or more files from tapes or floppy disks written by the command **dump**.

*command* is a character from the set **rRtxX**, optionally modified by **v**, **f**, or both. The **v** (verbose) modifier tells **restor** to print a step-by-step trace of its actions when restoring an entire file system. This is for discovering what went wrong when a mass restore runs into trouble. The **f** modifier tells **restor** to take the next *argument* as the path name of the dump device (tape or floppy disk drive). If the **f** modifier is not specified, the device **/dev/dump** is used.

The **t** command tells **restor** to read the header from the dump tape, and display the date the dump tape was written and the "dump since" date that produced the dump.

The **x** and **X** commands extract individual files from the dump tape. Each *argument* is a file to be extracted. All file names are absolute path names starting at the root of the dump tape (the first directory dumped, which is always the root directory of the file system). A numeric file name is taken to be an i-number on the dumped file system, permitting restore by i-number.

**restor** looks up each *argument* file in the directories of the dumped file system and prints out each name and associated i-number. If the command is **x**, **restor** extracts the files from the dump tape into files in the current directory with names derived from the dumped file's i-number. The **X** command is similar, except that before it begins it asks the user for the reel number of the dump tape, and continues asking for dump reels until all files have been extracted or the user types EOT.

The **r** and **R** commands allow mass restoration of both full and incremental dump tapes into the *argument* file system. The file system must have enough data blocks and inodes to hold the dump.

The mass restore is performed in three phases. In the first phase, **restor** clears all i-nodes that were either clear at dump time or are going to be restored. Any allocated blocks are released. Next, it restores all files on the tape. The i-numbering is preserved; however, data blocks are allocated in the standard fashion. Finally a pass is made over the i-nodes and the list of free i-nodes in the superblock is updated.

The **R** command is to **r** as **X** is to **x**: the **r** command begins restoring immediately, while the **R** command pauses to ask for reel numbers.

### *Files*

**/dev/dump** — Dump device  
**/etc/ddate** — Dump date file

### *See Also*

**commands, dump, dumpdir**

### *Diagnostics*

Most of the diagnostics produced by **restor** are self explanatory, and are caused by internal table overflows or I/O errors on the dump tape or file system.

If the dump spans multiple reels of tape, **restor** asks the user to mount the next reel at the appropriate time. The user should type a newline when the reel has been mounted. **restor** verifies that this is the correct reel and gives the user another chance if the reel number in the dump tape header is incorrect.

### *Notes*

You cannot perform a mass restore onto a live root partition. Instead, boot a stand-alone version of COHERENT on a floppy-disk drive, or boot from an alternative COHERENT file system on another hard-disk partition before you attempt to do a mass restoration.

The handling of tapes with multiple dumps on them (created by dumping to the no rewind special files) is not very general. Basically, **restor** assumes that tapes holding multiple dumps and tapes holding dumps that span multiple reels are mutually exclusive. One can restore from any file on a reel by positioning the tape and then restoring with the **x** or **r** commands, which do not reposition the tape. It is (almost) impossible to use the **X** or **R** commands, as the position of the dump tape will be lost when **restor** closes it.

**return** – C Keyword

Return a value and control to calling function

**return** is a C statement that returns a value from a function to the function that called it. **return** can be used without a value, to return control of the program to the calling function; also, the calling function is free to ignore the value **return** hands it. Note that it is good programming practice to declare functions that return nothing to be of type **void**.

A function can return only one value to the function that called it. Most often, this value is used to signal whether the function performed successfully or not.

*See Also*

C keywords

**rev** – Command

Reverse text in lines of files

**rev** [*file* ...]

**rev** reverses the order of the characters in each line of each input *file* and writes the result to the standard output. If no *file* is specified, the standard input is used instead.

*Example*

The following allows you to give a command like Mandrake the Magician:

```
rev
rocks break down wall!
<ctrl-D>
```

which displays:

```
!llaw nwod kaerb skcor
```

on your screen.

**rewind()** – STDIO Function (libc)

Reset file pointer

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int rewind(fp) FILE *fp;
```

**rewind** resets the file pointer to the beginning of stream *fp*. It is a synonym for **fseek(*fp*, 0L, 0)**.

*Example*

For an example of this routine, see the entry for **fscanf**.

*See Also*

**fseek()**, **ftell()**, **lseek()**, **STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**rewind** returns EOF if an error occurs; otherwise, it returns zero.

**rindex()** — String Function (libc)

Find a character in a string

**char \*rindex(string, c) char \*string; char c;****rindex** scans *string* for the last occurrence of character *c*. If *c* is found, **rindex** returns a pointer to it. If it is not found, **rindex** returns **NULL**.*Example*This example uses **rindex** to help strip a sample file name of the path information.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#define PATHSEP '/' /* path name separator */
extern char *rindex();
extern char *basename();

main()
{
 printf("Before massaging: %s\n", testpath);
 printf("After massaging: %s\n", basename(testpath));
}

char *basename(path)
char *path;
{
 char *cp;
 return (((cp = rindex(path, PATHSEP)) == NULL)
 ? path : ++cp);
}
```

*See Also***index()**, **string functions***Notes*This function is identical to the function **strrchr**, which is described in the ANSI standard.COHERENT includes **strchr** in its libraries. It is recommended that it be used instead of **rindex** so that programs more closely approach strict conformity with the ANSI standard.**rm** — Command

Remove files

**rm [ -firtv ] file ...****rm** removes each *file*. If no other links exist, **rm** frees the data blocks associated with the file.To remove a file, a user must have write and execute permission on the directory in which the file resides, and must also have write permission on the file itself. The force option **-f** forces the file to be removed if the user does not have write permission on the file itself. It suppresses all error messages and prompts.

The interactive option **-i** tells **rm** to prompt for permission to delete each *file*.

The recursive removal option **-r** causes **rm** to descend into every directory, search for and delete files, and descend further into subdirectories. Directories are removed if the directory is empty, is not the current directory, and is not the root directory.

The test option **-t** performs all access testing but removes no files.

The verbose option **-v** tells **rm** to print each file **rm** and the action taken. In conjunction with the **-t** option, this allows the extent of possible damage to be previewed.

### See Also

commands, **ln**, **rmdir**

### Notes

Absence of delete permission in parent directories is reported with the message “*file: permission denied*”. Write protection is not inherited by subdirectories; they must be protected individually.

Note that unlike the similarly named command under MS-DOS, COHERENT’s version of **rm** will *not* prompt you if you request a mass deletion. Thus, the command

```
rm *
```

will silently and immediately delete all files in the current directory. *Caveat utilitor!*

## rmdir — Command

Remove directories

**rmdir** [ **-f** ] *directory* ...

**rmdir** removes each *directory*. This will not be allowed if a *directory* is the current working directory or is not empty. The force option **-f** allows the superuser to override these restrictions. **rmdir** removes the **.** and **..** entries automatically. Note that using the **-f** option on a directory that is not empty will damage the file system, and require that it be fixed with **fsck**.

### See Also

commands, **mkdir**, **rm**

### Notes

**rmdir -f** does *not* remove files from a nonempty directory; it simply orphans them. To remove a nonempty directory and its contents, use **rm -r** instead.

## root — Definition

**root** is the login name for the superuser.

### See Also

definitions, superuser

**rpow()** – Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Raise multiple-precision integer to power

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void rpow(a, b, c)
```

```
mint *a, *b, *c;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **rpow** sets the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *c* to the value pointed to by *a* raised to power of the value pointed to by *b*.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

**rvalue** – Definition

An **rvalue** is the value of an expression. The name comes from the assignment expression **e1=e2**, in which the right operand is an **rvalue**.

Unlike an **lvalue**, an **rvalue** can be either a variable or a constant.

*See Also*

**definitions**, **lvalue**



## S

## sa — Command

Process accounting

sa [-abcjlmnrstu][-v N][file]

One of the accounting mechanisms available on the COHERENT system is *process accounting* (also called *shell accounting*), which records the commands executed by each user. The command **accton** enables or disables shell accounting.

The command **sa** scans the accounting information in *file* and prints a summary. If *file* is omitted, it reads the file `/usr/adm/acct` by default. For each command executed, **sa** prints the number of calls made, the total CPU time (user and system), and the total real time. The output is ordered by decreasing CPU time.

**sa** recognizes the following options:

- a Place commands executed only once and command names with unprintable characters in the category "\*\*\*other".
- b Sort by average CPU time per call.
- c Also print CPU time as a percentage of all CPU time used.
- j Print average times per call rather than totals.
- l Separate user and system time.
- m Accumulate information for each user rather for each command.
- n Sort by number of calls.
- r Reverse the order of the sort.
- s After scanning, condense the accounting file and merge it into the summary files.
- t Also print the CPU time as a percentage of real time.
- u Print the user and command for each accounting record; this option overrides all others.
- v N For commands called no more than *N* times, where *N* is a digit, **sa** asks whether to place the command in the category "\*\*\*junk\*\*\*".

**sa** uses the summary files `/usr/adm/savacct` and `/usr/adm/usracct` to lessen disk usage.

*Files*`/usr/adm/acct` — Default account data`/usr/adm/savacct` — Summary`/usr/adm/usracct` — Summary*See Also***ac**, **acct()**, **acct.h**, **accton**, **commands**

### Notes

The file `/usr/adm/acct` can become very large; therefore, you should truncate it periodically. Special care should be taken if process accounting is enabled on a COHERENT system with limited disk space.

### **sbrk()** — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Increase a program's data space

**char \*sbrk(*increment*) unsigned int *increment*;**

**sbrk** increases a program's data space by *increment* bytes. It increments the variable `_end`; this variable is set by the C runtime startup routine, and points to the end of the program's data space. The memory allocation routine **malloc** calls **sbrk** should you attempt to allocate more space than is available in the program's data space.

**sbrk** returns a pointer to the previous setting of `_end` if the requested memory is available, or NULL if it is not.

### See Also

**brk()**, COHERENT system calls, **malloc()**

### Notes

**sbrk** will not increase the size of the program data area if the physical memory requested exceeds the physical memory allocated by COHERENT, or if the requested memory exceeds the limit set in the user-defined variable **maxmem**. **sbrk** does not keep track of how space is used; therefore, memory seized with **sbrk** cannot be freed. *Caveat utilitor*.

### **scanf()** — STDIO (libc)

Accept and format input

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int scanf(*format*, *arg1*, ... *argN*)**

**char \**format*; [data type] \**arg1*, ... \**argN*;**

**scanf** reads the standard input, and uses the string *format* to specify a format for each *arg1* through *argN*, each of which must be a pointer.

**scanf** reads one character at a time from *format*; white space characters are ignored. The percent sign character '%' marks the beginning of a conversion specification. '%' may be followed by characters that indicate the width of the input field and the type of conversion to be done.

**scanf** reads the standard input until the return key is pressed. Inappropriate characters are thrown away; e.g., it will not try to write an alphabetic character into an **int**.

The following modifiers can be used within the conversion string:

1. The asterisk '\*', which indicates that the next input field should be skipped rather than assigned to the next *arg*.
2. A string of decimal digits, which specifies a maximum field width.
3. An **l**, which specifies that the next input item is a **long** object rather than an **int** object. Capitalizing the conversion character has the same effect.

The following conversion specifiers are recognized:

- c** Assign the next input character to the next *arg*, which should be of type **char \***.
- d** Assign the decimal integer from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **int \***.
- D** Assign the decimal integer from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **long \***.
- e** Assign the floating point number from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **float \***.
- E** Assign the floating point number from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **double \***.
- f** Same as **e**.
- F** Same as **E**.
- o** Assign the octal integer from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **int \***.
- O** Assign the octal integer from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **long \***.
- s** Assign the string from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **char \***. The array to which the **char \*** points should be long enough to accept the string and a terminating null character.
- x** Assign the hexadecimal integer from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **int \***.
- X** Assign the hexadecimal integer from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **long \***.

It is important to remember that **scanf** reads up, but not through, the newline character: the newline remains in the standard input device's buffer until you dispose of it somehow. Programmers have been known to forget to empty the buffer before calling **scanf** a second time, which leads to unexpected results.

### *Example*

The following example uses **scanf** in a brief dialogue with the user.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
 int left, right;
 printf("No. of fingers on your left hand: ");
 /* force message to appear on screen */
 fflush(stdout);
 scanf("%d", &left);
}
```

```

/* eat newline char */
while(getchar() != '\n')
 ;

printf("No. of fingers on your right hand: ");
fflush(stdout);
scanf("%d", &right);

/* again, eat newline */
while(getchar() != '\n')
 ;

printf("You've %d left fingers, %d right, & %d total\n",
 left, right, left+right);
}

```

*See Also***fscanf()**, **sscanf()**, **STDIO***Diagnostics*

**scanf** returns the number of arguments filled. It returns EOF if no arguments can be filled or if an error occurs.

*Notes*

Because C does not perform type checking, it is essential that an argument match its specification. For that reason, **scanf** is best used to process only data that you are certain are in the correct data format. The use of upper-case format characters to specify long arguments is not standard; use the 'l' modifier for portability.

**scanf** is difficult to use correctly, and its misuse can be associated with intermittent and dangerous bugs. Rather than use **scanf** to obtain a string from the keyboard: it is recommended that you use **gets** to obtain the string, and use **strtok** or **sscanf** to parse it.

**scat** — Command

Print text files one screenful at a time

**scat** [ *option ...* ] [ *file ...* ] ...

**scat** prints each *file* on the standard output, one screenful (24 lines) at a time if the output is a screen. **scat** reads and prints the standard input if no *file* is named.

The text is processed to allow convenient viewing on a screen; the options described below select the nature of the processing. Options begin with '-' and may be interspersed with file names.

**scat** scans two argument lists. The first is in the environmental **SCAT**. It should consist of arguments separated by white space (space, tab, or newline characters), with no quoting or shell metacharacters. This string is a useful place to set terminal-dependent parameters (such as page width and length) and to place invocation lists (see below). The second argument list is supplied on the command line.

**scat** recognizes the following options:

- bn** Begin output at input line *n*.
- c** Represent all control characters unambiguously. With this option, **scat** prints control characters in the range 0-037 as a character in the range 0100-0137 prefixed by a caret '^'; for example, SOH appears as "^A" and DEL as "^?" It prints mark-parity characters (in the range of 0200-0377) with '~'; for example, mark-parity 'A' and SOH appear as "~A" and "~^A", respectively. It also prefixes the characters '^', '~', and '\' with a '\'. This option overrides the option **-t**.
- cs** Like **-c**, but map space ' ' to underscore '\_' and prefix underscore '\_' with '\'.
- ct** Like **-c**, but map tabs to spaces, not "^I".
- in** Shift the display window right *n* columns into the text field. This is useful for viewing long lines.
- ln** Set the display window length to *n* lines. The default is 24 normally, 34 for the Tek 4012.
- n** Number input lines; wrapped lines are not numbered.
- r** Remote; the output is not paged.
- s** Skip empty lines.
- Sn** Seek *n* bytes into input before processing.
- t** Truncate long lines. Normally, **scat** wraps each long line, with the interrupted portion delimited by a '\'.
- wn** Set the display window width to *n* columns. The default is 80 normally, 72 for the Tek 4012.
- x** Expand tabs.
- . suffix** Invoke options by file-name suffix. If a file name ends with *.suffix*, then **scat** scans the argument sublist starting immediately after the invocation flag. New options will apply to the invoking file only. A sublist is terminated by the end of the argument list, by a file name, by the "--" flag, or by another "-." (invocation lists do not nest).
- Terminate a sublist (see previous option).

Numbers may begin with 0 to indicate octal, and may end in **b** or **k** to be scaled by 512 or 1,024, respectively.

If the output is being paged, **scat** waits for a user response, which may be one of the following:

|                |                                         |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>newline</b> | Display next page                       |
| <b>/</b>       | Display next half-page                  |
| <b>space</b>   | Display next line                       |
| <b>f</b>       | Print current file name and line number |
| <b>n</b>       | <b>scat</b> next file                   |
| <b>q</b>       | Quit                                    |

*Example*

The following shows how to use the environment argument list, invocation lists, and sub-lists:

```
SCAT="-l24 -c -n -s -b5"
export SCAT
scat *.c *.s
```

After processing the **SCAT** argument list, **scat** processes the command line argument list **"\*.c \*.s"** with the page length at 24 lines. If a file is a C source (**"\*.c"**) the invoke option in the **SCAT** argument list numbers the output lines. If a file is an assembly source (**"\*.s"**) **scat** skips the first four lines.

*See Also*

**cat**, **commands**, **pr**

**sched.h** – Header File

Define constants used with scheduling  
**#define** <sys/sched.h>

**sched.h** defines constants and structures that are used by routines that perform scheduling.

*See Also*

**header files**

**sdiv()** – Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Divide multiple-precision integers  
**#include** <mprec.h>  
**void sdiv**(*a*, *n*, *q*, *ip*)  
**mint** \**a*, \**q*; **int** *n*, \**ip*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **sdiv** divides the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* with the integer *n*, which is in the range  $1 \leq n \leq 128$ . It writes the quotient into the **mint** pointed to by *q* and the remainder into the integer pointed to by *ip*.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

**security** – Technical Information

Because COHERENT is a multi-user, multi-tasking operating system which can support users from remote terminals, steps must be taken to ensure that the system is secure. Sensitive information that is stored on the system must be protected from being read or copied by unauthorized persons; files must be protected against vandalism by intruders. Unless a reasonable degree can be guaranteed, no multi-user operating system can be trusted to archive important information.

In one sense, it is easy to achieve perfect security in a computer system. As Grampp and Morris have noted, "It is easy to run a secure computer system. You merely disconnect all dial-up connections, put the machine and its terminals in a shielded room, and post a

guard at the door." For practical uses, however, security means balancing ease of access against restrictiveness: users should have easy access to what is properly theirs, and should be barred from system facilities that do not belong to them.

The COHERENT system has the following tools to assist with security.

**Passwords** Every user account can be "locked" with a password. Each user can assign her own password, and the system administrator can set passwords for the superusers **root** and **bin**.

Passwords should be changed frequently. A password should have at least six characters, should *not* be a common name or word, and preferably should include a mixture of upper- and lower-case letters, to prevent decryption by brute-force methods.

Passwords should be guarded jealously. In particular, the password for the superuser **root** should be kept secret, as she can read every file and execute every program throughout the system.

**Permissions** Execution of system-level programs, such as **mount**, is restricted to the superuser **root**. This prevents intruders from seizing superuser permissions through unauthorized manipulation of system services. Ordinary users are also restricted from directly access system devices, for the same reason.

**Encryption** The command **crypt** performs rotary encryption, similar to that used by the German Enigma machine. Files of sensitive information should be encrypted, to protect them against being read by unauthorized persons. Note that encryption is the only true defense against unauthorized reading: not even the superuser can read an encrypted file unless she has the encryption key.

Many COHERENT systems have only one user and are not networked; for such installations, the normal level of security may be an annoyance. Passwords can be turned off by using the command **passwd** to set the password to **<return>**. The command **chmod** can be used to widen access to devices and system-level utilities; see the Lexicon entry for **chmod** for more information on file access.

Security ultimately is a system-wide responsibility. To quote Grampp and Morris, "By far, the greatest security hazard for a system ... is the set of people who use it. If the people who use a machine are naive about security issues, the machine will be vulnerable regardless of what is done by the local management. This applies particularly to the system's administrators, but ordinary users should also take heed."

*See Also*

**chmod, crypt, passwd, technical information**

Grampp FT, Morris RH: UNIX operating system security. *AT&T Bell Lab Tech J* 1984;8:1649-1672.

**sed** — Command

Stream editor

**sed** [ *-n* ] [ *-e commands* ] [ *-f fscript* ] ... *file* ...

**sed** is a non-interactive text editor. It reads input from each *file*, or from the standard input if no file is named. It edits the input according to commands given in the *commands* argument and the *script* files. It then writes the edited text onto the standard output.

**sed** resembles the interactive editor **ed**, but its operation is fundamentally different. **sed** normally edits one line at a time, so it may be used to edit very large files. After it constructs a list of commands from its *commands* and *script* arguments, **sed** reads the input one line at a time into a *work area*. Then **sed** executes each command that applies to the line, as explained below. Finally, it copies the work area to the standard output (unless the *-n* option is specified), erases the work area, and reads the next input line.

*Line Identifiers*

**sed** identifies input lines by integer line numbers, beginning with one for the first line of the first *file* and continuing through each successive *file*. The following special forms identify lines:

**n** A decimal number *n* addresses the *n*th line of the input.

**.** A period '.' addresses the current input line.

**\$** A dollar sign '\$' addresses the last line of input.

**/pattern/**

A *pattern* enclosed within slashes addresses the next input line that contains *pattern*. Patterns, also called *regular expressions*, are described in detail below.

*Commands*

Each command must be on a separate line. Most commands may be optionally preceded by a line identifier (abbreviated as [*n*] in the command summary below) or by two-line identifiers separated by a comma (abbreviated as [*n*,*m*]). If no line identifier precedes a command, **sed** applies the command to every input line. If one line identifier precedes a command, **sed** applies the command to each input line selected by the identifier. If two-line identifiers precede a command, **sed** begins to apply the command when an input line is selected by the first, and continues applying it through an input line selected by the second.

**sed** recognizes the following commands:

[*n*]= Output the current input line number.

[*n*,*m*]]*command*

Apply *command* to each line *not* identified by [*n*,*m*]].

[*n*,*m*]]{*command*...}

Execute each enclosed *command* on the given lines.

:*label* Define *label* for use in branch or test command.



- [n]a** Append new text after given line. New text is terminated by any line not ending in '\.'
- b [label]** Branch to *label*, which must be defined in a ':' command. If *label* is omitted, branch to end of command script.
- [n[,m]]c** Change specified lines to new text and proceed with next input line. New text is terminated by any line not ending in '\.'
- [n[,m]]d** Delete specified lines and proceed with next input line.
- [n[,m]]D** Delete first line in work area and proceed with next input line.
- [n[,m]]g** Copy secondary work area to work area, destroying previous contents.
- [n[,m]]G** Append secondary work area to work area.
- [n[,m]]h** Copy work area to secondary work area, destroying previous contents.
- [n[,m]]H** Append work area to secondary work area.
- [n]i** Insert new text before given line. New text is terminated by any line not ending in '\.'
- [n[,m]]l** Print selected lines, interpreting non-graphic characters.
- [n[,m]]n** Print the work area and replace it with the next input line.
- [n[,m]]N** Append next input line preceded by a newline to work area.
- [n[,m]]p** Print work area.
- [n[,m]]P** Print first line of work area.
- [n]q** Quit without reading any more input.
- [n]r file** Copy *file* to output.
- [n[,m]]s[k]/pattern1/pattern2/[g]p[wfile]**  
 Search for *pattern1* and substitute *pattern2* for *k*th occurrence (default, first). If optional *g* is given, substitute all occurrences. If optional *p* is given, print the resulting line. If optional *w* is given, append the resulting line to *file*. Patterns are described in detail below.

*[n[,m]]t[label]* Test if substitutions have been made. If so, branch to *label*, which must be defined in a ':' command. If *label* is omitted, branch to end of command script.

*[n[,m]]w file*  
Append lines to *file*.

*[n[,m]]x*  
Exchange the work area and the secondary work area.

*[n[,m]]y/chars/replacements/*  
Translate characters in *chars* to the corresponding characters in *replacements*.

### Patterns

Substitution commands and search specifications may include *patterns*, also called *regular expressions*. Pattern specifications are identical to those of *ed*, except that the special characters '\n' match a newline character in the input.

A non-special character in a pattern matches itself. Special characters include the following:

^ Match beginning of line, unless it appears immediately after '[' (see below).

\$ Match end of line.

\n Match the newline character.

.

Match any character except newline.

\*

Match zero or more repetitions of preceding character.

*[chars]* Match any one of the enclosed *chars*. Ranges of letters or digits may be indicated using '-':

*[^chars]*  
Match any character *except* one of the enclosed *chars*. Ranges of letters or digits may be indicated using '-':

\c Disregard special meaning of character *c*.

\(*pattern*\)  
Delimit substring *pattern*; for use with \d, described below.

In addition, the replacement part *pattern2* of the substitute command may also use the following:

& Insert characters matched by *pattern1*.

\d Insert substring delimited by *d*th occurrence of delimiters '\(' and '\)', where *d* is a digit.

### Options

*sed* recognizes the following options:

-e Next argument gives commands.

- f Next argument gives file name of command script.
- n Output lines only when explicit p or P commands are given.

*See Also*

commands, ed

## seg.h — Header File

Definitions used with segmentation

```
#define <seg.h>
```

seg.h defines structures and constants used by routines that handle memory segmentation.

*See Also*

header files

## sem — Device Driver

Semaphore device driver

`/dev/sem` is an interface to the semaphore device driver. It is assigned major device 23 (minor device 0) and can be accessed as a character-special device.

All semaphore operations are performed through the COHERENT system call `ioctl`. The operations `semctl`, `semget`, and `semop` are performed with an integer parameter array. The first element of the array is reserved for the return value (default -1). Subsequent elements represent arguments. The call to `ioctl` passes `SEMCTL`, `SEMGET`, or `SEMOP` as the second argument, and the parameter array as the third argument. The first argument is an open file descriptor to `/dev/sem`.

### Access

Prior to accessing the devices, a entry must be created in `/dev`, as follows:

```
/etc/mknod /dev/sem c 23 0
chmod 666 /dev/sem
```

### Bugs

Allocation of too many semaphore ids (`NSEMID`) or semaphores per identifier (`NSEM`) can exhaust kernel data space, which will stop the system in its tracks.

Private semaphore sets are not supported. Semaphore ids must be removed manually when no longer required. To remove all semaphore identifiers, use the following code:

```
#include <sys/sem.h>
#define NSEMID 16

semget(0, 0); /* must do first */
for (id=0; id < NSEMID; ++id)
 semctl(id, 0, IPC_RMID, 0);
```

To load the driver `sem` into memory, use the command `drvld`.

*Files*

**/usr/include/sys/ipc.h**  
**/usr/include/sys/sem.h**  
**/dev/sem** — Device  
**/drv/sem** — Loadable device driver

*See Also*

device drivers, **drvld**, **semctl()**, **semget()**, **semop()**

**sem.h** — Header File

Definitions used by semaphore facility

**#define** <**sys/sem.h**>

**sem.h** defines constants and structures used by the COHERENT semaphore facility.

*See Also*

header files

**semctl()** — COHERENT System Call

Control semaphore operations

**#include** <**sys/sem.h**>

**semctl**(*semid*, *semnum*, *cmd*, *arg*)

**int** *semid*, *cmd*, *semnum*;

**union** *semun* {  
    **int** *val*;  
    **struct** *semid\_ds* \**buf*;  
    **unsigned short** *array*[];  
} *arg*;

**semctl** controls a variety of semaphore operations. *cmd* sets the operation to be performed; the following *cmds* are executed with respect to the semaphore specified by *semid* and *semnum*:

**GETVAL**      Return the value of **semval** (READ).  
**SETVAL**      Set the value of **semval** to *arg.val* (ALTER).  
**GETPID**      Return the value of **sempid** (READ).  
**GETNCNT**    Return the value of **semnct** (READ).  
**GETZCNT**    Return the value of **semzcnt** (READ).

The following *cmds* return and set, respectively, every **semval** in the set of semaphores.

**GETALL**      Place **semvals** into array pointed to by *arg.array* (READ).  
**SETALL**      Set *semvals* according to the array pointed to by *arg.array* (ALTER).

The following *cmds* are also available:

**IPC\_STAT**    Place the current value of each member of the data structure associated with *semid* into the structure pointed to by *arg.buf* (READ).

**IPC\_SET**

Set the value of the following members of the data structure associated with *semid* to the corresponding value found in the structure pointed to by *arg.buf*:

```
sem_perm.uid
sem_perm.gid
sem_perm.mode /* only low 9 bits */
```

This command can only be executed by a process that has an effective user identifier equal to either that of superuser or to the value of **sem\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *semid*.

**IPC\_RMID**

Remove the system identifier specified by *semid* from the system and destroy the set of semaphores and data structure associated with it. This *cmd* can only be executed by a process that has an effective user identifier equal to either that of super user or to the value of **sem\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *semid*.

**semctl** will fail if one or more of the following are true:

- *semid* is not a valid semaphore identifier [EINVAL].
- *semnum* is less than zero or greater than **sem\_nsems** [EINVAL].
- *cmd* is not a valid command [EINVAL].
- Operation permission is denied to the calling process. [EACCESS]
- *cmd* is **SETVAL** or **SETALL** and the value to which *semval* is to be set is greater than the system imposed maximum [ERANGE].
- *cmd* is equal to **IPC\_RMID** or **IPC\_SET** and the effective user identifier of the calling process is not equal to that of superuser and it is not equal to the value of **sem\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *semid* [EPERM].
- *arg.buf* points to an illegal address [EFAULT].

**Return Value**

Upon successful completion, the value returned depends on *cmd* as follows:

|                |                               |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>GETVAL</b>  | The value of <i>semval</i> .  |
| <b>GETPID</b>  | The value of <i>sempid</i> .  |
| <b>GETNCNT</b> | The value of <i>semncnt</i> . |
| <b>GETZCNT</b> | The value of <i>semzcnt</i> . |
| All others     | Zero                          |

Otherwise, **semctl** returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

**Files**

```
/usr/include/sys/ipc.h
/usr/include/sys/sem.h
/dev/sem
/dev/sem
```

*See Also*

**COHERENT system calls, sem, semget(), semop()**

*Notes*

To improve portability, the COHERENT system implements the semaphore functions as a device driver rather than as an actual system call.

### **semget()** — COHERENT System Call

Get a set of semaphores

**#include <sys/sem.h>**

**semget(key, nsems, semflg)**

**key\_t key; int nsems, semflg;**

**semget** returns the semaphore identifier associated with *key*. It creates a semaphore identifier and associated data structure and set that contains *nsems* semaphores for *key* should one of the following be true:

- *key* equals **IPC\_PRIVATE**.
- *key* does not have a semaphore identifier associated with it, and (*semflg* & **IPC\_CREAT**) is true.

When **semget** creates a data structure for a new semaphore identifier, it initializes the structure as follows:

- It sets the fields **sem\_perm.cuid**, **sem\_perm.uid**, **sem\_perm.cgid**, and **sem\_perm.gid** equal to the effective user identifier, the calling process's identifier, and the effective group identifier, respectively.
- It sets the low-order nine bits of **sem\_perm.mode** equal to the low-order nine bits of *semflg*. These nine bits define access permissions: the top three bits specify the owner's access permissions (read, write, execute), the middle three bits the owning group's access permissions, and the low three bits access permissions for others.
- **sem\_nsems** is set equal to the value of *nsems*.
- **sem\_otime** is set to zero and **sem\_ctime** to the current time.

**semget** fails if any of the following are true:

- *nsems* is either less than or equal to zero, or greater than the system imposed limit. It sets **errno** to **EINVAL**.
- A semaphore identifier exists for *key* but operation permission as specified by the low-order nine bits of *semflg* would not be granted (**EACCES**).
- A semaphore identifier exists for *key* but the number of semaphores in the set associated with it is less than *nsems* and *nsems* is not equal to zero (**EINVAL**).
- A semaphore identifier does not exist for *key* and (*semflg* & **IPC\_CREAT**) is false (**ENOENT**).
- The number of semaphore identifiers allowed system-wide would be exceeded (**ENOSPC**).

- The number of semaphores allowed system-wide would be exceeded (ENOSPC).
- A semaphore identifier exists for *key* but ( *sem\_flg* & IPC\_CREAT ) && ( *sem\_flg* & IPC\_EXCL ) is true (EEXIST).

### Return Value

Upon successful completion, `semget` returns a non-negative integer, namely a semaphore identifier. Otherwise, it returns -1 and sets `errno` to an appropriate value.

### Files

```
/usr/include/sys/ipc.h
/usr/include/sys/sem.h
/dev/sem
/drv/sem
```

### See Also

COHERENT system calls, `sem`, `semctl()`, `semop()`

### Notes

To improve portability, the COHERENT system implements the semaphore functions as a device driver rather than as an actual system call.

## semop() — COHERENT System Call

Perform semaphore operations

```
#include <sys/sem.h>
```

```
semop(semid, sops, nsops)
```

```
int semid, nsops; struct sembuf(sops)[];
```

`semop` can atomically perform a number of operations on the set of semaphores associated with the semaphore identifier *semid*. *sops* pointer to the array of semaphore-operation structures. *nsops* is the number of such structures in the array. Each structure includes the following members:

```
short sem_num; /* semaphore number */
short sem_op; /* semaphore operation */
short sem_flg; /* operation flags */
```

Each semaphore operation specified by *sem\_op* is performed on the semaphore specified by *semid* and *sem\_num*.

*sem\_op* specifies one of three semaphore operations, as follows:

- If *sem\_op* is negative, one of the following occurs:
  1. If `semval` is greater than or equal to the absolute value of *sem\_op*, the absolute value of *sem\_op* is subtracted from `semval`.
  2. If `semval` is less than the absolute value of *sem\_op* and (*sem\_flg* & IPC\_NOWAIT) is true, `semop` sets `errno` to EGAIN and returns -1.
  3. If `semval` is less than the absolute value of *sem\_op* and (*sem\_flg* & IPC\_NOWAIT) is false, `semop` increments the `semncnt` associated with the specified semaphore and suspend execution of the calling process until one of the following occurs:

- a. **semval** becomes greater than or equal to the absolute value of *sem\_op*. When this occurs, the value of **semncnt** associated with the specified semaphore is decremented, and the absolute value of *sem\_op* is subtracted from **semval**.
  - b. The *semid* for which the calling process is awaiting action is removed from the system.
  - c. The calling process receives a signal. When this occurs, the value of **semncnt** associated with the specified semaphore is decremented, and the calling process resumes execution in the manner prescribed in *signal*.
- If *sem\_op* is positive, the value of *sem\_op* is added to **semval**.
  - If *sem\_op* is zero, one of the following occurs:
    1. If **semval** is zero, **semop** returns immediately.
    2. If **semval** does not equal zero and (*sem\_flg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true, **semop** immediately returns -1, with **errno** set to **EGAIN**.
    3. If **semval** is not equal to zero and (*sem\_flg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is false, **semop** increments the **semzcnt** associated with the specified semaphore and suspends execution of the calling process until one of the following occurs:
      - a. **semval** becomes zero, at which time the value of **semzcnt** associated with the specified semaphore is decremented.
      - b. The *semid* for which the calling process is awaiting action is removed from the system.
      - c. The calling process receives a signal. When this occurs, the value of **semzcnt** associated with the specified semaphore is decremented, and the calling process resumes execution in the manner prescribed in *signal*.

**semop** fails if one or more of the following are true for any of the semaphore operations specified by *sops*:

- *semid* is not a valid semaphore identifier. **semop** sets **errno** to **EINVAL**
- *sem\_num* is less than zero or greater than or equal to the number of semaphores in the set associated with *semid* (**EFBIG**).
- *nsops* is greater than the system imposed maximum (**E2BIG**).
- Operation permission is denied to the calling process (**EACCES**).
- The operation would result in suspension of the calling process but (*sem\_flg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true (**EAGAIN**).
- An operation would cause a **semval** to overflow the system imposed limit (**ERANGE**).
- *sops* points to an illegal address (**EFAULT**).

Upon successful completion, the value of **sempid** for each semaphore specified in the array pointed to by *sops* is set equal to the process identifier of the calling process.



### Return Value

If **semop** returns due to the receipt of a signal, it returns -1 to the calling process and sets **errno** to **EINTR**. If it returns due to the removal of a *semid* from the system, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to **EDOM**.

Upon successful completion, **semop** returns the value of **semval** at the time of the call for the last operation in the array pointed to by *sops*. Otherwise, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### Files

/usr/include/sys/ipc.h  
 /usr/include/sys/sem.h  
 /dev/sem  
 /drv/sem

### See Also

COHERENT system calls, **sem**, **semctl()**, **semget()**

### Notes

The flag **SEMLUNDO** is not supported. This flag would allow semaphore operations to be undone upon the termination of the process which performed the operations.

To improve portability, the COHERENT system implements semaphore operations as a device driver rather than as an actual system call.

## set — Command

Set shell option flags and positional parameters

**set** [-ceiknstuvx [*name* ...] ]

**set** changes the options of the current shell **sh** and optionally sets the values of positional parameters. The shell variable '\$-' contains the currently set shell flags. If the optional *name* list is given, **set** assigns the positional parameters \$1, \$2 ... to the given shell variables.

**set** recognizes the following options:

- c *string*  
     Read shell commands from *string*.
- e   Exit on any error (command not found or command returning nonzero status) if the shell is not interactive.
- i   The shell is interactive, even if the terminal is not attached to it; print prompt strings. For a shell reading a script, ignore signals **SIGTERM** and **SIGINT**.
- k   Place all keyword arguments into the environment. Normally, the shell places only assignments to variables preceding the command into the environment.
- n   Read commands but do not execute them.
- s   Read commands from the standard input and write shell output to the standard error.

- t Read and execute one command rather than the entire file.
- u If the actual value of a shell variable is blank, report an error rather than substituting the null string.
- v Print each line as it is read.
- x Print each command and its arguments as it is executed.
- Cancel the -x -v options.

The shell executes `set` directly.

*See Also*

**commands, sh**

### **setbuf() – STDIO (libc)**

Set alternative stream buffers

**#include <stdio.h>**

**void setbuf(*fp*, *buffer*) FILE \**fp*; char \**buffer*;**

The standard I/O library STDIO automatically buffers all data read and written in streams, with the exception of streams to terminal devices. STDIO normally uses `malloc` to allocate the buffer, which is a `char` array `BUFSIZ` characters long; `BUFSIZ` is defined in the header file `stdio.h`.

`setbuf`'s arguments are the file stream `fp` and the `buffer` to be associated with the stream. The call should be issued after the stream has been opened, but before any input or output request has been issued. The `buffer` passed to `setbuf` may be `NULL`, in which case the stream will be unbuffered, or contains at least `BUFSIZ` bytes.

`setbuf` returns nothing.

*See Also*

**fopen(), malloc(), STDIO**

### **setgid() – COHERENT System Call**

Set group id and user id

**int setgid(*id*) int *id*;**

`setgid` sets the group id. This call can be used to set group id privileges. (For more information on group id, see `exec`.)

The call is allowed if the real id of the calling process matches `id` or is the superuser.

*See Also*

**COHERENT system calls, exec, getuid(), login, setuid()**

*Diagnostics*

`setgid` returns zero on success, or -1 on failure.

**setgrent()** – General Function (libc)

Rewind group file  
**#include <grp.h>**  
**struct group \*setgrent();**

**setgrent** rewinds the file `/etc/group`. It returns `NULL` if an error occurs.

*Files*

`/etc/group`  
`<grp.h>`

*See Also*

general functions, group

**setjmp()** – General Function (libc)

Perform non-local goto  
**#include <setjmp.h>**  
**int setjmp(env) jmp\_buf env;**

The function call is the only mechanism that C provides to transfer control between functions. This mechanism, however, is inadequate for some purposes, such as handling unexpected errors or interrupts at lower levels of a program. To answer this need, **setjmp** helps to provide a non-local *goto* facility. **setjmp** saves a stack context in *env*, and returns value zero. The stack context can be restored with the function **longjmp**. The type declaration for **jmp\_buf** is in the header file `setjmp.h`. The context saved includes the program counter, stack pointer, and stack frame.

*Example*

The following gives a simple example of **setjmp** and **longjmp**.

```
#include <setjmp.h>
jmp_buf env; /* place for setjmp to store its environment */
main()
{
 int rc;
 if(rc = setjmp(env)) { /* we come here on return */
 printf("First char was %c\n", rc);
 exit(0);
 }
 subfun(); /* this never returns */
}
subfun()
{
 char buf[80];
```

```
do {
 printf("Enter some data\n");
 gets(buf); /* get data */
} while(!buf[0]); /* retry on null line */
longjmp(env, buf[0]); /* buf[0] must be non zero */
}
```

*See Also*

**general functions**, **getenv()**, **longjmp()**

*Notes*

Programmers should note that many user-level routines cannot be interrupted and reentered safely. For that reason, improper use of **setjmp** and **longjmp** can create mysterious and irreproducible bugs. The use of **longjmp** to exit interrupt exception or signal handlers is particularly hazardous.

**setjmp.h** – Header File

Define **setjmp()** and **longjmp()**

**#include <setjmp.h>**

**setjmp.h** defines the structure **jmp\_buf** for a **setjmp** environment.

*See Also*

**header file**, **longjmp**, **setjmp**

**setpwent()** – General Function (libc)

Rewind password file

**#include <pwd.h>**

**setpwent()**

The COHERENT system has five routines that search the file **/etc/passwd**, which contains information about every user of the system. The returned structure **passwd** is defined in the header file **pwd.h**, as follows:

```
struct passwd {
 char *pw_name; /* login user name */
 char *pw_passwd; /* login password */
 int pw_uid; /* login user id */
 int pw_gid; /* login group id */
 int pw_quota; /* file quota (unused) */
 char *pw_comment; /* comments (unused) */
 char *pw_gecos; /* (unused) */
 char *pw_dir; /* working directory */
 char *pw_shell; /* initial program */
};
```

For detailed descriptions of the above fields, see the entry for **passwd**.

**setpwent** rewinds the password file, which allows searches to begin from the beginning of the file.

*Files*

/etc/passwd  
<pwd.h>

*See Also*

endpwent(), general functions, getpwent(), getpwnam(), getpwuid(), pwd.h

*Diagnostics*

setpwent returns NULL for any error.

**settz() — Time Function**

Set local time zone

```
#include <time.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
void settz()
extern long timezone; char *tzname[2][16];
```

**settz** is one of the suite of COHERENT functions that control and display the system's time. It searches for the environmental parameter **TIMEZONE**, which gives information on the local time zone. For more information on **TIMEZONE**, see its Lexicon entry.

If **TIMEZONE** is set, **settz** initializes the external variables **timezone** and **tzname**. **timezone** contains the number of seconds to be subtracted from GMT to obtain local standard time. **tzname[0]** and **tzname[1]** are character arrays that hold, respectively, the names of the local standard time zone and the local daylight saving time zone. If **TIMEZONE** is not set, **timezone** defaults to 0, **tzname[0]** to GMT, and **tzname[1]** to the empty string.

*See Also*

date, ftime(), time, TIMEZONE

**setuid() — COHERENT System Call**

Set user id  
int setuid(id) int id;

**setuid** sets the real user id and the user id of the calling process to *id*. (For more information on the user id, see **exec**).

The call is allowed if the real id of the calling process matches *id* or is the superuser.

*See Also*

COHERENT system calls, exec, getuid(), login, setgid()

*Diagnostics*

**setuid** returns zero on success, or -1 on failure.

**sgTTY.h — Header File**

Definitions used to control terminal I/O  
#define <sgTTY.h>

**sgTTY.h** defines structures, constants, and macros used by routines that control terminal I/O.

*See Also*  
header files

## sh — Command

Command language interpreter  
**sh** [-ceiknustuvx] token ...

**sh**, also called the *shell*, is the default COHERENT command language interpreter. Other command languages can be provided on a per-user basis. The tutorial included in this manual describes the shell in detail.

The shell reads commands from the terminal or from a file and interprets them. A command may be either a program or a text file containing other commands. Shell constructs provide control flow logic. Commands can contain *patterns*, which the shell expands into file names. The shell can redirect input and output.

### Commands

A command consists of a command name and optional command arguments, called *tokens*. A token is a string of graphic characters separated by spaces or tabs. Normally, the first token in a command is the command name.

Commands are combined with the pipe operator '|' to form *pipelines*. In the pipeline

```
a | b
```

the shell passes the standard output of **a** to the standard input of **b**. The shell runs each command in the pipeline as a separate process, and waits for the last command to finish before continuing.

Commands and pipelines can be joined into a *sequence* by using the tokens ';', '&', '&&', and '||', in addition to newlines. The shell executes commands or pipelines separated by newlines or by ';' sequentially. For example,

```
a | b ; c | d
```

first executes the pipeline **a | b** and then executes the pipeline **c | d**. The shell executes any command followed by '&' asynchronously as a background (or detached) process and prints its process id. The shell executes the command following the token '&&' only if the preceding command returns a zero exit status, signifying success. Similarly, it executes the command following '||' only if the preceding command returns a nonzero exit status, signifying failure. Newline, ';', and '&' bind less tightly than '&&' and '||'; the shell parses command lines from left to right if separators bind equally.

### I/O Redirection

The *standard input*, *standard output*, and *standard error* streams are normally connected to the terminal. A pipeline attaches the output of one command to the input of another command. In addition, the operators '>', '>>', '<', and '<<' redirect the standard output and the standard input.

Output redirection sends standard output to *file* rather than to the terminal:

```
>file
```

creates *file* if it does not exist, and destroys its previous contents if it does exist. The operator

```
>>file
```

appends standard output to an existing *file*, or creates *file* if it does not exist.

In input redirection,

```
<file
```

accepts standard input from *file* rather than from the terminal. The input redirection operator

```
<<token
```

accepts standard input from the shell input until the next line containing only *token* in the shell input. The shell input between *tokens* is called a *here document*. The shell will perform parameter substitution on the here document unless the leading *token* is quoted; parameter substitution and quoting are described below.

The standard input and output may also be redirected to duplicate other file descriptors. The operator '<&n' duplicates the standard input from file descriptor *n*, and '>&n' duplicates the standard output. The operators '<&-' and '>&-' close the standard input and output.

Other descriptors may be redirected by preceding the '<' or '>' with the digit of the descriptor to be redirected. For example,

```
2>&1
```

redirects file descriptor 2 (the standard error) to file descriptor 1 (the standard output). The system call `dup` performs file descriptor duplication.

Each command executed as a foreground process inherits the file descriptors and signal traps (described below) of the invoking shell, modified by any specified redirection. Background processes take input from the null device `/dev/null` (unless redirected) and ignore interrupt and quit signals.

### *File Name Patterns*

The shell interprets an input *token* containing any of the special characters '?', '\*', or '[' as a file name *pattern*. The question mark '?' matches any single character except newline. The asterisk '\*' matches a string of non-newline characters of any length (including zero). Square brackets '[' ]' enclose alternatives to match a single character; as in `ed`, ranges of characters can be separated by '-'. The slash '/' and leading period '.' must be matched explicitly in a pattern. The shell generates an alphabetized list of file names matching the pattern to replace the *token*. It passes the *token* unchanged if it finds no match.

In addition, the characters '\', '"', and '' remove the special meaning of other characters. The backslash '\' quotes the following character. The shell ignores a backslash immediately followed by a newline, called a *concealed newline*. A pair of apostrophes '' prevents interpretation of any enclosed special characters. A pair of quotation marks "" has the same effect, except that parameter substitution and command output substitution (described below) occur within quotation marks.

### Scripts

Shell commands can be stored in a file, or *script*. The command

```
sh script [parameter ...]
```

executes the commands in *script* with a new subshell **sh**. Each *parameter* is a value for a positional parameter, as described below. If *script* has been made executable with the **chmod** command, the **sh** may be omitted.

Formal parameters of the form '\$*n*', where *n* ranges from zero through nine, represent positional parameters in a script. The parameter '\$0' gives the name of the script. If no corresponding actual parameter is given on the command line, the shell substitutes the null string for the positional parameter. The shell substitutes the actual values of all positional parameters for the reference '\$\*'.

Commands in a script can also be executed with the . (dot) command. It resembles the **sh** command, but the current shell executes the script commands without creating a new subshell or a new environment; positional parameters are not allowed.

### Variables

Shell variables are names which may be assigned string values on a command line, in the form

```
name=value
```

The name must begin with a letter, and may contain letters, digits, and underscores '\_'. In shell input, '\$*name*' or '\${*name*}' represents the value of the variable. If an assignment precedes a command on the same command line, the effect of the assignment is local to the command; otherwise, the effect is permanent. For example,

```
kp=one testproc
```

assigns variable **kp** the value **one** only for the execution of the script **testproc**.

The shell sets the following variables:

- # The number of actual positional parameters given to the current command.
- @ The list of positional parameters "\$1 \$2 ...".
- \* The list of positional parameters "\$1" "\$2" ... (the same as '@' unless quoted).
- Options set in the invocation of the shell or by the **set** command.
- ? The exit status returned by the last command.
- ! The process number of the last command invoked with '&'. ...
- \$ The process number of the current shell.

The shell also references the following variables:

- HOME** Initial working directory; usually specified in the password file */etc/passwd*.
- IFS** Delimiters for tokens; usually space, tab and newline.



**LASTERROR**

Name of last command returning nonzero exit status.

**MAIL**

Checked at the end of each command. If file specified in this variable is new since last command, the shell prints "You have mail." on the user's terminal.

**PATH**

Colon-separated list of directories searched for commands.

**PS1**

First prompt string, usually '\$'.

**PS2**

Second prompt string, usually '>'. Used when the shell expects more input, such as when an open quote has been typed but a close quote has not been typed, or within a shell construct.

The special forms `${namectoken}`, where *c* is one of the characters '-', '=', '+', or '?', perform conditional parameter substitution. The shell replaces the form `${name-token}` by the value of *name* if it is set and by *token* otherwise. The '=' form has the same effect, but also sets the value of *name* to *token* if it was not set previously. The shell replaces the '+' form by *token* if the given *name* is set. The shell replaces the '?' form by the value of *name* if set, and otherwise prints *token* and exits from the shell.

*Command Output Substitution*

The shell can use the output of a command as shell input (as command arguments, for example) by enclosing the command in grave characters '`'. To list directories given in a file *dirs*, use the command

```
ls -l `cat dirs`
```

*Constructs*

The shell provides control over execution of commands by the **break**, **case**, **continue**, **for**, **if**, **until**, and **while** constructs. The shell recognizes each reserved word only if it occurs unquoted as the first token of a command. This implies that a separator must precede each reserved word in the following constructs. For example, newline or ';' must precede **do** in the **for** construct.

**break** [*n*]

Exit from **for**, **until**, or **while**. If *n* is given, exit from *n* levels.

**case** *token* **in** [ *pattern* [ | *pattern* ] ... ] *sequence*; ] ... **esac**

Check the *token* against each *pattern*, and execute the *sequence* associated with the first matching *pattern*.

**continue** [*n*]

Branch to the end of the *n*th enclosing **for**, **until**, or **while** construct.

**for** *name* [ **in** *token* ... ] **do** *sequence* **done**

Execute *sequence* once for each member of the specified *token* list. On each iteration, the *name* takes the value of the next *token* in the list. If the **in** clause is omitted, `$@` is assumed. For example, to list all files ending with `.c`:

```
for i in *.c
do cat $i
done
```

**if** *seq1* **then** *seq2* [**elif** *seq3* **then** *seq4* ] ... [**else** *seq5* ] **fi**  
 Execute *seq1*. If the exit status is zero, execute *seq2*. If not, execute the optional *seq3* if given. If its exit status is zero, execute *seq4* and so on. If the exit status of each tested sequence is nonzero, execute *seq5*.

**until** *sequence1* [**do** *sequence2* ] **done**  
 Execute *sequence2* until the execution of *sequence1* results in an exit status of zero.

**while** *sequence1* [**do** *sequence2* ] **done**  
 Execute *sequence2* as long as the execution of *sequence1* results in an exit status of zero.

(*sequence*) Execute the *sequence* within a subshell. This allows the *sequence* to change the current directory, for example, and not affect the enclosing environment.

{*sequence*} Braces simply enclose a *sequence*.

### Special Commands

The shell usually executes commands by a **fork** system call, which creates another process. However, the shell executes the commands in this section either directly or with an **exec** system call. The Lexicon describes **fork** and **exec**.

**. script** Read and execute commands from *script*. Positional parameters are not allowed. The shell searches **PATH** to find the given *script*.

**:** [*token ...*]

A colon ':' indicates a "partial comment". The shell normally ignores all commands on a line that begins with a colon, except for redirection and such symbols as \$, {, ?, etc.

**#** A complete comment: if # is the first character on a line, the shell ignores all text that follows on that line.

**cd** [*dir*] Change the working directory to *dir*. If no argument is given, change to the home directory.

**eval** [*token ...*]

Evaluate each *token* and treat the result as shell input.

**exec** [*command*]

Execute *command* directly rather than performing **fork**. This terminates the current shell.

**exit** [*status*]

Set the exit status to *status*, if given; otherwise, the previous status is unchanged. If the shell is not interactive, terminate it.

**export** [*name ...*]

The shell executes each command in an *environment*, which is essentially a set of shell variable names and corresponding string values. The shell inherits an environment when invoked, and normally it passes the same environment to each command it invokes. **export** specifies that the shell should pass the modified value of each given *name* to the environment of subsequent commands. When no *name* is given, the shell prints the name and value of each variable marked

for export.

**read** *name ...*

Read a line from the standard input and assign each token of the input to the corresponding shell variable *name*. If the input contains fewer tokens than the *name* list, assign the null string to extra variables. If the input contains more tokens, assign the last *name* the remainder of the input.

**readonly** [*name ...*]

Mark each shell variable *name* as a read only variable. Subsequent assignments to read only variables will not be permitted. With no arguments, print the name and value of each read only variable.

**set** [-ceiknstvux [*name ...*]]

Set listed flag. If *name* list is provided, set shell variables *name* to values of positional parameters beginning with \$1.

**shift** Rename positional parameter 1 to current value of \$2, and so on.

**times** Print the total user and system times for all executed processes.

**trap** [*command*] [*n ...*]

Execute *command* if the shell receives signal *n*. If *command* is omitted, reset traps to original values. To ignore a signal, pass null string as *command*. With *n* zero, execute *command* when the shell exits. With no arguments, print the current trap settings.

**umask** [*nnn*]

Set user file creation mask to *nnn*. If no argument is given, print the current file creation mask.

**wait** [*pid*]

Hold execution of further commands until process *pid* terminates. If *pid* is omitted, wait for all child processes. If no children are active, this command finishes immediately.

### Options

**-c** *string*

Read shell commands from *string*.

**-e** Exit on any error (command not found or command returning nonzero status) if the shell is not interactive.

**-i** The shell is interactive, even if the terminal is not attached to it; print prompt strings. For a shell reading a script, ignore the signals SIGTERM and SIGINT.

**-k** Place all keyword arguments into the environment. Normally, the shell places only assignments to variables preceding the command into the environment.

**-n** Read commands but do not execute them.

**-s** Read commands from the standard input and write shell output to the standard error.

- t Read and execute one command rather than the entire file.
- u If the actual value of a shell variable is blank, report an error rather than substituting the null string.
- v Print each line as it is read.
- x Print each command and its arguments as it is executed.
- Cancel the -x and -v options.

If the first character of argument 0 is '-', the shell reads and executes the scripts `/etc/profile` and `$HOME/.profile` before reading the standard input. `/etc/profile` is a convenient place for initializing system-wide variables, such as `TIMEZONE`.

### Examples

The first example is a shell script that moves to the next alphabetical sibling directory.

```
DEF_NAME is a command that defines the current directory name.
DEF_NAME="basename `pwd`"

CUR_DIR current directory name.
CUR_DIR=`$DEF_NAME`

If current directory is root exit, else
go to the parent directory.
if [$CUR_DIR = '/']; then
 echo This is root directory.
 exit
else
 cd ..
fi

DIR_NUM is the alphabetical number of the current directory
in the directory list of the parent directory.
DIR_NUM=`lc -dl | sed -n -e "/ $CUR_DIR/="`

NEXT is the number of the next alphabetical directory.
NEXT=`expr $DIR_NUM + 1`

If next directory exists then come to this directory,
else stay in parent directory.
if [$NEXT -le `lc -dl | wc -l`]; then
 cd `lc -dl | sed -n -e $NEXT\p`
fi
```

The second example is a script that logs UUCP information to a file. Usage is `uuinfo outfile`, where `outfile` is the file to hold the logged information.

```
OUTFILE=$1
```

```

> $OUTFILE
echo "Descriptive text for top of file, ended by Ctrl-D:"
echo "UUCP and Com Port Information." >> $OUTFILE
cat >> $OUTFILE
echo "===== " >> $OUTFILE

echo "/usr/lib/uucp" >> $OUTFILE
(
 cd /usr/lib/uucp
 echo "===== "
 ls -l L.sys L-devices Permissions
 echo "===== "
 echo "L.sys"
 echo "===== "
 cat L.sys
 echo "===== "
 echo "L-devices"
 echo "===== "
 cat L-devices
 echo "===== "
 echo "Permissions"
 echo "===== "
 cat Permissions
 echo "===== "
) >> $OUTFILE

echo "/etc/ttys" >> $OUTFILE
echo "===== " >> $OUTFILE
ls -l /etc/ttys >> $OUTFILE
echo "===== " >> $OUTFILE
cat /etc/ttys >> $OUTFILE
echo "===== " >> $OUTFILE
echo "/dev/com*" >> $OUTFILE
echo "===== " >> $OUTFILE
ls -l /dev/com* >> $OUTFILE
echo "===== " >> $OUTFILE
echo "End of file." >> $OUTFILE
echo "$OUTFILE written."
echo "Remove confidential passwords & phone numbers from $OUTFILE."

```

### Files

**/etc/profile** — System-wide initial commands  
**\$HOME/.profile** — User-specific initial commands  
**/dev/null** — For background input  
**/tmp/sh\*** — Temporaries

### See Also

**commands, dup(), environ, exec, fork(), login, newgrp, signal(), test**  
*Introduction to sh, the Bourne Shell, tutorial*

*Diagnostics*

The shell notes on the standard error syntax errors in commands and commands which it cannot find. Syntax errors cause a noninteractive shell to exit. It gives error messages if I/O redirection is incorrect. The shell returns the exit status of the last command executed or the status specified by an **exit** command.

**SHELL** — Environmental Variable

Name the default shell

**SHELL**=*shell*

The environmental variable **SHELL** names the shell that COHERENT invokes when you log in. The default is **SHELL**=/bin/sh, which invokes the Bourne shell.

*See Also*

**environmental variables**, **sh**

**shellsort()** — General Function (libc)

Sort arrays in memory

**void shellsort**(*data*, *n*, *size*, *comp*)

**char \*data**; **int n**, **size**; **int (\*comp)**();

**shellsort** is a generalized algorithm for sorting arrays of data in memory, using D. L. Shell's sorting method. **shellsort** works with a sequential array of memory called *data*, which is divided into *n* parts of *size* bytes each. In practice, *data* is usually an array of pointers or structures, and *size* is the **sizeof** the pointer or structure.

Each routine compares pairs of items and exchanges them as required. The user-supplied routine to which *comp* points performs the comparison. It is called repeatedly, as follows:

```
(*comp)(p1, p2)
char *p1, *p2;
```

Here, *p1* and *p2* each point to a block of *size* bytes in the *data* array. In practice, they are usually pointers to pointers or pointers to structures. The comparison routine must return a negative, zero, or positive result, depending on whether *p1* is less than, equal to, or greater than *p2*, respectively.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this routine, see the entry for **string**.

*See Also*

**ctype**, **general functions**, **qsort()**

*The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 3, pp. 84ff, 114ff

*Notes*

**shellsort** differs from the sort function **qsort** in that it uses an iterative algorithm that does not require much stack.

**shift** — Command

Shift positional parameters  
**shift**

Commands to the shell **sh** can be stored in a file, or *script*. Positional parameters pass command line information to a script, as described in the article on **sh**.

**shift** changes the values of positional parameters. The old parameter values **\$2**, **\$3**, ... become the new parameter values **\$1**, **\$2** .... **shift** also reduces the value of  **\$#**, which gives the number of positional parameters, by one.

The shell executes **shift** directly.

*See Also*

**commands**, **sh**

**shm** — Device Driver

Shared memory device driver

The device **/dev/shm** is an interface to the shared memory device driver. It is assigned major device 24 (minor device 0) and can be accessed as a character-special device.

Shared memory access operations are performed by seeks, reads, and writes through the interface **/dev/shm**. The desired seek location is  $(\text{shm}id \ll 16L) + \text{offset}$ .

Shared memory control operations are performed through the system call **ioctl**. The operations **shmctl** and **shmget** are performed with an integer parameter array. The first element of the array is reserved for the return value (default, -1). Subsequent elements represent arguments. **ioctl** passes **SHMCTL**, **SHMGET**, **SHMAT**, or **SHMDT** as the second argument, and the parameter array as the third argument. The first argument is an open file descriptor to **/dev/shm**. Seeks, reads, and writes on shared memory can be performed through the file descriptor **shmfd**.

*Access*

To access shared memory, do the following:

1. Be sure that **/dev/shm** is present as a special-character file with major number 24, minor number 0, and broad enough permissions. The command

```
/etc/mknod /dev/shm c 24 0
```

will create **/dev/shm** if it does not yet exist.

2. Become the superuser **root**. Execute the command

```
/etc/drvld /drv/shm
```

to load the driver.

3. Use the COHERENT system call **shmget()** to create a shared-memory segment and obtain **shm**id value for it.
4. Use the COHERENT system call **lseek()** to position for read or write of a shared-memory segment. The first argument to **lseek** is **shmfd**, which is an external declared in **<sys/shm.h>**. The second argument to **lseek** is a long whose high

word is the segment identifier **shmid** and whose low word is the offset within the shared-memory segment. The third argument to **lseek** is zero.

5. Use the COHERENT system calls **read()** and **write()** to access the segment. Again, use **shmfild** as the file descriptor.
6. When you are finished using shared memory, use the call

```
shmctl(shmid, IPC_RMID, 0)
```

to remove segments when you are finished.

7. Finally, use **ps -d** to obtain the process identifier of the shared-memory driver. To unload the driver, become the superuser **root**, and then type the command

```
kill -9 xxxx
```

where **xxxx** is the process identifier for the **shm** driver.

Note that this manner of proceeding is not entirely in the spirit of System V IPC shared memory: COHERENT does not support functions **shmat()** and **shmdt()**. Unfortunately, true attachment of shared segments is not possible in SMALL-model systems.

### *Notes*

If you allocate too many shared memory identifiers, you will exhaust kernel data space, and thus halt the system in its tracks.

Creating many large shared memory segments can exhaust main memory, as shared memory segments do not currently support swapping.

The functions **shmat** and **shmdt** are not currently supported.

Private shared memory is not supported. Shared memory segments must be removed manually when no longer required. To remove all shared memory segments use the following C code:

```
#include <sys/shm.h>
#define NSHMID 16
shmget(0, 0, 0); /* must do first */
for (id=0; id < NSHMID; ++id)
 shmctl(id, IPC_RMID, 0);
```

To load **shm** into memory, use the command **drvld**.

### *Files*

```
/usr/include/sys/ipc.h
/usr/include/sys/shm.h
/dev/shm
/drv/shm
```

### *See Also*

device drivers, **drvld**, **shmctl()**, **shmget()**



## shm.h – Header File

Definitions used with shared memory

```
#define <sys/shm.h>
```

**shm.h** defines constants and macros used by routines that implement the COHERENT shared-memory facility.

*See Also*

header files

## shmctl() – COHERENT System Call

Control shared-memory operations

```
#include <sys/shm.h>
```

```
shmctl(shmid, cmd, buf)
```

```
int shmid, cmd; struct shmids *buf;
```

**shmctl** provides controls the COHERENT system's shared-memory facility. *cmd* specifies the operation to perform, as follows:

**IPC\_STAT** Place the current value of each member of the data structure associated with *shmid* into the structure pointed to by *buf*.

**IPC\_SET** Set the value of the following members of the data structure associated with *shmid* to the corresponding value found in the structure pointed to by *buf*:

```
shm_perm.uid
```

```
shm_perm.gid
```

```
shm_perm.mode /* only low 9 bits */
```

This *cmd* can be executed only by a process whose effective user ID equals either that of the superuser or **shm\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *shmid*.

**IPC\_RMID** Remove the system identifier specified by *shmid* from the system and destroy the shared memory segment and data structure associated with it. This *cmd* can be executed only by a process whose effective user ID equals either that of the superuser or **shm\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *shmid*.

**shmctl** fails if any of the following is true:

- *shmid* is not a valid shared memory identifier **shmget** sets **errno** to **EINVAL**.
- *cmd* is not a valid command (**EINVAL**).
- *cmd* equals **IPC\_STAT** and operation permission is denied to the calling process (**EACCES**).
- *cmd* equals **IPC\_RMID** or **IPC\_SET** and the effective user identifier of the calling process does not equal either that of the superuser nor **shm\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *shmid* (**EPERM**).

- *buf* points to an illegal address (EFAULT).

### *Return Value*

Upon successful completion, `shmctl` returns zero; otherwise, it returns -1 and sets `errno` to an appropriate value.

### *Files*

`/usr/include/sys/ipc.h`  
`/usr/include/sys/shm.h`  
`/dev/shm`  
`/drv/shm`

### *See Also*

COHERENT system calls, `shm`, `shmget()`

### *Notes*

To improve portability, the COHERENT system implements its shared-memory functions as a device driver instead of as an actual system call.

## **shmget()** – COHERENT System Call

Get shared-memory segment

```
#include <sys/shm.h>
```

```
shmget(key, size, shmflg)
```

```
key_t key; int size, shmflg;
```

`shmget` returns the shared-memory identifier associated with *key*.

A shared-memory identifier and associated data structure and shared memory segment of size *size* bytes is created for *key* if *key* does not already have a shared-memory identifier associated with it, and (*shmflg* & `IPC_CREAT`) is true.

Upon creation, the data structure associated with the new shared memory identifier is initialized as follows:

- `shm_perm.cuid`, `shm_perm.uid`, `shm_perm.cgid`, and `shm_perm.gid` are set equal to the effective user ID and effective group ID, respectively, of the calling process.
- The low-order nine bits of `shm_perm.mode` are set equal to the low-order nine bits of *shmflg*. These nine bits define access permissions: the top three bits give the owner's access permissions (read, write, execute), the middle three bits the owning group's access permissions, and the low three bits access permissions for others.
- `shm_segsz` is set equal to the value of *size*.
- `shm_lpid`, `shm_nattch`, `shm_atime`, and `shm_dtime` are set equal to zero. `shm_ctime` is set equal to the current time.

`shmget` fails if any of the following is true:

- *size* is less than the system-imposed minimum or greater than the system-imposed maximum. `shmget` sets `errno` to `EINVAL`.

- A shared-memory identifier exists for *key* but operation permission as specified by the low-order nine bits of *shmflg* would not be granted (EACCESS).
- A shared-memory identifier exists for *key* but the size of the segment associated with it is less than *size* and *size* is not equal to zero (EINVAL).
- A shared-memory identifier does not exist for *key* and (*shmflg* & IPC\_CREAT) is false (ENOENT).
- A shared-memory identifier is to be created but the system-imposed limit on the maximum number of allowed shared memory identifiers system-wide would be exceeded (ENOSPC).
- A shared-memory identifier and associated shared-memory segment are to be created, but the amount of available physical memory is not sufficient to fill the request (ENOMEM).
- A shared-memory identifier exists for *key* but ( (*shmflg* & IPC\_CREAT) && (*shmflg* & IPC\_EXCL) ) is true (EEXIST).

### Return Value

Upon successful completion, **shmget** returns a shared-memory identifier, which is always a non-negative integer. Otherwise, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### Files

/usr/include/sys/ipc.h  
 /usr/include/sys/shm.h  
 /dev/shm  
 /drv/shm

### See Also

COHERENT system calls, **shm**, **shmctl()**

### Notes

To improve portability, the COHERENT system implements its shared-memory functions as a device driver rather than actual system calls.

## short — C Keyword

Data type

**short** is a numeric data type. By definition, it cannot be longer than an **int**. Under COHERENT, an **int** is equal to an **short**; that is, both **sizeof int** and **sizeof short** equals two **chars**, or 15 bits plus a sign. A **short** normally is sign extended when cast to a larger data type; however, an **unsigned short** will be zero extended when cast.

### See Also

C keywords, data format, data type

### shutdown – Command

Shut down the COHERENT system  
`/etc/shutdown`

**shutdown** shuts down the COHERENT system. It is a shell script that leads you through each step of system shutdown. Only the superuser **root** can run **shutdown**. When shut down has been completed, the COHERENT system is in single-user mode. At this point, the user can safely run **fsck**, reboot the system, or turn the computer off.

*Failure to shut down the system before rebooting or shutting off the computer could damage the COHERENT file system and destroy data.*

*See Also*

**commands, reboot**

### signal() – COHERENT System Call

Specify disposition of a signal  
`#include <signal.h>`  
`int (*signal(signalnum, action))()`  
`int signal, (*action)();`

A process can receive a *signal*, or interrupt, from a hardware exception, terminal input, or a **kill** call made by another process. A hardware exception might be caused by an illegal instruction code or a bad machine address, caught by the segmentation hardware. A terminal interrupt character, described in detail in **tty**, generates a process interrupt (and in one case a core dump file for debugging purposes).

When a process receives a signal, it performs an appropriate *action*. The default action **SIG\_DFL** causes the process to terminate. By calling **signal**, you can specify what action the process takes when it receives a given signal *signalnum* is the number of the signal, and *action* points to the routine to execute when *signalnum* is received. The action **SIG\_IGN** causes a signal to be ignored. Note that the signal **SIGKILL**, which kills a process, can be neither caught nor ignored. **signal** returns a pointer to the previous action.

With the exception of **SIGILL** and **SIGTRAP**, caught signals are reset to the default action **SIG\_DFL**. To catch a signal again, the specified *action* must reissue the **signal** call.

The following list gives machine-independent signals by symbolic name (defined in the header file **signal.h**), numeric value, and description. Signals marked by an asterisk produce a core dump if the action is **SIG\_DFL**.

|                |     |                          |
|----------------|-----|--------------------------|
| <b>SIGHUP</b>  | 1   | Hangup                   |
| <b>SIGINT</b>  | 2   | Interrupt                |
| <b>SIGQUIT</b> | 3*  | Quit                     |
| <b>SIGALRM</b> | 4   | Alarm clock              |
| <b>SIGTERM</b> | 5   | Termination              |
| <b>SIGREST</b> | 6   | Restart indication       |
| <b>SIGSYS</b>  | 7*  | Bad system call argument |
| <b>SIGPIPE</b> | 8   | Write on closed pipe     |
| <b>SIGKILL</b> | 9   | Kill                     |
| <b>SIGTRAP</b> | 10* | Breakpoint               |
| <b>SIGSEGV</b> | 11* | Segmentation violation   |

The following lists gives machine-dependent signals defined in the header file **msig.h**.

The following signals are specific to the Zilog Z8002 version of COHERENT:

|               |     |                           |
|---------------|-----|---------------------------|
| <b>SIGUNI</b> | 12* | Unimplemented instruction |
| <b>SIGPRV</b> | 13* | Privileged instruction    |
| <b>SIGNVI</b> | 14* | Non-vectorred interrupt   |
| <b>SIGPAR</b> | 15* | Parity error              |

The following signals are specific to the Zilog Z8001 version of COHERENT:

|               |     |                                              |
|---------------|-----|----------------------------------------------|
| <b>SIGEPA</b> | 12* | Extended processor trap                      |
| <b>SIGPRV</b> | 13* | Privileged instruction                       |
| <b>SIGNVI</b> | 14* | Non-vectorred interrupt                      |
| <b>SIGNMI</b> | 15* | Non-maskable interrupt (not in all versions) |

The following signals are specific to the Intel 8086 or 80286 version of COHERENT:

|                |     |              |
|----------------|-----|--------------|
| <b>SIGDIVE</b> | 12* | Divide error |
| <b>SIGOVFL</b> | 13* | Overflow     |

A signal may be caught during a system call that has not yet returned. In this case, the system call appears to fail, with **errno** set to **EINTR**. If desired, such an interrupted system call may be reissued. System calls which may be interrupted in this way include **pause**, **read** on a device such as a terminal, **write** on a pipe, and **wait**.

*See Also*

**COHERENT** system call, **kill**, **ptrace()**, **sh**, **signame**

*Diagnostics*

**signal** returns a pointer to the previous action on success. It returns **(int)-1** for invalid *signum*.

## signal.h — Header Files

Declare signals

**#include <signal.h>**

The header file **signal.h** declares manifest constants that name all of the machine-independent signals that the COHERENT system uses to communicate with its processes. The header file **msig.h** declares constants for the machine-dependent signals.

*See Also*

header files, kill, msig.h, signal()

### **signame** – Technical Information

Array of names of signals

```
#include <signal.h>
```

```
extern char *signame[NSIG+1];
```

When a program terminates abnormally, its parent process receives a byte of termination information from the wait call. This byte contains a signal number, as defined in the header file **signal.h**. For example, **SIGINT** indicates an interrupt from the terminal.

The array **signame**, indexed by signal number, contains strings that give the meaning of each signal. Thus, **signame[SIGINT+1]** points to the string “interrupt”. For portability reasons, all programs which wait on child processes (such as the shell **sh**) should use **signame**.

*Files*

<signal.h>

*See Also*

**sh**, **signal()**, technical information, wait

### **sin()** – Mathematics function (libm)

Calculate sine

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double sin(radian) double radian;
```

**sin** calculates the sine of its argument *radian*, which must be in radian measure.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos**.

*See Also*

mathematics library

### **sinh()** – Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate hyperbolic sine

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double sinh(radian) double radian;
```

**sinh** calculates the hyperbolic sine of *radian*, which is in radian measure.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **cosh**.

*See Also*

mathematics library

**size** — Command

Print size of an object file

**size** [*file* ...]

**size** prints the sizes, in bytes, of the segments of each (in decimal) and also prints the total size of all the segments (in both decimal and octal). Each *file* must be an object file.

One line is output for each file, listing the following segments:

- Shared instructions
- Private instructions
- Uninitialized instructions
- Shared data
- Private data
- Uninitialized data

If you specify the **-c** option, the total size of the common areas is displayed immediately after the uninitialized data.

*See Also*

**commands**, **l.out.h**

*Notes*

**size** makes no concessions to machines that use hexadecimal.

**sizeof** — C Keyword

Return size of a data element

**sizeof** is a C operator that returns a constant **int** that gives the size of any given data element. The element examined can be a data object, a portion of a data object, or a type cast. **sizeof** returns the size of the element in **chars**; for example

```
long foo;
sizeof foo;
```

returns four, because a **long** is as long as four **chars**.

**sizeof** can also tell you the size of an array. This is especially helpful for use with external arrays, whose size can be set when they are initialized. For example:

```
char *arrayname[] = {
 "COHERENT", "Mark Williams C for the Atari ST",
 "Let's C", "Fast Forward"
};

main()
{
 printf("\n\"arrayname\" has %d entries\n",
 sizeof(arrayname)/sizeof char*);
}
```

**sizeof** is especially useful in **malloc** routines, and when you need to specify byte counts to I/O routines. Using it to set the size of data types instead of using a predetermined value will increase the portability of your code.

*See Also*

**C keywords, data types, operators**

### **sleep()** – General Function

Suspend execution for interval

**sleep**(*seconds*)

**unsigned seconds**;

**sleep** suspends execution for *seconds*.

*Example*

The following example, called **godot.c**, demonstrates how to use **sleep**.

```
main()
{
 printf("Waiting for Godot ...\\n");
 for (; ;) {
 /* sleep for five seconds */
 sleep(5);
 printf("... still waiting ...\\n");
 }
}
```

*See Also*

**general functions**

### **sleep** – Command

Stop executing for a specified time

**sleep** *seconds*

The command **sleep** suspends execution for a specified number of *seconds*. This routine is especially useful with other commands to the shell **sh**. For example, typing

```
(sleep 3600; echo coffee break time) &
```

will execute the **echo** command in one hour (3,600 seconds) to indicate an important appointment.

*See Also*

**alarm(), commands, pause(), sh**

### **sload()** – COHERENT System Call

Load device driver

**#include <con.h>**

**int sload**(*major, file, conp*)

**int major; char \*file; CON \*conp;**

The COHERENT system accesses all devices through drivers residing in the system. Except for the root device, drivers must be explicitly loaded before use; this operation does not involve re-booting.

**sload** loads the driver given by *file* as device number *major*. This number uniquely iden-



tifies the driver to the system. *comp* is a reference to a CON structure, as defined in the header file *con.h*. It describes standard entry points and gives other information on the driver. Normally, *major* and *comp* are obtained from the driver load module; this is the method used by the **load** command.

*file* must be in the correct format. Usually, it is created using the **-k** option to **ld**.

This call is restricted to the superuser.

### Files

<*con.h*>  
/drv/\*

### See Also

COHERENT system calls, *con.h*, *init*, *l.out.h*, *ld*, *suload*

### Diagnostics

**sload** return zero upon successful loading of the appropriate driver, or -1 on errors. **sload** errors include nonexistent *file*, parameter (such as *major*) out of range, driver already loaded for *major*, or *file* not a file containing a proper driver.

## smult() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Multiply multiple-precision integers  
#include <*mprec.h*>  
void **smult**(*a*, *n*, *c*)  
mint \**a*, \**c*; int *n*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **smult** multiplies the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* by the integer *n*, which is  $\leq 127$ . It writes the product into the **mint** pointed to by *c*.

### See Also

multiple-precision mathematics

## sort — Command

Sort lines of text  
**sort** [-bcdfinru] [-t *c*] [-o *outfile*] [-T *dir*] [+beg[-end]][*file* ...]

**sort** reads lines from each *file*, or from the standard input if no file is specified. It sorts what it reads, and writes the sorted material to the standard output.

**sort** sorts lines by comparing a *key* from each line. By default, the key is the entire input line (or *record*) and ordering is in ASCII order. The key, however, can be one or more *fields* within the input record; by using the appropriate options, you can select which fields are used as the key, and dictate the character that is used to separate the fields.

The following options affect how the key is constructed or how the output is ordered.

**-b** Ignore leading white space (blanks or tabs) in key comparisons.

- d Dictionary ordering: use only letters, blanks, and digits when comparing keys. This is essentially the ordering used to sort telephone directories.
- f Fold upper-case letters to lower case for comparison purposes.
- i Ignore all characters outside of the printable ASCII range (octal 040-0176).
- n The key is a numeric string that consists of optional leading blanks and optional minus sign followed by any number of digits with an optional decimal point. Ordering is by the numeric, as opposed to alphabetic, value of the string.
- r Reverse the ordering, i.e., **sort** from largest to smallest.

As noted above, the key compared from each line need not be the entire input line. The option *+beg* indicates the beginning position of the key field in the input line, and the optional *-end* indicates that the key field ends just before the *end* position. If no *-end* is given, the key field ends at the end of the line. Each of these positional indicators has the form *+m.nf* or *-m.nf*, where *m* is the number of fields to skip in the input line and *n* is the number of characters to skip after skipping fields. Optional flags *f* are chosen from the above key flags (**bdfinr**) and are local to the specified field.

The following additional options control how **sort** works.

- c Check the input to see if it is sorted. Print the first out-of-order line found.
- m Merge the input files. **sort** assumes each *file* to be sorted already. With large files, **sort** runs much faster with this option.
- o *outfile*  
Put the output into *outfile* rather than on the standard output. This allows **sort** to work correctly if the output file is one of the input files.
- tc Use the character *c* to separate fields rather than the default blanks and tabs. For example, *-t/* uses the slash instead of white space to separate fields; this is useful when sorting file names and directory names.
- T *dir*  
Create temporary files in directory *dir* rather than the standard place.
- u Suppress multiple copies of lines with key fields that compare equally.

The following example sorts the password file `/etc/passwd`, first by group number (field 4) and then by user name (field 1):

```
sort -t: +3n -4 +0 -1 /etc/passwd
```

### Files

`/usr/tmp/sort*` — First attempt at temporary files  
`/tmp/sort*` — Second attempt at temporary files

### See Also

ASCII, **commands**, **ctype**, **tsort**, **uniq**

### Diagnostics

**sort** returns a nonzero exit status if internal problems occurred or if the file was not correctly sorted, in the case of the **-c** option.

**spell** — Command

Find spelling errors  
**spell** [-a][-b][file ...]

**spell** builds a set of unique words from a document contained in each input *file*, or the standard input if none. It writes a list of words believed to be misspelled onto the standard output.

**spell** should normally be invoked with the document in the form of the input to the text formatter **nroff** rather than the output. **spell** deletes control information to the formatter by invoking **deroff**.

The default dictionary is for American spelling of English. The **-a** option specifies this dictionary explicitly. Under the **-b** option, British spelling is checked. This accepts *favour*, *fibre*, and *travelled* rather than the American spellings *favor*, *fiber*, and *traveled* for the same words. Words ending in *ize* are also accepted when ending in *ise* (e.g., *digitize*, *digitise*).

The dictionary has a reasonably complete coverage of proper names as well as technical terms in certain fields. However, it covers some fields (e.g., computer science) better than others (e.g., medicine).

*Files*

**/usr/dict/clista** — Compressed American dictionary  
**/usr/dict/clistb** — Compressed British dictionary  
**/usr/dict/spellhist** — History file for dictionary maintainer  
**/usr/lib/spell**

*See Also*

**commands**, **deroff**, **nroff**, **sort**, **typo**

*Notes*

Dictionaries are not provided for languages other than English.

No dictionary can be complete. You must add new words to the dictionary to ensure that it fully meets your needs.

Obscure words (such as opcodes, variable names, etc.) are flagged as spelling errors.

Because the data files required for **spell** are quite large, they might not be included on COHERENT systems for machines with insufficient disk space. As a result, the command might not work as expected on all systems.

**split** — Command

Split a large file into smaller files  
**split** [-nlines][infile [outfile] ]

**split** divides a file into a number of smaller files. This is useful for programs that cannot handle arbitrarily large files, such as MicroEMACS.

**split** uses *infile* as its input file if given; otherwise, it uses the standard input. If *infile* is '**.**', **split** uses the standard input.

**split** puts its output into files with names prefixed by *outfile* and suffixed consecutively with **aa**, **ab**, **ac**, and so on. If no *outfile* is specified, file names are prefixed with **x**.

Normally, **split** puts 1,000 lines in each output file. This default may be changed by the option *-nlines*, where *nlines* gives the desired number of lines per file.

*See Also*

**commands**

### **spow() – Multiple-Precision Mathematics**

Raise multiple-precision integer to power

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void spow(a, n, b)
```

```
mint *a, *b; int n;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **spow** raises the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* to the power of *n*, and writes the result into the **mint** pointed to by *b*. In no case may the exponent be negative.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

### **sprintf() – STDIO (libc)**

Format output

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int sprintf(string, format [, arg] ...)
```

```
char *string, *format;
```

**sprintf** formats and prints a string. It resembles the function **printf**, except that it writes its output into the memory location pointed to by **string**, instead of to the standard output.

**sprintf** reads the string pointed to by *format* to specify an output format for each *arg*; it then writes every *arg* into *string*, which it ends with a null character. For a detailed discussion of **sprintf**'s formatting codes, see **printf**.

#### *Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **sscanf**.

*See Also*

**printf()**, **fprintf()**, **STDIO**

#### *Notes*

The output *string* passed to **sprintf** must be large enough to hold all output characters.

Because C does not perform type checking, it is essential that each argument match its format specification.

At present, **sprintf** does not return a meaningful value.

**sqrt()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute square root

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double sqrt(z) double z;
```

**sqrt** returns the square root of *z*.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **ceil**.

*See Also*

**mathematics library**

*Diagnostics*

When a domain error occurs (i.e., when *z* is negative), **sqrt** sets **errno** to **EDOM** and returns zero.

**srand()** — General Function (libc)

Seed random number generator

```
void srand(seed) int seed;
```

**srand** uses *seed* to initialize the sequence of pseudo-random numbers returned by **rand**. Different values of *seed* initialize different sequences.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **rand**.

*See Also*

**general functions, rand()**

*The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 2

**sscanf()** — STDIO (libc)

Format a string

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int sscanf(string, format [, arg] ...)
```

```
char *string; char *format;
```

**sscanf** reads the argument *string*, and uses *format* to specify a format for each *arg*, each of which must be a pointer. For more information on **sscanf**'s conversion codes, see **scanf**.

*Example*

This example uses **sprintf** to create a string, and then reads it with **sscanf**. It also illustrates a common problem with this routine.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
```

```
{
```

```
 char string[80];
```

```
 char s1[10], s2[10];
```

```
printf(string, "123456789012345678901234567890");
sscanf(string, "%9c", s1);
sscanf(string, "%10c", s2);

printf("\n%s is the string\n", string);
printf("%s: first 9 characters in string\n", s1);
printf("%s: first 19 characters in string\n", s2);
}
```

*See Also*

**fscanf(), scanf(), STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**sscanf** returns the number of arguments filled. It returns zero if no arguments can be filled or if an error occurs.

*Notes*

Because C does not perform type checking, an argument must match its format specification. **sscanf** is best used only to process data that you are certain are in the correct data format, such as data that were written with **sprintf**.

**sscanf** is difficult to use correctly, and incorrect usage can create serious bugs in programs. It is recommended that **strtok** be used instead.

## **stack — Definition**

The **stack** is the segment of memory that holds function arguments, local variables, function return addresses, and stack frame linkage information. The COHERENT library sets the stack size to two kilobytes. You can change the size of the stack by using the command **fixstack**.

If your program uses recursive algorithms, or declares large amounts of automatic data, or simply contains many levels of functions calls, the stack may “overflow”, and overwrite the program data.

*See Also*

**definitions, fixstack**

## **standard error — Definition**

The **standard error** is the peripheral device or file where programs write error messages by default. It is defined in the header file **stdio.h** under the abbreviation **stderr**, and by default is the computer’s monitor.

The COHERENT shell **sh** lets you redirect into a file all text written to the standard error device. To do so, use the shell operator **2>**. For example

```
make 2>errorfile
```

redirects all error messages generated by **make** into file **errorfile**.

*See Also*

definitions, `stderr`, `stdio.h`

### standard input – Definition

The **standard input** is the device or file from which data are accepted by default. It is defined in the header file `stdio.h` under the abbreviation `stdin`, and will be the computer's keyboard unless redirected by the operating system, a shell, or `freopen`.

The COHERENT shell `sh` lets you redirect the standard input device. To do so, use the shell operator `<`. For example

```
mail fwb <textfile
```

the standard input device from your terminal to file `textfile`; in effect, this commands mails the contents of `textfile` to use `fwb`.

*See Also*

definitions, `stdin`, `stdio.h`

### standard output – Definition

The **standard output** is the device or file where programs write output by default. It is defined in the header file `stdio.h` under the abbreviation `stdout`, and in most instances is defined to be the computer's monitor.

The COHERENT shell `sh` lets you redirect into a file all text written to the standard output device. To do so, use the shell operator `>`. For example

```
sort myfile >sortfile
```

redirects the text output by `sort` into file `sortfile`.

*See Also*

definitions, `stdio.h`, `stdout`

### stat() – General Function (libc)

Find file attributes

```
#include <sys/stat.h>
```

```
int stat(file, statptr)
```

```
char *file; struct stat *statptr;
```

`stat` returns a structure that contains the attributes of a file, including protection information, file type, and file size.

`file` points to the path name of file. `statptr` points to a structure of the type `stat`, as defined in the header file `stat.h`.

The following summarizes the structure `stat`:

```

struct stat {
 dev_t st_dev; /* Device */
 ino_t st_ino; /* i-node number */
 unsigned short st_mode; /* Mode */
 short st_nlink; /* Link count */
 short st_uid; /* User id */
 short st_gid; /* Group id */
 dev_t st_rdev; /* Real device */
 fsize_t st_size; /* Size */
 time_t st_atime; /* Access time */
 time_t st_mtime; /* Modify time */
 time_t st_ctime; /* Change time */
};

```

The following lists the legal settings for the element `st_mode` which defines the file's attributes:

|                 |           |                          |
|-----------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| <b>S_IFMT</b>   | 0x0170000 | File types               |
| <b>S_IFREG</b>  | 0x0100000 | Ordinary file            |
| <b>S_IFDIR</b>  | 0x0040000 | Directory                |
| <b>S_IFCHR</b>  | 0x0020000 | Character-special file   |
| <b>S_IFBLK</b>  | 0x0060000 | Block-special file       |
| <b>S_ISUID</b>  | 0x0004000 | Set user identifier      |
| <b>S_ISGID</b>  | 0x0002000 | Set group identifier     |
| <b>S_ISVTX</b>  | 0x0001000 | Save text bit            |
| <b>S_IREAD</b>  | 0x0000400 | Owner read permission    |
| <b>S_IWRITE</b> | 0x0000200 | Owner write permission   |
| <b>S_IXEXEC</b> | 0x0000100 | Owner execute permission |

`st_dev` and `st_ino` together form a unique description of the file. The former is the device on which the file and its i-node reside, and the latter is the index number of the file. `st_mode` gives the permission bits, as outlined above. `st_nlink` gives the number of links to the file. The user id and group id of the owner are `st_uid` and `st_gid`, respectively. `st_rdev`, which is valid only for special files, holds the major and minor numbers for the file.

The entry `st_size` gives the size of the file, in bytes. For a pipe, the size is the number of bytes waiting to be read from the pipe.

Three entries for each file give the last occurrences of various events in the file's history. `st_atime` gives the time the file was last read or written to. `st_mtime` gives the time of the last modification, write for files, create or delete entry for directories. `st_ctime` gives the last change to the attributes, not including times and size.

### *Example*

The following example uses `stat` to print a file's status.



```
#include <sys/stat.h>
main()
{
 struct stat sbuf;
 int status;

 if(status = stat("/usr/include", &sbuf)) {
 printf("Can't find\n");
 exit(1);
 }

 printf("uid = %d gid = %d\n", sbuf.st_uid, sbuf.st_gid);
}

```

### Files

<sys/stat.h>

### See Also

**chmod()**, **chown()**, **COHERENT system calls**, **ls**, **open()**

### Notes

**stat** differs from the related function **fstat** mainly in that **fstat** accesses the file through its descriptor, which was returned by a successful call to **open**, whereas **stat** takes the file's path name and opens it before checking its status.

### Diagnostics

**stat** returns -1 if an error occurs, e.g., the file cannot be found. Otherwise, it returns zero.

## stat.h – Header File

Definitions and declarations used to obtain file status

```
#include <sys/stat.h>
```

**stat.h** is a header file that contains the declarations of several structures used by the routines **fstat** and **stat**, which return information about a file's status.

### See Also

**chmod()**, **fstat()**, **header file**, **stat()**

## static – C Keyword

Declare storage class

**static** is a C storage class. It has two entirely different meanings, depending upon whether it it appears inside or outside a function.

Outside a function, **static** means that the function or variable it precedes may not be seen outside the module.

Inside a function, **static** may only precede a variable. It means that that variable is permanently allocated, rather than allocated on the stack when the function is entered and discarded when the function exits. If a **static** variable is initialized, that occurs before the program starts rather than every time the function is entered. If a function returns a pointer to a variable, often that variable is declared **static** within the function. If a

pointer to a **non-static** local variable is returned, that variable is freed when the function returns and the pointer points to an unprotected location.

### *Example*

The following example demonstrates the uses of the **static** keyword. It returns the next integer in a sequence as a string.

```
/* static to keep function hidden outside of this module */
static char *nextInt()
{
 /* static to protect value between calls */
 static int next = 0;
 /* static to allow the return of a pointer to s */
 static char s[5];
 sprintf(s, "%d", next++);
 return(s);
}
```

### *See Also*

**auto**, **C keywords**, **extern**, **register variable**, **storage class**

## **stddef.h – Header File**

Header for standard definitions

**#include <stddef.h>**

**stddef.h** defines three types and two macros that are used through the library. They are as follows:

|                   |                                         |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>NULL</b>       | Null pointer                            |
| <b>offsetof()</b> | Offset of a field within a structure    |
| <b>ptrdiff_t</b>  | Numeric difference between two pointers |
| <b>size_t</b>     | Type returned by <b>sizeof</b> operator |
| <b>wchar_t</b>    | Typedef for wide <b>chars</b>           |

### *See Also*

**header files**

## **stderr – Definition**

**stderr** is the name of the **FILE** pointer assigned to the standard error device. It is set in the header file **stdio.h**.

### *See Also*

**definitions**, **stdin**, **stdio.h**, **stdout**, **standard error**

## **stdin – Definition**

**stdin** is the name of the **FILE** pointer that is assigned to the standard input device. It is set in the header file **stdio.h**.

*See Also*

definitions, standard input, stderr, stdio.h, stdout

## STDIO — Overview

STDIO is an abbreviation for *standard input and output*. It refers to a set of standard library functions that accompany all C compilers and that govern input and output with peripheral devices.

COHERENT includes the following STDIO routines:

|                   |                                      |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>clearerr()</b> | Present status stream                |
| <b>fclose()</b>   | Close a file stream                  |
| <b>fdopen()</b>   | Open a file stream for I/O           |
| <b>feof()</b>     | Discover a file stream's status      |
| <b>ferror()</b>   | Discover a file stream's status      |
| <b>fflush()</b>   | Flush an output buffer               |
| <b>fgetc()</b>    | Get a character                      |
| <b>fgets()</b>    | Get a string                         |
| <b>fgetw()</b>    | Get a word                           |
| <b>fileno()</b>   | Get a file descriptor                |
| <b>fopen()</b>    | Open a file stream                   |
| <b>fprintf()</b>  | Format and print to a file stream    |
| <b>fputc()</b>    | Output a character                   |
| <b>fputs()</b>    | Output a string                      |
| <b>fputw()</b>    | Output a word                        |
| <b>fread()</b>    | Read a file stream                   |
| <b>freopen()</b>  | Open a file stream                   |
| <b>fscanf()</b>   | Format and read from a file stream   |
| <b>fseek()</b>    | Seek in a file stream                |
| <b>ftell()</b>    | Return file pointer position         |
| <b>fwrite()</b>   | Write to a file stream               |
| <b>getc()</b>     | Get a character                      |
| <b>getchar()</b>  | Get a character                      |
| <b>gets()</b>     | Get a string                         |
| <b>getw()</b>     | Get a word                           |
| <b>pclose()</b>   | Close a pipe                         |
| <b>popen()</b>    | Open a pipe                          |
| <b>printf()</b>   | Print a formatted string             |
| <b>putc()</b>     | Output a character                   |
| <b>putchar()</b>  | Output a character                   |
| <b>puts()</b>     | Output a string                      |
| <b>putw()</b>     | Output a word                        |
| <b>rewind()</b>   | Reset a file pointer                 |
| <b>scanf()</b>    | Format and input from standard input |
| <b>setbuf()</b>   | Set alternative file-stream buffers  |
| <b>sprintf()</b>  | Format and print to a string         |
| <b>sscanf()</b>   | Format and read from a string        |
| <b>ungetc()</b>   | Return character to file stream      |

STDIO routines are buffered by default.

*See Also*

**buffer, FILE, Libraries, stdio.h, stream**

### **stdio.h – Header File**

Declarations and definitions for I/O

**stdio.h** is a header file that defines several manifest constants used in standard I/O, such as **NULL** and **FILE**, declares the **STDIO** functions, and defines numerous I/O macros.

*See Also*

**header file, STDIO**

### **stdout – Definition**

**stdout** is the name of the **FILE** pointer that is assigned to the standard output device. It is set in the header file **stdio.h**.

*See Also*

**definitions, standard output, stderr, stdin, stdio.h**

### **sticky bit – Definition**

The *sticky bit* is one of the mode bits associated with a file. If the sticky bit is set for an executable file and swapping is enabled, **COHERENT** behaves in a special way when it executes that file.

When the **COHERENT** system executes the file the first time, all proceeds normally. When the program exits, however, the pure segments are left on the swap device; when the program is re-invoked, **COHERENT** reads “pure” code (text) areas from the swap device and all other (impure) segments from the file system. This speeds execution of large programs that are executed frequently.

This strategy works well on systems that have large swap devices. Because overuse of the sticky bit would quickly swamp the swap device, only the superuser can set the sticky bit.

*See Also*

**chmod, definitions**

### **stime() – COHERENT System Call**

Set the time

**#include**

**int stime(*timep*)**

**time\_t \**timep*;**

**stime** sets the system time. *timep* points to a variable of type **time\_t**, which contains the number of seconds since midnight GMT of January 1, 1970.

**stime** is restricted to the superuser.

*Files*`<sys/types.h>`*See Also*COHERENT system calls, `ctime()`, `date`, `ftime()`, `stat()`, `utime()`*Diagnostics*`stime` returns -1 on error, zero otherwise.**storage class — Technical Information**

Storage class refers to the part of a declaration that indicates how data are to be stored. The C language recognizes the following storage classes:

```

auto
extern
register
static

```

`typedef` is technically defined as a storage class as well, but it does not actually indicate how data are stored. The default class is `auto`.

*See Also*`auto`, `extern`, `register`, `static`, technical information, `typedef`**strcat() — String Function (libc)**

Concatenate strings

`#include <string.h>``char *strcat(string1, string2) char *string1, *string2;`

`strcat` appends all characters in `string2` onto the end of `string1`. It returns the modified `string1`.

*Example*For an example of this function, see the entry for `string functions`.*See Also*`string functions`, `string.h`, `strncat()`*Notes*

`string1` must point to enough space to hold itself and `string2`; otherwise, another portion of the program may be overwritten.

**strchr() — String Function (libc)**

Find a character in a string

`#include <string.h>`

```

char *strchr(string, character);
char *string; int character;

```

`strchr` searches for the first occurrence of `character` within `string`. The null character at the end of `string` is included within the search. It is equivalent to the COHERENT function `index`.

**strchr** returns a pointer to the first occurrence of *character* within *string*. If *character* is not found, it returns NULL.

Having **strchr** search for a null character will always produce a pointer to the end of a string. For example,

```
char *string;
assert(strchr(string, '\\0') == string + strlen(string));
```

never fails.

*See Also*

**string functions**

### **strcmp() – String Function (libc)**

Compare two strings

**#include <string.h>**

**int strcmp(string1, string2) char \*string1, \*string2;**

**strcmp** compares *string1* with *string2* lexicographically. It returns zero if the strings are identical, returns a number less than zero if *string1* occurs earlier alphabetically than *string2*, and returns a number greater than zero if it occurs later. This routine is compatible with the ordering routine needed by **qsort**.

*Example*

For examples of this function, see the entries for **string functions** and **malloc**.

*See Also*

**qsort(), shellsort(), string functions, string.h, strncmp()**

### **strcoll() – String Function (libc)**

Compare two strings, using locale-specific information

**#include <string.h>**

**strcoll** lexicographically compares the string pointed to by *string1* with one pointed to by *string2*. Comparison ends when a null character is read.

**strcoll** compares the two strings character by character until it finds a pair of characters that are not identical. It returns a number less than zero if the character in *string1* is less (i.e., occurs earlier in the character table) than its counterpart in *string2*. It returns a number greater than zero if the character in *string1* is greater (i.e., occurs later in the character table) than its counterpart in *string2*. If no characters are found to differ, then the strings are identical and **strcoll** returns zero.

*See Also*

**string functions, string.h**

*Notes*

The string-comparison routines **strcoll**, **strcmp**, and **strncmp** differ from the memory-comparison routine **memcmp** in that they compare strings rather than regions of memory. They stop when they encounter a null character, but **memcmp** does not.

The ANSI Standard's description of **strcoll** emphasizes that it uses locale-specific information, as set by the ANSI function **setlocale**, to perform string comparisons. The COHERENT system has not yet implement ANSI locales; therefore, **strcoll** does not differ significantly from **strcmp**. It is included to support programs written in ANSI C.

### strcpy() — String Function (libc)

Copy one string into another

**#include <string.h>**

**char \*strcpy(string1, string2) char \*string1, \*string2;**

**strcpy** copies the contents of *string2*, up to the null character, into *string1* and returns *string1*.

*Example*

See **string**.

*See Also*

**memcpy()**, **string functions**, **string.h**, **strncpy()**

*Notes*

*string1* must point to enough space to hold *string2*, or another portion of the program or operating system may be overwritten.

### strcspn() — String Function (libc)

Return length a string excludes characters in another

**#include <string.h>**

**unsigned int strcspn(string1, string2);**

**char \*string1, \*string2;**

**strcspn** compares *string1* with *string2*. It then returns the length, in characters, for which *string1* consists of characters *not* found in *string2*.

*See Also*

**string functions**, **string.h**

### stream — Definition

The term **stream** is a metaphor for any entity that can be named and from which bits can flow, such as a device or a file. The name "stream" reflects the fact that the C programming environment does not depend upon record descriptors and other devices that predetermine what form data can assume; instead, data from whatever source are conceived as being a flow of bytes whose significance is set entirely by the program that reads them.

For example, whether 16 bits forms an **int**, two **chars**, and should be used as an absolute value or a bit map, is entirely up to the program that receives it. It is also irrelevant to the program that processes these 16 bits whether they come from the keyboard, from a file on disk, or from a peripheral device.

The **FILE** structure holds all of the information needed to manipulate a stream. The **STDIO** functions can be used to open, close, or reopen a stream; read data from it; or write data to it.

*See Also*

**bit**, **byte**, **data formats**, **definitions**, **file**, **FILE**, **STDIO**

### **stream.h** — Header File

Definitions for message facility

**#define** <**stream.h**>

**stream.h** definitions constants and structures used by the routines that implement the COHERENT message facility.

*See Also*

**header files**

### **strerror()** — String Function (libc)

Translate an error number into a string

**#include** <**string.h**>

**char \*strerror(error); int error;**

**strerror** helps to generate an error message. It takes the argument *error*, which presumably is an error code generated by an error condition in a program, and may return a pointer to the corresponding error message.

The error numbers recognized and the texts of the corresponding error messages are set by COHERENT.

*See Also*

**perror()**, **string functions**, **string.h**

*Notes*

**strerror** returns a pointer to a static array that may be overwritten by a subsequent call to **strerror**.

**strerror** differs from the related function **perror** in the following ways: **strerror** receives the error number through its argument *error*, whereas **perror** reads the global constant **errno**. Also, **strerror** returns a pointer to the error message, whereas **perror** writes the message directly into the standard error stream.

The error numbers recognized and the texts of the messages associated with each error number are set by COHERENT. However, **strerror** and **perror** return the same error message when handed the same error number.

### **string.h** — Header File

**#include** <**string.h**>

**string.h** is the header that holds the declarations and definitions of all ANSI routines that handle strings and buffers. It declares the following functions:



|                   |                                                                  |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>memchr()</b>   | Search a region of memory for a character                        |
| <b>memcmp()</b>   | Compare two regions of memory                                    |
| <b>memcpy()</b>   | Copy one region of memory into another                           |
| <b>memmove()</b>  | Copy one region of memory into another with which it overlaps    |
| <b>memset()</b>   | Fill a region of memory with a character                         |
| <b>strcmp()</b>   | Compare two strings                                              |
| <b>strncmp()</b>  | Compare two lengths for a set number of bytes                    |
| <b>strcpy()</b>   | Copy a string                                                    |
| <b>strncpy()</b>  | Copy a portion of a string                                       |
| <b>strcoll()</b>  | Compare two strings, using locale information                    |
| <b>strcspn()</b>  | Return length one string excludes characters in another          |
| <b>strerror()</b> | Translate an error number into a string                          |
| <b>strlen()</b>   | Measure the length of a string                                   |
| <b>strpbrk()</b>  | Find first occurrence in string of character from another string |
| <b>strchr()</b>   | Find leftmost occurrence of character in a string                |
| <b>strrchr()</b>  | Find rightmost occurrence of character in a string               |
| <b>strspn()</b>   | Return length one string includes character in another           |
| <b>strstr()</b>   | Find one string within another string                            |
| <b>strtok()</b>   | Break a string into tokens                                       |
| <b>strxfrm()</b>  | Transform a string, using locale information                     |

See their respective Lexicon entries for details.

*See Also*

header files

## string functions — Overview

The character string is a common formation in C programs. The runtime representation of a string is an array of ASCII characters that is terminated by a null character ('\0'). COHERENT uses this representation when a program contains a string constant; for example:

```
"I am a string constant"
```

The address of the first character in the string is used as the starting point of the string. A pointer to a string holds only this address. Note, too, that an array of 20 characters can hold a string of 19 (*not* 20) non-null characters; the 20th character is the null character that terminates the string.

The following routines are available to help manipulate strings:

|                  |                                                           |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>index()</b>   | Search string for a character; use <b>strchr</b> instead  |
| <b>memchr()</b>  | Search buffer for a character                             |
| <b>memcmp()</b>  | Compare two buffers                                       |
| <b>memcpy()</b>  | Copy one buffer into another                              |
| <b>memset()</b>  | Initialize a buffer                                       |
| <b>pnmatch()</b> | Match a string pattern                                    |
| <b>rindex()</b>  | Search string for a character; use <b>strrchr</b> instead |
| <b>strcat()</b>  | Concatenate two strings                                   |
| <b>strchr()</b>  | Find a character in a string                              |
| <b>strcmp()</b>  | Compare two string                                        |

|                   |                                                  |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <b>strcpy()</b>   | Copy one string into another                     |
| <b>strcspn()</b>  | Return length for which strings do not match     |
| <b>strerror()</b> | Translate error number into string               |
| <b>strlen()</b>   | Measure a string                                 |
| <b>strncat()</b>  | Concatenate two strings                          |
| <b>strncmp()</b>  | Compare two strings                              |
| <b>strncpy()</b>  | Copy one string into another                     |
| <b>strpbrk()</b>  | Find first occurrence of any character in string |
| <b>strrchr()</b>  | Find rightmost occurrence of character           |
| <b>strspn()</b>   | Return length for which strings match            |
| <b>strstr()</b>   | Find one string within another                   |
| <b>strtok()</b>   | Break a string into tokens                       |

### *Example*

This example reads from **stdin** up to **NNAMES** names, each of which is no more than **MAXLEN** characters long. It then removes duplicate names, sorts the names, and writes the sorted list to the standard output. It demonstrates the functions **shellsort**, **strcat**, **strcmp**, **strcpy**, and **strlen**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#define NNAMES 512
#define MAXLEN 60

char *array[NNAMES];
char first[MAXLEN], mid[MAXLEN], last[MAXLEN];
char *space = " ";

int compare();
extern char *strcat();

main()
{
 register int index, count, inflag;
 register char *name;

 count = 0;
 while (scanf("%s %s %s\n", first, mid, last) == 3) {
 strcat(first, space);
 strcat(mid, space);
 name = strcat(first, (strcat(mid, last)));
 inflag = 0;

 for (index=0; index < count; index++)
 if (strcmp(array[index], name) == 0)
 inflag = 1;
 }
}
```

```

 if (inflag == 0) {
 if ((array[count] =
 malloc(strlen(name) + 1)) == NULL) {
 fprintf(stderr, "Insufficient memory\n");
 exit(1);
 }
 strcpy(array[count], name);
 count++;
 }
}

shellsort(array, count, sizeof(char *), compare);
for (index=0; index < count; index++)
 printf("%s\n", array[index]);
exit(0);
}

compare(s1, s2)
register char **s1, **s2;
{
 extern int strcmp();
 return(strcmp(*s1, *s2));
}

```

*See Also*

**ASCII, libraries**

*Notes*

The ANSI standard allows adjacent string literals, e.g.:

```
"hello" "world"
```

Adjacent string literals are automatically concatenated. Thus, the compiler will automatically concatenate the above example into:

```
"helloworld"
```

Because this departs from the Kernighan and Ritchie description of C, it will generate a warning message if you use the compiler's **-VSBOOK** option.

## **strip** — Command

Strip debug, relocation, and symbol tables from executable file  
**strip -drs file [...]**

**strip** removes the symbol table, relocation information, and debug tables from a file. It makes the executable file noticeably smaller.

**strip** recognizes the following options:

- d** Keep debug information.
- r** Keep relocation information.

**-s** Keep symbols.

*See Also*

**cc, commands, ld, nm, size**

### **strlen() – String Function (libc)**

Measure the length of a string

**#include <string.h>**

**int strlen(string) char \*string;**

**strlen** measures *string*, and returns its length in bytes, *not* including the null terminator. This is useful in determining how much storage to allocate for a string.

*Example*

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **string**.

*See Also*

**string functions, string.h**

### **strncat() – String Function (libc)**

Append one string onto another

**#include <string.h>**

**char \*strncat(string1, string2, n)**

**char \*string1, \*string2; unsigned n;**

**strncat** copies up to *n* characters from *string2* onto the end of *string1*. It stops when *n* characters have been copied or it encounters a null character in *string2*, whichever occurs first, and returns the modified *string1*.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **strncpy**.

*See Also*

**strcat(), string functions, string.h**

*Notes*

*string1* should point to enough space to hold itself and *n* characters of *string2*. If it does not, a portion of the program or operating system may be overwritten.

### **strncmp() – String Function (libc)**

Compare two strings

**#include <string.h>**

**int strncmp(string1, string2, n)**

**char \*string1, \*string2; unsigned n;**

**strncmp** compares lexicographically the first *n* bytes of *string1* with *string2*. Comparison ends when *n* bytes have been compared, or a null character encountered, whichever occurs first. **strncmp** returns zero if the strings are identical, returns a number less than zero if *string1* occurs earlier alphabetically than *string2*, and returns a number greater than zero if it occurs later. This routine is compatible with the ordering routine needed by **qsort**.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for `strncpy`.

*See Also*

`strcmp()`, string functions, `string.h`

**strncpy()** — String Function (libc)

Copy one string into another

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *strncpy(string1, string2, n)
```

```
char *string1, *string2; unsigned n;
```

`strncpy` copies up to  $n$  bytes of `string2` into `string1`, and returns `string1`. Copying ends when  $n$  bytes have been copied or a null character has been encountered, whichever comes first. If `string2` is less than  $n$  characters in length, `string2` is padded to length  $n$  with one or more null bytes.

*Example*

This example, called `swap.c`, reads a file of names, and changes them from the format

```
first_name [middle_initial] last_name
```

to the format

```
last_name, first_name [middle_initial]
```

It demonstrates `strncpy`, `strncat`, `strncmp`, and `index`.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
#define NNAMES 512
```

```
#define MAXLEN 60
```

```
char *array[NNAMES];
```

```
char gname[MAXLEN], lname[MAXLEN];
```

```
extern int strncmp(), strcmp();
```

```
extern char *strcpy(), *strncpy(), *strncat(), *index();
```

```
main(argc, argv)
```

```
int argc; char *argv[];
```

```
{
```

```
 FILE *fp;
```

```
 register int count, num;
```

```
 register char *name, string[60], *cptr, *eptr;
```

```
 unsigned glength, length;
```

```
 if (--argc != 1) {
```

```
 fprintf(stderr, "Usage: swap filename\n");
```

```
 exit(1);
```

```
 }
```

```
 if ((fp = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
```

```
 printf("Cannot open %s\n", argv[1]);
```

```
 count = 0;
```

```
while (fgets(string, 60, fp) != NULL) {
 if ((cptr = index(string, '.')) != NULL) {
 cptr++;
 cptr++;
 } else if ((cptr = index(string, ' ')) != NULL)
 cptr++;

 strcpy(lname, cptr);
 eptr = index(lname, '\\n');
 *eptr = ',';

 strcat(lname, " ");
 glength = (unsigned)(strlen(string) - strlen(cptr));
 strncpy(gname, string, glength);

 name = strcat(lname, gname, glength);
 length = (unsigned)strlen(name);
 array[count] = malloc(length + 1);
 strcpy(array[count], name);
 count++;
}

for (num = 0; num < count; num++)
 printf("%s\\n", array[num]);
exit(0);
}
```

### *See Also*

**strcpy(), string functions, string.h**

### *Notes*

*string1* must point to enough space to *n* bytes; otherwise, a portion of the program or operating system may be overwritten.

## **strpbrk()** – String Function (libc)

Find first occurrence of a character from another string

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *strpbrk(string1, string2);
```

```
char *string1, *string2;
```

**strpbrk** returns a pointer to the first character in *string1* that matches any character in *string2*. It returns NULL if no character in *string1* matches a character in *string2*.

The set of characters that *string2* points to is sometimes called the “break string”. For example,

```
char *string = "To be, or not to be: that is the question.";
char *brkset = ",;";
strpbrk(string, brkset);
```

returns the value of the pointer **string** plus five. This points to the comma, which is the first character in the area pointed to by **string** that matches any character in the string pointed to by **brkset**.

*See Also*

string functions, string.h

*Notes*

**strpbrk** resembles the function **strtok** in functionality, but unlike **strtok**, it preserves the contents of the strings being compared. It also resembles the function **streh**, but lets you search for any one of a group of characters, rather than for one character alone.

### **strrchr()** – String Function (libc)

Search for rightmost occurrence of a character in a string

#include <string.h>

char \*strrchr(string, character);

char \*string; int character;

**strrchr** looks for the last, or rightmost, occurrence of *character* within *string*. *character* is declared to be an **int**, but is handled within the function as a **char**. Another way to describe this function is to say that it performs a reverse search for a character in a string. It is equivalent to the COHERENT function **rindex**.

**strrchr** returns a pointer to the rightmost occurrence of *character*, or **NULL** if *character* could not be found within *string*.

*See Also*

**rindex()**, string functions, string.h

### **strspn()** – String Function (libc)

Return length a string includes characters in another

#include <string.h>

unsigned int strspn(string1, string2);

char \*string1; char \*string2;

**strspn** returns the length for which *string1* initially consists only of characters that are found in *string2*. For example,

```
char *s1 = "hello, world";
char *s2 = "kernighan & ritchie";
strspn(s1, s2);
```

returns two, which is the length for which the first string initially consists of characters found in the second.

*See Also*

string functions, string.h

### **strstr()** – String Function (libc)

Find one string within another

#include <string.h>

char \*strstr(string1, string2);

char \*string1, \*string2;

**strstr** looks for *string2* within *string1*. The terminating null character is not considered part of *string2*.

**strstr** returns a pointer to where *string2* begins within *string1*, or NULL if *string2* does not occur within *string1*.

For example,

```
char *string1 = "Hello, world";
char *string2 = "world";
strstr(string1, string2);
```

returns *string1* plus seven, which points to the beginning of **world** within **Hello, world**. On the other hand,

```
char *string1 = "Hello, world";
char *string2 = "worlds";
strstr(string1, string2);
```

returns NULL because **worlds** does not occur within **Hello, world**.

*See Also*

**string functions, string.h**

### **strtok()** — String Function (libc)

Break a string into tokens

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *strtok(string1, string2);
```

```
char *string1, *string2;
```

**strtok** helps to divide a string into a set of tokens. *string1* points to the string to be divided, and *string2* points to the character or characters that delimit the tokens.

**strtok** divides a string into tokens by being called repeatedly.

On the first call to **strtok**, *string1* should point to the string being divided. **strtok** searches for a character that is *not* included within *string2*. If it finds one, then **strtok** regards it as the beginning of the first token within the string. If one cannot be found, then **strtok** returns NULL to signal that the string could not be divided into tokens. When the beginning of the first token is found, **strtok** then looks for a character that *is* included within *string2*. When one is found, **strtok** replaces it with a null character to mark the end of the first token, stores a pointer to the remainder of *string1* within a static buffer, and returns the address of the beginning of the first token.

On subsequent calls to **strtok**, set *string1* to NULL. **strtok** then looks for subsequent tokens, using the address that it saved from the first call. With each call to **strtok**, *string2* may point to a different delimiter or set of delimiters.

*See Also*

**string functions, string.h**



**struct — C Keyword**

Data type

**struct** is a C keyword that introduces a structure. The following is an example of how **struct** can be used in the description of a name and address file:

```
struct address {
 char firstname[10];
 char lastname[15];
 char street[25];
 char city[10];
 char state[2];
 char zip[5];
 int salescode;
};
```

*The C Programming Language*, ed. 2 prohibits the assignment of structures, the passing of structures to functions, and the returning of structures by functions. COHERENT, however, lifts these restrictions. It allows one structure to be assigned to another, provided the two structures are of the same type. It also allows structures to be passed by and returned by functions. These features are supported by most compilers, but users should be aware that their use can cause problems in porting code to some compilers.

*See Also*

array, C keywords, field, structure

**structure — Definition**

A **structure** is a set of variables that has been given a name and can be manipulated as a single entity. The variables may be of different data types. Structures are a convenient way to deal with data elements that belong together, such as names and addresses, employee descriptions, or sales and inventory information.

*See Also*

definitions, struct

**structure assignment — Technical Information**

*The C Programming Language*, ed. 2 forbids structure assignment, the passing of structures to functions, and returning structures from functions (as opposed to the passing or returning of *pointers* to structures). The COHERENT C compiler lifts these restrictions.

Some C compilers transform structure arguments and structure returns into structure pointers. Note that the use of structure assignment, structure arguments, or structure returns may create problems when porting the code to another C compiler.

*See Also*

portability, struct, structure, technical information

### Notes

Because this feature deviates from the description of the C language found in the first edition of *The C Programming Language*, compiling with the **-VSBOOK** option will flag all points where it occurs in your program.

### **strxfrm()** – String Function (libc)

Transform a string

**#include** <string.h>

**unsigned int** **strxfrm**(*string1*, *string2*, *n*);

**char** \**string1*, \**string2*; **unsigned int** *n*);

**strxfrm** transforms *string2* using information concerning the program's locale, as set by the function **setlocale**.

**strxfrm** writes up to *n* bytes of the transformed result into the area pointed to by *string1*. It returns the length of the transformed string, not including the terminating null character. The transformation incorporates locale-specific material into *string2*.

If *n* is set to zero, **strxfrm** returns the length of the transformed string.

If two strings return a given result when compared by **strcmp** before transformation, they will return the same result when compared by **strcmp** after transformation.

### See Also

**string functions**, **string.h**

### Notes

If **strxfrm** returns a value equal to or greater than *n*, the contents of the area pointed to by *string1* are indeterminate.

COHERENT has not yet implemented the ANSI locale functions. Therefore, **strxfrm** behaves the same as **strcpy**.

### **stty** – Command

Set/print terminal modes

**stty** [*option* ...]

If no *option* is specified, **stty** prints the modes of the standard output device in the standard error stream. Otherwise, each *option* modifies the modes of the standard output device. The device is usually a terminal, although tapes, disks and other special files may be applicable.

In normal processing ("cooked" mode), the *erase* and *kill* characters (normally <ctrl-H> and <ctrl-U>) erase, respectively, one typed character and a typed line. The *stop-output* and *start-output* characters (normally <ctrl-S> and <ctrl-Q>) stop and restart output. The *interrupt* character (normally DELETE or ASCII 0177), sends the signal SIGINT, which usually terminates program execution. The *quit* character (normally ASCII 034, FS, which differs on various terminals but is often <ctrl-\>) sends the signal SIGQUIT, which usually terminates program execution with a core dump. The *end of file* character (normally <ctrl-D>) generates an end of file from the terminal. Each special character can be changed with the appropriate *option*.

On some machines, the default characters differ from those given above. On the IBM

Personal Computer, for example, the default kill character is `<ctrl-U>` and the default interrupt character is `<ctrl-C>`.

The following table describes each available *option*. The *c* argument may be a literal character or may be of the form `^X` for `<ctrl-X>`.

|                |                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>number</b>  | Set input and output baud rates of the device to the speed <i>number</i> , if possible.                                                                                                 |
| <b>0</b>       | Hang up phone immediately.                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>-a</b>      | Display all modes.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>break c</b> | Set the break character to <i>c</i> .                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>cbreak</b>  | Break after every input character. This allows a program to return after having read <i>N</i> characters from a terminal, even if no end of file, break or newline character was typed. |
| <b>-cbreak</b> | Exit from cbreak mode.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>cooked</b>  | Exit from raw mode.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>crt</b>     | Terminal is a CRT. Echoing is enhanced.                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>-crt</b>    | The terminal is not a CRT.                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>echo</b>    | Output characters as they are received on the input.                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>-echo</b>   | Disable echoing.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>ek</b>      | Set the erase character to '#' and the kill character to '@'.                                                                                                                           |
| <b>eof c</b>   | Set the end of file character to <i>c</i> .                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>erase c</b> | Set the erase character to <i>c</i> .                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>even</b>    | Accept even-parity characters.                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>-even</b>   | Do not accept even-parity characters.                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>excl</b>    | Exclusive use: subsequent opens will fail.                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>-excl</b>   | Non-exclusive use.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>flush</b>   | Flush characters waiting in output or input queues.                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>-flush</b>  | Do not flush characters.                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>hup</b>     | Hang up the phone on last close.                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>-hup</b>    | Do not hang up on last close.                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>int c</b>   | Set the interrupt character to <i>c</i> .                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>kill c</b>  | Set the kill character to <i>c</i> .                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>nl</b>      | Disable newline mapping.                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>-nl</b>     | Enable newline mapping: map carriage returns to linefeeds on input, and append carriage returns before linefeeds on output.                                                             |

|                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>odd</b>     | Accept odd-parity characters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>-odd</b>    | Do not accept odd-parity characters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>print</b>   | Print terminal attributes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>quit c</b>  | Set the quit character to <i>c</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>raw</b>     | Raw mode: suppress all processing and mapping (except echo).                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>-raw</b>    | Exit from raw mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>rawin</b>   | Suppress all processing and mapping on the input stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>-rawin</b>  | Exit from rawin mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>rawout</b>  | Suppress all processing and mapping on the output stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>-rawout</b> | Exit from rawout mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>start c</b> | Set the start-output character to <i>c</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>stop c</b>  | Set the stop-output character to <i>c</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>tabs</b>    | Do not expand tabs: useful for terminals which process tabs internally.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>-tabs</b>   | Expand tabs to the appropriate number of spaces on output. The system assumes tabstops are at every eighth column.                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>tandem</b>  | Tandem mode. The system will send the programmed stop-output character whenever there is a danger of losing characters from the input stream due to buffering limitations. The system will send the start-character when the level of unprocessed characters has subsided. |
| <b>-tandem</b> | Disable tandem mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

### *See Also*

**ASCII, commands, getty, init, ioctl(), signal()**

### *Notes*

The system does not support character delays or mapping upper to lower case.

## **su** — Command

Substitute user id, become superuser

**su** [*user* [*command*]]

**su** changes the effective user id and the effective user id to that of the *user*. If *user* has a login password, **su** requests it. Then it executes the specified *command*.

If *command* is absent, **su** invokes an interactive sub-shell.

If *user* is absent, **su** assumes user name **root** (the superuser).

### *Files*

**/etc/passwd** — Login names and passwords

*See Also*

commands, login, newgrp, sh, superuser

## **suload()** — COHERENT System Call

Unload device driver

```
#include <con.h>
```

```
int suload(major)
```

```
int major;
```

The COHERENT system accesses all devices through drivers residing in the system. Except for the root device, drivers must be explicitly loaded before use; this operation does not involve re-booting.

**suload** unloads the driver identified by *major*, which was previously loaded by a call to **sload**. This call is restricted to the superuser.

*Files*

```
<con.h>
```

```
/drv/*
```

*See Also*

init, lout.h, ld, load, sload

*Diagnostics*

**suload** returns zero upon successful unloading of the appropriate driver, or -1 on errors. It fails if the driver *major* is not loaded.

## **sum** — Command

Print checksum of a file

```
sum [file ...]
```

**sum** prints an unsigned integer checksum and a size in blocks (rounding up) for each *file* specified. If more than one *file* is specified, **sum** also prints the file name. If no *file* is specified, **sum** reads the standard input.

**sum** may be used to verify the integrity of data transferred across phone lines or stored on an unreliable medium.

*See Also*

cmp, commands

## **superuser** — Definition

The *superuser* is the user who has system-wide permissions. He can execute any program, read any file, and write into any directory. Thus, superuser status is reserved to the system administrator, also called **root**, who needs this status to control the operation of the system.

No person should be able to become the superuser without knowing a password. Because the superuser in effect “owns” the system, the superuser password should be guarded most carefully.

*See Also*

definitions, root, su

### **swab()** — General Function (libc)

Swap a pair of bytes

**void swab(src, dest, nb) char \*src, \*dest; unsigned nb;**

The ordering of bytes within a word differs from machine to machine. This may cause problems when moving binary data between machines. **swab** interchanges each pair of bytes in the array *src* that is *n* bytes long, and places the result into the array *dest*. The length *nb* should be an even number, or the last byte will not be touched. *src* and *dest* may be the same place.

#### *Example*

This example prompts for an integer; it then prints the integer both as you entered it, and as it appears with its bytes swapped.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
(
 int word;
 printf("Enter an integer: \n");
 scanf("%d", &word);
 printf("The word is 0x%x\n", word);
 swab(&word, &word, 2);
 printf("The word with bytes swapped is 0x%x\n", word);
}
```

*See Also*

dd, canon.h, general functions

### **switch** — C Keyword

Test a variable against a table

**switch** is a C keyword that lets you perform a number of tests on a variable in a convenient manner. For example,

```
while(foo < 10)
 switch(foo) {
 case 1:
 dosomething();
 break;
 case 2:
 somethingelse();
 break;
 case 3:
 anotherthing();
 break;
 default:
 break;
 }
}
```

is equivalent to

```
while(foo < 10) {
 if(foo == 1) {
 dosomething();
 continue;
 } else if(foo == 2) {
 somethingelse();
 anotherthing();
 continue;
 } else if(foo == 3) {
 /* Note: compiler eliminates duplicate code */
 anotherthing();
 continue;
 } else
 break;
}
```

**switch** is always used with the **case** statement, and nearly always with the **default** statement.

*See Also*

**break**, **C keywords**, **case**, **default**, **keyword**, **while**

## **sync** — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Flush system buffers

**sync()**

**sync()** is the COHERENT system call that copies the contents of all memory buffers to disk.

*See Also*

**COHERENT system calls**

**sync — Command**

Flush system buffers  
**sync**

Most COHERENT commands manipulate files stored on a disk. To improve system performance, the COHERENT system often changes a copy of part of the disk in a buffer in memory, rather than repeatedly performing the time-consuming disk access required.

**sync** writes information from the memory buffers to the disk, updating the disk images of all mounted file systems which have been changed. In addition, it writes the date and time on the root file system.

**sync** should be executed before system shutdown to ensure the integrity of the file system.

*See Also*  
commands

**system() — General Function (libc)**

Pass a command to the shell for execution  
**int system(commandline) char \*commandline;**

**system** passes *commandline* to the shell **sh**, which loads it into memory and executes it. **system** executes commands exactly as if they had been typed at the COHERENT command level. **system** may be used by commands such as **ed**, which can pass commands to the COHERENT shell in addition to processing normal interactive requests.

*Example*

This example uses **system** to list the names of all C source files in the parent directory.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
 system("cd .. ; ls *.c > mytemp; cat mytemp");
}
```

*See Also*

**exec, fork(), general functions, popen(), wait**

*Diagnostics*

**system** returns the exit status of the child process, in the format described in **wait**: exit status in the high byte, signal information in the low byte. Zero normally means success, whereas nonzero normally means failure. This, however, depends on the *command*. If the shell is not executable, **system** returns a special code of octal 0177.

**system maintenance — Overview**

The COHERENT system automatically invokes a number of utilities that help COHERENT to maintain itself. These utilities will, for example, run programs for you at pre-determined times, swap temporary files in and out of memory, update files, and perform other useful tasks. COHERENT includes the following system maintenance routines:



|                 |                                                     |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ATclock</b>  | Read the PC-AT clock                                |
| <b>atrun</b>    | Execute programs at a preset time                   |
| <b>boottime</b> | Time of last system boot                            |
| <b>bre</b>      | Perform maintenance chores, single-user mode        |
| <b>config</b>   | Configure the kernel                                |
| <b>cron</b>     | Execute commands periodically                       |
| <b>fdisk</b>    | Flexible hard-disk formatting                       |
| <b>getty</b>    | Terminal initialization                             |
| <b>hpd</b>      | Spooler daemon for Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer |
| <b>init</b>     | System initialization                               |
| <b>logmsg</b>   | File that holds login message prompt                |
| <b>lpd</b>      | Line printer spooler daemon                         |
| <b>rc</b>       | Perform standard maintenance chores                 |
| <b>swap</b>     | Enable swapping                                     |
| <b>update</b>   | Update file systems periodically                    |

*See Also*

**Lexicon**

## T

### **tail** – Command

Print the end of a file

**tail** [+*n*[*bcfl*]] [*file*]

**tail** [-*n*[*bcfl*]] [*file*]

**tail** copies the last part of *file*, or of the standard input if none is named, to the standard output.

The given *number* tells **tail** where to begin to copy the data. Numbers of the form +*number* measure the starting point from the beginning of the file; those of the form -*number* measure from the end of the file.

A specifier of blocks, characters, or lines (**b**, **c**, or **l**, respectively) may follow the number; the default is lines. If no *number* is specified, a default of -10 is assumed.

The **-f** option opens the tail of a file, and then displays new material as it is added to a file. This command lets you watch a file as it is being built, such as by **ncroff**. Note that when **tail** is invoked with this option, it does not exit; therefore, when you wish to exit, type the interrupt character.

*See Also*

**commands**, **dd**, **egrep**, **head**, **sed**

*Notes*

Because **tail** buffers data measured from the end of the file, large counts may not work.

### **tan()** – Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate tangent

**#include** <math.h>

**double tan**(*radian*) **double** *radian*;

**tan** calculates the tangent of its argument *radian*, which must be in radian measure.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos**.

*See Also*

**mathematics library**, **tanh()**

*Diagnostics*

**tan** returns a very large number where it is singular, and sets **errno** to **ERANGE**.

### **tanh()** – Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate hyperbolic cosine

**#include** <math.h>

**double tanh**(*radian*) **double** *radian*;

**tanh** calculates the hyperbolic tangent of *radian*, which is in radian measure.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see the entry for `cosh`.

*See Also*

**mathematics library**

*Diagnostics*

`tanh` sets `errno` to `ERANGE` when an overflow occurs.

**tape** — Device Driver

Magnetic tape devices

This section gives a general explanation of COHERENT's use of industry-standard half-inch, nine-track magnetic tape. Exceptions or additional information may be found in sections of this manual describing particular devices.

A tape volume contains files, each consisting of one or more records and terminated by a tape mark. Two tape marks terminate the last file. Tape records may vary in length, but cannot exceed  $2^{16}$  bytes ( $2^{15}$  is more practical).

Like other block-oriented devices, tape units may be accessed through the system's *cooked* interface or through the *raw* interface. On a cooked device, seeking to any byte offset and reading in any number of bytes is possible. It is not possible to read beyond the tape mark at the end of the current file. All records in the file must be 512 bytes long, except the last. Write requests must be made in increments of 512 bytes, except the last. A cooked tape may be mounted like a disk, but only as a read-only file system.

A raw device bypasses the buffer cache, so I/O occurs directly to or from the user's buffer. One write request generates one tape record, and one read request returns exactly one record. The number of bytes read may be less than expected. If the tape mark is read, a count of zero is returned, but the system positions the tape at the start of the next tape file. Seeking on a raw device is ignored, and mounting is not allowed.

A unit cannot be opened if it is off-line or already in use. If the write ring is absent, the unit cannot be opened for writing. Closing the device has varying effects, depending on the minor device opened and whether the device was opened for reading or writing. In the case of reading, the tape is rewound; if the no-rewind option was specified, the tape advances to the next file. In the case of writing, two tape marks are written at the current position and the tape is rewound; if the no-rewind option was specified, two tape marks are written and the tape is positioned between them. When you close a device that had been opened for writing, the tape volume ends at the current position; data beyond this point are undefined.

The following device options exist, selected by prefixes to the device name:

- h** Read or write data at high density. The exact density depends on the drive model, but 1600 BPI (high) and 800 BPI (low) are typical.
- n** Do not rewind on close.
- r** The device is raw.

Hard errors may occur during tape operation. They include detection of the end-of-tape (EOT) reflector, reading an unexpectedly long record, or seeking a cooked tape into a

tape mark. After an error, no further operations may be performed on the unit until the program closes the device and the operator rewinds the tape. Soft parity errors may arise due to dirt, bad tape or misaligned heads. On writes, the driver attempts to place the record further along the tape. On reads, the driver simply rescans the record. After several failures, the driver announces a hard error.

Most utilities use generic device names, which are links to the actual device files appropriate for the site.

### *Files*

**/dev/mt** — Generic cooked tape device

**/dev/rmt** — Generic raw tape device

### *See Also*

**device drivers**

### *Diagnostics*

Drivers may report errors to the console.

### *Notes*

Not every edition of COHERENT supports magnetic tape.

## **tar** — Command

Tape archive manager

**tar** [**certux**[**0-7bflmvwU**] [*blocks*] [*archive*] *file* ...

**tar** manipulates archives in a machine-independent format convenient for tape. The first argument consists of at most one directive character, followed by zero or more option characters. *file* is generally a file to be placed on or extracted from the tape. If a *file* is a directory, **tar** processes its contents recursively. For directives that input from the tape, no *file* specification tells **tar** to process every file on the tape. For directives that output to the tape, no *file* specification tells **tar** to process every file in the current directory.

The directives are as follows:

- c** Create a new tape, overwriting any old contents.
- r** Replace (append) the named files on the tape.
- t** Write a table of contents of the tape to the standard output.
- u** Update the tape by replacing the named files which are newer (mtime larger) than any version on the tape.
- x** Extract the named files from the tape, overwriting existing files with the same names. **tar** extracts each version of each file, leaving the latest version at the end.

The options are as follows:

- 0-7** A single octal digit specifies the unit on which the tape may be found. **tar** concatenates this digit to the default tape name **/dev/mt** to form the path name accessed.

- b** The next argument is a number between one and 20, specifying how many **blocks** are to be written in each tape record. **tar** determines the blocking factor automatically on input. When the blocking factor is not 1, the default tape name is **/dev/rmt** (the raw device is used).
- f** The next argument is the name of the tape **archive**. An argument of **'-'** means the standard input for input directives and the standard output for output directives.
- l** **tar** preserves links within the structure it writes to tape but breaks any links across the boundary of the structure. This option requests that **tar** report all such broken links.
- m** Restore the **mtime** for each extracted file.
- v** Verbose flag. If directive is **t**, the output for each file includes its mode, group id, user id, size, and **mtime**, in addition to its path name. Otherwise, **tar** writes the directive and the path name to the standard output for input directives or the standard error for output directives as each file is processed.
- w** For each file to be processed, **tar** writes the directive and path name to the terminal device, then reads a line from that device and acts on it as follows:
  - n** Skip the file.
  - y** Process the file.
  - x** Exit immediately.

An empty response is treated as **n**, and end of file is treated as **x**. If a directory is skipped, all its contents are skipped. If included, all its contents are processed with this option.
- U** Non-COHERENT systems have another implementation of this utility with the following bug: when the blocking factor is not one, the last few blocks of the last record written may be garbage. This bug is described elsewhere by other symptoms. This option says that the tape was created by the buggy program, so the trailing garbage should be ignored.

### *Files*

**/dev/mt\*** — Default tape

**/dev/rmt\*** — Default tape for blocking factor greater than one

### *See Also*

**commands**, **dump**, **link()**, **restor**, **stat()**, **tp**

### *Notes*

Path names must be less than 100 characters. The **m** option does not affect directories. The only way to extract the *N*th version of a file is with the **w** option.

If the **m** option is used to restore the **mtime** of an extracted file, an incremental **dump** may not dump the file. **touch** can be used to force the dump.

**technical information – Overview**

The Lexicon includes the following entries that describe technical aspects of COHERENT:

|                             |                                             |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>ASCII</b>                | ASCII table                                 |
| <b>byte ordering</b>        | Machine-dependent order of bytes            |
| <b>calling conventions</b>  |                                             |
| <b>data formats</b>         |                                             |
| <b>data types</b>           |                                             |
| <b>environ</b>              | Process environment                         |
| <b>errno</b>                | External integer for return of error status |
| <b>execution</b>            | Program execution                           |
| <b>floppy disks</b>         |                                             |
| <b>man</b>                  | Manual macro package                        |
| <b>memory allocation</b>    |                                             |
| <b>ms</b>                   | Manuscript macro package                    |
| <b>modemcap</b>             | Modem description language                  |
| <b>motd</b>                 | File that holds message of the day          |
| <b>portability</b>          |                                             |
| <b>security</b>             |                                             |
| <b>signame</b>              | Array of names of signals                   |
| <b>storage class</b>        |                                             |
| <b>structure assignment</b> |                                             |
| <b>termcap</b>              |                                             |
| <b>type checking</b>        |                                             |
| <b>type promotion</b>       |                                             |
| <i>See Also</i>             |                                             |
| Lexicon                     |                                             |

**tee – Command**

Branch pipe output  
**tee** [ **-a** ] [ **-i** ] [ *file* ... ]

**tee** reads from standard input, usually a pipe, and writes to the standard output, usually a pipe. **tee** also writes a copy of the input data to each *file* specified.

The **-a** flag tells **tee** to append data to each *file*, analogous to the shell construct “>>*file*”. Otherwise, it creates each *file*, analogous to the construct “>*file*”.

The flag **-i** means ignore interrupts.

*See Also*

commands, sh

**tempnam() – General Function (libc)**

Generate a unique name for a temporary file

```
char *tempnam(directory, name);
char *directory, *name;
```

**tempnam** constructs a unique temporary name that can be used to name a file.

*directory* points to the name of the directory in which you want the temporary file written. If this variable is NULL, **tempnam** reads the environmental variable **TMPDIR** and uses it for *directory*. If neither *directory* nor **TMPDIR** is given, **tempnam** uses **/tmp**.

*name* points to the string of letters that will prefix the temporary name. This string should not be more than three or four characters, to prevent truncation or duplication of temporary file names. If *name* is NULL, **tempnam** sets it to **t**.

**tempnam** uses **malloc** to allocate a buffer for the temporary file name it returns. If all goes well, it returns a pointer to the temporary name it has written. Otherwise, it returns NULL if the allocation fails or if it cannot build a temporary file name successfully.

*See Also*

general functions, **mktemp()**, **tmpnam()**

*Notes*

**tempnam** is not described in the ANSI Standard. Programs that use it will not conform strictly the Standard, and may not be portable to other compilers or environments.

## TERM — Environmental Variable

Name the default terminal type

**TERM**=terminal type

The environmental variable **TERM** names the type of terminal that you are using. This variable is read by every program that uses the **termcap** library, to ensure that the correct entry in the file **/etc/termcap** is read when the program is invoked. You should set this variable in your **profile**, to ensure that the system understands what type of terminal you use. The file **/etc/profile** sets **TERM** to **ansipc**.

*See Also*

environmental variables, **termcap**

## termcap — Technical Information

Terminal description language

**termcap** is a language for describing terminals and their capabilities. Terminal descriptions are collected in the file **/etc/termcap** and are read by **tgetent** and its related programs to ensure that output to a particular terminal is in a format that that terminal can understand.

A terminal description written in **termcap** consists of a series of fields, which are separated from each other by colons ':'. Every line in the description, with the exception of the last line, must end in a backslash '\'. Tab characters are ignored. Lines that begin with a '#' are comments. A **termcap** description must not exceed 1,024 characters.

The first field names the terminal. Several different names may be used, each separated by a vertical bar '|'; each name given, however, must be unique within the file **/etc/termcap**. By convention, the first listed must be two characters long. The second

name is the name by which the terminal is most commonly known; this name may contain no blanks in it. Other versions of the name may follow. By convention, the last version is the full name of the terminal; here, spaces may be used for legibility. Any of these may be used to name your terminal to the COHERENT system. For example, the name field for the VT-100 terminal is as follows:

```
d1|vt100|vt-100|pt100|pt-100|dec vt100:\
```

Note that the names are separated by vertical bars '|', that the field ends with a colon, and that the line ends with a backslash. Using any of these names in an **export** command will make the correct terminal description available to programs that need to use it.

The remaining fields in the entry describe the *capabilities* of the terminal. Each capability field consists of a two-letter code, and may include additional information. There are three types of capability:

#### *Boolean*

This indicates whether or not a terminal has a specific feature. If the field is present, the terminal is assumed to have the feature; if it is absent, the terminal is assumed not to have that feature. For example, the field

**am:**

is present, **termcap** assumes that the terminal has automatic margins, whereas if that field is not present, the program using **termcap** assumes that the terminal does not have them.

#### *Numeric*

This gives the size of some aspect of the terminal. Numeric capability fields have the capability code, followed by a '#' and a number. For example, the entry

**co#80:**

means that the terminal screen is 80 columns wide.

#### *String capabilities*

These give a sequence of characters that trigger a terminal operation. These fields consist of the capability code, an equal sign '=', and the string.

Strings often include escape sequences. A "\E" indicates an <ESC> character; a control character is indicated with a caret '^' plus the appropriate letter; and the sequences \b, \f, \n, \r, and \t are, respectively, backspace, formfeed, newline, <return>, and tab.

An integer or an integer followed by an asterisk in the string (e.g., 'int\*') indicates that execution of the function should be delayed by *int* milliseconds; this delay is termed *padding*. Thus, deletion on lines on the Microterm Mime-2A is coded as:

```
d1=20*^W:
```

**d1** is the capability code for *delete*, the equal sign introduces the deletion sequence, **20\*** indicates that each line deletion should be delayed by 20 milliseconds, and **^W** indicates that the line-deletion code on the Mime-2A is <ctrl-W>.



The asterisk indicates that the padding required is proportional to the number of lines affected by the operation. In the above example, the deletion of four lines on the Mime-2A generates a total of 80 milliseconds of padding; if no asterisk were present, however, the padding would be only 20 milliseconds, no matter how many lines were deleted. Also, when an asterisk is used, the number may be given to one decimal place, to show tenths of a millisecond of padding.

Note that with string capabilities, characters may be given as a backslash followed by the three octal digits of the character's ASCII code. Thus, a colon in a capability field may be given by `\072`. To put a null character into the string, use `\200`, because `termcap` strips the high bit from each character.

Finally, the literal characters '^' and '\' are given by "\^" and "\\".

### Capability Codes

The following table lists `termcap`'s capability codes. **Type** indicates whether the code is boolean, numeric, or string; an ampersand '&' indicates that this capability may include padding, and an ampersand plus an asterisk "&\*" indicates that it may be used with the asterisk padding function described above.

| Name      | Type     | Definition                                                    |
|-----------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ae</b> | string&  | End alternate set of characters                               |
| <b>al</b> | string&* | Add blank line                                                |
| <b>am</b> | boolean  | Automatic margins                                             |
| <b>as</b> | string&  | Start alternate set of characters                             |
| <b>bc</b> | string   | Backspace character, if not <code>^H</code>                   |
| <b>bs</b> | boolean  | Backspace character is <code>^H</code>                        |
| <b>bt</b> | string&  | Backtab                                                       |
| <b>bw</b> | boolean  | Backspace wraps from column 0 to last column                  |
| <b>CC</b> | string   | Command character in prototype if it can be set at terminal   |
| <b>cd</b> | string&* | Clear to end of display                                       |
| <b>ce</b> | string&  | Clear line                                                    |
| <b>ch</b> | string&  | Horizontal cursor motion                                      |
| <b>cl</b> | string&* | Clear screen                                                  |
| <b>cm</b> | string&  | Cursor motion, both vertical and horizontal                   |
| <b>co</b> | number&  | Number of columns                                             |
| <b>cr</b> | string&* | <code>&lt;return&gt;</code> ; default <code>^M</code>         |
| <b>cs</b> | string&  | Change scrolling region (DEC VT100 only); resembles <b>cm</b> |
| <b>cv</b> | string&  | Vertical cursor motion                                        |
| <b>da</b> | boolean& | Display above may be retained                                 |
| <b>dB</b> | number   | Milliseconds of delay needed by <b>bs</b>                     |
| <b>db</b> | boolean  | Display below may be retained                                 |
| <b>dC</b> | number   | Milliseconds of delay needed by <b>cr</b>                     |
| <b>dc</b> | string&* | Delete a character                                            |
| <b>dF</b> | number   | Milliseconds of delay needed by <b>ff</b>                     |
| <b>dl</b> | string&* | Delete a line                                                 |

|              |          |                                                                                |
|--------------|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>dm</b>    | string   | Enter delete mode                                                              |
| <b>dN</b>    | number   | Milliseconds of delay needed by <b>nl</b>                                      |
| <b>do</b>    | string   | Move down one line                                                             |
| <b>dT</b>    | number   | Milliseconds of delay needed by tab                                            |
| <b>ed</b>    | string   | Leave delete mode                                                              |
| <b>ei</b>    | string   | Leave insert mode; use <b>:ei=:</b><br>if this string is the same as <b>ic</b> |
| <b>eo</b>    | string   | Erase overstrikes with a blank                                                 |
| <b>ff</b>    | string&* | Eject hardcopy terminal page;<br>default ^L                                    |
| <b>hc</b>    | boolean  | Hardcopy terminal                                                              |
| <b>hd</b>    | string   | Move half-line down, i.e., forward<br>1/2 line feed)                           |
| <b>ho</b>    | string   | Move cursor to home position; use<br>if <b>cm</b> is not set                   |
| <b>hu</b>    | string   | Move half-line up, i.e., reverse<br>1/2 line feed                              |
| <b>hz</b>    | string   | Cannot print tilde '~' (Hazeltine<br>terminals only)                           |
| <b>ic</b>    | string&  | Insert a character                                                             |
| <b>if</b>    | string   | Name of the file that contains <b>is</b>                                       |
| <b>im</b>    | string   | Begin insert mode; use <b>:im=:</b><br>if <b>ic</b> has not been set           |
| <b>in</b>    | boolean  | Nulls are distinguished in display                                             |
| <b>ip</b>    | string&* | Insert padding after each<br>character listed                                  |
| <b>is</b>    | string   | Initialize terminal                                                            |
| <b>k0-k9</b> | string   | Codes sent by function keys 0-9                                                |
| <b>kb</b>    | string   | Code sent by backspace key                                                     |
| <b>kd</b>    | string   | Code sent by down-arrow key                                                    |
| <b>ke</b>    | string   | Leave "keypad transmit" mode                                                   |
| <b>kh</b>    | string   | Code sent by home key                                                          |
| <b>kl</b>    | string   | Code sent by left-arrow key                                                    |
| <b>kn</b>    | number   | No. of function keys; default is 10                                            |
| <b>ko</b>    | string   | Entries for for all other<br>non-function keys                                 |
| <b>kr</b>    | string   | Code sent by right-arrow key                                                   |
| <b>ks</b>    | string   | Begin "keypad transmit" mode                                                   |
| <b>ku</b>    | string   | Code sent by up-arrow key                                                      |
| <b>l0-l9</b> | string   | Function keys labels if not f0-f9                                              |
| <b>li</b>    | number   | Number of lines                                                                |
| <b>ll</b>    | string   | Move cursor to first column of<br>last line; use if <b>cm</b> is not set       |
| <b>mi</b>    | boolean  | Cursor may be safely moved while<br>in insert mode                             |
| <b>ml</b>    | string   | Turn on memory lock for area of<br>screen above cursor                         |
| <b>ms</b>    | boolean  | Cursor may be safely moved while<br>in standout or underline mode              |
| <b>mu</b>    | string   | Turn off memory lock                                                           |

|           |          |                                                                       |
|-----------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>nc</b> | boolean  | <return> does not work                                                |
| <b>nd</b> | string   | Move cursor right non-destructively                                   |
| <b>nl</b> | string&* | Newline character; default is \n. <i>Obsolete</i>                     |
| <b>ns</b> | boolean  | Terminal is CRT, but does not scroll                                  |
| <b>os</b> | boolean  | Terminal can overstrike                                               |
| <b>pc</b> | string   | Pad character any character other than null                           |
| <b>pt</b> | boolean  | Terminal's tabs set by hardware;<br>may need to be set with <b>is</b> |
| <b>se</b> | string   | Exit standout mode                                                    |
| <b>sf</b> | string&  | Scroll forward                                                        |
| <b>sg</b> | number   | Blank characters left by <b>so</b> or <b>se</b>                       |
| <b>so</b> | string   | Enter standout mode                                                   |
| <b>sr</b> | string&  | Reverse scroll                                                        |
| <b>ta</b> | string&  | Tab character other than ^I,<br>or used with character padding        |
| <b>tc</b> | string   | Similar terminal—must be<br>last field in entry                       |
| <b>te</b> | string   | End a program that uses <b>cm</b>                                     |
| <b>ti</b> | string   | Begin a program that uses <b>cm</b>                                   |
| <b>uc</b> | string   | Underscore character and skip it                                      |
| <b>ue</b> | string   | Leave underscore mode                                                 |
| <b>ug</b> | number   | Blank characters left by <b>us</b> or <b>ue</b>                       |
| <b>ul</b> | boolean  | Terminal underlines but does not overstrike                           |
| <b>up</b> | string   | Move up one line                                                      |
| <b>us</b> | string   | Begin underscore mode                                                 |
| <b>vb</b> | string   | Visible bell; may not move cursor                                     |
| <b>ve</b> | string   | Exit open/visual mode                                                 |
| <b>vs</b> | string   | Begin open/visual mode                                                |
| <b>xb</b> | boolean  | Beehive terminal (f1= <esc>,<br>f2= <ctrl-C>)                         |
| <b>xn</b> | boolean  | Newline is ignored after wrap                                         |
| <b>xr</b> | boolean  | <return> behaves like <b>ce</b> \r \n                                 |
| <b>xs</b> | boolean  | Standout mode is not erased by writing over it                        |
| <b>xt</b> | boolean  | Tabs are destructive                                                  |

The following is the **termcap** description of the Zenith Z-19 terminal. The meaning of each field will be described:

```
kb|h19|heath|h19b|heathkit|heath-19|z19|zenith|heathkit h19:\
:a1=1*\EL:am:bs:cd=\EJ:ce=\EK:cl=\EE:cm=\EY%+ %+ :\
:co#80:dc=\EN:d1=1*\EM:do=\EB:ei=\EO:ho=\EH:\
:im=\EQ:li#24:mi:nd=\EC:as=\EF:ae=\EG:ms:pt:\
:sr=\EI:se=\Eq:so=\Ep:up=\EA:vs=\Ex4:ve=\Ey4:\
:kb=^h:ku=\EA:kd=\EB:k1=\ED:kr=\EC:kh=\EH:kn#8:\
:k1=\ES:k2=\ET:k3=\EU:k4=\EV:k5=\EW:\
:l6=blue:l7=red:l8=white:k6=\EP:k7=\EQ:k8=\ER:
```

The first field, which occupies line 1, gives the various aliases for this terminal. The Heathkit H-19, which appears most prominently, was the home-kit version of the commercially sold Z-19. The remaining fields mean the following:

```

:al=1*\EL: <esc>L adds new blank line; use
 one millisecond for each line added
:am: Terminal has automatic margins
:bs: Backspace character is <ctrl>-H (the default)
:cd=\EJ: <esc>J clears to end of display
:ce=\EK: <esc>K clears to end of line
:cl=\EE: <esc>E clears screen
:cm=\EY%+ %+ :Cursor motion (described later)
:co#80: Screen has 80 columns
:dc=\EN:\ <esc>N deletes a character
 (backslash indicates end of a line)
:dl=1*\EM: <esc>M deletes a line
:do=\EB: <esc>B moves cursor down one line
:ei=\EO: <esc>O exits from insert mode
:ho=\EH: <esc>H moves cursor to home position
:im=\E@: <esc>@ begins insert mode (note that
 ic is set)
:li#24: Terminal has 24 lines
:mi: Cursor may be moved safely while terminal
 is in insert mode
:nd=\EC: <esc>C moves cursor right non-destructively
:as=\EF: <esc>F begins set of alternate characters
:ae=\EG:\ <esc>G ends set of alternate characters
:ms: Cursor may be moved safely while terminal
 is in standout and underline mode
:pt: Terminal has hardware tabs
:sr=\EI: <esc>I reverse-scrolls the screen
:se=\Eq: <esc>q exits standout mode
:so=\Ep: <esc>p begins standout mode
:up=\EA: <esc>A moves the cursor up one line
:vs=\Ex4: <esc>x begins visual mode; insert
 4 milliseconds of padding
 when visual mode is begun
:ve=\Ey4:\ <esc>y ends visual mode; insert
 4 milliseconds of padding when visual
 mode is ended
:kb=^h: Backspace key sends <Ctrl>-H
:ku=\EA: Up-arrow key sends <esc>A
:kd=\EB: Down-arrow key sends <esc>B
:kl=\ED: Left-arrow key sends <esc>D
:kr=\EC: Right-arrow key sends <esc>C
:kh=\EH: Home key sends <esc>H
:kn#8:\ There are eight other keys on the
 keyboard
:k1=\ES: Other key 1 sends <esc>S
:k2=\ET: Other key 2 sends <esc>T
:k3=\EU: Other key 3 sends <esc>U
:k4=\EV: Other key 4 sends <esc>V
:k5=\EW:\ Other key 5 sends <esc>W
:l6=blue: Other key 6 is labeled "blue"

```

```

:l7=red: Other key 7 is labeled "red"
:l8=white: Other key 8 is labeled "white"
:k6=\EP: Other key 6 sends <esc>P
:k7=\EQ: Other key 7 sends <esc>Q
:k8=\ER: Other key 8 sends <esc>R

```

Note that the last field did *not* end with a backslash; this indicated to the COHERENT system that the **termcap** description was finished.

A terminal description does not have to be nearly so detailed. If you wish to use a new terminal, first check the following table to see if it already appears by **termcap**. If it does not, check the terminal's documentation to see if it mimics a terminal that is already in `/etc/termcap`, and use that description, modifying it if necessary and changing the name to suit your terminal. If you must create an entirely new description, first prepare a skeleton file that contains the following basic elements: number of lines, number of columns, backspace, cursor motion, line delete, clear screen, move cursor to home position, newline, move cursor up a line, and non-destructive right space. For example, the following is the **termcap** description for the Lear-Siegler ADM-3A terminal:

```

1a|adm3a|3a|lsi adm3a:\
 :am:bs:cd=^W:ce=^X:cm=\E=%+ %+ :cl=^Z:co#80:ho=^^:li#24:\
 :nd=^L:up=^K:

```

Once you have installed and debugged the skeleton description, add details gradually until every feature of the terminal is described.

### Cursor Motion

The cursor motion characteristic contains **printf**-like escape sequences not used elsewhere. These encode the line and column positions of the cursor, whereas other characters are passed unchanged. If the **cm** string is considered as a function, then its arguments are the line and the column to which the cursor is to move; the % codes have the following meanings:

- %d** Decimal number, as in **printf**. The origin is 0.
- %2** Two-digit decimal number. The same as **%2d** in **printf**.
- %3** Three-digit decimal number. The same as **%3d** in **printf**.
- %.** Single byte. The same as **%c** in **printf**.
- %+n** Add *n* to the current position value. *n* may be either a number or a character.
- %>nm** If the current position value is greater than *n+m*; then there is no output.
- %r** Reverse order of line and column, giving column first and then line. No output.
- %i** Increment line and column.
- %%** Give a % sign in the string.
- %n** Exclusive or line and column with 0140 (Datamedia 2500 terminal only).
- %B** Binary coded decimal ( $16 * (n/10) + (n\%10)$ ). No output.

**%D** Reverse coding ( $n \cdot 2^{(n \% 16)}$ ). No output (Delta Data terminal only).

To send the cursor to line 3, column 12 on the Hewlett-Packard 2645, the terminal must be sent `<esc>&a12c03Y` padded for 6 milliseconds. Note that the column is given first and then the line, and that the line and column are given as two digits each. Thus, the **cm** capability for the Hewlett-Packard 2645 is given by:

```
:cm=6\E&%r%2c%2Y:
```

The Microterm ACT-IV needs the current position sent preceded by a `<Ctrl-T>`, with the line and column encoded in binary:

```
:cm=^T%.%.:
```

Terminals that use **%**. must be able to backspace the cursor (**bs** or **bc**) and to move the cursor up one line on the screen (**up**). This is because transmitting `\t`, `\n`, `\r`, or `<ctrl-D>` may have undesirable consequences or be ignored by the system.

### *Similar Terminals*

If your system uses two similar terminals, one can be defined as resembling the other, with certain exceptions. The code **tc** names the similar terminal. This field must be *last* in the **termcap** entry, and the combined length of the two entries cannot exceed 1,024 characters. Capabilities given first over-ride those in the similar terminal, and capabilities in the similar terminal can be cancelled by **xx@** where **xx** is the capability. For example, the entry

```
hn|2621nl|HP 2621nl:ks@:ke@:tc=2621
```

defines a Hewlett-Packard 2621 terminal that does not have the **ks** and **ke** capabilities, and thus cannot turn on the function keys when in visual mode.

### *Initialization*

A terminal initialization string may be given with the **is** capability; if the string is too long, it may be read from a file given by the **if** code. Usually, these strings set the tabs on a terminal with settable tabs. If both **is** and **if** are given, **is** will be printed first to clear the tabs, then the tabs will be set from the file specified by **if**. The Hewlett-Packard 2626 has:

```
:is=\E&j@\r\E3\r;if=/usr/lib/tabset/stdcrt:
```

### *Terminals Supported*

The following table lists the terminals described in `/etc/termcap`, and an abbreviated name for each.

| <i>Name</i>   | <i>Terminal</i>       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| <b>act5</b>   | Microterm Act V       |
| <b>adm3a</b>  | Lear-Siegler ADM3A    |
| <b>adm31</b>  | Lear-Siegler ADM31    |
| <b>ansipc</b> | AT COHERENT console   |
| <b>cohibm</b> | PC COHERENT console   |
| <b>dos</b>    | DOS 3.1 ANSISIS       |
| <b>h1510</b>  | Hazeltine 1510        |
| <b>h19</b>    | Heathkit H-19         |
| <b>h19a</b>   | Heathkit H-19 in ANSI |

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>mimel</b>  | Microterm Mime1                   |
| <b>mime2a</b> | Microterm Mime2a                  |
| <b>mime3a</b> | Microterm Mime3a                  |
| <b>qvt102</b> | Qume QVT-102                      |
| <b>qume5</b>  | Qume Sprint 5                     |
| <b>tvi912</b> | Televideo 920                     |
| <b>tvi920</b> | Televideo 920                     |
| <b>tvi925</b> | Televideo 925                     |
| <b>vt52</b>   | DEC VT-52                         |
| <b>vt100</b>  | DEC VT-100                        |
| <b>vt100n</b> | DEC VT-100 without initialization |
| <b>vt100s</b> | DEC VT-100, 132 columns, 14 lines |
| <b>vt100w</b> | DEC VT-100, 132 columns, 24 lines |
| <b>wy50</b>   | Wyse 50                           |

*Files**/etc/termcap**See Also***modemcap**, **technical information**, **terminal-independent operations @**.**terminal-independent operations — Overview**

The COHERENT system includes a set of functions, found in the library */usr/lib/libterm.a*, that extract and use the descriptions stored in the file */etc/termcap*. These functions return information about how a given terminal functions; thus, they allow a program to address any number of different terminals correctly, without having to change source code or recompile.

The following functions perform terminal-independent operations:

|                   |                                                                                     |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>tgetent()</b>  | Read the appropriate <b>termcap</b> entry.                                          |
| <b>tgetflag()</b> | Check if a given Boolean capability is present in the terminal's entry.             |
| <b>tgetnum()</b>  | Return the value of a numeric <b>termcap</b> feature.                               |
| <b>tgetstr()</b>  | Read and decode a <b>termcap</b> string feature.                                    |
| <b>tgoto()</b>    | Read and decode a <b>termcap</b> cursor-addressing string.                          |
| <b>tputs()</b>    | Read and decode the leading padding information of a <b>termcap</b> string feature. |

See the Lexicon entry for each function for more details on its operation.

The external variable **ospeed** is the output speed to the terminal as encoded by **stty**. The external variable **PC** is a padding character from the **pc** capability if a null (<ctrl-@>) is not appropriate.

*Files*

*/etc/termcap* — Terminal capabilities data base  
*/usr/lib/libterm.a* — Function library

*See Also*

libraries, `stty`, `termcap`, `tgetent()`, `tgetflag()`, `tgetnum()`, `tgetstr()`, `tgoto()`, `tputs()`

## **termio** — Device Driver

### General terminal interface

Under the COHERENT system, all asynchronous ports use the same interface, no matter what hardware is involved. The remainder of this section discusses the common features of this interface.

When a terminal file is opened, it normally causes the process to wait until a connection is established. In practice, users' programs seldom open these files; they are opened by the program *getty* and become a user's standard input, output, and error files. The very first terminal file opened by the process group leader of a terminal file not already associated with a process group becomes the *control terminal* for that process group. The control terminal plays a special role in handling **quit** and **interrupt** signals, as discussed below. The control terminal is inherited by a child process during a call to `fork`. A process can break this association by changing its process group using `setpgrp`.

A terminal associated with one of these files ordinarily operates in full-duplex mode. Characters can be typed at any time, even while output is occurring, and are only lost when the system's input buffers become completely full, which is rare, or when the user has accumulated the maximum allowed number of input characters that have not yet been read by some program. Currently, this limit is 256 characters. When the input limit is reached, the system throws away all the saved characters without notice.

Normally, terminal input is processed in units of lines. A line is delimited by a newline character (ASCII LF), an end-of-file character (ASCII EOT), or an end-of-line character. This means that a program attempting to read will be suspended until an entire line has been typed. Also, no matter how many characters are requested in the read call, at most one line will be returned. It is not, however, necessary to read a whole line at once; any number of characters may be requested in a read, even one, without losing information.

During input, the system normally processes **erase** and **kill** characters. By default, the backspace character erases the last character typed, except that it will not erase beyond the beginning of the line. By default, the `<ctrl-U>` calls (deletes) the entire input line, and optionally outputs a newline character. Both these characters operate on a keystroke-by-keystroke basis, independently of any backspacing or tabbing which may have been done. Both the erase and kill characters may be entered literally by preceding them with the escape character (`\`). In this case, the escape character is not read. You may change the erase and kill characters.

Certain characters have special functions on input. These functions and their default character values are summarized as follows:

**INTR** (`<ctrl-C>` or ASCII ETX) generates an *interrupt* signal that is sent to all processes with the associated control terminal. Normally, each such process is forced to terminate, but arrangements may be made either to ignore the signal or to receive a trap to an agreed-upon location; see the *Lexicon* entry for **signal**.



- QUIT** (Control-\ or ASCII ES) generates a *quit* signal. Its treatment is identical to that of the interrupt signal except that, unless a receiving process has made other arrangements, it will not only be terminated but a core image file (called *core*) will be created in the current working directory.
- ERASE** (<backspace> or ASCII BS) erases the preceding character. It will not erase beyond the start of a line, as delimited by a newline, EOF, or EOL character.
- KILL** (<ctrl-U> or ASCII NAK) deletes the entire line, as delimited by a newline, EOF, or EOL character.
- EOF** (<ctrl-D> or ASCII EOT) generates an end-of-file character from a terminal. When received, all the characters waiting to be read are immediately passed to the program without waiting for a newline, and the EOF is discarded. Thus, if no characters are waiting, which is to say the EOF occurred at the beginning of a line, zero characters will be passed back, which is the standard end-of-file indication.
- NL** (ASCII LF) is the normal line delimiter. It cannot be changed or escaped.
- EOL** (ASCII LF) is an additional line delimiter, line NL. It is not normally used.
- STOP** (<ctrl-S> or ASCII DC3) can be used to suspend output. It is useful with CRT terminals to prevent output from disappearing before it can be read. While output is suspended, STOP characters are ignored and not read.
- START** (<ctrl-Q> or ASCII DC1) resumes output that has been suspended by a STOP character. While output is not suspended, START characters are ignored and not read. The start/stop characters can not be changed or escaped.

The character values for INTR, QUIT, ERASE, KILL, EOF, and EOL may be changed to suit individual tastes. The ERASE, KILL, and EOF character may be escaped by a preceding \ character, in which case the system ignores its special meaning.

When the carrier signal from the data-set drops, a *hangup* signal is sent to all processes that have this terminal as the control terminal. Unless other arrangements have been made, this signal causes the process to terminate. If the hangup signal is ignored, any subsequent read returns with an end-of-file indication. Thus programs that read a terminal and test for end-of-file can terminate appropriately when hung up on.

When one or more characters are written, they are transmitted to the terminal as soon as previously written characters have finished typing. Input characters are echoed by putting them into the output queue as they arrive. If a process produces characters more rapidly than they can be printed, it will be suspended when its output queue exceeds some limit. When the queue has drained down to some threshold, the program resumes.

Several calls to `ioctl` apply to terminal files. The primary calls use the following structure, defined in `<termio.h>`:

```

#define NCC 8
struct termio {
 unsigned short c_iflag; /* input modes */
 unsigned short c_oflag; /* output modes */
 unsigned short c_cflag; /* control modes */
 unsigned short c_lflag; /* local modes */
 char c_line; /* line discipline */
 unsigned char c_cc[NCC]; /* control chars */
};

```

The special control characters are defined by the array *c\_cc*. The relative positions and initial values for each function are as follows:

```

0 INTR ^C
1 QUIT ^\
2 ERASE \b
3 KILL ^U
4 EOF ^D
5 EOL \n
6 reserved
7 reserved

```

The field *c\_iflag* describes the basic terminal input control:

|        |         |                                         |
|--------|---------|-----------------------------------------|
| IGNBRK | 0000001 | Ignore break condition.                 |
| BRKINT | 0000002 | Signal interrupt on break.              |
| IGNPAR | 0000004 | Ignore characters with parity errors.   |
| PARMRK | 0000010 | Mark parity errors.                     |
| INPCK  | 0000020 | Enable input parity check.              |
| ISTRIP | 0000040 | Strip character.                        |
| INLCR  | 0000100 | Map NL to CR on input.                  |
| IGNCR  | 0000200 | Ignore CR.                              |
| ICRNL  | 0000400 | Map CR to NL on input.                  |
| IUCLC  | 0001000 | Map upper-case to lower-case on input.  |
| IXON   | 0002000 | Enable start/stop output control.       |
| IXANY  | 0004000 | Enable any character to restart output. |
| IXOFF  | 0010000 | Enable start/stop input control.        |

If **IGNBRK** is set, the break condition (a character-framing error with data all zeros) is ignored, that is, not put on the input queue and therefore not read by any process. Otherwise, if **BRKINT** is set, the break condition generates an interrupt signal and flushes both the input and output queues. If **IGNPAR** is set, characters with other framing and parity errors are ignored.

If **PARMRK** is set, a character with a framing or parity error which is not ignored is read as the three character sequence 0377, 0, X, where X is the data of the character received in error. To avoid ambiguity in this case, if **ISTRIP** is not set, a valid character of 0377 is read as 0377, 0377. If **PARMRK** is not set, a framing or parity error which is not ignored is read as the character NUL.

If **INPCK** is set, input parity checking is enabled. If **INPCK** is not set, input parity checking is disabled. This allows output parity generation without input parity errors.

If ISTRIP is set, valid input characters are stripped to 7-bits before being processed; otherwise, all eight bits are processed.

If INLCR is set, a received NL character is translated into a CR character. If IGNCR is set, a received CR character is ignored (not read). Otherwise if ICRNL is set, a received CR character is translated into a NL character.

If IUCLC is set, a received upper-case alphabetic character is translated into the corresponding lower-case character.

If IXON is set, start/stop output control is enabled. A received STOP character will suspend output and a received START character will restart output. All start/stop characters are ignored and not read. If IXANY is set, any input character will restart output which has been suspended.

IF IXOFF is set, the system will transmit START/STOP characters when the input queue is nearly empty/full.

The initial input control value is all bits clear.

The field *c\_oflag* field specifies the system treatment of output:

|        |         |                                    |
|--------|---------|------------------------------------|
| OPOST  | 0000001 | Postprocess output.                |
| OLCUC  | 0000002 | Map lower case to upper on output. |
| ONLCR  | 0000004 | Map NL to CR-NL on output.         |
| OCRNL  | 0000010 | Map CR to NL on output.            |
| ONOCR  | 0000020 | No CR output at column 0.          |
| ONLRET | 0000040 | NL performs CR function.           |
| OFILL  | 0000100 | Use fill characters for delay.     |
| OFDEL  | 0000200 | Fill is DEL, else NUL.             |
| NLDLY  | 0000400 | Select new-line delays:            |
| NL0    | 0       |                                    |
| NL1    | 0000400 |                                    |
| CRDLY  | 0003000 | Select carriage-return delays:     |
| CR0    | 0       |                                    |
| CR1    | 0001000 |                                    |
| CR2    | 0002000 |                                    |
| CR3    | 0003000 |                                    |
| TABDLY | 0014000 | Select horizontal-tab delays:      |
| TAB0   | 0       |                                    |
| TAB1   | 0004000 |                                    |
| TAB2   | 0010000 |                                    |
| TAB3   | 0014000 | Expand tabs to spaces.             |
| BSDLY  | 0020000 | Select backspace delays:           |
| BS0    | 0       |                                    |
| BS1    | 0020000 |                                    |
| VTDLY  | 0040000 | Select vertical-tab delays:        |
| VT0    | 0       |                                    |
| VT1    | 0040000 |                                    |
| FFDLY  | 0100000 | Select form-feed delays:           |
| FF0    | 0       |                                    |

FF1            0100000

If OPOST is set, output characters are post-processed as indicated by the remaining flags; otherwise, characters are transmitted without change.

If OLCUC is set, a lower-case alphabetic character is transmitted as the corresponding upper-case character. This function is often used with IUCLC.

If ONLCR is set, the NL character is transmitted as the CR-NL character pair. If OCRNL is set, the CR character is transmitted as the NL character. If ONOCR is set, no CR character is transmitted when at column 0 (first position). If ONLRET is set, the NL character is assumed to do the carriage-return function; the column pointer is set to 0 and the delays specified for CR used. Otherwise, the NL character is assumed to do just the line-feed function; the column pointer remains unchanged. The column pointer is also set to 0 if the CR character is actually transmitted.

The delay bits specify how long transmission stops to allow for mechanical or other movement when certain characters are sent to the terminal. In all cases, a value of 0 indicates no delay. If OFILL is set, fill characters are transmitted for delay instead of a timed delay. This is useful for high baud-rate terminals that need only a minimal delay. If OFDEL is set, the fill character is DEL; otherwise, it is NUL.

If a form-feed or vertical-tab delay is specified, it lasts for about two seconds.

Newline delay lasts about 0.10 seconds. If ONLRET is set, the carriage-return delays are used instead of the newline delays. If OFILL is set, two fill characters are transmitted.

Carriage-return delay type 1 is dependent on the current column position, type 2 is about 0.10 seconds, and type 3 is about 0.15 seconds. If OFILL is set, delay type 1 transmits two fill characters, and type 2 four fill characters.

Horizontal-tab delay type 1 depends on the current column position. Type 2 is about 0.10 seconds. Type 3 specifies that tabs are to be expanded into spaces. If OFILL is set, two fill characters are transmitted for any delay.

Backspace delay lasts about 0.05 seconds. If OFILL is set, one fill character is transmitted.

The actual delays depend on line speed and system load.

The initial output control value is all bits clear.

The field *c\_flag* describes the hardware control of the terminal, as follows:

|       |         |            |
|-------|---------|------------|
| CBAUD | 0000017 | Baud rate: |
| B0    | 0       | Hang up    |
| B50   | 0000001 | 50 baud    |
| B75   | 0000002 | 75 baud    |
| B110  | 0000003 | 110 baud   |
| B134  | 0000004 | 134.5 baud |
| B150  | 0000005 | 150 baud   |
| B200  | 0000006 | 200 baud   |
| B300  | 0000007 | 300 baud   |
| B600  | 0000010 | 600 baud   |
| B1200 | 0000011 | 1200 baud  |

|        |         |                              |
|--------|---------|------------------------------|
| B1800  | 0000012 | 1800 baud                    |
| B2400  | 0000013 | 2400 baud                    |
| B4800  | 0000014 | 4800 baud                    |
| B9600  | 0000015 | 9600 baud                    |
| B19200 | 0000016 | 19200 baud                   |
| B38400 | 0000017 | 38400 baud                   |
| CSIZE  | 0000060 | Character size:              |
| CS5    | 0       | 5 bits                       |
| CS6    | 0000020 | 6 bits                       |
| CS7    | 0000040 | 7 bits                       |
| CS8    | 0000060 | 8 bits                       |
| CSTOPB | 0000100 | Send two stop bits, else one |
| CREAD  | 0000200 | Enable receiver              |
| PARENB | 0000400 | Parity enable                |
| PARODD | 0001000 | Odd parity, else even        |
| HUPCL  | 0002000 | Hang up on last close        |
| CLOCAL | 0004000 | Local line, else dial-up     |

The CBAUD bits specify the baud rate. The zero baud rate, B0, is used to hang up the connection. If B0 is specified, the data-terminal-ready signal is not asserted. Normally, this disconnects the line. For any particular hardware, the system ignores impossible changes to the speed.

The CSIZE bits specify the character size in bits for both transmission and reception. This size does not include the parity bit, if any. If CSTOPB is set, two stop bits are used; otherwise, one stop bit. For example, at 110 baud, two stop bits are required.

If PARENB is set, parity generation and detection is enabled and a parity bit is added to each character. If parity is enabled, the PARODD flag specifies odd parity if set; otherwise, even parity is used.

If CREAD is set, the receiver is enabled. Otherwise, no characters will be received.

If HUPCL is set, COHERENT disconnects the line when the last process with the line open closes the line or terminates; that is, the data-terminal-ready signal is not asserted.

If CLOCAL is set, the system assumes that the line to be a local, direct connection with no modem control. Otherwise, it assumes modem control.

The initial hardware control value after open is B300, CS8, CREAD, HUPCL.

The line discipline uses the field *c\_lflag* to control terminal functions. The basic line discipline (0) provides the following:

|        |         |                                              |
|--------|---------|----------------------------------------------|
| ISIG   | 0000001 | Enable signals.                              |
| ICANON | 0000002 | Canonical input (erase and kill processing). |
| XCASE  | 0000004 | Canonical upper/lower presentation.          |
| ECHO   | 0000010 | Enable echo.                                 |
| ECHOE  | 0000020 | Echo erase character as BS-SP-BS.            |
| ECHOK  | 0000040 | Echo NL after kill character.                |
| ECHONL | 0000100 | Echo NL.                                     |
| NOFLSH | 0000200 | Disable flush after interrupt or quit.       |

If ISIG is set, the system checks each input character against the special control characters INTR and QUIT. If an input character matches one of these control characters, the system executes the function associated with that character. If ISIG is not set, the system performs no checking; thus, these special input functions are possible only if ISIG is set. You can disable these functions individually by changing the value of the control character to an unlikely or impossible value (e.g. 0377).

If ICANON is set, the system enables canonical processing. This enables the erase and kill edit functions, and limits the assembly of input characters into lines delimited by NL, EOF, and EOL. If ICANON is not set, read requests are satisfied directly from the input queue. A read will not be satisfied until at least MIN characters have been received or the timeout value TIME has expired. This allows the system to read efficiently fast bursts of input while still allowing single-character input. The MIN and TIME values are stored in the position for the EOF and EOL characters, respectively. The time value represents tenths of seconds.

If XCASE is set, and if ICANON is set, an upper-case letter is accepted on input by preceding it with a \ character, and is output preceded by a \ character. In this mode, the following escape sequences are generated on output and accepted on input:

*For: Use:*

|   |    |
|---|----|
| · | ·  |
|   | !  |
| ~ | ^  |
| { | (  |
| } | )  |
| \ | \\ |

For example, A is input as \a, \n as \\n, and \N as \\N.

If ECHO is set, characters are echoed as received.

When ICANON is set, the following echo functions are possible: If ECHO and ECHOE are set, the erase character is echoed as ASCII BS SP BS, which clears the last character from the screen. If ECHOE is set and EHO is not set, the erase character is echoed as ASCII SP BS. If ECHOK is set, the NL character is echoed after the kill character to emphasize that the line will be deleted. Note that an escape character preceding the erase or kill character removes any special function. If ECHONL is set, the NL character is echoed even if ECHO is not set. This is useful for terminals set to local echo ("half duplex"). Unless escaped, the EOF character is not echoed. Because EOT is the default EOF character, this prevents terminals that respond to EOT from hanging up.

If NOFLSH is set, the normal flush of the input and output queues associated with the quit and interrupt characters is not done.

The initial line-discipline control value is all bits clear.

The primary calls to `ioctl` have the following form:

```
ioctl(fildes, command, arg)
struct termio *arg;
```

The following commands use this form:

- TCGETA** Get the parameters associated with the terminal and store in the *termio* structure referenced by *arg*.
- TCSETA** Set the parameters associated with the terminal from the structure referenced by *arg*. The change is immediate.
- TCSETAW** Wait for the output to drain before setting the new parameters. This form should be used when changing parameters that affect output.
- TCSETAF** Wait for the output to drain, then flush the input queue and set the new parameters.

Additional calls to `ioctl` have the following form:

```
ioctl(fildes, command, arg)
int arg;
```

The following commands use this form:

- TCSBRK** Wait for the output to drain. If *arg* is zero, then send a break (zero bits for 0.25 seconds).
- TCXONC** Start/stop control. If *arg* is zero, suspend output; if one, restart suspended output.
- TCFLSH** If *arg* is zero, flush the input queue; if one, flush the output queue; if two, flush both the input and output queues.

### Files

`/dev/tty*`

*See Also*

device drivers, `ioctl()`, `stty`, `termio.h`

## termio.h — Header File

Definitions used with terminal input and output

`#define <termio.h>`

`termio.h` defines structures and constants used by functions that control terminal input and output.

*See Also*

header files, `termio`

## test — Command

Evaluate conditional expression

`test expression ...`

`test` evaluates an *expression*, which consists of string comparisons, numerical comparisons, and tests of file attributes. For example, a `test` command might be used within a shell command file to test whether a certain file exists and is readable. The logical result (true or false) of the *expression* is returned by the command, for use by a shell construct such as `if`.

*expression* is constructed from the following elements, which are true if the given condition holds and false if not:

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>-d</b> <i>file</i>      | <i>file</i> exists and is a directory.                                                                                                                            |
| <b>-f</b> <i>file</i>      | <i>file</i> exists and is not a directory.                                                                                                                        |
| <b>-n</b> <i>string</i>    | <i>string</i> has nonzero length.                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>-r</b> <i>file</i>      | <i>file</i> exists and is readable.                                                                                                                               |
| <b>-s</b> <i>file</i>      | <i>file</i> exists and has nonzero size.                                                                                                                          |
| <b>-t</b> [ <i>fd</i> ]    | <i>fd</i> is the file descriptor number of a file which is open and a terminal. If no <i>fd</i> is given, it defaults to the standard output (file descriptor 1). |
| <b>-w</b> <i>file</i>      | <i>file</i> exists and is writable.                                                                                                                               |
| <b>-z</b> <i>string</i>    | <i>string</i> has zero length (is a null string).                                                                                                                 |
| <i>string</i>              | <i>string</i> has nonzero length.                                                                                                                                 |
| <i>s1</i> = <i>s2</i>      | String <i>s1</i> is equal to string <i>s2</i> .                                                                                                                   |
| <i>s1</i> != <i>s2</i>     | String <i>s1</i> is not equal to string <i>s2</i> .                                                                                                               |
| <i>n1</i> -eq <i>n2</i>    | Numbers <i>n1</i> and <i>n2</i> are equal.                                                                                                                        |
| <i>n1</i> -ne <i>n2</i>    | Numbers <i>n1</i> and <i>n2</i> are not equal.                                                                                                                    |
| <i>n1</i> -gt <i>n2</i>    | Number <i>n1</i> is greater than <i>n2</i> .                                                                                                                      |
| <i>n1</i> -ge <i>n2</i>    | Number <i>n1</i> is greater than or equal to <i>n2</i> .                                                                                                          |
| <i>n1</i> -lt <i>n2</i>    | Number <i>n1</i> is less than <i>n2</i> .                                                                                                                         |
| <i>n1</i> -le <i>n2</i>    | Number <i>n1</i> is less than or equal to <i>n2</i> .                                                                                                             |
| ! <i>exp</i>               | Negates the logical value of expression <i>exp</i> .                                                                                                              |
| <i>exp1</i> -a <i>exp2</i> | Both expressions <i>exp1</i> and <i>exp2</i> are true.                                                                                                            |
| <i>exp1</i> -o <i>exp2</i> | Either expression <i>exp1</i> or <i>exp2</i> is true. -a has greater precedence than -o.                                                                          |
| ( <i>exp</i> )             | Parentheses allow expression grouping.                                                                                                                            |

### Example

The following example uses the `test` command to determine whether a file is writable.

```
if test ! -w /dev/lp
then
 echo The line printer is inaccessible.
fi
```

Under COHERENT, the command '[' is linked to `test`. If invoked as '[', `test` checks that its last argument is ']'. This allows an alternative syntax: simply enclose *expression* in square brackets. For example, the above example can be written as follows:



```

if [! -w /dev/lp]
then
 echo The line printer is inaccessible.
fi

```

For a more extended example of the square-bracket syntax, see `sh`.

*See Also*

`commands`, `expr`, `find`, `if`, `sh`, `while`

## tgetent() — Terminal-Independent Operation

Read termcap entry  
**int** tgetent(*bp*, *name*)  
**char** \**bp*, \**name*;

`tgetent` is one of a set of functions that help COHERENT to perform terminal-independent operations. It extracts the entry from file `/etc/termcap` for the terminal *name* and writes it into a buffer at address *bp*. *bp* should be a character buffer of 1,024 bytes and must be retained through all subsequent calls to the other functions. It returns -1 if it cannot open `/etc/termcap`, zero if the terminal name given does not have an entry, and one upon a successful search.

`tgetent` first looks in the environment to see if the `termcap` variable had already been set. If it finds that the variable `termcap` has been set, that the value does *not* begin with a slash, and that the terminal type name in the `termcap` variable is the same as that in the environment variable `TERM`, then `tgetent` uses the `termcap` string instead of reading the file `/etc/termcap`. However, if the `termcap` string does begin with a slash, then it is used as the pathname of a terminal capabilities file other than `/etc/termcap`. This can speed entry into programs that call `tgetent`, and can be used to help debug new terminal descriptions.

### Files

`/etc/termcap` — Terminal capabilities data base  
`/usr/lib/libterm.a` — Function library

*See Also*

`termcap`, `terminal-independent operation`

## tgetflag() — Terminal Independent Operation

Get termcap Boolean entry  
**int** tgetflag(*id*)  
**char** \**id*;

`tgetflag` is one of a set of functions that help COHERENT to perform terminal-independent operation. It returns one if the requested Boolean capability *name* is present in the terminal's `termcap` entry, zero if it is not.

### Files

`/etc/termcap` — Terminal capabilities data base  
`/usr/lib/libterm.a` — Function library

*See Also*

**termcap, terminal-independent operation**

### **tgetnum() – Terminal-Independent Operation**

Get termcap numeric feature

**int tgetnum(*id*)**

**char \**id*;**

**tgetnum** is one of a set of functions that permit the COHERENT system to perform terminal-independent operations. It returns the value of the numeric feature *name*, as defined in the terminal's **termcap** entry. It returns -1 if the feature is not present in the terminal's entry.

*Files*

**/etc/termcap** — Terminal capabilities data base

**/usr/lib/libterm.a** — Function library

*See Also*

**termcap, terminal-independent operations**

### **tgetstr() – Terminal-Independent Operation**

Get termcap string entry

**char \*tgetstr(*id, area*)**

**char \**id, \*\*area*;**

**tgetstr** is one of a set of functions that help COHERENT to perform terminal-independent operations. It reads the string value of feature *name* from the terminal's **termcap** description, and writes it into the buffer at address *area*. It also advances the value of the pointer to *area*.

**tgetstr** decodes the abbreviations for the fields used in the **termcap** entry, except for padding and for cursor-addressing information.

*Files*

**/etc/termcap** — Terminal capabilities data base

**/usr/lib/libterm.a** — Function library

*See Also*

**termcap, terminal-independent operation**

### **tgoto() – Terminal-Independent Operation**

Read/interpret termcap cursor-addressing string

**char \*tgoto(*cm, destcol, destline*)**

**char \**cm*; int *destcol, destline*;**

**tgoto** is one of a set of functions that permit COHERENT to perform terminal-independent operations. It decodes a cursor-addressing string from the *cm* **termcap** feature, and writes it into *destcolumn* in *destline*. **tgoto** uses the external variables *UP* (from the **up** feature) and *BC* (if *bc* is given rather than *bs*) if it is necessary to avoid placing **\n**, **<ctrl-D>**, or **<ctrl-@>** into the returned string. Programs calling **tgoto** should turn off the **XTABS** bits, as **tgoto** may write a tab. If a '%' sequence is given that is not understood, **tgoto** returns "OOPS".

*Files**/etc/termcap* — Terminal capabilities data base*/usr/lib/libterm.a* — Function library*See Also***termcap**, **terminal-independent operation****time()** — Time Function (libc)

Get current time

#include &lt;time.h&gt;

#include &lt;sys/types.h&gt;

time\_t time(tp) time\_t \*tp;

**time** reads the current system time. *tp* points to a data element of the type **time\_t**, which is defined in the header file **types.h** as being equivalent to a **long**. COHERENT defines the current system time as the number of seconds since January 1, 1970, 0h00m00s GMT.

*Example*For an example of this function, see the entry for **asctime**.*See Also***date**, **time (overview)****time** — Overview

COHERENT includes a number of routines that allow you to set and manipulate time, as recorded on the system's clock, into a variety of formats. These routines should be adequate for nearly any task that involves temporal calculations or the maintenance of data gathered over a long period of time.

All functions, global variables, and manifest constants used in connection with time are defined and described in the header files **time.h** and **timeb.h**.

The COHERENT system includes the following functions to manipulate time:

|                  |                                                |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>asctime</b>   | Convert time structure to ASCII string         |
| <b>ctime</b>     | Convert system time to an ASCII string         |
| <b>ftime</b>     | Get the current time from the operating system |
| <b>gmtime</b>    | Convert system time to calendar structure      |
| <b>localtime</b> | Convert system time to calendar structure      |
| <b>settz</b>     | Set local time zone                            |
| <b>time</b>      | Get current time                               |

To print out the local time, a program must perform the following tasks: First, read the system time with **time**. Then, it must pass **time**'s output to **localtime**, which breaks it down into the **tm** structure. Next, it must pass **localtime**'s output to **asctime**, which transforms the **tm** structure into an ASCII string. Finally, it must pass the output of **asctime** to **printf**, which displays it on the standard output device. See the entry for **asctime** for an example of such a program.

*Example*

For an example of time functions, see the entry for **asctime**.

*See Also*

**Libraries**

**time – Command**

Time the execution of a command

**time** [*command*]

**time** invokes the given *command* with any arguments provided. Upon termination, **time** prints the elapsed real time, CPU time in the system, and CPU time in the user program on the standard error output.

If no *command* is given, **time** simply invokes **date** to print the current time of day.

*See Also*

**commands, date, prof, ps, times**

*Diagnostics*

If the *command* terminates abnormally, the reason is printed.

**time.h – Header File**

Give time-description structure

**#include** <**time.h**>

**time.h** is a header file that contains descriptions and declarations for elements used to manipulate system time under COHERENT.

*See Also*

**header files, time**

**timeb.h – Header File**

Declare timeb structure

**#include** <**sys/timeb.h**>

The header file **timeb.h** declares the structure **timeb**, which is used by the function **ftime** to return time information.

*See Also*

**ftime(), header files, time**

**timef.h – Header File**

Definitions for user-level timed functions

**#define** <**timef.h**>

**timef.h** defines structures and constants used by user-level timed functions.

*See Also*

**header files**

**timeout.h – Header File**

Define the timer queue  
**#define <timeout.h>**

**timeout.h** defines the timeout queue. The timeout queue can, as its name implies, be used to call a function when a process has “timed out”.

*See Also*

header files

**times() – COHERENT System Call**

Obtain process execution times

**#include <sys/times.h>**

**#include <sys/const.h>**

**int times(*tbp*)**

**struct tbuffer \**tbp*;**

**times** reads CPU time information about the current process and its children, and writes it into the structure pointed to by *tbp*. The structure **tbuffer** is declared in the header file **sys/times.h**, as follows:

```
struct tbuffer {
 long tb_utime; /* process user time */
 long tb_stime; /* process system time */
 long tb_cutime; /* childrens' user times */
 long tb_cstime; /* childrens' system times */
};
```

All of the times are measured in basic machine cycles, or **HZ**, which may be obtained from the header file **sys/const.h**. Under AT COHERENT, **HZ** is 100.

The childrens' times include the sum of the times of all terminated child processes of the current process and of all of their children. The *user* time represents execution time of user code, whereas *system* time represents system overhead, such as executing system calls, processing signals, and other monitoring functions.

*Files*

<sys/times.h>

<sys/const.h>

*See Also*

**acct()**, COHERENT system calls, **const.h**, **ftime()**, **time()**

**times – Command**

Print total user and system times

**times**

**times** prints the total elapsed user time and system time for the current shell **sh** and all its children. It gives each time in minutes, seconds and tenths of seconds. For example,

```
1m11.8s 1m35.8s
```

indicates a total user time of 1 minute 11.8 seconds, and a total system time of 1 minute 35.8 seconds.

The shell executes **times** directly.

*See Also*

**commands, time, sh**

### **times.h** — Header File

Definitions used with **times()** system call

**#define** <**times.h**>

**times.h** defines the structure **tbuffer**, which is used to implement the **times** system call.

*See Also*

**header files, times()**

### **TIMEZONE** — Environmental Variable

Time zone information

**TIMEZONE**=*standard:offset[:daylight:date:date:hour:minutes]*

**TIMEZONE** is an environmental parameter that holds information about the user's time zone. This information is used by COHERENT's time routines to construct their description of the current time and day.

To set the **TIMEZONE** parameter, use the set command, as follows:

```
set TIMEZONE=[description]
```

where [description] is the string that describes your time zone. What this string consists of will be described below. Most users write this command into the file **.profile**, so that **TIMEZONE** is set automatically whenever they log onto the COHERENT system.

#### *The Description String*

A **TIMEZONE** description string consists of seven fields that are separated by colons. Fields 1 and 2 must be filled; fields 3 through 7 are optional.

Field 1 gives the name of your standard time zone. Field 2 gives the time zone's offset from Greenwich Mean Time in minutes. Offsets are positive for time zones west of Greenwich and negative for time zones east of Greenwich. For example, users in Chicago set these fields as follows:

```
TIMEZONE=CST:360
```

**CST** is an abbreviation for Central Standard Time, that area's time zone; and 360 refers to the fact that Chicago's time zone is 360 minutes (six hours) behind that of Greenwich.

Field 3 gives the name of the local daylight saving time zone. In Chicago, for example, this field would be set as follows:

```
TIMEZONE=CST:360:CDT
```

CDT is an abbreviation for Central Daylight Time. The absence of this field indicates that your area does not use daylight saving time.

Fields 4 and 5 specify the dates on which daylight saving time begins and ends. If field 3 is set but fields 4 and 5 are not, changes between standard time and daylight saving time are assumed to occur at the times legislated in the United States: at 2 A.M. standard time on the first Sunday in April, and at 2 A.M. daylight saving time on the last Sunday in October.

Fields 4 and 5 each consist of three numbers separated by periods. The first number specifies which occurrence of the day in the month marks the change, counting positive occurrences from the beginning of the month and negative occurrences from the end of the month. The second number specifies a day of the week, numbering Sunday as one. The third number specifies a month of the year, numbering January as one. For example, in Chicago fields 4 and 5 are set to the following:

```
TIMEZONE=CST:360:CDT:1.1.4:-1.1.10
```

If the first number in either field is set to zero, then the last two numbers are assumed to indicate an absolute date. This is done because some countries switch to daylight saving time on the same day each year, instead of a given day of the week.

Finally, fields 6 and 7 specify the hour of the day at which daylight saving time begins and ends, and the number of minutes of adjustment. In Chicago, these are set as follows:

```
TIMEZONE=CST:360:CDT:1.1.4:-1.1.10:2:60
```

The '2' of field 6 indicates that the switch to daylight savings time occurs at 2 A.M. The "60" of field 7 indicates that daylight savings time changes the local time by 60 minutes. Although 60 minutes is the standard change, some regions of the world shift by 30, 45, 90, or 120 minutes; the last shift is also called "double daylight saving time".

For an example of this variable's use in a program, see the entry for `asctime`.

*See Also*

**environmental variables, setenv, time (overview)**

For those requiring more information on this subject, much research has been performed by astrologers. See *Time Changes in the World*, compiled by Doris Chase Doane (three volumes, Hollywood, California, Professional Astrologers, Inc., 1970).

## tmpnam() — General Function (libc)

```
Generate a unique name for a temporary file
#include <stdio.h>
char *tmpnam(name);
char *name;
```

`tmpnam` constructs a unique name for a file. The names returned by `tmpnam` generally are mechanical concatenations of letters, and therefore are mostly used to name temporary files, which are never seen by the user. Unlike a file created by `tmpfile`, a file named by `tmpnam` does not automatically disappear when the program exits. It must be explicitly removed before the program ends if you want it to disappear.

*name* points to the buffer into which **tmpnam** writes the name it generates. If *name* is set to **NULL**, **tmpnam** writes the name into an internal buffer that may be overwritten each time you call this function.

**tmpnam** returns a pointer to the temporary name. Unlike the related function **tempnam**, **tmpnam** assumes that the temporary file will be written into directory and builds the name accordingly.

### *Example*

For an example of this function, see **execve**.

### *See Also*

**general functions, mktemp(), STDIO, tempnam()**

### *Notes*

If you want the file name to be written into *buffer*, you should allocate at least **L\_tmpnam** bytes of memory for it; **L\_tmpnam** is defined in the header **stdio.h**.

## **tolower()** — ctype Macro

Convert characters to lower case

```
#include <ctype.h>
```

```
int tolower(c) int c;
```

**tolower** converts the letter *c* to lower case. **tolower** returns *c* converted to lower case. If *c* is not a letter or is already lower case, then **tolower** returns it unchanged.

### *Example*

The following example demonstrates **tolower** and **toupper**. It reverses the case of every character in a text file.

```
#include <ctype.h>
```

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
```

```
{
 FILE *fp;
 int ch;
 int filename[20];

 printf("Enter name of file to use: ");
 fflush(stdout);
 gets(filename);

 if ((fp = fopen(filename,"r")) != NULL) {
 while ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != EOF)
 putchar(isupper(ch) ? tolower(ch) : toupper(ch));
 } else
 printf("Cannot open %s.\n", filename);
}
```



*See Also*

**ctype, toupper()**

## **touch** — Command

Update modification time of a file

**touch** [ **-c** ] *file* ...

COHERENT keeps track of when each file was last modified. **touch** changes the modification time of each *file* to the current time, but does not modify its contents. By default, **touch** creates *file* if it does not already exist; the **-c** flag suppresses this.

*See Also*

**commands, make**

## **toupper()** — ctype macro

Convert characters to upper case

**#include** <ctype.h>

**int** toupper(*c*) **int** *c*;

**toupper** is a macro that converts the letter *c* to upper case and returns the converted character. If *c* is not a letter or is already upper case, then **toupper** returns it unchanged.

*Example*

For examples of this routine, see the entries for **ctype** and **tolower**.

*See Also*

**ctype, tolower()**

## **tputs()** — Terminal-Independent Operation

Read/decode leading padding information

**tputs**(*cp*, *affent*, *outc*)

**register** char \**cp*; **int** *affent*; **int** (\**outc*)();

**tputs** is one of a set of functions that permit COHERENT to perform terminal-independent operations. It decodes the leading padding information of the string *name*. *affent* is the number of lines affected by the operation, and is set to one if it is not applicable. *outc* is a routine called to write each character.

*Files*

**/etc/termcap** — Terminal capabilities data base

**/usr/lib/libterm.a** — Function library

*See Also*

**termcap, terminal-independent operation**

## **tr** — Command

Translate characters

**tr** [**-cds**] *string1* [*string2*]

**tr** reads characters from the standard input, possibly translates each to another value or deletes it, and writes to standard output.

Each specified *string* may contain literal characters of the form *a* or *\b* (where *b* is non-numeric), octal representations of the form *\ooo* (where *o* is an octal digit), and character ranges of the form *X-Y*. **tr** rewrites each *string* with the appropriate conversions and range expansions.

If an input character is in *string1*, **tr** outputs the corresponding character of *string2*. If *string2* is shorter than *string1*, the result is the last character in *string2*.

The following flags control how **tr** translates characters:

- c Replace *string1* by the set of characters not in *string1*.
- d Delete characters in *string1* rather than translating them.
- s The “squeeze” option: map a sequence of the same character from *string1* to one output character.

### Example

The following example prints all sequences of four or more spaces or printing characters from **infile**:

```
tr -cs ' --' '\12' <infile | grep
```

Here *string1* is the range from **<space>** to **'~'**, which includes all printing characters. Because this example uses the flags **-cs**, **tr** maps sequences of nonprinting characters to newline (octal 12).

### See Also

ASCII, **commands**, **ctype**, **sed**

## trap — Command

Execute command on receipt of signal

**trap** [*command*] [*n* ...]

**trap** instructs the shell **sh** to execute the given *command* when the shell receives signal *n* or any other signal in the optional list. If the *command* is omitted, **trap** resets traps for the given signals to the original values. If the *command* is a null string (i.e., a string that consists only of one null character), the shell ignores the given signals. If *n* is zero, the shell executes the specified *command* when it exits. When it is invoked with no arguments, **trap** prints the signal number and command for each signal on which a trap is set.

The shell executes **trap** directly.

### Example

The following example takes two files and outputs only those lines which are the same.

```
If input only one file-name then simply "cat".
if [$# = 1]; then
 cat $1
 exit 0
```

```

If input two file-names - Ok, else "Usage".
else
 if [$# != 2]; then
 echo "Usage: cmn file1 [file2]"
 exit 1
 fi
fi

TMP is original name of temporary file (/tmp/temp_(pid))
TMP=/tmp/temp_$$

Temporary file has to be removed
trap 'rm $TMP; exit 1' 1 2 9

Difference between "file1" and "difference between file1 and file2"
is the common strings "file1" and "file2"
The strings that are in "file1" and absent in "file2" print in TMP.
diff $1 $2 | sed -n -e "s/^< //p" > $TMP

The strings that are in "file1" and absent in TMP print in stdout.
diff $1 $TMP | sed -n -e "s/^< //p"

Remove temporary file
rm $TMP

```

*See Also*

**commands, sh, signal**

## troff — Command

Format proportionally spaced text  
**troff** [*option ...*] [*file ...*]

The command **troff** processes each given *file*, or the standard input if none is specified, and prints the formatted result on the standard output. The input must contain formatting instructions as well as the text to be processed.

Basic commands provide for such things as setting line length, page length and page offset, generating vertical and horizontal motions, indentation, filling and adjusting output lines, and centering. The great flexibility of **troff** lies in its acceptance of user-defined macros to control almost all higher-level formatting. For example, the formation of paragraphs, header and footer areas, and footnotes must all be implemented by the user via macros.

**troff** uses the same commands and syntax and **nroff**; files prepared for one usually can be processed through the other without requiring any changes. **troff** differs from **nroff** in that it contains tables for proportional spacing of letters, and allows the user to move about the page in increments other than sixths of an inch vertically or tenths of an inch horizontally. The following gives **troff**'s command line options and the primitives that it does *not* share with **nroff**.

### Command-line Options

Command-line options may be listed in any order. They are as follows:

- d**            Debugging mode: do not erase temporary file.
- fname**       Write the temporary file in directory *name*.
- i**            Read from the standard input after reading the given *files*.
- mname**       Include the macro file */usr/lib/tmac.name* in the input stream.
- nN**           Number the first page of output *N*.
- raN**          Set number register *a* to the value *N*.
- x**            Do not eject to the bottom of the last page when text ends. This is often useful if the output device is a CRT.

### troff's Primitives

The following lists **troff's** basic commands, or *primitives*, that are *not* shared with **nroff**.

- .cs Np** Set the constant character width, in points.
- .ps N**    Set point size to *N*.
- .ss N**    Set the minimum word spacing to *N* divided by 36 ems.
- .vs Np** Set the vertical spacing to *N* points. One point is equivalent to 1/72 of an inch; the default setting is 12 points, or 1/6 of an inch.

### Files

- /tmp/rof\** — Temporary files
- /usr/lib/tmac.name* — Standard macro packages

### See Also

**col, commands, deroff, hpr, man, ms, nroff**  
*Introduction to nroff, Text Processing Language*

### Notes

The COHERENT version of **troff** produces output suitable for printing on the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet II printer equipped with Hewlett-Packard soft fonts. The fonts are named as follows:

- \fR**            Times Roman
- \fI**            Times Italic
- \fB**            Times Bold
- \fS**            Times Roman, small
- \fL**            Line printer font
- \f(CM**         American Typewriter
- \fH**            Helvetica Bold

**troff** output, unlike that of **nroff**, cannot be processed through a terminal driver.

Like **nroff**, **troff** should be used with the macro packages **ms**, which is found in the file */usr/lib/tmac.s*, and **man**, which is found in the file */usr/lib/tmac.an*.

**true** — Command

Unconditional success  
**true**

**true** does nothing, successfully. It always returns zero (i.e., true).

**true** is useful in shell scripts when you want to execute a condition indefinitely. For example, the following example

```
while true; do
 date
done
```

prints the current date and time on your screen forever (or at least until interrupted by typing <ctrl-C>).

*See Also*

**commands, false, sh**

**tsort** — Command

Topological sort  
**tsort** [*file*]

**tsort** performs a topological sort of a set of input items. The input *file* (or the standard input, if no *file* is given) specifies an ordering on pairs of items. It consists of pairs of items separated by blanks, tabs or newlines. If a pair contains the same item twice, it simply indicates that the item is in the input set. Otherwise, the pair indicates that the first item precedes the second in the ordering.

**tsort** prints a sorted list of the input items on the standard output.

*See Also*

**commands, sort**

*Diagnostics*

**tsort** prints an error message on the standard error if its input contains an odd number of items or if the specified ordering includes a cycle.

**tty** — Command

Print the user's terminal name  
**tty**

**tty** prints the name of the character-special file that manages your terminal.

*Diagnostics*

**tty** prints the message "Not a tty." if the user is not associated with any controlling terminal.

*See Also*

**commands, who**

**tty.h** — Header File

Define flags used with tty processing  
**#define** <sys/tty.h>

**tty.h** defines flags that are used by routines that handle ttys.

*See Also*

header files, **tty**

**ttyname()** — General Function (libc)

Identify a terminal  
**char** \***ttyname**(*fd*)  
**int** *fd*;

Given a file descriptor *fd* attached to a terminal, **ttyname** returns the complete path-name of the special file (normally found in the directory */dev*).

*Files*

*/dev/\** — Terminal special files

*/etc/ttys* — Login terminals

*See Also*

general functions, **ioctl()**, **isatty()**, **tty()**, **ttyslot()**

*Diagnostics*

**ttyname** returns NULL if it cannot find a special file corresponding to *fd*.

*Notes*

The string returned by **ttyname** kept in a static area, and is overwritten by each subsequent call.

**ttys** — File Format

Active terminal ports

The file */etc/ttys* describes the terminals in the COHERENT system, and states which should have a login process. The process **init** reads this file when it brings up the system in multi-user mode.

*/etc/ttys* contains one line for each terminal. If the first character of this line is '1', logins are enabled; '0' indicates an inactive port. The second character describes the line control: 'r' indicates "remote" (modem control), 'l' indicates "local" (no modem control required).

The third character is passed to */etc/getty* to give speed and other information about the terminal port. Speeds can be either fixed, for use with terminals that are directly wired into the host computer, or variable, for use with modems. The common fixed-speed terminal types are as follows:

| <i>Type</i> | <i>Baud</i> |
|-------------|-------------|
| C           | 110         |
| G           | 300         |
| I           | 1200        |
| L           | 2400        |
| N           | 4800        |
| P           | 9600        |
| Q           | 19200       |

The common variable-speed codes terminal types are as follows:

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| 0 | 300, 1200, 150, 110 |
| 3 | 2400, 1200, 300     |

The remainder of the line in file `/etc/ttys` is the name of the special file for the terminal, normally found in the directory `/dev`.

#### *Files*

`/etc/ttys`

#### *See Also*

file formats, `getty`, `init`, `login`, `stty`

### ttyslot() — General Function (libc)

Return a terminal's line number

`int` `ttyslot()`

`ttyslot` returns the number of the line in the file `/etc/ttys` that describes the controlling terminal (see `ttys`).

#### *Files*

`/dev/*` — Terminal special files

`/etc/ttys` — Login terminals

#### *See Also*

general functions, `ioctl()`, `isatty()`, `tty`, `ttyname()`

#### *Diagnostics*

`ttyslot` returns zero if an error occurs.

### ttystat — Command

`/etc/ttystat` [`-d`] *port*

`ttystat` checks the status of the specified asynchronous *port* in directory `/dev`. It normally just returns an exit status that indicates the status of the *port*. The option `-d` tells `ttystat` to print the status of the *port* on the standard output.

Only the superuser `root` can execute `ttystat`.

#### *Example*

The following example prints the status of port `/dev/com2r`:

```
/etc/ttystat -d com2
```

If `/dev/com2r` is enabled, `ttystat` prints:

```
com2r is enabled
```

`ttystat` finds the port status from the `/etc/ttys` file.

### *Files*

`/etc/ttys` — Terminal characteristics file

### *See Also*

**commands, disable, enable, ttys**

### *Diagnostics*

`ttystat` returns one if the *port* is enabled and zero if the *port* is disabled. It returns -2 if an error occurs.

## **type checking – Technical Information**

Every expression has a *type*, such as **int**, **char**, or **double**. C is not strongly typed, which means that it allows different types to be mixed relatively freely, and be changed (or cast) from one type to another.

COHERENT checks types more strictly than the C standard implies. COHERENT's type checking can be enabled or disabled in degrees, using **-VSTRICT** and other "variant" options with the `cc` command.

### *See Also*

**cc, technical information, type promotion**

## **typedef – C Keyword**

Define a new data type

**typedef** is a C facility that lets you define new data types. Such definitions are always made in terms of existing data types; for example,

```
typedef long time_t;
```

establishes the data type `time_t`, and defines it to be equivalent to a **long**. By convention, programmer-defined data types are written in capital letters.

Judicious use of the **typedef** facility can make programs easier to maintain, and improve their portability.

### *See Also*

**C keyword, manifest constants, portability, storage class**

## **type promotion – Technical Information**

In arithmetic expressions, COHERENT promotes one signed type to another signed type by sign extension, and promotes one unsigned type to another unsigned type by zero padding. For example, **char** promotes to **int** by sign extension, whereas **unsigned char** promotes to **unsigned int** by zero padding.



*See Also*

data formats, technical information

## types.h — Header File

Declare system-specific data types

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

The header file **types.h** declares a number of data types that are used throughout the COHERENT system.

*See Also*

header files

## typo — Command

Detect possible typographical and spelling errors

```
typo [-nrs][file ...]
```

**typo** proofreads an English-language document for typographical errors. It conducts a statistical test of letter digrams and trigrams in each input word against digram and trigram frequencies throughout the entire document. From this test, **typo** computes an index of peculiarity for each word in the document. A high index indicates a word less like other words in the document than does a low index. Built-in frequency tables ensure reasonable results even for relatively short documents.

**typo** reads each input *file* (or the standard input if none), and removes punctuation and non-alphabetic characters to produce a list of the words in the document. To reduce the volume of the output, **typo** compares each word against a small dictionary of technical words and discards it if found. The output consists of a list of unique non-dictionary words with associated index of peculiarity, most peculiar first. An index higher than ten indicates that the word almost certainly occurs only once in the document.

**typo** recognizes the following arguments:

- n Inhibit use of the built-in English digram and trigram statistics, and inhibit dictionary screening of words. More words will be output and the indices of peculiarity will be less useful for short documents.
- r Inhibit the default stripping of **nroff** escape sequences. Normally, **typo** strips lines beginning with ‘.’ and removes the **nroff** escape sequences ‘\’.
- s Produce output files **digrams** and **trigrams** that contain, respectively, the digram and trigram frequency statistics for the given document. No indices of peculiarity are calculated or printed. If desired, these files may be installed in directory **/usr/dict**.

### Files

**/tmp/typo\*** — Intermediate files

**/usr/dict/dict** — Limited dictionary

**/usr/dict/digrams** — Digram frequency statistics

**/usr/dict/trigrams** — Trigram frequency statistics

*See Also*

**commands, nroff, sort, spell**

## U

**umask()** – COHERENT System Call

Set file creation mask

**int umask(*mask*)**

**int *mask*;**

**umask** allows a process to restrict the mode of files it creates. Commands that create files should specify the maximum reasonable mode. A parent (e.g. the shell **sh**) usually calls **umask** to restrict access to files created by subsequent commands.

*mask* should be constructed from any of the permission bits found in **chmod** (the low-order nine bits). When a file is created with **creat** or **mknod**, the bits specified by *mask* are zeroed in *mode*; thus, bits set in *mask* specify permissions which will be denied.

**umask** returns the old value of the file creation mask.

*See Also*

COHERENT system calls, **creat()**, **mknod()**, **sh**

**umount()** – COHERENT System Call (libc)

Unmount a file system

**umount(*filesystem*)**

**char \**filesystem*;**

**umount** is the COHERENT system call that unmounts a file system. *filesystem* names the block-special file through which the file system is accessed. Note that this must have been previously mounted by a call to **mount**, or the call will fail.

*See Also*

COHERENT system calls, **mount()**

**umount** – Command

Unmount file system

**/etc/umount *special***

**umount** unmounts a file system *special* that was previously mounted with the **mount** command.

The script **/bin/umount** calls **/etc/umount**, and provides convenient abbreviations for commonly used devices. For example, typing

```
umount f0
```

executes the command

```
/etc/umount /dev/fha0
```

The system administrator should edit this script to reflect the devices used on your specific system.

*Files*

**/etc/mtab** — Mount table

**/dev/\***

**/bin/umount** — Script that calls **/etc/umount**

*See Also*

**clri**, **commands**, **fsck**, **icheck**, **mount**

*Diagnostics*

Errors can occur if *special* does not exist or is not a mounted file system.

**uncompress** — Command

Uncompress a compressed file

**uncompress** [ *file ...* ]

**uncompress** uncompresses one or more *files* that had been compressed by the command **compress**.

Each *file's* name must have the suffix **.Z**, which was appended onto it by **compress**; otherwise, **uncompress** prints an error message and exits. When **uncompress** has uncompresses a *file*, it removes the **.Z** suffix from that file's name.

If no *file* is specified on the command line, **uncompress** uncompresses matter read from the standard input, and writes its output to the standard output.

*See Also*

**commands**, **compress**, **zcat**

**ungetc()** — **STDIO** (libc)

Return character to input stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int ungetc (c, fp) int c; FILE \*fp;**

**ungetc** returns the character *c* to the stream *fp*. *c* can then be read by a subsequent call to **getc**, **gets**, **getw**, **scanf**, or **fread**. No more than one character can be pushed back into any stream at once. A call to **fseek** will nullify the effects of a previous **ungetc**.

*Example*

For an example of this function, see **fgetc**.

*See Also*

**fgetc()**, **getc()**, **STDIO**

*Diagnostics*

**ungetc** normally returns *c*. It returns **EOF** if the character cannot be pushed back.

**union** — C Keyword

Multiply declare a variable

A **union** defines an area of storage that can accept any one of several types of data. In effect, it is a multiple declaration of a variable. For example, a **union** may be declared to consist of an **int**, a **double**, and a **char \***. Any one of these three elements can be held by the **union** at a time, and will be handled appropriately by it. For example, the decla-

ration

```
union {
 int number;
 double bignumber;
 char *stringptr;
} example;
```

allows **example** to hold either an **int**, a **double**, or a pointer to a **char**, whichever is needed at the time. All of these have the same address. The elements of a **union** are accessed like those of a **struct**: for example, to access **number** from the above example, type **example.number**.

**unions** are helpful in dealing with heterogeneous data, especially within structures; however, you are responsible for keeping track of what data type the **union** is holding at any given time. Passing a **double** to a **union** and then reading the **union** as though it held an **int** will yield results that are unpredictable, and probably unwelcome.

### Example

For an example of how to use a **union** in a program, see the entry for **byte ordering**.

### See Also

**C keywords, struct, structure**

## uniqu — Command

Remove/count repeated lines in a sorted file

**uniqu** [-cdu] [-n] [+n] [infile[outfile]]

**uniqu** reads input line by line from *infile* and writes all non-duplicated lines to *outfile*. The input file must be sorted. **uniqu** uses the standard input or output if either *infile* or *outfile* is omitted. The following describes the available options:

- c Print each line once, discarding duplicate lines; before each line, print the number of times it appears within the file.
- d Print only lines that are duplicated within the file; print each line only once; do not print any counts.
- u Print only lines that are *not* duplicated within the file.

**uniqu** by default behaves as if both **-u** and **-d** were specified, so it prints each unique line once.

Optional specifiers allow **uniqu** to skip leading portions of the input lines when comparing for uniqueness.

- n Skip *n* fields of each input line, where a field is any number of non-white space characters surrounded by any number of white space characters (blank or tab).
- +n Skip *n* characters in each input line, after skipping fields as above.

### See Also

**comm, commands, sort**

**units** — Command

Convert measurements

**units** [ -u ]

**units** is an interactive program that tells you how to convert one unit of measurement into another. It prompts you for two quantities with the same dimensions (e.g., two measurements of weight, or two of size). It first prints the prompt "You have:" to ask for the unit you wish to convert from, and then prints the prompt "You want:" for the unit you wish to convert to.

*Example*

The following example returns the formula for convert fortnights into days:

```
You have: fortnight
You want: days
* 14
/ 0.071428
```

The following fundamental units are recognized: **meter**, **gram**, **second**, **coulomb**, **radian**, **bit**, **unitedstatesdollar**, **sheet**, **candle**, **kelvin**, and **copperpiece** (shillings and pence).

A quantity consists of an optional number (default 1) and a dimension (default none). Numbers are floating point with optional sign, decimal part and exponent. Dimensions may be specified by fundamental or derived units, with optional orders. A quantity is evaluated left to right: a factor preceded by a '/' is a divisor, otherwise it is a multiplier. For example, the earth's gravitational acceleration may be entered as any of the following:

```
9.8e+0 m+1 sec-2
32 ft/sec/sec
32 ft/sec+2
```

British equivalents of US units are prefixed with **br**, e.g. **brpint**. Some other units include **c** (speed of light), **G** (gravitational constant), **R** (gas law constant), **phi** (golden ratio), **%** (1/100), **k** (1,024), and **buck** (United States dollar).

`/usr/lib/units` is an ASCII file that contains conversion tables. The binary file `/usr/lib/binunits` may be recreated by using the **-u** option.

*See Also***bc**, **commands**, **conv***Files*`/usr/lib/units` — Known units`/usr/lib/binunits` — Binary encoding of units file*Diagnostics*

If the ASCII file `/usr/lib/units` has been changed more recently than the binary file `/usr/lib/binunits`, **units** prints a message and regenerates the binary file before continuing; this takes up to a few minutes, depending on the speed of your system.

The error message "conformability" means that the quantities are not dimensionally

compatible. For example, `m/sec` and `psi. units` prints each quantity and its dimensions in fundamental units.

### Notes

There are the inevitable name collisions: `g` for gram vs. `gee` for Earth's gravitational acceleration, `exp` for the base of natural logarithms vs. `e` for the charge of an electron, `ms` for (plural) meters vs. `millisecond`, and of course `batman` for the Persian measure of weight rather than the Turkish.

## unlink() — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Remove a file

```
int unlink(name) char *name;
```

`unlink` removes the directory entry for the given file `name`, which in effect erases `name` from the disk. `name` cannot be opened once it has been `unlinked`. If `name` is the last link, `unlink` frees the i-node and data blocks. Deallocation is delayed if the file is open. Other links to the file remain intact.

### Example

This example removes the files named on the command line.

```
main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
 int i;
 for (i = 1; i < argc; i++) {
 if (unlink(argv[i]) == -1) {
 printf("Cannot unlink \"%s\"\n", argv[i]);
 exit(1);
 }
 }
 exit(0);
}
```

### See Also

COHERENT system calls, `link()`, `ln`, `rm`, `rmdir`

### Diagnostics

`unlink` returns zero when successful. It returns `-1` if `file` does not exist, if the user does not have write and search permission in the directory containing `file`, or if `file` is a directory and the invoker is not the superuser.

## unmkfs — Command

Create a prototype file system

```
unmkfs [-prefix] directory nblocks [file]
```

`unmkfs` scans `directory` and builds prototype files with which you can build file systems on backup disks.

If `prefix` is given, it creates files `prefix.p01`, `prefix.p02`, etc. If it is not given, `unmkfs` writes its output to the standard-output device.

*nblocks* gives the maximum size of a prototype file. COHERENT current defines a block as being 512 bytes (half a kilobyte); thus, to make the maximum size of a prototype file 10 kilobytes, set *nblocks* to 20.

The *file* option tells **unmkfs** to suppress all files in *directory* that are older than *file*. If it is not used, then **unmkfs** builds prototypes for all files in *directory*.

**unmkfs** provides a useful way to back up file systems onto floppy disks. To do this, perform the following steps:

1. **unmkfs** a directory, producing prototype files.
2. Format one floppy disk for each prototype file.
3. Using the prototype files in succession, **mkfs** each floppy disk. This puts the indicated files onto floppy disk, preserving links.

Later, you can use the command **cpdir** to restore all the files from the floppy disks, or you can use **cp** to restore individual files.

*See Also*

**commands**, **mkfs**

*Notes*

**unmkfs** builds a file system in memory as it does its work. With large directory structures, it can run out of memory.

## **unsigned** – C Keyword

Data type

**unsigned** tells the compiler to treat the variable as an unsigned value. In effect, this doubles the largest absolute value that that type can hold, and changes the lowest storage value to zero.

*See Also*

**C keywords**, **data type**

## **until** – Command

Execute commands repeatedly

**until** *sequence1*

[ **do** *sequence2* ]

**done**

The shell's **until** loop executes the commands in *sequence1*. If the exit status is nonzero, the shell then executes the commands in the optional *sequence2* and repeats the process until the exit status of *sequence1* is zero. Because the shell recognizes a reserved word only as the unquoted first word of a command, both **do** and **done** must occur either unquoted at the start of a line or preceded by ';

The shell commands **break** and **continue** may be used to alter control flow within an **until** loop. The construct **while** has the same form as **until** but the sense of the test is reversed.

The shell executes **until** directly.



*See Also*

**break, commands, continue, sh, test, while**

### update – System Maintenance

Update file systems periodically  
/etc/update

**update** periodically calls **sync** to write to the disk all file system data that are in memory. It never exits.

The initialization command file /etc/rc normally executes **update**. It should not be executed directly.

*See Also*

**init, sync, system maintenance**

### uproc.h – Header File

Definitions used with user processes  
#define <sys/uproc.h>

**uproc.h** defines constants and structures used by routines that manage user processes.

*See Also*

**header files**

### USER – Environmental Variable

Name user's ID  
USER=user's ID

The environmental variable **USER** names your login ID. For example, if your login ID is **fwb**, then by typing **set** you will see the entry **USER=fwb**. **USER** is set by **login**.

*See Also*

**environmental variables, login**

### utime() – COHERENT System Call

Change file access and modification times  
#include <sys/types.h>  
int utime(file, times)  
char \*file;  
time\_t times[2];

**utime** sets the access and modification times associated with the given *file* to times obtained from *times*[0] and *times*[1], respectively. The time of last change to the attributes is set to the time of the **utime** call.

This call must be made by the owner of *file* or by the superuser.

*Files*

<sys/types.h>

*See Also*

**COHERENT** system calls, **restor**, **stat()**

*Diagnostics*

**utime** returns -1 on errors, such as if *file* does not exist or the invoker not the owner.

## **utmp.h** – Header File

Login accounting information

```
#include <utmp.h>
```

**/etc/utmp** contains a **utmp** entry for every user currently logged into the COHERENT system. The structure **utmp** is defined in the the header file **utmp.h**, as follows:

```
#define DIRSIZ 14
struct utmp {
 char ut_line[8]; /* terminal name */
 char ut_name[DIRSIZ]; /* user name */
 time_t ut_time; /* time of login */
};
```

If either the user name or terminal name is cleared, the entry is unused. The element **ut\_line** is the name of the special file for the user's terminal, and is normally found in the directory **/dev**. **ut\_time** gives the date and time the user logged into COHERENT.

The file **/usr/adm/wtmp** maintains a record of all logins and logouts, and may be summarized by the command **ac**. The processes **login** and **init** write entries into the file **wtmp**; neither creates the file, so login accounting is disabled unless **/usr/adm/wtmp** exists.

Entries in **wtmp** are identical to those in **utmp**. A null string in the **ut\_name** field indicates a logout. The following three special terminal names may be found in **wtmp**. When the system is booted, **init** writes a **ut\_line** entry of '~'. When the time is changed with the command **date**, it writes an entry giving the old date ('|') and an entry giving the new date ('}'). This allows **ac** to adjust connect times appropriately.

*Files*

<**utmp.h**>

**/etc/utmp**

**/usr/adm/wtmp**

*See Also*

**ac**, **date**, file formats, header files, **init**, **login**, **who**

## **utsnam.e.h** – Header File

Define utsnam.e structure

```
#define <sys/utsnam.e.h>
```

**utsnam.e.h** defines the structure **utsnam.e**. This structure holds information that describes a given release of the COHERENT system.

*See Also*  
header files

## uucico — Command

Transmit data to or from a remote site  
`/usr/lib/uucp/uucico [ -r1 ] [ -ssite ] [ -Ssite ]`

**uucico** is the UUCP command that actually transfers files to or from a remote *site*. Its syntax is as follows:

**-r1** Poll *site* unconditionally.

**-ssite**  
The name of the *site* to be polled. *site* must name one of the entries in `/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys`.

**-Ssite**  
The name of the *site* to be polled. *site* must name one of the entries in `/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys`. Unlike the **-s** option, force execution even if not the correct time.

The messages sent by **uucico** are differentiated by the first letter of the message.

### Example

To poll the site *sys* at five minutes after the hour, each hour, put the following entry into `/usr/lib/crontab`:

```
05 * * * * /usr/lib/uucp/uucico -ssys -r1
```

### Files

`/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys` — List of reachable systems  
`/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucico/sitename` — **uucico** activities log file for *sitename*  
`/usr/spool/uucp/sitename` — Spool directory for work

### See Also

**commands**, **cron**, **uucp**, **UUCP**, **uulog**, **uutouch**, **uuxqt**

## UUCP — Overview

Unattended communication with remote systems

**UUCP** stands for “UNIX to UNIX copy”. It is a system of commands that allows you to exchange files with other COHERENT or UNIX systems, in an unattended manner. With **UUCP**, you can send mail to other systems, upload files, and execute commands. When configured correctly, **UUCP** also lets other users upload files to your system, copy files from it, and execute commands. All this can be done without your having to sit at your console and type commands; thus, files can be transferred in the small hours, when telephone rates are lower and computers are relative free.

**UUCP** gives you access to the Usenet, a nation-wide network of UNIX and COHERENT users. Access to the Usenet will let you exchange mail with any of the thousands of Usenet users, receive mail from them, download source code for many useful programs, and read the latest news on a host of subject.

*See Also*

**commands**, **uucico**, **uucp**, **uudecode**, **uuencode**, **uuninstall**, **uulog**, **uumvlog**, **uuname**, **uutouch**, **uuxqt**  
*UUCP, Remote Communications Utility*, tutorial

*Notes*

The Lexicon entry for **sh** contains a sample shell script that logs UUCP information into a file of your choice.

**uucp** — Command

Ready files for transmission to other systems

**uucp** [ **-bcCdm** ] *source1* ... *sourceN* *dest*

**uucp** copies files *source1* through *sourceN* to the destination system *dest*. Either source or destination files can contain specifications for the remote system.

**uucp** recognizes the following options:

- c** Instead of copying the *source* file to the spool directory, use the file itself. This is a default.
- C** Copy the source file to the spool directory.
- d** Make directories on *dest* if they are necessary for copying the files.
- f** Do not make intermediate directories for the file copy.
- ggrade**  
*grade* is a single ASCII character indicating the importance of the files being transmitted: the lower the value of *grade*, the more important the files.
- m** Send mail to the requester when the file is sent.
- nuser**  
Notify *user* on destination system that file was sent. Note that *user* may contain a path:  
    **-nuser!site**
- xdebug** *debug* is a single-digit number, 0 to 9. The higher the level, the more information yielded.

*Examples*

The first example copies file **foo** to directory **/bar** on system **george**:

```
uucp foo george!/bar
```

The next example copies file **/foo** from system **george** into directory **/tmp** on your system:

```
uucp george!/foo /tmp
```

The next example copies file **/foo** from system **george** into file or directory **/bar** on system **ivan**:

```
uucp george!/foo ivan!/bar
```

Note that this assumes your system can talk to both **george** and **ivan** and that your system has permission to read file **/foo** on system **george** as well as to write file **/bar** on system **ivan**.

The next example downloads files **/foo** and **/bar** from remote systems **ivan** and **george** into directory **/tmp** on your system:

```
uucp ivan!/foo george!/bar /tmp
```

### Files

**/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys** — List of reachable systems  
**/usr/lib/uucp/Permissions** — List of system permissions  
**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/\*/*sitename*** — **uucp** activities log files for *sitename*  
**/usr/spool/uucp/*sitename*** — Spool directory for work

### See Also

**commands, mail, uucico, UUCP, uudecode, uuencode, uutoch, uuwatch, uuxqt**

## uudecode – Command

Decode a binary file sent from a remote system

```
uudecode [file]
```

**uudecode** takes a **file** encoded by **uuencode** and translates it back to binary. Any leading and trailing lines added by **uucp** are discarded.

If the *file* is not specified, standard input is read.

### Example

Consider the file **tmp** consisting of:

```
begin 644 sys
M5&AE(' %U:6-K(&)R;W=N(&9O>"!J=6UP<R!O=F5R('1H92!L87IY(&1O9RX*
end
```

Note that the third line is a space followed by a newline. To decode it, type:

```
uudecode tmp
```

The output contained in file **sys** will be:

The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.

### See Also

**commands, uucp, UUCP, uuencode**

### Notes

The user on the remote system must be able to write the file.

## uuencode – Command

Encode a binary file for transmission to a remote system

```
uuencode [source] outputfile
```

**uuencode** prepares a binary file for transmission to a remote destination via **uucp**. **uuencode** takes binary input and produces an encoded version, consisting of printable ASCII characters, on standard output, which may be redirected or piped to **uucp**. If *source* is not specified, the standard input is read.

The format of the encoded file is as follows:

1. A *header* line starting with the characters **begin** followed by a space. This is followed by the mode of the file in octal (see **chmod** for details) and the name of the output file specified on the command line. These last two fields are also separated by a space. The mode and the system name can be changed by directing the output into a file and editing it.
2. The *body* of the file, consisting of a number of lines, each no more than 62 characters long, including a newline character. Each line starts with a character count written as a single ASCII character, representing an integer value from 0 (octal 40) to 63 (octal 135) giving the number of characters in the rest of the line. This is followed by the encoded characters and a newline. The last line of the body is a line consisting of an ASCII space (octal 40).
3. The trailer line has just the characters **end** on a line by itself.

The encoding is done by taking three bytes and storing them in four characters, six bits per character.

### *Example*

To encode the file **tmp** consisting of the line

```
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.
```

to be sent to the remote system **george**, enter:

```
uuencode tmp sys
```

The output will be:

```
begin 644 sys
M5&AE('%U:6-K(&)R;W=N(&90>"!J=6UP<R!O=F5R('1H92!L87IY(&109RX*
end
```

Note that the third line consists of a space followed by a newline.

### *See Also*

**commands, uucp, UUCP, uuencode**

### *Notes*

The file is expanded by more than one third, causing increased transmission time. This can be a factor when sending large files.

**uuinstall** — Command

Install UUCP  
**uuinstall**

**uuinstall** assists with the installation of UUCP. It uses screen templates, help lines, and prompts to help walk you through the installation of devices, remote systems, site names, domains, and permissions. For a detailed description of its use, see the tutorial on UUCP in the front of this manual

*See Also*

commands, UUCP

*Notes*

Only the superuser **root** can execute **uuinstall**.

**uulog** — Command

Examine UUCP operations  
**uulog** [ *-fx* ] [ *system* ]

**uulog** copies the last part of the file `/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucico/system` to see what **uucico** has done recently. *system* names the remote system whose logfile will be examined. If it is not specified, logfiles for all systems are displayed.

**uulog** recognizes the following options:

- f Similar to the command **tail -f**: this forces **uulog** to display UUCP activity as it is written into the log file, until you interrupt it by typing `<ctrl-C>`.
- x Display the log files for the command **uuxqt** rather than **uucico**.

*Files*

`/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucico/system` — **uucico** log file for *system*  
`/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uuxqt/system` — **uuxqt** log file for *system*

*See Also*

commands, **uucico**, **uucp**, UUCP, **uuxqt**

**uumvlog** — Command

Examine UUCP operations  
**uumvlog** *days*

**uumvlog** copies all UUCP log files into backup files, named for their respective commands and the date upon which the backup was performed. *days* gives the number of days for which backup files should be kept: if a backup file is more than *days* days old, then **uumvlog** will delete it.

This command should be run by **cron**, because the UUCP log files can threaten to exhaust available file space on a small system unless they are chopped back daily. For directions on how to do this, see the tutorial for UUCP or the Lexicon entry for **cron**.

*Files*

*/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/command/system* — UUCP log files

*See Also*

**commands**, **uucico**, **uucp**, **UUCP**, **uuxqt**

**uname** — Command

List uucp names of known systems

**uname** [ -l ]

**uname** lists the names of all systems reachable directly by **uucp**. When used with the -l option, it prints the name of the local system.

*Files*

*/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys* — Site and remote login data list

*See Also*

**commands**, **uucico**, **uucp**, **UUCP**, **uulog**

**uutouch** — Command

Touch a file to trigger uucico poll

**uutouch** *system*

**uutouch** creates an empty control file for *system* in the directory */usr/spool/uucp/system*. This forces UUCP to poll *system* when **uucico** is called with the option **-sany**. If the empty file for *system* already exists, it is left alone.

There are three types of files in the spool directory */usr/spool/uucp/system*:

C. Command file.

D. Data file.

X. Execute file.

*Example*

A typical usage is to put the following line into */usr/lib/crontab*:

```
0 7 * * * /usr/lib/uucp/uutouch george
```

This forces UUCP to schedule a poll to the remote system **george** at 7 AM local time. The actual poll take place when **uucico** is started.

*Files*

*/usr/spool/uucp/sitename* — Directory for uucp work files

*See Also*

**commands**, **cron**, **uucico**, **uucp**, **UUCP**, **uuxqt**

**uuxqt** — Command

Execute commands requested by a remote system

**uuxqt**

**uuxqt** takes the execute files, those marked with the prefix **X**. in the directory */usr/spool/uucp/sitename*, and executes them. It will only execute programs for which



the remote system has permission.

**uuxqt** may be called by either **uucp** or **uucico**. It is not generally considered a user-callable program.

*Files*

**/usr/spool/uucp/sitename** — Directory for execute files

*See Also*

**commands, uucico, uucp, UUCP**

## V

**v7sgtty.h** – Header File

UNIX Version 7-style terminal I/O  
**#define <v7sgtty.h>**

**v7sgtty.h** defines structures and constants used by routines that perform terminal I/O in the manner of UNIX version 7.

*See Also*

**header files, sgTTY.h, tty.h**

**void** – C Keyword

Data type

The keyword **void** indicates that the function does not return a value. Using **void** declarations makes programs clearer and is useful in error checking. For example, a function that prints an error message and calls **exit** to terminate a program should be declared **void** because it never returns. A function that performs a calculation and stores its result in a global variable (rather than **returning** the result), or one that returns no value, should also be declared **void** to prevent the accidental use of the function in an expression.

*See Also*

**C keywords**

**volatile** – C Keyword

Qualify an identifier as frequently changing

The type qualifier **volatile** marks an identifier as being frequently changed, either by other portions of the program, by the hardware, by other programs in the execution environment, or by any combination of these. This alerts the translator to re-fetch the given identifier whenever it encounters an expression that includes the identifier. In addition, an object marked as **volatile** must be stored at the point where an assignment to this object takes place.

*See Also*

**C keyword, const**

*Notes*

Although COHERENT recognizes this keyword, the semantics are not implemented in this release. Thus, storage declared to be **volatile** might have references removed by optimizations that the compiler performs. The compiler will generate a warning if the peephole optimizer is enabled and the keyword **volatile** is detected.

## W

**wait()** — COHERENT System Call (libc)

Await completion of a child process

```
wait(statp)
int *statp;
```

**wait** suspends execution of the invoking process until a child process (created with **fork**) terminates. It returns the process identifier of the terminating child process. If there are no children or if an interrupt occurs, it returns -1.

If it is successful, **wait** returns the process identifier of the terminated child process. In addition, **wait** fills in the integer pointed to by *statp* with exit-status information about the completed process. If *statp* is NULL, **wait** discards the exit-status information.

**wait** fills in the low byte of the status-information word with the termination status of the child process. A child process may have terminated because of a signal, because of an exit call, or have stopped execution during **ptrace**. Termination with **exit**, which is normal completion, gives status 0. Other terminations give signal values as status (as defined in the article on **signal**). The 0200 bit of the status code indicates that a core dump was produced. A status of 0177 indicates that the process is waiting for further action from **ptrace**.

The high byte of the returned status is the low byte of the argument to the **exit** system call.

If a parent process does not remain in existence long enough to **wait** on a child process, the child process is adopted by process 1 (the initialization process).

*See Also*

**\_exit()**, COHERENT system calls, **fork()**, **ptrace()**, **signal()**

**wait** — Command

Await completion of background process

```
wait [pid]
```

Typing the character '&' after a command tells the shell **sh** to execute it as a *background* (or *detached*) process; otherwise, it is executed as a *foreground* process. You can perform other tasks while a background process is being executed. The shell prints the process id number of each background process when it is invoked. **ps** reports on currently active processes.

The command **wait** tells the shell to suspend execution until the child process with the given *pid* is completed. If no *pid* is given, **wait** suspends execution until all background processes are completed. If the process with the given *pid* is not a child process of the current shell, **wait** returns immediately.

The shell executes **wait** directly.

*See Also*

commands, **ps**, **sh**

### Notes

If a subshell invokes a background process and then terminates, **wait** will return immediately rather than waiting for termination of the grandchild process.

### wall — Command

Send a message to all logged in users  
**/etc/wall**

**wall** types a message to every user currently logged into the COHERENT system, with the exception of the sender. It can be used to inform users of information of general interest; for example, that man has landed on the moon, or that the system is going down in 15 minutes.

**wall** reads the message to be broadcast from the standard input until end of file. When it sends the message, it prefaces it with the herald "Broadcast message ...", which includes an audible warning. Only the superuser should invoke **/etc/wall** (to override access protections of the target terminals).

### Files

**/etc/utmp** — Current users file  
**/dev/tty\***

### See Also

**commands, msg, who, write**

### Diagnostics

The message "Cannot send to *user* on *ttyname*" indicates that **wall** cannot write to the given *user*.

### wc — Command

Count words, lines, and characters in files  
**wc [-clw] [file...]**

**wc** counts words, lines, and characters in each *file*. If no *file* is given, **wc** uses the standard input. If more than one *file* is given, **wc** also prints a total for all of the files.

**wc** defines a *word* to be a string of characters surrounded by white space (blanks, tabs, or newlines). It defines the number of lines to be the number of newline characters in the file, plus one.

**wc** recognizes the following options:

- c** Count only characters.
- l** Count only lines.
- w** Count only words.

The default action is to print all counts.

### See Also

**commands**

**while** – C Keyword

Introduce a loop  
**while**(*condition*)

**while** is a C keyword that introduces a conditional loop. *condition* is tested on reiteration of the loop, and the loop ends when *condition* is no longer satisfied. For example,

```
while (foo < 10)
```

introduces a loop that will continue until the variable **foo** is reset to ten or greater. Note that the statement

```
while (1)
```

will loop forever, unless interrupted by a **break**, **goto**, or **return** statement.

*See Also*

**break**, C keywords, **continue**, **do**, **for**

**while** – Command

Execute commands repeatedly  
**while** *sequence1*  
[**do** *sequence2*]  
**done**

The shell construct **while** controls a loop. It first executes the commands in *sequence1*. If the exit status is zero, the shell executes the commands in the optional *sequence2* and repeats the process until the exit status of *sequence1* is nonzero. Because the shell recognizes a reserved word only as the unquoted first word of a command, both **do** and **done** must occur unquoted at the start of a line or preceded by `;`.

The shell commands **break** and **continue** may be used to alter control flow within a **while** loop. The **until** construct has the same form as **while**, but the sense of the test is reversed.

The shell executes **while** directly.

*See Also*

**break**, **commands**, **continue**, **sh**, **test**, **until**

**who** – Command

Print who is logged in  
**who** [*file*] [**am i**]

The command **who** prints the names of the users who are logged in to the system. For each user, **who** prints his name, terminal name, login date, and login time. The form **who** prints this information only about yourself.

If *file* is specified, **who** uses it instead of `/etc/utmp` to obtain information about who is logged in. This is useful, for example, with the file `/usr/adm/wtmp`, which contains a continuous record of logins, logouts and reboots. When *file* is specified, **who** displays logouts; otherwise, they are suppressed.

### *Files*

*/etc/utmp* — To get user information

### *See Also*

**ac**, **commands**, **sa**

## wildcards – Definition

Wildcards are characters that, in some circumstances, can represent a range of ASCII characters. Another name for them is “metacharacters”. The wildcards available under COHERENT are as follows:

**?** Match any one character.

**\*** Match any number of characters, or no characters at all.

**[ ]** A set of characters enclosed between '[' and ']' will match any one character of the set. Sets of characters may include ranges, such as **[a-z]** for all lower-case letters or **[0-9]** for all numerals.

**\** Ignore the special meaning of a wildcard.

### *See Also*

**definitions**, **egrep**, **patterns**, **pnmatch()**

## write() – COHERENT System Call

Write to a file

**int write(*fd*, *buffer*, *n*)**

**int *fd*; char \**buffer*; int *n*;**

**write** writes *n* bytes of data, beginning at address *buffer*, into the file associated with the file descriptor *fd*. Writing begins at the current write position, as set by the last call to either **write** or **lseek**. **write** advances the position of the file pointer by the number of characters written.

### *Example*

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **open**.

### *See Also*

**COHERENT system calls**, **STDIO**

### *Diagnostics*

**write** returns -1 if an error occurred before the **write** operation commenced, such as a bad file descriptor *fd* or invalid *buffer* pointer. Otherwise, it returns the number of bytes written. It should be considered an error if this number is not the same as *n*.

### *Notes*

**write** is a low-level call that passes data directly to COHERENT. It should not be mixed with high-level calls, such as **fread**, **fwrite**, or **fopen**.

## write — Command

Conduct interactive conversation with another user

**write** *user* [ *tty* ]

The COHERENT system provides several commands that allow users to communicate with each other. **write** allows two logged-in users to have an extended, interactive conversation.

**write** initiates a conversation with *user*. If *tty* is given, **write** looks for the *user* on that terminal; this is useful if a user is marked as being logged in on more than one device. Otherwise, **write** holds the conversation with the first instance of *user* found on any *tty*.

If found, **write** notifies *user* that you are beginning a conversation with him. All subsequent lines typed into **write** are forwarded to the *user*'s terminal, except lines beginning with '!', which are sent to the shell **sh**. Typing end of file (usually <ctrl-D>) terminates **write** and sends *user* the message "EOT" to tell him that communication has ended.

Two users typing lines to **write** at about the same time can cause extreme confusion, so users should agree on a protocol to limit when each is typing. The following protocol is suggested. One user initiates a **write** to another, and waits until the other user replies before beginning. The first user then types until he wishes a reply and suffixes "o" (over) to indicate he is through. The other user does the same, and the conversation alternates until one user wishes to terminate it. This user types "oo" (over and out). The other user replies in the same way, indicating he too is finished. Finally each of the users leave **write** by typing end-of-file (usually <ctrl-D>).

Any user may deny others the permission to **write** to his terminal by using the command **mesg**.

### Files

/etc/utmp

/dev/\*

### See Also

**commands**, **mail**, **mesg**, **msg**, **sh**, **wall**, **who**

### Notes

You should use **write** only for extended conversations. Use **msg** to send brief communications to a logged in user, and **mail** to communicate with a user not currently logged in. **wall** broadcasts a message to all logged in users.

**X****xgcd()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Extended greatest-common-divisor function

**#include** <**mprec.h**>**void** **xgcd**(*a*, *b*, *r*, *s*, *g*)**mint** \**a*, \**b*, \**r*, \**s*, \**g*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **xgcd** is an extended version of the greatest-common-division function. It sets the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *g* to the greatest common divisor of the **mint** pointed to by *a* and that pointed to by *b*. It also sets the **mints** pointed to by *r* and *s* so the following relation holds:

$$g = a * r + b * s$$

*r*, *s*, and *g* must all be distinct.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**



## Y

**yacc** — Command

Parser generator  
**yacc** [*option ...*] *file*  
**cc** *y.tab.c* [-ly]

Many programs process highly structured input according to given rules. Compilers are a familiar example. Two of the most complicated parts of such programs are *lexical analysis* and *parsing* (sometimes called *syntax analysis*). The COHERENT system includes two powerful tools called **lex** and **yacc** to assist you in performing these tasks. **lex** takes a set of lexical rules and writes a lexical analyzer, whereas **yacc** takes a set of parsing rules and writes a parser; both output C source code that can be compiled into a full program.

The term **yacc** is an acronym for “yet another compiler-compiler”. In brief, the **yacc** input *file* describes a context free grammar using a BNF-like syntax. The output is a file **y.tab.c**; it contains the definition of a C function **yyparse()**, which parses the language described in *file*. The output is ready for processing by the C compiler **cc**. Ambiguities in the grammar are reported to the user, but resolved automatically by precedence rules. The user must provide a lexical scanner **yylex()**, which you may generate with **lex**. The **yacc** library includes default definitions of **main**, **yylex**, and **yyerror**, and may be included with the option **-ly** on the **cc** command line.

**yacc** recognizes the following options:

- d** Enable debugging output; implies **-v**.
- hdr** *headerfile*  
Put the header output in *headerfile* instead of **y.tab.h**.
- l** *listfile*  
Place a description of the state machine, tokens, parsing actions, and statistics in file *listfile*.
- st** Print statistics on the standard output.
- v** Verbose option. Like **-l**, but places the listing in file **y.output** by default.

The following options are useful if table overflow messages appear:

- nterms** *N*  
Allow for *N* nonterminals; default, 100.
- prods** *N*  
Allow for *N* productions (rules); default, 175.
- states** *N*  
Allow for *N* states; default, 300.
- terms** *N*  
Allow for *N* terminal symbols; default 100.

**-types** *N* Allow for *N* types; default, ten.

### *Files*

**y.tab.c** — C source output

**y.tab.h** — Default C header output

**y.output** — Default listing output

**/lib/yyparse.c** — Protoparser

**/tmp/y[ao]\*** — Temporaries

**/usr/include/action.h** — Header referenced by protoparser

**/usr/lib/liby.a** — Library

### *See Also*

**cc, commands, lex**

*Introduction to yacc, Yet Another Compiler-Compiler*

DeRemer F, Pennello TJ: *Efficient computation of LALR(1) lookahead sets*. SIGPLAN conference, 1979.

### *Diagnostics*

**yacc** reports the number of R/R (reduce/reduce) and S/R (shift/reduce) conflicts (ambiguities) on the standard error stream.

## **yes** — Command

Print infinitely many responses

**yes** [*answer*]

With no argument, **yes** prints an arbitrary number of lines consisting solely of 'y'. If the optional *answer* is used, then **yes** produces lines containing the *answer* instead.

### *Example*

The following example prints the string "foo" forever.

```
yes foo
```

### *See Also*

**commands**

### *Notes*

**yes** is useful for overwriting the contents of disks, for reasons of security; simply redirect its output to the name of the device that you wish to overwrite.

## Z

### **zcat** — Command

Concatenate a compressed file

**zcat** [ *file ...* ]

**zcat** concatenates one or more *files* that had been compressed with the command **compress**. It uncompresses each *file* “on the fly,” and prints the uncompressed text onto the standard output.

If no *file* is specified on the command, **zcat** uncompresses matter read from the standard input.

*See Also*

**commands, compress, uncompress**

### **zerop()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Indicate if multi-precision integer is zero

**#include** <mprec.h>

**int** zerop(*a*)

**mint** \**a*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **zerop** returns true if the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* is zero; otherwise, it returns false.

*See Also*

**multiple-precision mathematics**

---

## Section 18: Appendices

---

The appendices hold reference material for this manual.

### Appendix 1: The Logic Tree

The following gives the logic tree for the Lexicon. This tree shows the logical relationship of every article in the Lexicon with every other article. Note that the number of periods in each line indicates each article's degree of subordination. For example, an article with two periods in front of it is subordinate to the first *previous* article that has only one period in front of it.

Lexicon

- . C language
  - . . argc
  - . . argv
  - . . envp
  - . . main
  - . . pointer
  - . . preprocessing
  - . . C keywords
    - . . . auto
    - . . . break
    - . . . case
    - . . . char
    - . . . continue
    - . . . const
    - . . . default
    - . . . do
    - . . . double
    - . . . else
    - . . . enum
    - . . . extern
    - . . . float

. . . for  
. . . goto  
. . . if  
. . . int  
. . . long  
. . . readonly  
. . . return  
. . . short  
. . . sizeof  
. . . static  
. . . struct  
. . . switch  
. . . typedef  
. . . union  
. . . unsigned  
. . . void  
. . . volatile  
. . . while  
. . . C preprocessor  
. . . #  
. . . ##  
. . . #define  
. . . #else  
. . . #elif  
. . . #endif  
. . . #if  
. . . #ifdef  
. . . #ifndef  
. . . #include  
. . . #line  
. . . #undef  
. . . DATE  
. . . FILE  
. . . LINE  
. . . STDC  
. . . TIME  
. . . assert  
. . . header files  
. . . access.h  
. . . acct.h  
. . . action.h  
. . . alloc.h  
. . . ar.h  
. . . ascii.h  
. . . assert.h  
. . . buf.h  
. . . canon.h  
. . . chars.h  
. . . con.h

---

|   |   |   |            |
|---|---|---|------------|
| . | . | . | const.h    |
| . | . | . | ctype.h    |
| . | . | . | curses.h   |
| . | . | . | deftty.h   |
| . | . | . | dir.h      |
| . | . | . | dirent.h   |
| . | . | . | dumptape.h |
| . | . | . | ebcdic.h   |
| . | . | . | errno.h    |
| . | . | . | fcntl.h    |
| . | . | . | fd.h       |
| . | . | . | fdioctl.h  |
| . | . | . | fdisk.h    |
| . | . | . | filsys.h   |
| . | . | . | fperr.h    |
| . | . | . | grp.h      |
| . | . | . | hdioctl.h  |
| . | . | . | ino.h      |
| . | . | . | inode.h    |
| . | . | . | io.h       |
| . | . | . | ipc.h      |
| . | . | . | l.out.h    |
| . | . | . | lpioctl.h  |
| . | . | . | machine.h  |
| . | . | . | malloc.h   |
| . | . | . | math.h     |
| . | . | . | mdata.h    |
| . | . | . | mnttab.h   |
| . | . | . | mon.h      |
| . | . | . | mount.h    |
| . | . | . | mprec.h    |
| . | . | . | msg.h      |
| . | . | . | msg.h      |
| . | . | . | mtab.h     |
| . | . | . | mtioctl.h  |
| . | . | . | mtype.h    |
| . | . | . | n.out.h    |
| . | . | . | param.h    |
| . | . | . | path.h     |
| . | . | . | poll.h     |
| . | . | . | proc.h     |
| . | . | . | pwd.h      |
| . | . | . | sched.h    |
| . | . | . | seg.h      |
| . | . | . | sem.h      |
| . | . | . | setjmp.h   |
| . | . | . | sgtty.h    |
| . | . | . | shm.h      |

```
. . . signal.h
. . . stat.h
. . . stddef.h
. . . stdio.h
. . . stream.h
. . . string.h
. . . termio.h
. . . time.h
. . . timeb.h
. . . timef.h
. . . timeout.h
. . . times.h
. . . tty.h
. . . types.h
. . . uproc.h
. . . utmp.h
. . . utsname.h
. . . v7sgtty.h
. . . libraries
. . . COHERENT system calls
. . . . _exit
. . . . access
. . . . acct
. . . . alarm
. . . . brk
. . . . chdir
. . . . chmod
. . . . chown
. . . . chroot
. . . . close
. . . . creat
. . . . dup
. . . . dup2
. . . . execl
. . . . execl
. . . . execlp
. . . . execlp
. . . . execv
. . . . execve
. . . . execvp
. . . . fork
. . . . fstat
. . . . getegid
. . . . geteuid
. . . . getgid
. . . . getpid
. . . . getuid
. . . . gtty
. . . . ioctl
. . . . kill
```

|   |   |   |   |              |
|---|---|---|---|--------------|
| . | . | . | . | link         |
| . | . | . | . | lock         |
| . | . | . | . | lseek        |
| . | . | . | . | mknod        |
| . | . | . | . | mount        |
| . | . | . | . | msgctl       |
| . | . | . | . | msgget       |
| . | . | . | . | msgrcv       |
| . | . | . | . | msgsnd       |
| . | . | . | . | open         |
| . | . | . | . | pause        |
| . | . | . | . | pipe         |
| . | . | . | . | ptrace       |
| . | . | . | . | read         |
| . | . | . | . | sbrk         |
| . | . | . | . | semctl       |
| . | . | . | . | semget       |
| . | . | . | . | semop        |
| . | . | . | . | setgid       |
| . | . | . | . | setuid       |
| . | . | . | . | shmctl       |
| . | . | . | . | shmget       |
| . | . | . | . | signal       |
| . | . | . | . | sload        |
| . | . | . | . | stat         |
| . | . | . | . | stime        |
| . | . | . | . | stty         |
| . | . | . | . | suload       |
| . | . | . | . | sync         |
| . | . | . | . | times        |
| . | . | . | . | umask        |
| . | . | . | . | umount       |
| . | . | . | . | unlink       |
| . | . | . | . | utime        |
| . | . | . | . | wait         |
| . | . | . | . | write        |
| . | . | . | . | ctype macros |
| . | . | . | . | isalnum      |
| . | . | . | . | isalpha      |
| . | . | . | . | isascii      |
| . | . | . | . | iscntrl      |
| . | . | . | . | isdigit      |
| . | . | . | . | islower      |
| . | . | . | . | isprint      |
| . | . | . | . | ispunct      |
| . | . | . | . | isspace      |
| . | . | . | . | isupper      |
| . | . | . | . | tolower      |
| . | . | . | . | toupper      |



. . . curses  
. . . general functions  
. . . abort  
. . . abs  
. . . assert  
. . . atof  
. . . atoi  
. . . atol  
. . . calloc  
. . . candaddr  
. . . candev  
. . . canino  
. . . canint  
. . . canlong  
. . . canshort  
. . . cansize  
. . . cantime  
. . . canvaddr  
. . . crypt  
. . . endgrent  
. . . endpwent  
. . . exit  
. . . free  
. . . frexp  
. . . getenv  
. . . getgrent  
. . . getgrgid  
. . . getgrnam  
. . . getlogin  
. . . getopt  
. . . getpass  
. . . getpw  
. . . getpwent  
. . . getpwnam  
. . . getpwuid  
. . . getwd  
. . . isatty  
. . . l3tol  
. . . ldexp  
. . . longjmp  
. . . ltol3  
. . . malloc  
. . . memok  
. . . mktemp  
. . . modf  
. . . mtype  
. . . nlist  
. . . path  
. . . perror

|   |   |   |   |                                |
|---|---|---|---|--------------------------------|
| . | . | . | . | qsort                          |
| . | . | . | . | rand                           |
| . | . | . | . | realloc                        |
| . | . | . | . | setgrent                       |
| . | . | . | . | setjmp                         |
| . | . | . | . | setpwent                       |
| . | . | . | . | shellsort                      |
| . | . | . | . | sleep                          |
| . | . | . | . | srand                          |
| . | . | . | . | swab                           |
| . | . | . | . | system                         |
| . | . | . | . | ttyname                        |
| . | . | . | . | ttyslot                        |
| . | . | . | . | mathematics library            |
| . | . | . | . | acos                           |
| . | . | . | . | asin                           |
| . | . | . | . | atan                           |
| . | . | . | . | atan2                          |
| . | . | . | . | cabs                           |
| . | . | . | . | ceil                           |
| . | . | . | . | cos                            |
| . | . | . | . | cosh                           |
| . | . | . | . | exp                            |
| . | . | . | . | fabs                           |
| . | . | . | . | floor                          |
| . | . | . | . | hypot                          |
| . | . | . | . | j0                             |
| . | . | . | . | j1                             |
| . | . | . | . | jn                             |
| . | . | . | . | log                            |
| . | . | . | . | log10                          |
| . | . | . | . | pow                            |
| . | . | . | . | sin                            |
| . | . | . | . | sinh                           |
| . | . | . | . | sqrt                           |
| . | . | . | . | tan                            |
| . | . | . | . | tanh                           |
| . | . | . | . | multiple-precision mathematics |
| . | . | . | . | gcd                            |
| . | . | . | . | ispos                          |
| . | . | . | . | itom                           |
| . | . | . | . | madd                           |
| . | . | . | . | memp                           |
| . | . | . | . | mcopy                          |
| . | . | . | . | mdiv                           |
| . | . | . | . | min                            |
| . | . | . | . | minit                          |
| . | . | . | . | mintfr                         |
| . | . | . | . | mitom                          |

|   |   |   |   |          |
|---|---|---|---|----------|
| . | . | . | . | mneg     |
| . | . | . | . | mout     |
| . | . | . | . | msqrt    |
| . | . | . | . | msub     |
| . | . | . | . | mtoi     |
| . | . | . | . | mtos     |
| . | . | . | . | mult     |
| . | . | . | . | mvfree   |
| . | . | . | . | pow      |
| . | . | . | . | rpow     |
| . | . | . | . | sdiv     |
| . | . | . | . | spow     |
| . | . | . | . | smult    |
| . | . | . | . | xgcd     |
| . | . | . | . | zerop    |
| . | . | . | . | STDIO    |
| . | . | . | . | clearerr |
| . | . | . | . | fclose   |
| . | . | . | . | fdopen   |
| . | . | . | . | feof     |
| . | . | . | . | ferror   |
| . | . | . | . | fflush   |
| . | . | . | . | fgetc    |
| . | . | . | . | fgets    |
| . | . | . | . | fgetw    |
| . | . | . | . | fileno   |
| . | . | . | . | fopen    |
| . | . | . | . | fprintf  |
| . | . | . | . | fputc    |
| . | . | . | . | fputs    |
| . | . | . | . | fputw    |
| . | . | . | . | fread    |
| . | . | . | . | freopen  |
| . | . | . | . | fscanf   |
| . | . | . | . | fseek    |
| . | . | . | . | ftell    |
| . | . | . | . | fwrite   |
| . | . | . | . | getc     |
| . | . | . | . | getchar  |
| . | . | . | . | gets     |
| . | . | . | . | getw     |
| . | . | . | . | pclose   |
| . | . | . | . | popen    |
| . | . | . | . | printf   |
| . | . | . | . | putc     |
| . | . | . | . | putchar  |
| . | . | . | . | puts     |
| . | . | . | . | putw     |
| . | . | . | . | rewind   |

```

. . . . scanf
. . . . setbuf
. . . . sprintf
. . . . sscanf
. . . . ungetc
. . . string functions
. . . . memchr
. . . . memcmp
. . . . memcpy
. . . . memmove
. . . . memset
. . . . index
. . . . pnmatch
. . . . rindex
. . . . strcat
. . . . strchr
. . . . strcmp
. . . . strcoll
. . . . strcpy
. . . . strcspn
. . . . strerror
. . . . strlen
. . . . strncat
. . . . strncmp
. . . . strncpy
. . . . strpbrk
. . . . strrchr
. . . . strspn
. . . . strstr
. . . . strtok
. . . . strxfrm
. . . terminal-independent operations
. . . . tgetent
. . . . tgetflag
. . . . tgetnum
. . . . tgetstr
. . . . tgoto
. . . . tputs
. . . time
. . . . asctime
. . . . ctime
. . . . ftime
. . . . gmtime
. . . . localtime
. . . . setz
. . . . time
. . linker-defined symbols
. . . end
. . . etext

```

```
. commands
. . ac
. . accton
. . ar
. . as
. . at
. . awk
. . bad
. . badscan
. . banner
. . basename
. . bc
. . break
. . build
. . c
. . cal
. . calendar
. . case
. . cat
. . cc
. . cd
. . check
. . chgrp
. . chmod
. . chown
. . chri
. . cmp
. . col
. . comm
. . compress
. . continue
. . conv
. . cp
. . cpdir
. . crypt
. . date
. . db
. . dc
. . dd
. . deroff
. . df
. . diff
. . diff3
. . disable
. . dos
. . drvld
. . du
. . dump
. . dumpdate
```

. . dumpdir  
 . . echo  
 . . ed  
 . . egrep  
 . . enable  
 . . epson  
 . . eval  
 . . exec  
 . . exit  
 . . expr  
 . . factor  
 . . false  
 . . fdformat  
 . . file  
 . . find  
 . . fixstack  
 . . fnkey  
 . . for  
 . . fortune  
 . . from  
 . . fsck  
 . . grep  
 . . hp  
 . . hpr  
 . . hpskip  
 . . head  
 . . help  
 . . icheck  
 . . if  
 . . install  
 . . join  
 . . kermit  
 . . kill  
 . . lc  
 . . ld  
 . . lex  
 . . ln  
 . . login  
 . . look  
 . . lpr  
 . . lpskip  
 . . ls  
 . . m4  
 . . mail  
 . . make  
 . . man  
 . . me  
 . . mesg  
 . . mkdir

. . mkfs  
. . mknod  
. . mount  
. . msg  
. . mv  
. . ncheck  
. . newgrp  
. . newuser  
. . nm  
. . nroff  
. . od  
. . passwd  
. . phone  
. . pr  
. . prep  
. . ps  
-----  
. . pwd  
. . quot  
. . ranlib  
. . read  
. . reboot  
. . restor  
. . rev  
. . rm  
. . rmdir  
. . sa  
. . scat  
. . sed  
. . set  
. . sh  
. . shift  
. . shutdown  
. . size  
. . sleep  
. . sort  
. . spell  
. . split  
. . strip  
. . stty  
. . su  
. . sum  
. . sync  
. . tail  
. . tar  
. . tee  
. . test  
. . time  
. . times  
. . touch

. . tr  
 . . trap  
 . . troff  
 . . true  
 . . tsort  
 . . tty  
 . . ttystat  
 . . typo  
 . . umount  
 . . uncompress  
 . . uniq  
 . . units  
 . . unmkfs  
 . . until  
 . . UUCP  
 . . . uucico  
 . . . uucp  
 . . . uudecode  
 . . . uuencode  
 . . . uuinstall  
 . . . uuname  
 . . . untouch  
 . . . unwatch  
 . . . uuxqt  
 . . wait  
 . . wall  
 . . wc  
 . . while  
 . . who  
 . . write  
 . . yacc  
 . . yes  
 . . zcat  
 . definitions  
 . . address  
 . . alignment  
 . . arena  
 . . array  
 . . bit  
 . . bit map  
 . . buffer  
 . . byte  
 . . cast  
 . . cc0  
 . . cc1  
 . . cc2  
 . . cc3  
 . . daemon  
 . . directory



- . . executable file
- . . field
- . . file
- . . FILE
- . . file descriptor
- . . filter
- . . function
- . . GMT
- . . i-node
- . . interrupt
- . . lvalue
- . . macro
- . . manifest constant
- . . modulus
- . . NULL
- . . nybble
- . . object format
- . . operator
- . . pattern
- . . pipe
- . . port
- . . precedence
- . . process
- . . pun
- . . random access
- . . ranlib
- . . read-only memory
- . . register variable
- . . root
- . . rvalue
- . . stack
- . . standard error
- . . standard input
- . . standard output
- . . stderr
- . . stdin
- . . stdout
- . . sticky bit
- . . stream
- . . structure
- . . superuser
- . . wildcards
- . device drivers
  - . at
  - . boot
  - . com
    - . com1
    - . com2
    - . com3

```

. . . com4
. . . console
. . . ct
. . . fl
. . . lp
. . . mboot
. . . mem
. . . msg
. . . null
. . . ram
. . . sem
. . . shm
. . . tape
. . . termio
. . . swap
. environmental variables
. . . ASKCC
. . . HOME
. . . LASTERROR
. . . MAIL
. . . PATH
. . . PS1
. . . PS2
. . . SHELL
. . . TERM
. . . TIMEZONE
. . . USER
. file formats
. . . core
. . . group
. . . passwd
. . . ttys
. system maintenance
. . . ATclock
. . . atrun
. . . boottime
. . . brc
. . . cron
. . . fdisk
. . . getty
. . . hpd
. . . init
. . . logmsg
. . . lpd
. . . rc
. . . update
. technical information
. . . ASCII
. . . byte ordering

```

- . . calling conventions
- . . data formats
- . . data types
- . . environ
- . . errno
- . . execution
- . . floppy disks
- . . man
- . . memory allocation
- . . modemcap
- . . motd
- . . ms
- . . portability
- . . security
- . . signame
- . . storage class
- . . structure assignment
- . . termcap
- . . type checking
- . . type promotion
- . . UUCP

## Appendix 2: Error Messages

The following lists the error messages produced by major utilities within COHERENT.

### Compiler Error Messages

The following gives the error messages returned by the COHERENT C compiler and the assembler `as`. The messages are in alphabetical order, and each is marked to indicate which program generated it (e.g., `cc0`, `ccp`). Each message from the compiler indicates whether it is a *fatal*, *error*, *warning*, or *strict* condition. The compilation phases are `cpp`, the preprocessor; `cc0`, the parser; `cc1`, the code generator; `cc2`, the optimizer; and `cc3`, the disassembler.

A fatal message usually indicates a condition that caused the compiler to terminate execution. Fatal errors from the later phases of compilation often cannot be fixed, and may indicate problems in the compiler.

An error message points to a condition in the source code that the compiler cannot resolve. This almost always occurs when the program does something illegal, e.g., has unbalanced braces.

Warning messages point out code that is compilable, but may produce trouble when the program is executed. A strict message refers to a passage in the code that is unorthodox and may not be portable.

. (as, error)

Dot label error. This indicates that a period was used as a label, e.g., “.”.

**a (as, error)**

Addressing error. This is generated by nearly any kind of operand/instruction mismatch or semantic error in address fields.

**address wraparound (ld, fatal)**

A segment of the program has exceeded the size allowed by the microprocessor's architecture.

**ambiguous reference to "string" (cc0, error)**

*string* is defined as a member of more than one **struct** or **union**, is referenced via a pointer to one of those **structs** or **unions**, and there is more than one offset that could be assigned.

**argument list has incorrect syntax (cc0, error)**

The argument list of a function declaration contains something other than a comma-separated list of formal parameters.

**string argument mismatch (cpp, error)**

The argument *string* does not match the type declared in the function's prototype. Either the function prototype or the argument should be changed.

**array bound must be a constant (cc0, error)**

An array's size can be declared only with a constant; you cannot declare an array's size by using a variable. For example, it is correct to say **foo[5]**, but illegal to say

```
bar = 5;
foo[bar];
```

**array bound must be positive (cc0, error)**

An array must be declared to have a positive number of elements. The array flagged here was declared to have a negative size, e.g., **foo[-5]**.

**array bound too large (cc0, error)**

The array is too large to be compiled with 16-bit index arithmetic. You should devise a way to divide the array into compilable portions.

**array row has 0 length (cc0, error)**

This message can be triggered by either of two problems. The first problem is declaring an array to have a length of zero; e.g., **foo[0]**. The second problem is failing to declare the size of a dimension *other than the first* in a multi-dimensional array. C allows you to declare an indefinite number of array elements of *n* bytes each, but you cannot declare *n* array elements of an indefinite length. For example, it is correct to say **foo[][5]** but illegal to say **foo[5][]**.

**#assert failure (cpp, error)**

The condition being tested in a **#assert** statement has failed.

**associative expression too complex (cc1, fatal)**

An expression that uses associative binary operators (e.g., '+') has too many operators; for example, **i=i1+i2+i3+ ... +i30**. You should simplify the expression.

- ## at beginning of macro (cpp, error)**  
Macro replacement lists may contain tokens that are separated by ##, but ## cannot appear at the beginning or the end of the list. The tokens on either side of the ## are pasted together into one token.
- ## at end of macro (cpp, error)**  
Macro replacement lists may contain tokens that are separated by ##, but ## cannot appear at the beginning or the end of the list. The tokens on either side of the ## are pasted together into one token.
- bad argument storage class (cc0, error)**  
An argument was assigned a storage class that the compiler does not recognize. The only valid storage class is **register**.
- bad external storage class (cc0, error)**  
An **extern** has been declared with an invalid storage class, e.g., **register** or **auto**.
- bad field width (cc0, error)**  
A field width was declared either to be negative or to be larger than the object that holds it. For example, **char foo:9** or **char foo:-1** will trigger this error.
- bad filler field width (cc0, error)**  
A filler field width was declared either to be negative or to be larger than the object that holds it. For example, **char foo:9** or **char foo:-1** will trigger this error.
- bad flexible array declaration (cc0, error)**  
A flexible array is missing an array boundary; e.g., **foo[5][ ]**. C permits you to declare an indefinite number of array elements of *n* bytes each, but you cannot declare an array to have *n* elements of an indefinite number of bytes each.
- baddisk: disk error (ld, fatal)**  
**ld** either cannot read or cannot write to the mass-storage device. Check the disk you are using to see that it is working correctly.
- break not in a loop (cc0, error)**  
A **break** occurs that is not inside a loop or a **switch** statement.
- call of non function (cc0, error)**  
What the program attempted to call is not a function. Check to make sure that you have not accidentally declared a function as a variable; e.g., typing **char \*foo;** when you meant **char \*foo();**
- cannot add pointers (cc0, error)**  
The program attempted to add two pointers. **ints** or **longs** may be added to or subtracted from pointers, and two pointers to the same type may be subtracted, but no other arithmetic operations are legal on pointers.
- cannot apply unary '&' to a register variable (cc0, error)**  
Because register variables are stored within registers, they do not have addresses, which means that the unary **&** operator cannot be used with them.

- cannot apply unary '&' to an alien function (cc0, error)  
 The unary '&' operator cannot be used with any function that has been declared to be of type **alien**. **alien** functions cannot be called by pointers.
- cannot cast double to pointer (cc0, error)  
 The program attempted to cast a **double** to a pointer. This is illegal.
- cannot cast pointer to double (cc0, error)  
 The program attempted to cast a pointer to a **double**. This is illegal.
- cannot cast structure or union (cc0, error)  
 The program attempted to cast a **struct** or a **union**. This is illegal.
- cannot cast to structure or union (cc0, error)  
 The program attempted to cast a variable to a **union** or **struct**. This is illegal.
- string*: cannot create (as, error)  
 The assembler cannot create the output file it was requested to create. This often is due to a problem with the output device; check and make sure that it is not full, and that it is working correctly.
- string*: cannot create (cpp, fatal)  
 The preprocessor **cpp** cannot create the output file *string* that it was asked to create. This often is due to a problem with the output device; check and make sure that it is not full and that it is working correctly.
- cannot create *string* (ld, fatal)  
 The linker **ld** cannot create the output file it was requested to create. This often is due to a problem with the output device; check and make sure that it is working correctly and is not full.
- cannot declare array of functions (cc0, error)  
 For example, the declaration **extern int (\*f)[]();** declares **f** to be an array of pointers to functions that return **ints**. Arrays of functions are illegal.
- cannot declare flexible automatic array (cc0, error)  
 The program does not explicitly declare the number of elements in an automatic array.
- cannot initialize fields (cc0, error)  
 The program attempted to initialize bit fields within a structure. This is not supported.
- cannot initialize unions (cc0, error)  
 The program attempted to initialize a **union** within its declaration. **unions** cannot be initialized in this way.
- string*: cannot open (cpp, cc0, fatal)  
 The compiler cannot open the file *string* of source code that it was asked to read. **cpp** may not have been told the correct directory in which this file is to be found; check that the file is located correctly, and that the **-I** options, if any, are correct.
- cannot open include file *string* (cpp, cc0, fatal)  
 The program asked for file *string*, which was not found in the same directory as

the source file, nor in the default **include** directory specified by the environmental variable **INCDIR**, nor in any of the directories named in **-I** options given to the **cc** command.

cannot open *string* (*seg number*) (**ld**, fatal)

The linker **ld** cannot open the object module that it was asked to read. Make sure that the storage device is working correctly, and that **ld** has been given the correct names of the file and of the directory in which it is stored.

*string*: cannot reopen (**cc2**, fatal)

The optimizer in **cc2** cannot reopen a file with which it has worked. Make sure that your mass storage device is working correctly and that it is not full.

can't open temp file (**ld**, fatal)

The linker **ld** cannot open a temporary file. Make sure that your mass storage device is working correctly.

can't read *string* (**ld**, fatal)

The linker **ld** cannot read the file named. Make sure that your mass storage device is working correctly, and that **ld** has been given the correct names of the file and of the directory in which it is stored.

case not in a switch (**cc0**, error)

The program uses a **case** label outside of a **switch** statement. See the Lexicon entry for **case**.

character constant overflows long (**cc0**, error)

The character constant is too large to fit into a **long**. It should be redefined.

character constant promoted to long (**cc0**, warning)

A character constant has been promoted to a **long**.

class not allowed in structure body (**cc0**, error)

A storage class such as **register** or **auto** was specified within a structure.

compound statement required (**cc0**, error)

A construction that requires a compound statement does not have one, e.g., a function definition, array initialization, or **switch** statement.

conditional stack overflow (**cpp**, fatal)

A series of **#if** expressions is nested so deeply that it overflowed the allotted stack space. You should simplify this code.

constant expression required (**cc0**, error)

The expression used with a **#if** statement cannot be evaluated to a numeric constant. It probably uses a variable in a statement rather than a constant.

constant "*number*" promoted to long (**cc0**, warning)

The compiler promoted a constant in your program to **long**; although this is not strictly illegal, it may create problems when you attempt to port your code to another system, especially if the constant appears in an argument list.

constant used in truth context (**cc0**, strict)

A conditional expression for an **if**, **while**, or **for** statement has turned out to be

- always true or always false. For example, **while(1)** will trigger this message.
- construction not in Kernighan and Ritchie (**cc0**, strict)  
 This construction is not found in *The C Programming Language*; although it can be compiled by COHERENT, it may not be portable to another compiler.
- continue not in a loop (**cc0**, error)  
 The program uses a **continue** statement that is not inside a **for** or **while** loop.
- #define** argument mismatch (**cpp**, warning)  
 The definition of an argument in a **#define** statement does not match its subsequent use. One or the other should be changed.
- declarator syntax (**cc0**, error)  
 The program used incorrect syntax in a declaration.
- default label not in a switch (**cc0**, error)  
 The program used a **default** label outside a **switch** construct. See the Lexicon entry for **default**.
- disk error (**ld**, fatal)  
 The linker **ld** encountered a problem with the storage device when it attempted to read or write a file. Check that the disk is working correctly.
- divide by zero (**cc0**, warning)  
 The program will divide by zero if this code is executed. Although the program can be parsed, this statement may create trouble if executed.
- duplicated case constant (**cc0**, error)  
 A **case** value can appear only once in a **switch** statement. See the Lexicon entries for **case** and **switch**.
- #elif** used without **#if** or **#ifdef** (**cpp**, error)  
 An **#elif** control line must be preceded by an **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** control line.
- #elif** used after **#else** (**cpp**, error)  
 An **#elif** control line cannot be preceded by an **#else** control line.
- #else** used without **#if** or **#ifdef** (**cpp**, error)  
 An **#else** control line must be preceded by an **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** control line.
- empty switch (**cc0**, warning)  
 A **switch** statement has no **case** labels and no **default** labels. See the Lexicon entry for **switch**.
- #endif** used without **#if** or **#ifdef** (**cpp**, error)  
 An **#endif** control line must be preceded by an **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** control line.
- EOF in comment (**cpp**, fatal)  
 Your source file appears to end in mid-comment. The file of source code may have been truncated, or you failed to close a comment; make sure that each open-comment symbol **/\*** is balanced with a close-comment symbol **\*/**.



- EOF in macro *string* invocation (cpp, error)**  
Your source file appears to end in a macro call. The source file may be been truncated.
- EOF in midline (cpp, warning)**  
Check to see that your source file has not been truncated accidentally.
- EOF in string (cpp, error)**  
Your file appears to end in the middle of a quoted string literal. Check to see that your source file has not been truncated accidentally. Also, check that you did not accidentally embed a <ctrl-Z> in the line.
- #error: *string* (cpp, fatal)**  
An **#error** control line has been expanded, printing the remaining tokens on the line and terminating the program.
- error in #define syntax (cpp, error)**  
The syntax of a **#define** statement is incorrect. See the Lexicon entry for **#define** for more information.
- error in enumeration list syntax (cc0, error)**  
The syntax of an enumeration declaration contains an error.
- error in expression syntax (cc0, error)**  
The parser expected to see a valid expression, but did not find one.
- error in #include syntax (cpp, error)**  
An **#include** directive must be followed by a string enclosed by either quotation marks (" ") or angle brackets (<>). Anything else is illegal.
- exponent overflow in floating point constant (cc0, warning)**  
The exponent in a floating point constant has overflowed. The compiler has set the constant to the maximum allowable value, with the expected sign.
- exponent underflow in floating point constant (cc0, warning)**  
The exponent in a floating point constant has underflowed. The compiler has set the constant to zero, with the expected sign.
- expression too complex (cc1, fatal)**  
The code generator cannot generate code for an expression. You should simplify your code.
- external syntax (cc0, error)**  
This could be one of several errors, most often a missing '{'.
- file ends within a comment (cc0, error)**  
The source file ended in the middle of a comment. If the program uses nested comments, it may have mismatched numbers of begin-comment and end-comment markers. If not, the program began a comment and did not end it, perhaps inadvertently when dividing by *\*something*, e.g., `a=b/*cd;`
- function cannot return a function (cc0, error)**  
The function is declared to return another function, which is illegal. A function, however, can return a *pointer* to a function, e.g., `int (*signal(n, a))()`.

- function cannot return an array (**cc0**, error)  
 A function is declared to return an array, which is illegal. A function, however, can return a pointer to a structure or array.
- functions cannot be parameters (**cc0**, error)  
 The program uses a function as a parameter, e.g., `int q(); x(q)`; This is illegal.
- identifier *string* has too many arguments (**cpp**, error)  
 Too many actual parameters have been provided.
- identifier "*string*" is being redeclared (**cc0**, error)  
 The program declares variable *string* to be of two different types. This often is due to an implicit declaration, which occurs when a function is used before it is explicitly declared. Check for name conflicts.
- identifier "*string*" is not a label (**cc0**, error)  
 The program attempts to **goto** a nonexistent label.
- identifier "*string*" is not a parameter (**cc0**, error)  
 The variable "*string*" did not appear in the parameter list.
- identifier "*string*" is not defined (**cc0**, error)  
 The program uses identifier *string* but does not define it.
- identifier "*string*" not usable (**cc0**, error)  
*string* is probably a member of a structure or **union** which appears by itself in an expression.
- illegal character constant (**cc0**, error)  
 A legal character constant consists of a backslash `\` followed by **a**, **b**, **f**, **n**, **r**, **t**, **v**, **x**, or up to three octal digits.
- illegal character (*number* decimal) (**cc0**, error)  
 A control character was embedded within the source code. *number* is the decimal value of the character.
- illegal # construct (**cc0**, error)  
 The parser recognizes control lines of the form `#line_number` (decimal) or `#file_name`. Anything else is illegal.
- illegal control line (**cpp**, error)  
 A `#` is followed by a word that the compiler does not recognize.
- illegal cpp character (*n* decimal) (**cpp**, error)  
 The character noted cannot be processed by **cpp**. It may be a control character or a non-ASCII character.
- illegal integer constant suffix (**cc0**, error)  
 Integer constants may be suffixed with **u**, **U**, **l**, or **L** to indicate **unsigned**, **long**, or **unsigned long**.
- illegal label "*string*" (**cc0**, error)  
 The program uses the keyword *string* as a **goto** label. Remember that each label must end with a colon.

- illegal operation on "void" type (cc0, error)  
The program tried to manipulate a value returned by a function that had been declared to be of type **void**.
- illegal structure assignment (cc0, error)  
The structures have different sizes.
- illegal subtraction of pointers (cc0, error)  
A pointer can be subtracted from another pointer only if both point to objects of the same size.
- illegal use of a pointer (cc0, error)  
A pointer was used illegally, e.g., multiplied, divided, or &-ed. You may get the result you want if you cast the pointer to a **long**.
- illegal use of a structure or union (cc0, error)  
You may take the address of a **struct**, access one of its members, assign it to another structure, pass it as an argument, and return. All else is illegal.
- illegal use of defined (cpp, error)  
The construction **defined(token)** or **defined token** is legal only in **#if**, **#elif**, or **#assert** expressions.
- illegal use of floating point (cc0, error)  
A **float** was used illegally, e.g., in a bit-field structure.
- illegal use of "void" type (cc0, error)  
The program used **void** improperly. Strictly, there are only **void** functions; COHERENT also supports the cast to **void** of a function call.
- illegal use of void type in cast (cc0, error)  
The program uses a pointer where it should be using a variable.
- string* in **#if** (cpp, error)  
A syntax error occurred in a **#if** declaration. *string* describes the error in detail.
- inappropriate signed (cc0, error)  
The **signed** modifier may only be applied to **char**, **short**, **int**, or **long** types.
- include stack overflow (cpp, fatal)  
A set of **#include** statements is nested so deeply that the allotted stack space cannot hold them. Examines the files for a loop. You should try to fold some of the header files into one, instead of having them call each other.
- inappropriate "long" (cc0, error)  
Your program used the type **long** inappropriately.
- inappropriate "short" (cc0, error)  
Your program used the type **short** inappropriately.
- inappropriate "unsigned" (cc0, error)  
Your program used the type **unsigned** inappropriately.

**indirection through non pointer (cc0, error)**

The program attempted to use a scalar (e.g., a **long** or **int**) as a pointer. This may be due to not de-referencing the scalar.

**initializer too complex (cc0, error)**

An initializer was too complex to be calculated at compile time. You should simplify the initializer to correct this problem.

**integer pointer comparison (cc0, strict)**

The program compares an integer or **long** with a pointer without casting one to the type of the other. Although this is legal, the comparison may not work on machines with non-integer size pointers, e.g., Z8001 or LARGE-model on the i8086 family, or on machines with pointers larger than ints, e.g., the M68000 family of microprocessors.

**integer pointer pun (cc0, strict)**

The program assigns a pointer to an integer, or vice versa, without casting the right-hand side of the assignment to the type of the left-hand side. For example,

```
char *foo;
long bar;
foo = bar;
```

Although this is permitted, it is often an error if the integer has less precision than the pointer does. Make sure that you properly declare all functions that returns pointers.

**internal compiler error (cc0, cc1, cc2, cc3, fatal)**

The program produced a state that should not happen during compilation. Try to localize the offending statement if at all possible. Forward a minimal program that exhibits the error, preferably on a machine-readable medium, to Mark Williams Company, together with the version number of the compiler, the command line used to compile the program, and the system configuration. For immediate advice during business hours, telephone Mark Williams Company technical support.

**internal error, c=*number* in expr. (as, error)**

The assembler has detected a situation that "should not occur". Please send a copy of the source code that triggered this error to Mark Williams Company. For immediate help during business hours, contact Mark Williams Company technical support.

**"string" is a enum tag (cc0, error)**

**"string" is a struct tag (cc0, error)**

**"string" is a union tag (cc0, error)**

*string* has been previously declared as a tag name for a **struct**, **union**, or **enum**, and is now being declared as another tag. Perhaps the structure declarations have been included twice.

- "string" is not a tag (cc0, error)**  
A **struct** or **union** with tag *string* is referenced before any such **struct** or **union** is declared. Check your declarations against the reference.
- "string" is not a typedef name (cc0, error)**  
*string* was found in a declaration in the position in which the base type of the declaration should have appeared. *string* is not one of the predefined types or a **typedef** name. See the Lexicon entry on **typedef** for more information.
- "string" is not an "enum" tag (cc0, error)**  
An **enum** with tag *string* is referenced before any such **enum** has been declared. See the Lexicon entry for **enum** for more information.
- class "string" [number] is not used (cc0, strict)**  
Your program declares variable *string* or *number* but does not use it.
- label "string" undefined (cc0, error)**  
The program does not declare the label *string*, but it is referenced in a **goto** statement.
- left side of "string" not usable (cc0, error)**  
The left side of the expression *string* should be a pointer, but is not.
- lvalue required (cc0, error)**  
The left-hand value of a declaration is missing or incorrect. See the Lexicon entries for **lvalue** and **rvalue**.
- m (as, error)**  
Multiple definition. The offending line is involved in the multiple definition of a label.
- macro body too long (cpp, fatal)**  
The size of the macro in question exceeds the limit designed into the preprocessor. Try to shorten or split the macro.
- macro expansion buffer overflow in string (cpp, fatal)**  
A macro call has expanded into more characters than **cpp** can handle. Try to shorten the macro, or break it up.
- macro string redefined (cpp, error)**  
The program redefined the macro *string*.
- macro string requires arguments (cpp, error)**  
The macro calls for arguments that the program has not supplied.
- macros nested number deep, loop likely (cpp, error)**  
Macros call each other *number* times; you may have inadvertently created an infinite loop. Try to simplify the program.
- member "string" is not addressable (cc0, error)**  
The array *string* has exceeded the machine's addressing capability. Structure members are addressed with 16-bit signed offsets on most machines.

- member *"string"* is not defined (cc0, error)  
 The program references a structure member that has not been declared.
- mismatched conditional (cc0, error)  
 In a '?' expression, the colon and all three expressions must be present.
- misplaced ":" operator (cc1, error)  
 The program used a colon without a preceding question mark. It may be a misplaced label.
- missing "(" (cc0, error)  
 The **if**, **while**, **for**, and **switch** keywords must be followed by parenthesized expressions.
- missing ")" (cc0, error)  
 A right parenthesis ')' is missing anywhere after a left parenthesis '('.
- missing "=" (cc0, warning)  
 An equal sign is missing from the initialization of a variable declaration. Note that this is a warning, not an error: this allows COHERENT to compile programs with "old style" initializers, such as `int i 1`. Use of this feature is strongly discouraged, and it will disappear when the ANSI standard for the C language is adopted in full.
- missing "," (cc0, error)  
 A comma is missing from an enumeration member list.
- missing ":" (cc0, error)  
 A colon ':' is missing after a **case** label, after a default label, or after the '?' in a '?'-' construction.
- missing ";" (cc0, error)  
 A semicolon ';' does not appear after an external data definition or declaration, after a **struct** or **union** member declaration, after an automatic data declaration or definition, after a statement, or in a **for(;;)** statement.
- missing ']' (as, error)  
 The assembler expected to find a right bracket in the present expression, but did not.
- missing "]" (cc0, error)  
 A right bracket ']' is missing from an array declaration, or from an array reference; for example, `foo[5`.
- missing "{" (cc0, error)  
 A left brace '{' is missing after a **struct tag**, **union tag**, or **enum tag** in a definition.
- missing "}" (cc0, error)  
 A right brace '}' is missing from a **struct**, **union**, or definition, from an initialization, or from a compound statement.
- missing "while" (cc0, error)  
 A **while** command does not appear after a **do** in a **do-while()** statement.

- missing #endif (cpp, error)**  
An **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** statement was not closed with an **#endif** statement.
- missing label name in goto (cc0, error)**  
A **goto** statement does not have a label.
- missing member (cc0, error)**  
A **'** or **'->** is not followed by a member name.
- missing output file (cpp, fatal)**  
The preprocessor **cpp** found a **-o** option that was not followed by a file name for the output file.
- missing right brace (cc0, error)**  
A right brace is missing at end of file. The missing brace probably precedes lines with errors reported earlier.
- missing "string" (cc0, error)**  
The parser **cc0** expects to see token *string*, but sees something else.
- missing semicolon (cc0, error)**  
External declarations should continue with **'** or end with **;**.
- missing type in structure body (cc0, error)**  
A structure member declaration has no type.
- multiple classes (cc0, error)**  
An element has been assigned to more than one storage class, e.g., **extern register**.
- multiple #else's (cpp, error)**  
An **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** expression can be followed by no more than one **#else** expression.
- multiple types (cc0, error)**  
An element has been assigned more than one data type, e.g., **int float**.
- nested comment (cpp, warning)**  
The comment introducer sequence **/\*** has been detected within a comment. Comments do not nest.
- new line in string literal (cpp, error)**  
A newline character appears in the middle of a string. If you wish to embed a newline within a string, use the character constant **\n**. If you wish to continue the string on a new line, insert a backslash **\** before the new line.
- newline in macro argument (cpp, warning)**  
A macro argument contains a newline character. This may create trouble when the program is run.
- no input found (ld, fatal)**  
The **ld** command line names no object or archive files to link.

- nonterminated string or character constant (**cc0**, error)  
 A line that contains single or double quotation marks left off the closing quotation mark. A newline in a string constant may be escaped with `'\'`.
- number has too many digits (**cc0**, error)  
 A number is too big to fit into its type.
- o (**as**, error)  
 An unrecognized opcode mnemonic was found. Contrast this with error `'q'`, where the opcode is recognized but the syntax is in error.
- only one default label allowed (**cc0**, error)  
 The program uses more than one default label in a `switch` expression. See the Lexicon entries for `default` and `switch` for more information.
- out of space (**ld**, fatal)  
**malloc** could not allocate adequate space in memory for the linker `ld` to work.
- out of space (**cpp**, **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc2**, **cc3**, fatal)  
 The compiler ran out of space while attempting to compile the program. To remove this error, examine your source and break up any functions that are extraordinarily large.
- out of tree space (**cc0**, fatal)  
 The compiler allows a program to use up to 350 tree nodes; the program exceeded that allowance.
- outdated ranlib (**ld**, warning)  
 The date stamp on the library file is younger than that in the ranlib header. If the library has been altered, the ranlib can be updated with the archiver `ar`; see the Lexicon entry on `ar` to see how this is done. If the library has not been altered, this message may be due to an installation error; see the Lexicon entry on `ranlib` for more information.
- p (**as**, error)  
 Phase error. The value of a label changed during the assembly. An instruction has a size that differs between the first and second passes.
- parameter *string* is not addressable (**cc0**, error)  
 The parameter has a stack frame offset greater than 32,767. Perhaps you should pass a pointer instead of a structure.
- parameter must follow # (**cpp**, error)  
 Macro replacement lists may contain # followed by a macro parameter name. The macro argument is converted to a string literal.
- potentially nonportable structure access (**cc0**, strict)  
 A program that uses this construction may not be portable to another compiler.
- preprocessor assertion failure (**cpp**, warning)  
 A `#assert` directive that was tested by the preprocessor `cpp` was found to be false.



- q (as, error)  
Questionable syntax. The assembler has no idea how to parse this line, and it has given up.
- r (as, error)  
Relocation error. The program attempted to create or use an expression in a way that the linker cannot resolve.
- string* redefined (cpp, error)  
cpp macros should not be redefined. You should check to see that you are not **#include**ing two different versions of a file somehow, or attempting to use the same macro name for two different purposes.
- return type/function type mismatch (cc0, error)  
What the function was declared to return and what it actually returns do not match, and cannot be made to match.
- return(e) illegal in void function (cc0, error)  
A function that was declared to be type **void** has nevertheless attempted to return a value. Either the declaration or the function should be altered.
- risky type in truth context (cc0, strict)  
The program uses a variable declared to be a pointer, **long**, **unsigned long**, **float**, or **double** as the condition expression in an **if**, **while**, **do**, or **'?:'**. This could be misinterpreted by some C compilers.
- s (as, error)  
Segment error. The program attempted to initialize something in a segment that contains only uninitialized data.
- size of *string* overflows *size\_t* (cc0, strict)  
A string was so large that it overran an internal compiler limit. You should try to break the string in question into several small strings.
- size of union "*string*" is not known (cc0, error)  
A pointer to a **struct** or **union** is being incremented, decremented, or subjected to array arithmetic, but the **struct** or **union** has not been defined.
- size of *string* too large (cc0, error)  
The program declared an array or **struct** that is too big to be addressable, e.g., **long a[20000]**; on a machine that has a 64-kilobyte limit on data size and four-byte longs.
- sizeof truncated to unsigned (cc0, warning)  
An object's **sizeof** value has lost precision when truncated to a *size\_t* integer.
- sizeof(*string*) set to *number* (cc0, warning)  
The program attempts to set the value of *string* by applying **sizeof** to a function or an **extern**; the compiler in this instance has set *string* to *number*.
- storage class not allowed in cast (cc0, error)  
The program casts an item as a **register**, **static**, or other storage class.

- string initializer not terminated by NUL (**cc0**, warning)  
 An array of **chars** that was initialized by a string is too small in dimension to hold the terminating NUL character. For example, **char foo[3] = "ABC"**.
- structure "*string*" does not contain member "*m*" (**cc0**, error)  
 The program attempted to address the variable *string.m*, which is not defined as part of the structure *string*.
- structure or union used in truth context (**cc0**, error)  
 The program uses a structure in an **if**, **while**, or **for**, or **'?:'** statement.
- switch of non integer (**cc0**, error)  
 The expression in a **switch** statement is not type **int** or **char**. You should cast the **switch** expression to an **int** if the loss of precision is not critical.
- switch overflow (**cc1**, fatal)  
 The program has more than ten nested **switches**.
- too many adjectives (**cc0**, error)  
 A variable's type was described with too many of **long**, **short**, or **unsigned**.
- too many arguments (**cc0**, fatal)  
 No function may have more than 30 arguments.
- too many arguments in a macro (**cpp**, fatal)  
 The program uses more than the allowed ten arguments with a macro.
- too many cases (**cc1**, fatal)  
 The program cannot allocate space to build a **switch** statement.
- too many directories in include list (**cpp**, fatal)  
 The program uses more than the allowed ten **#include** directories.
- too many initializers (**cc0**, error)  
 The program has more initializers than the space allocated can hold.
- too many structure initializers (**cc0**, error)  
 The program contains a structure initialization that has more values than members.
- trailing **","** in initialization list (**cc0**, warning)  
 An initialization statement ends with a comma, which is legal.
- type clash (**cc0**, error)  
 The parser expected to find matching types but did not. For example, the types of **e1** and **e2** in **(x) ? e1 : e2** must either both be pointers or neither be pointers.
- type of function "*string*" adjusted to *string* (**cc0**, warning)  
 This warning is given when the type of a numeric constant is widened to **unsigned**, **long**, or **unsigned long** to preserve the constant's value. The type of the constant may be explicitly specified with the **u** or **L** constant suffixes.
- type of parameter "*string*" adjusted to *string* (**cc0**, warning)  
 The program uses a parameter that the C language says must be adjusted to a wider type, e.g., **char** to **int** or **float** to **double**.

type required in cast (**cc0**, error)

The type is missing from a cast declaration.

u (**as**, error)

A symbol is used but never defined. The symbol's name is displayed.

unexpected end of enumeration list (**cc0**, error)

An end-of-file flag or a right brace occurred in the middle of the list of enumerators.

unexpected EOF (**cc0**, **cc1**, **cc2**, **cc3**, fatal)

EOF occurred in the middle of a statement. The temporary file may have been corrupted or truncated accidentally. Check your disk drive to see that it is working correctly.

union "*string*" does not contain member *m* (**cc0**, error)

The program attempted to address the variable *string m*, which is not defined as part of the structure *string*.

*string*: unknown option (**cpp**, fatal)

The preprocessor **cpp** does not recognize the option *string*. Try re-typing the **cc** command line.

write error on output object file (**cc2**, fatal)

**cc2** could not write the relocatable object module. Most likely, your mass storage device has run out of room. Check to see that your disk drive or hard disk has enough room to hold the object module, and that it is working correctly.

zero modulus (**cc0**, warning)

The program will perform a modulo operation by zero if the code just parsed is executed. Although the program can be parsed, this statement may create trouble if executed.

### make Error Messages

The following gives the error messages that can be produced by **make**. Its message describe fatal conditions, errors, or warnings, as described above.

; after target or macroname (error)

A semicolon appeared after a target name or a macro name.

Bad macro name (error)

A bad macro name was used; for example, a macro name included a control character.

= in or after dependency (error)

An equal sign '=' appeared within or followed the definition of a macro name or target file; for example, **OBJ=atod.o=factor.o** will produce this error.

Incomplete line at end of file (error)

An incomplete line appeared at the end of the **makefile**.

Macro definition too long (error)

The macro definition exceeds the limited designed into the preprocessor.

Multiple actions for *name* (error)

A target is defined with more than one single-colon target line.

Multiple detailed actions for *name* (error)

A target is defined with more than one single-colon target line.

Must use '::' for *name* (error)

A double-colon target line was followed by a single-colon target line.

Newline after target or macroname (error)

A newline character appears after a target name or a macro name.

::' not allowed for *name* (error)

A double-colon target line was used illegally; for example, after single-colon target line.

::: or : in or after dependency list (error)

A triple colon is meaningless to and therefore illegal wherever it appears. A single colon may be used only in a target line (which is also called the *dependency list*), and nowhere else.

Out of core (adddep) (error)

This results from a system problem. Try reducing the size of your **makefile**.

Out of range number input. (*resource*, warning)

You attempted to use a numeric value that is out of range.

To clear this message, press the left mouse button or any key.

Out of space (error)

System problem. Try reducing the size of your **makefile**.

Out of space (lookup) (error)

System problem. Try reducing the size of your **makefile**.

Syntax error (error)

The syntax of a line is faulty.

Too many macro definitions (error)

The number of macros you have created exceeds the capacity of your computer to process them.

= without macro name or in token list (error)

An equal sign '=' can be used only to define a macro, using the following syntax: "MACRO=*definition*". An incomplete macro definition, or the appearance of an equal sign outside the context of a macro definition, will trigger this error message.

: without preceding target (error)

A colon appeared without a target file name, e.g., *:string*.

## **nroff** Error Messages

The following gives **nroff**'s error messages, and hints about how to correct the situation. Errors are of two types: *simple errors*, which simply cause an error message to be printed on your screen; and *panics*, which causes processing to abort. Note that a panic will leave behind a half-written temporary file; you may wish to look at the end of it to see just how far processing proceeded, but otherwise it should be thrown away.

**.cs** not implemented yet (error)

The **.cs** primitive has not been implemented in this release of **nroff**.

**.dt** not implemented yet (error)

The **.dt** primitive has not been implemented in this release of **nroff**.

**.nm** not implemented yet (error)

The **.nm** primitive has not been implemented in this release of **nroff**.

**.nn** not implemented yet (error)

The **.nn** primitive has not been implemented in this release of **nroff**.

**.uf** not implemented yet (error)

The **.uf** primitive has not been implemented in this release of **nroff**.

Arguments too long (error)

A macro can accept a maximum of ten arguments, which can total no more than 128 characters. Reduce the number of arguments, or shorten the length of the arguments.

Attempted zero divide (error)

An attempt was made to divide a number by zero, which is, of course, illegal.

Attempted zero modulus (error)

An attempt was made to perform a modulus operation with zero as the divisor; this is, of course, illegal.

Bad adjustment type (error)

The legal text adjustment types are **l**, **rR**, and **b**, for left, right, and both, respectively. Using any other character will generate this error message.

Bad argument reference (error)

Arguments can be referenced within a macro as **\$1** through **\$9**. Using any other number or character will generate this error message.

Bad character *c* (error)

**nroff** does not recognize the character *c*; this may be a control character that was accidentally embedded in your file.

Bad directive *name* (panic)

**nroff** could not process this directive. It should be removed.

Bad font *name* (panic)

**nroff** cannot process the indicated font. Remove it.

- Bad font *name* at devfont (panic)  
**nroff** cannot process the indicated font. It should be removed.
- Bad font *name* in code stream (panic)  
**nroff** cannot process the indicated font. It should be removed.
- Bad literal *name* (error)  
**nroff** cannot process this literal. It should be corrected or removed.
- Bad pattern (error)  
**nroff** cannot process this pattern. It should be corrected or removed.
- Bad tab stop (error)  
 A tab stop has been set to an impossible point; for example, **.ta 60i**. The command should be corrected or removed.
- Bracket building not implemented yet (error)  
 The current implementation of **nroff** cannot build brackets or braces that enclose more than one line of material. Commands to do so should be commented-out-of-your-**nroff**-input.
- Cannot create temp file (panic)  
**nroff** cannot create or update its temporary file. Most commonly, this happens when the temporary file has exhausted all available space on your storage device. You should create more space on the current mass storage device by removing files that you no longer need.
- Cannot dehyphenate (panic)  
**nroff** cannot process its normal dehyphenation routines. The input in question should either be corrected or removed.
- Cannot find current file (error)  
**nroff** cannot find a file that you asked it to process. Check and see if the file is where you think it is; also, make sure that you have constructed the path name to the file correctly.
- Cannot find font (error)  
 You have asked for a font of which **nroff** is unaware.
- Cannot find register *name* (error)  
**nroff** was asked to read a number register that had not yet been defined. The number register should first be defined, or the reference to it should be corrected.
- Cannot open *name* (error)  
 A file that you requested cannot be opened for processing. You may have requested an executable file by mistake; make sure that the file you are asking for is an **nroff** text file.
- Cannot open temp file (panic)  
**nroff** cannot open its temporary file. You may not have write permission for the directory in question.

**Cannot pop environment (error)**

Only the original environment is available to **nroff**. To correct this problem, either see to it that another environment is pushed earlier in your script, or remove the instruction to pop the environment.

**Cannot read environment (panic)**

**nroff** cannot process the environment you requested. The request should be corrected or removed.

**Cannot remove *name* (error)**

An instruction to remove a string or macro cannot be executed, most likely because the string or macro in question was never created in the first place.

**Cannot reopen temp file (panic)**

**nroff** cannot reopen its temporary file to continue processing. Make sure that you have not run out of space on your mass storage device, and that it is mechanically sound.

**Cannot write environment (panic)**

**nroff** cannot process the environment you requested. The request should be corrected or removed.

**Delimiter argument too large (error)**

**nroff** has been asked for an impossible delimiter; for example, **.ll 65i** instead of **.ll 6.5i**. The delimiter should be corrected or removed.

**end diversion (error)**

**nroff** was asked to end a diversion that never existed. Make sure that the diversion is opened in the first place, or remove the **.di** command.

**Environment does not exist (error)**

**nroff** recognizes three environments: 0, 1, and 2. A request to open any other environment will generate this error message.

**Environments stacked too deeply (error)**

The input script has pushed more environments than is allowed at any given time. You should review your script and attempt to use the environment calls more efficiently.

**Field with too large (error)**

The field in question cannot fit into the available space. It should be shortened or eliminated.

**Hyphenation buffer overflow (error)**

COHERENT attempted to hyphenate a string that was too large for its hyphenation buffer to handle. The string should be broken up somehow, or hyphenation should be turned off by using the **.nh** command.

**Incomplete macro in trap (panic)**

COHERENT cannot exit from a macro that has been triggered by a trap. Examine the code for your macros carefully, and look for anything that might prevent the proper functioning of a macro. These errors can be triggered by what may appear to be relatively slight mistakes in macro definition.

Line buffer overflow (panic)

The line buffer can hold a maximum of 300 characters; for some reason, your input is forcing COHERENT to exceed that limit. Examine the end of the output file to see where this error occurs; then correct or delete the input in question.

Line too long (error)

An input line is too long to fit onto a page; this error occurs only when COHERENT is in no-adjust mode.

Out of core (panic)

The input file causes COHERENT to exceed the available physical memory in your computer. Most often, this occurs due to an error in macro definition; for example, the failure to end a macro definition with two periods ".." will force COHERENT to read its entire input file as a macro, which will overwhelm your computer.

Request *name* not found (error)

You requested an non-existent primitive or macro. Check the spelling of the macro call, and make sure that all the necessary macro files were included on your COHERENT command line.

Section *number* of title too large (error)

This error is triggered by the .tl command. One of the three arguments to this command is too large to be fit into the available space; it should be shortened or deleted.

Special char indicator not implemented yet (error)

The input file had an escape sequence that called a special character that is not yet implemented. Check this call to ensure that it is not a typographical error for a character or routine that has been implemented.

Syntax error (error)

The syntax of a command or a macro is incorrect. Examine the output file carefully to see if any of your functions are not executing properly; then make the necessary corrections.

Temp file read error (panic)

COHERENT cannot read the temporary file that it has been writing. This may indicate a hardware error in your mass-storage device. Check and see whether the mass storage device is working properly; also, try writing the temporary file to another device, by using the -f option.

Temp file write error (panic)

COHERENT cannot write its temporary file. Either the mass storage device to which you directed the temporary file to is write-protected, or it has run out of room. Try rerunning the input file with the temporary file directed to another device with an empty disk that you are certain is not write-protected.

Too many tab stops (error)

A .ta commands included more tab stop settings than COHERENT allows.



Unexpected end of file (error)

The last line of your input file did not end with a carriage return, which leads COHERENT to think that the input file was accidentally truncated. This message also appears if the file ends in the middle of defining a macro.

Unknown macro/register type *name* (error)

The input script asked for a macro or number register that is undefined.

Vertical line drawing not implemented yet (error)

The vertical line-drawing escape sequence `\L` is not yet implemented.

Word buffer overflow (panic)

The word buffer can hold a maximum of 200 characters; The input file contains a string that is too long to fit. Examine the end of the output file to see where this error occurs, and correct the string in question.

Zero width character not implemented yet (error)

The zero-width escape sequence `\^` has not yet been implemented.

|               |                                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Index</b>  |                                                   |
| <b># to -</b> |                                                   |
| #             | 475                                               |
| ##            | 476                                               |
| #define       | 170, 477                                          |
| #elif         | 478                                               |
| #else         | 479                                               |
| #endif        | 479                                               |
| #if           | 479                                               |
| #ifdef        | 480                                               |
| #ifndef       | 480                                               |
| #include      | 169, 480                                          |
| #line         | 481                                               |
| #undef        | 482                                               |
| <br>          |                                                   |
| \$            | 55-56, 58, 60, 63, 110,<br>190-191, 235, 376, 399 |
| !\$           | 425                                               |
| \$\$          | 425                                               |
| \$\$*         | 267, 411, 424                                     |
| \$\$-         | 425                                               |
| \$\$<         | 267                                               |
| \$\$?         | 267, 416, 425                                     |
| \$\$@         | 267, 411, 424                                     |
| \$\${}        | 424                                               |
| <br>          |                                                   |
| %             | 335                                               |
| % page number | 320                                               |
| %%            | 225, 451                                          |
| %left         | 461-463                                           |
| %nonassoc     | 463                                               |
| %prec         | 463                                               |
| %right        | 461-462                                           |
| %S            | 238                                               |
| %token        | 458-459, 461                                      |
| %{ %}         | 243                                               |
| <br>          |                                                   |
| &             | 49, 100, 214, 402, 419                            |
| &&            | 63, 418-419                                       |
| <br>          |                                                   |
| '             | 322, 405                                          |
| ( and )       | 234, 419                                          |
| <br>          |                                                   |
| )             | 67                                                |
| <br>          |                                                   |
| *             | 52-53, 67, 159, 190, 232, 403                     |
| and /         | 405                                               |

|                    |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| and leading        | 406                              |
| *)                 | 67, 423                          |
| <br>               |                                  |
| +                  | 198, 232                         |
| <br>               |                                  |
| , (comma)          | 96                               |
| <br>               |                                  |
| -                  | 198, 265, 270                    |
| - (hyphen)         | 96                               |
| <br>               |                                  |
| . (dot)            | 30, 103, 187, 198, 230, 322, 402 |
| ...                | 416                              |
| .. (dot dot)       | 30, 60                           |
| .=                 | 191                              |
| .ascii             | 503                              |
| .bssd              | 503                              |
| .bssi              | 503                              |
| .DEFAULT           | 270                              |
| .even directive    | 504                              |
| .globl             | 504                              |
| .IGNORE            | 270                              |
| .l number register | 349                              |
| .o number register | 351                              |
| .odd directive     | 504                              |
| .page              | 504                              |
| .profile           | 52, 60, 87, 104, 415             |
| .prvd              | 503                              |
| .prvi              | 503                              |
| .shrd              | 503                              |
| .shri              | 503                              |
| .SILENT            | 270                              |
| .strn              | 503                              |
| .SUFFIXES          | 267                              |
| .symt              | 503                              |
| .title             | 504                              |
| .word              | 504                              |
| <br>               |                                  |
| /                  | 54, 405                          |
| / (slash)          | 103                              |
| //                 | 235                              |
| /bin               | 37, 60, 103, 415                 |
| /coherent          | 106                              |
| /dev               | 103, 111                         |
| /dev/console       | 727                              |
| /dev/null          | 109, 408                         |
| /dev/tty/?/?       | 727                              |
| /drv               | 104                              |
| /drv/swap          | 106                              |
| /etc               | 104                              |
| /etc/drvld         | 104                              |

# 1058 The COHERENT System

|                         |                          |                   |          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|----------|
| /etc/mount              | 111                      | <ctrl-E>          | 275      |
| /etc/passwd             | 87, 102, 104             | <ctrl-F>          | 275      |
| /etc/rc                 | 106, 490, 727            | <ctrl-G>          | 287      |
| /etc/tty                | 87, 100, 104, 727        | <ctrl-H>          | 18       |
| fields                  | 88                       | <ctrl-L>          | 282      |
| /etc/update             | 106-107                  | <ctrl-N>          | 275      |
| /etc/utmp               | 106, 727                 | <ctrl-P>          | 276      |
| /etc/wtmp               | 106                      | <ctrl-T>          | 282      |
| /lib                    | 104                      | <ctrl-U>          | 290      |
| /u                      | 105                      | <ctrl-U> <ctrl-L> | 283      |
| /usr                    | 104                      | <ctrl-V>          | 276      |
| /usr/adm                | 104                      | <ctrl-W>          | 280      |
| /usr/adm/acct           | 94, 490                  | <ctrl-X>          | 288, 303 |
| /usr/adm/savacct        | 95                       | <ctrl-X>!         | 301      |
| /usr/adm/wtmp           | 92                       | <ctrl-X>1         | 295, 297 |
| /usr/bin                | 104, 415                 | <ctrl-X>2         | 297      |
| /usr/games              | 104                      | <ctrl-X><         | 303      |
| /usr/games/lib/fortunes | 104                      | <ctrl-X><ctrl-B>  | 294      |
| /usr/games/moo          | 104                      | <ctrl-X><ctrl-C>  | 277, 279 |
| /usr/include            | 105                      | <ctrl-X><ctrl-F>  | 293      |
| /usr/lib/crontab        | 95, 105                  | <ctrl-X><ctrl-N>  | 298      |
| /usr/lib/makeactions    | 266-267                  | <ctrl-X><ctrl-P>  | 298      |
| /usr/lib/makemacros     | 266-267                  | <ctrl-X><ctrl-R>  | 293      |
| /usr/lib/tmac           | 369                      | <ctrl-X><ctrl-S>  | 277      |
| /usr/man                | 105                      | <ctrl-X><ctrl-V>  | 293      |
| /usr/msgs               | 105                      | <ctrl-X><ctrl-W>  | 288, 292 |
| /usr/pub                | 105                      | <ctrl-X><ctrl-Z>  | 298      |
| /usr/spool              | 105                      | <ctrl-X>>         | 303      |
| /usr/wtmp               | 727                      | <ctrl-X>B         | 299      |
| 24-hour time            | 95                       | <ctrl-X>E         | 300      |
| 2>                      | 408                      | <ctrl-X>F         | 283      |
| 68000                   | 16                       | <ctrl-X>K         | 295      |
| 8088                    | 16                       | <ctrl-X>N         | 297      |
| :                       | (colon)                  | <ctrl-X>P         | 297      |
| :                       | 60                       | <ctrl-X>Z         | 297      |
| :                       |                          | <ctrl-Y>          | 279      |
| ;                       | 48, 218, 400, 419        | <ctrl-Z>          | 289      |
| ;;                      | 67, 423                  | <ctrl>            | 271      |
| <                       | 23, 408                  | <del>             | 278      |
| < >                     | 238                      | <erase>           | 18, 48   |
| <<                      | 408                      | <esc>!            | 299      |
| <ctrl-@>                | 280                      | <esc>%            | 287      |
| <ctrl-A>                | 275                      | <esc>2            | 304      |
| <ctrl-B>                | 275                      | <esc><            | 277      |
| <ctrl-C>                | 301                      | <esc><del>        | 278      |
| <ctrl-D>                | 19, 22, 32, 39, 184, 278 | <esc>>            | 276      |
|                         |                          | <esc>?            | 303      |
|                         |                          | <esc>B            | 275      |
|                         |                          | <esc>C            | 281      |
|                         |                          | <esc>D            | 278      |

<esc>F . . . . . 275  
 <esc>L . . . . . 282  
 <esc>R . . . . . 286  
 <esc>S . . . . . 285  
 <esc>U . . . . . 282  
 <esc>V . . . . . 276  
 <interrupt> . . . . . 18  
 <kill> . . . . . 18, 48  
 <return> . . . . . 18-19, 21, 42, 274, 286, 399  
  
 = . . . . . 191, 503  
  
 > . . . . . 23, 36, 60, 63, 373, 407, 419  
 >> . . . . . 407  
  
 ? . . . . . 54, 202, 233, 405  
   and / . . . . . 405  
  
 [ . . . . . 54, 501  
 □ . . . . . 405  
  
 ] . . . . . 54, 501  
  
FILE . . . . . 482  
DATE . . . . . 482  
LINE . . . . . 483  
STDC . . . . . 483  
TIME . . . . . 483  
 \_exit() . . . . . 484

‘ . . . . . 59, 415  
 ‘ . . . . . 20

## A

AB macro . . . . . 318  
 abbreviations . . . . . 237  
 abort() . . . . . 485  
 abs() . . . . . 485  
 ac . . . . . 486  
 accept action . . . . . 451  
 access permission . . . . . 38  
 access() . . . . . 487  
 access.h . . . . . 488  
 accounting . . . . . 91  
   login . . . . . 91  
   process . . . . . 92  
   reports . . . . . 91  
   starting login . . . . . 92  
   starting process . . . . . 94

acct() . . . . . 488  
 acct.h . . . . . 489  
 accton . . . . . 490  
 acos() . . . . . 490  
 action . . . . . 225  
   accept . . . . . 451  
   default . . . . . 459  
   error . . . . . 451  
   reduce . . . . . 451  
   shift . . . . . 451  
 action statements . . . . . 453  
 action.h . . . . . 491  
 actions . . . . . 454-455  
 ad primitive . . . . . 327, 329  
 adding lines . . . . . 187  
 address . . . . . 161, 168, 492  
 address descriptors . . . . . 504  
 adjust . . . . . 327  
 advanced commands . . . . . 210  
 AÆ macro . . . . . 318  
 AI macro . . . . . 318  
 alarm() . . . . . 492  
 alignment . . . . . 493  
 alloc.h . . . . . 493  
 altering stack size . . . . . 160  
 alternatives . . . . . 234  
 ambiguity . . . . . 459  
   default handling . . . . . 460  
   resolution . . . . . 461  
 ampersand . . . . . 322  
 angle brackets . . . . . 238  
 apostrophe . . . . . 53  
 ar . . . . . 84, 493  
 ar.h . . . . . 495  
 archive . . . . . 268-269  
 archive file, format . . . . . 494  
 arena . . . . . 495  
 argc . . . . . 169, 496  
 argument . . . . . 164, 249  
 argument substitution . . . . . 249  
 arguments . . . . . 20, 290  
   default value . . . . . 290  
   deleting . . . . . 291  
   increasing or decreasing . . . . . 290  
   selecting values . . . . . 291  
   with create window commands . . . . . 297  
   with enlarge window command . . . . . 298  
   with scrolling commands . . . . . 299  
   with shrink window command . . . . . 298  
 argv . . . . . 169, 496



- blank . . . . . 500  
blank between tokens . . . . . 500  
blkb directive . . . . . 504  
blkw directive . . . . . 504  
block . . . . . 80, 112, 536  
block indentation . . . . . 283  
block kill command . . . . . 280  
block special file . . . . . 110  
block, disk . . . . . 34  
block-centered display . . . . . 323-324  
block-special device . . . . . 536  
maketemp . . . . . 255  
BNF . . . . . 450  
Bob Clark . . . . . 424  
boldface . . . . . 321  
boot . . . . . 536  
  device . . . . . 105  
  program . . . . . 112  
boot.fha . . . . . 538  
bootable floppy disk . . . . . 537  
bootstrap . . . . . 106  
boottime . . . . . 539  
bp primitive . . . . . 319, 325, 332  
br primitive . . . . . 326, 332  
brace . . . . . 58, 69  
braces . . . . . 164, 227  
  in patterns . . . . . 233  
brc . . . . . 539  
break . . . . . 326, 330, 539  
breaking . . . . . 310  
Brian W. Kernighan . . . . . 162  
brk() . . . . . 540  
broadcast message . . . . . 89  
bssd . . . . . 500, 503  
bssi . . . . . 500, 503  
buf.h . . . . . 540  
buffer . . . . . 540  
  definition . . . . . 292  
  delete . . . . . 295  
  for killed text . . . . . 279  
  how differs from file . . . . . 292  
  move text from one b. to another . . . . . 294  
  naming . . . . . 292  
  need unique names . . . . . 295  
  number allowed at one time . . . . . 294  
  prompting for new name . . . . . 295  
  replace with named file . . . . . 293  
  status command . . . . . 294  
  status window . . . . . 294  
  switch b. . . . . 293  
  with windows . . . . . 299  
buffer status command . . . . . 294  
  use with windows . . . . . 300  
buffer status window . . . . . 294  
build . . . . . 541  
byte . . . . . 541  
byte directive . . . . . 504  
byte ordering . . . . . 542  
bytes . . . . . 80
- ## C
- C . . . . . 16, 68-69  
  program linker . . . . . 69  
c . . . . . 543  
C keywords . . . . . 543  
C language . . . . . 544  
C preprocessor . . . . . 157, 545  
C programming  
  introduction . . . . . 161  
cabs() . . . . . 547  
cal . . . . . 26, 548  
calendar . . . . . 548  
calling conventions . . . . . 549  
calloc() . . . . . 553  
cancel a command . . . . . 287  
candaddr() . . . . . 554  
candev() . . . . . 554  
canino() . . . . . 554  
canint() . . . . . 555  
canlong() . . . . . 555  
canon.h . . . . . 555  
canshort() . . . . . 557  
cansize() . . . . . 557  
cantime() . . . . . 558  
canvaddr() . . . . . 558  
capitalization . . . . . 281  
caret . . . . . 213  
carriage return . . . . . 164, 185  
case . . . . . 66-67, 420, 422-423, 558-559  
case sensitivity  
  in commands . . . . . 35  
  in file names . . . . . 26  
  in shell variable . . . . . 56  
cast . . . . . 559  
cat . . . . . 20, 23, 28, 32, 36, 400, 560  
cc . . . . . 68-69, 155, 560  
  MicroEMACS . . . . . 302  
cc0 . . . . . 157, 564  
ccl . . . . . 157, 565

# 1062 The COHERENT System

|                                       |                       |                                   |              |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| cc2. . . . .                          | 157, 565              | argument. . . . .                 | 310          |
| cc3. . . . .                          | 157, 565              | background . . . . .              | 402          |
| cd . . . . .                          | 29-30, 60, 415, 565   | break . . . . .                   | 326          |
| CD macro . . . . .                    | 324                   | conditional . . . . .             | 352          |
| ce primitive . . . . .                | 331                   | divert . . . . .                  | 365          |
| ceil() . . . . .                      | 566                   | environment. . . . .              | 358          |
| center a line on the screen . . . . . | 283                   | error. . . . .                    | 265, 270     |
| centered display . . . . .            | 323-324               | file. . . . .                     | 401          |
| change lines . . . . .                | 382                   | fill . . . . .                    | 327          |
| changequote. . . . .                  | 250                   | line length . . . . .             | 325          |
| changing lines. . . . .               | 193                   | line space. . . . .               | 359          |
| char . . . . .                        | 167, 567              | page offset . . . . .             | 325, 358     |
| character classes . . . . .           | 231                   | parameters. . . . .               | 403          |
| character constant                    |                       | printing. . . . .                 | 266          |
| blank . . . . .                       | 500                   | reserved . . . . .                | 406          |
| escape sequence. . . . .              | 504                   | substitution . . . . .            | 415          |
| character special file . . . . .      | 110                   | title length . . . . .            | 336          |
| character-special device . . . . .    | 536                   | values . . . . .                  | 416          |
| characters                            |                       | when . . . . .                    | 334          |
| special. . . . .                      | 197, 212, 322         | command line. . . . .             | 262, 265-266 |
| chars.h . . . . .                     | 567                   | changed file name . . . . .       | 289          |
| chdir() . . . . .                     | 567                   | file name changed . . . . .       | 292          |
| check . . . . .                       | 567                   | macro definition. . . . .         | 266          |
| chgrp . . . . .                       | 568                   | options . . . . .                 | 265          |
| chmod . . . . .                       | 33, 51, 401, 409, 569 | target specification . . . . .    | 266          |
| chmod() . . . . .                     | 568                   | commands . . . . .                | 579          |
| choices                               |                       | advanced . . . . .                | 198, 210     |
| in case statements . . . . .          | 67                    | arguments . . . . .               | 290          |
| chown . . . . .                       | 571                   | background . . . . .              | 49           |
| chown() . . . . .                     | 571                   | block kill text . . . . .         | 279          |
| chroot(). . . . .                     | 571                   | buffer status. . . . .            | 294          |
| clearerr(). . . . .                   | 572                   | cancel . . . . .                  | 287          |
| close(). . . . .                      | 572                   | capitalization. . . . .           | 281          |
| cli. . . . .                          | 572                   | case sensitivity . . . . .        | 35           |
| cmp . . . . .                         | 24, 61-63, 416, 573   | COHERENT. . . . .                 | 48           |
| code generator . . . . .              | 157                   | concurrent execution. . . . .     | 49           |
| COHERENT                              |                       | cursor movement display . . . . . | 274          |
| description . . . . .                 | 1                     | exiting from MicroEMACS . . . . . | 288          |
| hardware requirements . . . . .       | 1                     | file and buffer . . . . .         | 292          |
| COHERENT file format . . . . .        | 625                   | first part . . . . .              | 20           |
| COHERENT system calls . . . . .       | 573                   | giving c. to COHERENT . . . . .   | 301          |
| col . . . . .                         | 575                   | global . . . . .                  | 219          |
| colon . . . . .                       | 262, 268              | in files. . . . .                 | 50           |
| com . . . . .                         | 576                   | increase power . . . . .          | 290          |
| com1 . . . . .                        | 577                   | lowercase. . . . .                | 281          |
| com2 . . . . .                        | 577                   | move text. . . . .                | 279          |
| com3 . . . . .                        | 578                   | parameters. . . . .               | 43           |
| com4 . . . . .                        | 578                   | program interrupt . . . . .       | 301          |
| comm. . . . .                         | 24, 75, 579           | redraw screen . . . . .           | 282          |
| command . . . . .                     | 310                   | saving text . . . . .             | 288          |







- else . . . . . 65, 177, 421, 640  
enable . . . . . 640  
end . . . . . 641  
end macro command . . . . . 300  
end of line . . . . . 235  
end of text command . . . . . 276  
endgrent() . . . . . 642  
endless loop . . . . . 257  
endpwent() . . . . . 642  
enlarge window command  
  with arguments . . . . . 297  
  . . . . . 298  
enter . . . . . 18  
enum . . . . . 642  
environ . . . . . 643  
environmental variables . . . . . 643  
envp . . . . . 644  
EOF . . . . . 645  
eol . . . . . 18  
epson . . . . . 645  
equ . . . . . 503  
erase . . . . . 48  
erase text . . . . . 277  
  by line . . . . . 279  
  erasing spaces . . . . . 278  
  to the left . . . . . 278  
  to the right . . . . . 278  
errno . . . . . 646  
errno.h . . . . . 646  
error  
  recovery . . . . . 463  
  token . . . . . 463  
error action . . . . . 451  
error messages . . . . . 1034  
  system . . . . . 80, 85-86  
error status . . . . . 265, 270  
errors . . . . . 270  
errprint . . . . . 252  
esac . . . . . 67, 422-423  
escape sequence . . . . . 504  
etext . . . . . 649  
ev primitive . . . . . 358  
eval . . . . . 254, 649  
even directive . . . . . 504  
event scheduling . . . . . 95  
example . . . . . 474  
exception . . . . . 231  
exec . . . . . 650  
execl() . . . . . 650  
execle() . . . . . 651  
execlp() . . . . . 651  
executable file . . . . . 651  
executable files . . . . . 157  
executable program . . . . . 157  
execute macro command . . . . . 300  
execute permission . . . . . 38  
execution . . . . . 652  
execv() . . . . . 653  
execve() . . . . . 653  
execvp() . . . . . 655  
exit . . . . . 173, 416, 655  
exit status . . . . . 270  
exit() . . . . . 655  
exiting from MicroEMACS . . . . . 288  
exp() . . . . . 656  
exponentiation operator . . . . . 136  
export . . . . . 59, 414, 657  
expr . . . . . 657  
expression . . . . . 349  
expression evaluation . . . . . 254  
extended commands . . . . . 288  
extern . . . . . 659  
extra newlines . . . . . 251
- F**
- fabs() . . . . . 660  
factor . . . . . 660  
factor.c . . . . . 158  
failure . . . . . 61  
false . . . . . 65, 660  
fblk.h . . . . . 660  
fclose() . . . . . 661  
fcntl.h . . . . . 661  
fd . . . . . 661  
fd.h . . . . . 662  
fdformat . . . . . 663  
fdioct.h . . . . . 664  
fdisk . . . . . 664  
fdisk.h . . . . . 665  
fdopen() . . . . . 665  
FE macro . . . . . 322  
feof() . . . . . 666  
ferror() . . . . . 666  
fflush() . . . . . 668  
fgetc() . . . . . 669  
fgets . . . . . 168  
fgets() . . . . . 670  
fgetw() . . . . . 671  
fi . . . . . 65, 420-421  
fi primitive . . . . . 327, 329

# 1066 The COHERENT System

|                                              |                     |                                  |                            |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| field . . . . .                              | 672                 | file option . . . . .            | 265                        |
| FILE . . . . .                               | 167, 673            | file system                      |                            |
| file . . . . .                               | 20, 22, 26, 96, 672 | construction . . . . .           | 111                        |
| attributes . . . . .                         | 33                  | creation . . . . .               | 108                        |
| back up . . . . .                            | 80                  | layout . . . . .                 | 103                        |
| block special . . . . .                      | 107-108, 110        | regions . . . . .                | 112                        |
| character special . . . . .                  | 110                 | root . . . . .                   | 113                        |
| concatenation . . . . .                      | 36                  | fileno() . . . . .               | 674                        |
| copying . . . . .                            | 31                  | files                            |                            |
| creating . . . . .                           | 43                  | cooked . . . . .                 | 108                        |
| creating empty . . . . .                     | 54                  | fill . . . . .                   | 327                        |
| creation . . . . .                           | 29                  | filsys.h . . . . .               | 675                        |
| creation time . . . . .                      | 39                  | filter . . . . .                 | 23, 675                    |
| data . . . . .                               | 24                  | find . . . . .                   | 675                        |
| definition . . . . .                         | 292                 | fixstack . . . . .               | 677                        |
| differences . . . . .                        | 24                  | float . . . . .                  | 677                        |
| editing commands . . . . .                   | 210                 | floating-point numbers . . . . . | 157                        |
| how differs from buffer . . . . .            | 292                 | floor() . . . . .                | 680                        |
| include . . . . .                            | 70                  | floppy disk                      |                            |
| links . . . . .                              | 35, 39              | bootable . . . . .               | 537                        |
| mode . . . . .                               | 33, 110, 112        | floppy disks . . . . .           | 681                        |
| modification time . . . . .                  | 70                  | fnkey . . . . .                  | 682                        |
| moving . . . . .                             | 31                  | FO macro . . . . .               | 334                        |
| name . . . . .                               | 22, 26, 39, 112     | fonts . . . . .                  | 321                        |
| name, in ed command . . . . .                | 188                 | footer . . . . .                 | 319, 335                   |
| naming . . . . .                             | 292                 | footnote . . . . .               | 322                        |
| of commands . . . . .                        | 50                  | fopen . . . . .                  | 168, 171, 173              |
| owner . . . . .                              | 39                  | fopen() . . . . .                | 682                        |
| protection . . . . .                         | 33, 102             | for . . . . .                    | 63, 168, 174-175, 419, 684 |
| prototype . . . . .                          | 109                 | fork() . . . . .                 | 685                        |
| raw . . . . .                                | 108                 | fortune . . . . .                | 686                        |
| removal of . . . . .                         | 34                  | forward                          |                            |
| rename . . . . .                             | 293                 | end of line . . . . .            | 275                        |
| replace buffer with named f. . . . .         | 293                 | one space . . . . .              | 275                        |
| restoring . . . . .                          | 84, 98              | one word . . . . .               | 275                        |
| size . . . . .                               | 39, 112             | fperr.h . . . . .                | 686                        |
| special character . . . . .                  | 108                 | fprintf() . . . . .              | 686                        |
| times . . . . .                              | 112                 | fputc() . . . . .                | 687                        |
| unwritable . . . . .                         | 34                  | fputs() . . . . .                | 688                        |
| with windows . . . . .                       | 299                 | fputw() . . . . .                | 688                        |
| write to new f. . . . .                      | 292                 | fread() . . . . .                | 688                        |
| file descriptor . . . . .                    | 673                 | Fred Flintstone . . . . .        | 411                        |
| file format                                  |                     | free list . . . . .              | 112                        |
| archive file . . . . .                       | 494                 | free() . . . . .                 | 689                        |
| COHERENT file . . . . .                      | 625                 | freelist . . . . .               | 86                         |
| core dump . . . . .                          | 589                 | freopen() . . . . .              | 689                        |
| file format, processing accounting . . . . . | 489                 | frexp() . . . . .                | 690                        |
| file formats . . . . .                       | 674                 | from . . . . .                   | 691                        |
| file modification time . . . . .             | 266                 | FS macro . . . . .               | 322                        |
| file names . . . . .                         | 403                 | fscanf() . . . . .               | 691                        |

fsck . . . . . 113, 692  
 fseek() . . . . . 694  
 fstat() . . . . . 695  
 ft primitive . . . . . 363  
 ftell() . . . . . 697  
 ftime() . . . . . 697  
 function . . . . . 163, 514, 697  
 function return values . . . . . 515  
 function-calling conventions . . . . . 514  
 fwrite() . . . . . 698

## G

gcd() . . . . . 699  
 general functions . . . . . 699  
 getc() . . . . . 700  
 getchar() . . . . . 701  
 getegid() . . . . . 702  
 getenv() . . . . . 702  
 geteuid() . . . . . 703  
 getgid() . . . . . 703  
 getgrent() . . . . . 704  
 getgrgid() . . . . . 704  
 getgrnam() . . . . . 704  
 getlogin() . . . . . 705  
 getopt() . . . . . 705  
 getpass() . . . . . 707  
 getpid() . . . . . 708  
 getpw() . . . . . 708  
 getpwent() . . . . . 708  
 getpwnam() . . . . . 709  
 getpwuid() . . . . . 709  
 gets() . . . . . 710  
 getty . . . . . 711  
 getuid() . . . . . 712  
 getw() . . . . . 712  
 getwd() . . . . . 713  
 global  
 command . . . . . 205, 219  
 global substitute . . . . . 196  
 globl directive . . . . . 504  
 GMT . . . . . 46, 713  
 gmtime() . . . . . 714  
 goto . . . . . 714  
 grave accent . . . . . 59, 415  
 grep . . . . . 24, 45-46, 411, 715  
 group . . . . . 716  
 id . . . . . 87, 110, 112  
 name . . . . . 87, 112  
 grouping -- () . . . . . 234

grp.h . . . . . 717  
 gtty() . . . . . 717

## H

hd primitive . . . . . 334  
 hdioctl.h . . . . . 719  
 head . . . . . 719  
 header . . . . . 319  
 header file . . . . . 163, 169  
 header files . . . . . 719  
 header section . . . . . 243  
 headings  
 section . . . . . 316  
 help . . . . . 21, 35, 721  
 in MicroEMACS . . . . . 303  
 help window . . . . . 303  
 here document . . . . . 408  
 high-level language . . . . . 16, 25, 162  
 HOME . . . . . 60, 415, 722  
 home directory . . . . . 27-30, 52  
 hp . . . . . 722  
 hpd . . . . . 722  
 hpr . . . . . 723  
 hpskip . . . . . 724  
 hyphen . . . . . 265  
 hyphenation . . . . . 310  
 hypot() . . . . . 724

## I

i-list . . . . . 110  
 i-node . . . . . 110  
 available . . . . . 112  
 list . . . . . 112-113  
 i-number . . . . . 112  
 I/O redirection . . . . . 23, 36  
 i8087 . . . . . 511  
 icodek . . . . . 725  
 ID macro . . . . . 324  
 idle . . . . . 106  
 ie primitive . . . . . 352  
 if . . . . . 65, 420, 726  
 ifdef . . . . . 251  
 ifelse . . . . . 254  
 ignore errors option . . . . . 265, 270  
 include . . . . . 251  
 including a file . . . . . 383  
 incr . . . . . 253  
 incremental dump . . . . . 97



- link() . . . . . 755
  - linker . . . . . 157
  - linker-defined symbols . . . . . 756
  - linking without compiling . . . . . 159
  - links . . . . . 35, 39
  - ll primitive . . . . . 325, 349
  - ln . . . . . 35, 112, 756
  - localtime() . . . . . 757
  - lock() . . . . . 758
  - log in . . . . . 399
  - log() . . . . . 759
  - log10() . . . . . 759
  - logging in . . . . . 18
  - logging out . . . . . 21
  - login . . . . . 22, 89, 101, 760
    - time . . . . . 91
  - logmsg . . . . . 760
  - long . . . . . 761
  - longjmp() . . . . . 761
  - look . . . . . 761
  - loop . . . . . 168
  - lower case
    - in commands . . . . . 35
    - in file names . . . . . 26
  - lowercase text . . . . . 282
  - lp . . . . . 762
  - lpd . . . . . 763
  - lpioctl.h . . . . . 763
  - lpr . . . . . 763
  - lpskip . . . . . 764
  - LR parsing . . . . . 450
  - ls . . . . . 20, 27, 37, 764
    - l option . . . . . 33
  - ls primitive . . . . . 359
  - lseek() . . . . . 766
  - lt primitive . . . . . 336, 362
  - LT string . . . . . 319
  - lto3() . . . . . 766
  - lvalue . . . . . 767
- M**
- m4 . . . . . 68, 70, 768
  - machine instructions . . . . . 71
  - machine.h . . . . . 770
  - macro . . . . . 68, 163, 237, 266, 307, 332, 770
    - arguments . . . . . 337
    - definition . . . . . 263, 266, 337
    - name . . . . . 310
    - printing . . . . . 266
  - macro name recognition . . . . . 249
  - macros
    - ms . . . . . 307
  - madd() . . . . . 771
  - mail . . . . . 23, 25, 40, 42, 771
    - receiving . . . . . 41
  - mailbox . . . . . 80
  - main . . . . . 69, 164, 166
  - main() . . . . . 773
  - make . . . . . 70, 774
  - makeactions . . . . . 266-267
  - Makefile . . . . . 265
  - makefile . . . . . 262, 265
  - makemacros . . . . . 266-267
  - malloc() . . . . . 777
  - malloc.h . . . . . 778
  - man . . . . . 21, 35, 105, 779
  - manifest constant . . . . . 780
  - manual
    - how to use . . . . . 2
    - user reaction report . . . . . 2
  - margin
    - right . . . . . 310
  - margins . . . . . 326
  - match
    - exception . . . . . 231
    - in context . . . . . 235-236
    - longest . . . . . 232
    - non-graphic characters . . . . . 234
    - optional . . . . . 233
  - math.h . . . . . 780
  - mathematics library . . . . . 159, 780
  - mboot . . . . . 781
  - ncmp() . . . . . 782
  - mcopy() . . . . . 782
  - mdata.h . . . . . 782
  - mdiv() . . . . . 782
  - me . . . . . 43, 783
  - measurement . . . . . 349
    - absolute . . . . . 353
    - unit . . . . . 350
    - units . . . . . 334, 349
  - mem . . . . . 790
  - memchr() . . . . . 791
  - memcmp() . . . . . 792
  - memcpy() . . . . . 793
  - memmove() . . . . . 793
  - memok() . . . . . 794
  - memory allocation . . . . . 794
  - memset() . . . . . 796

|                                       |               |                                           |                      |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| merge . . . . .                       | 24            | mnttab.h . . . . .                        | 802                  |
| mesg . . . . .                        | 39, 796       | mode . . . . .                            | 38                   |
| message . . . . .                     | 39            | field . . . . .                           | 38                   |
| ! . . . . .                           | 301           | of file . . . . .                         | 33                   |
| [Done] . . . . .                      | 285           | modemcap . . . . .                        | 802                  |
| [End macro] . . . . .                 | 301           | modf() . . . . .                          | 804                  |
| [end] . . . . .                       | 301           | modification time . . . . .               | 266                  |
| [Mark set] . . . . .                  | 281           | modulus . . . . .                         | 805                  |
| [Old buffer] . . . . .                | 294           | mon.h . . . . .                           | 806                  |
| [Read XX lines] . . . . .             | 294, 296      | motd . . . . .                            | 90, 806              |
| [Start macro] . . . . .               | 300           | mount . . . . .                           | 81, 111, 806         |
| [Wrap at column XX] . . . . .         | 284           | mount() . . . . .                         | 806                  |
| [Wrote XX lines] . . . . .            | 277, 289, 292 | mount.h . . . . .                         | 807                  |
| Arg: X. . . . .                       | 284, 290      | mout() . . . . .                          | 807                  |
| Buffer name: . . . . .                | 295           | move . . . . .                            |                      |
| Discard changes [y/n]? . . . . .      | 295           | blocks of text . . . . .                  | 200                  |
| failing i-search forward . . . . .    | 285           | cursor . . . . .                          | 274                  |
| i-search forward . . . . .            | 285           | text . . . . .                            | 279                  |
| Kill buffer: . . . . .                | 295           | text from one buffer to another . . . . . | 294                  |
| Name: . . . . .                       | 293           | within window command . . . . .           | 299                  |
| Not found . . . . .                   | 286           | mprec.h . . . . .                         | 808                  |
| Not now . . . . .                     | 301           | ms . . . . .                              | 105, 307, 808        |
| Quit [y/n]? . . . . .                 | 279           | msg . . . . .                             | 25, 39, 425, 810-811 |
| Read file: . . . . .                  | 293           | msg.h . . . . .                           | 811                  |
| Reverse search [xxxxx]: . . . . .     | 286           | msgctl() . . . . .                        | 811                  |
| Search: . . . . .                     | 286           | msgget() . . . . .                        | 812                  |
| Use buffer: . . . . .                 | 299           | msgrcv() . . . . .                        | 813                  |
| Visit file: . . . . .                 | 293-294, 296  | msgsnd() . . . . .                        | 90, 815              |
| Write file: . . . . .                 | 288, 292      | msgsnd() . . . . .                        | 816                  |
| message of the day . . . . .          | 90, 806       | msig.h . . . . .                          | 818                  |
| messages . . . . .                    |               | msqrt() . . . . .                         | 818                  |
| New string . . . . .                  | 287           | msub() . . . . .                          | 818                  |
| Old string . . . . .                  | 287           | mtab.h . . . . .                          | 818                  |
| Query replace [old] -> [new]. . . . . | 287           | mtioctl.h . . . . .                       | 819                  |
| MicroEMACS . . . . .                  | 43            | mtoi() . . . . .                          | 819                  |
| advanced editing with . . . . .       | 289           | mtos() . . . . .                          | 819                  |
| exiting from . . . . .                | 288           | mtype() . . . . .                         | 820                  |
| quit without saving text . . . . .    | 279           | mtype.h . . . . .                         | 820                  |
| saving text . . . . .                 | 277           | mult() . . . . .                          | 820                  |
| microprocessor . . . . .              | 161           | multiple copying of killed text . . . . . | 280                  |
| min() . . . . .                       | 796           | multiple source files . . . . .           | 158                  |
| minit() . . . . .                     | 797           | multiple-precision mathematics . . . . .  | 821                  |
| mintfr() . . . . .                    | 797           | multitasking . . . . .                    | 15                   |
| mitom() . . . . .                     | 797           | multiuser . . . . .                       | 15                   |
| mkdir . . . . .                       | 29, 797       | multiuser mode . . . . .                  | 106                  |
| mkfs . . . . .                        | 109, 111, 798 | mv . . . . .                              | 31, 824              |
| mknod . . . . .                       | 111, 801      | mvfree() . . . . .                        | 825                  |
| mknod() . . . . .                     | 800           |                                           |                      |
| mktemp() . . . . .                    | 801           |                                           |                      |
| mneg() . . . . .                      | 801           |                                           |                      |

n. . . . . 69, 72, 377  
n.out.h . . . . . 826  
na primitive . . . . . 327, 329  
name labels . . . . . 503  
naming conventions . . . . . 514  
native  
  assembler . . . . . 68  
ncheck . . . . . 826  
nestable quotes . . . . . 248  
new page. . . . . 325  
newgrp . . . . . 826  
newline  
  in C strings . . . . . 69  
newusr . . . . . 87, 112, 827  
next error . . . . . 303  
next line . . . . . 385  
next line command. . . . . 275  
nf primitive . . . . . 327  
NH macro . . . . . 317  
nlist() . . . . . 827  
nm . . . . . 828  
no execution option . . . . . 265  
no rules option . . . . . 266  
no-fill . . . . . 327  
non-graphic character . . . . . 234  
non-graphic characters . . . . . 234  
nonassociative. . . . . 463  
nonterminals . . . . . 452  
notmem() . . . . . 829  
nr primitive . . . . . 345, 347  
nroff. . . . . 25, 105, 829  
nroff macros. . . . . 105  
NULL. . . . . 173, 835  
null . . . . . 835  
null statements . . . . . 503  
number of buffers allowed . . . . . 294  
numbered heading . . . . . 317  
nybble . . . . . 835

## O

o - in write command . . . . . 40  
object format . . . . . 836  
object module . . . . . 157, 159  
od . . . . . 836  
odd directive. . . . . 504  
oo - in write command . . . . . 40  
open(). . . . . 836  
operating system . . . . . 15  
operator . . . . . 838

operators. . . . . 162, 502  
optimization . . . . . 157  
optimizer/object generator . . . . . 157  
option. . . . . 20  
optional match . . . . . 233  
options . . . . . 37, 265  
order  
  of matched file names . . . . . 54  
output formatting . . . . . 69  
output redirection . . . . . 121, 406  
output stream. . . . . 251

## P

p command  
  with s . . . . . 377  
packed decimal . . . . . 679  
page  
  break . . . . . 325  
  offset . . . . . 325  
page directive . . . . . 504  
page number . . . . . 320  
paragraph . . . . . 311, 329  
  indented . . . . . 311  
  quoted . . . . . 315  
paragraph tag . . . . . 312  
param.h . . . . . 840  
parameter . . . . . 20  
  assigning keyword . . . . . 58  
  command. . . . . 43  
  fewer . . . . . 55  
  keyword . . . . . 57  
  name . . . . . 20  
  null . . . . . 55  
  option. . . . . 20  
  positional. . . . . 55, 58-59  
  references . . . . . 56  
  substitution . . . . . 62, 70  
parameters  
  all . . . . . 411  
  positional. . . . . 409  
parent directory . . . . . 22, 60  
parentheses . . . . . 69  
parse actions . . . . . 451  
parser. . . . . 157  
passwd . . . . . 47, 102, 104, 840-841  
password. . . . . 19, 47, 79, 86, 101  
PATH. . . . . 60, 103, 415, 841  
path . . . . . 27-28, 31  
path name



|                                 |                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| fully specified . . . . .       | 28                      |
| partially specified . . . . .   | 28                      |
| path() . . . . .                | 841                     |
| path.h . . . . .                | 843                     |
| pattern . . . . .               | 194, 225, 376, 403, 843 |
| patterns . . . . .              | 45-46, 52, 54, 229-230  |
| pause() . . . . .               | 843                     |
| pclose() . . . . .              | 843                     |
| performance . . . . .           | 17                      |
| permission . . . . .            | 102                     |
| access . . . . .                | 38                      |
| execute . . . . .               | 38                      |
| read . . . . .                  | 33, 38                  |
| standard . . . . .              | 33                      |
| write . . . . .                 | 33, 38                  |
| perror() . . . . .              | 844                     |
| phone . . . . .                 | 844                     |
| PID . . . . .                   | 99                      |
| pipe . . . . .                  | 23, 403, 409, 846       |
| pipe() . . . . .                | 844                     |
| pipes . . . . .                 | 371                     |
| pl primitive . . . . .          | 332                     |
| pnmatch() . . . . .             | 846                     |
| po primitive . . . . .          | 325, 351, 358           |
| pointer . . . . .               | 163, 847                |
| poll.h . . . . .                | 850                     |
| popen() . . . . .               | 850                     |
| port . . . . .                  | 88, 850                 |
| portability . . . . .           | 850                     |
| pow() . . . . .                 | 851                     |
| powering down . . . . .         | 83                      |
| PP . . . . .                    | 311                     |
| PP macro . . . . .              | 308, 333                |
| pr . . . . .                    | 42, 852                 |
| precedence . . . . .            | 462-463, 853            |
| prep . . . . .                  | 854                     |
| previous error . . . . .        | 303                     |
| previous line command . . . . . | 276                     |
| print command . . . . .         | 190                     |
| print option . . . . .          | 266                     |
| printf . . . . .                | 69, 164, 169            |
| printf() . . . . .              | 854                     |
| printing . . . . .              | 266                     |
| private data . . . . .          | 500                     |
| private instruction . . . . .   | 500                     |
| problem . . . . .               |                         |
| sample . . . . .                | 71                      |
| proc.h . . . . .                | 857                     |
| process . . . . .               | 50, 99, 857             |
| background . . . . .            | 50                      |

|                                           |                     |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| id . . . . .                              | 49, 99-100          |
| simultaneous . . . . .                    | 99                  |
| process accounting, file format . . . . . | 489                 |
| production . . . . .                      | 453                 |
| profile . . . . .                         | 857                 |
| program . . . . .                         |                     |
| debugging . . . . .                       | 70                  |
| maintenance . . . . .                     | 269                 |
| modularity . . . . .                      | 70                  |
| preparation . . . . .                     | 25                  |
| specification . . . . .                   | 262, 265            |
| program generator . . . . .               | 223                 |
| program interrupt command . . . . .       | 301                 |
| programming . . . . .                     |                     |
| structured . . . . .                      | 70                  |
| prompt . . . . .                          | 19, 52, 60, 79, 399 |
| \$ . . . . .                              | 415                 |
| > . . . . .                               | 415                 |
| secondary . . . . .                       | 419                 |
| prompt character . . . . .                | 187                 |
| protection . . . . .                      | 22, 33, 101-102     |
| prototype . . . . .                       | 109                 |
| prvd . . . . .                            | 500, 503            |
| prvi . . . . .                            | 500, 503            |
| ps . . . . .                              | 50, 100, 403, 857   |
| PS1 . . . . .                             | 60, 415, 859        |
| PS2 . . . . .                             | 60, 415, 859        |
| ptrace() . . . . .                        | 859                 |
| pun . . . . .                             | 861                 |
| push-down list . . . . .                  | 451                 |
| putc() . . . . .                          | 861                 |
| putchar() . . . . .                       | 862                 |
| puts() . . . . .                          | 862                 |
| putw() . . . . .                          | 863                 |
| pwd . . . . .                             | 30, 863             |
| pwd.h . . . . .                           | 863                 |

Q

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| QE macro . . . . .                 | 315 |
| QS macro . . . . .                 | 315 |
| qsort() . . . . .                  | 865 |
| question mark . . . . .            | 54  |
| quit without saving text . . . . . | 277 |
| quitting MicroEMACS . . . . .      | 277 |
| quot . . . . .                     | 865 |
| quote marks . . . . .              |     |
| removing . . . . .                 | 248 |
| quoted paragraph . . . . .         | 315 |
| quoted text . . . . .              | 248 |

## R

- ram . . . . . 867
- rand() . . . . . 868
- random access . . . . . 869
- ranlib . . . . . 869
- raw files . . . . . 108
- rc . . . . . 870
- RE macro . . . . . 313
- read . . . . . 425, 871
- read permission. . . . . 33, 38
- read() . . . . . 870
- read-only memory . . . . . 872
- reading in . . . . . 383
- readonly . . . . . 871
- real time . . . . . 92
- realloc() . . . . . 872
- reboot. . . . . 872
- receiving mail . . . . . 41
- records . . . . . 24
- redirection . . . . . 36, 406
  - pipe . . . . . 409
  - standard error. . . . . 408
  - standard input . . . . . 407
  - standard output. . . . . 406
- redraw screen . . . . . 282
- reduce . . . . . 451, 460
- reduction. . . . . 453
- register . . . . . 161, 872
  - number. . . . . 344
- register names . . . . . 499
- register variable . . . . . 873
- registers . . . . . 515
- regular expressions . . . . . 45, 229
- REJECT . . . . . 241
- relative indent . . . . . 313
- removing
  - directories . . . . . 34
  - files . . . . . 34
- removing lines . . . . . 192
- rename file . . . . . 293
- repeat. . . . . 254
- repetition
  - zero or more. . . . . 232
- repetition. . . . . 232
  - specific count . . . . . 233
- repetitions
  - zero or more. . . . . 227
  - zero or one. . . . . 233
- replace buffer with named file. . . . . 293
- report writing. . . . . 24
- resetting registers . . . . . 614
- resource sharing . . . . . 15
- restor . . . . . 96, 108, 873
- restore
  - complete file system . . . . . 99
  - default device . . . . . 99
  - files . . . . . 84, 96
  - individual files. . . . . 99
- restore (yank back) killed text. . . . . 279
- return . . . . . 875
- return indent . . . . . 283
- return value. . . . . 270
- rev. . . . . 875
- reverse search. . . . . 286
- reverse searching. . . . . 209
- rewind() . . . . . 875
- right . . . . . 463
- right margin. . . . . 310
- rindex(). . . . . 876
- rm. . . . . 34-35, 876
- rmdir . . . . . 34, 877
- Roman font . . . . . 321
- root . . . . . 27-28, 79, 101, 877
  - device . . . . . 105
  - directory . . . . . 103
  - file system . . . . . 113
- rpow() . . . . . 878
- RS macro . . . . . 313
- RT string. . . . . 319
- rub out key . . . . . 18
- rule
  - actions . . . . . 455
  - format. . . . . 453
  - sections. . . . . 453
  - style . . . . . 453
  - type . . . . . 459
  - values . . . . . 455-456
- rule format . . . . . 453
- rules . . . . . 225
  - context start. . . . . 237
  - precedence. . . . . 463
  - section . . . . . 453
  - with same action . . . . . 229
- rules option . . . . . 266
- rules section. . . . . 451
- rvalue. . . . . 878

## S

|                                  |                     |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| sa                               | 879                 |
| sample problem                   | 71                  |
| saving files                     | 96                  |
| saving text                      | 277, 288            |
| sbrk()                           | 880                 |
| scanf()                          | 880                 |
| scat                             | 36, 882             |
| sched.h                          | 884                 |
| screen backwards movement        | 276                 |
| screen down command              | 276                 |
| screen editor                    | 43                  |
| screen forward movement          | 276                 |
| screen redraw                    | 282                 |
| screen up command                | 276                 |
| script                           | 48, 50-51, 55, 401  |
| scroll down command              | 298                 |
| with arguments                   | 299                 |
| scroll up command                | 298                 |
| with arguments                   | 299                 |
| sdiv()                           | 884                 |
| search                           |                     |
| forward                          | 285                 |
| reverse                          | 286                 |
| search and replace command       | 287                 |
| section                          |                     |
| definition                       | 451                 |
| header                           | 243                 |
| rules                            | 451                 |
| section heading                  | 316                 |
| sections                         |                     |
| definitions                      | 242                 |
| security                         | 884                 |
| sed                              | 187, 886            |
| seg.h                            | 889                 |
| sem                              | 889                 |
| sem.h                            | 890                 |
| semctl()                         | 890                 |
| semget()                         | 892                 |
| semicolon                        | 164                 |
| semicolons                       | 48                  |
| semop()                          | 893                 |
| set                              | 895                 |
| setbuf()                         | 896                 |
| setgid()                         | 896                 |
| setgrent()                       | 897                 |
| setjmp()                         | 897                 |
| setjmp.h                         | 898                 |
| setpwent()                       | 898                 |
| settz()                          | 899                 |
| setuid()                         | 899                 |
| sgtty.h                          | 899                 |
| sh                               | 35, 50-51, 103, 900 |
| SH macro                         | 316                 |
| shared data                      | 500                 |
| shared instruction               | 500                 |
| SHELL                            | 908                 |
| shell                            | 35, 48, 103         |
| script                           | 50                  |
| sequential execution of commands | 49                  |
| simple commands                  | 48                  |
| variable                         | 56, 59              |
| shellsort()                      | 908                 |
| shift                            | 417, 451, 460, 909  |
| shift-reduce conflicts           | 460                 |
| shm                              | 909                 |
| shm.h                            | 911                 |
| shmctl()                         | 911                 |
| shmget()                         | 912                 |
| short                            | 913                 |
| shrd                             | 500, 503            |
| shri                             | 500, 503            |
| shrink window command            | 298                 |
| with arguments                   | 298                 |
| shutdown                         | 914                 |
| signal()                         | 914                 |
| signal.h                         | 915                 |
| signame                          | 916                 |
| silent option                    | 266, 270            |
| sin()                            | 916                 |
| sininclude                       | 251                 |
| single-user mode                 | 106                 |
| sinh()                           | 916                 |
| size                             | 917                 |
| sizeof                           | 917                 |
| skip lines                       | 325                 |
| slash                            | 27                  |
| in path name                     | 28                  |
| sleep                            | 918                 |
| sleep()                          | 918                 |
| sload()                          | 918                 |
| smult()                          | 919                 |
| sort                             | 24, 919             |
| source file                      | 159                 |
| sp                               | 310                 |
| sp primitive                     | 325, 330, 332       |
| space                            | 57                  |
| vertical                         | 310                 |
| special characters               | 212, 504            |
| special file                     |                     |

- block . . . . . 107-108
- special targets . . . . . 270
- specification . . . . . 262, 265, 326
- spell . . . . . 921
- split . . . . . 921
- splitting lines . . . . . 207
- spow() . . . . . 922
- sprintf() . . . . . 922
- sqrt() . . . . . 923
- srand() . . . . . 923
- sscanf() . . . . . 923
- stack . . . . . 451, 924
  - alter size of . . . . . 750
  - environment . . . . . 360
- stack size . . . . . 160
- standard
  - input . . . . . 23
  - output . . . . . 23, 36
  - permission . . . . . 33
- standard error . . . . . 408, 924
- standard I/O . . . . . 104
- standard input . . . . . 406, 925
- standard output . . . . . 406, 925
- start condition . . . . . 237
- start symbol . . . . . 451-452
- stat() . . . . . 925
- stat.h . . . . . 927
- statements . . . . . 226
- statements multiple . . . . . 227
- static . . . . . 927
- stddef.h . . . . . 928
- stderr . . . . . 928
- stdin . . . . . 928
- STDIO . . . . . 929
- stdio.h . . . . . 169, 930
- stdout . . . . . 930
- sticky bit . . . . . 930
- stime() . . . . . 930
- storage class . . . . . 931
- store command . . . . . 289
- strcat() . . . . . 931
- strchr() . . . . . 931
- strcmp() . . . . . 932
- strcoll() . . . . . 932
- strcpy() . . . . . 933
- strncpy() . . . . . 933
- stream . . . . . 933
- stream.h . . . . . 934
- strerror() . . . . . 934
- string . . . . . 342
  - within strings . . . . . 343
- string functions . . . . . 935
- string length . . . . . 254
- string.h . . . . . 934
- strings . . . . . 320, 501
- strip . . . . . 937
- strlen() . . . . . 938
- strn . . . . . 500-501, 503
- strncat() . . . . . 938
- strncmp() . . . . . 938
- strncpy() . . . . . 939
- strpbrk() . . . . . 940
- strrchr() . . . . . 941
- strspn() . . . . . 941
- strstr() . . . . . 941
- strtok() . . . . . 942
- struct . . . . . 943
- structure . . . . . 943
- structure assignment . . . . . 943
- structured
  - programming . . . . . 70
- structured programming . . . . . 163
- strxfrm() . . . . . 944
- stty . . . . . 18, 47, 89, 944
- su . . . . . 101, 946
- subdirectory . . . . . 22
- substitute command . . . . . 194
- substitution . . . . . 373
  - in commands . . . . . 52
  - of parameters . . . . . 62, 70
- substr . . . . . 252
- success . . . . . 61
- succotash . . . . . 594
- suload() . . . . . 947
- sum . . . . . 947
- superblock . . . . . 112
- superuser . . . . . 79, 101, 947
- swab() . . . . . 948
- swap . . . . . 106
- swapper . . . . . 106
- switch . . . . . 948
- switch buffer command . . . . . 299
- symbol table . . . . . 501
- synt . . . . . 500-501, 503
- sync . . . . . 106-107, 113, 949-950
- syscmd . . . . . 255-256
- system
  - time . . . . . 92
- system maintenance . . . . . 950
- system() . . . . . 950

## T

|                                 |                   |                       |             |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------|
| ta primitive                    | 331               | write to new file     | 288         |
| tab.                            | 47, 331           | yank back (restore).  | 279         |
| tabulation between tokens       | 500               | tgetent()             | 975         |
| tag on paragraph                | 312               | tgetflag()            | 975         |
| tail.                           | 952               | tgetnum()             | 976         |
| tan()                           | 952               | tgetstr()             | 976         |
| tanh()                          | 952               | tgoto()               | 976         |
| tape                            | 953               | ti primitive.         | 332         |
| tar.                            | 954               | time.                 | 46, 977-978 |
| target.                         | 266, 270          | elapsed command.      | 46          |
| line                            | 268               | time()                | 977         |
| printing.                       | 266               | time.h.               | 978         |
| program                         | 266               | timeb.h.              | 978         |
| specification                   | 266               | timef.h.              | 978         |
| tc primitive                    | 331               | timeout.h.            | 979         |
| technical information           | 956               | times.                | 979         |
| tee.                            | 956               | times()               | 979         |
| tempnam()                       | 956               | times.h.              | 980         |
| temporary labels                | 503               | timesharing           | 15          |
| TERM                            | 957               | TIMEZONE              | 980         |
| termcap                         | 957               | timezone.             | 46          |
| terminal                        | 17, 47            | title                 | 319         |
| mode                            | 89, 108           | title directive       | 504         |
| speed                           | 88-89             | TL macro              | 318         |
| terminal-independent operations | 965               | tl primitive.         | 335         |
| terminals.                      | 452               | tmpnam()              | 981         |
| termio                          | 966               | token                 |             |
| termio.h                        | 973               | definition.           | 458         |
| test                            | 61, 417, 422, 973 | error.                | 463         |
| test suites                     | 269               | value                 | 456         |
| testing                         |                   | token definition.     | 452         |
| strings                         | 62                | tokens                | 243         |
| text                            |                   | tolower()             | 982         |
| block kill                      | 280               | touch                 | 983         |
| capitalize                      | 281               | touch option.         | 266         |
| erase                           | 277               | toupper()             | 983         |
| erase to left                   | 278               | tputs()               | 983         |
| erase to right                  | 278               | tr                    | 983         |
| kill by lines                   | 279               | translit              | 253         |
| lowercase.                      | 282               | transpose characters. | 282         |
| move                            | 279               | trap                  | 984         |
| move from one buffer to another | 294               | traps                 | 332, 336    |
| multiple copying of killed t.   | 280               | tree-structured       | 17          |
| restore (yank back).            | 279               | troff.                | 25, 985     |
| saving.                         | 288               | true                  | 987         |
| saving t.                       | 277               | tsort.                | 987         |
| uppercase                       | 282               | tty                   | 987         |
|                                 |                   | tty.h.                | 988         |
|                                 |                   | ttyname()             | 988         |
|                                 |                   | ttys                  | 988         |

ttys file . . . . . 87  
 ttyslot() . . . . . 989  
 ttystat . . . . . 989  
 type  
   of nonterminal . . . . . 459  
   of rule . . . . . 459  
 type checking . . . . . 990  
 type promotion . . . . . 990  
 typedef . . . . . 990  
 types.h . . . . . 991  
 typo . . . . . 991

## U

umask() . . . . . 993  
 amount . . . . . 111, 113, 993  
 amount() . . . . . 993  
 uncompress . . . . . 994  
 undefine . . . . . 250  
 undivert . . . . . 252  
 ungetc() . . . . . 994  
 uninitialized data . . . . . 500  
 uninitialized instruction . . . . . 500  
 union . . . . . 994  
 uniq . . . . . 24, 74, 995  
 unit  
   default . . . . . 350  
 units . . . . . 26, 105, 349, 996  
 units of measure  
   conversion table . . . . . 349  
 unlink() . . . . . 997  
 unmkfs . . . . . 997  
 unquoted text . . . . . 248  
 unsigned . . . . . 998  
 until . . . . . 66, 998  
 unwritable file . . . . . 34  
 update . . . . . 106, 999  
 upper case  
   in commands . . . . . 35  
   in file names . . . . . 26  
 uppercase text . . . . . 282  
 uproc.h . . . . . 999  
 USER . . . . . 999  
 user  
   id . . . . . 86, 110, 112  
   name . . . . . 86, 112  
   time . . . . . 92  
 user code . . . . . 453  
 user directory . . . . . 22  
 user name . . . . . 18, 23

user reaction report . . . . . 2  
 usr . . . . . 27  
 usr/lib/makeactions . . . . . 266-267  
 usr/lib/makemacros . . . . . 266-267  
 utime() . . . . . 999  
 utmp.h . . . . . 1000  
 utsname.h . . . . . 1000  
 uucico . . . . . 1001  
 UUCP . . . . . 26, 1001  
 uucp . . . . . 1002  
 uudecode . . . . . 1003  
 uuencode . . . . . 1003  
 uuinstall . . . . . 1005  
 uulog . . . . . 1005  
 uumvlog . . . . . 1005  
 uuname . . . . . 1006  
 uutouch . . . . . 1006  
 uuxqt . . . . . 1006

## V

v7sgtty.h . . . . . 1008  
 value  
   of rule . . . . . 456  
   of tokens . . . . . 456  
   qualification . . . . . 459  
 value from command . . . . . 61  
 variable  
   shell . . . . . 56, 59  
 variable substitution . . . . . 411  
 vertical bar . . . . . 67  
 video display . . . . . 17  
 visit command . . . . . 293  
   creating new file . . . . . 296  
   moving text between buffers . . . . . 294  
   prompting for buffer name . . . . . 295  
 void . . . . . 1008  
 volatile . . . . . 1008

## W

wait . . . . . 50, 403, 1009  
 wait() . . . . . 1009  
 wall . . . . . 1010  
 wc . . . . . 1010  
 wh primitive . . . . . 334  
 while . . . . . 66, 420, 422, 1011  
 whitespace . . . . . 500  
 who . . . . . 23, 36, 83, 1011  
 wildcard

|                                 |                 |               |                            |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| * .....                         | 159             | zerop() ..... | 1017                       |
| ? .....                         | 159             |               |                            |
| wildcards .....                 | 1012            | {             |                            |
| window                          |                 |               |                            |
| buffer status .....             | 294             | { .....       | 353                        |
| buffer status command use ..... | 300             | { } .....     | 69,452                     |
| copying text among .....        | 300             |               |                            |
| definition .....                | 297 | \| |  |
| enlarge .....                   | 297 | \| ..... | 23, 67, 234, 353, 403, 409 |
| move within .....               | 299 | \|\| ..... | 62, 418-419                |
| moving text among .....         | 300             |               |                            |
| multiple w. ....                | 297             | }             |                            |
| number possible .....           | 297             | }             |                            |
| one w. ....                     | 297             | }             |                            |
| saving text .....               | 300             | }             | 353                        |
| scroll down .....               | 298             |               |                            |
| scroll up .....                 | 298             |               |                            |
| shifting between .....          | 297             |               |                            |
| shrink .....                    | 298             |               |                            |
| use with editing .....          | 299             |               |                            |
| using multiple buffers .....    | 299             |               |                            |
| word directive .....            | 504             |               |                            |
| word processing .....           | 25              |               |                            |
| word wrap .....                 | 283             |               |                            |
| working directory .....         | 29              |               |                            |
| write .....                     | 25, 39-40, 1013 |               |                            |
| write permission .....          | 33, 38          |               |                            |
| write text to new file .....    | 288, 292        |               |                            |
| write() .....                   | 1012            |               |                            |

X

|              |      |
|--------------|------|
| xgcd() ..... | 1014 |
|--------------|------|

Y

|                      |                |
|----------------------|----------------|
| yacc .....           | 243, 268, 1015 |
| yacc library .....   | 451            |
| yank back text ..... | 279, 291       |
| yes .....            | 1016           |
| yyerrok .....        | 464            |
| yylex .....          | 242            |
| yyparse .....        | 451            |
| yyswitch .....       | 239            |
| yytext .....         | 229            |
| yywrap .....         | 227, 243       |

Z

|            |      |
|------------|------|
| zcat ..... | 1017 |
|------------|------|

## User Evaluation Report

In order to keep this manual free of errors and to help us improve **Coherent**, we would appreciate it if you sent us your reactions. Please fill in the form below, detach it, and mail it to:

Mark Williams Company  
60 Revere Drive  
Northbrook, IL 60062

Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Company: \_\_\_\_\_  
Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
City/State/Zip: \_\_\_\_\_  
Phone: \_\_\_\_\_  
Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Version and hardware used:

Did you find any errors in the manual?

Can you suggest any improvements to the manual?

Did you find any bugs in the software?

Can you suggest any improvements or enhancements to the software?

Additional comments: